

3 0081 009 160 478

Central Library
**VANDERBILT
UNIVERSITY LIBRARY**

NASHVILLE, TENNESSEE



Charles Edgar Little
Library

VUL-0257

139114

PA
6802
.A1
P5
c.2

DATE DUE

OCT 19 2006

REC'D APR 18 2007

REC'D APR 09 '10

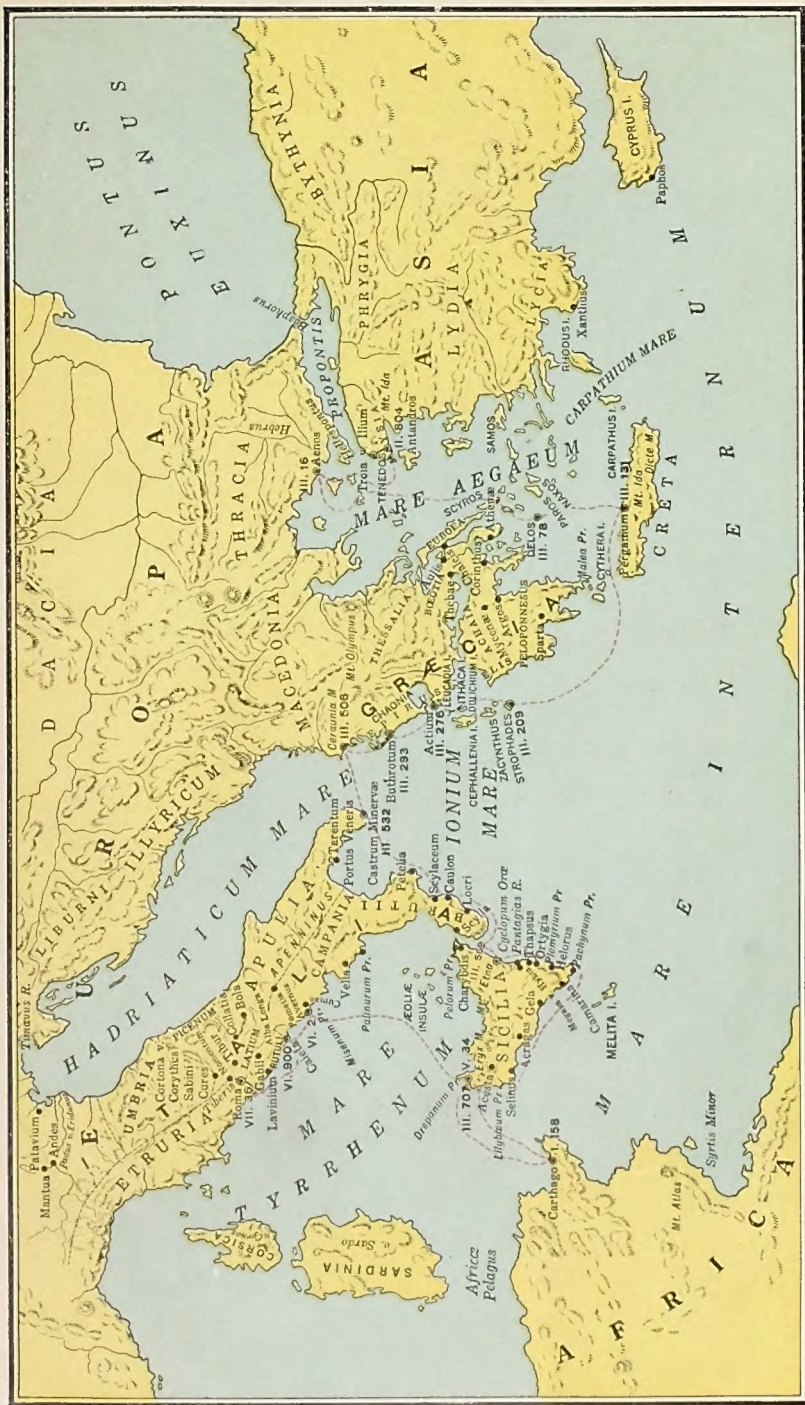
FEB 04 2013

REC'D FEB 04 '13

MAR 21 2016







THE WANDERINGS OF AENEAS

THE HEATH LATIN SERIES
WILBERT LESTER CARR, GENERAL EDITOR

VERGIL'S AENEID

BOOKS I-VI

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY, AND
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY
CLYDE PHARR, PH.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK
VANDERBILT UNIVERSITY



D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS
LONDON

COPYRIGHT, 1930
BY CLYDE PHARR

PATENT PENDING

All rights reserved

3 D O



PRINTED IN U. S. A.

P-139114

DIS MANIBUS
VATIS VERGILI
HUNC LIBELLUM
DEDICAT AUCTOR
LUBENS MERITO



PREFACE

This book is intended to introduce high school and college students to the *Aeneid* and to enable them to read this great masterpiece with interest and appreciation.

The present edition is based on the cumulative results of the past centuries of Vergilian scholarship and pedagogical method, and the author is indebted to his many predecessors, ancient and modern, American and foreign, who have worked in this field. The author would make grateful acknowledgment to all those who have contributed in any way to a better understanding of the *Aeneid*, but it is manifestly impossible to enumerate the countless sources from which the present work has been drawn.

In preparing the present text an attempt has been made to profit by the contributions furnished by the printer's art in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal *i* (*i*, *j*) as well as in the differentiation of vocalic and consonantal *u* (*u*, *v*). For what seems to be adequate pedagogical reasons such forms as **dējiciō**, **subjiciō**, and **conjiciō** are given in the printed text instead of the **dēiciō**, **subiciō**, and **coniciō** of the inscriptions and manuscripts. For the use of *j* and *v* the author feels that no more apology is needed than for the use of lower case letters in general instead of the square capitals of the inscriptions and early manuscripts. The employment of such forms as **dējiciō**, **subjiciō**, and **conjiciō** is abundantly justified by their simplicity as well as by the ease with which they are understood in connection with the rest of their conjugational systems.

The text is that of Hirtzel, Oxford University Press, 1900, and the author here gratefully acknowledges the kind permission granted by the Syndics of this Press to reproduce their text. Only a few changes have been made from the Oxford text, such as the use of capitals in this book at the beginning of each new sentence instead of merely at the beginning of each new paragraph, the use of *j* in this text to represent consonantal *i*, and the spellings **relligio**, **religiosus**, **reliquiae**, to represent more accurately the pronunciation of these words in Vergil's day.

In the definitions of the Latin words given in the page vocabularies the author has not sought to secure a mechanical uniformity, but has attempted merely to preserve such a general consistency that the student may from the definitions recognize any later occurrence of a

word and associate it with its earlier appearances. In the number of meanings given for each Latin word, the author has tried to preserve some mean between a poverty which is barren and a wealth which is confusing to the student who is trying at the same time both to read Vergil and to learn Latin.

The chief distinction of this book is its visible vocabulary system. The acquisition of a vocabulary is generally recognized as one of the most important as well as one of the most troublesome problems in learning either to read or speak a foreign language. No important advance has been made in this field for thousands of years, and the present antiquated methods are wasteful of much valuable time and effort, especially in the case of the more difficult languages, such as Latin and Greek.

This book attempts to attack the problem from another angle and prints adjacent to any given passage the whole of its vocabulary, making it unnecessary ever to turn a page for the purpose of learning the meaning of any word.

The use of the special word list, printed on the extensible sheet at the back of the book, adds certain features of considerable value educationally. This list contains the most common words in the work being studied. Each word which occurs in this list is indicated in the text by being printed in italics. This use of italics serves several distinct purposes. First, it indicates to the student where he must look for the meaning of these words, whether in the special list or in one of the vocabularies at the foot of the page. In the second place, the difference in type assists in impressing these more important words on the memory without as much conscious effort as has ordinarily been needed and hence, perhaps, removes an element of discouragement from the task. The word list also furnishes convenient material for the use of teachers who still prefer to require their students to memorize the most important words in their text. In addition to this word list, a second list of rather less common words is indicated in the special vocabularies by means of asterisks, thus calling the attention of the student to their importance. The first occurrence of a word in the text being studied is indicated in the vocabularies by a dagger (†). This serves a valuable purpose in sight reading, since it continually distinguishes for the student the words he has already met from those he has not yet seen in that particular text, and helps to impress them on his memory.

The author is convinced that this new method is an advance over the old both pedagogically and psychologically. The old system involves not merely a great waste of time, but it necessitates continual interruption in the continuity of attention of the student, hindering or even preventing concentration upon the work at hand and thus making for bad mental habits.

This plan has been tried in a number of secondary schools and in every case it has met with a most enthusiastic response on the part of both teachers and students. After an extensive series of experiments, it is agreed that the following are some of the manifest advantages of this method:

1. Students are able to read intelligently a great deal more in a given period of time than has heretofore been possible.

2. Reading of the great classical authors can be begun at a much earlier stage than was formerly practicable. With a modicum of grammar one can begin reading the great classics and can read them rapidly enough to enjoy them as literature.

3. Since the vocabulary for any given passage is comparatively small, the possibility of error is much less and the student seldom selects the wrong word or the wrong meaning from the vocabulary.

4. With the elimination or great lessening of vocabulary difficulties, the student has a much better opportunity of gaining a thorough foundation in the essentials of grammar, reinforced continually by more copious reading than has hitherto been possible.

5. The student learns his vocabulary without much conscious effort at memorizing, in the easiest and most natural way possible, by meeting the words constantly in his reading, with their meanings always before him. Similarly he learns the forms of his words, by constantly seeing the indications of their structure, as denoted in the vocabulary by the principal parts of the verbs, the nominative and genitive singular of the nouns, together with an indication of their gender, and other information presented in the vocabularies.

6. Printing this vocabulary in sight of the passage not only conserves the time of the student commonly spent in mechanically looking up words, but allows him to concentrate his attention on the problems involved in translation, in the development of thought, in the literary, historical, and other problems of his author, and in various other features of the text.

There is no pedagogical value attached to the mechanical labor involved in looking up words according to the old system which, moreover, entails an enormous waste of time. According to the arrangement employed in this book, the student has constantly before him the same information which he formerly was compelled to seek elsewhere at the cost of so much labor.

This visible vocabulary system is far better than a parallel translation, since this method does not solve the problems for the student, but merely places in his hands, in the most readily accessible form, all the requisite data for making his own solutions. By thus ridding him of drudgery and by making this feature of his work lighter and more interesting, this vocabulary system helps to eliminate the improper use of translations by the student, for he now finds that he

can prepare his lesson quite as quickly and much more intelligently without a translation than he formerly could with its help.

The vocabularies of the ordinary school editions, arranged according to the old system, must give the general meaning of each word and then exhaust all the special meanings found in the whole text, and this to most students is a source of considerable confusion and loss of time. In this text the student will always have the general meaning of each word as well as the special meaning necessary for each passage. This enables him to fix the general meaning and to build up his knowledge of the special meanings as he meets them in his reading.

A number of circumstances have combined to delay the appearance of this book. By a happy coincidence it is now issued on the two thousandth anniversary of Vergil's birth, and the author is much pleased to offer this little volume in homage to the spirit of the bard of Mantua at a time when all the world is uniting to pay him tribute.

The author wishes to express his special gratitude to the late Dr. Dix Harwood, Assistant Editor of D. C. Heath and Company, for selecting the illustrations in this book, and to Professor W. L. Carr, of the University of Michigan, whose advice and assistance have been invaluable.

CLYDE PHARR

Vanderbilt University
March 4, 1930

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE	v
 INTRODUCTION	
Life of Vergil	1
The <i>Aeneid</i>	2
Vergil's Later Fame	4
The Trojan War	4
The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings	6
The Purpose of the <i>Aeneid</i>	6
The Roman Religion	6
Chronological Table of Vergil's Life	8
Bibliography of Vergil	10
 GENERAL DIRECTIONS	 11
SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS	14
 THE AENEID	
Book I	15
Book II	80
Book III	142
Book IV	197
Book V	247
Book VI	305
 GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX	 1-79
Index to Grammatical Appendix	81
 GENERAL WORD LIST	 <i>Inside Back Cover</i>



LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	FACING PAGE
PARIS BEGUILED	4
THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN	5
THE PARCAE	18
JUNO	19
JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS	28
NEPTUNE	29
JUPITER	40
MARS	41
AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE	60
DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE	61
THE TROJAN HORSE	96
LAOCOÖN AND HIS SONS	97
CASSANDRA ON THE WALLS OF TROY	100
MINERVA	101
THE FALL OF TROY	134
ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS . . .	135
THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY	198
AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT	199
A ROMAN PERISTYLE	244
THE DEATH OF DIDO	245
THE VENUS OF MELOS	276
APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE	277
THE CUMAEAN SIBYL	304
CENTAURS AND DRYAD	305



VERGIL'S AENEID
BOOKS I—VI



INTRODUCTION

Life of Vergil

1. Publius Vergilius Maro, one of the most celebrated poets of all time, was born in the little country village of Andes, near Mantua, in northern Italy, October 15, 70 B.C. His father was a small farmer; and, although a man of moderate means, he managed to give his son the equivalent of a college education. The poetically inclined youth studied at Mantua and Cremona, then at the larger city of Milan (*Mediolānum*), whence he passed to Rome and finally to Naples, where he went to complete his college course. He early developed a taste for literature and especially for philosophy, and all his life he remained a student. Very modest and retiring, even to the point of shyness, he was not fitted to take an active part in the stirring political and military events of his day.

2. After the battle of Philippi in 42 B.C., Octavian confiscated Vergil's farm and assigned it to one of his veterans. Vergil had already begun to write poetry, and his work had attracted the favorable attention of Maecenas, a close personal friend, and political adviser of the emperor. Through Maecenas Vergil met Octavian, who at once took him under his protection, compensated him for the loss of his farm, and made it possible for him to devote the rest of his life to poetry.

3. The most important of his works are known as the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*), the *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*. The *Bucolics* are short poems on pastoral themes, formed on Greek models and idealizing the life of the shepherds and herdsmen of northern Italy; the *Georgics*, also formed on Greek models, deal with the pleasures of farm life; while the *Aeneid*, a great literary epic, deals with the wanderings and adventures of Aeneas after the destruction of Troy, from which, according to tradition, he had come with a small band of followers and laid the foundations of the power which later became Rome.

4. For the last ten years of his life Vergil was occupied in writing the *Aeneid*. In the year 19 B.C. he went to Greece with the intention of spending the next three years in the East for the purpose of getting a more intimate acquaintance with the scenes depicted in his poem and of acquiring local color for his work, upon which he was putting the final touches. While in Athens he met the emperor Augustus,

who was returning to Rome from a visit in the East and who induced Vergil to accompany him. Vergil was already ill before he set sail and steadily grew worse during the voyage. Shortly after landing at Brundisium in southern Italy he died, September 21, 19 B.C., a little before his fifty-second birthday. Vergil was buried at Naples, which he had especially loved, and his tomb bore the inscription:

5. Mantua mē genuit; Calabrī rapuēre; tenet nunc
Parthenopē; cecinī pascua, rūra, ducēs,

*I was born at Mantua; died in Calabria; my bones lie in Naples;
pastures, fields, and heroes were the theme of my song.*

His untimely death left his great poem incomplete, and there are many indications of this fact in the *Aeneid*, the most marked being the unfinished verses, of which there are more than fifty.

The *Aeneid*

6. The *Aeneid* is a literary epic, modeled upon the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, from which it has drawn a great deal of its material and inspiration. The poem was undertaken at the request of Augustus. The theme, which is also said to have been suggested by Augustus, is the settlement of Aeneas in Italy, which finally led to the founding of Rome. This legend was already well established in Italy, where many of the great families took especial pride in tracing their ancestry back to Aeneas and his band of Trojan heroes. The Julian *gens*, of which Julius and Augustus Caesar were members, especially gloried in its tradition of a direct descent from Aeneas himself through Ascanius, or Iulus, as he was sometimes called. Besides this, the Romans were gradually coming to claim a Trojan origin for many of the customs, ceremonies, and institutions of their fathers. Vergil and Augustus were both interested in thus giving divine sanction and the weight of hoary antiquity to the measures which Augustus had undertaken for establishing the empire. Thus Augustus appears as the restorer of the good old days and the good old ways of the fathers. He is the promised ruler of divine descent who is to bring peace and a return of the Golden Age to the whole world. Throughout the entire poem the person and the work of Augustus are magnified, but these are made to appear as secondary and as but instruments in the hands of the gods for working out the high destiny of the Roman people. By thus stirring the feeling of Roman patriotism and pride of race as well as by constantly appealing to the sanctity and the authority of the good old days, the *Aeneid* met with an instant and a direct response from the Roman people, who were taking an ever-growing pride in the great achieve-

ments of their fathers. The success of the poem was thus assured from the first, and it has continued to exert an enormous influence upon later Roman and European literature.

7. As a piece of literature, the *Aeneid* has both the strength and weaknesses of its author and subject matter. Vergil was a weakling, usually in poor health, shy to the point of painfulness, a sentimental idealist, and little acquainted with the hard and practical ways of the stern old Roman world. He was never married and seems to have cared little or nothing for feminine society. His one great ideal of life can be summed up in the word *pietās*, *devotion*, *loyalty*, and he equips his hero Aeneas (*pius Aenēās*) with a full and overflowing measure of this quality, which finds its best expression in an unquestioned obedience to the will of the gods and to their more or less contradictory commands, no matter how much human suffering may be entailed nor how much apparent wrong may result. Vergil was born in Cisalpine Gaul, probably ineligible for Roman citizenship in his early years and possibly a member of a conquered tribe which had felt the pitiless heel of the conqueror. In any case he seems to have early developed a deep sympathy for the oppressed and for the losers in life's battle, and also a profound conviction of the sadness and sorrow of human existence and the futility of human effort in its attempts to adjust its feeble struggles to a world that is too much for it. The craving for satisfaction of a thwarted nature found its chief expression in its reliance upon the gods and their inscrutable ways as they worked out their plans for the world. In addition, he found refuge in a deep reverence for the past with its great heroes who had been so submissive to the will of the gods that they had become but puppets in carrying out the divine commands.

8. Vergil's chief claim to fame as a poet rests upon his incomparable literary style. Nettleship¹ says: "Unquestionably it was Vergil's style which more than anything else gave him his pre-eminence among Roman poets. The great power of his style lies in the haunting music of his verse, in the rhythm and fall of his language." As a close student of Greek, he had absorbed much of the best in that literature. "Not only is he fond of filling his verses with Greek forms and Greek cadences, but his lines are rich and harmonious with a new music manifold in its capacity; it is as if the sound of the Greek language had awakened a sympathetic strain in Italian. . . . Vergil not only translates but works his Greek materials into new forms." As a great artist he thoroughly loses himself in his work, but his impersonality "is not the impersonality of Homer or of Shakespeare, who simply show us the world as it stands; Vergil yearns over the spectacle which he spreads before us."

¹ *Vergil*, pp. 90-92.

Vergil's Later Fame

9. Vergil was ardently admired even in his own day, and his fame continued to increase with the passing centuries. Under the later Roman Empire the reverence for his works reached the point where the *Sortēs Vergiliānae* came into vogue; that is, the *Aeneid* was opened at random, and the first line on which the eyes fell was taken as an omen of good or evil. In the mediæval period a great circle of legends and stories of miracles gathered around his name, and the Vergil of history was transformed into the Vergil of magic. He was looked upon not only as a great magician but as an inspired pagan prophet who had foretold the birth of Christ. It was at this period that the spelling *Virgil* came into vogue, thus associating the great poet with the magic or prophetic wand, *virga*. "The mediæval world looked upon him as a poet of prophetic insight, who contained within himself all the potentialities of wisdom. He was called the *Poet*, as if no other existed; the *Roman*, as if the ideal of the commonwealth were embodied in him; the *Perfect in Style*, with whom no other writer could be compared; the *Philosopher*, who grasped the ideas of all things; the *Wise One*, whose comprehension seemed to other mortals unlimited. His writings became the Bible of the race. The mysteries of Roman priesthood, the processes of divination, the science of the stars, were all found in his works."¹ The great mediæval poets, such as Dante and Chaucer, learned much from the immortal Roman; since that time few great poets have escaped his influence, and one cannot properly estimate the course of European thought and poetic art without some knowledge of Vergil and his dominating power.

The Trojan War

10. To understand the *Aeneid*, it is necessary to be familiar with the story of the Trojan War and of the events leading up to it. According to the story, Jupiter, father and king of gods and men, once fell in love with Thetis, a beautiful sea goddess, and wished to marry her, but an oracle had foretold that the son of Thetis was to be mightier than his father. Hence Jupiter decreed that Thetis was to marry a mortal, and Peleus, a Greek king, was chosen as her husband. The wedding was a magnificent occasion, and all the gods and goddesses were invited except Eris, goddess of strife. Incensed at being thus slighted, she appeared in the midst of the festivities and spitefully threw among the assembled guests a golden apple (the famous Apple of Discord) with the inscription "To the fairest." Each of the ladies present wished to claim this prize for herself; but

¹ Tunison, *Master Vergil*, p. 156.



Alinari, Rome

Vatican Museum

PARIS BEGUILLED

In his right hand he holds the Apple of Discord,
for which the three goddesses quarreled.



Gramstorff Bros.

THE ABDUCTION OF HELEN

Rudolf von Deutsch

the contest finally narrowed down to Juno, queen of the gods; Minerva, goddess of wisdom; and Venus, goddess of love and beauty. The rivalry became very bitter, and the angry goddesses called upon Jupiter to decide; but he discreetly refused to act as judge.

So the case was finally referred to Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy or Ilium. Each of the goddesses then tried to bribe Paris. Juno offered him great wealth and unlimited power, Minerva the gift of great wisdom, while Venus promised him the most beautiful woman in the world for his wife. Paris thereupon awarded the prize to Venus and thus incurred the vindictive and unforgiving hatred of Juno and Minerva. His decision, henceforth known as the "Judgment of Paris," was the beginning of unending trouble for Paris and the Trojan people.

11. The most beautiful woman in the world at that time was Helen, daughter of Leda, and wife of Menelaüs, king of Sparta. With the help of Venus, Paris succeeded in winning Helen and eloping with her to Troy. All Greece at once arose in arms to avenge the insult of having one of their women carried off by a foreigner, and a great expedition was fitted out under Agamemnon, brother of Menelaüs, as commander-in-chief. The forces assembled at the port of Aulis in eastern Greece, but day after day the winds were unfavorable, and it was not possible for them to set sail. The Greeks consulted Calchas, the soothsayer of the expedition; and he replied that no favorable wind could be expected until they had sacrificed Iphigencia, daughter of Agamemnon, to appease the gods. The princess was duly sacrificed, thus appeasing the gods and securing a favorable voyage for the expedition.

12. Many great Greek heroes embarked on this undertaking with Agamemnon and Menelaüs. Among the most famous were the sententious Nestor, who was older, knew more, and could talk more than any other man of his time; the wily Ulysses, whose cunning was invincible; the swift-footed Achilles, the dashing young hero ever eager to do and to dare for the pure thrill of the excitement and the love of adventure; the mighty Ajax, whose enormous strength was accompanied by a correspondingly dull wit; another Ajax, son of Oileus, who was ever eager to grab his part of the spoils; the mighty Diomedes, who dared to fight against the very gods on the field of battle. There were also many other Greek heroes who were eager to distinguish themselves in such a noble undertaking and to get their share of the booty, when they should succeed in capturing the rich city of Troy. Among the Trojan warriors who opposed the Greeks were the dauntless Hector, eldest son of Priam and the noblest of all the warriors before Troy; the jaunty Paris who was fighting mightily to keep Helen; and the faithful Aeneas, the son of Venus and Anchises.

The Fall of Troy and Aeneas's Wanderings

13. For ten long years the siege lasted with varying fortunes, although the Greeks had a slight advantage, owing to the fact that more of the gods were fighting on their side than on that of the Trojans. Juno and Minerva were especially helpful to the Greeks, since they had both developed an undying hatred against all the Trojans, because of the evident unfairness of Trojan Paris in awarding the beauty prize to their hated rival, Venus.

14. Through the stratagem of the wooden horse, fully described in the second book of the *Aeneid*, Troy was finally captured and destroyed. Most of the inhabitants were either killed or dragged away into slavery; but a remnant, under the leadership of Aeneas, succeeded in escaping. After long wanderings and much hardship they finally reached Italy, where they settled and established their rule over the uncivilized natives. This settlement finally resulted in the founding of Rome, which gradually extended its sway and established the Roman Empire, with Augustus at its head in the days of Vergil.

The Purpose of the *Aeneid*

15. One of the results which both Augustus and Vergil hoped to see effected with the help of the *Aeneid* was a revival of faith in the old-time religion. The educated Romans of the day were becoming quite blasé and sophisticated and were gradually losing the faith of their fathers with its simple, unquestioning reliance on the infallible wisdom of the gods and their helpful interference in human affairs.

The Roman Religion

16. The machinery of this religion was quite elaborate. Before their acquaintance with Greek culture the Romans had developed a religion of their own, with a number of departmental divinities, each having charge of some general field in human experience, the boundaries of which were never very clearly defined. Hence there was a considerable overlapping of authority, with a consequent confusion in the divine government. With the coming of Greek culture, no radical change was effected in the general conceptions, but the Romans took over a vast mass of Greek stories about the gods and the deeds of divine and semidivine characters. In most cases the Roman names of the various divinities were retained, and they were simply identified with the corresponding Greek deities with their elaborate system of mythology. Thus the Greek father of gods and men, Zeus, was identified with the Roman Jupiter, Hera with Juno,

Athena with Minerva, Aphrodite with Venus, Hermes with Mercury, Poseidon with Neptune, Hephaestus with Vulcan, etc. In addition to these common features, the Roman religion had certain characteristic divinities and conceptions of its own before the coming of Greek culture, and these were retained.

17. In speaking then of the religious ideas embodied in the *Aeneid*, we are dealing primarily with the Greco-Roman religion, to which are added certain Roman features not belonging to the Greek system.

18. At the head of the Roman system of religion stood Jupiter, father and king of gods and men. He was the god of heaven who gathered the storm clouds and hurled the lightning. His sign was the thunderbolt, and the eagle was his messenger. Apollo was the great god of light and the foe of all darkness and evil. He was the ideal of manly beauty and the patron of music, prophecy, poetry, and medicine. Mars was the brutal and bloody god of war and of battles. Vulcan, god of fire, supervised the working of metals and all useful and mechanical arts. Mercury with his winged sandals and his magic wand was the messenger and the herald of the gods. He was also god of inventions, trade, and commerce. Bacchus was the god of wine and master of revelry. Neptune, brother of Jupiter, was god of all the seas and waters of the earth. Juno, wife of Jupiter and queen of the gods, presided over the life of women and especially over the rites of marriage. Minerva was goddess of wisdom and of the arts and handicrafts, especially of female handicrafts. Diana, sister of Apollo, was the divinity of the moonlight, goddess of the woods, and mistress of the chase. Venus, born of the sea foam near Cythera, was goddess of love and beauty. Ceres, goddess of grain, presided over seedtime and harvest. Vesta, the goddess of the household fire, presided over hearth and home and the sanctities of family life. Pluto or Dis, with his queen Proserpina, ruled over the lower world and the souls of the dead.

19. In addition to these greater divinities, there were many minor deities, such as the beautiful feminine nymphs who haunted every fountain, stream, mountain, or sea, and their masculine counterparts, the homely satyrs, who frequented the forests, fields, and mountains. The Fates presided over human destinies, while the Furies avenged such crimes as murder and sacrilege. Among the great number of lesser deities and spirits were such personified qualities as Fortune, Concord, and Peace.

20. In addition to these gods and goddesses may be mentioned Janus, the two-faced god of beginnings and of gateways, and the household deities, the lares and penates, who along with Vesta, goddess of the hearth, formed the center of the family worship. These household deities were worshiped each day at the family

meal. When the household sat down to dinner, a little of the food was thrown into the flames of the fire on the hearth, and a little wine was poured out as an offering to the household gods. The images of the lares and penates would also be brought from their shrine and placed on the table to insure their presence at the meal.

21. Special veneration was also shown to the spirits of the dead. These were called *manes*, meaning "the pure ones," and they were always looked upon as guardian deities of the family. These manes, or souls of the departed, were supposed to live a shadowy sort of existence in the lower world, sometimes returning to haunt the grave where they had been buried: for, unless the body were properly interred, the soul could not at once enter the realm of the lower world and find a permanent resting place, but must wander unhappily around for a hundred years, as a source of torment and of terror to the living. Hence the great importance of the proper burial rites and the great care bestowed upon these ceremonials by the Romans.

22. It was believed that the gods indicated their purposes to men by means of signs and omens, such as dreams, thunder and lightning, an eclipse of the sun, a blazing comet, the flight of birds, or the peculiar appearance of the entrails of animals offered for sacrifice. The gods were also thought to deliver special communications at sacred places known as "oracles." The most famous of these was that of Apollo at Delphi. Here stood a temple of Apollo over a cleft in the rock, and over this cleft, in the dark inner recesses of the temple, was placed a tripod containing a seat for the priestess or Pythia, who delivered the oracles. Other famous oracles were those at Delos, at Cumae, and in the Libyan desert.

23. The old Roman religion was of an intensely practical nature and busied itself with the everyday life of the people. As each household was bound together by the tie of a common worship, so all the citizens were held together by a common reverence for the divinities and powers who protected and guided the state. The Roman religion thus formed an indispensable bond of union for the family as well as the nation.

24. Chronological Table of Vergil's Life

B.C.

70 Birth of Vergil. First consulship of Pompey and Crassus.

Trial of Verres.

Birth of Gallus.

65 Birth of Horace.

63 Birth of Octavius (afterward called Octavian, and still later called Augustus Caesar). Consulship of Cicero. Catiline's conspiracy. Annexation of Syria.

60 First Triumvirate of Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus.

59 Consulship of Caesar.

- 58 Cicero exiled. Caesar begins conquest of Gaul. Vergil is sent to school at Cremona.
- 57 Cicero recalled.
- 56 Conference of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey at Luca, and renewal of the First Triumvirate.
- 55 Vergil assumes the *toga virilis*. Death of Lucretius.
Second consulship of Pompey and Crassus. Caesar invades Britain.
- 54 Vergil attends college at Milan. Death of Catullus.
- 53 Vergil attends the university at Rome, taking special courses in philosophy and literature. The Parthians defeat and kill Crassus at Carrhae, capturing the Roman standards.
- 52 Revolt of Vercingetorix.
Pompey sole consul. Cicero's speech *Pro Milone*.
- 51 Cicero proconsul of Cilicia.
- 49 Caesar confers Roman citizenship on the inhabitants of Gallia Trānspadāna.
- 49-46 Civil war between Caesar and the senatorial faction led by Pompey.
- 48 Battle of Pharsalia: Caesar defeats Pompey and the senatorial faction.
- 48-47 The Alexandrine war.
- 47 War with Pharnaces.
- 46 Battle of Thapsus.
- 45 Battle of Munda, marking the final overthrow of the senatorial faction.
- 44 Assassination of Julius Caesar.
- 44-43 War at Mutina. Cicero's *Philippics*.
- 43 Octavian consul. Second Triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus. Assassination of Cicero. Birth of Ovid. Vergil begins the composition of the *Eclogues*.
- 42 Battle of Philippi. Overthrow of Brutus and Cassius.
- 41 War at Perusia. Confiscations of the Triumvirs. Vergil's farm lost; his friendship with Maecenas.
- 40 Consulship of Asinius Pollio. Treaty of Brundisium. Octavian compensates Vergil for the loss of his farm.
- 39 Treaty of Misenum. Vergil introduces Horace to Maecenas.
- 38 Vergil and Horace accompany Maecenas to Brundisium.
- 37 Vergil publishes his *Eclogues* (*Bucolics*), and begins work on his *Georgics*. Treaty of Tarentum. Second Triumvirate renewed. Phraates becomes king of Parthia.
- 36 Defeat of Sextus Pompey. Lepidus deposed as Triumvir. Parthian War.
- 33 Phraates attacks Media and Armenia.
- 31 Battle of Actium: Octavian completely overthrows Antony and Cleopatra. Octavian visits the East.
- 30 Death of Antony and Cleopatra. Annexation of Egypt. Settlement of the East by Octavian.
- 29 The *Georgics* published. The *Aeneid* begun. Octavian returns from the East and celebrates a triple triumph. The temple of Janus closed.
- 27 The titles of *Princeps* and *Augustus* conferred by the senate upon Octavian, who is henceforth known as Augustus Caesar. Death of Gallus.
- 26 Augustus in Spain. He corresponds with Vergil.
- 25 Annexation of Galatia. Propertius' *Cynthia*.
- 23 Death of Marcellus. Vergil recites portions of the *Aeneid* before Augustus and Octavia. Horace publishes the first three books of his *Odes*.
- 20 Expedition of Augustus to the East. The Parthians restore to the Romans the standards captured from Crassus at Carrhae in 53.
- 19 Vergil goes to Greece, returns with Augustus, and dies at Brundisium. Death of Tibullus. Horace publishes the first book of his *Epistles*.

25.

Bibliography of Vergil

The following books will be found helpful and desirable in the library of any high school where Vergil is being studied:

Harper's *Classical Dictionary*. American Book.

Harper's *Latin Dictionary*. American Book.

Glover's *Virgil*. Macmillan.

Wetmore's *Index Vergilianus*. Yale University Press.

Prescott's *Development of Vergil's Art*. University of Chicago Press.

Gayley's *Classic Myths*. Ginn.

Sellar's *Roman Poets of the Augustan Age; Virgil*. Oxford University Press.

The article on Virgil in the *Encyclopedia Britannica*, or in any other good encyclopedia.

Conington's *Works of Virgil*, with commentary, in three volumes. George Bell & Sons, London.

Tyrrell's *Latin Poetry*. Ginn.

Some one or more good histories of Rome, such as that of Boak (Macmillan) or that of Frank (Holt).

Comparetti's *Vergil in the Middle Ages*. Macmillan.

Mackail's *Vergil and his Meaning for the World of Today*. Longmans, Green.

The following verse translations may be recommended: Dryden, Conington, William Morris, Rhoades, Billson, E. Fairfax Taylor, T. C. Williams, Ballard.

The following books are very desirable for those who read German:

Norden, *Das sechste Buch der Aeneis*.

Heinze, *Virgils epische Technik*.

The edition of Servius's *Latin Commentary on Vergil* (edited by Thilo and Hagen) is indispensable for any thorough understanding of Vergil's poems and should be in the hands of every one who wishes to do any scholarly work in this field.

GENERAL DIRECTIONS

This book, with its visible vocabulary system, is so arranged that the complete vocabulary of any given passage is constantly before the reader.

In beginning the work of a given lesson, the student should open the book at the passage to be studied, and unfold the extensible sheet at the back of the book.

The reader will find two varieties of type employed in the Latin text, roman (ordinary light-faced) and italics. Words printed in roman type in the text are to be found in the vocabulary at the foot of a given page. Those printed in italics in the text will be found on the extensible sheet at the back of the book. The list of the italicized words of the text, which represent the most common words in the author, should be mastered as early as possible.

A dagger (†) after a word in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of this word in the work of the author being studied; an asterisk (*) after a word in the vocabulary indicates that it appears ten times or more in the work which is being read. Teachers who wish to give special vocabulary drills will find in the list at the back of the book and in the words followed by an asterisk perhaps the most valuable and the least wasteful of any material which may be available for their purpose.

This book may be employed with good results in a variety of ways, a few of which are here suggested as possibilities:

(1) It may be used as any other Latin text is commonly studied; that is, the teacher may assign a definite amount of work at each recitation, and the students may prepare this assignment and recite on it at the next meeting of the class. This is probably the least desirable method of studying any language.

(2) A much better method is to spend at least half of the recitation period in sight reading. The students should begin by quickly looking over the words followed by a dagger (†) in the vocabulary at the bottom of each page, and then be prepared to read. The teacher should never translate for them, but should give them an occasional hint or a question with respect to a form or a construction, and should make very brief comments on points that may appear obscure. In this way the students should usually cover the advanced lesson in class, so that their additional preparation would

primarily consist in a review or elaboration of the work already done in class under the direction of the teacher.

(3) A still more satisfactory method is, however, to arrange for twice as much time for class meeting as has been customary. The whole of this time should be spent working on the text under the direct supervision of the teacher, and should be devoted primarily to sight reading. The work of the students outside the class meeting should consist in a limited amount of supplementary reading and in a continual review of the grammar, both forms and syntax, as found in the grammatical appendix of this book. Since little or no outside preparation would be required, such a course should have no more credit than the ordinary type which meets the customary number of hours a week. Schools which can arrange their schedule on this basis will find their students making much more satisfactory progress and developing much more enthusiasm for their work.

NOTE TO THE STUDENT: For the meaning of the signs and abbreviations see page 14. The Latin dedication on page iii may be translated: *With pleasure the author dedicates this little book to the divine spirit of the prophet-poet Vergil in appreciation of his worth.*



SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

<i>abl.</i> = ablative	<i>instr.</i> = instrumental
<i>abs.</i> = absolute	<i>interj.</i> = interjection
<i>acc.</i> = accusative	<i>interrog.</i> = interrogative
<i>act.</i> = active	<i>intr.</i> = intransitive
<i>adj.</i> = adjective	<i>Introd.</i> = the Introduction of this book
<i>adv.</i> = adverb, adverbial	<i>l.</i> = line; <i>ll.</i> = lines
<i>advers.</i> = adversative	<i>lit.</i> = literal, literally
<i>App.</i> = the Grammatical Appendix in this book	<i>loc.</i> = locative
<i>appos.</i> = apposition, appositive	<i>m., masc.</i> = masculine
<i>asynd.</i> = asyndeton	<i>n., neut.</i> = neuter
<i>cf.</i> = Latin <i>cōfer</i> , i.e. <i>compare</i>	<i>neg.</i> = negative
<i>char.</i> = characteristic	<i>nom.</i> = nominative
<i>coll.</i> = collective	<i>num.</i> = numeral
<i>compar.</i> = comparative	<i>obj.</i> = object, objective
<i>condit.</i> = condition, conditional	<i>opt.</i> = optative
<i>conj.</i> = conjunction	<i>part.</i> = participle, partitive
<i>constr.</i> = construction	<i>pass.</i> = passive
<i>dat.</i> = dative	<i>perf.</i> = perfect
<i>dem.</i> = demonstrative	<i>pers.</i> = personal
<i>dep.</i> = deponent	<i>pl.</i> = plural
<i>dim.</i> = diminutive	<i>pluperf.</i> = pluperfect
<i>e.g.</i> = Latin <i>exempli grātiā</i> , i.e. <i>for example</i>	<i>poss.</i> = possessive
<i>esp.</i> = especial, especially	<i>pred.</i> = predicate
<i>f., fem.</i> = feminine	<i>prep.</i> = preposition
<i>fig.</i> = figurative, figuratively	<i>pres.</i> = present
<i>freq.</i> = frequentative	<i>pron.</i> = pronoun
<i>fut.</i> = future	<i>ref.</i> = reference
<i>gen.</i> = genitive	<i>reflex.</i> = reflexive
<i>hist.</i> = historical	<i>rel.</i> = relative
<i>i.e.</i> = Latin <i>id est</i> , that is	<i>sc.</i> = Latin <i>scilicet</i> , i.e. <i>supply, understand</i>
<i>imp.</i> = imperative	<i>sing.</i> = singular
<i>imperf.</i> = imperfect	<i>spec.</i> = specification
<i>impers.</i> = impersonal, impersonally	<i>subj.</i> = subject, subjective, subjunctive
<i>indecl.</i> = indeclinable	<i>subst.</i> = substantive
<i>indef.</i> = indefinite	<i>sup.</i> = superlative
<i>indic.</i> = indicative	<i>temp.</i> = temporal
<i>indir.</i> = indirect	<i>tr.</i> = transitive, transitively
<i>inf.</i> = infinitive	<i>voc.</i> = vocative
	<i>vol.</i> = volitive

* the asterisk in the vocabulary shows that the Latin word appears ten or more times in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

† the dagger in the vocabulary indicates the first appearance of the Latin word in Books I–VI of the *Aeneid*.

(1), this numeral after a Latin word in the vocabulary indicates that the word is a verb of the first conjugation and is to be inflected as *amō, āre, āvi, ātus, love, cherish*.

All Latin words in the notes and vocabularies are in bold face type. All definitions in the vocabularies are in roman (light face). All translations in the notes are in italics. All explanatory matter in the vocabularies is in italics.

THE AENEID

BOOK I

*ARMA virumque canō, Trojae quī prīmus ab ōris
Ītaliā fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit
lītora*— *multūm ille* et terrīs jactātus et altō
vī superum, saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob iram,

altum, *i n.* the deep (sea)†
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,
proclaim†*
jactō (1) toss, buffet†*
Lāvin(i)us, a, um Lavinian, of Lavinium†

memor, oris mindful, remembering, un-
forgetting†*
ob on account of (*acc.*)†
profugus, a, um exiled, fugitive†
saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce†*

1-7. The theme of the poem, namely, the wanderings and wars of Aeneas, who after many struggles laid the foundation for the greatness of future Rome, in accordance with the decrees of fate.

From the more extended introduction to the poem (lines 1-33) we learn: (1) the plan of the poet to describe the adventures of his hero, as is done in the *Odyssey*, and to depict wars and battles, as does the *Iliad*; (2) the deep religious conviction of the author, for whom the gods rule over all mortal affairs; (3) the national pride of the poet, found in his choice of material, and which later comes to its clearest expression in l. 33.

1. **Arma virumque**: the theme of the *Aeneid*; **arma** stands by metonymy for *deeds of arms, wars*, referring to the wars in which Aeneas engaged, both in Troy and in Italy; **virum** refers to Aeneas, so well known that he is not mentioned by name until l. 92. **Trojae**: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. **qui prīmus ab ōris Trojae** (ad) **Ītaliā vēnit**. This refers to Aeneas as the *first* of the Trojans to come to Italy after their native city Troy had been captured, sacked, and destroyed by the Greeks in the Trojan war. Strictly speaking, the Trojan Antenor had preceded him, but Antenor's arrival was of no great consequence and did not have the far-reaching

results that the coming of Aeneas had. Compare the discovery of America by Leif Ericson with that by Columbus.

2-3. (ad, in) **Ītaliā**, (ad, in) **lītora**: acc. of place to which; App. 315. **fātō**: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332; "such was the will of heaven." **Lāvin(i)a**: of *Lavinium*, an ancient city on the western coast of Italy, near the spot where Rome was later founded. Lavinium was reputed to have been the first Trojan settlement in Italy and to have been named for Lavinia, an Italian princess whom Aeneas married. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus, king of the Latins.

3. **multum**: with adverbial force, modifying **jactātus**. **ille**: Aeneas, the **virum** of l. 1. (in) **terrīs**, et (in) **altō**: abl. of place where; App. 319. **jactātus** (est).

4. **vī**: abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. **superum** = **superōrum**, gen. pl., of the gods above. **memorem**: a transferred epithet, logically belonging to **Jūnōnis**, but poetically applied to **iram**. **saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob iram**: an example of what is known as "interlocked order," **saevae** modifying **Jūnōnis**, and **memorem** modifying **iram**. This order is often found in Latin poetry. **Jūnōnis ob iram**: the reasons for Juno's hatred of Aeneas and the Trojans are given by Vergil in ll. 12-28.

Before beginning work read the General Directions, page 11.

- 5 *multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem*
inferretque deōs Latīō — genus unde Latīnum
Albānique patrēs atque) altae moenia Rōmae.

Mūsa, mihi causās memorā, quō nūmine laesō
quidve dolēns rēgina deūm tōt volvere cāsūs

- 10 *Insignem pietāte virum, tot adire labōrēs*
impulerit. Tantaen(e) animīs caelestibus irae?

Urbs antiqua fuit (Tyrū tenuere colōni)

adeō, ire, ii (īvi), itus approach, encounter†

Albānus, a, um Alban, of Alba Longa in central Italy, mother city of Rome†
 caelestis, e divine, heavenly†

causa, ae f. reason, cause†*

colōnus, i m. colonist, settler†

condō, ere, didi, ditus found, establish†*

doleō, ēre, uī, itus suffer, grieve (at), be angry (at, with), resent†

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus strike (against), drive, force†

inferō, ferre, tuli, latus bring (into)†

insignis, e distinguished, marked, splendid†*

laedō, ere, si, sus strike, hurt, offend, thwart†

Latinus, a, um Latin, of Latium†

Latium, (i)ī n. district of central Italy around Rome†*

memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate†*

Mūsa, ae f. Muse, goddess of the liberal arts†

patior, i, passus suffer, endure†*

pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, sense of duty†*

quoque also†*

Rōma, ae f. Rome, a city and empire†

tot so many†*

unde whence, from which source†*

5-6. conderet, inferret: purpose; App. 374.

5. urbem: Lavinium. passus (est Aenēās). (in) bellō: abl. of place; App. 319; referring to the enemies whom he had to conquer after landing in Italy. multa: cognate accusative with passus; App. 307, 313.

6. inferret deōs: App. 374; in antiquity migrating peoples regularly carried with them their gods, either as images or other sacred symbols; see ll. 68 and 378. Latīō: dat. of direction = ad (in) Latium; App. 306. unde genus Latinum (est): Roman legends traced the origin of the Latin race, of the kingdom of Alba Longa (forerunner of Rome), and of the founding of Rome, back to the coming of the Trojans under Aeneas to Italy.

7. (unde) Albāni patrēs (sunt): in Roman times many of the noble senatorial families took much pride in tracing their ancestry back to Troy, through the great families of Alba Longa. patrēs: with the first syllable short; App. 17. altae: may refer either to position, situated on the (seven) high hills, or to the power and prestige of lofty (mighty) Rome.

8-11. Invocation of the Muse.

8. Mūsa: it is the custom of epic poets to invoke the muse for inspiration and to

assign to some such divine source the gift of being able to compose their poems. mihi: this word in poetry may have the final i either long or short. The same is true of tibi, sibi, ubi, and ibi. quō nūmine (Jūnōnis) laesō: abl. abs. or abl. of cause; App. 332, 343.

9. quidve dolēns: or vexed at what. rēgina de(ōr)um: Juno as Jupiter's wife was queen of the gods. cāsūs: object of volvere.

10. virum = Aenēās, subject of volvere, which depends upon impulerit. pietāte: dependent on insignem; the most prominent characteristic of Aeneas was his pietās, loyalty or devotion to duty.

11. impulerit: subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349, 350. Tantaene = suntne tantae irae caelestibus animis? animis: dat. of possession; App. 299. irae: poetic plural, often employed in Latin where English would ordinarily use the singular.

12-33. Reasons for the wrath of Juno against Aeneas and the Trojans.

12. Urbs antiqua fuit: according to the tradition which Vergil here follows. Carthage was in fact founded some four hundred years later than the traditional date of the fall of Troy, 1184 B.C. Tyrīi: from Tyre, a city of Phoenicia,

Karthāgō) *Italiam* contrā *Tiberinaque* longē
 ōstia, dives opum studiisque *asperrima* bellī;
 quam *Jūnō* fertur terris magis omnibus unam
 posthabita coluisse Samō: hīc illius arma,
 hīc currus fuit; hōc rēgnū dea gentibus esse,
 sī quā fāta sinant, jam tum tenditque fovetque.
 Prōgeniem sed enim Trōjānō) a sanguine dūcī
 audierat Tyriās ōlim quāe verteret arcēs;

asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce†
 colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, dwell (in),
 honor, cherish†

contrā opposite, facing (acc.)†
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car†

di(ve)s, di(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†
 enim for, indeed, in truth†

foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtus cherish, fondle†
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, great com-
 mercial city in North Africa, rival of
 Rome†

longē far (off), at a distance†

magis more, rather†

ōlim (at) some time, once†

ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth†
 ōstium, (i) *n.* mouth, entrance†

posthabeō, ēre, uī, itus place after, esteem
 less†

prōgeniēs, ēi *f.* offspring, race†

quā in any (some) way, where†

Samos, i *f.* island of the Aegean, center of
 the worship of Juno†

sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow†

studium, (i) *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit†

Tiberinus, a, um of the Tiber, an Italian
 river on which Rome is situated†

Trōjānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy†
 vertō, ere, i, rsus (over)turn, change†

whence Carthage was said to have been
 settled. The Phoenicians were the great
 traders of their time, and Carthage on the
 northern shore of Africa midway on the
 Mediterranean occupied a strategic posi-
 tion for controlling the commerce of
 these regions. *tenuēre*: shorter form for
tenuērunt; App. 204, 4.

13. *longē*: modifying *contrā*, which
 governs both *Italiam* and *Tiberina*
ōstia.

14. *ōstia*: see note on *irae*, l. 11. The
 general expression, *Italiam*, is followed
 by the more specific *Tiberina* *ōstia* for
 the sake of greater clearness and vividness.

opum: *gen.* with the adjective *dives*,
rich in resources; App. 287. *studiis*: *abl.*
 of respect, depends on *asperrima*; App.
 325. This phrase would remind the
 Romans of their bitter struggles with
 Carthage in the three Punic Wars.

15. *quam*: refers to *urbis*, l. 12, and
 is object of *coluisse*. *fertur*: *is said*, a
 common meaning. *terris omnibus* =
terris aliis; *terris* is *abl.* with compar-
 ative *magis*; App. 327. *unam* = *sōlam*,
 as often.

16. *posthabita Samō*: *abl.* *bs.*; App.
 343. Juno greatly loved Samos, an
 island off the western coast of Asia
 Minor. According to the myth, the
 goddess had been reared in Samos, had
 married Jupiter there, and one of her

temples, one of the most famous in
 the world, was situated there. *Samō*: the
 final vowel is not elided, although the
 following word begins with an *h*. This
 failure to elide is called *hiatus*; App. 399.
illius (Jūnōnis): the *i* of the genitive
 ending of the nine pronouns and adjectives
 ending in *ius* is usually long, but
 often short in poetry as here. *arma (fu-*
ērunt): doubtless refers to ancient arms,
 chariot, and other relics preserved in
 Juno's temple at Samos.

16-17. *hic, hic, hoc*: repeated for em-
 phasis; this repetition is called *anaph-*
ora; App. 413. *hoc*: refers to *urbis* l.
 12, but is attracted to the case of the
 predicate noun *rēgnū*, *the ruling power*.
Jūnō dea jam tum tenditque fovetque
hanc urbem (Karthāginem) esse rēgnū
omnibus gentibus, sed fāta voluērunt
Rōmam esse hoc rēgnū. gentibus: *dat.*
 of reference; App. 301.

18. *quā (viā)*: *abl.* of manner; *quā* is
 an indef. pron. *fāta*: the power of the
 fates was greater even than that of the
 gods.

19. *Prōgeniem*: the Romans. *dūcī*:
was being derived, indir. disc.; App. 390;
 depends on *audi(v)erat* (l. 20), of which
 Juno is the subject understood.

20. *Tyriās arcēs = Karthāginem*.
verteret: subj. of characteristic; App.
 389, or rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

hinc populū lātē rēgē bellōque superbum
ventūrum excidiō Libyae: sic vōlvēre Parcās.
 Id metuēns vērēisq̄e mēmōr Sātūrnīa bellī,
 prīmā quōd ad Trojā prō cāris gesserat Argīs
 (necdām etiā causae irātūm saevīque dolōrēs
 exciderānt animō; manet altā mēte repōstum
 iūdicium Paridis sprētaeq̄e) injūria formae
 et genus invisum et rapti Ganymēdis honōrēs) —

Argi, ōrum *m.* Argos, a city in Greece,
 center of the worship of Juno; Greece†
 cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved†
 causa, ae *f.* reason, cause*
 dolor, ōris *m.* pain, grief, anger, pas-
 sion†*
 etiā besides, also, event†*
 excidium, (i)ī *n.* destruction, overthrow†
 excidiō, ere, i fall from, perish†
 forma, ae *f.* beauty, shape, form†*
 Ganymēdes, is *m.* son of Laomedon,
 king of Troy; carried off by Jupiter's
 eagle and made cupbearer to the gods†
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wage†*
 injūria, ae *f.* wrong, insult, injustice†
 invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious†
 iūdicium, (i)ī *n.* decision, judgment†
 lātē widely, far and wide†
 Libya, ae *f.* region of North Africa†*

memor, oris remembering, mindful, un-
 forgetting (*gen.*)*
 metuō, ere, ui fear, dread†
 necdum not yet, nor yet†
 Parcae, ārum *f.* the Fates†
 Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, son of
 Priam, eloped with Helen and thus
 caused the Trojan War†
 populus, i *m.* people, nation†*
 prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)†*
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (up), plunder†*
 repōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus put (back,
 away), store up†*
 saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce*
 Sātūrnīa, ae *f.* Juno, daughter of Saturn,
 father of the gods†
 spernō, ere, sprēvi, sprētus despise, reject†
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty†*
 vetus, eris old, former, ancient†*

21. *hinc*: ā Trojānō sanguine, or ab hāc
 prōgeniē. populū: subj. of ventūrum
 (esse) (*l.* 22), an inf. in indir. disc., de-
 pending on audierat; App. 390. rēgē:
 used like a participle (rēgnantem) here,
 and modified by lātē. bellō: *abl.* of
 respect, depending on superbum; App.
 325.

22. excidiō: *dat.* of purpose; App. 303;
 for the destruction. Libyae: for Africae,
 meaning especially Karthāgini. Parcās =
 fāta: subject of vōlvēre. The Parcae
 were represented as three sisters, Clotho
 (Spinner), who spun the thread of life for
 each mortal; Lachesis (Measurer), who
 measured the thread; and Atropos (In-
 evitable), who cut the thread when any
 one had reached his allotted days.

"Somewhere on an unknown shore,
 Where the rivers of life their waters pour,
 Sit three sisters forevermore,
 Spinning a silver thread."

sic (Jūnō audiverat) Parcās vōlvēre.

23. Id: the destined supremacy of
 Rome and overthrow of Carthage (*ll.*
 19-22). metuēns: modifies Sātūrnīa
 (Jūnō) and has Id as object. Sātūrnīa:

Saturn's daughter, subject of arcēbat.
 veteris belli: the Trojan War.

24. prima: (*as*) chief, leader, foremost,
 modifies ea (understood), which refers
 to Juno. The goddess had taken a leading
 part in assisting the Greeks against the
 Trojans. The reasons for her hatred of
 the Trojans are given in *ll.* 27-28. See
 also Intro. 10. cāris Argis: Argos, a
 noted center of the worship of Juno,
 stands here for all Greece and the Greeks.

25. irārūm: poetic plural; see note on
 irae (*l.* 11).

26. (ex) animō: *abl.* of separation;
 App. 340. (in) altā mente: *abl.* of place
 where, in her deep mind, i.e., deep in
 her mind; App. 319. repos(i)tum: the
 longer form, with its three successive
 short syllables (vvv), could not be used
 in hexameter verse.

27. iūdicium Paridis: refers to the
 famous Judgment of Paris. Read Tenny-
 son's *Oenone*, and see Intro. 10 for the
 story. . . . etae formae: appositional *gen.*
 with injūria; App. 231; the insult to
 her slighted beauty, shown by the adverse
 decision of Paris.

28. genus invisum: Juno hated the



Alinari, Rome

THE PARCAE

Michelangelo



Alinari, Rome

JUNO

Vatican Museum

hīs accēnsa super jactātōs aequore tōtō
Trōas, reliquiās Danaū, atque immītis Achillī, 30
arcēbat lōngē Latiō, mūltōsque per annōs
errābant actī fātis maris omnia circum.
Tantae mōlis erat Rōmānām cōdere gētem.
Vix ē cōspectū Siculae tellūris, in altum
vēla dabant laeti et spūmās salis aere ruēbant, 35

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, enrage†
 Achillēs, is (i) *m.* Greek leader before
 Troy†*
 aes, aeris *n.* bronze†*
 altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea)
 annus, ī *m.* year†*
 arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend, restrain†
 condō, ere, didī, ditus found, estab-
 lish*
 cōspectus, ūs *m.* sight, view†
 immītis, e fierce, cruel†
 jactō (1) toss, buffet*

Latium, (i) ī *n.* district of central Italy
 around Rome*
 longē far (off), afar*
 mōlēs, is *f.* mass, burden, difficulty†*
 re(1)liquiae, ārum *f.* rest, remnant(s),
 leaving(s)†
 Rōmānus, a, um of Rome, Roman†*
 sal, salis *n. (m.)* salt (water), sea†
 Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily, a large
 island south of Italy†
 spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray†
 Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan†*

whole Trojan race, partly because of
 Paris, but also because Dardanus, the
 founder of the Trojans, was the son of
 Electra, her hated rival. **Ganymēdis:** a
 royal Trojan youth, brother of Priam,
 snatched up (rapti) by an eagle into
 heaven, where he was beloved by Jupiter,
 who made him his cupbearer, instead of
 Juno's own daughter, Hebe.

29. hīs: abl. of means or cause; App.
 331, 332; dependent on *accēnsa*, and re-
 ferring to the three chief causes of Juno's
 hatred which have just been mentioned
 in ll. 26-28. *accēnsa* (Jūnō). *super:* ad-
 verb, too, also, i.e., in addition to her
 fears for Carthage. (in) *aequore tōtō:*
 abl. of place where; App. 319.

30. Trōas: a Greek form; acc. pl. of
 Trōs. *re(1)liquiās:* sometimes spelled
 with *ll*, as here, making the first syllable
 long so that the word may be used in
 hexameter verse. *Dana(ōr)um, Achilli:*
 subjective genitives, the leavings (rem-
 nants) of the Greeks and of Achilles, i.e.,
 those Trojans whom the Greeks and
 Achilles had allowed to escape.

31. arcēbat: the imperfect of con-
 tinued action; App. 351, 2. (ā) *Latiō:*
 separation; App. 340. *lōngē Latiō:* note
 the repetition of the letter *l*; such a
 repetition is called *alliteration*; App. 411.
Alliteration, or the recurrence of the
 same sounds in successive syllables or
 words, is found in all languages, especially
 in early verse. It is a special character-
 istic of early Germanic poetry, nearly all
 Old English verse being alliterative.

32. (Trōes) errābant. fātis: abl. of
 means. *actī:* participle of *agō*, modifies
 Trōes understood. *maria omnia circum:*
 in poetry the preposition is often placed
 after its noun, as here. This is called
anastrophe; App. 414.

33. Tantae mōlis: gen. of quality in
 the predicate; App. 285, a.; of so great
 effort was it. This line, summarizing the
 preceding lines, forms a powerful and
 effective close to this first section of the
Aeneid and serves as a general intro-
 duction to the whole poem.

34-49. Aeneas and the Trojans set
 sail from Sicily for Italy, as they hope,
 happy at the prospect of the end of their
 wanderings. Bitter soliloquy of Juno,
 who chafes at the apparent failure of her
 plans to keep Aeneas and the Trojans
 from reaching Italy.

34. The reader is now plunged in
mediās rēs: "into the midst of the ac-
 tion," and we are abruptly introduced
 to Aeneas and his followers sailing away
 from the coast of Sicily. They have now
 been wandering for seven years since the
 destruction of Troy, their native city.
 These earlier events (the fall of Troy and
 their seven years of wandering) are later
 on narrated by Aeneas to Dido (Books
 II and III).

35. laeti (Trōes): subject of *dabant*.
spūmās salis aere ruēbant: note the
 alliteration; App. 411. *aere:* the prows
 of the ships were sheathed with bronze.

cūm Jūnō aeternum servāns sub pectore vulnus
 haec sēcum: "Mēne inceptō dēsistere viclām
 nec posse Italiā Teucrōrum āvertere rēgem?
 Quippe vetor fātis. Pallasne exūrere classem
 Argivum atque ipsōs potuī sum̄mergere pontō
 ūnius ob noxam et furiās Ajācis Oilēi?
 Ipsa Jovis rapidum jaculātā ē nūbibus ignem
 disjēcitque ratēs ēvertitque aequora vēntis,
 illum expirāntem trānsfixō pectore flāmmās

aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting†*

Ajāx, ācis m. Greek leader, who in the sack of Troy had torn Priam's daughter, Cassandra, from the sanctuary of Minerva†*

Argivus, a, um Argive, Greek†
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus keep off, turn aside†*
 dēsistō, ere, stitī, stitus cease (from), desist†

disjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus scatter, disperse†

ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn†
 expirō (1) breathe out, exhale†
 exūrō, ere, ussī, ustus burn (up)†

furiāe, ārum f. madness, rage†
 inceptum, ī n. beginning, undertaking, purpose†

jaculor, āri, ātus hurl, throw†
 noxa, ae f. crime, fault, hurt, harm†
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog†*
 ob on account of (acc.)

Oileus, ei m. Greek king, father of Ajax†
 Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts†

pontus, ī m. sea†*
 quippe truly, indeed, surely, forsooth†
 rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming†

ratis, is f. raft, ship†*
 summergō (subm-), ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown†

trānsfigō, ere, xī, xus pierce, transfix†
 vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prevent†
 vulnus, eris n. wound, blow†*

36-37. Jūnō . . . haec(dixit).

36. aeternum vulnus: the causes of this anger have been given above: her fear for Carthage, the Judgment of Paris, etc. sub pectore: deep in her heart.

37. sēcum = cum sē; App. 321, a. mē: subj. of dēsistere. Mēne: -ne is the interrogative particle appended to the pronoun, mē.

37-38: dēsistere . . . nec posse: infinitives, in an exclamatory question; I beaten desist from my undertaking and not be able, etc.; App. 262. (ab) inceptō: abl. of separation; App. 340. victam: from vincō; it modifies mē.

38. (ab) Italiā: abl. of separation; App. 340. Teucrōrum: the Trojans are often referred to as Teucrī, a name derived from Teucer, one of the founders of the Trojan race.

39. Quippe vetor: ironical. fātis: abl. of means; App. 331. -ne = nōne. Pallas (Athēna): Minerva.

40. Argivum: Argivōrum; App. 37, d. ipsōs: (the masters) themselves, i.e., the Argives, as contrasted with classem. Ipse often means the master, the one of most importance in a situation, as contrasted with persons or things of less

importance. pontō: abl. of place where; App. 319, or means; App. 331.

41. ūnius Ajācis Oilēi: a whole fleet was destroyed on account of one man. For the short i in ūnius see the note on illius (l. 16). ob noxam et furiās: Ajax, son of Oileus, had desecrated the temple of Minerva during the sack of Troy, when before the very altar of the sanctuary he had seized Cassandra, daughter of Priam and priestess of Minerva. Enraged at such rash irreverence, Minerva later sank the ship of Ajax and destroyed him with lightning. Ajācis Oilēi: of Ajax (son) of Oileus. Observe that the A forms a long syllable by position; App. 6, b., and that -ei of Oilēi is here read as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. This Ajax was less renowned than the other Ajax, son of Telamon.

42. Ipsa: (the goddess, Minerva) in person. She was the only divinity, except Jupiter, who might hurl the lightning. Jovis ignem: lightning.

43. -que . . . -que: both . . . and; polysyndeton; App. 439.

44. illum (Ajācem): with emphatic first position, which contrasts it with the ships and the sea previously mentioned.

turbine corripuit scopulōque infixit acūtō;
ast ego, quāe divum incēdō rēgīna Jovis
et soror et conjūnx, unā cūm gēte tot annōs
 bellā gerō. *Et quisquam nūmē Jūnōnis* adorāt
praetereā, aut supplex ārīs impōnet *honōrem?*"

Talia flammātō sēcūm dea corde volūtāns
nimbōrum in patriam, loca fēta furentibus Austris,
Aeoliā venīt. Hic vāstō rēx Aeolus antrō
luctantis vētōs tempestātēsque sonōrās
imperio premit ac vinclis et carcere frēnat.

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed†
 adorō (1) worship, adore, honor†
 Aeolia, ae f. one of the Liparian Islands
 near Sicily†
 Aeolus, i m. god of the winds†
 annus, i m. year*
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern†*
 Auster, tri m. (south) wind†*
 carcer, eris m. prison, inclosure†
 cor, cordis n. heart, spirit, feelings†*
 corripio, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)†*
 fētus, a, um teeming, pregnant†
 flammō (1) inflame, kindle†
 frēnō (1) curb, check, restrain†
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wage*
 impōnō, ere, posui, positus place on
 (dat.)†*
 incēdō, ere, cessi, cessus walk (proudly),
 stride†

infigō, ere, xī, xus fasten on, im-
 pale†
 luctor, āri, ātus wrestle, struggle†
 nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm†*
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country†*
 praetereā besides, hereafter
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press, con-
 trol†*
 quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one),
 any(thing)†
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag†*
 sonōrus, a, um roaring, howling†
 soror, ōris f. sister†*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble†*
 tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm†*
 tot so many*
 turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm†
 vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, chain†*
 volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder†

(ex) pectore: abl. of separation; App. 310.

45. turbine: abl. of means; App. 331. (Pallas) corripuit. scopulō: dat. with compound infixit; or abl. of place where, as infigō may take either construction; App. 298, 319.

46. ego: with proud self-consciousness and in contrast with Minerva; ego is never expressed unless emphatic. div(ōr)um: App. 37, d.

47. tot annōs: acc. of extent (duration) of time; App. 314; ten years around Troy, and now seven more years while the Trojans wander. unā cum gente = cum Teucris.

48. gerō: of past action continued into the present; App. 351, 1, b. Et quisquam: "can any one longer respect me, if I show myself such a weakling?" This figure is called a rhetorical question. Jūnōnis = meum: Juno is speaking, but the use of her own name is more picturesque and effective than the use of the possessive adjective.

49. supplex: (as a) suppliant. ārīs:

dat. with compound; App. 298. honōrem: honor, i.e., an offering which would honor Juno.

50-80. Juno persuades Aeolus, god of the winds, to send forth a storm to prevent Aeneas and the Trojans from reaching Italy.

50. Talia: used substantively, as object of volūtāns; such things, i.e., such thoughts. (in) flammātō corde: abl. of place where; App. 319. sēcūm = cum sē, as in l. 37; App. 321, a.

51. patriam: with the first syllable short; App. 17. Austris: abl. with fēta, literally, south winds, but often meaning winds in general; App. 433. fēta furentibus: note the alliteration; App. 411.

51-52. loca . . . Aeoliā: apposition with patriam. Hic: adverb, here. (in) vāstō antrō: abl. of place where; App. 319.

53. luctantis: acc. pl. of an i-stem.

54. vinclis: the longer form vinculis (-v-) could not be used in hexameter. imperio, vinc(u)lis, carcere: ablatives of means; App. 331. frēnat: a picture

- 55 *Illī indignāntēs magnō cum mūrmure montis
circum claustra fremunt; celsā sedet Aeolus arce
scēptra tenēns mollitque animōs et temperat irās;
nī faciāt, maria ac terrās caelumque profundum
quippe ferant rapidī sēcum verrantque per aurās.*
60 *Sed pater omnīpotēns spēluncīs abdidit ātrīs
hoc metuēns mōlemque et montis īnsuper altōs
imposuit, rēgemque dedit quī foedere certō
et premerē et lāxās sciret dare jussus habēnās.
Ad quem tūm Jūnō supplex hīs vōcibus ūsa est:*
65 *“Aeole, namque tibi divūm pater atque hominū rēx
et mulcēre dedit flūctūs et tollere vētō,
gēns inimīca mihi Tyrrhēnum nāvigat aequor*

abdō, ere, didi, ditus put away, hide†
Aeolus, ī m. god of the winds
celsus, a, um lofty, high, towering†*
certus, a, um fixed, sure†*
claustrum, ī n. bar(rier), bolt†
foedus, eris n. agreement, condition, treaty†
fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, roar†*
habēna, ae f. rein†
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human†*
impōnō, ere, posui, positus place upon*
indignor, āri, ātus be angry, chafe†
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly†
īnsuper above, besides†
laxus, a, um loose, free, lax†
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread
mōlēs, is f. mass, burden, structure*
mollīō, ire, īvi (ii), itus soothe, tame†
mulcēō, ēre, lsi, lsus calm, soothe†
murmur, uris n. murmur, roar, rumble†

nāvigō (1) sail, navigate†
nī, nisi if not, unless†*
omnipotēns, entis almighty, all-powerful†
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press, control*
profundus, a, um deep, high, vast†
quippe indeed, surely, forsooth
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming*
scēptum, ī n. staff, scepter, power†
sciō, ire, īvi (ii), itus know (how), understand†
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit†*
spēlunca, ae f. cave, cavern†
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
temperō (1) control, calm, refrain†
Tyrrhēnus, a, um Tyrrhenian, of Etruria,
a district of northwestern Italy†
ūtōr, ī, ūsus use, employ (abl.)†
verrō, ere, ī, versus sweep†

drawn from managing spirited horses, as in l. 63, *premere et dare laxās habēnās*.

55. *magnō cum murmure montis*: alliteration (m) and onomatopoeia; App. 411, 434; *murmure* is abl. of manner; App. 328.

56. (in) *celsā arce*: abl. of place, apparently a lofty seat within the cave or just outside on a mountain top.

57. *scēptra*: for the use of the poetic plural see the note on *irae* (l. 11). *animōs (ventōrum) et irās (ventōrum)*.

58. *nī (Aeolus id) faciāt = nī molliat animōs (ventōrum) et temperet irās (eōrum)*; *faciāt* is subj. in a pres. condit. contrary to fact; App. 382.

59. (venti) *rapidī*: the winds in their madness. *sēcum = cum sē*; App. 321, a. *ferant, verrant (maria ac terrās caelumque profundum)*.

60. *pater omnīpotēns*: Juppiter. (in) *spēluncīs ātrīs = antrō* (l. 52), abl. of place where; App. 319. *abdidit (illōs ventōs)*.

61. *hoc*: obj. of *metuēns*. *mōlem et montis*: alliteration; App. 411. *montis*: acc. pl., an *i*-stem.

62. *rēgem (Aeolum) imposuit (ventis). foedere certō*: abl. of manner; App. 328.

63. *premere*: object of *sciret*, would know (how) to grasp tightly, so as to draw in the reins. For the figure of horsemanship see the note on *frēnat* (l. 54). *sciret*: rel. clause of purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389. *dare*: also obj. of *sciret*. *jussus (ā Jove)*: (when) ordered (by Juppiter).

64. *hīs vōcibus*: abl. with *ūtōr*; App. 342.

65. *Aeole*: voc. *div(ōr)um pater atque hominū rēx*: Juppiter. *tibi*: for the length of the final *i*, see the note on *mihi* (l. 8).

66. *mulcēre, tollere (flūctūs)*: objects of *dedit*, has granted. *ventō*: abl. of means; App. 331.

67. *gēns inimīca mihi*: Teucrī. *Tyr-*

Īlium in Ītaliā portāns victōsque penātis:

*incute vim ventis summersāsque obrue puppis,
aut age diversōs et disjice corpora pontō.*

70

Sunt mihi bis septem praestanti corpore nymphae,

quārum quāe formā pulcherrima, Dēiopēa,

cōnūbiō jūngam stabili propriamque dicābō,

omnis ut tēcum meritis prō tābūs annōs

exigat et pulchrā faciat tē prōle parentem."

75

annus, *i m.* year*

bis twice†*

cōnūbium, (*i*) *n.* marriage, wedlock†

Dēiopēa, *ae f.* a nymph†

dicō (*l*) consecrate, dedicate†

disjiciō, *ere, jēci, jectus* scatter, disperse

diversus, *a, um* scattered, diverse†*

exigō, *ere, ēgi, āctus* complete, pass†

forma, *ae f.* beauty, shape, form*

Īlium, (*i*) *n.* Īlium, Troy, a city of Asia Minor†

incutiō, *ere, cussī, cussus* strike (*into*) (*dat.*)†

jungō, *ere, jūnxī, jūnctus* join, yoke, unite†*

meritum, *i n.* desert, merit†

nympha, *ae f.* nymph, one of the minor

divinities of nature represented as beautiful maidens dwelling in the forests, streams, meadows, mountains, etc.†

obruō, *ere, ui, utus* overwhelm, crush†

penātēs, *ium m.* household gods †*

pontus, *i m.* sea*

portō (*l*) carry, bear, bring†*

praestāns, *antis* surpassing, excellent

prō before, for (*abl.*)*

prōlēs, *is f.* offspring, progeny†*

proprius, *a, um* one's own, permanent†

pulcher, *chra, chrum* beautiful, handsome, illustrious†*

septem seven†

stabilis, *e firm, lasting, stable†*

summergō (*subm-*), *ere, rsī, rsus* sink

rhēnum aequor: that part of the Mediterranean west of Italy, east of Corsica and Sardinia, and north of Sicily.

68. Īlium . . . portāns victōsque penātis: see note on *inferret deōs* (l. 6.). They were bearing Īlium in their plan to found a new city which should continue the race and the customs of the Īlium (Troy) which had been destroyed. The origin of the worship of the penates, household gods at Rome, was lost in antiquity; and the Romans explained this and other old customs by referring their beginnings to Troy. **victōs:** defeated by the Greeks in the Trojan War.

69. incute: imp. **vim ventis:** alliteration; App. 411. **ventis:** *dat.* with a compound; App. 298. **summersās obrue puppis:** overwhelm the sunken ships, i.e., sink and overwhelm the ships, a good example of the figure known as *prolepsis*, or *anticipation*; App. 440.

70. age: imp. **diversōs (Teucrōs):** i.e., drive the Trojans in different directions and scatter their corpses over the sea; another example of *prolepsis*; App. 440. **pontō:** *abl.* of place where; App. 319.

71. mihi: *dat.* of possession; App. 299.

bis septem: twice seven; more poetic than to say simply fourteen. **praestanti corpore:** *abl.* of quality; App. 330.

72. formā: *abl.* of respect; App. 325; dependent on *pulcherrima*. **Dēiopēa:** *nom.* by attraction into the case of the relative pronoun, *quae*; the accusative would be expected, as object of *jungam*; App. 242, *a*. **quārum:** use the English demonstrative in translation, and read as though you had: *Dēiopēam, quae (est) eārum (nymphārum) pulcherrima formā, jūngam (tibi) stabili cōnūbiō et (eam) dicābō (tuam) propriam*.

73. cōnūbiō: *in wedlock*, *abl.* of place where or means; App. 319, 331. **cōnūbiō** is trisyllabic by synizesis, and pronounced as though written *cōnūbjō*; App. 401. **jūngam (tibi).** **dicābō (eam) propriam:** *I shall dedicate her (Dēiopea) to you (as) your very own*. Juno was goddess of marriage. **propriam:** with the first syllable short; App. 17.

74. tēcum = cum tē; App. 321, *a*.

75. prōle: *abl.* of quality; App. 330, or means; App. 331. **pulchrā prōle parentem:** alliteration; App. 411. **exigat, faciat:** result or purpose; App. 364, 388. **parentem = patrem**

Aeolus haec contrā: "Tuus, Ō rēgīna, quid optēs
explorāre labor; mihi jussa capessere fās est.
Tū mihi quodcumque hoc rēgnī, tū scēptra Jovemque
conciliās, tū dās epulis accumbere dīvum
80 nimbōrūmque facis tempestātumque potentem."

Haec ubi dicta, cavum conversā cuspidē montem
impulit in latus: ac ventī velut agmine factō,
quā data portā, ruunt et terrās turbīne perflant.
Incubuēre marī tōtūmque ā sēdibus imīs
85 ūnā Eurūque Notūque ruunt crēberque procellis

accumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus recline (at)
(dat.)†

Aeolus, i m. god of the winds

capessō, ere, ivī, itus (under)take, per-
form†

cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted†*

conciliō (1) win over, unite†

contrā opposite, against, in reply
(acc.)*

convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (around), re-
verse†

crēber, bra, brum frequent, crowded†*

cuspis, idis f. point, spear†

epulae, arum f. banquet, feast†

Eurus, i m. (east) wind†

explorō (1) examine, search out†

fās n. indecl. right, divine law, duty†*

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive, strike
(against)

incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lie upon,
brood over (dat.)†

jussum, i n. command, order

latus, eris n. side, flank†*

nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm*

Notus, i m. (south) wind†

optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)†*

perflō (1) blow (over, through)†

porta, ae f. gate, door, opening†*

potēns, entis powerful, ruling (gen.)†*

procella, ae f. blast, gust†

quā where, in any way

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque

whoever, whatever†*

scēptum, i n. staff, scepter, power

tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm; time*

turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm

ūnā together, at the same time†

velut(i) (even) as, just as†*

76. haec (dixit). optēs: indir. quest.; App. 349. Tuus (est) labor: thine (is) the task. Aeolus thus absolves himself from responsibility, if his obedience to Juno gets him into trouble.

77. mihi: dat. of reference; App. 301. jussa (tua).

78. quodcumque hoc (est) rēgnī: whatever this is (in the way) of a kingdom, an expression of modesty. rēgnī: part. gen. with quodcumque; App. 286. scēptra: for the plural see the note on irae (l. 11). Tū: always emphatic, and here strengthened by repetition (anaphora); App. 413.

79. epulis: dat. with compound; App. 298. The ancient Romans regularly reclined at meals. dīv(ōr)um: App. 37, d. accumbere: object of dās, you grant (me) the privilege of reclining. As one of the lesser gods, Aeolus was dependent upon the favor of the more powerful divinities.

80. facis (mē) potentem nimbōrum tempestātumque.

81-123. Description of the storm which wrecks part of the Trojan ships and scatters the rest.

81. ubi haec dicta (sunt ab Aeolō). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

82. impulit: Aeolus thus opens the barriers and lets out the winds. agmine factō: abl. abs.; App. 343; a figure of speech drawn from military life.

83. Observe the alliteration, every word but one in this line containing a t; App. 411. data (est). turbine: abl. of manner; App. 328.

84. Incubuēre = incubuērunt, from incumbō. The perfect, after a series of presents, denotes rapid or instantaneous action; they have fallen upon the sea. marī: dat. with compound; App. 298. tōtūm (mare): obj. of ruunt, l. 85.

85. ruunt: overturn. Eurus, Notus, Africus: all the winds blow at once, and in their struggles produce a mighty storm. procellis: abl. of respect or means with

*Āfricus et vāstōs volvunt ad litora flūctūs:
insequitur clāmorque virūm stridorque rudentum.*

Ēripiunt subitō nūbēs caelūque diēque

Teucrōrum ex oculis; pontō nox incubat ātra,

Intonuere poli et crēbris micat ignibus aethēr 90

praesentemque viris intentant omnia mortem.

*Exemplō Aenēae solvuntur frigore membra;
ingemit et duplicis tendens ad sidera palmās*

*tālia vōce refert: "O terque quaterque beāti,
quīs ante ōra patrum Trojae sub moenibus altīs* 95

contigit oppetere! O Danaū fortissime gentis

Tydidē! mēne Īliacis occūnberē cāmpīs

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether†*

Āfricus, *i m.* (southwest) wind†

beātus, *a, um* happy, blessed†

contingō, *ere, tigī, tāctus* touch, be-
fall†*

crēber, *bra, brum* frequent, crowded*

duplex, *icis* double, both†

exemplō immediately, forthwith†

fortis, *e* strong, brave, valiant†*

frigus, *oris n.* cold, chill†

Īliacus, *a, um* of Ilium, Trojan†*

incubō, *āre, uī (āvi), itus (ātus)* lie upon,
brood over (*dat.*)†

ingemō, *ere, uī* groan†

insequor, *i, secūtus* follow, pursue†*

intentō (*l*) threaten, aim†

intonō, *āre, uī* thunder, roar†

membrum, *i n.* limb, member, part†*

micō, *āre, uī* quiver, flash†

nūbēs, *is f.* cloud, fog, mist*

occumbō, *ere, cubuī, cubitus* fall (in
death)†

oppetō, *ere, ivi (ii), itus* encounter, meet
(death)†

palma, *ae f.* palm, hand†*

polus, *i m.* pole, sky, heaven†

pontus, *i m.* sea*

praesēns, *entis* present, instant†

quater four times†

rudēns, *entis m.* rope, cable†

solvō, *ere, i, solūtus* relax, loose(n)†*

stridor, *ōris m.* creaking, grating, whir-
ring†

subitō suddenly†*

ter thrice, three times†*

Tydidēs, *ae m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,
who fought against Aeneas in single
combat before Troy and would have
killed him had not Venus spirited her
son away†

crēber; App. 325, 331. -que, -que, -que:
polysyndeton; App. 439.

86. vāstōs volvunt: alliteration, em-
ployed very effectively here, as often in
the *Aeneid*.

87. vir(ōr)um: Aeneas and the other
Trojans. -que, -que: polysyndeton;
App. 439.

88. diem = lūcem diēi. -que, -que:
polysyndeton; App. 439.

89. pontō: *dat.* with compound; App.
298.

90. Intonuere = intonuērunt; App.
204, 4. ignibus (Jovis): *lightning*, *abl.*
of means or manner; App. 328, 331.

91. viris = Teucris; *dat.* of reference;
App. 301. omnia: used substantively,
all things, as *subj.* of intentant,

92. frigore: *chilly fear*; the ancient
heroes were not ashamed to display their
emotions, and often gave way to terror or
grief. They weep copiously on occasion,

and are no more dainty about the shed-
ding of tears than the shedding of blood.

93. duplicis: *acc. pl.* of an *i*-stem;
the first syllable is short; App. 17. In
prayer the ancient Greeks and Romans
extended their hands with the palms up-
ward, ready to accept the blessing.

94. tālia (dicta). beāti (vōs): voca-
tive.

95. quīs ante ōra patrum (vestrum)
sub moenia Trojae contigit oppetere
(mortem). quīs = quibus; App. 109, c;
observe the quantity of the *i*; *dat.* with
contigit; App. 298. ante ōra: where their
kinsmen and friends might witness their
glorious deeds and death and might bury
their bodies, thus giving rest to their
souls; for the souls of the unburied must
wander restlessly after death.

96. oppetere (mortem): subject of
contigit. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, d.

97. mē: *subj.* of potuisse. mēne

- nōn potuisse tuāque animam hanc effundere dextrā,*
saevus ubi Aeacidæ telō jacet Hector, ubi ingēns
 100 *Sarpēdōn, ubi tot Simois correpta sub undis*
scūta virum galeāsque et fortia corpora volvit!"
Tālia jactanti stridēns Aquilōne procella
vēlum adversa ferit, fluctūsque ad sidera tollit.
Franguntur rēmī, tum prōra avertit et undis
 105 *dat latus, insequitur cumulō praeuptus aquae mōns.*
Hī summā in fluctū pendit; hīs unda dehiscēns
terram inter fluctūs aperit, furit aestus harēnis.
Tris Notus abreptās in sāxa latēntia torquet

abripio, ere, ui, repta carry off, snatch away†
adversus, a, um opposite, in front†*
Aeacidēs, ae m. descendant of Aeacus, Achilles, Greek chieftain†
aestus, ūs m. boiling (surge), tide†
aperiō, ire, ui, ertus open, disclose†*
aqua, ae f. water†*
Aquilō, ōnis m. (north) wind†
āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn away, avert*
corripio, ere, ui, repta snatch (up)†*
cumulus, i m. heap, mass†
dehiscō, ere, hivi gape, split, open†
effundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour out†*
feriō, ire strike, beat†
fortis, e strong, brave, valiant*
frangō, ere, frēgi, fractus break, shatter†*
galea, ae f. helmet†
harēna, ae f. sand, beach†*

Hector, oris m. leader of the Trojans†*
insequor, i, secutus follow, pursue*
jaceō, ēre, ui, itus lie (low, outspread)†*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, utter*
lateō, ēre, ui lie hid, hide, lurk†*
latus, eris n. side, flank*
Notus, i m. (south) wind†
pendeō, ēre, pependi hang†*
praeuptus, a, um steep, towering†
procella, ae f. blast, gale†
prōra, ae f. prow†*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Sarpēdōn, onis m. king of Lycia, ally of the Trojans†
scūtum, i n. shield†
Simois, entis m. river near Troy†
strid(e)ō, ēre, di creak, rustle, roar†
torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, whirl†*
 tot so many
trēs, tria three†*

potuisse: *could I not*, etc., inf. in an exclamatory question; App. 262. **Tydidē**: vocative. Aeneas engaged in a disastrous duel at Troy with Diomedes and barely escaped with his life, being rescued by his mother, the goddess Venus. (in) **campis**: abl. of place where; App. 319. **occumbere** (morti): complementary infin. with **potuisse**, as is also **effundere** in l. 98.

98. hanc = meam. (tuā) dextrā (manū): abl. of means; App. 331.

99. telō (ictus): (*slain*) by the spear. Observe the emphasis obtained by anaphora of **ubi**; App. 413.

100. Sarpēdōn (jacet): an ally of the Trojans. **Simois** . . . **volvit**.

101. vir(ōr)um. correpta sub undis: goes with **scūta** and **galeās** as well as with **corpora** and refers to the corpses and armor of slain warriors swept along by (under) the water.

102. (Aenēae) jactanti: dat. of reference; App. 301. **Tālia** (dicta): obj. of

jactanti. **Aquilōne**: abl. of means; App. 331.

103. ferit: from **feriō**; not to be confused with the verb **ferō**. **adversa** (procella). **ad sidera**: such exaggerated language is called *hyperbole*; App. 428.

104. rēmī: the ancient ship used both oars and sails. **prōra** (sē) **āvertit et undis dat latus** (nāvis).

105. cumulō: abl. of manner; App. 328. **mōns**: more hyperbole; App. 428; note the smashing effect of the monosyllable at the end of the line.

106. Hī (virī). **hīs** (virīs): dative of reference; App. 301. **hī** . . . **hīs**: *these* . . . *for those*; *some* . . . *for others*, referring to the crews of different ships; anaphora; App. 413.

107. terram: the bottom (of the sea); the hyperbole is continued; App. 428. **harēnis**: with the sands, abl. of means; App. 331.

108-109. Tris (nāvis): acc. pl. of an i-

(*saxa vocant Itali mediis quae in fluctibus Aras,*
dorsum immane mari summo), tris Euris ab alto 110
in brevia et syrtis urget, miserabile visū,
inliduntque vadis atque aggere cingit harēnae.
Ūnam, quae Lyciōs fidumque vehēbat Orontēn,
ipsius ante oculos ingēns ā vertice pōntus 115
in puppim ferit: excutitur prōnusque magister
volvitur in caput; ast illam ter fluctus ibidem
torquet agēns circum et rapidus vorat aequore vertex.
Appārent rārī nantēs in gurgite vastō,
arma virum tabulaeque et Troia gaza per undās.

agger, eris *m.* mound, wall, bank†
altum, ī n. the deep (sea)
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear†
Aras, arum f. the Altars, a ledge of rocks
 between Sicily and Africa†
brevis, e short, shallow†
cingō, ere, cingi, cinctus gird(le), en-
 circle†*
dorsum, ī n. back, ridge, reef†
Euris, ī m. (east) wind
excutiō, ere, cussi, cussus cast out, shake
 off†*
feriō, ire strike, beat
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy†*
gaza, ae f. treasure, wealth†
gurgis, itis m. abyss, gulf, whirlpool†*
harēna, ae f. sand, beach*
ibidem in the same place†
inlido, ere, si, sus dash against (into)
 (dat.)†
Italus, a, um Italian†

Lycius, a, um Lycian, of Lycia, a country
 of Asia Minor†
magister, tri m. master, pilot†
miserabilis, e pitiable, wretched†
nō (l) swim, float†
Orontēs, is (i) m. comrade of Aeneas†
pontus, ī m. sea*
prōnus, a, um leaning forward, headlong†
rapidus, a, um swift, whirling, consuming*
rārus, a, um scattered, far apart†
syrtis, is f. sand bar, reef†
tabula, ae f. plank, board†
ter three times, thrice*
torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, whirl*
trēs, tria three*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy†*
urgeō, ēre, ursi drive, force, press†
vadum, ī n. shallow, shoal, depth(s)†
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry, convey†*
vertex, icis m. top, summit; whirlpool†*
vorō (l) swallow (up)†

stem, object of torquet. *saxa . . . saxa:* anaphora; App. 413. *mediis in fluctibus:* in the middle (of the) waves; App. 246. *quae saxa Itali vocant Aras:* quae is a relative adjective agreeing with *saxa*; *saxa* is object of *vocant*, and *Aras* is predicate accusative. *Aras:* the Altars, the Roman name for a ledge of rocks off the African coast, just outside the harbor of ancient Carthage.

110. (in) *mari summo:* at the surface of the sea; abl. of place where; App. 319, 246. *dorsum:* apposition with *saxa*. *tris (nāvis)* object of *urget*.

111. *miserabile visū:* pitious to behold; *miserabile* is a neuter adjective modifying the idea expressed in the preceding sentence, while *visū* is the supine of *videō* and an abl. of respect; App. 325.

112. *vadis = in vada,* dat. of direction, sometimes used instead of the acc. of place to which; App. 306.

113. *Ūnam (nāvem).* *Orontēn:* acc., a Greek form.

114. *ipsius (Aenēae):* of the master, a common use of *ipse*. Compare *ipsa* (l. 42) and *ipsōs* (l. 40). For the length of the second vowel, see the note on *illius* (l. 16). *ā vertice:* from high above. *ferit:* from *feriō*.

115. *in:* upon. *excutitur (ē nāvi).*

116. *in caput:* headlong. *illam (nāvem):* contrasted with the helmsman (*magister*).

117. (in) *aequore:* abl. of place where; App. 319.

118. *nantēs:* pres. part. of *nō*, modifying *rārī (virī)*, *arma*, *tabulae*, and *gaza*, but agreeing with the nearest word, *rārī (virī)*, men here and there; App. 238.

119. *vir(ōr)um. arma:* such as wooden shields and leather helmets made of light and buoyant material. *gaza:* the first syllable is long by position; App. 15.

- 120 *Jam validam Ilionei nāvem, jam fortis Achātae,
et quā vectus Abās, et quā grandaevus Alētēs,
vicī hiēms; laxis laterū compāgibus omnēs
accipiunt inimicum imbrem rimisque fatiscunt.*
Interea magnō miscērī murmure pōntum
125 ēmissamque hiemem sēsit Neptūnus et imīs
stagna refūsa vadīs, graviter commōtus; et altō
prōspiciēns summā placidum caput extulit undā.
Disjēctam Aenēae tōtō videt aequore clāsem,
flūctibus oppressōs Trōas caelique ruīnā.
130 Nēc latuēre doli frātre Jūnōnis et irae.

Abās, antis *m.* Trojan leader†
Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of
Aeneas†*
Alētēs, ae *m.* Trojan leader†
altum, *i n.* the deep (sea)
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, dis-
turb†
compāgēs, *is f.* joint, seam, fastening†
disjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus scatter, disperse
dolus, *i m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud†*
efferō, ferre, extuli, elātus raise, lift (up)†*
ēmittō, ere, misi, missus send forth†
fatiscō, ere split, open, gap†
fortis, *e* brave, strong, valiant*
frāter, tris *m.* brother†*
grandaevus, a, um aged, old†
graviter heavily, violently, greatly†
hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm†*
Ilioneus, ei *m.* Trojan leader†
imber, bris *m.* rain, flood, water†
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
interea meanwhile, meantime†*

lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, escape the notice (of)*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
laxus, a, um loose, open, lax
miscēō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, confuse,
stir†*
murmur, uris *n.* murmur, roar, rumble
Neptūnus, *i m.* Neptune, god of the sea†*
opprimō, ere, pressi, pressus overwhelm,
crush†
placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful†*
pontus, *i m.* sea*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look out (on),
see†
refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour back†
rima, ae *f.* crack, fissure†
ruina, ae *f.* downfall, ruin†
sentio, ire, sēsi, sēsus feel, perceive†
stāgnū, *i n.* still waters, depth†
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
vadum, *i n.* shallow, shoal, depth(s)
validus, a, um strong, stout, mighty†
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey*

120. Ilionei: gen., with the final ei pronounced as one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. (nāvem) fortis Achātae. Jam . . . jam: anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413.

121. et (nāvem) quā vectus (est) Abās, et (nāvem) quā (vectus est) Alētēs. et quā . . . et quā: anaphora; App. 413.

122. laxis compāgibus: abl. of means or instrument, or abl. abs. omnēs (nāvēs).

123. rimis: abl. of means or manner; App. 328, 331. Cf. ll. 83, 105. imbrem = aquam maris.

124-156. Neptune, god of the sea, intervenes; he rebukes the winds and calms the sea.

124. magnō miscērī murmure: alliteration (m) and onomatopoeia; App. 411,

434. murmure: abl. of attendant circumstance or manner; App. 329, 328.

125. ēmissam (esse).

126. refūsa (esse). (ex) vadis: abl. of separation; App. 340. (in) altō: over the sea; abl. of place where; App. 319. commōtus (animō): although disturbed in spirit, as a god he maintains an outward calm (placidum caput of l. 127).

127. (ex) undā: abl. of separation; App. 340; from the crest of the wave; App. 246.

128. (in) tōtō aequore: abl. of place where; App. 319.

129. Trōās: acc. pl., a Greek form. (et videt) Trōas oppressōs (esse). caeli ruīnā: hyperbole; App. 428.

130. latuēre = latuērunt; App. 204, 4. frātre: Neptune was Juno's brother, and he knew her tricky nature (doli) and her ugly temper (irae).



Alinari, Rome

JUNO BEGS THE HELP OF AEOLUS AGAINST THE SHIP OF AENEAS

Lucio Masani



Alinari, Rome

Lateran Museum

NEPTUNE

In his left hand the god holds a trident; in the right, a seashell. His right foot rests on the rostrum of a ship, and behind him is a dolphin, one of the creatures of his domain.

Eurum *ad* sē Zephyrūnque vocat, dehinc tālia fatur:

"Tantane vōs generis tenuit fidūcia vēstrī?"

Jam cælum terramque meō sine nūmine, vēntī,
miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs?

Quōs ego — ! sēd mōtōs prāestat cōmpōnere fluctūs. 135

Pōst mihi nōn simili poenā commissa luētis.

Mātūrāte fugam rēgīque hāec dicite vēstrō:

nōn illi imperiū pelagī saevūnque tridentem,

sēd mihi sorte datū. Tenet ille immānia sara,
vēstrās, Eure, domōs; illā sē jactet in aulā 140

Aeolus et clausō vēntōrum cārcere rēgnet."

Sic ait et dictō citius tumida æquora plācat

Aeolus, i m. god of the winds
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture†*
aula, ae f. court, hall†
carcer, eris m. prison, inclosure
citō quickly, soon†
claudō, ere, si, sus (in)close, hem in†*
commissum, i n. fault, crime
cōmpōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus compose, construct, calm, quiet†
dehinc then, thereupon†
Eurus, i m. (east) wind
fidūcia, ae f. confidence, trust†
jactō (1) toss, buffet, vaunt*
luō, ere, i atone for†
mātūrō (1) hasten, speed; ripen†

misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, confuse, stir (up)*
mōlēs, is f. mass, burden, heap*
plācō (1) calm, quiet†
post after (acc.); afterwards†*
prāestō, āre, stiti, stitus surpass, be better†
rēgnō (1) rule, reign†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
similis, e like, similar†*
sine without (abl.)†*
sors, rtis f. lot, fate, destiny†*
tridēns, entis m. trident, symbol of Neptune as god of the sea†
tumidus, a, um swelling, swollen†
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own†*
Zephyrus, i m. (west) wind†

131. dehinc: one syllable by synizesis; App. 403. tālia (dicta).

132. generis fidūcia vēstrī: this verse is sarcastic; the winds were of divine origin, being descended from Aurora, goddess of the dawn, and from Astraeus, a Titan rival of the gods. caelum terramque: hyperbole; App. 428.

134. miscēre, tollere: depend on audētis, as complementary infinitives; App. 259.

135. Quōs = Vōs. Quōs ego —: a good example of *apostrophe*; App. 416; i.e., instead of completing his sentence, the speaker breaks off abruptly and leaves to the imagination, as being beyond the power of adequate expression in words, just what sort of dire punishment he may inflict upon the guilty winds; Quōs is thus the object and ego the subject of the unexpressed verb.

136. nōn simili poenā: abl. of means; App. 331; by no similar punishment, i.e., by a much greater one; this figure of speech is called *litotes*; App. 431.

137. rēgī vēstrō = Aeolō.

138. illi: dat. of indir. obj. in emphatic position contrasted with mihi in the same position in the following line. tridentem: the well-known symbol of Neptune as god of the sea. imperium, tridentem: subjects of datum (esse), an inf. in indir. disc., dependent on dicite, in l. 137.

139. sorte: when Saturn was overthrown, the three gods, Jupiter, Neptune, and Pluto, divided his dominion among them by lot, Jupiter receiving the dominion of heaven, Neptune of the sea, and Pluto of the realm of the dead in the lower world.

140. vēstrās: referring to all the winds, although Neptune is directly addressing Eurus only.

140-141. illā, clausō: emphatic by position. jactet, rēgnet: volitive subjunctives; App. 254. (in) clausō cārcere: abl. of place where; App. 319.

142. ait: third sing. of ajō. dictō: abl. with compar.; App. 327.

- collēctāsque fugat nūbēs sōlēinque reducit.
 Cŷmothōē simul et Tritōn adnīxus acūtō
 145 dētrūdunt nāvīs scopulō; levat ipse tridentī
 et vāstās aperit syrtis et temperat aequor
 atque rotīs summās levibus perlābitur andās.
 Ac velutī magnō in populō cum saepe cōrta est
 seditiō saevitque animīs ignōbile vūlgus;
 150 jamque facēs et saxa volant, furor arma ministrat;
 tum, pietāte gravem ac meritis sī forte virūm quem
 cōnsplexēre, silent arrēctisq̄ue auribus astant;
 ille regit dictīs animōs et pēctora mulcet:
 sic cūctiūs pelagī cecidit fragor, aequora postquam
 155 prōspiciēns genitor cāelōque invecus apertō

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, keen
 adnitor, i, sus (nixus) strive, lean against†
 aperiō, ire, uī, ertus open, disclose*
 apertus, a, um open, clear†
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, prick up†
 a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (near, by)†*
 auris, is f. ear†*
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, subside†*
 colligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus collect, gather†
 cōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, be-
 hold†
 cōrior, iri, ortus (a)rise†
 Cŷmothōē, ēs f. a sea nymph†
 dētrūdō, ere, si, sus push off, dislodge†
 fax, facis f. firebrand, torch†*
 fragor, ōris m. crash, uproar†
 fugō (1) put to flight, rout†
 furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, rage†*
 gravis, e heavy, weighty; venerable†*
 ignōbilis, e inglorious, common†
 invehō, ere, ēxi, ectus carry in, convey†
 levis, e light, swift†
 levō (1) lift, raise†
 meritum, i n. desert, service, merit
 ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply†

mulceō, ēre, lsi, lsus soothe, calm
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog*
 perlābor, i, lāpsus glide over†
 pietās, is f. loyalty, devotion, duty*
 populus, i m. people, nation, crowd*
 postquam after (that), when†*
 prōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look out on
 reducō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead back, bring
 back†
 regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, control†*
 rota, ae f. wheel; chariot†
 saepe often†*
 saeviō, ire, ivi (iū), itus rage, be fierce†
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag*
 seditiō, ōnis f. riot, strife†
 sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still†
 sōl, sōlis m. sun, day†*
 syrtis, is f. sand bar, reef
 temperō (1) calm, control
 tridēns, entis m. trident, symbol of Nep-
 tune
 Tritōn, onis m. a minor sea-god†
 velut(i) as, just as*
 volō (1) fly, speed†*
 vūlgus, i n. (m.) crowd, throng, herd†

144. Cŷmothōē: nom.; a Greek form.

145. ipse: the master (Neptune). See note on ipsōs (l. 40). (dē) scopulō: abl. of separation; App. 340. levat: with the trident as a lever. tridentī: abl. of an i-stem.

147. rotis levibus: abl. of manner; App. 328.

148. velutī saepe cum: just as often (happens) when; this passage (ll. 148-156) is one of Vergil's most famous similes; App. 441.

149. animis: abl. of place where or manner; App. 319, 328.

150. facēs: very dangerous in a city with so many wooden buildings as there were

in ancient Rome. furor arma ministrat: in their fury any object serves as a missile.

151. quem: some, the indefinite pronoun. pietāte, meritis: abl. of cause or respect with gravem; App. 325; 332.

152. arrēctis auribus: abl. abs. of manner; App. 343, 328. arrēctis auribus astant: alliteration; App. 411. cōnsplexēre = cōnsplexerunt; App. 204, 4. silent, astant: plurals, because of the collective idea in vūlgus and populō; App. 236, a.

154-155. sic: correlative with velutī in l. 148. postquam genitor . . . flectit et . . . dat. aequora: obj. of prōspiciēns.

155. (in) cāelō apertō: abl. of place

flectit equōs currūque volāns dat lōra secundō.

Dēfessī Aeneadāe quāe p̄xima litora cursū
contendunt petere, et Libyae vertuntur ad orās.

Est in sēcessū longō locus: insula portum

efficit objectū laterū, quibus omnis ab altō

160

frangitur inque sinūs scindit sēsē unda reductōs.

Hinc atque hinc vāstae rūpēs geminūque minantur

in caelum scopulī, quōrum sub vertice lātē

aequora tūta silent; tūm silvis scaena coruscis

dēsuper, horrentique ātrum nemus imminet umbrā;

165

fronte sub adversā scopulis pendentibus antrum,

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*

Aeneadae, (ār)um m. descendants (fol-
lowers) of Aeneas†

altum, i n. the deep (sea); heaven

antrum, i n. cave, cavern*

contendō, ere, i, ntus strive; hasten†

coruscus, a, um waving, quivering, flash-
ing†

currus, ūs m. chariot, car*

dēfessus, a, um weary, tired, worn†

dēsuper from above†

efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus make, form†

flectō, ere, exī, exus bend, turn, guide†

frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*

frōns, ontis f. front, face, brow†*

horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, trem-
ble†*

immineō, ēre overhang, threaten†

insula, ae f. island†

lātē widely, far and wide

latus, eris n. side, flank*

Libya, ae f. region of North Africa*

lōrum, i n. rein, thong†

minor, āri, ātus threaten, tower†

nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, for-
est†*

objectus, ūs m. projection, barrier†

pendeō, ēre, pependi hang*

proximus, a, um nearest†

redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus bring back, lead
back

rūpēs, is f. crag, cliff†*

scaena, ae f. background, stage†

scindō, ere, scidi, scissus split, divide†

scopulus, i m. rock, cliff*

sēcessus, ūs m. inlet, recess†

secundus, a, um following, favorable,
obedient†*

sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still

sinus, ūs m. fold, gulf, bay†*

tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure†*

vertex, icis m. summit, top*

vertō, ere, i, rsus (over)turn, (ex)change*

volō (1) fly, speed*

where; App. 319. genitor: Neptune.
invectus (currū): riding in his car.

156. flectit... dat: historical presents;
App. 351, 1, a. currū: dat. of indir. obj.;
App. 295.

157-207. Aeneas, with seven out of
twenty ships, lands on the coast of North
Africa near Carthage. He kills seven
fine stags, which he divides among his
comrades, whom he tries to console and
encourage.

157-158. Aeneadae litora, quae (sunt)
proxima, cursū petere contendunt.

159-160. insula efficit (hunc locum)
portum. portum: predicate acc. in sē-
cessū longō: the inlet extends deep into
the land.

160. quibus: abl. of means; App. 331.

160-161. omnis unda (veniēns) ab altō
frangitur et sē in sinūs reductōs scindit.
sēsē = sē. Observe the alliteration; App.
411.

162. Hinc atque hinc: on (from) this
side and that, i.e., on both sides. rūpēs
(sunt).

164. scaena: the place resembles a
stage with its scenery. silvis coruscis:
abl. of quality; App. 330.

165. horrenti umbrā: abl. of cause if
taken with ātrum, or of manner if taken
with imminet; App. 332, 328. horrenti:
abl. of an i-stem; this word is probably
used here to suggest the shade of bristling
evergreens, such as cedars, firs, or pines.

166. scopulis pendentibus: abl. of
quality or material; App. 330, 324.

- intus aquae dulcēs vivōque sedilia saxō,
 nympharū domus. *Hic fessās nōn vincula nāvis*
ulla tenent, uncō nōn alligat ancōra morsū. ⁶ Cur
 170 *Hūc septem Aenēas collēctis nāvibus omnī*
ex numerō subit; ac magnō tellūris amōre
ēgressī optātā potiuntur Trōes harēnā
et sale tābentis artūs in lītore pōnunt.
Ac prīmū silici scintillam excūdit Achātēs
 175 *suscepitque ignem foliis atque ārida circum*
nūtrimenta dedit rapuitque in fōmite flammam.
Tum Cererem corruptam undīs Cereāliaque arma
expediunt fessī rērum, frūgēsque receptās

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of

Aeneas*

alligō (1) bind, hold (to)†

ancora, *ae f.* anchor†

aqua, *ae f.* water*

āridus, *a, um* dry†

artus, *ūs m.* joint, limb†

Cereālis, *e* of Ceres, (goddess of) grain†

Cerēs, *eris f.* (goddess of) grain†

colligō, *ere, lēgi, lēctus* collect, gather

corrumpō, *ere, rūpi, ruptus* spoil, ruin†

dulcis, *e* sweet, dear, fresh†

ēgredior, *i, gressus* go out, disembark†

excūdō, *ere, di, sus* strike out†

expediō, *ire, ivi (iū), itus* bring out, pre-
 pare†

folium, (i) *i n.* leaf†

fōmes, *itis m.* tinder, fuel, shaving†

frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, grain†

harēna, *ae f.* sand, beach*

intus within†

morsus, *ūs m.* bite, fluke, bit†

numerus, *i m.* number, multitude†

nūtrimentum, *i n.* food, fuel, nourish-
 ment†

nympha, *ae f.* nymph, a minor divinity of
 nature, represented as a beautiful maiden

optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*

potior, *iri, itus* gain, win (*abl.*)†

rapio, *ere, ui, ptus* snatch (up), whirl*

recipio, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* take back, re-
 cover†

sal, *salis n. (m.)* salt (water), sea

scintilla, *ae f.* spark†

sedile, *is n.* seat, bench†

septem seven

silex, *icis m. (f.)* flint†

suscipio, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* catch (up), re-
 ceive†

tābeō, *ēre* drip, soak, melt, waste†

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*

uncus, *a, um* curved, bent, hooked†

vinc(u)lum, *i n.* chain, bond, cable*

vivus, *a, um* living, natural, alive†

167. vivō saxō: denotes natural, not
 artificial, seats.

168. domus: in apposition with an-
 trum, the cave just described; nymphs
 were supposed to frequent remote spots
 with beautiful natural scenery. Hic: ad-
 verb, *here*; observe that the *i* is long in
 the adverb but short in the pronoun.
 fessās nāvis: personification; App. 437;
 or possibly a transferred epithet; the
 Trojans were tired; App. 446.

169. ancōra: an anachronism as an-
 chors were not used in Aeneas's time.
 alligat (nāvis). uncō morsū: *abl.* of
 means; App. 331.

170. collēctis nāvibus: *abl. abs.*; App.
 343. omnī ex numerō: we see from l. 393
 that Aeneas had set out with twenty ships.

171. magnō amōre: *abl.* of manner;
 App. 328.

172. Trōēs: *nom. pl.*, a Greek form.
 optātā harēnā: *abl.* with potior; App.
 342.

173. sale: *abl.* of means with tābentis.

174. silici: *dat.* of separation; App.
 305.

175. foliis: *abl.* of means; App. 331.
 circum: *adv.* modifying dedit: *he places*
fuel around; or else understand circum
 (ignem).

177. Cererem: *the goddess of grain*, by
 metonymy for grain; App. 433. Cereālia
 arma: *the utensils of Ceres*, i.e., ūten-
 sils for grinding and for cooking
 grain.

178. expediunt (ex nāvibus). rērum:

expertī: revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
mittite; forsan et haec ōlim meminisse juvābit.

Per variōs cāsūs, per tot discrimina rerū
tendimus in Latium, sēdēs ubi fāta quietās
ostendunt; illic fās rēgna resurgere Trojae.

205

Dūrāte, et vōsmet rēbus sērvāte secūdis."

Tālia vōcē refert cūrīsque ingētibz aeger
spem vultū simulat, premit altum corde dolōrem.

Illī sē praēdae accingunt dapibusque futūrīs:

210

tergora diripiunt costīs et viscera nūdant;

pars in frusta secant veribusque trementia figunt,

accingō, ere, inxi, inctus gird†
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary†
cor, cordis n. heart, spirit, feelings*
costa, ae f. rib, side†
daps, dapis f. feast, banquet†
diripiō, ere, ui, reptus tear from†
discrimen, inis n. crisis, danger†
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, suffering*
dūrō (1) harden, endure†
experior, iri, pertus try, experience†
fās n. indecl. divine will, right, duty*
figō, ere, fixi, fixus pierce, fasten†
fors(it)an perhaps, perchance, possibly†
frustum, i n. piece, part†
illic there†
juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please†
Latium, (i)lī n. district of central Italy
around Rome*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy†
memini, isse remember, recall†
nūdō (1) (lay) bare, strip†

ōlim once, at some time*
ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, promise†
praeda, ae f. booty, prey†
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
control*
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful†
resurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise
again†
revocō (1) recall, restore†
secō, āre, ui, sectus cut, divide†
secundus, a, um following, favorable*
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign†
spēs, ei f. hope, expectation†
tergus, oris, n. back, hide†
timor, ōris m. fear, dread, anxiety†
tot so many*
tremō, ere, ui tremble, quiver†
varius, a, um varied, different†
verū, ūs n. broach, spit, spike†
viscus, eris n. vitals, flesh†
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face†

202. expertī (estis).

203. mittite: *dismiss.* et = etiam, even.
haec: obj. of meminisse. forsan et haec,
etc.: perhaps at some time we shall be
glad to remember even these things. A
famous verse, and one often quoted.
juvābit (nōs): it will please (us), with
meminisse as subject.

205. tendimus (cursum) in Latium:
the poet "nods" for a moment, as Aeneas
is not yet supposed to know anything
about Latium.

206. fās (est), etc.: it is the divine will
for the Trojan realm there to rise again.
rēgna: poetic plural.

207. vōsmet: an emphatic form of vōs.

208-222. The Trojans first feast and
then lament their lost comrades.

208. Tālia (dicta). vōcē: contrasted
with corde of l. 209. refert (Aenēas).
cūrīs ingētibz: abl. of cause with aeger;
App. 332. aeger: (although) sick at heart.

209. (in) vultū: abl. of place where
or means, sharply contrasted with corde.
corde: - abl. of place where or means.
spem: contrasted with dolōrem. altum
corde: deep in his heart. spem simulat,
premit dolōrem: this figure is known as
chiasmus. The contrast is here empha-
sized by placing the two pairs of words in
inverse (reverse) order; that is, spem
begins the first clause and is contrasted
with dolōrem, which ends the second,
while simulat ends the first clause and is
thus contrasted with premit, which be-
gins the second; App. 420; see the note
on l. 184.

210. Illi: Teucrī. praedae, dapibus:
datives of purpose; App. 303; i.e., they
prepare themselves for the venison and
the banquet. dapibus: poetic plural.

211. costis: abl. of separation; App.
320, 340.

212. pars (sociōrum) secant (viscera)
in frusta: the use of the plural verb with

- litore aēna locant alii flammāsque ministrant.
 Tum victū revocant viris, fūsiq̄ue per herbam
 215 implentur veteris Bacchī pinguisque ferinae.
 Postquam exēpta famēs epulis mēnsaeque remōtae,
 āmissōs longō sociōs sērmōne requirunt,
 spemque metumque inter dubiī, seu vivere crēdant
 sive extrēma patī nec jam exaudire vocātōs.
 220 Praecipuē pius Aenēas nunc ācris Orontī,
 nunc Amycī cāsum gemit et crudēlia sēcum
 fāta Lycī fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.

acer, cris, cre sharp, spirited†
 aēnum, i n. bronze (vessel, kettle)†
 amittō, ere, misi, missus lose, let
 go†
 Amycus, i m. a Trojan†
 Bacchus, i m. (god of) wine†
 Cloanthus, i m. a Trojan†
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust†
 crudēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody†
 dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering†
 epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast
 exaudiō, ire, ivi (ii), itus hear, hearken†
 eximō, ere, ēmi, ēptus take away, re-
 move†
 extrēma, ōrum n. final fate, death†
 famēs, is f. hunger†
 ferina, ae f. game, venison†
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
 gemō, ere, ui, itus groan (for), lament†
 Gyās, ae, acc. ān, m. a Trojan†
 herba, ae f. grass, herb(age)†*

impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill (with) (gen.)†*
 locō (1) place, locate, establish†
 Lycus, i m. a Trojan†
 mēnsa, ae f. table†*
 metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety†
 ministrō (1) tend, serve, supply
 Orontēs, is (i, ae) m. Trojan leader
 patior, i, passus endure, suffer*
 pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile†
 postquam after (that), when*
 praecipuē especially†
 removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove†
 requirō, ere, quisivi (sui), quisitus seek
 again, deplore†
 revocō (1) recall, restore
 sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech†
 seu, sive whether, or (if)†*
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation
 vetus, eris old, former, ancient*
 victus, ūs m. living, food, victuals†
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live†

a singular (collective) subject is common in many languages, including English; App. 236, a. *tremētia (frusta)*: the flesh of the recently slain animals is still quivering. *veribus*: abl. of means; App. 331.

213. (in) *litore*: abl. of place where; App. 319.

214. *viris*: acc. pl. of *vis*, an *i*-stem; observe the quantity, distinguishing it from *viris*, dat. or abl. of *vir*, *man*.

215. *implentur*: a middle voice or reflexive use; *they fill themselves*; App. 115, 2, a; 309. *Bacchī, ferinae*: gen. with special verb, *impleō*; App. 287. *Bacchus*: god of wine, by metonymy for wine.

216. *exēpta (est). mēnsae remōtae (sunt)*: in Vergil's day the tables were removed at the end of the banquet; so this phrase came to mean simply the end of the feasting. Vergil uses it here in that general sense, as Aeneas and

his companions presumably had no tables.

218. *inter spemque metumque dubiī*: anastrophe; App. 414. *seu (sociōs suōs) vivere crēdant*: deliberative indir. quest.; App. 348, 349; the clause is dependent on *dubiī*, which modifies *Teucri* understood as subject of *requirunt*.

219. *extrēma = mortem*: euphemism; App. 423. *vocātōs (sociōs)*: refers to the Roman custom (*conclāmātiō*) of loudly calling the name of the dead three times, as a part of the funeral ceremony.

220. *Praecipuē*: modifying *gemit*, not *pius*. *pius*: not *pious*, but *devoted, loyal, noble*; see note on *pietāte* (l. 10). *Aenēas ācris Orontī (cāsum gemit)*.

221. *sēcum = cum sē*; i.e., silently; for the thought compare ll. 208-209.

222. *fāta, Gyān, Cloanthum (gemit Aenēas)*. *fortem, fortem*: pathetic repetition. *Gyān*: acc., a Greek form.

*Et jam finis erat, cum Juppiter aethere summō
dispiciens mare vëlivolum terrâsque jacentis
litoraue et lâtôs populôs, sic vertice caeli*

225

*cōstitit et Libyâe dēfixit lūmina rēgnis.
Atque illum talis jactantē pectore cūrās
tristior et lacrimis oculôs suffūsa nitētis
adloquitur Venus:* "Ō quī rēs hominūnque deūnque

230

*aeternis regis imperiis et fulmine terrēs,
quid meus Aenēas in tē committere tantum,
quid Trōes potuēre, quibūs tot fūnera passis
cūctus ob Italiām terrārum clauditur orbis?*
Certē hinc Rōmānōs olīm polventibus annis,

adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost†
aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting*
aethēr, eris m. upper air, sky, ether*
annus, i m. year*
certē certainly, surely†
claudō, ere, si, sus close, shut*
committō, ere, misi, missus commit†
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast),
rest*
dēfigō, ere, fixī, fixus fix, fasten†
dispiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, discern,
descry†
fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning†*
fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster†*
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human*
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (outspread, low)*
jactō (1) toss, buffet, ponder*

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious†*
Libya, ae f. district of North Africa*
nitēs, entis bright, shining†
ob on account of (acc.)
olīm once, at some time*
orbis, is m. circle, orb, earth†*
patior, i, passus endure, suffer*
populus, i m. people, race, nation*
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct*
Rōmānus, a, um Roman*
suffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus fill, suffuse†
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify†
tot so many*
Trōs, Trōis m. Trojan*
vëlivolus, a, um winged with sails†
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty†*
vertex, icis m. summit, head, top*

223-296. Venus complains to Jupiter of the hard lot of the Trojans and of her son Aeneas. Jupiter consoles her with the promise of universal empire for the Trojans through their descendants, the Roman people.

223. finis (epulārum et dictōrum). There is a change of scene from earth to heaven. (dē) aethere summō: abl. of separation with dispiciens; App. 340.

224. vëlivolum: a transferred epithet, as it refers to the ships on the sea, instead of the sea itself; App. 446.

225. (in) vertice: abl. of place where.

226. lūmina = oculōs. rēgnis: dat. of direction or abl. of place where; App. 306, 319.

227-229. talis cūrās: such cares as were natural for the father of gods and king of men, with the government of the universe resting on his shoulders. (in) pectore: abl. of place where; App. 319. illum adloquitur Venus. tristior (quam solita): sadder (than was her wont); Venus as goddess of love and beauty, was pro-

verbially laughter-loving. lacrimis: abl. of means; App. 331. nitentis oculōs: acc. of respect with suffūsa, or else object of suffūsa used as a reflexive verb; App. 115, 2, a; 309.

229-230. Ō (tū) quī rēs regis et terrēs. regis: from regō not from rēx. -que...-que: both...and. de(ōr)um.

231. quid meus Aenēas tantum committere (potuit)? = What (so) great offense, etc. quid...quid: anaphora; App. 413.

232. potuēre = potuērunt (committere). quibus: dat. of reference or of interest; App. 301. fūnera: obj. of passis which modifies quibus; the Trojans had suffered many disasters (fūnera) in the destruction of their city and during the seven years thereafter, while they wandered as homeless exiles.

233. cūctus orbis terrārum: the whole world, an emotional exaggeration or hyperbole. ob Italiām: on account of Italy, which was destined to be the seat of a great new world-power hostile to Juno's cherished plans.

234-237. Certē pollicitus (es) hinc

- 235 *hinc fore ductōrēs, revocātō ā sanguine Teucrī,*
quī mare, quī terrās omnīs diciōne tenērent,
pollicitus. Quae tē, genitor, sententia vertit?
Hoc equidem occāsū Trojae tristisque ruīnās
solābar fātis contrāria fāta repēdēns;
 240 *nūc eadē fortūna virōs tot cāsibus actōs*
insequitur. Quē dās finē, rēx magne, labōrum?
Antēnor potuit mediīs elāpsus Achivīs
Illyricōs penetrāre sinūs atquē intima tūtus
rēgna Liburnōrum et fontē superāre Timāvī,
 245 *(unde per ora novem vastō cum murmure montis*
it mare prōruptum et pelagō premit arva sonānti.)

Achivus, a, um Achaean, Greek†

Antēnor, ōris m. Trojan leader, fled after the fall of Troy and settled in northern

Italy at Patavium, modern Padua†

contrārius, a, um opposite, opposing†

diciō, ōnis f. power, rule, sway†

ductor, ōris m. leader, chief

elābor, i, lāpsus slip out, escape†

equidem indeed, surely†*

fōns, fontis m. fountain, source†

Illyricus, a, um Illyrian, Dalmatian, of

Illyria, a region east of the Adriatic†

insequor, i, secūtus follow, pursue*

intimus, a, um inmost†

Liburnus, a, um Liburnian, Illyrian†

murmur, uris n. murmur, rumble, roar

novem nine†

occāsus, ūs m. fall, destruction†

penetrō (1) enter, penetrate†

polliceor, ēri, itus promise, offer†

premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, overwhelm*

prōruptus, a, um dashing, furious†

repēdō, ere, i, ēnsus balance, compensate†

revocō (1) recall, restore

ruīna, ae f. downfall, ruin

sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose†

sinus, ūs m. fold, gulf, bay*

sōlor, āri, ātus console, find consolation for†

sonō, āre, ui, itus (re)sound, roar*

superō (1) surpass, pass beyond†*

Teucer (crus), crī m. early king of Troy†

Timāvus, i m. river of northern Italy, runs underground about twenty-five miles and emerges near the upper end of the Adriatic Sea into which it flows with a strong current†

tot so many*

tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*

unde whence, from which (whom)*

vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change, rout*

Rōmānōs (futūrōs esse), hinc ductōrēs fore (= futūrōs esse) ā revocātō sanguine Teucrī. hinc = ex Aenēā et aliis Teucris. volentibus annis: as the years roll (by); abl. abs.; App. 343. hinc... hinc: anaphora; App. 413. quī... quī: anaphora; App. 413.

235. fore = futūrōs esse, inf. in indir. disc., dependent on pollicitus (es) in l. 237; App. 263, 390. ā revocātō sanguine: explaining hinc.

236. quī... tenērent: rel. clause of purpose or characteristic; App. 388, 389.

237. Quae tē sententia vertit: what idea turns you (from your earlier plan)? An opinion may change a person as well as a person may change an opinion.

238. Hōc: neut., abl. of cause or means, with this (hope). occāsū solābar: I tried to console myself for the fall; a con-

tive imperfect, denoting attempted action; App. 351, 2, a.

239. fātis: abl. of means or dat.; App. 331, 304.

240. Observe the asyndeton; App. 418. cāsibus: abl. of means; App. 331.

242. mediis Achivis: from the midst of the Greeks (fighting around Troy).

243. Illyricōs sinūs: the Adriatic was proverbial for its dangers to navigation. Liburnōrum: a wild and savage people, warlike and hostile to strangers. tūtus: in emphatic position, contrasting his present safety with the dangers previously indicated.

245. unde = ex quō fonte (Timāvī). Observe the alliteration; App. 411.

246. (Timāvus) it mare prōruptum: (the Timavus) goes (as) a dashing sea, to indicate the great volume, roar, and

*Hic tamen ille urbem Patavi sedesque locavit
Teucrorum et genti nomen dedit armaque fixit.
Trōia, nunc placidā compostus pace quiescit:
nōs, tua prōgeniēs, cāeli quibus adnuis arcem,
nāvibus (infandum!) āmissis ūnius ob iram
prōdimur atque Italīs longē disjungimur ōris.
Hic pietātis honōs? Sic nōs in scēptra repōnis?"*

250

*Olli subridēns hominū sator atque deōrum
vultū, quō cāelum tempestātēsque serēnat,*

255

oscula libavit nātae, dehinc tālia fatur:

"Parce metū, Cytherēa, manent immōta tuorum

adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod assent, promise†
āmittō, ere, misi, missus lose, let go*

compōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus compose,
construct, settle

Cytherēa, ae f. Venus, goddess of Cyth-
era, a Greek island where Venus was
born from the foam of the sea†

dehinc thence, thereafter

disjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus separate,
disconnect†

figō, ere, fixī, fixus fasten, fix*

homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human*

immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken†

infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed†

Italus, a, um Italian

libō (1) taste, touch; pour†

locō (1) place, locate, establish*

longē far (from), afar*

metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety*

nāta, ae f. daughter†

ob on account of (*acc.*)

ōsculum, i n. dainty lip, kiss†

parcō, ere, peperci (parsī), parsus spare
(*dat.*)†

Patavium, (i)ī n. city of northern Italy,
the modern Padua, about twenty miles
west of Venice†

pāx, pācis f. peace, quiet, rest†

pietās, ātis f. devotion, loyalty, duty*

placidus, a, um peaceful, calm, quiet*

prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, be-
tray†

prōgeniēs, ēi f. offspring, progeny

quiescō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, repose†*

repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus replace, re-
store

sator, ōris m. sower; begetter, father†

scēptum, i n. staff, scepter, power

serēnō (1) calm, clear†

subrideō, ēre, risī smile (at)†

tamen nevertheless, however†*

tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm*

Trōius, a, um Trojan*

vultus, ūs m. countenance, face*

strong current of the river. **pelagō:** with
its flood (sea). Observe the alliteration;
App. 411.

247. Hic: adverb, *here*; observe the
quantity. **Patavi:** appositional gen.;
App. 281.

248. arma fixit: dedicated his arms to
some divinity, by hanging them up in the
temple as a sign that he was at peace
with the world and would need them no
more.

249. nunc: asyndeton; App. 418.
compos(i)tus: shortened for metrical
reasons. Observe the alliteration; App.
411.

250. nōs: ego (Venus) et Aenēas et
alii Teucrī. Observe the effect obtained
by asyndeton; App. 418. **tua prōgeniēs:**
apposition with **nōs**. Venus was daughter
of Jupiter; Aeneas was her son. **caeli**

arcem: means that Aeneas shall become
a god; for only gods lived in heaven,
while ordinary mortals went to Hades
after death. **adnuis** referring to the
solemn nod of assent with which Jupiter
ratified his promises.

251. nāvibus āmissis: abl. abs.; App.
343. **ūnius = Jūnōnis.**

253. (estne) hic: for *hoc*; attracted
to the masculine gender of the predicate
noun **honōs**.

254. Olli = illi: dat. with compound;
App. 298.

256. tālia (dicta). nātae: added to in-
dicate that the kiss is due to the tender
affection of a father for his daughter.
dehinc: one syllable by synizesis; App.
403.

257. metū = metuī: dat. with special
verb; App. 297.

fāta tibi; cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīni
 moenia sublimemque ferēs ad sīdera caeli
 260 magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertit.
 Hic tibi (fābor enim, quandō haec tē cūra remordet,
 longius, et)volvēs fātōrum arcāna movēbō)
 bellum ingēns geret Itāliā populōsque ferōcis
 contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet,
 265 tertia dūm Latiō rēgnantem viderit aestās,
 tēnaque trānsierint Rutulis hiberna subāctis.
 At puer Ascaniūs, cui nūnc cognōmen Iūlo
 additur (Iūlus erat, dūm rēs stetit Īlia rēgnō),
 trīgintā magnōs vōlvendīs mēnsibus orbīs

addō, ere, didi, ditus add†
 aestās, ātis *f.* summer†
 arcānum, *i n.* secret, mystery†
 Ascanius, (i) *m.* son of Aeneas†*
 cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, cognomen†
 contundō, ere, tudī, tū(n)sus bruise,
 crush†
 enim for, indeed, truly*
 ferōx, ōcis fierce, savage, wild†
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wage*
 hiberna, ōrum *n.* winter (quarters)†
 Īlius, a, um Ilian, Trojan†
 Īlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas†*
 Iūlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas†*
 Latium, (i) *n.* district of central Italy*
 Lavinium, (i) *n.* city in central Italy†
 longē far (from), afar*
 magnanimus, a, um great-souled†

mēnsis, *is m.* month†
 mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law†*
 orbis, *is m.* circle, orb, revolution*
 populus, *i m.* people, race, nation*
 prōmittō, ere, misi, missus promise*
 quandō when, since†
 rēgnō (1) rule, reign
 remordeō, ēre, di, rsus gnaw, trouble†
 Rutulus, a, um Rutulian, of the Rutulians,
 a tribe of central Italy†
 sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose
 subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus subdued†
 sublimis, e on high, aloft, uplifted†
 ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes†
 tertius, a, um third†*
 trānseō, ire, īi, (ivī), itus pass (by)†
 trīgintā thirty†
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*

258. tibi: dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

259. sublimem: Aeneas shall become a god in heaven; an answer to Venus's complaint in l. 250.

260. neque mē sententia vertit: an answer to the reproachful question of Venus in l. 237. Aenēan: acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

261. Hic (Aenēās): subject of geret, l. 263. tibi: dat. of reference or ethical dat.; App. 301, 300.

262. longius . . . volvens: unrolling (the scroll) of the fates farther. In classical times books were written in the form of scrolls.

263. (Aenēās) bellum ingēns geret: referring to the war with Turnus in Italy, described in the last six books of the *Aeneid*. (in) Itāliā: abl. of place where; App. 319.

264. mōrēs, moenia; alliteration; App. 411. virīs (suīs).

265. dum viderit, trānsierint: future perf. with dum; App. 373. (Aenēan) rēgnantem.

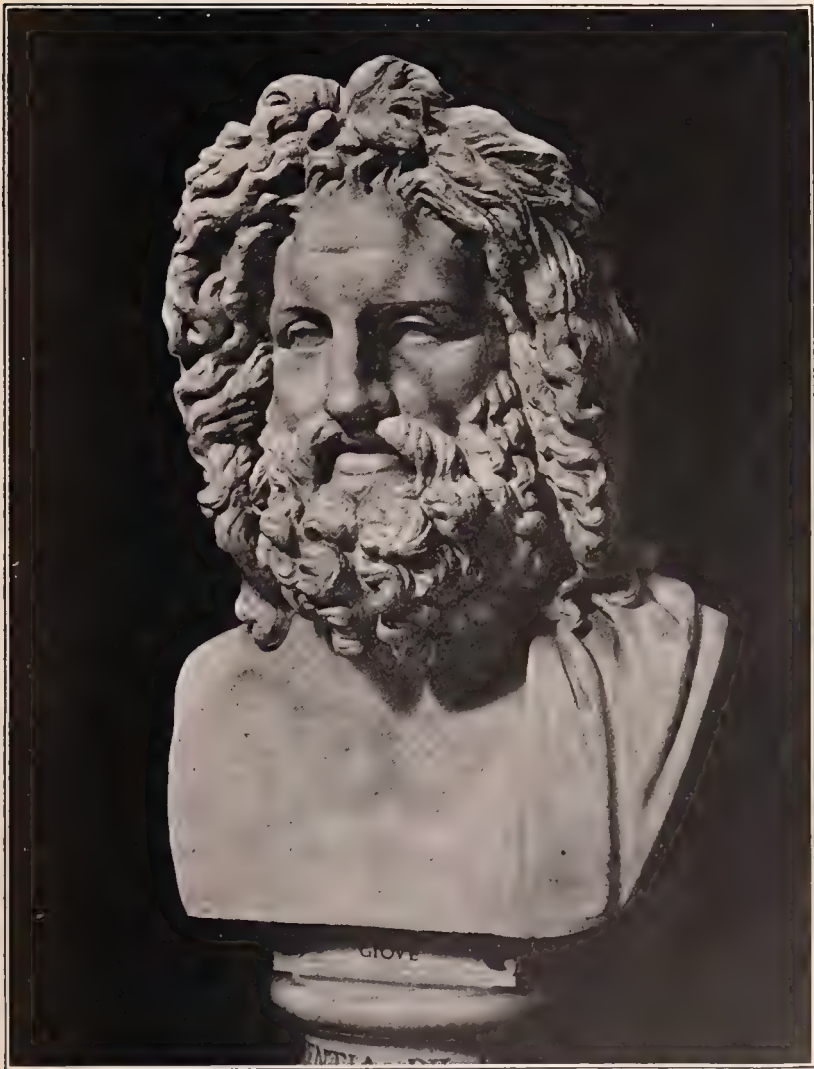
266. Rutulis subāctis: abl. abs. or dat. of reference; App. 343, 301. The Rutuli were a native Italian tribe hostile to Aeneas but whom he finally subdued. terna: three; the distributive is often employed instead of the cardinal with words used only in the plural. hiberna, winter quarters, hence winters, years.

267. Iūlō: dat. attracted to the case of cui; App. 242, 6. A reminder that the family of Julius Caesar, including Augustus, was descended from Aeneas, through Ascanius (Iulus). Īlus erat (cognōmen). rēs Īlia: the Ilian (Trojan) state.

268. rēgnō: abl. of respect; App. 325. dum stetit: App. 371.

269. orbis (annōrum): circles of years, poetic for years. vōlvendīs mēnsibus: with their swift passing months; abl. of quality or means, App. 330, 331.

Zeigma - physical thing + abstract



Alinari, Rome

JUPITER

Vatican Museum



Alinari, Rome

National Museum

MARS

In spite of his being god of War, Mars is frequently represented as a young and handsome boy.

*imperio explebit, regnumque ab sede Lavini
transferet, et Longam multā vi mūniet Albam.* 270

Hic jam ter centum totōs regnabitur annōs

gente sub Hectoreā, donec regina sacerdos

Marte gravis geminam partū dabit Ilia prolem.

Inde lupae fulvō nūtriciis tegmine laetus 275

Romulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia cōdet

mōenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dicet.

Hīs ego nec mētās rērū nec tempora pōnō:

Alba, ae f. Alba Longa, city of central

Italy†

annus, i m. year*

centum hundred†*

condō, ere, didi, ditus found, establish*

dōnec until, while, as long as†

excipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus take (up), in-
herit†

expleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill (out), fulfil†

fulvus, a, um tawny, yellow†

gravis, e heavy, grievous, pregnant*

Hectoreus, a, um Hectorean, of Hector,
leader of the Trojans†

īlius, a, um Ilīan, Trojan†

inde thence, afterward†*

Lavinium, (i) i n. city of central Italy

Longa, ae f. Alba Longa, a city in central
Italy, mother city of Rome

lupa, ae f. she-wolf†

Mars, Mārtis m. god of war†

Māvortius, a, um Martian, of Mars, god
of war†

mēta, ae f. goal, limit, bound†

mūnio, ire, ivi (ii), itus fortify†

nūtrix, icis f. nurse†

partus, ūs m. birth, offspring†

prōles, is f. offspring, progeny*

regnō (i) rule, reign

Rōmānus, a, um Roman*

Rōmulus, i m. legendary founder of Rome,
son of Mars and Rhea Silvia, a Vestal
virgin†

sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)†*

teg(i)men, inis n. covering, skin†

ter thrice, three times*

trānsferō, ferre, tuli, lātus transfer†

270. Lavini: appositional gen.; App.
281. Aeneas founded Lavinium, Ascanius
founded Alba Longa.

271. Longam Albam = Alba Longa;
according to tradition, Rome was founded
from Alba Longa, a city situated on a
long (Longa) white (Alba) ridge. multā
vi mūniet: alliteration; App. 411.

272. Hic: in Alba Longa. regnabitur:
impersonal, royal power shall be exercised.
annōs: acc. of duration of time; App.
314.

273-274. Hectoreā = Trojānā, since
Hector was the crown prince and the
greatest of the Trojans. regina sacerdos:
a princess priestess (of Vesta); she was the
daughter of King Numitor, and her name
was Rhea Silvia. donec Ilia regina sacer-
dos gravis Marte dabit prolem geminam
partū. Ilia (sacerdos): another name
for Rhea Silvia to indicate her connection
with Īlus (l. 268) and with Īlium (Troy).
Marte gravis: pregnant by Mars, the god
of war. geminam prolem: Romulus and
Remus. partū dabit: shall give by birth,
shall bear.

275. Inde: temporal, then. lupae fulvō

nūtriciis tegmine: interlocked order; App.
442. lupae nūtriciis: refers to the well
known story that Romulus and Remus
were suckled by a she-wolf. fulvō teg-
mine: abl. of cause with the adj. laetus;
App. 332. As a mark of honor to his
foster mother Romulus wore a wolfskin.

276. Māvortia: Romulus, the founder
of Rome, was the son of Mars (Māvors),
the patron deity of Rome.

277. dicet (= vocabit) (gentem) Rō-
mānōs: the name Romans being thus
fancifully derived from Romulus, in
accordance with the well-established
legend.

278. His (Rōmānis): dat. of reference;
App. 301. tempora = mētās temporum.
imperium sine fine (Rōmānis) dedi: a
magnificent climax; Aeneas is to rule
three years after his victory over the
Italian tribes (ll. 265-266), Ascanius for
thirty years (l. 272), while Rome is to have
dominion world without end. To preserve
the symmetry, Vergil represents Alba
Longa as ruling three hundred instead of
four hundred years, according to the more
generally accepted account.

- 280 *imperium sine fine dedi. Quin̄ aspera Jūnō,*
quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatigat,
cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit—
Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātā.
Sic placitum. Veniet lūstris lābentibus aetās
cum domus Assaracī Phthiā clārāsque Mycēnās
 285 *servitiō premet ac victis dominābitur Argis.*
Nāscētur pulchrā Trojānus origine Cāesar,
imperium Oceanō, fāmā quā terminet astris,
Jūlius, ā magnō dēmissum nōmen Iūlō.

aetās, ātis f. age, time†

Argi, ōrum m. Argos, city of southern Greece, home of Diomedes, a Greek chieftain against Troy

*asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce**

Assaracus, i m. early king of Troy†

*astrum, i n. star, constellation†**

Caesar, aris m. (1) Julius Caesar;

(2) Augustus Caesar†

*clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious†**

cōnsilium, (i) i n. plan, advice†

*dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down, drop, lower, derive†**

dominor, āri, ātus rule (over) (dat.)†

dominus, i m. lord, master†

fatigō (1) weary, tire (out)†

foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtus cherish, fondle

*Iūlus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas**

Jūlius, (i) i m. (1) Julius Caesar; (2) Augustus Caesar†

lūstrum, i n. space of five years, sacred season†

melior, ius better, superior†

*metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety**

Mycēnae, ārum f. city of central Greece, home of Agamemnon, leader of the

Greek expedition against Troy†

*nāscor, i, nātus be born, arise**

Oceanus, i m. ocean†

origō, inis f. origin, beginning, source†

Phthia, ae f. city and district of northern Greece, home of Achilles, a Greek chieftain against Troy†

placeō, ēre, ui, itus please (dat.)†

*premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press, subject**

*pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, illustrious**

*quin̄ nay (even), (but) that†**

*Rōmānus, a, um Roman**

servitium, (i) i n. slavery, bondage†

*sine without (abl.)**

terminō (1) bound, limit†

togātus, a, um toga-clad†

*Trojānus, a, um Trojan**

279. *Quin̄*: *yes, even*; introducing an almost unbelievable statement.

280. *metū*: *abl. of means*; App. 331; because of her fear for Carthage, as represented in ll. 19 ff.; cf. *id metuēns* in l. 23.

281. *in melius*: *for the better*.

282. *rērum*: *of the world*. -*que*: explicative, adding an explanatory statement. *togātā*: the toga was the characteristic Roman dress.

283. *Sic placitum (est)*: "It is thus decreed." *lūstris lābentibus*: *abl. abs.*; *as the years go gliding by*; note the alliteration; App. 411.

284. *domus Assaracī*: *the house of Assaracus*, a Trojan prince; i.e., the Romans, descendants of the Trojans, shall some day conquer and rule Greece. Greece was reduced to a Roman province in 146 B.C.

285. *victis Argis*: *dat. with special verb* or *abl. of place where*; App. 297, 319.

286. *pulchrā Trojānus origine Caesar*: *interlocked order*; App. 442. *pulchrā origine*: *abl. of quality*; App. 330. *Trojānus Caesar*: Augustus, who traced his ancestry back to Aeneas.

287. *(qui) imperium Ōceanō (terminet). qui terminet*: *rel. clause of purpose*; App. 388. *Ōceanō*: *abl. of means*. The ancients thought that Oceanus was a great river which flowed around the earth. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 12, 369-371:

"He shall ascend
The throne hereditary, and bound his reign

With earth's wide bounds, his glory with the heavens."

288. *Jūlius*: in apposition with *Caesar* (in l. 286), and referring to Augustus

*Hunc tū ōlīm caelō spoliis Orientis onustum
accipiēs sēcūra; vocābitur hic quoque vōtis.* 290
*Aspera tum positīs mītēscent saecula bellis;
cāna Fidēs et Vesta, Remō cum frātre Quirīnus
jūra dabunt; dirāe ferrō et compāgibus artis
claudētur Belli portae; Furor impius intus
saeva sedēns super arma et centum vinctus aēnis* 295

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen†
artus, a, um close (fitting)†
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
cānus, a, um white, gray, hoary†
centum hundred*
claudō, ere, si, sus (in)close, fasten*
compāgēs, is f. joint, seam, fastening
dirus, a, um dire, awful†
Fidēs, ei f. Faith, Honor†
frāter, tris m. brother*
Furor, ōris m. Madness, Rage, Frenzy
impius, a, um unholy, impious, dis-
loyal†
intus within
jūs, jūris n. justice, law, right†
mītēscō, ere become mild†

ōlīm once, at some time*
onustus, a, um laden, burdened†
Oriēns, entis m. Orient, the East†
porta, ae f. door, gate, opening*
Quirīnus, i m. Romulus, legendary
founder of Rome†
quoque also*
Remus, i m. twin brother of Romulus†
saeculum, i n. age, generation†
saevus, a, um cruel, fierce, stern*
sēcūrus, a, um free from care, untroubled†
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*
spolium, (i) n. spoils, booty, plunder†
Vesta, ae f. goddess of the hearth†
vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctus bind, tie†
vōtum, i n. prayer, vow†

Caesar who as the adopted son of Julius Caesar took this name. The name Julius was fancifully derived from Iulus, and the latter from Ilus, thus connecting the word with Ilus, one of the early kings of Ilium (Troy). Cf. note on l. 267.

289: (in) caelō: refers to the deification of Augustus, who was worshipped as a god and as the son of a god, Julius Caesar, even during his lifetime. *Hunc spoliis Orientis onustum*: refers to Augustus Caesar's conquests in the Orient, especially to his recovery from the Parthians of the Roman standards they had captured from Crassus in 53. B.C., and to his victory over Antony and Cleopatra at Actium in 31 B.C.

290. sēcūra: adjective modifying tū which is subject of accipiēs. hic (Caesar) quoque: he also, as well as Aeneas, will be worshipped (vocābitur) as a god; see ll. 259-260.

291. positīs bellis: abl. abs.; App. 343. A prophecy of the golden age of peace, when all wars shall cease. *Aspera positīs saecula bellis*: interlocked order; App. 442. This and the following lines (292-296) refer to the expected return of the Golden Age, which was ardently hoped for and often prophesied in antiquity, when all the world would be good

and happy; faith and honor and peace and love would prevail: and sin and wickedness, suffering and sorrow, would be no more.

292. cāna Fidēs: one of the earliest shrines at Rome was dedicated to the goddess Fides. This line is usually interpreted symbolically: Fides and Vesta represent the honor and sanctity of the old Roman home, while the reconciliation of Romulus and Remus, once estranged, symbolizes the reconciliation of the two chief parties at Rome, long engaged in deadly civil war.

293. ferrō et compāgibus artis: abl. of means with claudētur, l. 294.

294. claudētur Belli portae: apparently referring to the temple of Janus, the doors of which were opened in time of war and closed in time of peace. Augustus closed the temple in 29 B.C., after it had remained continuously opened for more than two centuries. It had been closed only twice before since the foundation of Rome. impius: referring to the unholy spirit of civil war.

295. saeva sedēns super: alliteration; App. 411.

295-296. vinctus post tergum: (his hands) bound behind his back. ōre: abl. of means or cause, with fremet; App.

post tergum nōdis fremet horridus ore cruentō.”

Haec ait et Majā genitum dēmittit ab altō,
ut terrae utque novae pateant Karthāginis arcēs
hospitiō Teucrīs, nē fātī nescia Dīdō
300 finibus arcēret. Volat ille per aera magnum
rēmigiō alārū ac Libyaē citus astitit ōris.
Et jam iussa facit, pōnuntque ferōcia Poenī
corda, volente deō; in primīs rēgīna quiētum
accipit in Teucrōs animū mentemque benignam.
305 At pius Aenēas per noctem plūrima volvēns,
ut prīmū lūx alma data est, exīre locōsque

āēr, aeris, acc. aera, m. air, mist, fog†
āla, ae f. wing†*
almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)†
altum, i n. the deep (sea); heaven
arceō, ēre, uī keep off, defend
a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (on, at) (dat.)*
benignus, a, um kind(ly), benign†
citus, a, um quick, swift†
cor, cordis n. heart, spirit, feelings*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel†
dēmittō, ere, mīsi, missus send down,
drop*
exeō, īre, īi (ivī), itus go out†
ferōx, ōcis fierce, savage, wild
fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar*
gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget†
horridus, a, um horrible, bristling†

hospitium, (i)ī n. hospitality, welcome†
jussum, i n. command, order
Karthāgō, inis f. great commercial city
of North Africa, rival of Rome
Libya, ae f. district of North Africa*
Maja, ae f. daughter of Atlas and mother
of Mercury, messenger of the gods†
nescius, a, um ignorant, unaware†
nōdus, i m. knot†
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend†
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Cartha-
ginian†
post behind, after (acc.); after(ward)†*
quiētus, a, um calm, peaceful
rēmigium, (i)ī n. oarage, rowing†
tergum, (i)ī n. back, hide, rear
volō (i) fly, speed*

331, 332. fremet: from rage at not being able to indulge in his favorite sport of encouraging fratricidal strife.

297-304. Mercury is sent to Dido, at Carthage, to prepare the way for Aeneas and the Trojans.

297. ait: third sing. of ajō. Majā: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. Majā genitum: the son of Maja.

298-300. pateant, arcēret: purpose; App. 359; observe the difference in tense, made possible by the fact that the principal verb, dēmittit, as a historical present may be considered either primary or secondary; App. 353, a; 351, 1, a.

299. hospitiō Teucrīs: two datives; App. 301, 303; or hospitiō may be abl. of manner; App. 328. fātī nescia Dīdō: i.e., Dido might not know that the Trojans were fated to settle in Italy and might repel them from her land as possible invaders.

300. (ā) finibus. (Teucrōs) arcēret: negative purpose; App. 359. aera: acc. sing. from āēr, a Greek form; App. 68.

301. rēmigiō: abl. of means; App. 331; a metaphor from the sea; App. 432. astitit: perfect, to denote instantaneous action, after the historical present, volat. (in) ōris.

303. deō volente: abl. abs.; App. 343. in primis: among the first, especially. rēgīna: Dido.

304. in: toward.

305-417. Aeneas sets out to explore the unknown region, and meets his mother Venus disguised as a huntress. The goddess tells him that he is near Carthage, relates the history of Dido, announces the safety of his remaining ships, resumes her form as a divinity, and disappears.

305. plūrima (mente) volvēns.

306-309. ut primum: when first, as soon as. exīre, explorāre, quaerere, referre: depend on cōstituit in l. 309. Aenēas cōstituit exīre locōsque novōs explorāre, quaerere quās ōrās accesserit ventō (et quaerere) quī teneant (illōs locōs) referreque exācta sociis (suis).

explorāre novōs, quās ventō accesserit ōrās,
quī teneant (nam inculta videt), hominēsne feraene,
quaerere cōstituit sociisque exācta refēre.

Classem in convexō nemorū sub rūpe cavātā 310

arboribus clausam circum atque horrentibus umbrīs

occulit; ipse unō graditur comitātus Achātē

bīna manū lātō crispāns hāstilia ferrō.

Cui mātēr mediā sēsē tulit ōbvia silvā

virginis ōs habitūque gerēns et virginis arma 315

Spartānae, vel quālis equōs Thrēissa fatigat

Harpalcē volucemque fugā praevertitur Hebrum.

Namque umeris dē mōre hābilem suspenderat arcum

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach, reach

Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of Aeneas*

arbōs (or), oris f. tree†

arcus, ūs m. bow*

bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos†

cavō (1) hollow (out)†

claudō, ere, si, sus (in)close, hem in*

comitō (1) accompany, attend†

cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, resolve†

convexum, i n. hollow, valley, sky†

crispō, āre, ātus brandish, wave†

exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive out; deter-
mine, discover

explorō (1) explore, search (cut)

fatigō (1) weary, tire (out)

fera, ae f. wild beast, animal†

gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wear*

gradior, i, gressus march, go, proceed†

hābilis, e easily handled, handy†

habitus, ūs m. appearance, garb†

Harpalcē, ēs f. Thracian princess and
huntress, renowned for her speed†

hastile, is n. spear(-shaft), lance†

Hebrus, i m. slow Thracian river which

Vergil thought fast†

homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, hu-
man*

horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble*

incultus, a, um untilled, wild†

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*

mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, law*

nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest*

obvius, a, um in the way, to meet (dat.)†

occulō, ere, uī, ltus hide, conceal†

praevertor, i, rsus outstrip, surpass†

quālis, e of what kind, such (as)†*

rūpēs, is f. cliff, crag, rock*

Spartānus, a, um Spartan, of Sparta, in
southern Greece†

suspendō, ere, i, ēnsus suspend, hang†*

Thrēissa, ae f. Thracian, of Thrace, a
district northeast of Greece†

virgō, inis f. girl, maid(en)†*

volucer, cris, cre swift, winged†*

307. quās (ōrās) accesserit, quī (eās)
teneant: indir. questions dependent on
quaerere; App. 349. ventō: abl. of
means or cause; App. 331, 332.

308. (ea esse) inculta: ea is neuter
plural and refers to both locōs and ōrās,
one a masc. and the other a fem. noun;
for its gender see App. 239, b. videt:
with the final syllable long under the
metrical accent and before the pause;
App. 394, a. hominēsne feraene (sint).
-ne, -ne: whether, or.

309. sociis: indirect object. exācta:
substantively, the things determined,
learned.

311. horrentibus umbris: a trans-
ferred epithet; horrentibus belongs logi-
cally to the trees (arboribus) but is
transferred to their shadows (umbris);
App. 446. Cf. horrenti umbrā (l. 165)
and note. circum: adverb, round about.

312. ipse (Aenēas): the master; see
note on ipsius (l. 114). unō = sōlō, a
common meaning. unō Achātē: abl. of
accompaniment without the preposition
or ablative of means.

313. bīna: this distributive numeral is
often used instead of the cardinal duo with
objects that go in pairs. manū: abl. of
place or means. lātō ferrō: with broad
iron (point); abl. of quality; App. 330.

314. Cui: Aeneas, dat. with obvia
which modifies mātēr. (in) mediā silvā.

316. vel (tālis virginis) quālis...
fatigat Harpalcē: or (of) such a girl as
the Thracian Harpalyce (when she) tires
the horses (by outstripping them in a
race).

317. Harpalcē: nom., a Greek form.
fugā: in her swift course. abl. of means;
App. 331.

318. (dē or in) umeris.

- vēnātrix *dederātque* comam diffundere *ventis*,
 320 nūda genū nōdōque sinūs collēcta fluētis.
Ac prior "Heus," inquit, "juvenēs, mōnstrāte, *meārū*
vidistis sī quam hīc errantē forte sorōrū
succinctam pharetrā et maculōsae tēgmine lyncis,
aut spūmantis aprī cūsum clāmōre prementem."
 325 *Sic* Venus; *et Veneris contrā sic* filiū orsus:
"Nulla tuārū audita mihi neque vīsa sorōrū,
Ō quā tē memōrē virgō? *Namque* *haud tibi* vultus
 mortālis, *nec vōx* hominem sonat; *Ō, dea* certē
 (an Phoebi soror? An nymphārū sanguinis ūna?),
 330 *sīs* fēlix *nostrumque* levēs, quaecumque, *labōrē*

an *interrog.* or, whether†
 aper, pri *m.* wild boar†
 certē certainly, surely
 colligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, col-
 lect
 coma, ae *f.* hair†
 contrā opposite, in turn*
 diffundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus scatter†
 fēlix, icis happy, blessed; propitious†
 filiū, (i) *m.* son†
 fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow†
 genū, ūs *n.* knee†
 heus ho! hallo!†
 homō, inis *m.* (f.) man, mortal, human*
 inquam, is, it say†
 juvenis, is *m.* (f.) youth, young (man,
 woman)†
 levō (l) lift, lighten
 lynx, lyncis *m.* (f.) lynx, wild cat†
 maculōsus, a, um spotted†
 memorō (l) recount, (re)call, relate*
 mōnstrō (l) show, point out†
 mortālis, e mortal, human†
 nōdus, i *m.* knot

nūdus, a, um nude, bare†
 nymp̄ha, ae *f.* nymph, a minor divinity,
 represented in the form of a beautiful
 maiden
 ordior, iri, orsus begin, undertake†
 pharetra, ae *f.* quiver†
 Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy, brother of Diana, god-
 dess of the chase†
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
 control, pursue*
 prior, ius former, first†
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 whoever, whichever, whatever*
 sinus, ūs *m.* fold, hollow, bay*
 sonō, āre, ūi, itus (re)sound, roar*
 soror, ōris *f.* sister, comrade*
 spūmō (l) foam, froth, spray†
 succingō, ere, cinxi, cinctus gird (up)†
 teg(i)men, inis *n.* cover(ing), skin
 vēnātrix, icis *f.* huntress†
 Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
 virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)*
 vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

319. vēnātrix: (as a) huntress. diffun-
 dere: the inf. of purpose, a poetic use;
 App. 261.

320. genū: acc. of respect; App. 311.
 sinūs: acc., object of collēcta used as a
 middle voice; App. 309; refers to her
 flowing robes.

321. prior: first, before Aeneas could
 speak.

322. quam: indef., any (one). sī
 vidistis quam meārū sorōrū hīc er-
 rantem, mōnstrāte (eam mihi).

325. Sic Venus (dixit). Venus, Ve-
 neris filiū: brought together in the
 sentence, emphasizing that Venus and
 Aeneas do not here meet as mother and
 son. orsus (est).

326. Nulla (soror). audita (est) mihi.
 mihi: dat. of agent; App. 302; for the
 length of the final i, see the note on mihi,
 (l. 8).

327. quam tē (esse) memorem: whom
 (what) shall I call you? memorem is
 deliberative subj.; App. 348. tibi: dat.
 of possession. vultus (est) mortālis.

328. nec vōx hominem sonat: nor does
 your voice sound human; hominem is
 cognate acc.; App. 313.

329. an Phoebe soror (es)? Phoebe
 soror: i.e., Phoebe, Diana, "the huntress
 queen, chaste and fair." sanguinis =
 generis: part. gen. with ūna.

330. sis, levēs: vol. or opt. subj.;
 App. 253, 254. quaecumque (es).

*et quō sub caelō tandem, quibus orbis in ōrīs
jactēmur doceās; ignārī hominumque locōrumque
terrāmus ventō hūc vastīs et flūctibus āctī:
multa tibi ante ārās nostrā cadet hostiā dextrā."*

*Tum Venus: "Haud equidem tālī mē dignor honōre; 335
virginibus Tyriīs mōs est gestāre pharetram
purpureōque altē sūrās vincire coturnō.
Pūnica rēgna vidēs, Tyriōs et Agēnoris urbem;
sed finēs Libycī, genus intractābile bellō.
Imperium Dīdō Tyriā regit urbe profecta, 340
germānum fugiēs. Longa est injūria, longae
ambāgēs; sed summa sequar fastigia rērum.
Huic conjūnx Sŷchaeus erat, ditissimus agri*

Agēnor, oris *m.* king of Phoenicia†
ager, gri *m.* land, field, territory†*
altē on high, high up†
ambāgēs, is *f.* turning, devious tale†
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cot(h)urnus, i *m.* high boot, buskin†
dignor, āri, ātus deem worthy (*abl.*)†
di(ve)s, di(vi)tis rich, wealthy (*gen.*)†
doceō, ēre, ui, ctus teach, tell†*
equidem indeed, surely*
fastigium, (i) i *n.* summit, top, point†
germānus, i *m.* brother†*
gestō (1) bear, wear, carry†
homō, inis *m.* (f). man, mortal, hu-
man*
hostia, ae *f.* victim, sacrifice†
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
injūria, ae *f.* wrong, insult, injustice

intractābilis, e unmanageable, intract-
able†
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-
trict of North Africa†*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, manner, law*
orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, world*
pharetra, ae *f.* quiver
proficiscor, i, fectus set out, depart†
Pūnicus, a, um Phoenician, Punic,
Carthaginian†
purpureus, a, um purple, crimson†
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct*
sūra, ae *f.* (calf of) leg†
Sŷchaeus, i *m.* deceased husband of Dido†
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctus bind, tie
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)*

331-332. *et (mē) doceās sub quō caelō
tandem (jactēmur), in quibus ōrīs orbis
(terrārum) jactēmur. quō sub caelō . . .
jactēmur:* indir. quest.; App. 349. *do-
ceās:* vol. or opt. subj.; App. 253, 254.
-*que:* with the final *e* elided before the
initial vowel of the next verse. Such a
verse is called *hypermetric*; App. 402.

333. *ventō, flūctibus:* *abl.* of means;
App. 331. *vastis:* construe with *flūcti-
bus*.

334. *multa hostia cadet tibi nostrā
dextrā (manū) ante ārās (tuās):* Aeneas
promises a generous sacrifice to this un-
known goddess, if she will grant his
prayer. He wishes to make a good
bargain, representing the proverbial *dō
ut dēs* of Roman religion. *nostrā (= meā)
dextrā (manū):* *abl.* of means.

335-336. *Tum Venus (dixit). honōre:*
abl. with *dignor*; App. 337, a. *virginibus:*
dat. of possession or reference; App.
299, 301. *Tyriis:* Carthage was settled

from Tyre; cf. *Tyrii tenuere colōni*
(l. 12).

336-337. "Do not think me a goddess
because I bear a bow and quiver, and am
dressed in hunting costume. This is
customary among Tyrian girls."

337. *purpureō:* Tyrian "purple"
(really scarlet) was famous.

338. *Pūnica:* a word related to
Phoenician. *Agēnoris:* as a Phoenician
settlement, Carthage could be called the
city of Agenor, founder of the Phoenician
race.

339. *finēs (sunt) Libycī. genus:* in ap-
position with Libyans, implied in *Libycī*.

340. (ex) *Tyriā urbe profecta:* *having
come from Tyre*.

341. *Longa est injūria = longum est
dicere (nārrare) injūriam:* *the story of
her wrongs is a long one. longae (sunt).*

343. *Huic (Didōni):* *dat.* of possession;
App. 299. *agri:* *gen.* with *adj.* *ditis-
simus:* App. 287; *richest in land*.

- 345 *Phoenicum, et magnō miserae dilēctus amōre,*
cui pater intāctam dederat primisque jugārat
ōminibus. Sed rēgna Tyri germānus habēbat
Pygmalion, scelere ante aliōs immānior omnis.
Quōs inter medius vēnit furor, Ille Sychaeum
impius ante ārās atque aurī caecus amōre
350 *clam ferrō incautum superat, sēcūrus amōrum*
germānae; factumque diū cēlāvit et aegram
multa malus simulāns vānā spē lūsit amantem.
Ipsa sed in somnīs inhumātī vēnit imāgō
conjugis ōra modīs attollēns pallida miris;
355 *crūdēlis ārās trājectaque pectora ferrō*
nūdāvit, caecumque domus scelus omne retēxit.

aeger, gra, grum sick (at heart), weary*
amāns, antis *m. (f.)* lover†
attollō, ere lift, raise†*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark†*
cēlō (1) hide, conceal†
clam secretly†
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce*
diligō, ere, lēxi, lēctus love, cherish†
diū a long time, long†
factum, i *n.* deed, undertaking, exploit†*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, rage*
germāna, ae *f.* sister
germānus, i *m.* brother*
imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost†*
impius, a, um unholy, unnatural, dis-
loyal
incautus, a, um unsuspecting, careless†
inhumātus, a, um unburied†
intāctus, a, um untouched, virgin†
jugō (1) join, unite, yoke together†
lūdō, ere, si, sus sport, deceive, mock†

malus, a, um bad, evil, wicked*
mirus, a, um wonderful, marvelous†
modus, i *m.* manner, measure†*
nūdō (1) bare, expose
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, auspices†*
pallidus, a, um pale†
Phoenix, icis *m.* Phoenician†
Pygmalion, ōnis *m.* wicked brother of
Dido†
retegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus uncover, dis-
close†
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin†*
sēcūrus, a, um free from care, careless,
heedless (*gen.*)
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign
spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation*
superō (1) overcome, surpass; kill*
Sychaeus, i *m.* deceased husband of Dido
trājiciō, ere, jēci, jectus pierce†
Tyrus, i *f.* famous city of Phoenicia†
vānus, a, um empty, idle, false†

344. (Didōnī) miserae: dat. of agent;
App. 302.

345. pater = Bēlus. (eam = Didōnem)
intāctam. jugā(ve)rat. ōminibus: abl.
of means; App. 331; by metonymy for
marriage, since the omens were always
consulted for weddings; App. 433.

347. scelere: abl. of respect with im-
mānior; App. 325.

348-351. inter quōs = inter Pygmalio-
nem et Sychaeum; anastrophe; App.
414. Ille (= Pygmalion) impius atque
caecus amōre aurī, sēcūrus amōrum ger-
mānae (suae), clam ferrō superat Sy-
chaeum incautum ante ārās. Observe
how strongly the speaker portrays the
wicked character of Pygmalion and his
disregard for all human or divine consid-
erations.

349. amōre: abl. of cause; App. 332.

350. amōrum: obj. gen. with adj.
sēcūrus; App. 284; *reckless of his sister's*
love (for her husband):

351. aegram: modifies amantem,
which is used substantively, *lover, loving*
wife.

352. multa simulāns: to account for
the absence of Sychaeus. lūsit vānā spē
(Didōnem) aegram amantem; sed ipsa
imāgō inhumātī conjugis (Sychaei) vēnit
in somnīs (ad eam = Didōnem).

353. inhumātī: the ancients believed
that unless the corpse were properly
buried, the ghost of the dead would wan-
der restlessly about.

354. modīs miris: alliteration; abl. of
manner, with pallida; App. 328.

355. ārās, pectora: poetic plural. ferrō:
abl. of means.

356. domūs: gen.

*Tum celerāre fugam patriāque excēdere suādet
auxiliumque viāe veterēs tellūre recludit
thēsaurōs, ignōtum argentī pondus et aurī.
His commōta fugam Didō sociōsque parābat.
Conveniunt quibūs aut odium crūdēle tyrannī
aut metus ācer erat; nāvīs, quae forte parātae,
corripiunt onerantque aurō. Portantur avārī
Pygmalionis opēs pelagō; dux fēmina factī.
Dēvēnēre locōs ubi nunc ingentia cernēs
moenia surgentemque novae Karthāginis arcem,
mercātique solum, factī dē nōmine Byrsam,
taurīnō quantum possent circumdare tergō.*

360

365

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
argentum, i n. silver†
auxilium, (i) i n. help, aid, assistance†*
avārus, a, um covetous, greedy†
Byrsa, ae f. citadel of Carthage†
celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed†
circumdō, are, dedī, datus surround
commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move,
arouse
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come together,
assemble†
corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up),
seize*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce*
dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus arrive (at)†
dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief-
tain†*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, de-
part†
factum, i n. deed, undertaking, exploit*
fēmina, ae f. woman†
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange†

Karthāgō, inis f. great commercial city of
North Africa, rival of Rome
mercōr, āri, ātus buy, purchase†
metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety*
odium, (i) i n. hate, hatred, enmity†
onerō (1) load, burden
ops, opis f. help, resources, wealth, power*
patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
pondus, eris n. weight, burden†
portō (1) carry (off), bear, bring*
Pygmalion, ōnis m. wicked brother of
Dido
quantus, a, um how great, how much,
how many, as much (as)†*
recludō, ere, sī, sus disclose, reveal†
solum, i n. soil, ground, earth†*
suādeō, ēre, āsī, āsus advise, urge†
taurinus, a, um of a bull†
tergum, i n. back, hide*
thēsaurus, i m. treasure, hoard†
tyrannus, i m. tyrant, usurper, ruler†
vetus, eris old, ancient, former*

357. suādet: the ghost urges Dido to flee. celerāre, excēdere: infinitives with suādet; ordinary prose would employ ut with the subjunctive.

358. auxilium viāe: (as) an aid for her flight; auxilium is in apposition with thēsaurōs. veterēs: and so unknown to Pygmalion.

360. His (dictis Sychaei).

361. (illi) conveniunt. tyrannī: of Pygmalion; obj. gen. with odium and metus; App. 284.

362. parātae (sunt).

364. pelagō: abl. of route; App. 338. opēs: the Roman historian Tacitus (Annals, 16, 1) says that the Emperor Nero sent a commission to Carthage to find the gold which Dido had brought and presumably buried there. fēmina (erat) dux facti: compare the inscription Dux

fēmina facti which was stamped on the medals struck to commemorate the defeat of the Spanish Armada by the British in 1588, while Elizabeth was queen of England.

365. Dēvēnēre = dēvēnērunt; App. 204, 4. (ad or in) locōs; acc. of place whither; App. 315.

367. mercātī (sunt). (tantum) solum (vocātum) Byrsam: (as much) ground or land (called) Byrsa. Byrsam: a Greek word meaning bull's hide, later confused with the Carthaginian (Punic) word bosra, meaning citadel; hence the story that the Libyan natives agreed to sell to the Phoenicians as much land as could be covered with a bull's hide and that the Carthaginians cut the hide into long strips, thus securing a considerable area.

- Sed vōs quī tandem? Quibus aut vēnistis ab ōris?*
 370 *Quōve tenētis iter?" Quaerentī tālibus ille*
suspirāns īmōque trahēns ā pectore vōcem:
"Ō dea, sī primā repetēns ab origine pergam
et vacet annālīs nostrōrum audire labōrum,
ante diem clausō compōnet Vesper Olympō. 380
 375 *Nōs Trojā antiquā, sī vestrās forte per aurīs*
Trojae nōmen īt, diversa per aequora vectōs
forte suā Libycis tempestās appulit ōris.
Sum pius Aenēās, raptōs quī ex hoste penātīs
classe vehō mēcūm, fāmā super aethera nōtus.
 380 *Italiam quaerō patriam et genus ab Jove summō.*
Bis dēnis Phrygium cōnscendī nāvibus aequor,

aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky,
 ether*
 annālīs, is m. story, record, annals†
 appellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive to (dat.)†
 auris, is f. ear*
 bis twice*
 claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, fasten*
 compōnō, ere, posui, positus compose,
 construct, settle
 cōnscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, embark
 dēni, ae, a ten (each), by tens†
 diversus, a, um scattered, various*
 hostis, is m. (f.) stranger, enemy, foe†*
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey†*
 Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-
 trict of North Africa*
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar†*

Olympus, ī m. Greek mountain, home of
 the gods, heaven†
 origō, inis f. origin, beginning, source
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
 penātēs, ium m. household gods*
 pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrēctus proceed†
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (up), rob*
 repetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus seek again, repeat,
 retrace†
 suspirō (1) draw a deep breath, sigh†
 tempestās, ātis f. tempest, storm; time*
 vacō(1) be free (from), be at leisure†
 vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey*
 Vesper, eris (eri) m. (god of the) evening
 (star)†
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*

369. *Sed quī (estis) vōs?* It is Aeneas's turn to speak.

370. (*Venerī quaerentī tālibus (vōci- bus) ille (Aenēās dixit).*)

372. *Ō dea:* Aeneas insists upon his contention that he is addressing a goddess, in spite of Venus's denial (ll. 335-337); or is it merely flattery paid to a beautiful young woman? *Si pergam (dicere annālīs nostrōrum labōrum):* a future less vivid condition; App. 381.

372-373. *et (si) vacet (tibi):* and if you should have the leisure; *vacet* is used impersonally. *audire:* inf. of purpose; App. 261.

374. *ante:* sooner, that is, than my story would be told. *clausō Olympō:* abl. abs.; when Phoebus, the sun god, returned to Olympus at the end of the day, the doors of heaven were closed for the night.

375-377. *tempestās suā forte appulit nōs vectōs (ab) antiquā Trojā — sī forte*

nōmen Trojae iit per auris vestrās — per diversa aequora Libycis ōris (= ad Libycās ōrās). *Nōs:* acc., obj. of *appulit*, in l. 377. *Trojā antiquā (vectōs):* abl. of place whence without a preposition; App. 320, a.

377. *forte suā:* contrary to the plans and desires of Aeneas. *ōris:* dat. with a compound; App. 298.

378. *pius:* see the note on *pietāte* (l. 10) and on *pius* (l. 220).

379. *classe:* abl. of means. *fāmā:* abl. of cause or means; App. 331, 332. Naive self-esteem, not conceit. *aethera:* acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

380. (*quaerō Italiam patriam et genus (patrium) ab Jove:* refers to the legend that Dardanus, the son of Jupiter and Electra, and founder of the Trojan race, had formerly lived in Italy.

381. *Bis dēnis:* twice ten; more poetic than simply *twenty*. With adverbs of multiplication, as *bis*, etc., the distribu-

*mātre deā mōnstrante viam data fāta secūtus;
vix septem convulsae undīs Eurōque supersunt.
Ipse ignōtus, egēns, Libyae dēserta peragrō,
Eurōpā atque Asiā pulsus.” Nec plūra querentem*
passa Venus mediō sic interfāta dolōre est:

385

“Quisquis es, haud, crēdō, invīsus caelestibus aurās
vītālīs carpis, Tyriam quī advēneris urbem.
Perge modo atque hīc tē rēgīnae ad līmīna perfer.
Namque tibi reducēs sociōs classemque relātam
nuntiō et in tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus āctam,
nī frūstrā augurjū vānī docuēre parentēs.
Aspice bis sēnōs laetāntīs agmine cyeonōs,

390

adveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus arrive, reach†
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
Asia, *ae f.* Asia (Minor)†
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look
att*
augurium, (i)ī *n.* augury, prophecy†
bis twice*
caelestēs, ium *m. (f.)* divinities, gods
carpō, ere, psi, ptus pluck, take, consume†
convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear, shatter†
crēdō, ere, didi, dītus believe, trust*
cycnus, ī *m.* swan†
dēsertum, ī *n.* desert, waste†
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, instruct*
dolor, ōris *m.* pain, grief, anger, passion*
egeō, ēre, uī be needy, lack†
Eurōpā, *ae f.* Europe†
Eurus, ī *m.* (east) wind
frūstrā in vain, uselessly†
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
interfor, fārī, fātus interrupt†
invīsus, a, um hateful, hated, odious

laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult†
Libya, *ae f.* district of North Africa*
modo only, (just) now†
mōnstrō (ī) show, point out*
nī, nisi if not, unless, except*
nuntiō (ī) announce†
patior, ī, passus suffer, endure, allow*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive, force†
peragrō (ī) wander through†
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, betake†
pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrēctus proceed
queror, ī, questus complain, lament†
quisquis, quicquid whoever, whatever†
redux, ucis led back, restored†
sēnī, *ae, a* six (each), by sixes†
septem seven
supersum, esse, fuī survive, remain†
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
vānus, a, um empty, idle, false
Venus, eris *f.* goddess of love and beauty*
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*
vītālīs, e of life, vital†

tive numerals are commonly employed instead of the cardinals. Phrygium aequor: the sea near Troy. nāvibus: abl. of means; App. 331.

382. (meā) mātre deā mōnstrante: abl. abs.; App. 343.

384. (ego) ipse ignōtus: his person is unknown at present, even though his fame is widespread (l. 379).

385. (ex) Eurōpā, (ex) Asiā: ablatives of separation. Eurōpā = Italiā: due to Juno's interference; compare ll. 251-252. Asiā = Trojā: because of the destruction of Troy. plūra (Aenēān) querentem. Venus nōn passa (eum = Aenēān) querentem plūra (= queri plūra) sic interfāta (est in) mediō dolōre. plūra: obj. of querentem; Aenēān is understood as object of passa.

387-388. haud invīsus: this figure of

speech is called *litotes*; App. 431. caelestibus: dat. with invīsus. aurās vītālīs carpis: you breathe, live. quī advēneris: rel. clause of characteristic, with additional idea of cause; App. 389. (ad) urbem.

389. perfer: imp. of perferō; App. 202.

390-391. classem: his twelve lost ships. nam tibi nuntiō sociōs (tuōs esse) reducēs classemque (tuam esse) relātam et āctam in tūtum versīs Aquilōnibus.

391. in tūtum (portum). versīs Aquilōnibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. āctam: from agō; modifies classem.

392. docuēre = docuērunt (mē).

393. sēnōs: see note on dēnis (l. 381). The two groups of swans, which had been separated through fright and had reunited after the danger was past, correspond to

395 aetheriā quōs lāpsa plagā Jovis āles apertō
turbābat caelō; nunc terrās ordine longō
aut capere aut captās jam dēspectāre videntur:
ut reducēs illi lūdunt stridentibus ālis
et coetū cīnxere polūm cantūsque dedere,
400 haud aliter puppēsque tuae pūbēsque tuōrum
aut portum tenet, aut plēnō subit ōstia vëlō,
Perge modo et, quā tē dūcit via, dērige gressum."

*Dixit et āvertēns roseā cervīce refulsit,
ambrosiaequē comae dīvinum vertice odōrem
spīrāvēre; pedēs vestis dēflūxit ad imōs;*

aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal†
āla, ae f. wing*
āles, itis m. (f.) bird, fowl†
aliter otherwise†
ambrosius, a, um ambrosial, immortal†
apertus, a, um open(ed), clear
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (aside), avert*
cantus, ūs m. song, melody, music†
cervix, icis f. neck†
cīngō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus encircle, gird*
coetus, ūs m. company, band, flock†
coma, ae f. hair*
dēfluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow down†
dērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus direct, guide†
dēspectō (1) look down (on)†
dīvinus, a, um divine, holy†
gressus, ūs m. step, walk, gait†
lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, mock

modo only, (just) now
odor, ōris m. odor, fragrance†
ordō, inis m. order, line, array†*
ōstium, (i) n. mouth, harbor, entrance
pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrēctus proceed
plaga, ae f. region, tract†
plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling†
polus, i m. pole, sky, heaven
pūbēs, is f. youth, young men†*
quā where(by), in any way
redux, uctis led back, restored
refulgeō, ēre, lsi shine, gleam†
roseus, a, um rosy, pink†
spīrō (1) breathe (forth), exhalet†
strid(e)ō, ēre, di creak, rustle, whirl
turbō (1) throw into confusion, agitate†*
vertex, icis m. top, summit, head*
vestis, is f. cloth(ing), robe†*

the two groups of the twelve ships under Ilioneus, which will reunite after a short separation. Thus sociōs reducēs of l. 390 corresponds to ut reducēs illi of l. 397. agmine: abl. of manner; App. 328; the swans had just been put to flight and scattered by the eagle.

394. quōs āles Jovis lāpsa aetheriā plagā turbābat (in) apertō caelō. Jovis āles: the eagle was the bird of Jove and bore his thunderbolt. (dē) aetheriā plagā: from the height of heaven.

395-396. terrās capere: to alight. caelō: abl. of place where or of route; App. 319, 338. nunc videntur: now, after the eagle has disappeared, the swans are seen in two groups. One group, in a long row, returns to its feeding place on the land; the other group flies above and gazes down at the places occupied (terrās captās) by their comrades.

396. captās (terrās) dēspectāre: to

look down upon the places (terrās) already occupied.

397. illi = cyni.

398. coetū: abl. of manner; App. 328. cīnxere, dedere = cīnxerunt, dedērunt; App. 204, 4. cantūs: acc. plural.

399. haud aliter: litotes; App. 431. The main point of the comparison is in the happy return to safety of both swans and Trojans after their disaster. -que ... -que: polysyndeton; App. 439.

400. tenet, subit: the subjects are puppēs and pūbēs, but the verbs agree in number with pūbēs, the nearest; App. 236, b.

402. Dixit (Venus) et (sē) āvertēns. cervīce: abl. of means.

403. (ā) vertice: abl. of separation. dīvinum odōrem: a special fragrance is often attributed to the gods.

404. spīrāvēre = spīrāvērunt. vestis dēflūxit: with the exception of Diana, all the goddesses wore flowing robes.

et vĕra incessū patuit dea. Ille ubi mātrem

405

agnōvit tālī fugientem est vōce secūtus:

"Quid nātum totiēns, crūdēlīs tū quoque, falsīs
lūdis imāginibūs? Cūr dextrae jungere dextram
nōn datur ac vērās audīre et reddere vōcēs?"

Tālībus incūsāt gressumque ad moenia tendit.

410

At Venus obscūrō gradientīs āere saepsit,

et multō nebulae circum dea fūdīt amictū,

cernere nē quis eōs neu quis contingere posset
mōlīrīve moram aut veniendī pōscere causās.

Ipsa Paphum sublīmīs abīt sēdēsque revisīt
laeta suās, ubi templum illī, centumque Sabaeō
tūre calent ārae sertīsque recentibus hālant.

415

abeō, ire, īī (ivī), itus depart*

āēr, āerīs, acc. āera, m. air, mist, fog

agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize†*

amictus, ūs m. wrap, robe†

caleō, ēre, uī be hot, burn†

causa, ae f. cause, reason*

centum hundred*

contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, befall*

crūdēlīs, e cruel, harsh, bloody*

cūr why?†

falsus, a, um false, deceitful, pretended†

gradior, ī, gressus step, go, proceed

gressus, ūs m. step, walk, gait

hālō (1) breathe (forth), be fragrant†

imāgō, inīs f. image, shape, ghost*

incessus, ūs m. walk, gait, stride†

incūsō (1) reproach, chide, blame†

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke*

lūdō, ere, sī, sus sport, mock

mōlior, irī, itus work, effect, make

mora, ae f. delay, hindrance, hesitation†*

nebula, ae f. cloud, mist, fog†

neu, nēve and (that) not, and lest†

obscurus, a, um dark†*

Paphus (os), ī f. city of Cyprus, famous

center of the worship of Venus†

pateō, ēre, uī lie open, be evident

poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek†*

quoque also*

recēns, entis fresh, recent†

reddō, ere, didī, dītus return, reply†*

revisō, ere revisīt†

Sabaeus, a, um Sabaeen, of Saba in south-

ern Arabia, famous for its incense†

saepiō, ire, psī, ptus hedge in, inclose†

sertum, ī n. wreath, garland†

sublīmīs, e on high, aloft, uplifted

templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary†*

totiēns so often, so many times†

tūs, tūris n. incense, unguent†

Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty*

vĕrus, a, um true, real, honest†*

405. Ille: Aeneas. The hiatus between dea and Ille is justified by the pause in thought after dea; cf. Samō: hic (l. 16).

406. (eam) fugientem.

407. Quid tū quoque crūdēlīs totiēns lūdis (mē) nātum (tuum) falsīs imāginibūs? quid: adverbial, why? nātum (tuum): emphatic by position. tū quoque: "even you, as well as others who might be expected to deceive me."

408. dextrae (manū): dat. with jungere; App. 297.

409. vērās vōcēs: contrasted with falsīs imāginibūs of l. 407.

410. Tālībus (dictis Aenēās) incūsāt (mātrem suam). moenia (Karthāginis).

411. obscūrō āere: such a concealing cloud or mist is a device very common in

epic tradition and in folk tales. (Aenēān Achātēnque) gradientis.

412. circum (eōs) fūdīt: surrounded (them). dea: (as) a goddess, i.e., by her supernatural power.

413. quis: indef. cernere (eōs). posset: negative purpose; App. 359.

414. mōlīrī moram: alliteration. veniendi: a gerund in the gen. modifying causās.

415. Ipsa: Venus; see the note on ipsa (l. 42) and on ipsius (l. 114). Paphum: acc. of place to which; App. 315, a.

416. laeta: contrasted with tristior (l. 228). templum (est) illi. illi: Venerī, dat. of possession; App. 299. Sabaeō: cf. Paradise Lost, 4, 162:

"Sabaeen odors from the spicy shore
Of Araby the blest."

- Corripuere *viam* intereā, quā sēmita mōnstrat.
Jamque ascendebant collem, quā plurimus urbi
 420 imminet adversāsque aspectat dēsuper arcēs.
 Mirātur mōlem Aenēās, māgālia quondam,
 mirātur portās strepitumque et strāta viārum.
 Instant ardentēs Tyrii: pars dūcere mūrōs
 mōlirique arcem et manibus subvolvere saxa,
 425 pars optāre locum tēctō et concludere sulcō;
 jūra magistrātūsque legunt sānctumque senātum.
Hic portūs alii effodiunt; *hic alta* theātrīs
 fundāmenta locant alii, immānīsque columnās
 rūpibus excidunt, scaenīs decora alta futūrīs.
 430 Quālis apēs aestāte novā per flōrea rūra
 exercet sub sōle labor, cum gentis adultōs

adultus, a, um grown, adult†
 adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
 aestās, ātis f. summer
 apis, is f. bee†
 ascendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, mount†
 a(d)spectō (1) look at, see, face†
 collis, is m. hill†
 columna, ae f. column, pillar†
 concludō, ere, sī, sus (in)close†
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up),
 hasten on*
 decus, oris n. ornament, beauty, dig-
 nity†
 dēsuper from above
 effodiō, ere, fōdi, fossus dig out, excavate†
 excidō, ere, ī, sus cut out, destroy†
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus busy, train†*
 flōreus, a, um flowery†
 fundāmentum, ī n. foundation†
 immineō, ēre overhang, menace (dat.)
 instō, āre, stitī urge on, press on (dat.)†
 intereā meanwhile, meantime*
 jūs, jūris n. law, justice, decree
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, gather†*

locō (1) place, locate, establish*
 māgālia, ium n. huts, hovels†
 magistrātus, ūs m. magistrate, officer†
 miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire†*
 mōlēs, is f. mass, burden, structure*
 mōlior, īri, itus work, effect, make
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out*
 mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart†*
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
 porta, ae f. gate, door, opening*
 quā where(by), in any way
 quālis, e such (as), of what sort, as*
 rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag*
 rūs, rūris n. country (district)†
 sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered†*
 scaena, ae f. stage, background
 sēmita, ae f. path†
 senātus, ūs m. senate, council of elders†
 sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*
 strātum, ī n. pavement; bed†
 strepitus, ūs m. noise, uproar†
 subvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll up†
 sulcus, ī m. furrow, trench, ditch†
 theātrum, ī n. theater†

418-436. Aeneas and Achates, rendered invisible by Venus, proceed to Carthage and admire the rising city.

418. (Aenēās Achātēsque) corripuerunt *viam*: they hurried along their way. sēmita (sē) mōnstrat.

419. plurimus: with imposing size. urbi: dat. with compound; App. 298.

421. mōlem (urbis). quondam: before the erection of the city. Mirātur... mirātur: anaphora; App. 413.

423. dūcere: extend; this and the following infinitives depend on Instant; App. 259.

423-425. pars, pars: in partitive apposition with Tyrii.

425. tēctō: for a house; dat. of purpose; App. 303. concludere (locum tēcti) sulcō: for the foundation.

426. magistrātūs: acc. plural.

427-428. alii... alii: some... others.

429. (ex) rūpibus: the typical open-air theater of classical times was commonly excavated from a hillside. scaenīs: dat. decora: apposition with columnās.

430-431. (tālis est labor illis) quālis (labor) exercet apēs: the simile is famous; cf. App. 441. aestāte novā: abl. of time; App. 322.

ēdūcunt fētūs, aut cum liquentia mella
stīpant et dulcī distendunt nectare cellās,
aut onera accipiunt venientum, aut agmine factō
ignāvum fūcōs pecus ā praesēpibus arcent;
fervet opus redolentque thymō fragrantia mella.

435

"Ō fortūnātī, quōrum jam moenia surgunt!"

Aenēas ait et fastigia suspicit urbis.

Īnfert sē saeptus nebulā (mīrābile dictū)

per mediōs, miscetque virīs neque cernitur ūllī.

440

Lūcus in urbe fuit mediā, lactissimus umbrae,
quō primum jactātī undīs et turbine Poenī
effodēre locō signum, quod rēgia Jūnō
mōnstrārat, caput ācris equī; sic nam fore bello
ēgregiam et facilem victū per saecula gentem.

445

ācer, cris, cre sharp, keen, spirited*
arceō, ēre, ūi keep off, defend
cella, ae f. cell, storeroom†
distendō, ere, ī, ntus distend, stretch†
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fresh*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead forth†
effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig out, excavate
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, distinguished†
facilis, e easy†
fastigium, (i)ī n. summit, top, height
ferv(e)ō, ēre, (ferbu)ī glow, boil†
fētus, ūs m. offspring, brood, swarm†
fortūnātus, a, um fortunate, blessed†
fragrans, antis fragrant, sweet-smelling†
fūcus, ī m. drone†
ignāvus, a, um lazy, idle†
inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear (in, into)
jactō (1) toss, buffet*
liquēns, entis liquid, flowing†
lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood†*

mel, mellis n. honey†
mīrābilis, e wonderful, marveloust†
misceō, ēre, ūi, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōnstrō (1) show, point out*
nebula, ae f. cloud, mist, fog
nectar, aris n. nectar†
onus, eris n. burden, load†
opus, eris n. work, deed, toil†*
pecus, oris n. flock, herd, swarm†*
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian
praesēpe, is n. stall, hive†
redoleō, ēre, ūi be fragrant, smell (of)†
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly†*
saeculum, ī n. generation, age
saepiō, ire, psi, ptus hedge in, inclose
signum, ī n. sign, token, signal†*
stipō (1) stuff, crowd, stow†
suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look up (at)†
thymum, ī n. thyme, a flowering plant†
turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm
vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive

434. venient(i)um (apium).

435. fūcōs: the drones; apposition with ignāvum pecus.

437-493. Aeneas visits the temple of Juno where he sees depicted the leading incidents of the Trojan War.

437. Ō fortūnātī: substantively; O fortunate ones! jam moenia surgunt: Aeneas was impatiently looking forward to the time when the walls of his own city would rise.

438. ait: third sing. of ajō.

439. dictū: supine, abl. of respect with mīrābile; App. 271, 325.

440. per mediōs (virōs): through the midst (of) the men; App. 246. (sē) miscet

virīs: virīs is dat. with miscet; App. 297. ūllī: dat. of agent; App. 302.

441. umbrae: gen. with adj.; App. 287.

442. (in) quō... locō = ubi. jactātī: on their stormy voyage from Tyre. primum: immediately after landing.

443. effodēre = effodērunt.

444. mōnstrā(ve)rat: App. 204, 1. caput equī: a common device on Carthaginian coins. fore = futūram esse: indirect statement depending on dixerat implied in mōnstrā(ve)rat; App. 263.

445. victū: supine, abl. of respect with facilem; App. 271, 325, easy to live, to sustain, referring to the great commercial success of Carthage. gentem (Pūnicam).

Hic templum Jūnōnī ingēns Sidōnia Dīdō
condēbat, dōnīs opulentum et nūmine dīvae,
aerea, cui gradibus surgēbant līmina nexaeque
aere trabēs, foribus cardō stridēbat aēnīs. *created on*
 450 *Hōc prīmum in lūcō nova rēs oblāta timōrem*
lēniit, hic prīmum Aenēās spērāre salūtem
ausus et adflictis melius cōfidere rēbus.
Namque sub ingentī lūstrat dum singula templō
 455 *rēgīnam opperiēns, dum quae fortūna sit urbī*
artificumque manūs intrā sē operumque labōrem
mīratur, videt Īliacās ex ordine pugnās
bellaque jam fāmā tōtum vulgāta per orbem,
Atridās Priamūque et saevum ambōbus Achillem.

Achillēs, is (i) *m.* Greek chieftain*
 adfligō, ere, xi, ctus strike down, shatter†
 aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen
 aereus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen†
 aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
 ambō, ae, ō both†
 artifex, icis *m.* artist, artisan†
 Atridēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus, (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaus; leaders of the Greeks against Troy†
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket†
 condō, ere, didi, ditus found, build*
 cōfidō, ere, sus sum trust (in) (*dat.*)†
 foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance†
 gradus, ūs *m.* step, stride, gait†
 Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
 intrā within, among (*acc.*)†
 lēniō, ire, ivi (ii), itus soothe, soften†
 lūcus, i *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*

lūstrō (1) purify, survey, traverse†*
 melior, ius better, superior†
 mīror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire*
 nectō, ere, x(u)i, xus bind, fasten†
 offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus present†
 opperī, iri, per(i)tus await, wait for†
 opulentus, a, um rich, wealthy†
 opus, eris *n.* work, deed, toil*
 orbis, is *m.* circle, orb, earth*
 ordō, inis *m.* order, line, array*
 pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight†*
 saevus, a, um fierce, harsh, stern*
 salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, security, health†
 Sidōnius, a, um Sidonian, Phoenician†
 singuli, ae, a separate, single†
 spērō (1) hope (for), expect†*
 strid(e)ō, ēre, di grate, creak, whirl
 templum, i *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
 timor, ōris *m.* fear, anxiety, dread
 trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, timber†
 vulgō (1) publish, make known†

446. Sidōnia: Phoenician; Tyre or Sidon, each a famous Phoenician city, came to be synonymous with Phoenicia.

447. dōnīs, nūmine: ablatives of respect depending on opulentum; App. 325.

448-449. cui surgēbant gradibus aerea līmina trabēsque nexae aere, (et) cardō stridēbat foribus aēnīs. aerea, aere, aēnīs: the lavish use of costly bronze helps to indicate the magnificence of the temple. cui gradibus: on the steps of which; cui is *dat.* of reference, with the force of a genitive; App. 301. nexae (erant). -que: the elision of the final e before the initial diphthong of the first word of the next line forms a hypermetric verse: cf. l. 332 and see App. 402.

449. aere: *abl.* of means. foribus

aēnīs: *abl.* of place where or *dat.* of reference; App. 319, 301.

450. timōrem (Aenēae).

452. ausus (est). rēbus: *abl.* or *dat.* with special verb, cōfidere; App. 319, 297.

454. sit: subjunctive in an indir. quest.; App. 349. urbī: *dat.* of possession; App. 299.

455. artificum manūs intrā sē: the rival deeds of skill of the artists, referring to the temple and its equipment.

456. ex ordine: in order. fāmā: *abl.* of means. tōtum orbem (terrārum): the whole world.

458. ambōbus (Atridīs Priamōque): Achilles was fighting against the Trojans, and of course was hostile to Priam, the

Cōstitit et lacrimāns "*Quis jam locus*" inquit "Achātē,
quae regiō in terrīs nostrī nōn plēna labōris?" 460
En Priamus. Sunt hīc etiam sua praemia laudī;
sunt lacrimae rērum et mentēm mortālīa tangunt.
Solve metūs; feret haec aliquam tibi fāma salūtem."
Sic ait atque animum pictūrā pascit inānī
multa gemēns, largōque ūnectat flūmine vultum. 465
Namque vidēbat utī bellantēs Pergama circum
hāc fugerent Grajī, premeret Trojāna iuventūs,
hāc Phryges, instāret currū cristātus Achillēs.
Nec procul hīc Rhēsi niveis tentōria vēlīs

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*

Achillēs, *is (i) m.* Greek chieftain*

aliqui, *qua, quod* some, any†*

bellō (1) war, battle†

cōsistō, *ere, stitī, stitus* stand fast, halt*

cristātus, *a, um* plumed, crested†

currus, *ūs m.* chariot, car*

ēn see! look! behold!†

etiam also, even*

flūmen, *inis n.* river, stream†*

gemō, *ere, uī, itus* groan (for), lament

Grajus, *a, um* Greek†*

hāc here, there†

inānis, *e* empty, idle, vain†*

inquam, *is, it* say*

instō, *āre, stitī* press on, urge (on)

iuventūs, *ūtis f.* youth, young men†*

lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament†

largus, *a, um* copious, plentiful†

laus, *laudis f.* praise, glory, merit†*

metus, *ūs m.* fear, dread, anxiety*

mortālis, *e* mortal, human*

niveus, *a, um* snowy, white†

pascō, *ere, pāvi, pāstus* feed (on), graze

Pergama, *ōrum n.* (citadel of) Troy†*

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan†

pictūra, *ae f.* picture, painting†

plēnus, *a, um* full, complete, swelling

praemium, (i) *n.* reward, prize†*

premō, *ere, pressi, pressus* (re)press, urge*

regiō, *ōnis f.* region, district†

Rhēsus, *i m.* Thracian prince, ally of the

Trojans, slain on the first night after his arrival at Troy†

salūs, *ūtis f.* safety, security, health

solvō, *ere, i, solūtus* loose, dismiss*

tangō, *ere, tetigi, tactus* touch†*

tentōrium, (i) *n.* tent†

Trojānus, *a, um* Trojan*

ūnectō (1) wet, moisten†

vultus, *ūs m.* countenance, face*

Trojan king; furthermore, a bitter feud arose near the end of the war between Achilles and the sons of Atreus, Agamemnon and Menelaüs, because Agamemnon had forcibly deprived Achilles of one of his war prizes, a captive girl Briseis. This feud was the occasion of the "Wrath of Achilles," the theme of Homer's *Iliad*.

459. lacrimāns: see the note on frigore (l. 92). Achātē: vocative.

460. nōn (est) plēna.

461. hic etiam: here also, as well as elsewhere. laudī: dat. of possession; App. 299.

462. lacrimae rērum: compassion for suffering. mentem mortālīa: alliteration, heightening the pathos. mortālīa: substantively, human (woes).

463. metūs: acc. pl. haec fāma (Teucrōrum).

464. ait: third sing. of ajō.

466-467. uti hāc Graji bellantēs circum

Pergama fugerent. utī: how; introduces three indirect questions. Graji: pl. of Grajus and pronounced as though spelled Grajjī, making the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b.

467-468. fugerent, premeret, instāret: subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349. hāc... hāc: here... there, in the series of pictures being described.

468. Phryges (fugerent). cristātus: the Homeric warrior wore a helmet with waving plumes.

469. Nec procul hinc: in another picture. Rhēsi: an ally of the Trojans. The oracle had proclaimed that Troy could not be captured if Rhesus's horses ever drank of the waters of the Xanthus or grazed on the Trojan meadows. Ulysses and Diomedes surprised Rhesus on the night of his arrival, killed him, and drove off his horses before they had partaken of the fateful water and grass.

- 470 agnōscit lacrimāns, *primō quae prōdita somnō*
 Tydidēs *mullā* vastābat caede cruentus,
ardentisque āvertit *equōs* in castra prius quam
 pābula gustāssent *Trojae* Xanthumque bibissent.
Parte aliā fugiēns āmissis Trōilus *armīs*,
 475 *infelix* puer atque impār congressus Achilli,
fertur equīs currūque haeret resupīnus inānī,
lōra tenēns tamen; *huic* cervīxque comaeque *trahuntur*
per terram, et versā pulvis inscribitur hastā.
 Intereā ad templum nōn aequae Palladis *ibant*
 480 crīnibus *Īliades* passis peplumque *ferēbant*
 suppliciter, *trīstēs* et tūnsae *pectora* palmīs;

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
 aequus, a, um equal, even, impartial†
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
 āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus let go, lose*
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
 bibō, ere, ī drink (of, in)†
 caedēs, is *f.* slaughter†
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment†*
 cervix, icis *f.* neck
 coma, ae *f.* hair*
 congredior, ī, gressus meet, fight with
 (dat.)†
 crinis, is *m.* locks, hair†*
 cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
 gustō (l) taste, eat†
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling
 to (dat.)†*
 hasta, ae *f.* spear†
 Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman†
 impār, aris unequal, ill-matched†
 inānis, e empty, idle, vain*
 inscribō, ere, psi, ptus mark†
 intereā meanwhile, meantime*

lacrimō (l) weep, shed tears, lament
 lōrum, ī *n.* thong, rein
 pābulum, ī *n.* fodder, pasture†
 Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wis-
 dom and the arts
 palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, dishevel†*
 peplus (um), ī *m.* (n.) robe, gown†
 prius former, sooner, first
 prōdō, ere, didi, ditus hand over, be-
 tray
 pulvis, eris *m.* dust†
 quam how, than, as*
 resupīnus, a, um supine, on the back†
 suppliciter beseechingly, humbly†
 tamen nevertheless, however*
 templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine*
 Trōilus, ī *m.* youngest son of Priam†
 tundō, ere, tutudi, tū(n)sus beat†
 Tydidēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,
 famous Greek chieftain
 vastō (l) ravage, devastate, (lay) waste†
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*
 Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy†

470. *primō prōdita*: alliteration.
primō somnō: abl. of time when or means;
 App. 322, 331.

471. *vastābat*: action represented as
 taking place in the picture. *caede cruen-*
tus: alliteration. *mullā caede*: abl. of
 manner; App. 328.

472. *in castra*: i.e., to the Greek
 camp.

473. *gustā(vi)ssent, bibissent*: descrip-
 tive or anticipatory; App. 376, a.

474. (in) *Parte aliā*: in a fourth pic-
 ture. *āmissis armīs*: abl. abs., referring
 to only a part of his arms, such as his
 shield, for he still holds his spear.
Trōilus: slain by Achilles.

475. *impār congressus Achilli*: *unequal*
 to Achilles in battle.

476. His foot seems to have caught in
 the chariot as he fell backward. *currū*
ināni: abl. with *haeret*; App. 319.

477. *huic*: dat. of reference equivalent
 to a genitive.

478. *versā hastā*: with trailing (lit.
 turned) spear. *pulvis*: with the last
 syllable irregularly long for metrical con-
 venience.

479. *nōn aequae*: hostile, because of
 the adverse Judgment of Paris.

480. *crīnibus passis*: abl. of quality;
 App. 330. *passis*: from *pandō*; di-
 shevelled hair was a sign of mourning.
peplum: a fine gown, as an offering to the
 goddess.

481. *pectora*: acc., with the "middle"
 participle, *tūnsae*; App. 309.

diva solō fixōs oculōs āversa tenēbat.

*Ter circum Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs
exanimumque aurō corpus vendēbat Achillēs.*

*Tum vērō ingentem gemitum dat pectore ab īmō,
ut spolia, ut currūs, utque ipsum corpus amīci
tendentemque manūs Priamum cōnspexit inermis.* 485

*Sē quoque principibus permixtum agnōvit Achivīs,
Eōasque aciēs et nigri Memnonis arma.*

Dūcūt Amāzonidum lūnātis agmina peltīs 490

*Penthesilēa furēns mediūsq; in milibus ardet,
aurea subnectēns exsertae cingula mammae
bellātrix, audetque virīs concurrere virgō.*

Haec dum Dardaniō Aenēae miranda videntur,

Achillēs, is (ī) *m.* Greek chieftain*
Achivus, a, um Achaeen, Greek
aciēs, ēi *f.* edge, battle line, army†*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize*
Amāzonis, idis *f.* Amazon, female war-
rior†
amicus, ī *m.* friend†*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold†*
āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
bellātrix, icis *f.* warrior†
cingulum, ī *n.* belt, girdle†
concurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run to-
gether, fight with (*dat.*)†
cōnspicō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan†*
Ēōus, a, um of the dawn, eastern†
exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless†
exserō, ere, ūi, rtus thrust out, expose†
figō, ere, fixī, fixus fix, fasten*
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, lament†*
Hector, oris, *acc. ora, m.* Trojan leader*
Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*

inermis, e unarmed†
lūnātus, a, um crescent, moon-shaped†
mamma, ae *f.* breast, pap†
Memnōn, onis *m.* Ethiopian king, son of
Aurora and ally of the Trojans, slain
by Achilles†
mille; *pl. milia, ium n.* thousand†*
mirandus, a, um wonderful, marvelous
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
niger, gra, grum black, dusky†*
pelta, ae *f.* light shield†
Penthesilēa, ae *f.* queen of the Amazons,
ally of the Trojans, slain by Achilles†
permisceō, ēre, ūi, mixtus mix, mingle†
princeps, cipis *m. (f.)* chief, leader†
quoque also*
raptō (1) snatch, drag†
solum, ī *n.* soil, ground, earth*
spolium, (ī) ī *n.* spoil(s), booty, plunder
subnectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus fasten beneath†
ter thrice, three times*
vendō, ere, didi, ditus sell†
vērō truly, indeed, but†
virgō, inis *f.* girl, maid(en)*

482. **diva** (Pallas). **solō**: *dat.* of direc-
tion; App. 306; her eyes were directed to
the ground, as a sign of sullen displeasure.

483. **Hectora**: *acc.*, a Greek form; App.
68. This sixth picture represents the
ransom of Hector's body from Achilles,
who had dragged it thrice around the
walls of Troy.

484. **aurō**: *abl.* of price; App. 336.
corpus vendēbat Achillēs (Priamō).

485. (Aenēas) *dat.*

486. **currūs**: poetic plural; the chariot
with which Achilles dragged Hector
around Troy. **ut, ut, ut**: anaphora; App.
413.

487. **spolia**: taken by Achilles from
Hector. **manūs inermis**: as a suppliant.

488. **principibus**: *dat.*, or *abl.* with
permixtum.

489. **Eōasque aciēs** (agnōvit): Trojan
allies from Ethiopia led by Memnon.

490. **lūnātis peltīs**: *abl.* of quality;
App. 330; crescent shields were char-
acteristic of the Amazons.

493. **viris**: *dat.* with the special verb,
concurrere. **virgō**: (although) a girl;
contrasted with **viris**.

494-508. Dido visits the temple and
gives audience to her subjects.

494. **Dardaniō**: Trojan; used here to
indicate why these scenes had so much
meaning for Aeneas.

- 495 *dum stupet obtūtūque haeret dēfixus in ūnō,*
rēgīna ad templum, formā pulcherrima Didō,
incessit magnā juvenum stipante catervā.
Quālis in Eurōtae rīpis aut per juga Cynthi
exercet Diāna chorōs, quam mille secūtae
500 *hinc atque hinc glomerantur Orēades; illa pharetram*
fert umerō gradiēnsque deās superēminet omnīs
(Lātōnae tacitum pertemptant gaudia pectus):
tālis erat Didō, tālem sē laeta ferēbat
per mediōs instāns operī rēgnūsque futūrīs.
505 *Tum foribus divae, mediā testūdine templi,*
saepta armīs soliōque altē subnixa resēdit.
Jūra dabat lēgēsque virīs, operumque labōrem
partibus aequābat jūstīs aut sorte trahēbat:

aequō (1) equal(ize)*
 altē on high, loftily
 caterva, ae f. band, troop, crowd†
 chorus, ī m. chorus, dance, band†
 Cynthus, ī m. mountain in Delos, birth-
 place of Apollo and Diana†
 dēfigō, ere, fixī, fixus fix, fasten
 Diāna, ae f. goddess of the hunt and of
 the mountains†
 Eurōtās, ae m. river of Sparta, center of
 the worship of Diana†
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus busy, train*
 foris, is f. door, gate, entrance
 forma, ae f. form, beauty, shape*
 gaudium, (i)ī n. joy, rejoicing†
 glomerō (1) gather, roll together†
 gradior, ī, gressus step, go, proceed
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling
 (to)*
 incēdō, ere, cessi, cessus march, go
 (majestically)
 instō, āre, stiti press on, urge (dat.)
 jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge†*
 jūs, jūris n. law, justice, right
 jūstus, a, um just, fair, right(eous)†

juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
 woman)*
 Lātōna, ae f. mother of Apollo and Diana†
 lēx, lēgis f. law, regulation, decree†
 mille; pl. milia, ium n. thousand*
 obtūtus, ūs m. gaze, view†
 opus, eris n. work, deed, toil*
 Orēas, adis f. Oread, a mountain nymph†
 pertemptō (1) try; master, possess†
 pharetra, ae f. quiver
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-
 some, illustrious*
 quālis, e such (as), of what sort*
 residō, ere, sēdi sit down†
 ripa, ae f. bank, shore†*
 saepiō, ere, psi, ptus hedge in, inclose
 solium, (i)ī n. throne, seat†
 sors, rtis f. lot, fate, destiny*
 stipō (1) stuff, crowd, throng, stow
 stupeō, ēre, uī stand agape, be dazed†
 subnixus, a, um resting on (abl.)†
 superēmineō, ēre tower above†
 tacitus, a, um silent, speechless, still†
 templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*
 testūdō, inis f. tortoise, vault, dome†

496. formā: abl. of respect with pul-
 cherrima: App. 325.

497. stipante catervā: abl. abs.; App.
 343.

498. Quālis: correlative with tālis,
 (l. 503).

499. Diāna: with long ī; elsewhere
 with short ī.

500. illa: Diāna. hinc atque hinc: on
 this side and on that; on both sides.

501. (in) umerō. deās (Orēadas).

502. tacitum pectus: as indicating joy
 too deep for words.

504. per mediōs (virōs).

505. divae: of the shrine (lit. of the
 goddess).

505-506. (in) foribus, (in) testūdine,
 (in) soliō.

507. viris (Tyriīs): her subjects. The
 use of temples for the transaction of
 public business was very common in
 ancient Rome; hence Vergil assigned
 a similar custom to the Carthagin-
 ians.

508. sorte trahēbat: assigned the work
 by lot.



AMAZONS GOING INTO BATTLE
A Greek vase in the Metropolitan Museum of Art.



Grandtorf Bros.

DIDO BUILDING CARTHAGE

Turner

Turner's famous painting. The boys sailing toy ships in the foreground hint at the future naval greatness of Carthage and the fatal wars with Rome.

cum subitō Aenēās concursū accēdere magnō
Anthea Sergestumque videt fortemque Cloanthum 510
Teucrōrumque aliōs, āter quōs aequore turbō
dispulerat penitusque aliās āvēxerat ōrās.
Obstipuit simul ipse, simul percussus Achātēs
laetitiāque metūque; avidi conjungere dextrās
ardēbant; sed rēs animōs incognita turbat. 515
Dissimulant et nūbe cavā spēculantur amictī
quae fortūna virīs, classem quō litore linquant,
quid veniant; cūctīs nam lēctī nāvibus ibant
ōrantēs veniam et templum clāmōre petēbant.
Postquam intrōgressī et cōram data cōpia fandī, 520
maximus Ilioneus placidō sīc pectore coepit:
“Ō rēgīna, novam cui condere Juppiter urbem

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach
 Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
 amiciō, ire, uī (ixī), ictus infold, wrap†
 Antheus, ei, acc. ea, *m.* Trojan leader
 āvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear away†
 avidus, a, um eager, greedy†
 cavus, a, um hollow*
 Cloanthus, i *m.* Trojan leader
 coepi, isse, coeptus begin†
 concursus, ūs *m.* throng, crowd†
 condō, ere, didi, ditus found, build*
 conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join†
 cōpia, ae *f.* abundance; opportunity†
 cōram face to face, in the presence†
 dispellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive apart, disperse, scatter†
 dissimulō (1) hide, disguise†
 fortis, e strong, brave, valiant*
 Ilioneus, ei *m.* Trojan leader
 incognitus, a, um unknown†

intrōgredior, i, gressus enter, go in(to)†
 laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight†
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, gather*
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert†*
 metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*
 nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
 obstipēscō, ere, stipui stand agape†*
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech†*
 penitus deep within, deeply, wholly*
 percutiō, ere, cussi, cussus strike, assault†
 placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful*
 postquam after (that), when*
 Sergestus, i *m.* Trojan leader†*
 speculor, āri, ātus spy out, watch†
 subitō suddenly*
 templum, i *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
 turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), storm
 turbō (1) confuse, disturb, perplex*
 venia, ae *f.* favor, grace, pardon†

509-560. A deputation from the missing Trojan ships waits on Dido to complain of the outrages of her people and bewail the loss of their leader Aeneas.

509-512. *cum Aenēās subitō videt accēdere Anthea (acc.) Sergestumque fortemque Cloanthum aliōsque Teucrōrum, quōs āter turbō dispulerat (in) tōtō aequore. concursū magnō: abl. of manner; App. 328. (ad) aliās ōrās.*

513. *ipse: Aeneas; see the note on l. 114. simul... simul = et... et. percussus (est.)*

515. *rēs incognita: the uncertainty of the situation keeps them silent.*

516. *Dissimulant (animōs).*

517. *quae (sit) fortūna: indir. quest.;*

App. 349. *virīs: dat. of possession. (in) quō litore.*

517-518. *linquant, veniant: subjunctives in indir. quest.; App. 349.*

518. *quid = cūr, why? (virī) lēcti. (ex) cūctīs nāvibus.*

519. *clāmōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.*

520. *intrōgressī (sunt illi Teucrī) et data (est) cōpia fandī. fandī: of speaking; a gerund.*

521. *maximus (nātū): the eldest, the leader. Ilioneus: with the eu pronounced as a diphthong (one syllable). placidō pectore: as befitting his age and dignity.*

522-523. *condere, frēnāre: objects of dedit, granted.*

- 525 *jūstitiāque dedit gentis frēnāre superbās,
Trōes tē miserī, ventis maria omnia vecti,
ōrāmus; prohibē infandōs ā nāvibus ignīs,
parce piō generī et propius rēs aspice nostrās.
Nōn nōs aut ferrō Libycōs populāre penātis
vēmimus, aut raptās ad litora vertere praedās;
nōn ea vīs animō nec tanta superbia victis.*
- 530 *Est locus, Hesperiam Graji cognōmine dicunt,
terra antīqua, potēns armīs atque ūbere glaebae;
Oenōtrī coluēre virī; nunc fāma minōrēs
Italiam dīxisse ducis dē nōmine gentem.
Hic cursus fuit,*

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look at,
see*

cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, cognomen
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, cherish,
inhabit*

dux, ducis *m.* (*f.*) leader, guide, chieftain*

frēnō (1) curb, check, restrain

glaeba, ae *f.* soil, clod, glebe†

Grajus, a, um Greek*

Hesperia, ae *f.* west land, Italy†

infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed

jūstitia, ae *f.* justice, equity†

Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-
trict of North Africa*

minōrēs, um *m.* descendants†

Oenōtr(i)us, a, um Oenotrian, of Oeno-
tria, in southern Italy†

ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*

parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare
(*dat.*)

penātēs, ium *m.* household (gods)*

populō (1) ravage, plunder, devastate†

potēns, entis ruling, powerful*

praeda, ae *f.* booty, prey

prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus keep off, pro-
hibit†

prope near, close; *compar.* propius†*

rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), seize*

superbia, ae *f.* pride, haughtiness†

superbus, a, um haughty, proud*

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*

ūber, eris *n.* udder; fertility†

vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey*

vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, drive away*

523. *gentis*: the native Libyan tribes.

524. *Trōes miserī*: in apposition with
nōs the understood subject of *ōrāmus*.
ventis vecti: alliteration, heightening the
pathos. (*per*) *maria omnia*.

525. *ā nāvibus (nostris)*.

526. *parce piō*: alliteration. *piō*
generī: the Trojans; *generī* is *dat.* with
special verb; App. 297.

527. *Nōn*: emphatic. *populāre penā-*
tis: alliteration.

527-528. *populāre, vertere*: *inf.* of
purpose.

529. *vīs (est)*. *victis*: referring to the
capture of Troy by the Greeks. *animō*,
victis: datives of possession. *superbia*
(*est*).

530. *Graji dicunt* (= *vocant*) (*illum*
locum) *Hesperiam*. *Hesperia* literally
means "Land of the Evening" or "Western
Land." Compare *Hesperus*, the evening
star. This name for Italy came from the
Greeks (*Graji dicunt*), as Vergil indi-
cates. *Graji*: pl. of *Grajus* and pro-

nounced as though spelled *Grajji*, making
the first syllable long by position; App.
6, b.

531. *armīs, ūbere*: *abl.* of respect or
cause with *potēns*; App. 325, 332.

532. *Oenōtrī*: evidently derived from
a Greek word, *Oenōtria*, "Vineland,"
since grapes were much cultivated in
Italy. *coluēre* = *coluērunt*. *fāma (est)*
= *dicunt*, and so followed by *indir. disc.*;
App. 263. *minōrēs*: subject of *dixisse* =
vocāvisse.

533. *ducis*: *Italus* was a legendary
king of one of the native Italian tribes
(the Oenotrians). The word *Italy* is
probably related to the word *vitulus*, *bull*,
and therefore means "Land of Herds."
gentem, Italiam: two accusatives; App.
316, a.

534. *Hic cursus (nōbis) fuit*. There
are more than fifty such incomplete lines
in the *Aeneid*, one of the marks of the
unfinished state of the poem at Vergil's
death. See *Introd.* 5.

cum subitō adsurgēns flūctū nimbōsus Oriōn 535
in vada caeca tulit penitusque procācibus Austris
perque undās superante salō perque invia saxa
dispulit; hūc paucī vestris adnāvimus ōris.
Quod genus hoc hominum? Quaeve hunc tam barbara mōrem
permittit patria? Hospitiō prohibēmur harēnae; 540
bella cient primāque vetant cōsistere terrā.
Sī genus hūmānum et mortālia temnitis arma,
at spērāte deōs memorēs fandī atque nefandī.
Rēx erat Aenēās nōbis, quō iūstior alter
nec pietāte fuit, nec bellō major et armīs. 545
Quem sī fāta virum servant, sī vēscitur aurā
aetheriā neque adhūc crūdēlibus occubat umbrīs,

adhūc as yet, still, so far†
 adnō (1) swim, float (to) (dat.)†
 adsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise†
 aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal
 alter, era, erum the other (of two), second†*
 Auster, trī m. (south) wind*
 barbarus, a, um foreign, savage†
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
 cieō, ēre, civi, citus arouse, excite, stir†*
 cōsistō, ere, stiti, stitus stand (fast)*
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
 dispellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive apart, scatter, disperse
 fandus, a, um speakable, right
 harēna, ae f. sand, beach*
 homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human*
 hospitium, (i) n. hospitality, refuge
 hūmānus, a, um human, of men†
 invius, a, um pathless, impenetrable†
 iustus, a, um just, fair, right(eous)
 memor, oris mindful, remembering*
 mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*

mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, law*
 nefandus, a, um unspeakable, wrong†
 nimbōsus, a, um stormy, rainy†
 occubō, āre lie (dead)†
 Oriōn, ōnis m. constellation, whose rising and setting come in the rainy season†
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
 paucus, a, um little, few, scanty†*
 penitus deep within, deeply, wholly*
 permittō, ere, misi, missus allow, grant†
 pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, duty*
 procāx, ācis wanton, boisterous†
 prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus keep off, prohibit
 salum, ī n. the (salt) sea†
 spērō (1) hope (for), expect*
 subitō suddenly*
 superō (1) overcome, surpass*
 tam so, so much, so very, such†*
 temnō, ere scorn, despise, disdain†
 vadum, ī n. shallow, shoal, depth(s)
 vēscor, ī feed on; breathe (abl.)†
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
 vetō, āre, uī, itus prohibit, forbid, prevent

535. flūctū: abl. of place where; App. 319.

536-538. procācibus Austris: abl. of means. tulit (nōs). dispulitque (nōs) procācibus Austris penitus perque undās perque invia saxa, salō superante (nōs).

537. superante salō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

538. paucī (nōs): subject of adnāvimus. vestris ōris = ad vestrās ōrās; dat. of direction; App. 306.

539. Quod genus (est) hoc. hoc: pronounced hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. hunc mōrem: the Trojans

had not been allowed to beach and repair their ships (l. 551).

540. (ab) hospitiō.

541. (viri tuī) cient. vetant (nōs). (in) primā terrā: abl. of place, on the first (part of, edge of) your land; that is, on the beach.

543. memorēs (esse).

544. nōbis: dat. of possession; App. 299. quō: abl. with compar.; App. 327.

545. pietāte, bellō, armīs: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

547. aetheriā: as opposed to the lower world. (in) umbris (mortis): abl. of place where; App. 319; the lower world, Hades.

- nōn metus, officiō nec tē certāsse priorem*
paeniteat: sunt et Siculis regiōnibus urbēs
 550 *armaque, Trojānōque ā sanguine clārus Acestēs.*
Quassātam ventīs liceat subducere classem
et silvīs aptāre trabēs et stringere rēmōs,
sī datur Italiam sociīs et rēge receptō
tendere, ut Italiam laeti Latiumque petāmus;
 555 *sīn absūmpta salūs, et tē, pater optime Teucrum,*
pontus habet Libyae nec spēs jam restat Iulī,
at freta Sicaniae saltem sēdēsque parātās,
unde hūc advectī, rēgemque petāmus Acestēn."
Tālibus Ilioneus; cūctī simul ōre fremēbant
 560 *Dardanidae.*

Tum breviter Dīdō vultum dēmissa profātur:

absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take away,
 destroy, consume†
 advehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey (to)†
 aptō (1) fit, shape, equip†
 breviter shortly, briefly†
 certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie†
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan†
 dēmittō, ere, misi, missus let down, drop,
 lower*
 fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, applaud*
 fretum, i n. strait, sea†
 Ilioneus, ei m. Trojan leader
 Iūlus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
 Latium, (i) i n. district of central Italy*
 Libya, ae f. district of North Africa*
 licet, ēre, uit, itum be permitted†*
 metus, ūs m. fear, anxiety, dread*
 officiū, (i) i n. service, duty, kindness†
 optimus, a, um best, noblest, finest†
 paenitet, ēre, uit it repents†

pontus, i m. sea*
 prior, ius former, first*
 profor, fāri, fātus speak, say†
 quassō (1) shake, shatter†
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, recover*
 regiō, ōnis f. region, district
 restō, āre, stitī remain, survive†
 saltem at least†
 salūs, ūtis f. safety, security, health
 Sicania, ae f. Sicily, a large island south
 of Italy†
 Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
 sīn but if, if, however†
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation*
 stringō, ere, strinxī, strictus strip, graze†
 subducō, ere, dūxi, ductus draw up,
 beach, remove†
 trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan*
 unde whence, from which source*
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face*

548. *nōn (est) metus (nōbis). certā-*
(vi)sse: App. 204. *officiō:* abl. of re-
 spect; App. 325.

549. *paeniteat:* vol. (jussive) subj.;
 App. 254; *do not regret to have been the*
first to contend in rivalry of kindness. *sunt*
et(iam) (nōbis in) Siculis regiōnibus:
 even though Aeneas be dead, our Sicilian
 kinsmen will repay your kindness.

551. *liceat (nōbis) subducere classem*
(nostram) quassātam ventis. *ventis:* abl.
 of means; App. 331. *liceat (nōbis):* vol.
 (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

552. *aptāre trabēs:* for repairing the
 ships. (in) *silvis:* abl. of place where; App.
 319. *stringere rēmōs:* trim (branches into)
 oars, acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

553-554. *sociūs et rēge receptō:* abl.

abs.; *receptō:* agreeing with the nearer of
 the two nouns which it modifies. *ut laeti*
petāmus Italiam Latiumque, si (nōbis)
datur tendere (cursum ad, in) Italiam.
ut... petāmus: purpose; App. 359.

555. *absūmpta (est).* *pater optime:*
 Aeneas. *Teuc(rō)rum.*

557. *sēdēs (in Sicania) parātās.*
 558. *advecti (sumus).* *petāmus:* vol.
 (hortatory) subj.; App. 254.

559. *Tālibus (dictis) Ilioneus (dixit).*

561-578. Dido replies kindly and con-
 soles the Trojans, offering them assist-
 ance and promising to send messengers
 in search of Aeneas.

561. *vultum:* object of *dēmissa*, used
 in the "middle" voice; App. 309; *with*

"Solvite corde metum, *Teucrī*, sēclūdite cūrās.

Rēs dūra et rēgnī novitās mē tālia cōgunt

mōliri et lātē finīs custōde tuērī.

Quis genus Aeneadum, quis Trojae nesciat urbem, 565

virtūtēsque virōsque aut tantī incendia bellī?

Nōn obtūnsa adeō gestāmus pectora Poenī,
nec tam āversus equōs Tyriā Sōl jungit ab urbe.

Seu vōs Hesperiam magnam Sātūrniaque arva 570

sive Erycis finīs rēgemque optātīs Acestē,

auxiliō tūtōs dīmittam opibusque juvābō.

Vultis et hīs mēcūm pariter cōsiderē rēgnīs?

Urbem quam statuō, vestra est; subducite nāvīs;

Trōs Tyriusque mihī nullō discrimine agētur.

adeō so (far), even†

Aeneadae, ārum *m.* descendants (followers) of Aeneas

auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*

āvertō, ere, ī, rus turn away, avert*

cōgō, ere, cōgē, cōactus force, compel†*

cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus settle, rest†*

cor, cordis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings*

custōs, ōdis *m. (f.)* guard(ian)†*

dīmittō, ere, misi, missus, send away, let go, dismiss†

discrimen, inis *n.* difference, crisis

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern†*

Eryx, ycis *m.* son of Venus and half-brother of Aeneas, who settled in Sicily where he gave his name to a mountain and city†

gestō (1) bear, wear, carry

Hesperia, ae *f.* west land, Italy

incendium, (i)ī *n.* fire, conflagration†

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūntus join, yoke†*

juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*

lātē far and wide, widely

metus, ūs *m.* fear, anxiety, dread*

mōlior, irī, itus work, contrive, make

nesciō, ire, ivi, (ii) not know, be ignorant†

novitās, ātis *f.* novelty, newness†

obtundō, ere, tūdi, tū(n)sus blunt, dull†

ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth, power

optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)*

pariter equally, on equal terms†*

Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian.

Sātūrnus, a, um Saturnian, of Saturn, an early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age

sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus exclude, shut out†

seu, sive or (if), whether

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day; Sōl, Sōlis sun-god*

solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, dismiss, relax*

statuō, ere, ūi, ūtus establish, build†

subducō, ere, dūxi, ductus draw up, beach, remove

tam so, so much, so very, such*

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*

tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect†*

tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*

vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*

virtūs, ūtis *f.* valor, manhood, excellence†*

downcast look, because of her modesty, a characteristic much cultivated and highly prized among ancient women, especially young women.

563. *Rēs dūra*: harsh necessity, referring to the dangers to the new settlement from the wild Libyan tribes and from her brother Pygmalion. *tālia*: the harsh treatment of which the Trojans complain.

565. *Quis genus Aenead(ā)r(um)* (nesciat)? nesciat: deliberative, subj.; App. 348.

566. *tanti belli*: the Trojan War.

567. *Nōn obtūnsa adeō pectora*: we are not so dull, that we do not know the name and fame of Troy and the Trojans.

568. *nec tam adversus*, etc.: we are not so far removed from the rest of the world with its activities. The rising and setting of the sun were thought of as due to the course of the sun-god in his chariot.

569. *Sātūrnia* = Italian, because Saturn was the chief god of Italy, where he had ruled during the Golden Age.

570. *Erycis finis*: Sicily.

571. (vōs) *tūtōs*.

572. (in) *rēgnīs*.

573. *Urbem*: attracted from the nom. into the case of the following relative quam; App. 242, a.

574. *Trōs Tyriusque*, etc.: this expression has become proverbial for impartial

- 575 *Atque utinam rēx ipse Notō compulsus eōdem
adforet Aenēās!* Equidem *per litora* certōs
dimittam *et Libyae lūstrāre extrēma jubēbō,*
sī quibus ējectus silvis aut urbibus errat."
- 580 *Hīs animum arrētī dictis et fortis Achātēs
et pater Aenēās jamdūdum ērumpere nūbem
ardēbant. Prior Aenēān compellat Achātēs:*
"Nāte deā, quae nunc animō sententia surgit?
Omnia tūta vidēs, classem sociōsque receptōs.
Ūnus abest, mediō in flūctū quem vīdimus ipsī
585 *summersum; dictis respondent cētera māt̄ris."*
*Vix ea fātus erat cum circumfūsa repente
scindit sē nūbēs et in aethera purgat apertum.*
Restitit Aenēās clārāque in lūce refulsit
ōs umerōsque deō similis; namque ipsa decōram
590 *caesariem nātō genetrix lūmenque iuventae*

absūm, esse, āfui be absent, lack†
Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of
Aeneas*
aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky,
ether*
apertus, a, um open(ed), clear
arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, prick up
caesariēs, ei f. (long) hair, locks†
certus, a, um sure, trustworthy*
cēterus, a, um the rest, the other(s)†
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round†
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
compellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive, force†
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to†
decōrus, a, um beautiful, graceful, seemly†
dimittō, ere, mīsi, missus send away, let
go, dismiss
ējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw out, eject†
equidem indeed, surely, to be sure*
ērumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (out),
burst (forth)†
extrēmus, a, um furthest, last, extreme*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*

genetrix, icis f. mother†
jamdūdum long ago, long since, for some
time†
juventa, ae f. youth, young manhood†
Libya, ae f. district of North Africa*
lūstrō (1) purify, survey, traverse*
Notus, i m. (south) wind
nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog*
prior, ius former, sooner, first*
purgō (1) clear, cleanse, melt†
recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, re-
cover*
refulgeō, ēre, lsi gleam, shine, glitter
repente suddenly†
respondeō, ēre, di, ōnsus (cor)respond†*
restō, āre, stiti remain
scindō, ere, scidi, scissus split, part
sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose
similis, e like, similar (dat., gen.)*
summergeō (subm-), ere, rsi, rsus sink,
drown
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
utinam would that! O that!†

justice. Tyrius: Carthaginian. mihi:
dat. of agent.; App. 302.

576. adforet: opt. subj.; App. 253.
certōs (virōs).

578. sī: in case that. ējectus (ex undis).
(in) silvis, (in) urbibus. quibus: any,
indef. pronoun.

579-594. To the surprise of all, Aeneas
suddenly appears.

579. animum: acc. of respect; App.
311.

581. Aenēān: acc., a Greek form.

582. Nāte deā: goddess-born, deā being
abl. of source; App. 323. (in) animō.

584. Ūnus: Orontēs: see ll. 113 ff.

585. dictis māt̄ris (tuaē): referring to
the prophecy of Venus (ll. 390 ff.).

586. fātus erat (Achātēs).

587. (nūbēs sē) purgat.

589 591. ōs umerōsque: accusatives
of respect; App. 311. namque genetrix
ipsa (Venus) adflā(ve)rat nātō (suō)
decōram caesariem lūmenque purpureum
iuventae et laetōs honorēs. ipsa gene-
trix: Venus, as goddess of beauty. nātō:

purpureum et laetōs oculīs adflārat honōrēs:
 quāle manūs addunt eborī decus, aut ubi flāvō
 argentum Pariusve lapis circumdatur aurō.
 Tum sic rēginam adloquitur cūctisque repente
 imprōvisus ait: "Cōram, quem quaeritis, adsum,
 Trōius Aenēās, Libycīs ēreptus ab undīs.
 Ō sōla infandōs Trojae miserāta labōrēs,
 quae nōs, relinquiās Danaum, terraeque marisque
 omnibus exhaustis jam cāsibus, omnium egēnōs,
 urbe, domō sociās, grātēs persolvere dignās
 nōn opis est nostrae, Dīdō, nec quidquid ubique est
 gentis Dardaniae, magnum quae sparsa per orbem.
 Dī tibi, sī qua piōs respectant nūmina, sī quid

595

600

addō, ere, didi, ditus add*
 adflō (1) breathe on (dat.)†
 adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost
 argentum, i n. silver
 circumdō, are, dedī, datus surround†
 cōram face to face, in the presence
 Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
 decus, oris n. ornament, beauty, dignity
 dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly†
 ebur, oris n. ivory†
 egēnus, a, um needy, lacking (gen.)†
 exhauriō, ire, hausi, haustus drain, ex-
 haust†
 flāvus, a, um tawny, yellow†
 grātēs, ium f. gratitude, thanks†
 imprōvisus, a, um unexpected, unfore-
 seen†
 infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
 lapis, idis m. stone†

Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a dis-
 trict of North Africa*
 miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate†*
 ops, opis f. help, power, resources, wealth*
 orbis, is m. circle, orb, earth*
 Parius, a, um Parian, of Paros, a Greek
 island noted for its fine marble; marble†
 persolvō, ere, i, solūtus pay (fully)†
 purpureus, a, um red, purple, radiant
 quālis, e such (as), of what sort, as*
 quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever
 re(1)liquiae, ārum f. rest, remnant, leav-
 ings
 repente suddenly
 respectō (1) regard, look at†
 sociō (1) join, ally, share, associate
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, disperse†*
 Trōius, a, um Trojan*
 ubique everywhere, anywhere†

dat. with compound adflā(ve)rat; App.
 298. lūmen purpureum: ruddy glow.
 laetōs honōrēs: joyous grace.

592. (tāle) decus quāle: (such) beauty
 as. manūs: nom. pl.; the hands (of an
 artist).

593. aurō: abl. of means; App. 331.

594-612. Aeneas profusely thanks
 Dido for her kindness.

594. cūctis: dat., depends on im-
 prōvisus.

595. (ego), quem quaeritis, adsum.

597. Ō (tū) sōla.

598. quae: subj. of sociās, l. 600.
 re(1)liquiās Dana(ōr)um: see the note on
 l. 30.

599. omnium: gen. with adj.; App.
 287.

600. urbe, domō: abl. of means or
 place where. Dido had not only admitted
 the Trojans to the city, but had of-
 fered them the hospitality of her own
 home.

601-602. opis: pred. gen. of posses-
 sion; App. 283; it is not in our power.
 nec (est opis Dardaniae gentis), quid-
 quid Dardaniae gentis est ubique quae
 (est) sparsa per magnum orbem (ter-
 rārum). nec quidquid: nor (in the power
 of) whatever of the Trojan race there is
 anywhere. gentis: part. gen.; App. 286.

603. Dī: emphatic by position; subject
 of ferant in l. 605. qua, quid: indef. tibi:
 with ferant in l. 605.

603-604. sī quid, etc.: if justice is
 (counts for) anything anywhere. sibi:
 dat. of reference; App. 301. rēcti: gen.
 with the adj. cōnscius; App. 287.

- ūsquam iūstitia est et mēns sibi cōnschia rēctī,
 605 praemia digna ferant. Quae tē tam laeta tulērunt
 saecula? Quī tantī tālem genuēre parentēs?
 In freta dum fluvīi current, dum montibus umbrae
 lūstrābunt convexa, polus dum sīdera pascet,
 semper honōs nōmenque tuum laudēsque manēbunt,
 610 Ilionēa petit dextrā laevāque Serestum,
 post aliōs, fortemque Gyān fortemque Cloanthum.
 Obstipuit primō aspectū Sidōnia Dīdō,
 cāsū deinde virī tantō, et sīc ōre locūta est:
 615 "Quis tē, nāte deā, per tanta pericula cāsus
 insequitur? Quae vīs immānibus applicat ōrīs?
 Tūne ille Aenēās quem Dardaniō Anchīsae
 alma Venus Phrygiī genuit Simoēntis ad undam?

almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)
 amicus, ī m. friend*
 applico, āre, āvi (ui), ātus (itus) drive to†
 a(d)spectus, ūs m. sight, view†
 Cloanthus, ī m. Trojan leader
 cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware†
 convexum, ī n. hollow, valley, sky
 cumque; see quicumque
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, flow†
 Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
 deinde then, thereupon, next*
 dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly
 fluvius, (i)ī m. river, stream†
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
 fretum, ī n. strait, sea
 gignō, ere, genui, genitus bear, beget
 Gyās, ae, acc. ān, m. Trojan leader
 Ilioneus, ei, acc. ēa, m. Trojan leader
 insequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
 iūstitia, ae f. justice, right(eousness)
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left†*
 laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*

loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say†*
 lūstrō (l) survey, traverse, purify*
 obstipescō, ere, stipui stand agape*
 pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus feed, graze
 peric(u)lum, ī n. risk, danger, peril†
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 polus, ī m. pole, sky, heaven
 post after, behind (acc.); afterward, next*
 praemium, (i)ī n. reward, prize*
 quī, quae, quod; see quicumque
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 who(so)ever, what(so)ever*
 rēctum, ī n. right, justice, virtue
 saeculum, ī n. generation, age
 semper always, ever, forever†*
 Serestus, ī m. Trojan leader
 Sidōnius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a
 famous Phoenician city
 Simois, entis m. river near Troy
 tam so (much, very), such*
 ūsquam anywhere, at any time†
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty*

605. ferant: opt. subj.; App. 253.
 606. tālem (fēminam, lady). genuēre
 = genuerunt.
 607. montibus: dat. of reference or
 abl. of place.
 608. polus sīdera pascet: according
 to some of the ancient philosophers, fine
 particles of fire in the highest heavens
 furnish the fuel for the light of the stars.
 610. quae: to be taken with cumque;
 this separation of the parts of a compound
 word is called *mesis*; App. 445.
 611. Ilionēa: acc. sing., a Greek form;
 App. 69. dextrā (manū), laevā (manū):
 an example of chiasmus; App. 420.
 612. post: adverbial, *afterward, next*.
 Gyān: acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

613-630. Dido welcomes Aeneas, tell-
 ing him that she already knew of him
 and his fame.

613-614. aspectū (virī). cāsū: abl. of
 cause; App. 332. deinde: two syllables
 by synizesis; App. 403.

615. nāte deā: goddess-born. Quis cā-
 sus: the ordinary form of the interrogative
 adj. is quī; App. 111, a.

616. ōrīs: dat. with compound; App.
 298.

617. Tūne = esne tū. Dardaniō An-
 chīsae: note the hiatus and the spondaic
 line; App. 399, 395.

618. alma: a common epithet of
 Venus.

*Atque equidem Teucrum meminī Sīdōna venīre
finibus expulsum patrīs, nova rēgna petentem* 620
*auxiliō Bēli; genitor tum Bēlus opimam
vastābat Cyprum et victor diciōne tenēbat.
Tempore jam ex illō cāsus mihi cognitus urbis
Trojānae nōmenque tuum rēgēsque Pelasgī.
Ipse hostis, Teucrōs īnsignī laude ferēbat* 625
*sēque ortum antiquā Teucrōrum ā stirpe volēbat.
Quāre agite, Ō tēctīs, juvenēs, succēdite nostrīs.
Mē quoque per multōs similis fortūna labōrēs
jactātam hāc dēmum voluit cōsistere terrā.
Nōn ignāra malī miseris succurrere discō.”* 630
*Sic memorat; simul Aenēān in rēgia dūcit
tēcta, simul dīvum templis indicit honōrem.*

auxilium, (i) *n.* aid, help, assistance*
Bēlus, *i m.* Phoenician king†
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn; know†
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast),
halt*

Cyprus, *i f.* large island in the eastern
Mediterranean†

dēmum at length, finally†

diciō, ōnis f. sway, rule, power

discō, ere, didici learn (how)†

equidem indeed, surely, truly*

expellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive out, ban-
ish†

hostis, *is m. (f.)* stranger, enemy, foe*

ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced*

indicō, ere, dixi, dictus appoint, decree†

īnsignis, e distinguished, marked*

jactō (1) toss, buffet*

juvenis, *is m. (f.)* youth, young (man,
woman)*

laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*

malum, *i n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*

meminī, isse remember, recall

memorō (1) recount, (re)call, say*

opimus, a, um rich, fertile, fat†

orior, iri, ortus rise, spring†

Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek†

quārē wherefore, therefore, why†

quoque also*

rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*

Sidōn, ōnis, acc. ōna, f. famous Phoeni-
cian city†

similis, e similar, like*

stirps, pis f. stock, stem, race†

succēdō, ere, cessi, cessus go under, ap-
proach, enter (*dat.*)†

succurrō, ere, curri, cursus help, aid
(*dat.*)†

templum, i n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*

Teucer (crus), cri m. early Trojan king†

Trojānus, a, um Trojan*

vastō (1) ravage, (lay) waste, devastate

619. **Sidōna:** acc., a Greek form; App. 68. **Teucrum:** subj. of **venire**. He had been expelled by his father, Telamon, for not bringing back his brother Ajax safely from the Trojan War, and had gone to Phoenicia. Ajax had been disgraced in the Greek army, had gone mad, and had committed suicide.

621. **genitor (meus).**

622. (**Cyprum**) **tenēbat.**

623. **cognitus (est).**

624. **rēgēs Pelasgī:** such as Agamemnon, Menelaüs, Achilles, Diomedes, Ulysses, and Nestor.

625. **Ipse (Teucer) hostis: (Teucer) himself (though) an enemy. ferēbat: ex-
tolled. laude: abl. of manner; App. 328.**

626. **volēbat: would have it (that).**

Note that **volēbat** rhymes with **ferēbat** at the end of l. 625. **ortum** (*esse*).

627. **tēctīs:** *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

629. (*in*) **hāc terrā.**

630. **malī miseris:** the effect is heightened by bringing these two words together, and by the alliteration. **miseris:** *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

631-642. Dido escorts Aeneas and his party to her palace and prepares to entertain them at dinner.

631. **Aenēān:** acc., a Greek form; App. 66.

632. **dīv(ōr)um. (in) templis:** *abl.* of place where; App. 319. **honōrem:** an honor (to the gods), a sacrifice.

Nec minus intereā sociīs ad litora mittit
 vīgintī taurōs, *magnōrum* horrentia centum
 635 terga suum, pinguīs centum *cum mātribus* agnōs,
mūnera laetitiamque dīi.

At domus interior rēgālī splendida luxū
 instruitur, *mediū*sque parant convivia tēctīs;
 640 arte labōrātae vestēs ostrōque superbō,
ingēns argentum mēnsīs, caelātaque in aurō
 fortia facta *patrum*, seriēs *longissima* rērum
 per tot ducta virōs *antiquā* ab oriġine gentis.

Aenēas (neque enim patrius cōsistere mentem
 passus amor) rapidum ad nāvīs praemittit Achātēn,
 645 Ascaniō ferat haec ipsumque ad moenia dūcat;
omnis in Ascaniō cārī stat cūra parentis.

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of
 Aeneas*
 agnus, i *m.* lamb†
 argentum, i *n.* silver
 ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice†*
 Ascanius, (i) i *m.* son of Aeneas*
 caelō (1) engrave, carve, chase†
 cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved*
 centum hundred*
 cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast),
 rest*
 convivium, (i) i *n.* banquet, feast†
 enim for, indeed, truly*
 factum, i *n.* deed, undertaking, ex-
 ploit*
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant*
 horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, trem-
 ble*
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus array,
 equip, build, instruct†
 intereā meanwhile, meantime*
 interior, ius inside, inner

labōrō (1) work, form†
 laetitia, ae *f.* joy, gladness, delight
 luxus, ūs *m.* luxury, magnificence†
 mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
 minor, us less, smaller, slighter†
 oriġō, inis *f.* origin, beginning, source
 ostrum, i *n.* purple, scarlet, crimson†
 patior, i, passus suffer, endure, allow*
 pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
 praemittō, ere, misi, missus send (be-
 fore, forth)†
 rapidus, a, um swift, hurrying*
 rēgālīs, e royal, regal, kingly†
 seriēs, ēi *f.* succession, series, row†
 splendidus, a, um bright, resplendent†
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
 sūs, suis *m.* (f.) hog, pig, swine†
 taurus, i *m.* bull, bullock, ox†*
 tergum, i *n.* back, hide*
 tot so many*
 vestis, is *f.* robe, cloth(ing), tapestry*
 vīgintī twenty†

633. sociīs (Aenēae). Nec minus:
 likewise, moreover.

635. suum: gen. pl. of sūs.

636. mūnera: (as) gifts, in apposition
 with taurōs, terga, agnōs. dii: gen. of
 diēs, an old form. Another incomplete
 line; cf. l. 534 and note.

637. interior domus: the inner (part of
 the) palace.

638. (in) tēctis.

639. vestēs (instruuntur). arte: abl.
 of manner; App. 328; dependent on
 labōrātae. ostrō superbō: abl. of quality;
 App. 330. The Tyrian "purple" was
 famous; cf. line 337.

640. ingēns: massive or a vast amount.
 (in) mēnsis.

641. fortia facta: alliteration. *patrum*
 (Tyriōrum): early heroes of Tyre.

642. ducta: modifies seriēs (l. 641).

643-656. Aeneas sends Achates to
 bring Ascanius, and some costly presents
 for Dido.

644. passus (est).

645. Ascaniō: indir. obj. (ut) ferat,
 dūcat: purpose; App. 359; or substan-
 tive clauses developed from the volitive,
 dependent upon the idea of bidding im-
 plied in praemittit Achātēn; App. 360.

*Mūnera praetereā Īliacīs ērepta ruīnīs
ferre jubet, pallam signīs aurōque rigentem
et circumtextum croceō vēlāmen acanthō,
ornātūs Argīvae Helenae, quōs illa Mycēnīs,* 650
*Pergama cum peteret inconcessōsque hymenaeōs,
extulerat, mātrīs Lēdae mirābile dōnum;
praetereā scēptrum, Īlionē quod gesserat ōlim,
maxima nātārū Priamī, collōque monile
bācātum, et duplicem gemmīs aurōque corōnam.* 655
Haec celerāns iter ad nāvīs tendēbat Achātēs.

*At Cytherēa novās artīs, nova pectore versat
cōnsilia, ut faciem mūtātus et ōra Cupidō*

acanthus, *i m.* acanthus, a flowering plant†
Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*

Argīvus, *a, um* Argive, of Argos, a Greek city

ars, artis f. art(istry), skill, artifice*

bācātus, *a, um* set (strung) with pearls†

celerō (1) hasten, speed, hurry

circumtexō, ere, uī, xtus embroider, weave around†

collum, *i n.* neck†*

cōnsilium, (*i i n.* plan, advice

corōna, *ae f.* crown, garland†

croceus, *a, um* yellow, saffron†

Cupidō, inis m. Cupid, god of love†

Cytherēa, *ae f.* the Cytherean, Venus, who was born on the island of Cythera

duplex, icis double, two(fold)

effērō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus carry off, lift*

faciēs, ēi f. face, appearance†*

gemma, ae f. gem, jewel†

gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wear, wage*

Helena, ae f. Helen, famous Greek

woman, married to Menelaüs; she eloped with Paris and thus brought on the Trojan War†

hymenaeus, i m. (god of) marriage†

Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*

Īlionē, ēs f. eldest daughter of Priam†

inconcessus, a, um illegal, forbidden†

iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*

Lēda, ae f. mother of Helen†

mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous

monile, is n. collar, necklace†

mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter†*

Mycēnae, ārum f. Greek city

nāta, ae f. daughter

ōlim once, at some time*

ornātus, ūs m. ornament, adornment†

palla, ae f. cloak, mantle, robe†

Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*

praetereā besides, henceforth*

rigēns, entis stiff, rigid†

ruīna, ae f. downfall, ruin

scēptrum, i n. staff, scepter, power

signum, i n. sign, token, figure*

vēlāmen, inis n. garment, robe, veil†

versō (1) keep turning, revolve†

647. (ex) **ruīnīs**: abl. of separation; App. 340. **Mūnera**: cf. l. 636; such an exchange of gifts between host and guest was common in antiquity and is still found among many peoples.

648. (Achātēs) **ferre jubet**.

649. **acanthō**: a common element in the decorative art of antiquity and well known from its use as one of the features of the capital of the Corinthian column.

650. **ornātūs**: acc. pl., apposition with **pallam** and **vēlāmen**, which in turn are in apposition with **mūnera**. **Mycēnīs**: place from which; App. 320.

651. **peteret**: cum temporal, with a long final syllable before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, a.

inconcessōs hymenaeōs: her fateful marriage with Paris.

653. **Īlionē**: nom., a Greek form; App. 66.

654. **maxima (nātū)**: *eldest*. **collō**: dat. of purpose; a collar for the neck.

655. **gemma aurōque**: abl. of means or of manner; App. 331, 328.

656. **Haec**: obj. of **celerāns**.

657-698. **Venus** substitutes **Cupid** for **Ascanius**, that **Dido** may fall in love with **Aeneas**.

657. (in) **pectore**. **novās, nova**: rhetorical repetition, called anaphora.

658. **faciem et ōra**: objects of the "middle" participle **mūtātus**; App. 309.

- prō dulcī Ascaniō veniat, dōnīsq̄ue furentem
 660 incendat rēginam atque ossibus implicet ignem.
 Quippe domum timet ambiguum Tyriōsq̄ue bilinguīs,
 ūrit atrōx Jūnō et sub noctem cūra recursat.
 Ergō hīs āligerum dictīs adfātur Amōrem:
 "Nāte, meae vīrēs, mea magna potentia, sōlus,
 665 nāte, patris summī quī tēla Typhōea temnis,
 ad tē cōfugiō et supplex tua nūmina poscō.
 Frāter ut Aenēās pelagō tuus omnia circum
 litora jactētur odiīs Jūnōnis acerbae,
 nōta tibi, et nostrō doliustī saepe dolōre.
 670 Nunc Phoenissa tenet Dīdō blandisque morātur

acerbus, a, um bitter, cruel, harsh†
 adfor, fāri, fātus address, speak to†
 āliger, era, erum winged†
 ambiguus, a, um doubtful, deceitful†
 Amor, ōris m. Love, Cupid†
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*
 atrōx, ōcis dark, fierce, savage†
 bilinguis, e double-tongued, dishonest†
 blandus, a, um caressing, persuasive†
 cōfugiō, ere, fūgi flee (for help)†
 doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer
 dolor, ōris m. pain, grief, anger, passion*
 dulcis, e sweet, dear*
 ergō therefore, then†*
 frāter, tris m. brother*
 implicō, āre, uī (āvi), itus (ātus) infold,
 mingle, encircle†
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, fire†*
 jactō (l) toss, buffet*

moror, āri, ātus delay, linger; detain†*
 nōtus, a, um (well)known, familiar*
 odium, (i)ī n. hate, hatred, enmity
 os, ossis n. bone†*
 Phoenissa, ae f. Phoenician (woman)†
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek*
 potentia, ae f. power, might, strength†
 prō before, for (abl.)*
 supplex truly, forsooth, surely, indeed
 recursō (l) keep recurring, return†
 saepe often*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
 temnō, ere scorn, despise, disdain
 timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread†*
 Typhōeus, a, um Typhoean, of Typhoeus,
 a giant who while trying to capture
 heaven was slain by Jupiter with his
 thunderbolt†
 ūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn, inflame†

659. dōnis: abl. of means with incendet. furentem: proleptic; App. 440; may inflame the mad queen, i.e., may inflame the queen to madness. See the note on l. 69.

659-660. veniat, incendat, implicet: purpose; App. 359.

660. ossibus: her innermost nature, where her deepest feelings were. ossibus: dat. of a compound; App. 298. ignem (amōris).

661. ambiguum, bilinguis: one's enemies are likely to be characterized as lying scoundrels. The Romans came to hate the Carthaginians during the Punic Wars so bitterly that Pūnica fidēs became synonymous for treachery.

662. ūrit (Venerem) atrōx Jūnō: (the thought of) cruel Juno inflames (Venus with anxiety).

664. sōlus: nom., although preceded by the voc. nāte.

665. patris summī: Jovis. tēla: thun-

derbolts with which Jupiter overthrew the giant Typhoeus, who along with the other giants was attempting to capture heaven by storm. The ancients loved to represent Cupid as scorning the thunderbolts of Jove, as a mark of the resistless power of Love. This was sometimes summed up in the proverb omnia vincit amor.

666. supplex: (as) a suppliant.

667-669. ut frāter . . . nōta (sunt): how your brother (Aeneas) is tossed about is known to you. (in) pelagō.

668. jactētur: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. The last syllable is lengthened before the pause under the metrical accent; App. 394, a.

669. nōta (sunt): for nōtum est; a Greek construction. nostrō = meō; compare the use of the "editorial we" in English. doliustī dolōre: pleonasm; App. 438.

670. (eum) tenet.

*vocibus, et vereor quō sē Jūnōnia vertant
hospitia: haud tantō cessābit cardine rērum.
Quōcircā capere ante dolis et cingere flammā
rēginam meditor, nē quō sē nūmine mūtet,
sed magnō Aenēae mēcum teneātur amōre.*
Quā facere id possis nostram nunc accipe mentem:
*rēgius accitū cārī genitōris ad urbem
Sidoniam puer ire parat, mea maxima cūra,
dōna ferēns pelagō et flammīs restantia Trojae;
hunc ego sōpitum somnō super alta Cythēra
aut super Īdalium sacrātā sēde recondam,
nē quā scire dolōs mediūve occurrere possit.
Tū faciem illius noctem nōn ampliū ūnam
falle dolō et nōtōs puerī puer indue vultūs,
ut, cum tē gremiō accipiet laetissima Dīdō*

675

680

685

accitus, ūs *m.* summons, call†
amplius more, longer, farther†
cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, crisis
cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved*
cessō (1) delay, cease, hesitate†
cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus surround, gird*
Cythēra, ōrum *n.* island south of Greece,
birthplace of Venus†
dolus, ī *m.* trick, deceit, wiles, fraud*
faciēs, ēi *f.* face, appearance*
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, counter-
feit†*
gremium, (i)ī *n.* lap, bosom, embrace†
hospitium, (i)ī *n.* hospitality, welcome
Īdalium, (i)ī *n.* mountain of Cyprus,
sacred to Venus†
induo, ere, uī, ūtus put on, don†
Jūnōnius, a, um of Juno†

meditor, āri, ātus consider, plan, intend†
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
nōtus, a, um (well)known, familiar*
occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)
meet, thwart (*dat.*)†
quā, by what (any) way (means), how,
where(by), in any way
quōcircā wherefore†
recōndō, ere, didi, ditus hide, establish†
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
restō, āre, stiti remain, survive
sacrō (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate†*
sciō, ire, iui (iū), itus know (how)
Sidōnius, a, um Sidonian, Phoenician
sōpitus, a, um asleep, sleeping, lulled†
vereor, ēri, itus fear, dread†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change, rout*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face*

671. Jūnōnia: Venus suspects Juno as having inspired the hospitality of Dido.
vertant: subj. in indir. quest.; App. 349

672. cardine: at such a crisis, abl. of time when; App. 322.

673. capere dolis, cingere flammā: military terms. flammā (amōris).

674. quō: indefinite. mūtet: negative purpose; App. 359. nūmine (Jūnōnis).

675. (ut) teneātur (Dīdō): purpose; App. 359.

676. possis: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349.

677. accitū: abl. of cause; App. 332. urbem Sidoniam = Carthāginem. See note on Sidōnia in l. 446.

677-678. rēgius puer: Ascanius.

679. (ē, ex) pelagō et flammīs: abl. of separation; App. 340.

680 681. somnō: with sōpitum, abl. of means or manner; pleonasm; App. 438. **Cythēra, Īdalium**: favorite haunts of Venus.

681. (in) sacrātā sēde: in some temple, shrine, or holy place.

682. quā (viā): indefinite. possit (Ascanius): negative purpose; App. 359. **occurrere (dolīs)**: and thus interfere with my plans.

683. noctem nōn ampliū ūnam: for one night, no longer. **noctem**: acc. of duration; App. 314.

684. pueri puer: brought together, to show how easy the masquerade would be for Cupid.

685-688. ut...inspirēs...fallās: purpose; App. 359. (in) gremiō. **laticem Lyaeum**: alliteration. **laticem Lyaeum** = vinum, wine, because Lyaeus, another

rēgālīs inter mēnsās laticemque Lyaeum,
cum dabit amplexūs atque ōscula dulcia figet,
occultum inspirēs ignem fallāsque venēnō."

690

Pāret Amor dictīs cārae genetricis, et ālās
exuit et gressū gaudēns incēdit Iūli.

At Venus Ascaniō placidam per membra quiētem
inrigat, et fōtum gremiō dea tollit in altōs
Īdaliae lūcōs, ubi mollis amāracus illum
flōribus et dulcī aspirāns complectitur umbrā.

695

Jamque ibat dictō pārēns et dōna Cupidō
rēgia portābat Tyriūs duce laetus Achātē.
Cum venīt, aulaeīs jam sē rēgīna superbīs
aureā composuit spondā mediamque locāvit,

Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of
Aeneas*

āla, ae f. wing*
amāracus, ī m. (f.) sweet marjoram†
amplexus, ūs m. embrace, fold†
Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*
a(d)spirō (1) breathe (on), blow on†
aulaea, ōrum n. curtains, tapestry†
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
cārus, a, um dear, fond, beloved*
complector, ī, exus embrace, infold†
compōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus compose,
construct, settle

Cupidō, inis m. Cupid, god of love
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fragrant*
dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief-
tain*
exuō, ere, ui, ūtus put off, doff†
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, counter-
feit*

figō, ere, fixi, fixus fix, fasten, plant*
flōs, flōris m. flower, blossom, bloom†
foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtus cherish, fondle
gaudeō, ēre, gāvissus rejoice, exult†
genetrix, icis f. mother
gremium, (i)ī n. lap, bosom, embrace
gressus, ūs m. step, walk, gait

Īdalia, ae f. mountain of Cyprus, sacred
to Venus

incēdō, ere, cessi, cessus go (majesti-
cally), stride

inrigō (1) irrigate, steep, diffuse†
inspirō (1) breathe in(to), inspire†
Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
latex, icis m. liquid, water, wine†
locō (1) locate, place, establish*
lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, forest*
Lyaeus, a, um Lyaeus, of Lyaeus
(Bacchus), god of wine†

membrum, ī n. member, limb, part*
mēnsa, ae f. table*
mollis, e soft, gentle, tender†
occulō, ere, ui, ultus hide, conceal
ōsculum, ī n. dainty lip, kiss
pāreō, ēre, ui, itus yield, obey (dat.)†
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
portō (1) carry (away), bear, bring*
quiēs, ētis f. rest, sleep, peace†*
rēgālīs, e royal, regal, kingly
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
sponda, ae f. couch†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
venēnum, ī n. poison, venom†
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty*

name for Bacchus, was god of wine.
(rēgīna Didō) dabit. ignem (amōris),
venēnō (amōris).

689. dictīs: dat. with special verb;
App. 297.

690. gressū: abl. of cause with gau-
dēns; App. 332.

691. Ascaniō: dat. of reference; App.
301.

692. (eum) fōtum (in) gremiō.

694. flōribus, umbrā: ablatives of
means with complectitur.

695. dictō: dat. with special verb;
App. 297.

696. Tyriūs: dat. of reference; App.
301. Achātē: abl. of cause with laetus,
or abl. abs. with duce; App. 332, 343.

697. venīt (Cupidō): present tense,
when he comes, the queen has (already)
arranged herself. (in) aulaeīs.

698. aureā: two syllables by synizesis;
App. 403. (in) spondā (sē) mediam locā-
vit: placed herself on a couch in the midst,
the place of honor, as befitted a queen.

jam pater Aenēās et jam Trojāna juventūs
conveniunt, strātōque super discumbitur ostrō. 700
Dant manibus famulī lymphās Cereremque canistrīs
expediunt tōnsisque ferunt mantēlia villis.
Quinquāgintā intus famulae, quibus ordine longam
cūra penum struere et flammīs adolēre penātīs;
centum aliae totidemque parēs aetāte ministrī, 705
quī dapibus mēnsās onerent et pōcula pōnant.
Nec nōn et Tyrū per līmina laeta frequentēs
convēnēre, torīs jussī discumbere pictīs.
Mirantur dōna Aenēae, mirantur Iūlum,
flagrantisque deī vultūs simulātaque verba, 710
pallamque et pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō.

acanthus, *i m.* acanthus, a flowering plant
adoleō, *ēre, ui, ultus* magnify, honor†
aetās, *ātis f.* age, time
canistrum, *i n.* basket, hamper†
centum hundred*
Cerēs, *eris f.* (goddess of) grain; bread
conveniō, *ire, vēni, ventus* come together,
 assemble, agree, harmonize
croceus, *a, um* saffron, yellow
daps, *dapis f.* banquet, feast*
discumbō, *ere, cubui, cubitus* recline (at
 table)†
expediō, *ire, iui (ii), itus* bring forth
famula, *ae f.* maid-servant†
famulus, *i m.* man-servant, page†
flagrō (1) burn, blaze, glow†
frequēns, *entis* thronging, crowded†
intus within, inside
Iūlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
juventūs, *ūtis f.* youth, young men*
lympa, *ae f.* water†
mantēle, *is n.* napkin, towel†
mēnsa, *ae f.* table*
minister, *tri m.* man-servant, attendant†

miror, *ārī, ātus* wonder (at), admire*
onerō (1) load, burden
ordō, *inis m.* order, line, array*
ostrum, *i n.* purple, scarlet, crimson
palla, *ae f.* cloak, robe, mantle
pār, *paris* equal, similar, even†*
penātēs, *ium m.* household gods*
penus, *ūs (i) m. (f.)* food, store†
pingō, *ere, pinxi, pictus* paint, embroider†
pōculum, *i n.* cup, goblet†
quinquāgintā fifty†
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, feign
sternō, *ere, strāvī, strātus* lay low,
 spread, strew*
struō, *ere, strūxi, strūctus* arrange, pile
 (up), construct, contrive†
tondeō, *ēre, totondi, tōnsus* shear, clip†
torus, *i m.* (banqueting) couch†*
totidem as many, so many†
Trojānus, *a, um* Trojan*
vēlāmen, *inis n.* garment, robe, veil
verbum, *i n.* word, speech†
villus, *i m.* tuft, nap, hair, bristle†
vultus, *ūs m.* countenance, face*

699-747. The great banquet in Dido's palace.

700. **discumbitur**: impersonal, *it is reclined = they (the guests) recline*. The ancient Romans reclined at banquets.

701. **manibus**: for (washing) their hands; dat. of purpose; App. 303. **Cererem**: Ceres, goddess of grain, used here by metonymy for bread; App. 433. (**ex**) **canistris**.

702. **tōnsis villis**: abl. of quality; App. 330.

703. **intus**: within (the serving rooms). **famulae** (sunt). **quibus** (erat) **cūra**: dat. of possession. (**in, ex**) **ordine**.

704. **flammis adolēre penātīs**: to honor the household gods with fires (on the altars).

705. **aetāte**: abl. of respect; App. 325.

706. **onerent, pōnant**: purpose; App. 359.

707. **Nec nōn**: likewise. **et**: also. **laeta**: a transferred epithet; it was really the people who were happy, not the doorways.

708. **convēnēre = convēnērunt**. (**in**) **toris**.

709. **Iūlum**: really Cupid, masquerading as Iulus (Ascanius).

710. **deī** (Cupidinis).

711. **pictum croceō vēlāmen acanthō**: interlocked order; App. 442.

- Praecipuē *infēlix*, pestī dēvōta *futūrae*,
 explēri *mentem* nequit ardēscitque tuendō
 715 *Phoenissa*, et pariter *puerō dōnisque* movētur.
Ille ubi complexū *Aenēae* collōque pependit
 et magnum falsi implēvit *gēnitōris amōrem*,
rēginam petit. *Haec oculis*, haec *pectore* *tōtō*
 haeret et interdum *gremiō* fovet *inscia Dīdō*
 insīdat quantus *miseræ deus*. At *memor ille*
 720 *mātrīs Acidaliae* paulātim abolēre *Sychaeum*
 incipit et *vīvō* temptat *praevertere amōre*
jam pridem residēs *animōs dēsuētae* corda.
 Postquam *prīma* quīēs *epulis mēnsaeque* remōtae,
 crātēras *magnōs* statuunt et *vīna* corōnant.

aboleō, ēre, ēvi, itus abolish, remove†
 Acidalius, a, um Acidalian, of Acidalia,
 a fountain in Boeotia, sacred to Venus†
 ardēscō, ere, arsi catch fire, burn†
 collum, i n. neck*
 complexus, ūs m. embrace†
 cor, cordis n. heart, spirit, feelings*
 corōnō (1) crown, wreath†
 crātēr, ēris m. (mixing) bowl, urn†
 dēsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, disused†
 dēvoveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtus vow, doom,
 devote†
 epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast
 expleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete, sat-
 isfy
 falsus, a, um false, deceitful, pretended
 foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtus fondle, cherish
 gremium, (i) i n. lap, bosom, embrace
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling
 (to)*
 impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy
 incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-
 take†*
 inscius, a, um ignorant, unaware†
 insidō, ere, sēdi, sessus settle on†
 interdum sometimes, at times†

memor, oris mindful, remembering, un-
 forgetting*
 mēnsa, ae f. table*
 nequeō, ire, ivi (ii), itus be unable†
 pariter equally, on equal terms*
 paulātim gradually, little by little†
 pendeō, ēre, pependi hang*
 pestis, is f. plague, ruin, destruction†
 Phoenissa, ae f. Phoenician (woman),
 Dido
 postquam after (that), when*
 praecipuē especially
 praevertō, ere, i, rsus occupy first, out-
 strip, surpass
 pridem long ago, long since, for some time†
 quantus, a, um how much, how great,
 how many*
 quīēs, ētis f. calm, peace, quiet, lull*
 removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove
 reses, idis inert, unstirred, sluggish†
 statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, build
 Sychaeus, i m. deceased husband of Dido
 temptō (1) try, test, attempt, seek†*
 tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, guard*
 vinum, i n. wine*
 vivus, a, um living, natural, alive

712. pesti futūrae dēvōta: her love
 was to cause her destruction, as is told in
 the fourth book of the *Aeneid*.

713. tuendō: gerund; from tueor, abl.
 of means; App. 269, 331; with (by)
 gazing.

714. Phoenissa: Dido. puerō: abl.,
 thought of as means, coördinate with dōnis.

718. (in) gremiō.

719. insīdat: subj. in an indir. quest.,
 depending on inscia; App. 349. miseræ:
 substantively, the unfortunate (woman),
 proleptic; dat. with compound; App. 440,
 298. ille: Cupidō.

720. mātrīs Acidaliae: of his Acidalian
 mother (Venus). mātris: gen. with the adj.
 memor; App. 287. abolēre Sychaeum:
 to make her forget Sychaeus entirely.

721. vīvō amōre: with a living love for
 Aeneas; contrasted with her old love
 for the dead Sychaeus.

722. dēsuēta corda: her heart (now)
 having become unaccustomed (to love).

723. epulis (fuit): dat. of possession;
 App. 299; when the first lull came in the
 feasting. mēnsae remōtae (sunt). Cf.
 l. 216.

724. crātērās: acc. pl., a Greek form.

Fit strepitus *tēctis vōcemque per ampla volūtant* 725
ātria; dēpendent lychni laqueāribus aureis
incēnsi et noctem flammis fūnalia vincunt.
Hic rēgīna gravem gemmis aurōque poposcit
implēvitque merō pateram, quam Bēlus et omnēs
ā Bēlō soliti; tum facta silentia tēctis: 730
“Juppiter, hospitibus nam tē dare jūra loquuntur,
hunc laetum Tyrīisque diem Trojāque profectis
esse velis, nostrōsque hujus meminisse minōrēs
Adsit laetitiae Bacchus dator et bona Jūnō;
et vōs, Ō coetum, Tyrīi, celebrāte faventēs.” 735
Dixit et in mēnsam laticum libāvit honōrem
prīmaque, libātō, summō tenus attigit ōre;
tum Bitiae dedit increpitāns; ille impiger hausit

amplus, a, um ample, full, spacious†
 ātrium, (i)ī n. great hall, atrium†
 attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach†
 aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
 Bacchus, i m. (god of) wine
 Bēlus, i m. early Phoenician king†
 Bitiās, ae m. Carthaginian courtier†
 bonus, a, um good, kind(ly), useful*
 celebrō (1) throng, attend, honor†
 coetus, ūs m. assembly, crowd, company
 dator, ōris m. giver, bestower†
 dēpendeō, ēre hang down (from) (abl.)†
 faveō, ēre, fāvī, fautus favor, befriending†
 fiō, fieri, factus become, be made
 fūnale, is n. taper, lamp†
 gemma, ae f. gem, jewel
 gravis, e heavy, weighty, serious*
 hauriō, īre, hausi, haustus drain, draw (off)†
 hospes, itis m. guest, host, stranger†
 impiger, gra, grum eager, quick†
 impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*

incendō, ere, i, ēnsus light, inflame*
 increpitō (1) challenge, chide†
 jūs, jūris n. law, right, decree
 laetitia, ae f. joy, gladness, delight
 laquear, āris n. fretted (paneled) ceiling†
 latex, icis m. liquid, water, wine
 libō (1) taste, pour (as a libation)
 loquor, i, locūtus speak, say*
 lychnus, i m. lamp, chandelier†
 meminī, isse remember, recall (gen.)
 mēnsa, ae f. table*
 merum, i n. unmixed wine†
 minōrēs, um m. descendants, posterity
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl†
 poscō, ere, poposcī demand, seek*
 proficiscor, i, fectus set out, depart
 silentium, (i)ī n. silence, quiet, repose†
 soleō, ēre, solitus sum be accustomed†
 strepitus, ūs m. noise, uproar
 tenus up to, as far as (abl.)†
 volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder

The wine was mixed with water and was not brought in till the guests had finished eating. *vīna corōnant:* they encircle the wine (bowls) with garlands and wreaths of leaves and flowers, a usual custom at Roman and Greek banquets.

725. *strepitus:* the sound of joyful revelry. (in) *tēctis*.

726. (dē) *laqueāribus. aureis:* two syllables by synizesis; App. 403.

728. *pateram gravem gemmis aurōque.*

729. *Bēlus:* a remote ancestor of Dido, not to be confused with Belus, her father, mentioned in l. 621. *omnēs ā Bēlō:* all those (descended from) Belus.

730. *soliti(erant)implēre. facta(sunt).* *silentia:* poetic plural. (in) *tēctis*.

731. *Juppiter:* Dido invokes the blessing of Jupiter as god of hospitality.

732. *velis hunc diem esse laetum.* (his) *Trojā profectis = Teucris.*

733. *velis:* opt. subj.; App. 253. *hujus (diēi).*

734. *Adsit:* opt.; App. 253. *laetitiae:* obj. gen. with *dator*; App. 284.

735. *coetum:* obj. of *celebrāte. faventēs:* speaking no unpropitious word, graciously.

736. *honōrem:* honor (to the gods), offering.

737. *libātō:* impersonal abl. abs., a libation having been poured; App. 343. *summō ōre:* with a dainty feminine sip, to observe the ancient propities.

738. *dedit (pateram).*

- spūmantem pateram et plēnō sē prōluit aurō;
 740 post *aliī* procerēs. Citharā crīnītus Iōpās
 personat aurātā, docuit *quem maximus* Atlās.
Hic canit *errantem* lūnam sōlisque labōrēs,
 unde hominum *genus* et pecudēs, unde imber et ignēs,
 Arctūrum pluviāsque Hyadas *geminōsque* Triōnēs;
 745 *quid tantum* Ōceanō properent sē tingere sōlēs
 hibernī, *vel quae* tardis mora *noctibus* obstat.
 Ingeminant plausū *Tyriū*, Trōesque *sequuntur*.
Nec nōn et variō *noctem* sermōne *trahēbat*
infēlix Dīdō *longumque* bibēbat *amōrem*,

Arctūrus, *i m.* bright star in the constellation Boötes, which rose in the stormy season†

Atlās, *antis m.* god who supported the sky on his shoulders; high mountain of northwest Africa†

aurātus, *a, um* gilded†

bibō, *ere, i* drink (of, in)

canō, *ere, cecinī, cantus* sing (of), chant, proclaim*

cithara, *ae f.* harp, lyre, either†

crīnītus, *a, um* long-haired†

doceō, *ēre, uī, ctus* teach, instruct*

hibernus, *a, um* wintry, of winter

homō, *inis m. (f.)* man, mortal, human*

Hyades, *um f.* constellation, rising in the stormy season†

imber, *bris m.* rain, flood, water

ingeminō (1) redouble†

Iōpās, *ae m.* Phoenician bard†

lūna, *ae f.* moon†*

mora, *ae f.* delay, hindrance, hesitation*

obstō, *āre, stiti, status* oppose, hinder (*dat.*)†

Ōceanus, *i m.* ocean

patera, *ae f.* (libation) bowl

pecus, *udis f.* member of flock, animal†*

personō, *āre, uī, itus* sound, play†

plausus, *ūs m.* clapping, applause†

plēnus, *a, um* full, filled

pluvius, *a, um* watery, rainy†

post after (*acc.*); afterward, then*

procer, *eris m.* noble, lord†

prōluō, *ere, uī, ūtus* drench, wash†

properō (1) hasten, hurry†

sermō, *ōnis m.* conversation, speech

sōl, *sōlis m.* sun; day*

spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray

tardus, *a, um* slow, late, lazy†

ting(u)ō, *ere, tinxī, tinctus* wet, dip†

Triōnēs, *um m.* constellations, the Greater and Lesser Bear†

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*

unde whence, from what source (cause)*

varius, *a, um* varied, different*

739. plēnō aurō: *the full (cup of) gold.*

740. post = postea. procerēs (pateram hausērunt). Citharā: abl. of instrument or means; App. 331. crīnītus: *long-haired*, a style often affected by artists even today.

742. Hic: Iōpās. lūnam, labōrēs: cognate acc. with canit, stating themes of the song; cf. arma virumque canō (l. 1). sōlis labōrēs: *eclipses*, since the sun was thought of as struggling and suffering during an eclipse.

743. unde hominum genus (sit): the first of a series of indirect questions depending on canit. unde (sint) ignēs (Jovis): *lightnings*.

745. quid hibernī sōlēs properent

tantum: why the winter days are so short and the nights so long. (in) Ōceanō.

746. properent, obstat: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349. tardis noctibus (hibernis): dat. with compound; App. 298.

748-756. Dido, smitten with love for Aeneas, begs him to tell all about himself and his adventures, beginning with the fall of Troy.

748. Nec nōn et: *likewise, also.*

749. infēlix: cf. pesti dēvōta futūrae, (l. 712). longum amōrem: *deep (draughts of) love.*

multa super Priamō rogitāns, super Hectore multa; 750
nunc quibus Aurōrae vēnisset filius armīs,
nunc quālēs Diomēdis equī, nunc quantus Achillēs.
"Immō age et ā primā dīc, hospes, origine nōbīs
insidiās" inquit "Danaum cāsūque tuōrum
errōrēsque tuōs; nam tē jam septima portat 755
omnibus errantem terrīs et flūctibus aestās."

Achillēs, is (ī) m. Greek chieftain*

aestās, ātis f. summer

Aurōra, ae f. goddess of dawn, mother of Memnon, a Trojan ally†*

Diomēdēs, is m. Greek chieftain, who captured the horses of Aeneas, the finest under the sun†

error, ōris m. wandering, straying†

filius, (i)ī m. son

Hector, oris m. Trojan leader*

hospes, itis m. guest, host, stranger

immō nay (rather), rather†

inquam, is, it say*

insidiae, ārum f. ambush, treachery, snare, trick†

origō, inis f. origin, beginning, source

portō (1) carry, bear, bring*

quālīs, e of what sort, such (as)*

quantus, a, um how great, how much, how many, as*

rogitō (1) ask (often, eagerly)†

septimus, a, um seventh†

750-752 Dido's questions indicate that her primary interest is not in the things about which she inquires but in Aeneas.

751. *quibus armīs . . . vēnisset:* indir. quest.; App. 349.

752. *quālēs (essent) equī, quantus (esset) Achillēs:* indirect questions; App. 349.

753. *dīc:* imp. of *dīcō*; App. 202.

754. *Dana(ōr)um.*

756. (in) *terrīs et (in) flūctibus.*

BOOK II

CONTICUĒRE *omnēs intentīque ōra tenēbant.*

Inde torō pater Aenēās sic orsus ab altō:

“Infandum, rēgīna, jubēs renovāre dolōrem,

Trojānās ut opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum

5 ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī
et quōrum pars magna fuī. Quis tālia fandō

Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūri miles Ulixi

temperet ā lacrimīs? Et jam nox ūmida caelō

praecipitat suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs.

10 Sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn; know
conticēscō, ere, ticui become silent, hush†
Dolopes, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, anger, pain, pas-
sion*

dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ēruō, ere, ui, utus overthrow, tear up†
inde thence, afterward, thereupon*
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
intentus, a, um intent, eager, strained†
lāmentābilis, e lamentable, pitiable, sad†
miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)†

Myrmidones, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly,
subjects of Achilles†
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
ordior, iri, orsus begin, undertake
praecipitō (1) throw (headlong), fall†
renovō (1) renew, revive†
suādeō, ēre, āsi, āsus advise, urge
temperō (1) control, restrain, refrain
torus, i *m.* (banqueting) couch, cushion*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
Ulixēs, is (ei, i) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek
leader†*
ūmidus, a, um moist, dewy, damp†

1-12. Acceding to Dido's request Aeneas agrees to describe the fall of Troy, in spite of the sorrow renewed by such memories.

1. *conticuēre* (= *conticuērunt*), *tenēbant*: observe the difference in tenses, the perfect denoting instantaneous, completed result, *they grew silent*; the imperf. continued action, *they continued to hold*; App. 351, 2 and 4. *ōra* (in, ad Aenēan) *tenēbant*.

2. *pater*: simply a title of honor and veneration, because of its Roman associations, where it was regularly used of a member of the senatorial and ruling aristocracy. *ab altō torō*: on which he was reclining at the banquet. *orsus* (est): from *ordior*.

3. *Infandum*: emphatic by position. *jubēs (mē) renovāre*.

4. *Trojānās*: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b, (*fandō*) *ut*

Danaī ēruerint Trojānās opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum (fandō)que (ea) miserrima quae (ego) ipse vīdī. fandō: by telling. ut: how.

5. *ēruerint*: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. *miserrima*: substantively: *the heart-breaking events*.

6. *tālia*: substantively, obj. of *fandō* in l. 6. *fandō*: gerund of *for*; abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

7. (*quis*) *miles. Myrmidonum Dolopumve*: part. genitives, depending on *quis*; App. 286.

8. *temperet*: deliberative subj.; App. 348. (*dē*) *caelō*: the night is personified; App. 437; after passing the zenith at midnight in her chariot, she is now rushing down into the western wave; it is thus after midnight.

9. *praecipitat (in mare)*.

10. *si amor (est tibi) cognōscere = si vis (from volō) cognōscere*; App. 261.

et breviter Trojae suprēum audire labōrem,
quamquam animus meminisse horret lūctūque refūgit
incipiam.

Frācti bellō fātisque repulsi
ductōrēs Danaum tot jam labentibus annis
instar montis equum divinā Palladis arte
aedificant, sectāque intexunt abiete costās;
vōtum prō reditū simulant; ea fāma vagātur.
Hūc dēlēcta virum sortitī corpora fūrtim
inclūdunt caecō laterī penitusque cavernās
ingentīs uterumque armātō milite complent.

abiēs, etis *f.* fir, pine†
aedificō (1) build, construct, erect†
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish†*
ars, artis *f.* art(istry), skill, artifice*
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
caverna, ae *f.* hollow, cavity, cavern†
compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete†
costa, ae *f.* rib, side
dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, select†
divinus, a, um divine, celestial, holy
ductor, ōris *m.* leader, chieftain, guide
frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, shatter*
fūrtim stealthily, secretly, furtively†
horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, tremble*
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake*
inclūdō, ere, si, sus inclose, confine†
instar *n. indecl.* likeness, image (*gen.*)†
intexō, ere, xui, xtus (in)weave, cover†
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*

lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, mourning, sorrow†
memini, isse remember, recall
miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)
Pallas, adis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wisdom
and the arts
penitus deep(ly), within, completely*
prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)*
quamquam although; however, but†
reditus, ūs *m.* return (home)†
refugiō, ere, fūgi flee, retreat, recoil†
repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus drive back,
repel†
secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, slice, cleave*
simulō (1) pretend, imitate, feign
sortior, iri, itus draw (by) lot, allot†
tot so many, as many*
uterus, ī *m.* belly, womb†
vagor, āri, ātus wander, spread abroad†
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offer-
ing*
voveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtus vow, consecrate

11. Trojae: with the first syllable long by position; App. 6, b. suprēum labōrem: the final agony.

12. lūctū: *abl.* of cause; App. 332.

13-20. After ten years of unsuccessful effort, the Greeks, worn out by the long siege and lacking confidence in their strength and courage, resort to strategy. They pretend to flee but hide in the neighboring island of Tenedos, leaving behind an enormous wooden horse, in which are concealed the bravest of the Greek leaders.

13. bellō, fātis: *ablatives* of means; App. 331.

14. ductōrēs = ducēs. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, d. labentibus annis: *abl. abs.*, denoting cause; App. 343. The siege of Troy was now in its tenth and final year.

15. aedificant equum instar montis: "big as a mountain," hyperbole; App. 428. Palladis arte: as goddess of wisdom and the arts, Minerva had inspired the Greeks with the idea and with the skill necessary for its execution.

16. abiete: pronounce abiete here, making the first syllable long by position; App. 401.

17. (Danai) simulant (equum esse) vōtum prō (suō) reditū: for their (safe) return (home).

18. dēlēcta vir(ōr)um corpora = virōs dēlēctōs. Hūc (= in hunc equum) caecō laterī fūrtim inclūdunt dēlēcta corpora vir(ōr)um, sortitī (ea).

19. caecō laterī = in caecum latus, *dat.* of direction or with compound; App. 306, 298.

- Est in cōspectū Tenedos, nōtissima fāmā
insula, dives opum Priamī dum rēgna manēbant,
nunc tantum sinus et statio male fida carinīs:
hūc sē prōvecti dēsertō in litore condunt.*
25 *Nōs abiisse ratī et ventō petiisse Mycēnās.
Ergō omnis longō solvit sē Teucria lūctū:
panduntur portae, juvat ire et Dōrica castra
dēsertōsque vidēre locōs lītusque relictum:
hīc Dolopum manus, hīc saevus tendēbat Achillēs;
30 *classibus hīc locus, hīc aciē certāre solēbant.
Pars stupet innūptae dōnum exitiāle Minervae**

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart, go (away)*
Achillēs, is (i) m. Greek leader*
aciēs, ēī f. edge; battle line, army*
carina, ae f. keel, ship†
castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment*
certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish; hide*
cōspectus, ūs m. sight, view
dēsērō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy (gen.)
Dolopes, um m. Greeks of Thessaly
Dōricus, a, um Doric, Spartan, Greek†
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exitiālis, e fatal, destructive, deadly†
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
innūptus, a, um unwed, virgin†
insula, ae f. island
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
lūctus, ūs m. grief, mourning, sorrow

male badly, illy, not†
Minerva, ae f. goddess of wisdom and the arts†
Mycēnae, ārum f. Greek city; Greece
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
ops, opis f. help, resources, power, wealth*
pandō, ere, i, passus spread, open, loosen*
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*
prōvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry, convey†
reor, rēri, ratus suppose, think, reckon†
saevus, a, um stern, fierce, raging*
sinus, ūs m. fold, hollow, bosom, bay*
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
statio, ōnis f. station, anchorage†
stupeō, ēre, uī be dazed, stand agape (at)
tantum so much, so great, only
Tenedos, ī f. small island near Troy†
Teucria, ae f. Troy, Troyland†

21-30. After the departure of the Greeks, the Trojans rush out to see the deserted camp.

21. Est: *there is*. in cōspectū (Trojae). fāmā: abl. of respect; App. 325.

22. opum: gen. of respect with the adj. dives; App. 294. Priamī rēgna: poetic plural; App. 243.

23. nunc (insula est) tantum sinus. male fida = infida: *unsafe, treacherous*; litotes; App. 431. carinīs = nāvibus: dat. with infida; App. 304, 443.

24. hūc = ad hanc insulam. (Danaī) prōvecti (per pelagus).

25. Nōs: contrasted with the treacherous Greeks; App. 247. Nōs ratī (sumus Danaōs) abiisse. ventō: abl. of means; App. 331. Mycēnās = Graeciam, Greece; App. 443.

26. lūctū: abl. of separation; App. 340. omnis longō Teucria lūctū: interlocked order; App. 442.

27. juvat (nōs) ire (ex urbe): impersonal, *it pleases (us), we delight*.

29-30. hīc manus (tendēbat). hīc . . . hīc . . . hīc: the Trojans point out these places to one another. The anaphora adds to the vividness; App. 413. hīc (erat) locus classibus (Danaōrum): refers to the place where the Greek vessels had been drawn up on shore. classibus = nāvibus: dat. of reference; App. 301. aciē: abl. of manner; App. 328. hīc (Danaī) aciē certāre solēbant.

31-56. The more prudent among them urge the Trojans to destroy the wooden horse. Laocoön takes the lead in this proposal and strikes the side of the horse with his spear.

31. stupet = mirātur: its object is dōnum. exitiāle: *fatal* (for Troy), as will be seen in the sequel. Minervae: obj. gen.; App. 284.

*et mōlem mīrantur equī; prīmusque Thymoetēs
dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,
sive dolō seu jam Trojae sic fāta ferēbant.)
At Capys, et quōrum melior sententia mentī,
aut pelagō Danaum insidiās suspectaque dōna
praecipitāre jubent subjectīsque ūrere flammīs,
aut terebrāre cavās uterī et temptāre latebrās.
Scinditur incertum studia in contrāria vulgus.*

*Prīmus ibi ante omnīs magnā comitante catervā
Lāocoōn ardēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,
et procul: 'Ō miserī, quae tanta insānia, civēs?
Crēditis āvectōs hostis? Aut ūlla putātis
dōna carēre dolis Danaum? Sic nōtus Ulixēs?*

35

40

āvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry, convey
(away)

Capys, yos *m.* Trojan leader

careō, ēre, ui, itus be free from, lack (*abl.*) †

caterva, ae *f.* crowd, band, troop

cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*

civis, is *m.* (*f.*) citizen, compatriot†

comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort,
follow†

contrārius, a, um opposite, opposing

crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*

dēcurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run down†

dolus, i *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*

hortor, āri, ātus exhort, urge, incite†*

hostis, is *m.* (*f.*) enemy, foe, stranger*

ibi there, then†

incertus, a, um uncertain, wavering†

insānia, ae *f.* madness, frenzy, folly†

insidiae, ārum *f.* snare, ambush, treachery

intrā within, inside, in(to) (*acc.*)

Lāocoōn, ontis *m.* Trojan priest of Nep-
tune†

latebra, ae *f.* hiding place, cavern, lair†

locō (1) place, locate, establish*

melior, ius better, superior, nobler

mīror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire*

mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, bur-
den

mūrūs, i *m.* (city) wall, rampart*

nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*

praecipitō (1) throw (headlong), fall

putō (1) suppose, think, consider†

scindō, ere, scidi, scissus split, divide

sententia, ae *f.* opinion, purpose, view

sive, seu or (if), whether, either

studium, (i) *n.* zeal, desire, pursuit

subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place under†

suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus suspect

temptō (1) try, test, examine, explore*

terebrō (1) bore into, pierce†

Thymoetēs, ae *m.* Trojan leader†

Ulixēs, is (ei, i) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek
leader*

ūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn, consume

uterus, i *m.* belly, womb

vulgus, i *n.* (*m.*) rabble, crowd, herd

32. mīrantur: pl. with a collective
noun, pars, although the preceding verb,
stupet, is singular; App. 236, a.

33. hortātur (equum) dūci et (in) arce
locārī = hortātur ut equus dūcātur et
locātur in arce (Trojae): App. 360.

34. dolō: abl. of cause; App. 332. fāta
(sē) ferēbant: fates were tending; an oracle
had foretold that a child born on a certain
day would cause the destruction of Troy.
When a child was born to Thymoetes and
Paris was born to Priam on that day, Priam
put to death the son of Thymoetes, think-
ing thereby to avert ruin for the state.

35. et (ei) quōrum sententia melior
(erat) menti: and those whose mind had a
better counsel. menti: dat. of possession;
App. 299.

36. pelagō: dat. of direction; App.
306. Dana(ōr)um insidiās suspectaque
dōna = equum.

37. -que = -ve; some advise the de-
struction of the horse in the sea or by fire;
others an examination of its contents.
(nōs) jubent. ūrere (equum) flammis:
abl. of means; App. 331.

38. cavās latebrās: obj. of both tere-
brāre and temptāre.

40. comitante catervā: abl. abs.; App.
343.

42. et procul (clāmat). insānia (est
ista).

43. āvectōs (esse).

44. dolis: abl. of separation with
carēre; App. 340. dōna Dana(ōr)um.
nōtus (est vōbis) Ulixēs: Ulysses, the

- 45 *Aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achivī,
aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,
inspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsuper urbī,
aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite, Teucrī.
Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentīs.*
- 50 *Sic fātus validīs ingentem viribus hastam
in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum
contorsit. Stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō
insonuēre cavae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.
Et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,*
- 55 *impulerat ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,
Trojaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta manērēs.*

Achivus, a, um Achaean, Greek
aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod) some(one),
any(one)*
alvus, i f. belly, body†
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek†
caverna, ae f. hollow, cavity, cave
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
compāgēs, is f. joint, seam, fastening
contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus hurl, whirl†
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (dat.)*
curvus, a, um curved, crooked†*
dēsuper from above
error, ōris m. error, deceit, trick
fabricō (1) fashion, make†
ferus, i m. beast, monster, horse*
foedō (1) befoul, defile; mar, mangle†
gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, moan*
hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart
impellō, ere, puli, pulsus impel, drive

inclūdō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, confine
insonō, āre, uī (re)sound, roar, echo†
inspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look into†
laevus, a, um left, foolish, unlucky*
latebra, ae f. hiding place, cavern, lair
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
latus, eris n. side, flank*
lignum, i n. wood, timber†
māchina, ae f. machine, engine, de-
vice†
mūrus, i m. (city) wall, rampart*
occultō (1) hide, conceal, secrete†
quisquis, quidquid whoever, whatever
recutiō, ere, cussi, cussus strike (back),
shake†
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
uterus, i m. belly, womb
validus, a, um strong, stout, mighty

leader of the Greeks in cunning, craft,
and treachery.

45. (in) hōc lignō = in hōc equō, qui
est dē lignō factus: metonymy; App.
433.

46. māchina (belli).

47. inspectūra, ventūra: the fut. parti-
ciples denote purpose; App. 274. urbī:
dat. of direction = in urbem; App. 306.

48. nē crēdite: nē with the imp. is a
poetic use; App. 256, a. equō: dat.
with crēdō; App. 297.

49. timeō Danaōs et (even) dōna
ferentis: a favorite quotation. The
Greeks are so treacherous that they are
not to be trusted even when making
gifts (sacrificing, as in this case) to their
gods.

50. validīs ingentem viribus hastam:
interlocked order; App. 442. viribus:
abl. of manner; App. 328; from vis,
not vir, as may be seen from the quan-

tity of the i as well as from its case
form.

51. ferī = equī. compāgibus: with
curvam, abl. of manner or means; App.
328, 331.

52. illa = hasta. uterō recussō: abl.
abs. with causal force; App. 343, a.

53. insonuēre, dedēre = insonuērunt,
dedērunt; App. 204, 4. gemitum: merely
the hollow sound.

54. sī, sī: rhetorical repetition, called
anaphora; App. 413.

54-56. fuisset, stāret, manērēs: con-
dition contrary to fact, with mixed apod-
osis (impulerat) for impulsisset; App.
382, d. sī fāta de(ōr)um (nōn laeva
fuissent). laeva: unfavorable, hostile.

55. (Lāocoön nōs) impulerat.

56. Troja: pronounce Trojja; App.
6, b. manērēs: observe the change to the
second person; personification and apos-
trophe add to the pathos; App. 417, 437.

Ecce, *manūs* juvenem intereā post terga revinctum
 pāstōrēs *magnō ad rēgem clāmōre trahēbant*
 Dardanidae, *quī sē ignōtum venientibus* ultrō,
hoc ipsum ut strueret Trojamque aperiret Achivīs, 60
obtulerat, fidēs animī atque in utrumque parātus,
 seu versāre dolōs seu certae occumbere mortē.
 Undique vīsēdī studiō Trojāna juventūs
 circumfūsa *ruit certantque inlūdere captō.*
Accipe nunc Danaum insidiās et crimine ab ūnō 65
disce omnis.
Namque ut cōspectū in mediō turbātus, inermis,

Achivus, a, um Achaeac, Greek
 aperiō, ire, uī, rtus open, reveal*
 captus, i m. captive, prisoner†
 certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
 certus, a, um sure, certain, fixed, reliable*
 circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round
 cōspectus, ūs m. sight, view, (crowd of)
 spectators
 crimen, inis n. crime, guilt, charge†
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan
 discō, ere, didici learn; perf. know
 dolus, i m. deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
 ecce see! look! behold!†*
 fidō, ere, fīsus sum trust (in) (dat., abl.)†*
 ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
 inermis, e unarmed
 inlūdō, ere, sī, rtus mock, insult (dat.)†
 insidiae, ārum f. snare, ambush, treach-
 ery
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
 woman)*

juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*
 occumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus fall; meet
 (dat.)
 offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present,
 place before, offer
 pāstor, ōris m. shepherd, herdsman†
 post, afterward(s); behind (acc.)*
 revinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctus bind, tie
 back†
 sive, seu or (if), whether, either
 struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, con-
 trive
 studium, (i)ī n. zeal, desire, pursuit
 tergum, i n. back, rear; skin, hide*
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 turbō (1) confuse, agitate, disturb*
 ultrō further(more), voluntarily†*
 undique on (from) all sides†*
 uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),
 both†*
 versō (1) keep turning; employ
 visō, ere, sī, sus see, gaze on, visit†

57-198. Sinon, a lying Greek, is captured and brought to Priam. He says the horse is an offering to Minerva and will bring good fortune and victory to its possessors.

57-59. Ecce intereā Dardanidae pāstōrēs trahēbant juvenem revinctum manūs post terga. Ecce: introducing a new element in the story. manūs: acc., obj. of the middle part. revinctum, his hands bound behind his back, or acc. of respect; App. 309, a; 311.

58. rēgem (Priamum). magnō (cum) clāmōre: abl. of manner; App. 328.

59. (juvenem) quī ultrō obtulerat sē ignōtum (pāstōribus Dardanidis = Teu-
 cris) venientibus: his name was Sinon.

60. hoc: pronounce hocc; App. 107, 3, c. hoc ipsum: this very thing, i.e., to be brought before the king and ques-

tioned. strueret, aperiret: purpose; App. 359.

61. animi: a loc., in his soul; App. 37, c.

62. mortī: dat. with compound; App. 298. versāre, occumbere: apposition with utrumque.

63. vīsēdī: gen. of gerund, depending on studiō, abl. of cause; App. 332. Trojāna: pronounce Trojjāna; App. 6, b.

64. captō: dat. with compound; App. 298.

ruit certantque: for use of singular and plural cf. stupet et mirantur, ll. 31-32; App. 236, a.

65. Dana(ōr)um: App. 37, d.

66. omnis (Danaōs): a general conclusion from a specific instance. For the incomplete line, see the note on I, 534.

67. ut: as, its usual meaning with the ind. turbātus: a pretense on the part of Sinon.

- cōstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspexit:
 'Heu, quae mē tellūs' inquit 'quae mē aequora possunt
 70 accipere? aut quid jam miserō mihi dēnique restat,
 cui neque apud Danaōs ūsquam locus, et super ipsī
 Dardanidae infēnsī poenās cum sanguine poscunt?'
 Quō gemitū conversī animī compressus et omnis
 impetus. Hortāmur fārī quō sanguine crētus,
 75 quidve ferat; memoret quae sit fidūcia captō.
 [Ille haec dēpositā tandem formidine fātūr:]
 'Cūcta equidem tibi, rēx, fuerit quodcumque, fatēbor
 vēra,' inquit; 'neque mē Argolicā dē gente negābō;
 hoc primum; nec, sī miserum fortūna Sinōnem

apud among, at, in (acc.)†
 Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
 circumpiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look
 round (on)†
 comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus check,
 crush, repress†
 cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand (fast)
 convertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change
 crētus, a, um born, sprung†
 Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan
 dēnique finally, at last, at length†
 dēponō, ere, posuī, positus lay down,
 drop†
 equidem indeed, truly*
 fateor, ēri, fassus confess, agree†
 fidūcia, ae f. trust, reliance, faith

formidō, inis f. fear, fright, dread, terror†
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, moan*
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, exhort, incite*
 impetus, ūs m. onset, violence†
 infēnsus, a, um hostile, bitter†
 inquam, is, it say*
 memorō (1) recall, recount, relate*
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 whoever, whatever*
 restō, āre, stitī remain, be left
 Sinōn, ōnis m. a lying Greek†
 ūsquam anywhere, ever
 vērus, a, um true, real, honest*

68. circumspexit: the spondaic close, with its slow movement, helps the reader to visualize the slow-turning glance of Sinon as he looks over the crowd.

69. Heu: Sinon artfully seeks to rouse the pity and then to win the confidence of the Trojans. He pretends to be in despair. To his former enemies the Trojans who are in possession of the land are now added the equally hostile Greeks who control the sea. He plays his part with consummate skill and ingenuity. quae tellūs (potest mē accipere).

71. cui locus (est): dat. of possession; App. 299. neque = nōn. et (ā quō). super: adv., besides.

72. poenās cum sanguine (meō) poscunt: they demand punishment with my blood, i.e., my life as penalty.

73. conversī (sunt) animī et compressus (est) impetus. (nostri) animī: feelings.

74. Hortāmur (illum) fārī. quō sanguine: abl. of source; App. 323. crētus (sit): indir. quest.; App. 349.

75. quid (= quem nuntium) ferat: what he has to say; indir. quest.; App. 349. memoret: indir. command, representing an imp. indir. disc., depending on hortāmur; App. 390. sit: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. (eī) captō: dat. of possession; App. 299; i.e., what grounds of confidence had induced him to surrender voluntarily and on what did he base his hopes of mercy.

76. haec (dicta). dēpositā formidine: abl. abs.; App. 343. The "fear" is pretended.

77. fuerit quodcumque: come what may, i.e., no matter what may happen to me.

78. mē (esse).

79. hoc primum (fatēbor, dicam): by first making a true statement of an undoubted fact, but one which a desperate man might have denied, Sinon wins the confidence of the Trojans, who are now more likely to believe the rest of his story. Sinōnem = mē, used for the rhetorical effect. "Others may be liars, but not

finxit, vānum etiam mendācemque improba finget. 80
Fandō aliquod *sī forte tuās* pervēnit ad aurīs
Bēlidae nōmen Palamēdis et incluta fāmā
glōria, quem falsā sub prōditiōne Pelasgī
 insontem infandō indiciō, quia *bella* vetābat,
dēmiserē neci, nunc cassum *lūmine* lūgent: 85
illī mē comitem et cōsanguinitāte propinquum
pauper in arma pater primis hūc misit ab annīs.
Dum stābat rēgnō incolumis *rēgumque* vigēbat

aliquis (quī), qua, quid (quod) some, any*
 annus, ī *m.* year, season*
 auris, is *f.* ear*
 Bēlidēs, *ae m.* descendant of Belus†
 cassus, *a, um* empty, deprived of (*abl.*)†
 cōsanguinitās, *ātis f.* kinship (by blood)†
 dēmittō, *ere, misi*, missus send down,
 drop, lower*
 etiam also, even, besides, furthermore*
 falsus, *a, um* false, untrue, deceitful
 fingō, *ere, finxi*, fictus make, form†
 glōria, *ae f.* glory, renown, fame, pride†
 improbus, *a, um* wicked, bad, cruel†
 inclutus, *a, um* famous, renowned†
 incolumis, *e* safe, unharmed, intact†
 indicium, (*i*) *n.* charge, information†
 infandus, *a, um* unspeakable, accursed

insōns, *ontis* innocent, guiltless†
 lūgeō, *ēre, lūxi*, lūctus mourn, lament†
 mendāx, *acis* lying, false, deceitful†
 nex, *necis f.* death, murder, destruction†
 Palamēdēs, *is m.* wily Greek, destroyed
 by Ulysses†
 pauper, *eris* poor, needy; lowly†
 Pelasgus, *a, um* Pelasgian, Greek
 perveniō, *ire, vēni*, ventus arrive, come
 (to)†
 prōditiō, *ōnis f.* (charge of) treason†
 propinquus, *a, um* near (of kin), close†
 quia because†
 vānus, *a, um* empty, idle, false, vain
 vetō, *āre, ui*, itus forbid, prevent, hinder
 vigeō, *ēre, ui* flourish, thrive†

Sinon." miserum: pred., if fortune has made Sinon (me) unfortunate.

80. vānum, mendācem: pred., as is miserum, l. 79. improba (fortūna) finget (mē).

81. Fandō (for): *abl.* of the gerund, by report; App. 269.

81-82. aliquod nōmen: any (mention of the) name.

81-83. pervēnit nōmen et glōria: the verb is sing. to agree with its nearest subj.; App. 236, b.

82. fāmā: *abl.* of respect with incluta; App. 325.

82-83. glōria incluta fāmā.

83. falsā sub prōditiōne: under a false (accusation of) treason.

84. infandō indiciō: *abl.* of means; App. 331. According to the story, Ulysses had hidden a sum of money and a forged letter of Priam in Palamedes's tent; then, on a suggestion of Ulysses, the Greeks searched the tent, found the money and letter, and condemned Palamedes to death. quia vetābat: indicative, since it gives the reasons of the speaker; App. 357. This statement of Sinon is calculated to win the sympathy of the

Trojans by showing that he and his friend were at heart on the Trojan side and were opposed to the war.

85. dēmiserē = dēmiserunt: App. 204, 4. neci = ad necem: dat. of direction; App. 306. (illum) cassum lūmine (vitae). lūmine: *abl.* of separation; App. 340.

86. illi: emphatic by position; a dat. of reference; App. 301. comitem: (as) a comrade. cōsanguinitāte: *abl.* of respect; App. 325.

87. pauper, primis ab annis, misit: clever suggestions of Sinon to arouse pity and to excuse his part in the war by saying that he had been sent when he was a mere child and that his father was forced to this action by his poverty. Going to war as a "soldier of fortune" was a common method among the ancients of gaining wealth. hūc = to Troy. primis ab annis: "from my earliest youth."

88. rēgnō: *abl.* of respect with incolumis, or *abl.* of place where; App. 325, 319.

88-89. (Palamēdēs) stābat rēgumque (Danaōrum) vigēbat (in) conciliis. nōs: emphatic; App. 247.

- 90 conciliis, et nōs aliquod nōmenque decusque
gessimus. Invidiā postquam pellācis Ulixī
(haud ignōta loquor) superis concessit ab ōris,
adflctus vītam in tenebris lūctūque trahēbam
et cāsum insontis mēcum indignābar amīcī.
Nec tacuī dēmēns et mē, fors sī qua tulisset,
95 sī patriōs umquam remeāssem victor ad Argōs,
prōmīsī ultōrem et verbis odia aspera mōvī.
Hinc mihi prīma malī lābēs, hinc semper Ulixēs
crīminibus terrēre novīs, hinc spargere vōcēs
in vulgum ambiguās et quaerere cōnsciū arma.
100 Nec requiēvit enim, dōnec Calchante ministrō —

adflīgō, ere, xī, ctus crush, strike down
aliqui (quis), qua, quod (quid) some(one),
any(one)*
ambiguus, a, um of double meaning,
doubtful, obscure, ambiguous
amicus, i m. friend, comrade*
Argī, ōrum m. Argos, a city of southern
Greece; Greece
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Calchās, antis m. a famous Greek seer†
contēdō, ere, cessi, cessus withdraw,
yield†
concilium, (i) i n. council, assembly†
cōnsciū, a, um conscious (of guilt)
crimen, inis n. crime, guilt, charge
decus, oris n. ornament, glory, dignity
dēmēns, entis mad, insane, foolish†
dōnec until, while, as long as
enim for, indeed, surely*
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus bear, carry (on)*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
indignor, āri, ātus be angry (at)
insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless

invidia, ae f. envy, malice, grudge†
lābēs, is f. slip, defect, stain, ruin†
loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, tell*
lūctus, ūs m. grief, mourning, sorrow
malum, i n. evil, trouble, misfortune*
minister, trī m. servant, helper
odium, (i) i n. hate, hatred, enmity
pellāx, ācis deceitful, wily, crafty†
postquam after (that), when*
prōmittō, ere, misi, missus promise*
remeō (1) return, go back†
requiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus rest, repose†
semper always, ever*
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sow*
taceō, ēre, uī, itus be silent, hush*
tenebrae, ārum f. darkness, gloom†
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
Ulixēs, is (ei, i) m. Ulysses, a wily Greek
leader*
ultor, ōris m. avenger†
umquam ever, at any time†
verbum, i n. word, speech, talk
vulgus, i n. (m.) rabble, crowd, herd

89. (in) conciliis, abl. of place where;
App. 319. et nōs: I also; the "editorial
we."

90. Invidiā Ulixī: Ulysses is said to
have borne a special grudge against
Palamedes, because the latter detected his
pretended madness when he was trying to
avoid going to the Trojan War. Invidiā:
abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332.

91. (Palamedēs) superis concessit ab
ōris = died, used euphemistically for was
killed; App. 423.

93. mēcum = cum mē: privately, in
secret; App. 321.

93-96. mē prōmīsī ultōrem: I prom-
ise myself (as) an avenger.

94. dēmēns: "fool that I was." sī
qua fors (mē) tulisset (ad Argōs patriōs).

95. Argōs: used for Greece; App. 443.

96. verbis (meis). odia (Ulixis).

97. lābēs (mihi fuit). Ulixēs: nom.
subject of the hist. infinitives terrēre,
spargere, quaerere; App. 277. mihi: dat.
of reference; App. 301.

98. terrēre (mē). vōcēs: rumors.

99. vulgum: masc. acc., a rare form.
cōnsciū (suī malī): conscious (of his
guilt). arma (in mē): an opportunity to
use violence against me.

100. Calchante ministrō: abl. abs.;
App. 343; for the aposiopesis, see the note
on Quōs ego, I, 135, and compare App.
416. Sinon skillfully stops his narra-
tive, just when he has aroused the
curiosity of his audience to the highest
pitch.

*sed quid ego haec autem nēquīquam ingrāta revolvō,
quidve moror? Sī omnīs ūnō ordine habētis Achivōs,
idque audire sat est, jamdūdum sūmite poenās:
hoc Ithacus velit et magnō mercentur Atridae.'*

Tum vērō ardēmus scītārī et quaerere causās, 105
ignārī scelerum tantōrum artisue Pelasgae.

Prōsequitur pavitāns et fictō pectore fātur:

*'Saepe fugam Danaī Trojā cupiēre relictā
mōlirī et longō fessī discēdere bellō;
fēcissentque utinam! Saepe illōs aspera ponti* 110
interclūsit hiems et terruit Auster euntīs.

Praecipuē cum jam hic trabibus contextus acernīs

acernus, a, um (of) maple†
Achivus, a, um Achaean, Greek
ars, artis f. art(istry), skill, cunning*
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Atridēs, ae m. son of Atreus: (1) Agamemnon, (2) Menelaus
Auster, tri m. (south) wind*
autem moreover, but, however†*
causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion*
contextō, ere, xui, xtus weave, construct†
cupiō, ere, ivi (ii), itus desire, wish†
discēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart†
fictus, a, um feigned, false, pretended
hiems, emis f. winter; storm*
ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced*
ingrātus, a, um unpleasant, ungrateful†
interclūdō, ere, si, sus shut off, hinder†
Ithacus, a, um Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses†
jamdūdum long since, at once
mercor, āri, ātus buy, purchase, trade

mōlior, iri, itus undertake, do, make, build
moror, āri, ātus delay, linger; detain*
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly†*
ordō, inis m. order, array, rank, row*
pavitō (1) tremble, be afraid†
Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek
pontus, i m. sea, waves*
praecipuē especially, particularly
prōsequor, i, secūtus proceed, follow†
revolvō, ere, i, volūtus (un) roll, revolve, tell†
saepe often, frequently*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)†*
scelus, eris n. crime, villainy, sin*
scitor, āri, ātus inquire, seek to know†
sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, exact†
terreō, ēre, ui, itus terrify, frighten
trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber
utinam O that! would that!
vērō truly, indeed, but

101. **ego**: observe the emphasis denoted by the pronoun as though to say "who am I to be telling you this?" See App 247. **haec** (dicta vōbis) ingrāta.

102. **quid (why) (vōs) moror. Sī omnīs ūnō ordine habētis Achivōs**: if you consider all Greeks in the same class (as scoundrels); abl. of manner; App. 328.

103. **id audire = mē esse Danaum (Achivum). sūmite poenās**: punishment was looked upon as a fine, which the inflictor takes and the sufferer gives. Hence **sūmere poenās = inflicto** (literally take) punishment, while **dare poenās = suffer** (literally give) punishment.

104. **hoc**: pronounce **hocc**, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. **Ithacus = Ulixēs. velit, mercentur**: subjunctives; apodosis (conclusion) of less vivid future with the protasis (condit. clause) omitted;

App. 381. **magnō**: abl. of price, used substantively, with a great (price); App. 336. A clever suggestion; the Trojans would please their own bitterest foes, Ulysses and the sons of Atreus, if they should put Sinon to death.

107. (Sinōn) **prōsequitur. fictō pectore**: abl. of manner; App. 328.

108. **Trojā**: pronounce Trojjā; App. 6, b; 15. **Trojā relictā**: abl. abs.; App. 343. **cupiēre = cupiērunt**: App. 204, 4.

108-109. **bellō**: abl. of means with **fessī**; App. 331. **fugam**: obj. of **mōlirī = parāre magnō cum labōre**.

110. **fēcissent (id)**: subj. in an unfulfilled wish (opt.); App. 253.

111. (illōs) **euntis**: trying to go, a conative pres. part.; the storms prevented them as often as they tried to sail home; App. 351, 1, c.

112. **acernīs**: the horse is variously

- 115 *stāret equus tōtō sonuērunt aethere nimbī.*
Suspēnsī Eurypylum scītātum ōrācula Phoebī
mittimus, isque adytīs haec trīstia dicta reportat:
"Sanguine plācāstis ventōs et virgine caesā,
cum primum Ūliacās, Danaī, vēnistis ad ōrās:
sanguine quaerendī reditūs animāque litandum
Argolicā." Vulgī quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurīs,
 120 *obstipuēre animī gelidusque per īma cucurrit*
ossa tremor, cui fāta parent, quem poscat Apollō.
Hic Ithacus vātem magnō Calchanta tumultū

adytum, *i n.* inner shrine, sanctuary†
aethēr, *eris m.* upper air, sky, ether*
Apollō, *inis m.* god of light, music, and prophecy†*
Argolicus, *a, um* Argive, Greek
auris, *is f.* ear*
caedō, *ere, cecidī, caesus* cut (down), slay†
Calchās, *antis m.* a famous Greek seer
currō, *ere, cucurri, cursus* run, flow
Eurypylus, *i m.* Greek leader†
gelidus, *a, um* icy, cold, chilly†
Ūliacus, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan*
Ithacus, *a, um* Ithacan, of Ithaca, a Greek island, home of Ulysses
litō (1) sacrifice (acceptably), appease†
nimbus, *i m.* storm cloud, rainstorm*

obstipēscō, *ere, stipuī* be dazed, stand agape*
ōrāculum, *i n.* oracle, prophecy†
os, *ossis n.* bone*
Phoebus, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
plācō (1) appease, propitiate, placate
poscō, *ere, poposci* demand, seek, ask*
reditus, *ūs m.* return (home)
reportō (1) bring back, report†
scītōr, *ārī, ātus* inquire, seek to know
sonō, *āre, uī, itus* (re)sound, roar*
suspēnsus, *a, um* doubtful, anxious†
tremor, *ōris m.* trembling, shaking†
tumultus, *ūs m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub†
virgō, *inis f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
vulgus, *i n. (m.)* crowd, rabble, herd

represented by Vergil; here it is of maple; in l. 16 it was of pine; in the later passages it is of oak. Instead of using the general word *wood*, the poet strives to employ specific terms, at the expense of consistency.

113. *stāret*: subj. with descriptive cum; App. 378. *tōtō aethere*: abl. of place where; App. 319.

114. (nōs) *suspēnsī. scītātum*: supine after a verb of motion to express purpose; App. 270. *ōrācula Phoebī*: apparently at Delphi, where the most famous oracle of Apollo was located. The next most important oracle was at Delos, Apollo's birthplace.

115. (ex) *adytis* (Phoebī).

116. *plācā(vi)stis. virgine caesā*: this refers to the sacrifice of Iphigenia, daughter of Agamemnon, at Aulis, where the Greek fleet was detained by adverse winds on the eve of sailing for Troy. After Iphigenia had been sacrificed to Diana in obedience to the divine command, the gods sent favorable winds which wafted the Greek fleet straight to Troy. For a modern treatment of this

story read Tennyson's *Dream of Fair Women*.

118. *sanguine*: cf. *sanguine* in l. 116, and for the rhetorical repetition known as *anaphora* see App. 413. *quaerendī (sunt nōbis) reditūs, litandum (est nōbis)*: passive periphrastics denoting necessity; App. 199, b. Observe the shift from the personal (*quaerendī*) to the impersonal (*litandum*) construction. *reditūs*: poetic plural; App. 243. *animā*: abl. of means. *litandum (est)*: *it must be sacrificed, sacrifice must be made*.

119. *quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurīs vulgī*: as (when) this report had come to the ears of the rabble. Observe the Latin use of the relative pronoun where English prefers the demonstrative.

120. *obstipuēre* = *obstipuērunt*: App. 204, 4. *per īma ossa*: *through the marrow*; literally *through the innermost (part of their) bones*: App. 246.

121. *cui fāta (tālem mortem) parent*. *parent, poscat*: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

122. *vātem magnō Calchanta* (acc.) *tumultū*: interlocked order; App. 442.

- prōtrahit in mediōs; quae sint ea nūmina dīvum
flāgitat. Et mihi jam multī crūdēle canēbant
artificis scelus, et tacitī ventūra vidēbant. 125
- Bis quīnōs silet ille diēs tēctusque recūsāt
prōdere vōce suā quemquam aut oppōnere mortī.
Vix tandem, magnīs Ithacī clāmōribus āctus,
compositō rumpit vōcem et mē dēstīnat ārae.
Adsēnsēre omnēs et, quae sibi quisque timēbat,
ūnīus in miserī exitium conversa tulēre. 130
- Jamque diēs infanda aderat; mihi sacra parārī
et salsae frūgēs et circum tempora vittae.
Ēripuī, fateor, lētō mē et vincula rūpī,
līmōsōque lacū per noctem obscūrus in ulvā 135

adsentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus assent, agree†
artifex, ficis *m.* contriver, plotter
bis twice*
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), proph-
esy, proclaim, chant*
compositum, ī *n.* compact, agreement,
prearrangement
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
dēstīnō (1) mark, intend, destine†
exitium, (i) ī *n.* destruction, ruin†
fateor, ēri, fassus confess, agree
flāgitō (1) demand (urgently), importune†
frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, grain, meal
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
Ithacus, a, um Ithacan, of Ithaca, a
Greek island, home of Ulysses
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere†
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin†
līmōsus, a, um muddy, slimy, miry†
obscurus, a, um dark, hidden, obscure*
oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus oppose, ex-
pose†

prōdō, ere, didī, ditus hand over, be-
tray
prōtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus drag (forth)†
quīni, ae, a five (each), by fives†
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one,
thing)
quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque)
each, every (one)†
recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object†
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst
(forth), utter†
salsus, a, um salted, salty, briny†
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still, hush
tacitus, a, um silent, peaceful, quiet
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide†
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
ulva, ae *f.* sedge, marsh grass†
ventūrum, ī *n.* the future, what is (was)
to come
vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, chain, cable*
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band†

123. prōtrahit: Sinon represents Cal-
chas as pretending to be unwilling. in
(nōs) mediōs: into our midst; App. 246.
sint: indir. quest.; App. 349. dīv(ōr)um.

124. mihi: for me; App. 301. mihi
jam multi: alliteration; App. 411.

125. artificis = Ulixis. tacitī: through
fear of Ulysses. ventūra: substantively,
"what was coming."

126. quīnōs: the distributive numeral
for the cardinal, quīnque, as is usual with
adverbs of multiplication, as bis. Cf. I,
381, note. ille = Calchās. tēctus: in
his tent.

127. oppōnere (quemquam) mortī.

129. (ex, dē) compositō (cum Ulixē).
ārae: dat. rumpit vōcem: cognate acc.,
he breaks (into) speech = he speaks; or the

verb is used in a causative sense, he causes
his voice to break (forth); App. 313, 307.

130. Adsēnsēre = adsēnsērunt.

130-131. et (fāta Danaī) tulēre (= tu-
lērunt): the Greeks were content to let
Sinon suffer.

131. ūnīus in miserī exitium conversa:
(when) turned to the destruction of one poor
wretch.

132. parārī: hist. inf.; App. 257.

133. salsae frūgēs: salted meal,
sprinkled on the victim's head, as a
preparation for sacrifice. (mea) tempora.
vittae: fillets, regularly bound on the
heads of sacrificial victims.

134. Ēripuī mē lētō: dat. or abl. of
separation; App. 305, 340. fateor: as a
victim devoted to the gods, it was sac-

- dēlitui dum vēla darent, sī forte dedissent.
Nec mihi jam patriam antiquam spēs ūlla videndī,
nec dulcīs nātōs exoptātumque parentem,
quōs illī fors et poenās ob nostra reposcent
 140 *effugia, et culpam hanc miserōrum morte piābunt.*
Quod tē per superōs et cōscia nūmia vēri,
per sī qua est quae restet adhūc mortālibus ūsqum
intemerāta fidēs, ōrō, miserēre labōrum
tantōrum, miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis.'
 145 *Hīc lacrimīs vitam damus et miserēscimus ultrō.*
Ipse virō prīmū manicās atque arta levārī
vincla jubet Priamū dictisque ita fātur amicis:
'Quisquis es (āmissōs hinc jam obliviscere Grajōs)
noster eris; mihiq̄ haec ēdisserē vēra rogantī:

adhūc still, as yet, up to this point
 amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)†*
 āmittō, ere, misi, missus lose, let go*
 artus, a, um close, tight, narrow*
 cōscius, a, um conscious, aware
 culpa, ae f. fault, blame, guilt, sin†
 dēlitēscō, ere, litui hide, skulk, lurk†
 dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, deserved
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 ēdisserō, ere, ui, rtus tell, set forth†
 effugium, (i) i n. flight, escape†
 exoptō (1) desire, long for, crave†
 fidēs, ei f. faith, fidelity, trust(worthi-
 ness), reliance*
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 intemerātus, a, um inviolate, pure†
 ita thus, so†
 levō (1) lift, relieve, lighten, remove
 manicae, ārum f. handcuff, bond, manacle†

misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate (gen.)†
 miserēscō, ere pity, commiserate†
 mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
 obliviscor, i, litus forget (gen., acc.)†
 ōrō (1) beseech, entreat, pray (for)*
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
 piō (1) appease, expiate, atone for†
 quisquis, quaequae, quidquid whoever,
 whatever
 quod because, but, therefore†
 reposcō, ere demand, seek, claim†
 restō, āre, stitī remain, be left
 rogō (1) ask, seek, request, beg†
 spēs, spei f. hope, expectation*
 ultrō further, voluntarily*
 ūsqum anywhere, ever
 vērum, i n. truth, right, reality†
 vērus, a, um true, real, honest*
 vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, chain, cable*

riple for Sinon to escape and thus thwart the divine will.

136. dum (Danai) vēla darent; (vēla) dedissent: subjunctives of anticipation; App. 374.

137. mihi: dat. of possession; App. 299. spēs ūlla (est). patriam: obj. of videndī, the gen. of the gerund.

138. nātōs: inconsistent with primis ab annis, l. 87; but great poets such as Vergil and big liars such as Sinon rarely worry over logical consistency.

139. quōs poenās: with reposcent, which takes two accusatives; App. 316. In English we should say demand punishment of them. illi (Danai). fors et = forsitan, perhaps.

140. (meam) culpam. (illōrum) miserōrum.

141-143. tē (= Priamum) ōrō.

142-143. per (intemerātam fidem), sī

est (ali)qua intemerāta fidēs quae restet. quae restet: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

143-144. miserēre (meōrum) labōrum, miserēre (mei) animi: rhetorical repetition of the deponent imperative miserēre which governs the genitives, labōrum and animi; App. 289, 413.

144. digna: substantively, object of ferentis.

145. miserēscimus (Sinōnem).

146. virō: dat. of reference; App. 301.

147. dictis: abl. of manner; App. 328.

148. obliviscere: imp. Grajōs: pronounce Grajjōs; App. 6, b; 15; the acc. instead of the gen. commonly used with obliviscor; App. 288, a.

148-149. Quisquis es, noster eris: said to be the technical formula used by a Roman general when receiving a deserter from the enemy.

quō mōlem hanc immānis equī statuēre? Quis auctor? 150
Quidve petunt? Quae relligiō? Aut quae māchina bellī?’
Dixerat. Ille dolīs instrūctus et arte Pelasgā
sustulit exūtās vinclīs ad sīdera palmās:
‘Vōs aeternī ignēs, et nōn violābile vestrum
testor nūmen,’ ait, ‘vōs ārae ēnsēsque nefandī, 155
quōs fūgī, vittaēque deum, quās hostia gessi:
fās mihi Grajōrum sacrāta resolvere jūra,
fās ōdisse virōs atque omnia ferre, sub aurās,
sī qua tegunt; teneor patriae nec lēgibus ūllīs.
Tū modo prōmissis maneās servātaque servēs 160
Troja fidem, sī vēra feram, sī magna rependam.
Omnis spēs Danaum et coeptī fidūcia bellī
Palladis auxiliūs semper stetit. Impius ex quō

aeternus, a, um eternal, undying*
 ars, artis f. art(istry), cunning, skill*
 auctor, ōris m. author, maker, originator†
 auxilium, (i) i n. help, aid, assistance*
 coepī, isse, ptus begin, commence
 dolus, i m. deceit, treachery, fraud*
 ēnsis, is m. sword, knife†*
 exuō, ere, uī, ūtus strip, free, doff
 fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine will*
 fidēs, ei f. faith, fidelity, trustworthiness,
 reliance*
 fidūcia, ae f. confidence, reliance, trust
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus bear, wear*
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 hostia, ae f. (sacrificial) victim
 impius, a, um impious, disloyal, wicked
 instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus instruct,
 construct, build, arrange
 jūs, jūris n. law, right, oath, justice
 lēx, lēgis f. law, decree, regulation
 māchina, ae f. machine, engine, device
 modo only, (just) now
 mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, structure, burden*

nefandus, a, um unutterable, accursed
 ōdī, isse hate, loathe, detest†
 Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wis-
 dom and the arts
 palma, ae f. palm, hand*
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
 Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek
 prōmissum, i n. promise, agreement
 re(l)ligiō, ōnis f. religion, offering†
 rependō, ere, i, pēnsus repay, requite
 resolvō, ere, i, solūtus break, free†
 sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
 semper always, ever*
 spēs, spei f. hope, expectation*
 statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish
 tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide*
 testor, āri, ātus (call to) witness, in-
 voke†
 vērum, i n. truth, right, reality
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
 vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, chain, cable*
 violābilis, e violable, to be violated†
 vitta, ae f. fillet, garland, band*

150. quō: for what purpose? statuēre = statuērunt (Danaī). quis (fuit) auctor.

151. quae (est), quae (est). Sinon had, of course, been waiting for just such questions.

152. dixerat (Priamus). ille (Sinōn).

153. vinclis: abl. of separation; App. 340; the form vinculis (- -) can not be used in hexameter.

154. aeternī ignēs = sidera, *although it is broad daylight. nōn violābile = inviolable; not to be desecrated (by perjury).

156. de(ōr)um. hostia: (as) a sacrificial victim. Sinon swears by all that is good and holy, that he may gain greater

credence for the lies he is planning to tell.

157-158. fās (est), fās (est): rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

158. sub aurās = into the light of day.

159. sī qua (Danaī) tegunt: the use of the indicative would imply that there are secrets to disclose. nec teneor patriae lēgibus ūllis.

160. (in) prōmissis: abl. of place where; App. 319. maneās, servēs: vol. subj.; App. 254.

161. Troja: vocative. magna (prae-mia): rich returns.

162. Dana(ōr)um. belli: obj. gen.; App. 284.

163. auxiliis: abl. of means or place;

- Tydidēs *sed* enim scelerumque inventor Ulixēs
 165 fātāle adgressi sacrātō āvellere templō
 Palladium caesis *summae* custōdibus arcis
 corripuēre *sacram* effigiem *manibusque* cruentis
 virgineās ausi *divae* contingere vittās:
ex illō fluere *ac* retrō sublāpsa *referri*
 170 spēs *Danaum*, frāctae *virēs*, āversa *deae mēns*.
Nec dubiis *ea* signa *dedit* Tritōnia mōnstris.
Vix positum castris simulācrum: *arsēre* coruscae
lūminibus flammae arrēctis, salsusque *per artūs*
sūdor iit, *terque ipsa solō* (mīrābile dictū)
 175 ēmicuit *parmamque ferēns* hastamque trementem.

adgredior, i, gressus attack, undertake†
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, arouse
 artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 āvellō, ere, (vuls)i, vulsus tear away†
 āvertō, ere, i, rsus, turn away, avert*
 caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down), kill
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch; befall*
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
 coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, quivering
 cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
 custōs, ōdis *m.* (f.) guard(ian), sentinel*
 dubius, a, um doubtful, uncertain
 effigiēs, ēi *f.* image, statue, effigy†
 ēmicō, āre, uī flash forth, dash forth†
 enim for, indeed, truly*
 fātālis, e fatal, fated, fateful†
 fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow, ebb, vanish
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, shat-
 ter*
 hasta, ae *f.* spear, dart, lance
 inventor, ōris *m.* inventor, contriver†
 mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous

mōnstrum, i *n.* prodigy, omen, portent†*
 Palladium, (i) *i n.* statue of Pallas†
 parma, ae *f.* shield, buckler†
 retrō back, backward†
 sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
 salsus, a, um salted, salty, briny
 scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
 signum, i *n.* sign, mark, token, signal*
 simulācrum, i *n.* image, statue, likeness†
 solum, i *n.* soil, ground, earth*
 spēs, spei *f.* hope, expectation*
 sublābor, i, lāpsus slip down, fall†
 sūdor, ōris *m.* sweat, perspiration†
 templum, i *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
 ter thrice, three times*
 tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
 Tritōnia, ae *f.* Minerva, goddess of wis-
 dom and the arts†
 Tydidēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,
 a Greek leader
 Ulixēs, is (ei, i) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek
 leader*
 virgineus, a, um maidenly, pure†
 vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band*

App. 331, 319. *ex quō* (tempore): cor-
 relative with *ex illō* (tempore) in l. 169.

165. templō: abl. of separation; App.
 320, 340.

165-166. fātāle Palladium: the oracle
 had proclaimed that Troy was fated to
 be impregnable so long as the image of
 Pallas (the Palladium) remained in the
 citadel of Troy. Ulysses and Diomedes
 disguised themselves, entered the citadel,
 and succeeded in carrying off the image
 to the Greek camp.

166. caesis custōdibus: abl. abs.;
 App. 343.

167. corripuēre = corripuerunt; App.
 204, 4.

168. ausi (sunt). vittās: fillets were
 commonly worn by images of the gods,
 by their representatives (priests and

priestesses), and by sacrificial victims,
 such as Sinon (l. 133). *divae*: *Miner-
 va's*.

169. *ex illō* (tempore): correlative
 with *ex quō* (tempore), l. 163. *fluere*,
referri: historical infinitives; App. 257.

170. frāctae (sunt) virēs, āversa (est)
deae mēns.

171. *ea signa*: perhaps here for *eius
 rei signa*, a common usage; i.e., signs of
 her anger.

172. *positum* (erat in) castris (*Danaō-
 rum*). *arsēre* = *arsērunt*; App. 204, 4.

173. *lūminibus* (= *oculis*) *arrēctis* (*irā*).
lūminibus: abl. of separation; App. 340.

174. *ipsa* (*dea*): the image itself, i.e.,
 without external aid. (*ā*) *solō*: abl. of
 separation; App. 340. *mīrābile dictū*:
 App. 271, 325.

Exemplō temptanda fugā canit aequora Calchās,
nec posse Argolicis exscindī Pergama tēlis
ōmina nī repetant Argīs nūmenque redūcant
quod pelagō et curvis sēcum āvēxēre carinīs.

Et nunc quod patriās ventō petiēre Mycēnās,
arma deōsque parant comitēs pelagōque remēnsō
imprōvisi aderunt. Ita digerit ōmina Calchās.

Hanc prō Palladiō monitī, prō nūmine laesō
effigiem statuēre, nefās quae trīste piāret.

Hanc tamen immēnsam Calchās attollere mōlem
rōboribus textīs caelōque ēdūcere jussit,
nē recipi portīs aut dūcī in moenia posset,

Argī, ōrum *m.* Argos, a city of southern Greece; Greece

Argolicus, *a, um* Argive, Greek

attollō, *ere* lift, raise, rear*

āvehō, *ere, vēxi, vectus* carry away; convey

Calchās, *antis m.* a famous Greek seer
canō, *ere, cecini, cantus* sing (of), proclaim, prophesy, chant*

carina, *ae f.* keel, ship*

curvus, *a, um* curved, bent, winding*

digerō, *ere, gessi, gestus* distribute; explain†

ēdūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* draw out, erect
effigiēs, *ei f.* image, statue, effigy

exscindō, *ere, scidi, scissus* cut out, destroy†

exemplō immediately, at once, suddenly
immēnsus, *a, um* immense, immeasurable†

imprōvisus, *a, um* unforeseen, sudden
ita thus, so

laedō, *ere, si, sus* hurt, offend, strike
mōlēs, *is f.* mass, structure, burden*

moneō, *ēre, ui, itus* warn, advise†

Mycēnae, *arum f.* a Greek city

nefās *n. indecl.* guilt, impiety†*

nisi, *nī* unless, if not*

ōmen, *inis n.* omen, sign, portent*

Palladium, (*i*) *n.* statue of Pallas

Pergama, *orum n.* (citadel of) Troy*

piō (1) appease, expiate, atone for

porta, *ae f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*

prō before, for, in behalf of (*abl.*)*

recipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* receive, accept*

redūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* lead back, bring back, restore

remētiōr, *iri, mēnsus* remeasure, recross†

repetō, *ere, ivi (ii), itus* reseek, repeat

rōbur, *oris n.* oak, strength†*

statuō, *ere, ui, ūtus* set up, establish

tamen nevertheless, however, but*

temptō (1) try, test, seek, examine*

texō, *ere, xui, xtus* weave, cover†

176-177. temptanda (esse) aequora, posse: indir. disc. with canit; App. 263.

178. repetant (ex) Argīs, redūcant: subjunctives in a subordinate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, b. This refers to a Roman custom. If a general met with bad luck on an expedition, he returned to Rome to obtain new auspices (ōmina repetere).

179. quod: refers to nūmen, the divine favor which they had brought with them when they came from Greece. sēcum = cum sē; App. 321, a. curvis carinīs: abl. of means; App. 331. pelagō: by sea, abl. of the route; App. 338. āvēxēre = āvēxerunt.

180. ventō: abl. of means; App. 331. petiēre = petivērunt.

181. arma (nova). pelagō remēnsō: abl. abs.; App. 343. remēnsō: with passive force, although a deponent verb.

182. ita: refers to ll. 176-179, the following sentence being thrown in parenthetically by Sinon as representing his own view.

183. (Danaī) monitī: by the prodigies and their interpretation by Calchas, ll. 172-179.

184. statuēre = statuērunt. nefās: the theft of the Palladium by Ulysses and Diomedes, ll. 164-168. piāret: rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

185. immēnsam: pred. acc.; the Greeks were to build the image so large that the Trojans would not be able to take it into the city and thus secure its protecting power for themselves.

186. rōboribus: abl. of material; App. 324. See the note on acernīs, l. 112. caelō: dat. of direction; App. 306.

187. nē posset: negative purpose; App. 359.

- neu populum *antiquā sub religione tuērī.*
Nam sī vestra manus violāset dōna Minervae,
 190 *tum magnum exitium (quod dī prius ōmen in ipsum*
convertant!) Priamī imperiō Phrygibusque futurum;
sīn manibus vestrīs vestram ascendisset in urbem,
ultrō Asiam magnō Pelopēa ad moenia bellō
ventūram et nostrōs ea fāta manēre nepōtēs.'
 195 *Tālibus insidiīs perjūrique arte Sinōnis*
crēdita rēs, captique dolis lacrimisque coactīs
quōs neque Tȳdidēs nec Lārisaeus Achillēs,
nōn annī domuēre decem, nōn mille carīnae.
Hic aliud majus miseris multoque tremendum
 200 *objicitur magis atque imprōvida pectora turbat.*

Achillēs, is (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
 annus, ī *m.* year, season*
 ars, artis *f.* art(istry), cunning, skill*
 a(d)scendō, ere, ī, ēnsus ascend, mount
 Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)
 carina, ae *f.* keel, ship*
 cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus force, compel*
 convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
 crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
 decem ten†
 dolus, ī *m.* deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
 domō, āre, uī, itus subdue, crush†
 exitium, (ī) *n.* destruction, ruin
 imprōvidus, a, um unforeseeing, heed-
 less†
 insidiae, ārum *f.* ambush, snare, treach-
 ery
 Lāris(s)aeus, a, um Larissaeon, of Larissa,
 a city of northern Greece†
 magis more, rather*
 mille; *pl.* milia, ium *n.* thousand*
 Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and
 the arts

nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant†*
 nēve, neu nor, neither, or lest
 objiciō, ere, jēci, jectus present, place
 before†
 ōmen, inis *n.* omen, sign, portent*
 Pelopēus, a, um of Pelops, legendary
 Greek king for whom the Peloponnesus
 was named; Greek†
 perjūrus, a, um perjured, treacherous†
 Phryx, Phrygis *m.* Phrygian, Trojan
 populus, ī *m.* people, race, nation*
 prius sooner, before
 re(l)igiō, ōnis *f.* religion, offering
 sīn but if, if, however
 Sinōn, ōnis *m.* a lying Greek
 tremendus, a, um terrible, dreadful
 tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect*
 turbō (l) confuse, agitate, disturb*
 Tȳdidēs, ae *m.* son of Tydeus, Diomedes,
 a Greek leader
 ultrō voluntarily, further*
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
 violō (l) violate, outrage, profane†

188. *antiquā sub re(l)igione:* under
 shelter of their ancient faith. The horse if
 taken into the city would serve the pur-
 pose of the stolen Palladium in protecting
 Troy. neu (haec effigiēs posset) tuērī
 populum (Trojae).

189. *sī violāset:* subj. in a subordi-
 nate clause in indir. disc.; App. 390, b.
 Minervae: obj. gen.; App. 284.

190. *ipsum (Calchanta).*

190-191. *exitium futurum (esse):* inf.
 in indir. disc., quoting Calchas's supposed
 statement; App. 263.

191. *convertant:* opt. subj.; App. 253.

192. *sīn ascendisset (ille equus):*
 subj. in a subordinate clause in indir.
 disc.; cf. violāset in l. 189; App.
 390, b.

193. *Asiam: Trojam. Pelopēa:* the
 Greek leaders, Agamemnon and Menelaüs,
 were descendants of Pelops.

194. *ventūram (esse), manēre:* indir.
 disc.; App. 263. *nepōtēs:* obj. of manēre.

196. *crēdita (est), captique (sumus):*
 rēs: the story of Sinon.

197. *neque Tȳdidēs (domuit) nec*
Achillēs (domuit).

198. *domuēre = domuērunt.*

199-227. As a punishment for Laocoön,
 who had struck the wooden horse with
 his spear, Minerva sends two horrible
 serpents which destroy him and his two
 little sons.

199-200. *Hic aliud (another omen)*
majus multoque magis tremendum objici-

Lāocoōn, *ductus* Neptūnō sorte sacerdōs,
sollemnīs taurum *ingentem* mactābat *ad ārās*.
Ecce autem *geminī ā* Tenedō tranquilla *per* alta
(*horrēscō referēs*) immēnsīs orbibus anguēs
incumbunt *pelagō pariterque ad litora tendunt*; 205
pectora quōrum inter flūctūs arrēcta jubaque
sanguineae superant undās; *pars cētera pontum*
pōne legit sinuatque immēnsa volūmine terga.
Fit sonitus spūmante salō; *jamque arva tenēbant*
ardentīsque oculōs suffectī sanguine et ignī 210
sibila lambēbant linguis vibrantibus ōra.
Diffugimus vīsū exsanguēs. *Illī agmine certō*
Lāocoōnta petunt; *et primum parva duōrum*
corpora nātōrum serpēns amplexus uterque

altum, *i n.* the deep (sea); heaven
amplector, *i*, plexus embrace, enfold†
anguis, *is m. (f.)* snake, serpent†
arrigō, *ere, rēxi, rēctus* raise, rear
autem moreover, but, however*
certus, *a, um* sure, fixed, certain, reliable*
cēterus, *a, um* rest, remaining, other
diffugiō, *ere, fugi* flee apart, scatter†
duo, *ae, o* two†
ecce see! look! behold!*
exsanguis, *e* bloodless, lifeless, pale†
fiō, *fieri, factus* become, arise
horrēscō, *ere, horruī* shudder, tremble†
immēnsus, *a, um* immense, immeasur-
able
incumbō, *ere, cubui, cubitus* lean upon,
overhang, lower (over) (*dat.*)
juba, *ae f.* mane, crest†
lambō, *ere* lick, lap†
Lāocoōn, *ontis m.* Trojan priest of Nep-
tune
legō, *ere, lēgi, lēctus* choose; skim*
lingua, *ae f.* tongue, language†
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor†
Neptūnus, *i m.* Neptune, god of the
sea*

orbis, *is m.* circle, fold, coil; earth*
pariter equally, side by side*
parvus, *a, um* small, little†
pōne behind, after†
pontus, *i m.* sea, waves*
sacerdōs, *dōtis m. (f.)* priest(ess)*
salum, *i n.* (the salt) sea, brine
sanguineus, *a, um* bloody, blood-red†
serpēns, *entis m. (f.)* serpent, snake†
sibilus, *a, um* hissing, whirring†
sinuō (1) fold, curve, twist, wind†
sollemnis, *e* annual, customary, solemn†
sonitus, *ūs m.* sound, roar, noise, crash†
sors, *rtis f.* lot, fate, destiny, oracle*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
sufficiō, *ere, fēcī, fectus* supply, suffuse†
superō (1) surmount, overcome, sur-
vive*
taurus, *i m.* bull, bullock, ox*
Tenedos, *i f.* small island near Troy
tergum, *i n.* back, body, rear*
tranquillus, *a, um* tranquil, calm†
uterque, *utraque, utrumque* each, both*
vibrō (1) quiver, vibrate, dart†
visus, *ūs m.* sight, view, vision, aspect†
volūmen, *inis n.* fold, coil, roll†

tur (nōbīs) miserīs. majus: pronounce
majus; App. 6, b.

201. Neptūnō: *dat.* of reference; App.
301. ductus sorte: *drawn (chosen) by lot*.

203-204. autem ecce geminī anguēs
immēnsibus orbibus — horrēscō (*haec*
dicta) *referēs* — (*venientēs*) ā Tenedō:
symbolizing the later coming of the
Greek ships from Tenedos, bringing
destruction with them. immēnsibus
orbibus: *abl.* of quality or manner;
App. 330, 328.

205. pelagō: *dat.* with compound;
App. 298.

208. volūmine: *abl.* of manner or re-
spect; App. 328, 325.

209. spūmante salō: *abl. abs.*; App.
343.

210. oculōs: *obj.* of the middle parti-
ciple suffectī; App. 309, a.

212. vīsū: *abl.* of cause with exsan-
guēs; App. 332.

213. Lāocoōnta: *acc.*, a Greek form;
App. 68.

- 215 implicat et miserōs morsū dēpascitur artūs;
post ipsum auxiliō subeuntem ac tēla ferentem
corripiunt spīrisque ligant ingentibus; et jam
bis medium amplexī, bis collō squāmea circum
terga datī superant capite et cervicibus altīs.
- 220 Ille simul manibus tendit divellere nōdōs
perfūsus saniē vittās ātrōque venēnō,
clāmōrēs simul horrendōs ad sīdera tollit:
quālis mūgitus, fūgit cum saucius āram
taurus et incertam excussit cervīce secūrim.
- 225 At geminī lāpsū dēlūbra ad summa dracōnēs
effugiunt saevaeque petunt Tritōnidis arcem,
sub pedibusque deae clipeique sub orbe teguntur.
Tum vērō tremefacta novus per pectora cūctis

amplector, *i*, plexus embrace, enfold*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
auxilium, (*i*) *n.* help, aid, assistance*
bis twice*
cervix, icis *f.* neck
clipeus, *i m.* shield, buckler†
collum, *i n.* neck*
corripio, ere, ui, repts seize, snatch up*
dēlūbrum, *i n.* shrine, temple, fanet†
dēpascor, *i*, pāstus feed on, devour†
divellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear apart†
dracō, ōnis *m.* dragon, serpent†
effugio, ere, fūgi flee, escape†
excutio, ere, cussi, cussus shake off*
horrendus, a, um horrible, horrifying*
implicō, āre, āvi (ui), ātus (itus) en-
twine
incertus, a, um uncertain, ill-aimed
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, rolling, sinking†
ligō (*l*) bind, tie, fasten†
morsus, ūs *m.* bite, biting, jaws, fangs
mūgitus, ūs *m.* bellow(ing), roar†

nōdus, *i m.* knot; fold, coil
orbis, *is m.* circle, fold, coil; earth*
perfundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus soak, drench†
post after(ward); behind (*acc.*)*
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
saniēs, ēi *f.* blood, gore†
saucius, a, um wounded, stricken†
secūris, *is f.* ax†
spira, ae *f.* fold, coil, spire†
squāmeus, a, um scaly†
superō (*l*) surmount, overcome, survive*
taurus, *i m.* bull, bullock, ox*
tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, hide*
tergum, *i n.* back, body, rear*
tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus make tremble,
appall, alarm†
Tritōnis, idis *f.* Minerva, goddess of wis-
dom and the arts†
venēnum, *i n.* poison, venom, drug
vērō truly, indeed, but
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band*

216. post: afterward, adv. ipsum
(Lāocoōnta). auxiliō: dat. of purpose;
App. 303.

218. circum: with datī = circumdati,
placed around; App. 445. medium (il-
lum = Lāocoōnta). collō: dat. with the
compound circumdati; App. 298.

219. terga: obj. of the middle part.
dati, having placed; App. 309, a. supe-
rant (illum = Lāocoōnta). capite: for
capitibus, which could not be used in
dactylic verse because of its three suc-
cessive short syllables; abl. of means or
degree of difference; App. 331, 335.

220. Ille: Lāocoōn.

221. vittās: acc. with perfūsus, a
middle part. or acc. of respect; App.
309, a; 311.

223. (tālis est mūgitus Lāocoōntis)
quālis (est) mūgitus (taurī); a simile;
App. 441.

224. (ā) cervice.

225. lāpsū: with a gliding (movement);
abl. of manner; App. 328. dēlūbra
summa = dēlūbra arcis Trojae, where the
temple of Minerva stood, l. 226.

226. saevae: angry, hostile (to the
Trojans).

227. deae = the statue of the goddess.
teguntur: a middle use = sē tegunt; App.
309. Many statues of Minerva show a
snake at her feet, which may have given
rise to this feature of the story.

228-249. Partly induced by the lying
speech of Sinon and partly frightened by

insinuat pavor, et scelus expendisse merentem
 Lāocoōnta ferunt, sacrum quī cuspide rōbur 230
 laeserit et tergō sceleratam intorserit hastam.
Dūcendum ad sēdēs simulācrum ōrandaque divae
nūmina conclāmant.
 Dividimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis.
 Accingunt omnēs operī pedibusque rotārum 235
 subjiciunt lāpsūs, et stuppea vincula collō
 intendunt: scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs
 fēta armīs. Puerī circum innūptaeque puellae
 sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent:
 illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur urbī. 240
 Ō patria, Ō divum domus Īlium et incluta bellō

accingō, ere, cinxi, cinctus gird (on),
 equip

canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant*

collum, ī n. neck*

conclāmō (1) cry, shout, exclaim†

contingō, ere, tigi, tactus touch, befall*

cuspis, pidis f. point, spear, lance

dividō, ere, visi, visus divide, separate

expendō, ere, i, pēnsus expiate, pay
 (for)†

fātālis, e fatal, deadly, fated, fateful

fētus, a, um teeming, pregnant, filled

fūnis, is m. rope, cable†

gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum rejoice, exult

hasta, ae f. spear, dart, lance

Īlium, (i) ī n. Ilium, Troy

inclutus, a, um famous, renowned

inlābor, i, lāpsus glide in(to) (dat.)†

innūptus, a, um unmarried, virgin

insinuō (1) wind, creep, coil†

intendō, ere, i, ntus stretch, extend†

intorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus hurl (against)
 (dat.)†

laedō, ere, i, sus strike, hurt, offend

Lāocoōn, ontis m. Trojan priest of Nep-
 tune

lāpsus, ūs m. gliding, rolling, sinking

māchina, ae f. machine, engine, device

mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn†*

minor, āri, ātus tower; threaten (dat.)

mūrus, i m. (city) wall, rampart*

opus, eris n. work, task, deed, labor*

ōrō (1) entreat, pray (for), beseech*

pandō, ere, i, passus spread, open, loosen*

patria, ae f. fatherland, country*

pavor, ōris m. terror, shuddering, alarm†

puella, ae f. girl†

rōbur, oris n. oak, strength*

rota, ae f. wheel

scandō, ere, i, scānsus mount, climb†

scelerātus, a, um criminal, wicked†

scelus, eris n. crime, impiety, sin*

simulācrum, i n. image, statue, likeness

stuppeus, a, um hempen, (of) tow†

subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place under
 (dat.)

tergum, ī n. back, body, rear*

vinc(u)lum, ī n. chain, bond, cable*

the portentous death of Laocoön, the
 Trojans make a breach in the walls of
 the city, drag the horse inside, and hold
 high carnival as a thanksgiving to the
 gods for the preservation of their city.

228. cūctis: dat. of reference; App.
 301.

229-230. insinuat (sē). expendisse:
 indir. disc. with ferunt, say; App. 263.

231. laeserit, intorserit: causal rela-
 tive clause, or characteristic, with causal
 force; App. 389. tergō: dat. with com-
 pound; App. 298.

232. Dūcendum (esse), ōranda (esse).
 ad sēdēs (deōrum) = ad delūbra summa,
 l. 225 = arcem. divae (Minervae).

234. For the unfinished line, see the
 note on I, 534.

235. omnēs (sē) accingunt operi.
 operi: dat. of purpose; App. 303. ro-
 tārū lāpsūs: rollings (glidings) of
 wheels = rolling wheels; App. 425. pe-
 dibus (equi): dat. with compound.

236. (ā) collō: App. 340; or dat. with
 a compound; App. 298.

238. armis: abl. with fēta; App. 337.
 circum (equum).

239. sacra (carmina): sacred songs.

240. illa (māchina) = equus. urbi:
 dat. with compound; App. 298.

241. div(ōr)um domus: in apposition
 with Īlium. Note the apostrophe and
 personification; App. 417, 437.

- moenia Dardanidum! quater ipsō in limine portae
substitit atque uterō sonitum quater arma dedēre;
instāmus tamen immemorēs caecīque furōre
et mōnstrum infēlix sacrātā sistimus arce.*
245 *Tunc etiam fātis aperit Cassandra futurīs
ōra deī jussū nōn umquam crēdita Teucris.
Nōs dēlūbra deum miserī, quibus ultimus esset
ille diēs, fēstā vēlāmus fronde per urbem.*
- 250 *Vertitur intereā caelum et ruit Ōceanō nox
involvēns umbrā magnā terramque polumque
Myrmidonumque dolōs; fūsi per moenia Teucrī
conticuēre; sopor fessōs complectitur artūs.*

aperiō, ire, ui, rtus open, disclose*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
Cassandra, ae *f.* Trojan prophetess, never
believed†
complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
conticēscō, ere, ticui become silent, hush
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Dardanian, Trojan
dēlūbrum, ī *n.* shrine, temple, fane
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
fēstus, a, um festal, festive†
frōns, frondis *f.* branch, foliage†*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
immemor, oris unmindful, heedless†
instō, āre, stiti press on, pursue
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
involvō, ere, ī, volūtus wrap, envelop†

jussus, ūs *m.* command, order, behest†
mōnstrum, ī *n.* omen, portent, monster*
Myrmidones, um *m.* Greeks of Thessaly,
subjects of Achilles
Ōceanus, ī *m.* ocean
polus, ī *m.* pole; heavens, sky
porta, ae *f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
quater four times
sacrō (1) dedicate, consecrate, hallow*
sistō, ere, steti, status stand, stop, stay†
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise
sopor, ōris *m.* sleep, slumber†
subsistō, ere, stiti stop, halt, resist†
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest†*
umquam ever, at any time
uterus, ī *m.* belly, womb
vēlō (1) veil, cover, deck, cloth†
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, revolve, change*

242. Dardanid(ār)um: App. 34, b.
in limine: to stop or stumble on the
threshold was considered a bad omen and
sure to bring misfortune.

243. (ab) uterō: abl. of separation;
App. 340. dedēre = dedērunt: App. 204,
4.

245. (in) sacrātā arce: as containing
the temple and statues of the gods; abl.
of place where; App. 319, b.

246. fātis futurīs: abl. of means or
dat. of purpose; App. 331, 303.

247. deī: Apollo. nōn crēdita: Cas-
sandra had been beloved of Apollo, who
had granted her the gift of prophecy.
Because she finally played him false,
Apollo placed upon her the necessity of
forever prophesying and of never being
believed. Even today such a prophet is
often called a Cassandra. Teucris: dat.
of agent; App. 302.

248. quibus esset: adversative rel.
clause or characteristic with accessory
notion of cause; App. 388, 389.

248-249. Nōs: emphatic; App. 247.
Nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs esset ultimus,
vēlāmus dēlūbra de(ōr)um.

250-267. That night, while the Trojans
sleep, the Greeks return from Tenedos
and enter the city through the breach
made by the Trojans to introduce the
horse. Sinon opens the fastenings of the
horse, releasing the Greek warriors, who
open the gates of Troy and join their
forces with the troops from the ships and
proceed to lay waste the city with fire
and sword.

250. Vertitur caelum: The ancients
believed that the earth remained station-
ary, while the heavens, including sun,
moon, and stars, revolved around it. (ex)
Ōceanō: night was conceived as "rising"
from the ocean as the sun sank into it.

252. fūsi per moenia: thus scattered
and disorganized the Trojans were later
unable to oppose the attacking Greeks.

253. conticuēre = conticuērunt.



Graessdorf Bros.

CASSANDRA, THE PROPHETESS, ON THE WALLS OF TROY

Rosselli

This Trojan princess was granted the gift of prophecy by Apollo, who later as punishment decreed that no one should believe her. Behind her a warrior buckles on his greaves. Priam and Hecuba in the background.



Alinari, Rome

Vatican Museum

MINERVA

On her breast is the Medusa and coiling at her feet the serpent.

Et jam Argīva phalānx instrūctīs nāvibus ībat
ā Tenedō tacitae per amīca silentia lūnae 255
lītora nōta petēns, flammās cum rēgia puppis
extulerat, fātisque deum dēfēnsus inīquīs
inclūsōs uterō Danaōs et pīnea fūrtim
laxat claustra Sinōn. Illōs patefactus ad aurās
reddit equus, laetique cavō sē rōbore prōmunt 260
Thessandrus Sthenelusque ducēs et dirus Ulixēs,
dēmissum lāpsī per fūnem, Acamāsque Thoāsque
Pēlidēsque Neoptolemus prīmusque Machāōn
et Menelāus et ipse dolī fabricātor Epēos.

Acamās, *antis m.* Greek leader†
amicus, *a, um* friendly, kind(ly)*
Argīvus, *a, um* Argive, Greek
cavus, *a, um* hollow, vaulted*
claustra, *ōrum n.* barrier, bar, bolt
dēfendō, *ere, ī, fēnsus* ward off, protect†
dēmittō, *ere, mīsi*, missus let down, drop*
dirus, *a, um* dire, fearful, dreadful*
dolus, *i m.* deceit, treachery, trick, fraud*
dux, *ducis m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief*
effērō, *ferre, extuli, ēlātus* lift, carry off*
Epēos, *i m.* Greek leader, maker of the wooden horse†
fabricātor, *ōris m.* constructor, maker†
fūnis, *is m.* rope, cable
fūrtim stealthily, furtively, secretly
inclūdō, *ere, si, sus (in)* close, confine
inīquus, *a, um* unfair, unjust, hostile†
instruō, *ere, strūxi, strūctus* equip, array, build; instruct
laxō (1) loosen, free, open, release†
lūna, *ae f.* moon, moonlight*
Machāōn, *onis m.* Greek leader and surgeon†

Menelāus, *i m.* Greek leader, Helen's husband†
Neoptolemus, *i m.* Greek leader, son of Achilles†
nōtus, *a, um* (well) known, familiar*
patefaciō, *ere, fēcī, factus* lay open†
Pēlidēs, *ae m.* descendant of Peleus†
phalānx, *angis f.* phalanx, troop†
pīneus, *a, um* of pine†
prōmō, *ere, mpsi, mptus* bring forth†
reddō, *ere, didi, ditus* return, give back, render*
rēgius, *a, um* royal; regal, kingly*
rōbur, *oris n.* oak, strength*
silentio, (*i*) *i n.* silence, quiet, stillness
Sinōn, *ōnis m.* a lying Greek
Sthenelus, *i m.* Greek leader†
tacitus, *a, um* silent, still, quiet
Tenedos, *i f.* small island near Troy
Thessandrus, *i m.* Greek leader†
Thoās, *antis m.* Greek leader†
Ulixēs, *is (ei, i) m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*
uterus, *i m.* womb, belly

254. phalānx instrūctīs nāvibus: the fleet in battle order; abl. of quality; App. 330.

255. amīca: friendly (to the attacking Greeks). **tacitae lūnae:** cf. "how still the moonlight sleeps upon that bank."

256. flammās: as a signal for the other ships, but especially for Sinon, that he might know when to open the horse and let out the Greeks. **rēgia puppis:** the flagship of the commander-in-chief, Agamemnon. **nōta:** since they had encamped there for ten years.

257. de(ōr)um. inīquīs: *unfriendly* (to the Trojans).

258. (in) uterō (equi): abl. of place where; App. 319, b. **pīnea:** in l. 16 the

horse is of fir, in l. 112 of maple, in l. 186 of oak, here of pine; but there is no accounting for poetic caprice.

258-259. Danaōs et claustra laxat: for the hysteron proteron, see I, 69; for the Zeugma see I, 356 and II, 54, and compare App. 429, 447. **ad aurās:** to the open air.

260. (ex) rōbore.

262. lāpsī: *having descended*, deponent participle.

263. prīmus: *noble*; Machaon was probably not the first to climb down, and he was certainly not the leader or most prominent.

264. dolī fabricātor = equi fabricātor here.

- 275 Invādunt urbem somnō vīnōque sepultam;
caeduntur vigilēs, portisque patentibus omnīs
accipiunt sociōs atque agmina cōscia jungunt.
Tempus erat quō prīma quīēs mortālibus aegrīs
incipit et dōnō dīvum grātissima serpit.
- 270 *In somnīs, ecce, ante oculōs maestissimus Hector*
vīsus adesse mihi largōsque effundere flētūs,
raptātus bigīs ut quondam, āterque cruentō
pulvere perque pedēs trājectus lōra tumentis.
Ei mihi, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō
- 275 *Hectore quī redit exuviās indūtus Achilli,*
vel Danaum Phrygiōs jaculātus puppibus ignīs;
squālentem barbam et conerētōs sanguine crinīs

Achillēs, ī (is, ei) *m.* Greek leader*
aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
barba, ae *f.* beard, whiskers†
bigae, ārum *f.* two-horse chariot†
caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down), kill
concrētus, a, um grown together, hard-
ened, matted†
cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate
crinis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
ecce look! see! behold!*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ei alas! ah!†
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, booty; slough†
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament†
grātus, a, um welcome, pleasing, grate-
ful†
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-
take*
induō, ere, uī, ūtus don, clothe, put on
invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, invade†
jaculor, āri, ātus hurl, throw, fling
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus join, unite*

largus, a, um abundant, copious
lōrum, ī *n.* thong, leather strap, rein
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mortālis, is *m.* mortal, man, human*
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, be evident
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust
quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
quantus, a, um how great, how much,
how many, as*
quiēs, ētis *f.* quiet, rest, sleep, peace*
raptō (1) snatch, drag, carry off
redeō, īre, iī (ivī), itus return†
sepeliō, īre, ivī (ii), pultus bury†
serpō, ere, psī, ptus creep (on), crawl†
squāleō, ēre, uī be rough, be filthy†
trājiō, ere, jēci, jectus throw across,
pierce
tumeō, ēre, uī swell, be swollen†
vigil, īlis *m.* (*f.*) guard, watchman, sen-
tinel†
vinum, ī *n.* wine*

* 266. portis: abl. of route, a variety of
the abl. of means; App. 338, 331.

267. sociōs (ex nāvibus).

268-297. The ghost of Hector appears
to Aeneas in a dream and urges him to
flee from the doomed city and to rescue
the paternal gods from destruction.

268. quō: abl. of time when; App. 322.

269. dīv(ōr)um.

270. (meōs) oculōs.

271. vīsus (est) adesse: seemed to
appear.

272. raptātus bigīs (Achillis): for the
story, cf. I, 483-484 and the note.

273. pedēs trājectus lōra: his feet

pierced with thongs; pedēs is used with
the preposition per and lōra is object of
the participle trājectus used as a middle;
App. 309, a.

274. mihi: dat. of reference or in-
terest with the interjection ei; App. 301.

275. exuviās: object of indūtus, used
as a middle participle; App. 309, a.
Hector had slain and despoiled Patroclus,
who was wearing the armor of his friend
Achilles.

276. Dana(ōr)um puppibus: dat. of
direction or reference; App. 306, 301.
This refers to the battle around the
Greek ships, when the Trojans under
Hector almost captured the Greek camp
and set fire to several of the ships.

vulneraque illa gerēns, quae circum plūrima mūrōs
accēpit patriōs. Ultrō flēns ipse vidēbar
compellāre virum et maestās exprōmere vōcēs: 280
'Ō lūx Dardaniae, spēs Ō fidissima Teucrum,
quae tantae tenuēre morae? Quibus Hector ab ōrīs
expectāte venīs? Ut tē post multa tuōrum
fūnera, post variōs hominumque urbisque labōrēs
dēfessi aspicimus! Quae causa indigna serēnōs 285
foedāvit vultūs? Aut cūr haec vulnera cernō?'
Ille nihil, nec mē quaerentem vāna morātur,
sed graviter gemitūs īmō dē pectore dūcēns,
'Heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs' ait 'ēripe flammīs.
Hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troja. 290
Sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā
dēfendi possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.
Sacra suōsque tibi commendat Troja penātis;
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quare
magna, pererrātō statuēs quae dēnique pontō.' 295

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look
(at)

causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion*
commendō (1) intrust, commit†
compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
culmen, inis n. top, summit, peak, roof†
cūr why? for what reason?
Dardania, ae f. city of Dardanus, Troy†
dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus defend, protect
dēfessus, a, um weary, tired, worn
dēnique finally, at last
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
exprōmō, ere, mpsi, mptus express,
bring forth†
expectō (1) await (eagerly), expect†*
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus weep, lament†
foedō (1) defile, befoul, mar, mangle
fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster*
gemitus, ūs m. groan, lament, roar*
gerō, ere, gessi, gestus bear, carry (on)*
graviter heavily, grievously
Hector, oris m. Trojan leader*

homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human*
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
indignus, a, um undeserved, unworthy†
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance*
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, heed*
mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart*
nihil, nil nothing, not at all†
patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
penātēs, ium m. household gods*
pererrō (1) wander through, traverse†
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*
pontus, ī m. sea, waves*
post after, behind (acc.); afterward*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
serēnus, a, um serene, calm, fair, clear†
spēs, spei f. hope, expectation*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, establish
ultrō voluntarily, further*
vānus, a, um vain, idle, useless, false
varius, a, um various, manifold, diverse*
vultus, eris n. wound, deadly blow*
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

278. circum mūrōs.

281. Teucr(ōr)um.

282. tenuēre = (tē) tenuerunt.

282-283. Hector expectāte: voc. (tū)
venis.

283. Ut: how gladly.

285-286. serēnōs vultūs (tuōs), haec
vulnera (tua).

287. Ille (dicit) nihil.

289. nāte: voc. nāte deā: goddess-
born; literally, born from a goddess.

291-292. Sat... datum (est ā tē). sī
(quā) dextrā dēfendi possent, hāc (dextrā
meā), dēfēnsa fuissent.

293. (sua) sacra: the sacred emblems,
statues, etc. comitēs: (as) comrades, in
apposition with hōs.

294. moenia = urbem, as often. his
(penātibus): dat. of reference; App. 301.

295. pererrātō pontō: abl. abs.; App.

343. quae (moenia) magna dēnique
statuēs, pontō pererrātō.

*Sic ait et manibus vittas Vestamque potentem
aeternumque adytis effert penetrabilibus ignem.*

Diverso interea miscentur moenia luctu,
et magis atque magis, quamquam secreta parentis
Anchisae domus arboribusque obtecta recessit,
clarescunt sonitus armorumque ingruit horror.
Excitior somno et summi fastigia lecti,
ascensu supero atque arrectis auribus asto:
in segetem veluti cum flamma furentibus Austris
incidit, aut rapidus montano flumine torrens
sternit agros, sternit sata laeta boumque labores
praecipitisque trahit silvas: stupet inscius alio
accipiens sonitum saxi de vertice pastor.
Tum vero manifesta fides, Danaumque patescunt

adytum, *i n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
aeternus, *a, um* eternal, undying*
ager, *grī m.* field, territory, land*
arbos (or), *oris f.* tree, wood(s)*
arrigō, *ere, rēxi, rēctus* raise, prick up
a(d)scensus, *ūs m.* climbing, ascent†
a(d)stō, *āre, stitī* stand (ready, by)*
auris, *is f.* ear*
Auster, *trī m.* (south) wind*
bos, *bovis m. (f.)* bull, ox, cow†
clarescō, *ere, clāruī* grow clear†
diversus, *a, um* diverse, scattered*
efferō, *ferre, extuli, elātus* carry forth,
lift*
excutiō, *ere, cussī, cussus* shake out*
fastigium, (*i*) *n.* roof, battlement, top
fides, *ēs f.* faith, fidelity, trustworthi-
ness*
flūmen, *inis n.* river, stream, flood*
horror, *ōris m.* horror, alarm, fright†
incidō, *ere, cidī* fall (on) (*dat.*)†
ingruō, *ere, uī* rush (on, in), assail (*dat.*)†
inscius, *a, um* ignorant, inexperienced
interea meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
luctus, *ūs m.* grief, sorrow, lament
magis more, rather*
manifestus, *a, um* clear, plain, manifest†

misceō, *ēre, uī, mixtus* mix, mingle, con-
fuse*
montānus, *a, um* (of a) mountain†
obtegō, *ere, tēxi, tēctus* cover, hide†
pāstor, *ōris m.* shepherd, herdsman
patescō, *ere, patuī* lie open, be disclosed†
penetrālis, *e* inmost, interior†
potēns, *entis* powerful, mighty*
praeceps, *cipitis* headlong, precipitate†*
quamquam although, however, but
rapidus, *a, um* swift, whirling, hurrying*
recedō, *ere, cessī, cessus* retire, with-
draw†
sata, *ōrum n.* crops, harvest†
sēcrētus, *a, um* separate, remote, secret†
seges, *etis f.* crop, harvest, grain field†
sonitus, *ūs m.* sound, roar, noise, crash*
sternō, *ere, strāvī, strātus* lay low, strew,
spread*
stupeō, *ēre, uī* be dazed (at), stand agape
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
torrens, *entis m.* torrent
velut(i) as, just as*
verō truly, indeed, but
vertex, *icis m.* vertex, summit, peak*
Vesta, *ae f.* goddess of the hearth
vitta, *ae f.* fillet, garland, band*

297. aeternum ignem: the sacred fire of Vesta which was never allowed to go out, and from which was always kindled the fire which was given to each colony sent out from Rome.

298-369. Aeneas, however, preferring an honorable death to what he considered a dishonorable flight, finds a few comrades and rushes vainly into battle.

298. moenia = urbs = Troja. miscen-
tur: is filled; the word suggests confusion.

301. (nōbis) ingruit horror.

302. somnō: abl. of separation; App. 340.

304. furentibus Austris: abl. abs., denoting attendant circumstance; App. 343.

305. montanō flūmine: abl. of means with either rapidus or sternit; App. 331.

306. sternit, sternit: rhetorical repetition called anaphora; App. 413. bo(v)um labores: (the products of) the oxen's toil.

308. accipiens = audiens.

309. manifesta (est) fides: the truth (of the situation) was fully revealed; or Sinon's perjured faith was manifest.

insidiae. *Jam Dēiphobī dedit ampla ruīnam* 310
Volcānō superante domus, jam proximus ardet
Ūcalegōn; Sigēa ignī freta lāta relūcent.
Exoritur clāmorque virum clangorque tubārum.
Armā amēns capiō; nec sat ratiōnis in armīs,
sed glomerāre manum bellō et concurrere in arcem 315
cum sociīs ardent animī; furor iraque mentem
praecipitat, pulchrumque morī succurrit in armīs.
Ecce autem tēlis Panthūs ēlāpsus Achīvum,
Panthūs Othryadēs, arcis Phoebīque sacerdotēs,
sacra manū victōsque deōs parvumque nepōtem 320
ipse trahit cursūque amēns ad limina tendit.

Achīvus, a, um Achaeān, Greek
āmēns, entis mad, insane, distracted†
amplius, a, um spacious, large, full, wide
autem but, however, moreover*
clangor, ōris m. clang, blare, noise†
concurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run to-
 gether, fight (with), struggle
Dēiphobus, i m. Trojan leader, Helen's
 husband after the death of Paris†
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēlābor, i, lāpsus slip out, escape
exorior, iri, ortus arise, spring up†
fretum, i n. strait, sea, waters
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, fury*
glomerō (l) gather, roll together
insidiae, ārum f. ambush, treachery,
 snare
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
moriōr, i, mortuus die, perish†*
nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*
Othryadēs, ae m. son of Othrys†
Panthūs, i m. Trojan leader†

parvus, a, um small, little*
Phoebus, i m. Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy*
praecipitō (l) throw headlong, urge on,
 fall, sink
proximus, a, um next, neighbor(ing)
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-
 some, illustrious, glorious*
ratiō, ōnis f. reason, cause, method†
relūcēō, ēre, lūxī shine back, reflect†
ruina, ae f. downfall, ruin, collapse
sacerdotēs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
Sigēus, a, um of Sigelūm, a promontory
 near Troy†
succurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus succor,
 occur
superō (l) surmount, overcome, survive*
tuba, ae f. trumpet†
Ūcalegōn, entis m. Trojan leader†
Volcānus (Vulcānus), i m. Vulcan, (god
 of) fire†

310. Dēiphobī: as Helen's present husband he draws the pent-up fury of the Greeks.

311. dedit ruinam = ruit. Volcānō = ignī: metonymy; abl. abs.; App. 433, 343.

311-312. ardet Ūcalegōn: a shortened way of saying domus Ūcalegontis ardet.

312. ignī: abl. of means; App. 331.

313. Exoritur: of the third conjugation here; it agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, b. **vir(ōr)um.**

314. nec (est) ratiōnis: part. gen. with sat(is); App. 286; I am too dazed to form a clear plan and I seize my arms without any adequate reason.

315-316. (mei) animi ardent glomerāre et concurrere. bellō: dat. of pur-

pose; App. 303. **(mei) animī:** poetic plural; App. 243. **(meam) mentem.**

317. (esse) pulchrum morī in armīs succurrit (mihi): it occurs to me that it is glorious to die in arms.

318. Panthūs: nom. sing. with ū, a Greek form; App. 67. **Achiv(ōr)um.**

318-319. Panthūs, Panthūs: observe the rhetorical effect obtained by repetition; App. 413.

319. arcis: site of the temple of Apollo as well as that of various other shrines of the gods.

320. sacra: as in l. 293. **victōs deōs:** the gods fought for their people; and when the gods were conquered the people were also defeated.

321. (nostra) limina = limina Anchī-

- '*Quō rēs summa locō, Panthū? Quam prendimus arcem?*'
Vix ea fātus eram gemitū cum tālia reddit:
'Vēnīt summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus
 325 *Dardaniae. Fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium et ingēns*
glōria Teucrōrum; ferus omnia Iuppiter Argōs
trānstulit; incēnsā Danaī dominantur in urbe.
Arduus armātōs mediīs in moenibus astāns
fundit equus victorque Sinōn incendia miscet
 330 *insultāns. Portīs aliī bipatentibus adsunt,*
milia quot magnīs umquam vēnere Mycēnis;
obsēdere aliī tēlis angusta viārum
oppositis; stat ferrī aciēs mūrōne coruscō
stricta, parāta necī; vix primī proelia temptant

aciēs, *ēi f.* edge; battle line, army*
 angustum, *i n.* narrow place, strait†
 arduus, *a, um* lofty, steep, towering†*
 Argī, *ōrum m.* city and district of south-
 ern Greece
 armō (1) *arma*, equip, furnish*
 a(d)stō, *āre, stiti* stand (ready, by)*
 bipatēns, *entis* doubly open, double†
 coruscus, *a, um* flashing, bright, quivering
 Dardania, *ae f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
 dominor, *ārī, ātus* rule, hold sway
 ferus, *a, um* wild, fierce, cruel, savage†*
 gemitus, *ūs m.* groan, lament, roar*
 glōria, *ae f.* glory, renown, fame, pride
 Ilium, (i) *i n.* Ilium, Troy
 incendium, (i) *i n.* fire, conflagration
 incendō, *ere, ī, ēnsus* burn, inflame,
 fire*
 inēluctābilis, *e* inevitable, inescapable†
 insultō (1) *leap upon, taunt, insult†*
 mille; *pl. milia, ium n.* thousand*

misceō, *ēre, cui, mixtus* mix, mingle,
 confuse*
 mūrō, *ōnis m.* point, edge, blade†
 Mycēnae, *ārum f.* city of Greece, home
 of Agamemnon, leader of the Greeks
 against Troy
 nex, *necis f.* death, destruction, murder
 obsideō, *ēre, sēdī, sessus* besiege, beset†
 oppositus, *a, um* opposing, hostile
 Panthūs, *i m.* Trojan leader
 porta, *ae f.* gate, entrance, exit, portal*
 pre(he)ndō, *ere, ī, ēnsus* seize, grasp†
 proelium, (i) *i n.* battle, fray, fight†
 quot as many as, how many†
 reddō, *ere, didī, ditus* return, reply*
 Sinōn, *ōnis m.* a lying Greek
 stringō, *ere, īnxi, ictus* draw, graze
 temptō (1) *try, test, venture, examine**
 trānsferō, *ferre, tulī, lātus* transfer
 Trōs, *Trōis m.* Trojan*
 umquam ever, at any time

sae, mei patris. *cursū: abl. of manner;*
 App. 328.

322. *Quō (in) locō (est) rēs summa =*
in what situation is the state (rēs summa)?
or in what spot is the chief conflict?
 Panthū: *voc., a Greek form;* App. 67.
 pre(he)ndimus: *with a future sense;*
what position are we trying to hold, now
that the main ax is untenable? See App.
 351, 1, c; 348, a.

323. *tālia (dicta). gemitū: abl. of*
manner; App. 328.

324. *Panthus* practically says: "No
 use to resist; we have no position any-
 where to defend; our last day has come."
summa: final.

325. *Dardaniae: dat. of direction or*
reference; App. 306, 301. *Trōes fuimus,*
fuit Ilium: observe the pathos of the
 tense: *We have been (but we are no*

longer) Trojans; Troy is a thing of the
past; App. 351, 4, a.

326. *ferus: hostile (to the Trojans).*
 (ad) *Argōs = to Greece;* App. 443.

328. *Arduus armātōs: alliteration;*
 App. 411. *equus armātōs (virōs) fun-*
dit.

330. *aliī . . . aliī: some . . . others. Por-*
tis bipatentibus: through wide-open gates;
abl. of route; App. 338.

331. *milia quot: as many thousands*
as. vēnere (= vēnerunt) Mycēnis: abl.
of place whence; App. 320.

332. *obsēdere = obsēderunt. aliī (Da-*
naī). tēlis oppositis: abl. of means;
 App. 331. *angusta (loca).*

333. *mūrōne coruscō: abl. of quality;*
 App. 330.

334. *necī (Teucrōrum): for the slaugh-*
ter (of the Trojans).

portarum vigilēs et caecō Mārte resistunt.*	335
<i>Tālibus Othryadae dictīs et nūmine dīvum</i>	
<i>in flammās et in arma feror, quō trīstis Erīnys,</i>	
<i>quō fremitus vocat et sublātus ad aethera clāmor.</i>	
Addunt sē sociōs Rhīpeus et maximus armīs	
Ēpytus, oblātī per lūnam, Hypanisque Dymāsque	340
et laterī adglomerant nostrō, juvenisque Coroebus	
Mygdonidēs — illīs ad Trojam forte diēbus	
vēnerat insānō Cassandrae incēnsus amōre	
et gener auxilium Priamō Phrygibusque ferēbat,	
infēlix quī nōn spōnsae praecepta furentis	345
audierit!	
Quōs ubi cōfertōs audēre in proelia vīdī,	
incipiō super hīs: ‘Juvenēs, fortissima frūstrā	

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
 adglomerō (l) roll together, gather, join†
 aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky,
 ether*
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 auxilium, (i) i n. help, aid, assistance*
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
 Cassandra, ae f. prophetess, daughter of
 Priam, never believed
 cōnfertus, a, um crowded, packed†
 Coroebus, i m. suitor of Cassandra,
 daughter of Priam†
 Dymās, antis m. Trojan leader†
 Ēpytus, i m. Trojan leader†
 Erīnys, yos f. a Fury, Curse†
 fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
 fremitus, ūs m. (up)roar, din, applause†
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
 gener, erī m. (prospective) son-in-law†
 Hypanis, is m. Trojan leader†

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire, inflame*
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, under-
 take*
 insānus, a, um mad, insane, frenzied†
 juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
 woman)*
 latus, eris n. side, flank*
 lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight*
 Mārs, rtis m. (god of) war
 Mygdonidēs, ae m. son of Mygdon†
 offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present
 Othryadēs, ae m. son of Othrys, Panthus
 Phryx, Phrygis m. Phrygian, Trojan
 porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*
 praeceptum, i n. precept, advice†
 proelium, (i) i n. battle, fray, fight
 resistō, ere, stiti resist, halt, stop
 Rhīpeus, i m. Trojan leader†
 spōnsa, ae f. fiancée, wife†
 vigil, ilis m. guard, watchman, sentinel

335. caecō Mārte (= bellō): in blind warfare, that is fighting in the dark; abl. of place where; App. 319, 433.

336. dictis: abl. of means or cause; App. 331, 332. div(ōr)um.

337. trīstis Erīnys (bellī mē vocat): the fell fury (of battle calls me).

338. aethera: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

339. sociōs (mihī). armīs: abl. of respect with maximus, mighty in battle; App. 325.

340. oblātī (mihī) per lūnam (= lūcem lūnae).

341. laterī nostrō (sē) adglomerant: attach (themselves) to me.

342. illis diēbus: abl. of time when; App. 322.

343. (Coroebus) vēnerat. Cassandrae: for Cassandra, obj. gen.; App. 284.

344. gener: as a (prospective) son-in-law.

345. infēlix (vir). furentis: to the ancients and to primitive peoples a raving person was "touched of God," and his utterances were inspired by the divinity; so of Cassandra (spōnsae) here.

346. audierit: rel. clause of characteristic, with accessory notion of cause; App. 389; cf. l. 231.

347. audēre in proelia: were bold for battle.

348. super: adv. his (dictis): abl. of means. frūstrā: in vain; since resistance is useless.

- pectora, sī vōbīs audentem extrēma cupidō
 350 certa sequī, quae sit rēbus fortūna vidētis;
 excessēre omnēs adytīs ārisque relictīs
 dī quibus imperium hoc steterat; succurritis urbī
 incēnsae: moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus.
 Ūna salūs victīs nullam spērāre salutē.
 355 Sic animīs juvenum furor additus. Inde, lupī ceu
 raptōrēs ātrā in nebulā, quōs improba ventris
 exēgit caecōs rabiēs catulique relictī
 faucibus expectant siccīs, per tēla, per hostīs
 vādīmus haud dubiam in mortem mediaeque tenēmus
 360 urbis iter; nox ātra cavā circumvolat umbrā.
 Quis clādem illius noctis, quis fūnera fandō
 explicet aut possit lacrimīs aequāre labōrēs?

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
 adytum, i n. inner shrine, sanctuary
 aequō (1) equal(ize), match, level*
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
 catulus, i m. cub, puppy, whelp†
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
 certus, a, um fixed, sure, certain, reliable*
 ceu as, just as, as if†
 circumvolō (1) flit around, hover around†
 clādēs, is f. slaughter, ruin, havoc†
 cupidō, inis f. love, desire, eagerness†
 dubius, a, um doubtful, uncertain
 excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, retire
 exigō, ere, ēgi, āctus drive (out)
 explicō, āre, āvi (ui), ātus (itus) express,
 unfold, explain†
 expectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
 extrēma, ōrum n. extremity, last hazard,
 death*
 faucēs, ium f. throat, jaws; pass†

fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster*
 furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, fury*
 hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 improbus, a, um wicked, evil, cruel
 incendō, ere, i, ēnsus burn, fire, inflame*
 inde thence, thereupon, next*
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*
 juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
 woman)*
 lupus, i m. wolf†
 morior, i, mortuus die, perish*
 nebula, ae f. cloud, fog, mist
 rabiēs, ēi f. rage, madness, fury
 raptor, ōris m. robber; adj. ravenous†
 salūs, ūtis f. safety, security, health
 siccus, a, um dry, thirsty†
 spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
 succurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run to
 aid, succor (dat.)
 vādō, ere go, advance, rush, march†
 venter, tris m. belly, stomach†

349-350. pectora: apposition with juvenēs. sī vōbīs (est) certa cupidō sequi (mē) audentem extrēma. vōbīs: dat. of possession; App. 299. cupidō (est). sequi: depends on cupidō; App. 264. quae fortūna sit: indir. quest.; App. 349. (nostris) rēbus: dat. of possession; App. 299.

351. adytīs ārisque relictis: abl. abs.; App. 343. excessēre dī: the ancient gods are regularly represented as deserting cities about to be captured.

352. quibus: by whose aid; abl. of means; App. 331. urbi: dat. with compound; App. 298.

353. moriāmur et ruāmus: volitives; App. 254. This is an example of hysteron proteron; App. 429; i.e., the act repre-

sented by ruāmus really comes before that of moriāmur, although moriāmur precedes in the sentence. This is a permissible device, as it indicates priority of interest, instead of the usual priority of time. See the note on I, 69.

354. Ūna salūs (est) victis. victis: dat. of possession; App. 299.

355. additus (est).

356-357. ventris rabiēs = mad hunger, raving hunger.

360. urbis: gen. of possession; App. 283, or of quality; App. 285.

361. fūnera fandō: alliteration; App. 411. Quis (explicit) clādem.

362. explicet, possit: deliberative or potential subjunctives; App. 348, 252. lacrimis: abl. of means; App. 331.

*Urbs antiqua ruit multōs domināta per annōs;
plūrima perque viās sternuntur inertia passim
corpora perque domōs et relligiōsa deōrum* 365
*limina. Nec sōlī poenās dant sanguine Teucrī;
quondam etiam victīs redit in praecordia virtūs
victōrēsque cadunt Danaī. Crūdēlis ubique
lūctus, ubique pavor et plūrima mortis imāgō.*
Prīmus sē Danaum magnā comitante catervā 370
*Androgeōs offert nōbīs, socia agmina crēdēns
īncius, atque ultrō verbīs compellat amīcis:
‘Fēstināte, virī! Nam quae tam sēra morātur
sēgnitiēs? Alīī rapiunt incēnsa feruntque
Pergama: vōs celsīs nunc prīmum ā nāvibus itīs?’* 375
*Dixit, et extemplō (neque enim respōnsa dabantur
fīda satis) sēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostīs.*

amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
Androgeōs, ī (ō) m. Greek leader†
annus, ī m. year, season*
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
caterva, ae f. crowd, troop, band
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
comitō (l) accompany, attend, escort,
follow
compellō (l) address, accost, speak to
crēdō, ere, didī, dītus believe, trust*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip, fall, sink†
dominor, āri, ātus rule, hold sway
enim for, indeed, truly
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
extemplō suddenly, at once, immediately
fēstinō (l) hurry, hasten, speed†*
fīdus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
imāgo, inis f. image, form, ghost*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, inflame*
iners, rtis inactive, lifeless, tame†
īncius, a, um ignorant, unaware

lūctus, ūs m. grief, sorrow, lament
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, detain*
offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present
passim everywhere, all about†*
pavor, ōris m. terror, shuddering, alarm
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*
praecordia, ōrum n. heart, breast†
rapiō, ere, ui, ptus plunder, snatch (up)
redeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus return
re(l)ligiōsus, a, um holy, sacred†
respōnsū, ī n. answer, reply†
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
sēgnitiēs, ēi f. sloth, laziness†
sentio, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus perceive, feel
sērus, a, um (too) late, slow†
socius, a, um allied, associated†
sternō, ere, strāvi, strātus lay low, strew,
spread*
tam so (much), so very, such*
ubique everywhere, anywhere
ultrō voluntarily, further*
verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk
virtūs, ūtis f. valor, manhood, excellence*

364-365. *inertia corpora*: of the slain Trojans.

365. *et* = and even.

366. *poenās dant*: suffer punishment; see the note on *sūmite poenās* in l. 103.

367. *victis*: dat. of reference; App. 301.

369. *lūctus (est)*. *pavor*: with the final syllable lengthened for metrical reasons; App. 394, a. *plūrima*: many a.

370-402. Aeneas and his comrades gain some initial successes, and on the advice of Coroebus, one of their number, they exchange their own armor for that

of the Greeks they had slain. This trick gives them an advantage, and their success increases.

370. *Dana(ōr)um*: App. 37, d.

371. *crēdēns (nōs esse) socia agmina* (= *Danaōs*).

372. (*nōs*) *compellat*.

373. (*vōs*) *morātur*.

374. *incēnsa Pergama*: obj. of both *rapiunt* and *ferunt*.

375. *vōs*: emphatic, as always when expressed as subject; App. 247.

377. *dēlāpsus (esse)* = *sē dēlāpsum esse*.

- Obstipuit retrōque pedem cum vōce repressit.
 Imprōvisum aspris velutī quī sentibus anguem
 380 pressit humī nītēns trepidusque repente refūgit
 attollentem īrās et caerula colla tumentem,
 haud secus Androgeōs vīsū tremefactus abibat.
 Inruimus dēnsīs et circumfundimur armīs,
 ignārōsque locī passim et formīdine captōs
 385 sternimus. Aspirat prīmō Fortūna labōrī.
 Atque hīc successū exsultāns animīsque Coroebus
 'Ō sociū, quā prīma' inquit 'fortūna salūtis
 mōnstrat iter, quāque ostendit sē dextra, sequāmur:
 mūtēmus clipeōs Danaumque īnsignia nōbīs
 390 aptēmus. Dolus an virtūs, quis in hoste requīrat?

abeō, īre, īi (īvī), itus depart, retreat*
 an whether, or*
 Androgeōs, ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader
 anguis, *is m.* snake, serpent
 aptō (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish*
 asper, (e)ra, (e)rum harsh, rough, fierce*
 a(d)spirō (1) breathe upon, favor (*dat.*)
 attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark blue, bluish
 black†*
 circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour round
 clipeus, ī *m.* shield, buckler*
 collum, ī *n.* neck*
 Coroebus, ī *m.* suitor of Cassandra
 dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense†*
 dolus, ī *m.* deceit, treachery, fraud*
 exsultō (1) leap forth, dance, surge,
 exult†
 formidō, inis *f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
 hostis, *is m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 humus, ī *f.* ground, earth, soil*
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, inexperienced*
 imprōvisus, a, um unforeseen, unexpected
 inquam, *is, it* say*
 inruō, ere, uī rush in†
 insigne, *is n.* mark, badge, device†
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach*

mūtō (1) (ex)change, alter, transform*
 nitor, ī, sus (nixus) strive, climb, step
 firmly†
 obstipescō, ere, pui be dazed, stand
 agape*
 ostendō, ere, ī, tus show, display*
 passim everywhere, all about*
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
 trample*
 quā where(by), in any (some) way
 refugiō, ere, fūgī flee, retreat, recoil
 repente suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly
 reprimō, ere, pressi, pressus check†
 requirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus seek, ask
 (for)
 retrō back, backward
 salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, deliverance, health
 secus otherwise, differently†
 sentis, *is m.* brier, bramble†
 sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew,
 spread*
 successus, ūs *m.* success, progress†
 tremefactus, a, um trembling, appalled
 trepidus, a, um alarmed, agitated†
 tumeō, ēre, uī swell; be swollen
 velut (ī) as, just as*
 virtūs, ūtis *f.* valor, manhood, excellence*
 visus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance, view

378. retrō: pleonastic with the *re* in *repressit*; App. 438.

379. aspris = asperis, a form (- -) which could not be used in hexameter; (in) sentibus aspris. velutī (ille) qui.

380. humī: loc.; App. 37, c.

381. (anguem) attollentem. colla: acc. of respect; App. 311.

382. haud secus: litotes; App. 431.

383. circumfundimur (iis): middle; we pour ourselves around (them), i.e., we surround them; App. 309. dēnsis (armis): abl. of means.

385. labōrī: dat. with compound; App. 298.

386. successū, animis: ablatives of cause; App. 332.

387-388. salūtis: obj. gen. with iter; App. 284. (fortūna) ostendit sē. dextra: irregularly agreeing with fortūna instead of with sē.

388-390. sequāmur, mūtēmus, aptēmus: vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

390. Dolus an virtūs (sit): indir. quest.; App. 349. requīrat: deliberative quest.; App. 348.

Arma dabunt ipsi. Sīc fātus deinde comantem
Androgeō galeam clipeique insigne decōrum
induitur laterique Argivum accommodat ēnsem.

*Hoc Rhipeus, hoc ipse Dymās omnisque juventūs
laeta facit:* spoliūs sē quisque recentibūs armat.

395

Vādimus immixtī Danaīs haud nūmine nostrō
multaque per caecam congressī proelia noctem
cōnserimus, multōs Danaum dēmittimus Orcō.

Diffugiunt aliī ad nāvīs et lītora cursū

fida petunt; pars ingentem formidine turpī

400

scandunt rursus equum et nōtā conduntur in alvō.

Heu nihil invitīs fās quemquam fidere dīvīs!

accommodō (1) fit, adjust†
alvus, i f. belly, body
Androgeōs, i (ō) m. Greek leader
Argivus, a, um Argive, Greek
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
clipeus, i m. shield, buckler*
comāns, antis hairy, crested†
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide*
congregior, i, gressus meet, encounter
cōnserō, ere, ui, rtus join, engage in†
decōrus, a, um ornamental, becoming
deinde thereupon, then, next
dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down*
diffugiō, ere, fugi flee (apart), scatter
Dymās, antis m. Trojan leader
ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*
fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine will*
fidō, ere, fisus sum trust, confide, rely
(in, on) (dat., abl.)*
fidus, a, um faithful, trustworthy, safe*
formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread
galea, ae f. helmet

immisceō, ēre, ui, mixtus mingle, mix
(with) (dat.)*†
induo, ere, ui, ūtus, don, clothe, put
on
insigne, is n. mark, badge, device
invitus, a, um unwilling, unfriendly†
juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*
latus, eris n. side, flank*
nihil, nūl nothing, not at all
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
Orcus, i m. (god of) death, Hades†
proelium, (i) n. battle, fray, fight
quisquam, quaequam, quicquam any(one,
thing)
quisque, quaeque, quodque each, every
(one)
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new, late
Rhipeus, i m. Trojan leader
rursus, um again, anew, back(ward)†*
scandō, ere, i, ānsus climb, mount
spolium, (i) n. spoils, booty, plunder
turpis, e shameful, disgraceful, foul†
vādō, ere go, advance, rush, march

391. deinde: two syllables by syni-
zesis; App. 403.

392. Androgeō: gen., a Greek form;
App. 67.

394. Hoc (facit) Rhipeus. hoc: pro-
nounce hocc, making a long syllable;
App. 107, 3, c. ipse: also, a not uncom-
mon meaning. omnis juventūs = omnēs
juvenēs.

396. Danaīs: dat. with compound;
App. 298. haud nūmine nostrō: abl. of
attendant circumstance; App. 329; not
under the protection of our own (= friendly)
divinities. By donning Greek armor, the
Trojāns forfeit the protection of their own
gods.

397. congressī (Danaōs).

398. Dana(ōr)um. Orcō: dat. of di-
rection, = ad Orcum; App. 306.

399. aliī (Danaī). cursū: abl. of
manner; App. 328.

400. fida litora: where their ships
were.

401. conduntur: middle = sē condunt;
App. 309.

402-430. The Trojans, disguised in
Greek armor, see Cassandra, the be-
trothed of Coroebus, being dragged from
the shrine of Minerva by Ajax and his
comrades. In trying to rescue her,
Coroebus is killed, and the other Trojans
are overwhelmed by the weapons of their
friends who are ignorant of their disguise.

402. fās (est). nihil: adverbial, not
at all. divīs: dat. with a special verb,
fidere; App. 297.

- Ecce trahēbātur passis Priamēia virgō
crīnibus ā templō Cassandra adytīsque Minervae
405 ad caelum tendēns ardentia lūmina frūstrā,
lūmina, nam tenerās arcēbant vincula palmās.
Nōn tulit hanc speciem furiātā mente Coroebus
et sēsē medium injēcit peritūrus in agmen.
Cōsequimur cūcti et dēnsis incurrimus armīs.
410 Hīc primum ex altō dēlūbrī culmine tēlis
nostrōrum obruimur oriturque miserrima caedēs
armōrum faciē et Grajārum errōre jubārum.
Tum Danaī gemitū atque ēreptae virginis irā
undique collecti invādunt, ācerimus Ajāx
415 et geminī Atrīdae Dolopumque exercitus omnis;

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
adytum, ī n. inner shrine, sanctuary
Ajāx, ācis m. Greek leader, captor of
Cassandra*
arceō, ēre, uī confine, restrain, defend
Atridēs, ae m. son of Atreus: (1) Agamem-
non, (2) Menelaus
caedēs, is f. slaughter, massacre, murder
Cassandra, ae f. prophetess, daughter of
Priam, never believed
colligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus collect, gather
cōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake†
Coroebus, ī m. suitor of Cassandra
crinis, is m. hair, locks, tresses*
culmen, inis n. top, summit, peak, roof*
dēlūbrum, ī n. shrine, temple, fane
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
Dolopes, um m. Greeks of Thessaly
ecce see! look! behold!*
error, ōris m. error, deceit, trick
exercitus. ūs m. army, host, band†
faciēs, ēi f. appearance, form, aspect*
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
furiō (1) frenzy, madden, infuriate†

gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
incurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run in(to),
attack†
injiciō, ere, jēci, jectus throw in(to)†
invādō, ere, si, sus attack, march in
juba, ae f. mane, crest
Minerva, ae f. goddess of wisdom and
the arts
obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, crush
orior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring (up)
palma, ae f. palm, hand*
pandō, ere, ī, passus open, spread, loosen,
dishevel*
pereō, ire, īi (ivī), itus perish, die†
Priamēius, a, um of Priam, Priam's†
speciēs, ēi f. sight, spectacle, appear-
ance†
templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tener, era, erum tender, delicate, soft†
undique on (from) all sides*
vinc(u)lum, ī n. chain, bond, cable*
virgō, inis f. (unmarried) girl, maid(en),
daughter*

403. trahēbātur: by Ajax; see I, 39-45;
observe the picturesque effect of the im-
perf.; App. 351. 2. Priamēia virgō: the
daughter of Priam, the adj. being equiva-
lent to the gen., as often.

403-404. passis crinibus: abl. of
means or quality; App. 331, 330.

405-406. lūmina, lūmina: repetition for
the sake of the rhetorical effect; App. 413.

407. Coroebus: Cassandra's lover,
ll. 341-346.

409. (Danaïs) incurrimus. dēnsis ar-
mīs: abl. of means; cf. l. 383.

410. primum: correlative with tum,
l. 412. dēlūbrī: of Minerva, l. 404.

411. obruimur: with the final syllable
long under the metrical accent and before

the pause; App. 394, a. oritur: of the third
conjugation here. Cf. exoritur, l. 313.

412. faciē, errōre: ablatives of cause;
App. 332. Grajārum: pronounce Grajjā-
rum; App. 6, b. errōre jubārum: the
mistake of (caused by) the Greek crests,
subj. gen.; App. 284.

413. ēreptae virginis (Cassandrae):
subj. gen.; the wrath of (caused by) the girl
snatched (from them), or gen. of definition;
App. 284, 282. gemitū: abl. of manner;
App. 284. irā: abl. of cause; App. 332.

414. collecti: middle; App. 309. in-
vādunt (nōs). Ajāx: pronounced Ajjāx;
App. 6, b.

415. geminī = duo: they were not
twins.

adversī ruptō ceu quondam turbine ventī
 cōnfligunt, Zephyrusque Notusque et laetus Eōis
 Eurū equīs; stridunt silvae saevitque tridentī
 spūmeus atque imō Nēreus ciet aequora fundō.
Illī etiam, sī quōs obscurā nocte per umbram 420
fūdimus insidiīs tōtāque agitāvimus urbe,
appārent; prīmī clipeōs mentītaque tēla
agnōscunt atque ōra sonō discordia signant.
Īlicet obruimur numerō; prīmūque Coroebus
Pēnelei dextrā divae armipotentis ad āram 425
prōcumbit; cadit et Rhīpeus, iūstissimus ūnus
quī fuit in Teucrīs et servantissimus aequi
(dīs aliter vīsum); pereunt Hypanisque Dymāsque

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
 aequum, ī n. justice, right(eousness)†
 agitō (l) drive, stir, buffet, pursue†
 agnōscō, ere, aōvī, nitus recognize*
 aliter otherwise, differently
 appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
 armipotēns, entis powerful in arms†
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 ceu (just) as, as if
 cieō, ēre, cīvī, citus stir (up), arouse*
 clipeus, ī m. shield, buckler*
 cōnfligō, ere, xī, ctus clash, struggle†
 Coroebus, ī m. suitor of Cassandra
 discors, rdis differing, discordant†
 Dymās, antis m. Trojan leader
 Eōus, a, um eastern, of the dawn
 etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
 Eurū, ī m. (east) wind
 fundus, ī m. bottom, base, depth(s)†
 Hypanis, is m. Trojan leader
 illicet immediately, at once†
 insidiae, ārum f. ambush, snare, treach-
 ery

jūstus, a, um just, fair, right(eous), true
 mentior, irī, itus deceive, lie, pretend†
 Nēreus, ī m. a minor sea god†
 Notus, ī m. (south) wind
 numerus, ī m. number, multitude*
 obruō, ere, ruī, rutus overwhelm, crush
 obscurus, a, um dark, hidden, gloomy*
 Pēneleus, ei m. Greek leader†
 pereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus perish, die
 prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall, sink†
 Rhīpeus, ī m. Trojan leader
 rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst
 (forth)*
 saevio, ire, ivī (iī) itus rage, be fierce
 servāns, antis observant, heedful†
 signō (l) observe, mark, indicate†
 sonus, ī m. sound, noise, speech†
 spūmeus, a, um foamy, frothy†
 strid(e)ō, ēre, ī creak, roar, rustle
 tridēns, entis m. trident, three-pronged
 spear
 turbō, inis m. whirl(wind, pool), storm
 Zephyrus, ī m. (west) wind

416-417. ceu quondam turbine ruptō, venti cōnfligunt adversī: a simile; App. 441. turbine ruptō: abl. abs.; App. 343.

418. equīs: abl. of cause with laetus; App. 332. The wind god was conceived as driving his swift steeds like some great warrior. stridunt: of the third conjugation here, but ordinarily of the second. tridentī: abl. of means; App. 331.

418-419. Note the alliteration of s; App. 411.

419. spūmeus Nēreus. (ex) fundō.

420-422. Illi (Danai) appārent. sī quōs: indef. insidiīs: by the trick of exchanging armor and insignia; see ll. 389-395. tōtā urbe: abl. of route or space over which; App. 338.

422-423. (illi Danai) prīmī . . . agnōscunt atque . . . signant. sonō: abl. of respect with discordia; App. 325. The Trojans and Greeks are represented as speaking the same language (ōra) but with a dialect differing (discordia) in sound (sonō). (nostra) ōra.

425. dextrā (manū). divae armipotentis: Minervae.

426. iūstissimus ūnus: ūnus is often thus used simply to emphasize the superlative and is not to be translated.

427. servantissimus aequi: most devoted to justice; aequi is used substantively as an obj. gen.; App. 284.

428. dis aliter vīsum (est): the gods decreed otherwise (lit., it seemed otherwise

- cōnfixī ā sociīs; nec tē tua plūrima, Panthū,
 430 lābentem pietās nec Apollinis īnfula tēxit.
 Īliaci cinerēs et flamma extrēma meōrum,
 testor, in occāsū vestrō nec tēla nec ūllās
 vitāvisse vicēs, Danaum et, sī fāta fuissent
 ut caderem, meruisse manū. Divellimur inde,
 435 Īphitus et Peliās mēcum (quōrum Īphitus aevō
 jam gravior, Peliās et vulnere tardus Ulixī),
 prōtinus ad sēdēs Priamī clāmōre vocātī.
 Hic vērō ingentem pugnam, ceu cētera nūquam
 bella forent, nūllī tōtā morerentur in urbe,
 440 sic Mārtem indomitum Danaōsque ad tēcta ruentīs

aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity†
 Apollō, īnis *m.* god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 cēterus, a, um other, remaining, rest
 ceu as, just as, as if
 cinis, eris *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the
 dead)†*
 cōnfigō, ere, xī, xus pierce, transfix†
 divellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear apart
 extrēmus, a, um extreme, final, last*
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
 Īliacus, a, um Ilian, Trojan*
 inde thence, thereupon, next*
 indomitus, a, um uncontrolled, ungov-
 ernable†
 īnfula, ae *f.* fillet, garland, band†
 Īphitus, ī *m.* Trojan leader†
 Mārs, rtis *m.* (god of) war
 mereō, ēre, ūi, itus deserve, merit, earn*

mior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
 nūquam nowhere, never†
 occāsus, ūs *m.* sinking, fall, destruction
 Panthūs, ī *m.* Trojan leader
 Peliās, ae *m.* Trojan leader†
 pietās, ātis *f.* piety, devotion, loyalty,
 sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
 prōtinus immediately, at once†
 pugna, ae *f.* battle, fight, fray, com-
 bat*
 tardus, a, um slow, retarded, lazy, late
 tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*
 testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify
 Ulixēs, is (ei, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek
 leader*
 vērō truly, indeed, but
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
 vicis (*gen.*) *f.* (inter)change; fortune†
 vitō (1) shun, avoid, dodge, escape†
 vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

to the gods); the underlying thought seems to be: "if any one deserved to survive the fall of Troy it was the righteous Rhipeus, but the ways of the gods are past finding out."

429. (suīs) sociīs: Trojans on the roof of the temple, misled by their armor into believing Aeneas and his companions to be Greeks. Panthū: voc., a Greek form; App. 67.

430. īnfula: fillets were worn by priests and others, such as sacrificial victims, to indicate their sanctity and their consecration to the divinity.

431-505. Aeneas and his comrades hasten to the palace of Priam, which is being stormed.

431. meōrum: substantively, of my people, as though the flames of Troy were the funeral flames of his people. cinerēs, flamma: vocatives.

432-433. (vōs) testor, (mē) vitāvisse, indir. statement; App. 263.

433. vicēs Dana(ōr)um: perils of (from) the Greeks, subj. gen.; App. 284. sī fuissent: protasis of condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

434. ut caderem: depends partly on fāta, partly on meruisse; App. 364. (mē) meruisse (ut caderem) manū (for my deeds); or construe: Dana(ōr)um manū.

435-436. Īphitus et Peliās: in partitive apposition with nōs understood as subject of divellimur. mēcum = cum mē: App. 321. a. quōrum Īphitus (est) gravior, et Peliās (est) tardus. Ulixī: subj. gen. with vulnere, the wound of (inflicted by) Ulysses; App. 284.

437. vocātī: agrees with the subj. of divellimur.

438. pugnam (cernimus).

439. ceu . . . forent, (ceu) . . . morentur: condit. comparisons; App. 383.

cernimus obsessumque actā testūdine limen.

*Haerent parietibus scālae postisque sub ipsōs
nituntur gradibus clipeōsque ad tēla sinistris
prōtectī obiciunt, prēnsant fastigia dextris.*

*Dardanidae contrā turrīs ac tōta domōrum
culmina convellunt; hīs sē, quandō ultima cernunt,
extrēmā jam in morte parant dēfendere tēlis;
aurātāsque trabēs, veterum decora alla parentum,
dēvolvunt; aliī strictis mūcrōnibus imās
obsēdere forēs, hās servant agmine dēnsō.*

*Instaurātī animī rēgis succurrere tēctis
auxiliōque levāre virōs vimque addere victis.*

*Limen erat caecaeque forēs et pervius ūsus
tēctōrum inter sē Priamī, postēsque relictī*

addō, ere, didi, ditus add*
aurātus, a, um gilded, golden
auxilium, (i)ī n. help, aid, assistance*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
clipeus, i m. shield, buckler*
contrā opposite, on the other side*
convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter
culmen, inis n. summit, top, peak, roof*
Dardanidēs, ae m. Dardanian, Trojan
decus, oris n. ornament, glory, dignity
dēfendō, ere, i, ēnsus defend, protect
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
dēvolvō, ere, i, volūtus roll down†
extrēmus, a, um extreme, utter, last*
fastigium, (i)ī n. roof, top, summit
foris, is f. door, gate, entrance
gradus, ūs m. step, gait, stride, rung
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling to
(*dat.*)*
instaurō (1) renew, refresh†
levō (1) relieve, lighten, lift, remove
mūcrō, ōnis m. edge, point, sword

nitor, i, sus (nixus) climb on, rest on
(*abl.*)
obiciō, ere, jeci, jectus hold toward
obsidē, ēre, sedi, sessus besiege, beset
pariēs, ietis m. house-wall, wall†
pervius, a, um passable, traversable†
postis, is m. post, door, gate†
pr(eh)ēnsō (1) seize, grasp, clutch†
prōtegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect†
quandō when, since, because
scālae, arum f. ladder, stairway†
sinistra, ae f. left hand†
stringō, ere, inxi, ictus draw, strip, graze
succurrō, ere, i, cursus succor (*dat.*)
testūdō, inis f. tortoise, roof of over-
lapping shields held by soldiers over
their heads
trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber
turris, is f. tower, turret†
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
ūsus, ūs m. employment, use†
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

441. actā testūdine: *abl. abs.; App. 343.* An assaulting party, protected by their upraised shields and bearing a fancied resemblance to a tortoise shell; hence the Romans gave it the name, *testūdō, tortoise.*

442. parietibus: *dat. or abl. with haerent; App. 319, 297; pronounced here as though spelled parjetibus so that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.*

443. gradibus: *up the rungs; abl. of route; App. 338.*

445-446. contrā: *adv. turrīs, culmina:* objects of convellunt. *ultima (fāta) = mortem.*

446-447. hīs tēlis: *abl. of means; App. 331. sē dēfendere parant.*

449. aliī (Teucrī).

450. obsēdere = obsēderunt: *App. 204, 4.*

451. Instaurātī (sunt) animī (nostri). tēctis: *dat. with compound, succurrere; App. 298.*

452. auxiliō: *abl. of means; App. 331. victis (Teucris): dat. with compound; App. 298.*

453. erat: *agreeing with its nearest subject, limen; App. 236, b. pervius ūsus: a passable use, a way through which one might pass, coördinate with limen, forēs, and postēs.*

454. inter sē: *connecting the different parts of the palace (tēctōrum) with each other. tēctōrum: poetic plural; App. 243. relictī: secluded, unknown except to members of Priam's family.*

- 455 *ā tergō, infēlix quā sē, dum rēgna manēbant,*
saepius Andromachē ferre incommitāta solēbat.
Ēvādō ad summā fastīgia culminis, unde
tēla manū miserī jactābant inrita Teucrī.
- 460 *Turrim in praecipitī stantem summisque sub astra*
ēductam tēctīs, unde omnis Troja vidērī
et Danaum solitae nāvēs et Achāica castra,
adgressi ferrō circum, quā summa labantis
jūntūrās tabulāta dabant, convellimus altīs
- 465 *sēdibus impulimusque; ea lāpsa repente ruīnam*
cum sonitū trahit et Danaum super agmina lātē
incidit. Ast aliī subeunt, nec saxa nec ūllum
tēlōrum intereā cessat genus.
- Vestibulum ante ipsūm prīmōque in limine Pyrrhus*

Achāicus, a, um Achaeian, Greek†
 adgredior, i, gressus approach, attack
 Andromachē, ēs (a, ae) f. wife of Hector†
 astrum, i n. star, constellation*
 Astyanax, actis m. infant son of Hector
 and Andromache†
 avus, i m. grandfather; ancestor†
 castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment*
 cessō (1) yield, delay, cease
 convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter
 culmen, inis n. summit, top, peak, roof*
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead forth, raise
 ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go out, traverse,
 mount†
 fastigium, (i) i n. roof, top, summit
 impellō, ere, puli, pulsus push forward
 incidō, ere, i fall (on); chance upon
 incommitātus, a, um unaccompanied†
 inritus, a, um useless, vain, unavailing†

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 jactō (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter*
 jūntūra, ae f. joint, fastening†
 labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate†
 lātē widely, far and wide
 praeceps, cipitis n. precipice, sheer edge*
 Pyrrhus, i m. Neoptolemus, son of
 Achilles†
 quā where(by), in any (some) way
 repente suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly
 ruīna, ae f. ruin, downfall, collapse
 saepe often, frequently*
 socer, eri m. father (parent)-in-law†
 solēō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
 sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, noise, crash*
 tabulātum, i n. floor, story†
 tergum, i n. back, body, rear*
 turris, is f. tower, turret
 unde whence, from which place*
 vestibulum, i n. entry, vestibule†

455. *rēgna (Priamī)*: poetic plural;
 App. 243.

455-456. *infēlix Andromachē sē ferre solēbat*. To Aeneas, who is relating the story, Andromache was *infēlix*, because of the loss of Hector who had been slain by Achilles and because of the death of her son Astyanax, who was killed by the Greeks after the fall of Troy.

456. *saepius*: very often, quite often, a common use of the comparative.

457. *socerōs*: parents-in-law, Priam and Hecuba. *avō* = *Priamō*: dat. of direction; App. 306 = *ad Priamum*. *Astyanacta*: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

458. *Ēvādō ad fastigia*: I mount to the

roof (after entering the palace by the secret passage just described).

460-464. *Turrim adgressi convellimus impulimusque. tēctīs*: abl. of separation; App. 340. *in praecipiti*: on the sheer edge. *Troja (solita est) vidērī et nāvēs Dana(ōr)um solitae (sunt vidērī)*: a watch tower. *ferrō*: iron tools, such as crow-bars.

464-465. *(ex) altis sēdibus*: abl. of separation; App. 340.

466. *Dana(ōr)um*.

467. *aliī (Danai)*.

468. *cessat*: agrees with *ūllum genus*, its nearest subject; App. 236, b.

469. *Pyrrhus*: Achilles's young son who has just come to Troy.

exsultat *tēlis et lūce* coruscus aēnā; 470
 quālis *ubi in lūcem* coluber mala grāmina pāstus,
 frīgida *sub terrā* tumidum *quem* brūma tegēbat,
nunc, positīs novus exuviis nitidusque *juventā,*
 lūbrica convolvit *sublātō* pectore terga
 arduus *ad sōlem, et linguīs* micat *ōre* trisulcīs. 475
Ūnā ingēns Periphās *et equōrum* agitātor Achillis,
 armiger Automedōn, *ūnā omnis* Scŷria pūbēs
 succēdunt *tēctō et flammās ad* culmina jactant.
Ipsē inter *prīmōs* correptā dūra bipennī
 limina perrumpit *postisque ā* cardine vellit 480
 aerātōs; *jamque* excisā trabe firma cavāvit
 rōbora *et ingentem* lātō *dedīt* *ōre* fenestram.

Achillēs, is (ī, eī) *m.* Greek leader*
 aēnus, a, um bronze, brazen
 aerātus, a, um bronze, brazen†
 agitātor, ōris *m.* driver, charioteer†
 arduus, a, um high, steep, lofty*
 armiger, eri *m.* armorbearer, squire†
 Automedōn, ontis *m.* Greek leader†
 bipennis, is *f.* double ax†
 brūma, ae *f.* midwinter†
 cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
 cavō (1) hollow out
 coluber, bri *m.* snake, serpent†
 convolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll, coil†
 corripō, ere, ūi, reptus snatch (up)*
 coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, waving
 culmen, inis *n.* top, summit, peak, roof*
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
 excidō, ere, ī, sus cut out; destroy
 exsultō (1) leap forth, dance, surge, exult
 exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils; skin, slough
 fenestra, ae *f.* window, opening, breach†
 firmus, a, um firm, strong, solid†
 frigidus, a, um cold, frosty, chill†
 grāmen, inis *n.* grass, herb, plant†
 jactō (1) hurl, toss, buffet; utter*
 juvena, ae *f.* youth, young manhood
 lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*

lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language
 lūbricus, a, um slippery, slimy†
 malus, a, um bad, evil, wicked, baneful*
 micō, āre, ūi flash, quiver, dart
 nitidus, a, um shining, bright, sleek†
 pascor, ī, pāstus feed (on), graze, eat
 Periphās, antis *m.* Greek leader†
 perrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break
 through†
 postis, is *m.* post, door, gate
 pūbēs, is *f.* youth, young men*
 quālis, e such (as), of what sort*
 rōbur, oris *n.* oak, strength*
 Scŷrius, a, um Scyrian, of Scyros, an
 island of the Aegean where Neoptole-
 mus (Pyrrhus) was born†
 sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
 succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach
 (dat.)
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect*
 tergum, ī *n.* back, body, rear*
 trabs (trabēs), is *f.* beam, timber
 trisulcus, a, um threefold, tripartite,
 forked†
 tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
 ūnā together, at the same time
 vellō, ere, vulsi, vulsus tear (up)†

470. *tēlis et lūce aēnā coruscus* = *flashing and gleaming in his bronze armor.* For a further description see III, 467-468.

471-475. *quālis est coluber ubi, pāstus mala grāmina, quem tumidum frīgida brūma sub terrā tegēbat, nunc novus, exuviis positīs, nitidusque juventā, in lūcem (ēvādēns) sublātō pectore arduus ad sōlem lūbrica terga convolvit, et linguīs trisulcīs (in) ōre micat. mala grāmina pāstus:* the ancients thought that serpents derived their venom from feeding on poisonous herbs (*mala grā-*

mina). *tumidum:* with venom. *positīs:* shed. *linguīs trisulcīs:* abl. of means; App. 331; the ancients thought that the serpent's tongue had three forks.

478. *tēctō (Priamī):* dat. with compound; App. 298.

479. *Ipsē (Pyrrhus):* see the note on *ipsius*, I, 114. *correptā bipennī:* abl. abs. or means; App. 343, 331.

479-480. *correptā dūra bipennī limina:* interlocked order; App. 442. *limina:* the doors.

482. *lātō ōre:* wide-mouthed; abl. of quality; App. 330.

- Appāret *domus* intus et ātria longa patēscunt,
 appārent *Priamī* et veterum penetrālia rēgum,
 485 armātōsque vident stantīs in limine primō.
At domus interior gemitū miserōque tumultū
 miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus aedēs
 fēmineis ululant; ferit aurea sīdera clāmor.
Tum pavidae tēctis mātres ingentibus errant
 490 amplexacque tenent postis atque ōscula figunt.
 Instat vī patriā Pyrrhus; nec claustra nec ipsi
 custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
 jānuā, et ēmoti prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
 Fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs primōsque trucidant
 495 immissi Danaī et lātē loca milite complent.

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance†
 aedēs, ium *f.* house, home†
 amplexor, i, exus embrace, encompass*
 appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
 ariēs, etis *m.* (battering) ram†
 armō (1) arma, equip, furnish*
 ātrium, (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium
 aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold*
 cardō, inis *m.* hinge, pivot, socket
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
 claustrum, i *n.* bolt, fastening, barrier
 compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete
 crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated*
 custōs, ōdis *m.* (f.) guard(ian), sentinel*
 ēmoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus move from†
 fēmineus, a, um feminine, women's†
 feriō, ire strike, smite, beat, kill
 figō, ere, xi, xus fix, fasten, print*
 fiō, fieri, factus become, be made
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
 immittō, ere, misi, missus let in†
 instō, āre, stiti press on, urge on
 interior, ius inner, interior
 intus within, inside
 jānuā, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance†

labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate
 lātē widely, far and wide
 miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), warrior(s)
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
 ōsculum, i *n.* dainty lips; kiss
 patēscō, ere, uī open up, be revealed
 pavidus, a, um fearful, frightened†
 penetrālia, ium *n.* chamber, sanctuary,
 inner room
 penitus (deep) within, inside, completely*
 plangor, ōris *m.* clamor, wailing, beating
 (of the breast), shriek†
 postis, is *m.* post, door, gate
 prōcumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus fall, sink
 Pyrrhus, i *m.* Neoptolemus, son of
 Achilles
 rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst
 (forth)*
 sufferō, ferre, sustulī, sublātus with-
 stand, endure†
 trucidō (1) slay, slaughter, butcher†
 tumultus, ūs *m.* uproar, tumult, hubbub
 ululō (1) howl, shriek, wail†
 valeō, ēre, uī be strong, avail, be able†
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

483. ātria: Vergil has in mind the general arrangement of a Roman house rather than that of an ancient Trojan palace.

483-484. Appāret, appārent: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

485. armātōs (Teucrōs): mentioned in ll. 449-450. (Danaī) vident.

486. domus interior: the inner house = the interior of the house; App. 246; contrasted with the scene at the entrance (in limine primō).

488. ferit sidera clāmor: hyperbole; App. 428.

489. (in) tēctis.

490. ōscula: of farewell.

491. vī patriā: with his father's might, patriā = patris = Achilles (gen.).

492. sufferre (Pyrrhum). ariete crēbrō: abl. of means; App. 331; with the frequent (battering) ram, with the repeated blows of the battering ram; ariete, pronounced arjete here, that it may be used in dactylic hexameter; App. 401.

493. cardine: abl. of separation with ēmoti; App. 340.

494. via vī: alliteration; App. 411. aditūs: acc. of effect; App. 307; cf. "he broke a hole in the ice." primōs (virōs): mentioned in l. 485.

*Nōn sīc, aggeribus ruptis cum spūmeus amnis
 exiit oppositāsque ēvicit gurgite mōlēs,
 fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnīs
 cum stabulis armenta trahit. Vīdī ipse furentem
 caede Neoptoleum geminōsque in limine Atridās,* 500
*vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās
 sanguine foedantem quōs ipse sacrāverat ignīs.
 Quīnquāgintā illī thalamī, spēs ampla nepōtum,
 barbaricō postēs aurō spoliisque superbī
 procubuēre; tenent Danaī quā dēficit ignīs.* 505
*Forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās.
 Urbis utī captae cāsum convulsaque vīdit
 limina tēctōrum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,*

agger, eris *m.* mound, heap, dike, dam
amnis, is *m.* river, stream, torrent†*
amplus, a, um ample, full, spacious, wide
armentum, i n. herd, flock, drove, cattle
Atridēs, ae *m.* son of Atreus: (1) Agamem-
 non, (2) Menelaüs
barbaricus, a, um barbaric, foreign†
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
centum hundred*
convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear up, shatter
cumulūs, i *m.* heap, mass, pile
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, be lacking†
ēvincō, ere, vicī, victus overcome, sur-
 mount†
exeō, ire, iī (ivī), itus go forth, depart
foedō (1) defile, pollute, disfigure
fors(it)an perhaps, possibly, perchance†
gurgēs, itis *m.* whirlpool, abyss, gulf*
Hecuba, ae *f.* wife of Priam†
hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, dike*
Neoptolemus, i *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achil-
 les

nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
nurus, ūs *f.* daughter(-in-law)†
oppōnō, ere, posuī, positus oppose, place
 against
penetrālia, ium *n.* chamber, sanctuary,
 inner room
postis, is *m.* post, door, gate
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus fall (for-
 ward), sink
quā where(by), in any (some) way
quīnquāgintā fifty
requirō, ere, sivi, situs ask, seek
rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst
 (forth)*
sacrō (1) hallow, consecrate, dedi-
 cate*
spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation*
spolium, (i) i n. spoils, booty, plunder
spūmeus, a, um foamy, frothy
stabulum, i *n.* stable, stall, abode†
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
thalamus, i *m.* marriage chamber, bed-
 room†*

496-498. *Nōn sīc spūmeus amnis fer-
 tur = not so (furiously) does a foaming
 river rush onward;* litotes and a simile;
 App. 431, 441. **exiit:** from its channel.
fertur furēns, cumulō campōs: double
 alliteration; App. 411. **cumulō:** abl. of
 manner; App. 328; as in I, 105.

500. **caede:** abl. of manner with *fu-
 rentem*; App. 328, a.

501. **nurūs:** daughters and daughters-
 in-law; Priam and Hecuba had fifty of
 each.

502. **foedantem ignis.**

503. **illi:** those famous, as often. **tha-
 lamī:** of Priam's fifty sons and their wives.

504. **aurō spoliisque:** abl. of means or
 cause limiting *superbi*; App. 331, 332.

barbaricō: from a Roman or Greek point
 of view; *foreign*.

505. **prōcubuēre = prōcubuērunt;** App.
 204, 4.

506-558. Hecuba and Priam take
 refuge at the altar in the court of the
 palace, but Priam is nevertheless ruth-
 lessly slain by Pyrrhus.

506. **quae fuerint Priamī fāta:** indir.
 quest.; App. 349. **requirās:** potential
 subjunctive; or it may be taken as a
 subjunctive in an indirect question in-
 troduced by *an* and dependent upon *fors*
sit (in *forsitan*); *sit* would then be a
 potential subjunctive.

- 510 *arma diū senior dēsuēta trementibus aevō*
circumdat nēquiquam *umeris et inūtile ferrum*
cingitur, *ac dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostis.*
Aedibus in mediis nūdōque sub aetheris axe
ingēns āra fuit juxtāque veterrima laurus
515 *incumbēns ārae atque umbrā complexa penātis.*
Hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquiquam altāria circum,
praecipitēs ātrā ceu tempestāte columbae,
condēnsae et divum amplexae simulācra sedēbant.
Ipsū autem sūptis Priamū juvenālibus armīs
ut vidit, 'Quae mēns tam dira, miserrime conjūnx,
520 *impulit hīs cingī tēlis? Aut quō ruis?' inquit.*
'Nōn tālī auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istīs
tempus eget; nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet Hector.

aedēs, ium *f.* house, home
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether
aevum, i *n.* age, life, time, eternity
altāria, ium *n.* altar†
amplector, i, plexus embrace, enfold*
autem but, however, moreover*
auxilium, (i) i *n.* aid, help, assistance*
axis, is *m.* axle, axis; height†
ceu (just) as, as if
cingō, ere, cingi, cinctus gird, encircle*
circumdō, dare, dedi, datus surround,
place around (*dat.*)
columba, ae *f.* dove, pigeon†
complector, i, plexus embrace, enfold
condēnsus, a, um crowded, thick, dense†
dēfēnsor, ōris *m.* defender, protector†
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
dēsuētus, a, um unaccustomed, unused
dirus, a, um dire, awful, dreadful*
diū a long time, long
egeō, ēre, uī need, lack, require (*abl.*)
Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader, son of
Priam and Hecuba*
Hecuba, ae *f.* wife of Priam

hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
impellō, ere, puli, pulsus urge, drive
incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus lean (on,
over) (*dat.*)
inquam, is, it say*
inūtilis, e useless, futile, valueless†
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)†*
juvenālis, e youthful, of a young man†
juxtā next, close at hand†*
laurus, i (ūs) *f.* laurel (tree)†
moriōr, i, mortuus die, perish*
nāta, ae *f.* daughter
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nūdus, a, um naked, bare, nude, open
penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitate*
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire†
simulācrum, i *n.* image, statue, likeness
sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, assume
tam so (much), such*
tempestās, ātis *f.* tempest, storm; season*
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
vetus, eris ancient, old, aged, former*

509-510. senior (Priamus) umeris trementibus aevō arma diū dēsuēta nēquiquam circumdat. senior: with the intensive meaning of the comparative, though a very old man.

510. umeris: *dat.* with compound; App. 298. ferrum: *obj.* of the middle verb cingitur, he girds on his sword; App. 309.

512. Aedibus in mediis: in the inner court of the palace, open to the sky; App. 246. As usual in such descriptions, the details are those of a wealthy Roman house of Vergil's own time.

514. ārae: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

515. altāria circum = circum altāria: App. 414.

516. ātrā tempestāte: *abl.* of means with the verbal idea implied in praecipitēs.

517. div(ōr)um.

518. sūptis armis: *abl. abs.*; App. 343.

520. (tē) impulit. cingī: middle, to gird yourself; App. 309.

521. auxiliō, dēfēnsōribus: *ablatives* with eget; App. 340. The idea seems to be: "human strength is unavailing, and only the gods and their sacred altars can protect us now."

522. adforet = adesset: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

*Hūc tandem concēde; hāec āra tuēbitur omnīs,
aut moriēre simul.' Sīc ōre effāta recēpit
ad sēsē et sacrā longāevum in sēde locāvit.*

525

*Ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī dē caede Politēs,
ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostīs
porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat
saucius. Illum ardēns infēstō vulnere Pyrrhus
insequitur, jam jamque manū tenet et premit hastā.
Ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsīt et ōra parentum,
concidit ac multō vītā cum sanguine fūdīt.*

530

*Hīc Priamus, quamquam in mediā jam morte tenētur,
nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī iraeque pepercit:
'At tibi prō scelere,' exclāmat, 'prō tālibus ausīs
dī, si qua est caelō pietās quae tālia cūret,
persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia reddant*

535

abstineō, ēre, uī, tentus refrain, restrain†
ātrium, (i)ī *n.* great hall, atrium
ausum, ī *n.* daring deed, daring†
autem but, however, moreover*
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, mas-
sacre
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, come
concidō, ere, ī fall (in a heap)†
cūrō (1) regard, care (for), heed†
dignus, a, um worthy, suitable, fit(ting)
ecce, see! look! behold!*
effor, āri, ātus speak, utter, say†
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus slip out, escape
ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape, come forth
exclāmō (1) cry (out), shout, exclaim†
grātēs, ium *f.* thanks, requital, reward
hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
hostis, is *m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger*
infēstus, a, um hostile, threatening†
insequor, ī, secūtus follow, pursue*
locō (1) place, establish, locate*
longaevus, a, um aged, very old†
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish*

parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare
(*dat.*)
persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay fully
pietās, ātis *f.* loyalty, righteousness,
justice, sense of duty, nobility*
Politēs, ae *m.* son of Priam, slain by
Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus)†
porticus, ūs *f.* colonnade, corridor, por-
tico†
praemium, (i)ī *n.* reward, prize*
premo, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
pierce*
prō for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
Pyrrhus, ī *m.* Neoptolemus, son of
Achilles
quamquam although, however, but
recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, accept*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, render*
saucius, a, um wounded, hurt
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) protect, watch*
vacuus, a, um empty, vacant, free†
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

523. concēde: imp.; come here. (nōs) omnīs.

524. moriēre = moriēris, fut. 2nd sing.; App. 204, 4. simul (cum nōbis). ōre: picturesque pleonasm; App. 438. recēpit (longaevum Priamum).

525. sacrā in sēde = in āra.

526. Pyrrhī: subj. gen. with caede; App. 284.

528. porticibus: around the inner court of the palace; abl. of the route; App. 338.

529. Illum: Politēn. infēstō vulnere: with hostile weapon (which would inflict a wound).

530. (illum) tenet et (illum) premit. jam jam: rhetorical repetition to portray the excited anticipation of Pyrrhus and the frenzied fear of Politēs; App. 413.

531. ante oculōs et ōra parentum.

534. vōcī iraeque: datives with special verb; App. 297.

535-537. At dī tibi persolvant grātēs (= grātiās) dignās. (in) caelō. quae

- dēbita, quī nātī cōram mē cernere lētum
 fēcistī et patriōs foedāstī fūnere vultūs.
 540 At nōn ille, satum quō tē mentiris, Achillēs
 tālis in hoste fuit Priamō; sed jūra fidemque
 supplicis ērubuit corpusque exsangue sepulcrō
 reddidit Hectoreum mēque in mea rēgna remisit.
 Sic fātus senior tēlumque imbelles sine ictū
 545 conjēcit, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum,
 et summō clipeī nēquiquam umbōne pependit.
 Cui Pyrrhus: 'Referēs ergō haec et nuntius ībis
 Pēlidēs genitōrī. Illī mea trīstia facta
 dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.

Achillēs, is (i, ei) *m.* Greek leader*
 aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
 clipeus, i *m.* shield, buckler*
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, shoot†
 cōram before the face, face to face
 dēbitus, a, um due, owed, destined†
 dēgener, eris degenerate, ignoble, base†
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 ērubescō, ere, ērubui reverence, blush
 (before)†
 exsanguis, e bloodless, lifeless, pale
 factum, i *n.* deed, exploit, undertaking*
 fidēs, ei *f.* faith, fidelity, reliance*
 foedō (1) defile, pollute, disfigure
 fūnus, eris *n.* death, funeral, disaster*
 Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, Trojan
 leader, son of Priam
 hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, wound†
 imbellis, e unwarlike, harmless†
 jūs, jūris *n.* law, right, justice
 lētum, i *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
 meminī, isse remember, recall
 mentior, iri, itus lie, deceive, pretend

nārrō (1) relate, recount, report, nar-
 rate†
 Neoptolemus, i *m.* Pyrrhus, son of
 Achilles
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
 nuntius, (i) *m.* messenger, message†
 Pēlidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Peleus,
 Achilles†
 pendeō, ēre, pependi hang*
 prōtinus immediately, forthwith
 Pyrrhus, i *m.* Neoptolemus, son of
 Achilles
 raucus, a, um hoarse, sounding, clanging†
 reddō, ere, didi, ditus return, render*
 remittō, ere, misi, missus send back†
 repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus drive back,
 repel
 senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
 sepulcrum, i *n.* tomb, burial†
 serō, ere, sēvi, satus sow, beget†*
 sine without (*abl.*)*
 supplex, icis *m.* (f.) suppliant*
 umbō, ōnis *m.* boss, knob, shield†
 vultus, ūs *m.* face, countenance, gaze*

cūret: rel. clause of characteristic; App.
 389. persolvant, reddant: opt.; App.
 253. grātēs: reward, requital.

538. (tibi) qui. mē cernere = ut
 cernam: depends on fēcistī.

539. foedā(vi)stī. fūnere (nātī).

540. ille: that famous, as often. (ex)
 quō mentiris tē (esse) satum. mentiris:
 you falsely say. quō: *abl.* of source; App.
 323.

541. After the death of Hector, Priam
 had ransomed his corpse from Achilles.
 Cf. I, 483-484. in hoste Priamō: in the
 case of, toward his enemy Priam; Priam's
 use of his own name adds a touch of
 pathos.

542. sepulcrō: dat. of purpose; App.
 303.

543. Hectoreum = Hectoris: an adj.
 for a gen. is a common usage.

544. Sic fātus (est) senior.

545. repulsum (est).

546. (dē) summō umbōne: App. 246;
 Priam's spear had stuck in the top of the
 boss of Pyrrhus's shield and now hung
 there harmless.

547. Pyrrhus (dixit). Referēs et ībis:
 hysteron proteron; App. 429; the futures
 are here used with the force of imperatives,
 go and tell; App. 351, 3, a. nuntius: (as)
 a messenger.

548. (meō) genitōrī = Achilli.

548-549. mea tristia facta dēgenerem-
 que Neoptolemum: ironical and mock-
 ing.

549. mementō: imp.

Nunc morere. *Hoc dicēns altāria ad ipsa trementem* 550
trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,
implicuitque comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum
extulit ac laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.
Haec finis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum
sorte tulit Trojam incēnsam et prōlāpsa videntem 555
Pergama, tot quondam populis terrisque superbum
rēgnātōrem Asiae. Jacet ingēns litore truncus,
āvulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus.
At mē tum primum saevus circumstetit horror.
Obstupiū; subiit cārī genitōris imāgō, 560
ut rēgem aequaevum crūdēlī vulnere vīdī
vīlam exhālantem; subiit dēserta Creūsa
et direpta domus et parvī cāsus Iūli.

abdō, ere, didi, ditus hide, bury
aequaevus, a, um of equal age†
altāria, ium n. altar
Asia, ae f. Asia (Minor)
āvellō, ere, (vuls)i, vulsus tear from
capulus, i m. hilt, handle, head†
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
circumstō, āre, steti surround, stand around†
coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses*
coruscus, a, um flashing, bright, waving
Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, lost at the sack of Troy†
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter*
dēsērō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake*
dīrīpiō, ere, ui, reptus plunder, ravage
efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus raise, lift*
ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*
exhālō (1) breathe out, exhale†
exitus, ūs m. exit, issue, end†
horror, ōris m. shudder(ing), horror, alarm
imāgō, inis f. image, picture, likeness*
implicō, āre, āvi (ui), ātus (itus) entwine

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, fire*
Iūlus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
jaceō, ēre, ui, itus lie (low, outspread)*
laeva, ae f. left hand
lāpsō, āre slip, stumble, totter, fall†
latus, eris n. side, flank*
morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
obstipescō, ere, stipui be dazed, stand agape*
parvus, a, um small, little*
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*
populus, i m. people, nation, race*
prōlābor, ī, lāpsus slide, fall, perish†
rēgnātor, ōris m. ruler, sovereign, lord†
saevus, a, um cruel, stern, fierce*
sine without (*abl.*)*
sors, rtis f. lot, fate, destiny; oracle*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
tenus, to, up to, as far as (abl.)
tot so many*
tremō, ere, ui tremble, shake, quiver*
truncus, i m. trunk, body, torso†
vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow*

550. morere: imp. *altāria ad ipsa:* an act of unspeakable impiety. *trementem (Priamum):* from old age and anger, not from fear.

551. lāpsantem sanguine nātī: a touch of pathos.

552-553. coruscum (ēnsem). laterī = in latus: dat. of direction; App. 306.

554. Haec (fuit) finis: Haec is attracted to the gender of the predicate, *finis*, which is here feminine, though ordinarily masculine. *hic(c) exitus (vitae).*

556. populis terrisque: ablatives of cause with *superbum*; App. 332.

557. Asiae: obj. gen. with *rēgnātōrem*; App. 284. (*in*) *litore:* his headless corpse is thrown out on the beach for the dogs

and birds to devour. It is said that Vergil here has in mind the fate of Pompey, once one of the world's most powerful men; he was defeated in battle, lost his power, and was finally beheaded in Egypt, where his body was cast out and allowed to lie on the beach.

559-566. The sight of Priam so brutally slain reminds Aeneas of the danger of his own aged father, Anchises, and of his wife and child.

560. subiit (meam mentem).

561. aequaevum: Anchises was of about the same age as Priam.

563. direpta: in my imagination. *domus:* nom. sing. with the final syllable

- Respicio *et quae sit mē circum cōpia lūstrō.*
 565 Dēseruere omnēs dēfessi, *et corpora saltū*
ad terram mīsere aut ignibus aegra dedere.
Jamque adeō super ūnus eram, cum limina Vestae
servantem et tacitam sēcrētā in sēde latentem
 Tyndarida aspicio; *dant clāra incendia lūcem*
 570 *errantī passimque oculōs per cūcta ferentī.*
Illā sibi infestōs ēversa ob Pergama Teucrōs
et poenās Danaum et dēserti conjugis irās
praemetuēns, Trojae et patriae communis Erinys,
abdiderat sēsē atque ārīs invisa sedēbat.
 575 *Exarsere ignēs animō; subit īra cadentem*

abdō, ere, didī, ditus hide, bury
 adeō indeed, so much, truly
 aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
 a(d)spicio, ere, spexi, spectus see, look
 (at)*
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
 communis, e common, mutual, general†
 cōpia, ae f. abundance, plenty, forces
 dēfessus, a, um tired, weary, worn
 dēserō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake*
 Erinys, yos f. Fury, Curse
 ēvertō, ere, i, rsus (over)turn, destroy
 exardescō, ere, arsi, arsus blaze (up)†
 incendium, (i)ī n. blaze, conflagration
 infestus, a, um hostile, threatening

invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
 lateō, ēre, uī hide, lie hid, lurk*
 lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
 ob on account of, for (acc.)
 passim everywhere, all about*
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
 Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*
 praemetuō, ere fear beforehand†
 respicio, ere, spexi, spectus look back†*
 saltus, ūs m. leap, bound, dancing†
 sēcrētus, a, um remote, hidden, secret
 sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*
 tacitus, a, um silent, still, quiet
 Tyndaris, idis f. daughter of Tyndarus,
 Helen†
 Vesta, ae f. goddess of the hearth

long under the metrical accent and before the pause; App. 394, a.

564. Respicio: Aeneas on the roof of the palace had been so fascinated in looking down on the murder of Priam that he had forgotten all else. He now looks around for his followers and finds them gone. *quae cōpia (virōrum)*. sit: indir. quest.; App. 349. *mē circum* = *circum mē*: App. 414.

565. saltū: abl. of means or manner.
 565-566. dēseruere, misēre, dedere = dēseruerunt, misērunt, dedērunt.

566. aegra (corpora): *wearied and wounded (bodies)*.

567-633. Seeing that all is lost, Aeneas turns to go, when he catches sight of Helen, the cause of all the trouble, crouching just inside a temple of Vesta. He prepares to kill her but is restrained by his mother, Venus, who appears and urges him to hurry home to protect his family.

567-588. The best manuscripts of Vergil do not have these lines, and many

scholars consider the passage spurious, as they are inconsistent with VI, 494-530. This inconsistency may be due to the unfinished condition of the poem or to the unaccountable caprice of the poet.

567. super: adv. to be taken with *eram*. *ūnus supereram*: *I alone survived*.

569. Tyndarida: acc., a Greek form; App. 68. *clāra incendia lūcem dant*: explains why Aeneas could see Helen.

570. (mihī) errantī.

571-573. *Illā, communis Erinys Trojae et patriae (suae), praemetuēns Teucrōs infestōs sibi, etc. Dana(ōr)um*: subj. gen.; App. 284. *dēserti conjugis irās*: Menelaus's anger.

574. (in) ārīs. (Tyndaris) invisa (ab omnibus) sedēbat.

575. ignēs (irae). *Exarsere* = *exarsērunt*. (in meō) animō. *subit (mē) ulcisci et sūmere*: the infinitives are complementary, depending on the idea of wishing implied in *ira*, the angry desire; App. 259, 264.

ulciscī patriam et scelerātās sūmere poenās.

'Scilicet haec Spartam incolumis patriāsque Mycēnās

aspiciet, partōque ibit rēgīna triumphō,

conjugiumque domūque patris nātōsque vidēbit

Īliadum turbā et Phrygiūs comitāta ministrīs?

580

Occiderit ferrō Priamus? Troja arserit ignī?

Dardanium totiēns sūdārit sanguine litus?

Nōn ita. Namque etsi nūllum memorābile nōmen

fēmineā in poenā est nec habet victōria laudem,

585

extinxisse nefās tamen et sūmpsisse merentis

laudābor poenās, animumque explēsse iuvābit

ultrīcis flammae et cinerēs satiāsse meōrum.'

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look (at)*

cinis, eris *m.* cinder(s), ashes (of the dead)*

comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort, follow

conjugium, (i)ī *n.* marriage; husband†

Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*

etsi although, even if†

expleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill (with), sate (*gen.*)

extinguō, ere, inxi, inctus extinguish, destroy†

fēmineus, a, um of (over) a woman, feminine

Īlias, adis *f.* Trojan woman

incolumis, e safe, sound, unharmed

ita thus, so

juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*

laudō (1) praise, commend, laud, extol†

laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*

memorābilis, e memorable, glorious†

mereō, ēre, ui, itus deserve, earn, merit*

minister, trī *m.* attendant, servant

Mycēnae, ārum *f.* a city of Greece, home of Agamemnon

nefās *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, impious wretch*

occidō, ere, ī, cāsus fall, sink, die†

pariō, ere, peperī, partus gain, produce†

patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*

Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*

satiō (1) satisfy, sate, satiate, glut†

scelerātus, a, um criminal, wicked, infamous

scilicet doubtless, of course, forsooth†

Sparta, ae *f.* country of Greece, home of Helen and Menelaüs†

sūdō (1) sweat, perspire†

sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, exact

tamen however, nevertheless, moreover*

totiēns so many times

triumphus, ī *m.* triumph, victory†

turba, ae *f.* mob, crowd, throng; tumult

ulciscor, ī, ultus avenge; punish†

ultrix, icis avenging, vengeful†

victōria, ae *f.* victory, conquest, triumph†

576. sūmere: *exact, inflict.* scelerātās poenās = sceleris poenās: *punishment of (for) her crime.*

577. Scilicet: *forsooth; ironical; App. 430.*

578. partō triumphō: *abl. abs.; App. 343.*

579. conjugium = conjugem.

580. turbā, ministris: *ablatives of accompaniment with the participle comitāta, which here has a passive meaning; App. 321.*

581-582. Occiderit, arserit, sūdā(ve)-rit: *fut. perfects; i.e., shall she return in triumph home when all Troy has perished?*

583. Nōn ita (erit): *it shall not be! See App. 351, 3, a.*

584. fēmineā in poenā: *the adj. is here equivalent to the obj. gen.; App. 284; punishment (exactd) of a woman. (fēminea) victōria: victory over a woman.*

585-586. extinxisse nefās laudābor: *I shall be praised for having destroyed that abomination; i.e., Helen. merentis poenās = meritis poenās: deserved punishment.*

586. (mē) iuvābit: *used impersonally, with explē(vi)sse et satiā(vi)sse as its subject; App. 258.*

587. flammae: *gen. with the special verb, explē(vi)sse, to have sated my soul with the vengeful flame; App. 287. meōrum: substantively, of my people.*

- Tālia jactābam et furiātā mente ferēbar,*
 cum mihi sē, nōn ante oculīs tam clāra, videndam
 obtulit et pūrā per noctem in lūce refulsit
 alma parēns, cōnfessa deam quālisque vidērī
 caelicolīs et quanta solet, dextrāque prehēsum
 continuit roseōque haec insuper addidit ōre:
 'Nāte, quis indomitās tantus dolor excitat irās?
 Quid furis aut quōnam nostrī tibi cūra recessit?
 Nōn prius aspiciēs ubi fessum aetāte parentem
 liqueris Anchīsēn, superet conjūnxne Creūsa
 Ascaniusque puer? Quōs omnīs undique Grajae
 circum errant aciēs et, nī mea cūra resistat,
 jam flammae tulerint inimicus et hauserit ēnsis.

aciēs, ēi f. edge; battle line, army*
 addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
 aetās, ātis f. age, (time of) life, time
 almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look
 (at)*
 caelicola, ae m. (f.) divinity, deity†
 circum around, about†
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
 cōnfiteor, ēri, fessus confess, reveal†
 contineō, ēre, ūi, tentus hold together,
 restrain, check†
 Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, lost at the
 sack of Troy
 dolor, ōris m. grief, anger, pain, pas-
 sion*
 ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*
 excitō (1) arouse, stir up, excite†
 furiō (1) madden, frenzy, infuriate
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 hauriō, ire, hausi, haustus drain, drink;
 destroy

indomitus, a, um uncontrolled, ungovern-
 able
 inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
 insuper in addition, above
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, ponder, blurt out*
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, forsake*
 nisi, nī unless, if not*
 offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present
 pre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp
 prius sooner, before, first
 pūrus, a, um pure, bright, clean, clear†
 quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
 quantus, a, um as great as, how great*
 quōnam whither, where on earth†
 recedō, ere, cessi, cessus depart, retire,
 withdraw
 refulgeō, ēre, lsī, lsus shine, gleam
 resistō, ere, stiti resist, oppose
 roseus, a, um rosy, red, pink
 soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
 superō (1) overcome, surmount, survive*
 tam so (much), such*
 undique everywhere, from all sides*

588. Tālia (dicta).

589-591. cum (mea) alma parēns nōn ante tam clāra (meis) oculis obtulit sē mihi videndam. videndam: the gerundive expressing purpose, to be seen; App. 268. alma parēns Aenēae = Venus. cōnfessa (sē esse) deam.

591-593. caelicolis: dat. with vidērī. quālis, quanta: the gods surpassed human beings in form and stature. dextrā mē prehēsum continuit: grasped me by my right hand and held me back; Aeneas had already raised his sword to strike Helen.

593-594. haec (dicta). Nāte: voc.

(tuās) irās. quis: the regular form of the interrog. adj. is quī; App. 111, a.

595. nostrī: for me (and mine); obj. gen.; App. 284, 247, a. Venus thus identifies herself with the family of Aeneas. tibi: ethical dat. or dat. of reference; App. 300, 301.

596-597. Nōn = nōnne. ubi: in what condition. ubi . . . liqueris, conjūnxne superet: indir. questions; App. 349.

598. Quōs omnīs circum = circum quōs omnīs; App. 414.

599-600. nī resistat, (eōs) tulerint, (eōs) hauserit: condit. and conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382, c.

*Nōn tibi Tyndaridis faciēs invīsa Lacaenae
culpātusve Paris, dīvum inclēmētia, dīvum,
hās ēvertit opēs sternitque ā culmine Trojam.
Aspice (namque omnem, quae nunc obducta tuentī
mortālīs hebetat visūs tibi et ūmida circum
cāligat, nūbem ēripiam; tū nē qua parentis
jussa timē neu praeceptīs pārēre recūsā):
hīc, ubi disiectās mōlēs āvulsaque saxīs
saxa vidēs, mixtōque undantem pulvere fūmum,
Neptūnus mūrōs magnōque ēmōta tridentī
fundamenta quatit tōtamque ā sēdibus urbem*

605

610

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look
(at)*

āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear from
cāligō, āre, āvi be dark, darken†
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
culpō (1) blame, censure, reprove†
disjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus throw apart,
scatter

ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus remove, up-
heave

ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, destroy
faciēs, ēi *f.* face, appearance, form*
fūmus, ī *m.* smoke, vapor, fog, fume†
fundāmentum, ī *n.* foundation, base
hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken†
inclēmētia, ae *f.* cruelty, harshness†
invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
Lacaenus, a, um Laconian, of Laconia
(Sparta), a district of southern Greece,
home of Helen†

misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, structure, bur-
den*

mortālīs, e mortal, human, earthly*

mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, rampart*

Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the
sea*

nēve, neu neither, nor, or not
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
obducō, ere, dūxi, ductus draw over†
ops, opis *f.* help, resources, power, wealth*
pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)

Paris, idis *m.* Trojan prince, eloped with
Helen and thus caused the Trojan war

praeceptum, ī *n.* advice, instruction

pulvis, eris *m.* dust

quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter†

recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object

sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, strew,
spread*

timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*

tridēns, entis *m.* trident, symbol of
Neptune

tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect*

Tyndaris, idis *f.* daughter of Tyndarus,
Helen

ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy

undō (1) swell, roll, wave†

visus, ūs *m.* sight, view, aspect, vision

601. tibi: ethical dat. or dat. of refer-
ence. nōn Tyndaridis faciēs (hās opēs
ēvertit).

602. dīv(ōr)um, dīv(ōr)um: rhetorical
repetition; App. 413; emphasizing that
it is the vengeance of the gods, not Helen's
beauty, which is responsible for the de-
struction of Troy. Juno and Minerva
were vengeful toward Troy because of the
adverse Judgment of Paris, while Nep-
tune was angry at being cheated by
Laomedon; see note on l. 610.

604. Aspice: imp.

604-606. namque ēripiam omnem nū-
bem, quae nunc obducta hebetat mortālīs
visūs tibi tuentī, et (ēripiam omnem
nūbem quae) ūmida circum (tē). tibi
is dat. of reference with hebetat visūs;
App. 301. (quae) ūmida circum (tē)

cāligat: which spreads a dark veil of mist
around (you).

606. parentis: use of the noun, in-
stead of the personal pronoun, mei, for
rhetorical effect.

606-607. tū: emphatic; App. 247. nē
timē, neu recūsā: the pres. imp. with
nē is chiefly poetical; App. 256, a. prae-
ceptis: dat. with special verb; App.
297.

609. mixtō pulvere: abl. abs.

610. Neptūnus: Neptune and Apollo
had built the walls of Troy for Laomedon,
father of Priam. When the work was
finished, Laomedon not only refused to
pay the gods the price agreed upon,
but expelled them from his kingdom.
Neptune is now getting his revenge by
destroying the walls he had built.

- ēruit. *Hic Jūnō Scaeās saevissima portās
prīma tenet sociumque furēns ā nāvibus agmen
ferrō accincta vocat.*
- 615 *Jam summās arcēs Tritōnia, respice, Pallas
insēdit limbō effulgēns et Gorgone saevā.
Ipse pater Danaīs animōs vīrisque secundās
sufficit, ipse deōs in Dardana suscitāt arma.
Ēripe, nāte, fugam finemque impōne labōrī.*
- 620 *Nūsquam aberō et tūtum patriō tē limine sistam.¹
Dixerat et spissīs noctis sē condidit umbrīs.
Appārent dirae faciēs inimicaeque Trojae
nūmina magna deum.*
- Tum vērō omne mihī vīsum cōsidere in ignīs*
- 625 *Īlium et ex īmō verti Neptūnia Troja;
ac velutī summīs antiquam in montibus ornum
cum ferrō accisam crēbrisque bipennibus instant
ēruere agricolae certātīm; illa ūsque minātur*

absum, esse, afui be absent, be distant
accidō, ere, ī, sus cut, hew†
accingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird, equip
agricola, ae m. farmer, rustic†
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
bipennis, is f. double ax
certātīm in rivalry, zealously†
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish, hide*
cōsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus settle, sink*
crēber, bra, brum frequent, incessant*
Dardanus, a, um Dardanian, Trojan†
dirus, a, um dire, fearful, dreadful*
effulgeō, ēre, lsi flash, glitter, gleam†
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, tear up
faciēs, ēī f. face, form, appearance*
Gorgō, onis f. Gorgon, a monster with
serpent locks and the power of turning
beholders into stone; the head of one of
them, Medusa, was fixed on the Aegis,
the serpent-fringed shield of Minerva†
Īlium, (i)ī n. Īlium, Troy
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on)
(dat.)*
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
insidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit in (on), occupy
instō, āre, stitī press, urge (on)

limbus, ī m. border, hem, fringe†
minor, āri, ātus threaten, menace; tower
Neptūnius, a, um of Neptune, god of the
sea†
nūsquam nowhere, never
ornus, ī f. ash (tree)†
Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wis-
dom and the arts
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*
respicō, ere, spexī, spectus look back (at)*
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Scaeus, a, um Scaean, name of chief
gate at Troy†
secundus, a, um favorable, prosperous,
second*
sistō, ere, steti, status stand, set(tle), stop
socius, a, um allied, associated, friendly
spissus, a, um thick, dense, crowded†
sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus supply, suffice
suscitō (1) arouse, stir up, excite†
Tritōnius, a, um Tritonian
tūtus, a, um safe, secure, protected*
ūsque continuously, constantly†
velut(i) as, just as*
vērō truly, indeed, but
vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*

612-613. Jūnō prīma (as leader, fore-
most) furēns.

613. socium agmen (Danaōrum).

615. respice: imp.

617. Ipse pater (Juppiter).

618. in: against.

619. Ēripe: imp. (tuam) fugam, (tuō)
labōrī.

620. (in) limine patriō: at your father's
threshold, on your father's doorstep.

622. dirae faciēs (deōrum): made
visible to Aeneas by his mother's magic
power, ll. 604-606.

623. de(ōr)um.

624. vīsum (est) cōsidere in ignis:
seemed to sink into flames.

625. Neptūnia Troja: because, ac-
cording to the myth, Neptune had built
the walls of Troy. See the note on l. 610.

626-628. ac velutī cum agricolae in

*et tremefacta comam concussō vertice nūtat,
vulneribus dōnec paulātim ēvicta suprēmum* 630
congemuit trāxitque jugis āvulsa ruīnam.

*Dēscendō ac dūcente deō flammam inter et hostīs
expedior: dant tēla locum flammaeque recēdunt.*

*Atque ubi jam patriae perventum ad līmina sēdis
antiquāsque domōs, genitor, quem tollere in altōs* 635
*optābam prīmum montis prīmumque petēbam,
abnegat excisā vītā prōdūcere Trojā*

*exsiliumque patī. 'Vōs Ō, quibus integer aevī
sanguis,' ait, 'solidaeque suō stant rōbre vīrēs,
vōs agitāte fugam.* 640

*Mē sī caelicolae voluissent dūcere vītā,
hās mihi servāssent sēdēs. Satis ūna superque*

abnegō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)†
aevum, *i n.* age, life, time, eternity
agitō (1) pursue, drive, buffet, hasten
āvellō, **ere**, (**vuls**), **vulsus** tear from
caelicola, *ae m. (f.)* divinity, deity
coma, *ae f.* hair, locks, tresses, foliage*
concutiō, **ere**, **cussi**, **cussus** shake†
congemō, **ere**, **ui** groan, moan, sigh†
dēscendō, **ere**, **i**, **ēnsus** descend†
dōnec until, while, as long as
ēvincō, **ere**, **vici**, **victus** overcome
excidō, **ere**, **i**, **sus** cut off, destroy
expediō, **ire**, **ivi** (ii), **itus** extricate, bring
out, prepare
exsilium, (i) *i n.* exile, place of exile†
hostis, *is m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger*

integer, **gra**, **grum** whole, sound†
jugum, *i n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
nūtō (1) nod, totter, sway†
optō (1) wish, desire, choose, select*
patior, **i**, **passus** suffer, endure; permit*
paulātim gradually, little by little
perveniō, **ire**, **vēni**, **ventus** arrive
prōdūcō, **ere**, **dūxi**, **ductus** prolong†
recēdō, **ere**, **cessi**, **cessus** withdraw
rōbur, **oris n.** oak, strength*
ruīna, *ae f.* ruin, downfall, collapse
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
solidus, **a**, **um** solid, firm, staunch†
tremefactus, **a**, **um** trembling, quivering
vertex, **icis m.** summit, top, head*
vulnus, **eris n.** wound, deadly blow*

**summīs montibus certātim antiquam
ornum ēruere** instant: *a simile*; App.
441. **illa (ornus) minātur: ūt threatens**
(to fall).

629. comam: acc. of respect with
tremefacta; App. 311. **vertice**: abl. of
means; *the tree nods (with) its head*.

630. suprēmum: substantively; *has*
groaned its last.

631. trāxit ruīnam: falls with a crash,
dragging down other objects with it. (*ā*)
jugis (montis) āvulsa.

632. Dēscendō (ex arce). dūcente deō
(*Venere*): abl. abs.; App. 343. **deō**:
feminine here, referring to Venus. **inter**
flāmmā et hostis.

633. expedior: middle = **mē expediō**;
App. 309. **dant (mihi) locum**: *give way*
before me.

634-704. Anchises at first refuses to
survive the destruction of the city, but

is finally induced by a double portent of
the gods to flee with Aeneas.

634. perventum (est mihi) = pervēni:
with the emphasis upon the action rather
than the actor.

635. tollere: Anchises had been lamed
by lightning and could not walk; see note
on ll. 648-649.

635-636. altōs montis.

636. prīmum, prīmum: rhetorical repe-
tition; App. 413.

637. excisā Trojā: abl. abs.

638. Vōs: emphatically contrasted
with **mē** in l. 641; App. 247. **quibus**: dat.
of possession; App. 299. **aevī**: gen. with
integer; App. 287.

639. sanguis (est). rōbre: abl. of
means.

640. vōs: emphatic; App. 247, 413.

641-642. sī voluissent, servā(vi)ssent:
conduit. contrary to fact; App. 382. **satis**

- vīdimus excidia et captae superāvimus urbī.*
Sic Ō sic positum adfātī discēdite corpus.
 645 *Ipsē manū mortem inveniam; miserēbitur hostis*
exuviāsque petet. Facilis jactūra sepulcrī.
Jam pridem invisus dīvīs et inūtilis annōs
dēmoror, ex quō mē dīvum pater atque hominum rēx
fulminis adflāvit ventīs et contigit ignī.
 650 *Tālia perstābat memorāns fixusque manēbat.*
Nōs contrā effūsī lacrimīs conjūnxque Creūsa
Ascaniusque omnisque domus, nē vertere sēcum

adflo (1) breathe upon, blow upon (*det.*)
 adfor, fāri, fātus address, accost*
 annus, i m. year, season*
 Ascanius, (i) m. son of Aeneas*
 contingō, ere, tigi, tāctus touch, reach*
 contrā on the other side*
 Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind
 at the sack of Troy
 dēmoror, āri, ātus delay, hinder, pro-
 long†
 discēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart, with-
 draw
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
 excidium, (i) n. destruction, downfall
 exuviae, ārum f. spoils, plunder, booty
 facilis, e easy, endurable, favorable

figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, imprint*
 fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning*
 homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human*
 hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 inūtilis, e useless, futile, valueless
 inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus find, come upon†
 invisus, a, um hateful, hated, odious
 jactūra, ae f. throwing away, loss†
 memorō (1) recount, (re)call, say*
 misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate
 (*gen.*)*
 perstō, āre, stitī, status persist, continue†
 pridem long since, long ago, for some time
 sepulcrum, i n. tomb, burial
 superō (1) surmount, survive (*dat.*)*
 vertō, ere, i, rsus (over)turn, change*

ūna superque: enough and more (than enough) have I seen one destruction and have survived one capture of the city. Anchises refers to a previous capture of Troy by Hercules, who had been promised the hand of the Princess Hesione in marriage. When her father, King Laomedon, broke the promise, Hercules captured and sacked the city.

643. urbi: dat. with compound (superāvimus = superfuimus); App. 298.

644. adfātī (meūm) corpus: refers to the custom of calling "valē" thrice to the dead before the body was buried or burned. positum: laid out, pōnere being the technical expression for laying out a corpse. Anchises thus bids them to treat him as already dead. Probably he stretches himself out on a couch as though dead to add vividness to his appeal.

645. manū mortem inveniam: alliteration; App 411. manū: I shall die fighting (manū), i.e., by provoking the enemy to kill me; or manū may hint at suicide. Cf. l. 434, ut caderem meruisse manū. miserēbitur hostis: or an enemy through pity (said ironically) will be willing to kill me.

646. Facilis (est) jactūra sepulcrī: said with the greatest bitterness and the resignation of despair, since the loss of ceremonial burial was counted one of the most grievous of calamities; see notes on I, 95, 353.

647-648. Jam pridem dēmoror annōs: too long have I delayed the years (which wish to bear me to death); App. 351, 1, b. ex (eō tempore) quō: since the time when. dīv(ōr)um pater atque hominum rēx = Juppiter. Anchises had foolishly boasted of the love of Venus and had been lamed by a stroke of lightning for his impiety.

649. adflāvit (mihi). ventis, igni: ablatives of means; some ancient philosophers thought that lightning was driven by swift gusts of wind.

650. Tālia (dicta).

651. Nōs: emphatic contrast; App. 247. effūsī (sumus) lacrimis: we were dissolved in tears. lacrimis is abl. of manner or means.

651-653. -que ... -que: both ... and ... and.

652-653. nē ... vellet: subst. clause developed from the vol., dependent on the idea of entreaty implied in effūsī

cūncta pater fātōque urgenti incumbere vellet.
Abnegat inceptōque et sēdibus haeret in isdem.
Rūrsus in arma feror mortemque miserrimus optō. 655
Nam quod cōnsilium aut quae jam fortūna dabātur?
'Mēne efferre pedem, genitor, tē posse relicto
spērāstī tantumque nefās patriō excidit ōre?
Sī nihil ex tantā superis placet urbe relinqui,
et sedet hoc animō peritūraeque addere Trojae 660
tēque tuōsque juvat: patet istī jānuā lētō,
jamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,
nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obtruncat ad ārās.
Hoc erat, alma parēns, quod mē per tēla, per ignīs
ēripis, ut mediis hostem in penetrālibus utque 665
Ascanium patremque meum juxtāque Creūsam

abnegō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
addō, ere, didi, ditus add*
almus, a, um kind(ly), nurturing
Ascanius, (i) ī m. Iulus, son of Aeneas*
cōnsilium, (i) ī n. plan, advice; council
Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind
 at the sack of Troy
efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus bear forth,
 lift*
excidō, ere, ī fall (from), perish
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling
 (to)*
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
inceptum, ī n. beginning, plan, attempt
incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus lean on
 (dat.)
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
jānuā, ae f. door, doorway, entrance

juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*
juxtā next, near(by), at the same time*
lētum, ī n. death, destruction, ruin*
nefās n. indecl. crime, impiety, sin*
nihil, nil nothing, not at all
obtruncō (1) slay, slaughter, butcher,
 kill†
optō (1) wish, desire, choose, select*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
penetrālia, ium n. sanctuary, chamber
pereō, ire, īi (ivi), itus perish, die
placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (dat.)
Pyrrhus, ī m. Neoptolemus, son of
 Achilles
rūrsus, um again, anew, backward*
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit, be fixed*
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
urgeō, ēre, ursi press, urge, incite

(sumus). **sēcum = cum sē;** App. 321, a.
vertere sēcum cūncta: because the rest
 of the family would remain with him, un-
 less Anchises were willing to go. **fātō:**
 dat. with compound; App. 298. **incum-**
bere: to lean on (add his weight to) our
 overwhelming fate.

654. (in eōdem) **inceptō et sēdibus**
haeret in isdem: he remains fixed in his
 purpose and his place. One word thus
 governing two or more others in a
 different sense is an example of what is
 called *zeugma*. Compare Dickens, who
 says of a lady that she departed "in a
 flood of tears and a sedan chair," and
 see App. 447.

657-658. **spērā(vi)stine, genitor, mē**
posse efferre pedem. tē relicto: abl. abs.

659. **superis:** dat. with special verb;
 App. 297. **nihil:** subj. of *relinqui*.

660. **hoc = hocc:** subject of *sedet*, and
 explained by the following clause; App.
 107, 3, c. (**tuō**) **animō:** abl. of place
 where.

661. **tēque tuōsque:** objects of *addere*.
et sī (tē) juvat.

662. **jam:** in a moment, immediately.

663. **patris, patrem:** with varying
 quantity of the first syllable, since it is
 composed of a short vowel followed by a
 mute and a liquid, making the syllable
 common, i.e., either long or short, ac-
 cording to whether it is read **pa-tris** or
pat-ris, pa-trem or **pat-rem**; App. 11, 17,
 18. (**qui obtruncat**) **nātum, (qui) patrem**
obtruncat: the pres. ind., "Pyrrhus is
 accustomed to slaughter"; App. 351, 1.

664 665. **Hoc:** pronounce *hocc*, mak-
 ing a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. **Hoc**
erat quod mē ēripis: was it for this that

- alterum in alterius mactātōs sanguine cernam?
Arma, virī, ferte arma; vocat lūx ultima victōs.
 Reddite mē Danaīs; sinite instaurāta revīsam
 670 proelia. Numquam omnēs hodiē moriēmur inultī.
Hinc ferrō accingor rūrsus clipeōque sinistram
insertābam aptāns mēque extrā tēcta ferēbam.
Ecce autem complexa pedēs in limine conjūnx
haerebat, parvumque patrī tendēbat Iūlum:
 675 *‘Sī peritūrus abīs, et nōs rape in omnia tēcum;*
sīn aliquam expertus sūmptīs spem pōnis in armīs,
hanc primum tūtāre domum. Cui parvus Iūlus,
cui pater et conjūnx quondam tua dicta relinquitur?’
Tālia vōciferāns gemitū tēctum omne replēbat,
 680 *cum subitum dictūque oritur mirābile mōnstrum.*
Namque manūs inter maestōrumque ōra parentum
ecce levis summō dē vertice vīsus Iūli

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart*
 accingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird, equip
 aliquis, qua, quid some, any*
 alter, era, erum the other (of two),
 one (of two)*
 aptō (1) fit (on, out), equip, furnish
 autem however, but, moreover*
 clipeus, ī m. shield, buckler*
 complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold
 ecce see! look! behold!*
 experior, irī, pertus try, test
 extrā outside, beyond (acc.)†
 gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament*
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus hang, cling (to)*
 hodiē today, this day, now†
 insertō (1) insert, thrust into†
 instaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
 inultus, a, um unavenged†
 Iūlus, ī m. Aescanius, son of Aeneas*
 levis, e light, slight, flickering
 mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
 mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous

mōnstrum, ī n. omen, prodigy, monster*
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
 numquam never, at no time, not†
 orior, irī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
 parvus, a, um small, little*
 pereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus perish, die
 proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fray, combat
 rapiō, ere, ūi, ptus snatch, drag*
 reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, give
 back*
 replēō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill†
 revīdō, ere see again, revisit
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
 sīn but if
 sinistra, ae f. left hand
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow*
 spēs, spei f. hope, expectation*
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
 sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take (up)
 tūtōr, āri, ātus protect, guard†
 ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
 vertex, icis m. summit, head, peak*
 vōciferor, āri, ātus scream, shout†

you save(d) me? alma parēns = Venus.
ut, ut: rhetorical repetition, indicating
excitement; App. 413.

667. alterum in alterius mactātōs:
slaughtered, one in the blood of the other.
ut . . . cernam: clause of purpose in appo-
sition with hoc; App. 359.

668. lūx = diēs or lūx (vitae).

669. instaurāta = instaurem et. (ut) re-
 visam: a subst. vol. clause used as obj.
 of sinite; App. 360.

671. ferrō accingor: middle; *I gird*
(myself) with my sword; App. 309.

674. patrī = mihi: but thus used here
 to emphasize the paternal relation.

675. et: also. tēcum = cum tē: App.
 321, a.

677. tūtāre: imp. Iūlus (relinquitur).

678. (tuus) pater (relinquitur). dicta
 (= vocāta): in agreement with ego
 understood subj. of relinquitur.

679. Tālia (dicta).

680. dictū: supine; abl. of respect
 with mirābile; App. 271, 325.

681. inter manūs et ōra.

682-684. levis apex (flammae) vīsus

*fundere lūmen apex, tāctūque innoxia mollis
lambere flamma, comās et circum tempora pasci.*

*Nōs pavidī trepidāre metū crīnemque flagrantem
excutere et sānctōs restinguere fontibus ignīs.* 685

At pater Anchīsēs oculōs ad sīdera laetus

extulit et caelō palmās cum vōce tetendit:

*'Juppiter omnipotēns, precibus sī flecteris ūllīs,
aspice nōs, hoc tantum, et sī pietāte merēmur,
dā deinde augurium, pater, atque haec ōmina firmā.'* 690

Vix ea fātus erat senior, subitōque fragōre

intonuit laevum, et dē caelō lāpsa per umbrās

stēlla facem dūcēns multā cum lūce cucurrit.

*Illam summa super lābentem culmina tēctī
cernimus Idaeā clāram sē condere silvā* 695

apex, apicis *m.* point, spike, tongue†
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus behold, look
(at)*

augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, augury
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
condō, ere, didī, ditus establish; hide*
crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*
culmen, inis *n.* summit, top, peak, roof*
currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, speed
deinde then, thereupon, next*
effērō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus lift, carry off*
excutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake off,
shake out*

fax, facis *f.* torch, blaze, firebrand*
fīrmō (1) confirm, strengthen, ratify†
flagrō (1) blaze, burn, glow
flectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, turn
fōns, fontis *m.* fountain, water
fragor, ōris *m.* crash, thunder, roar
Idaeus, a, um of Ida, a high mountain
near Troy†
innoxius, a, um harmless, innocent†

intonō, āre, uī thunder, roar
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
lambō, ere lick, lap
mereor, ēri, itus deserve, merit, earn
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
mollis, e soft, gentle, delicate, mild
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, prodigy, portent
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand*
pascor, ī, pāstus feed (on), graze
pavidus, a, um frightened, timid
pietās, ātis *f.* piety, devotion, loyalty,
sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty†*
restinguō, ere, inxi, inctus extinguish†
sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered*
senior, ōris *m.* old (aged) man, sire
stēlla, ae *f.* star, meteor†
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
tāctus, ūs *m.* touch†
tantum only (so much)
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
trepidō (1) tremble, hurry excitedly†

(est) **fundere lūmen, flammaque, innoxia
tāctū, (visa est) lambere mollis comās.**
fundere lūmen apex: supposed by those
versed in omens to presage future royal
power, the subject of such a divine demon-
stration becoming the light of his people.
According to the tradition, Servius Tullius,
one of the legendary kings of early Rome,
had a similar experience as a child. **tāctū:**
abl. of respect, "doing no harm by touch-
ing"; App. 325.

685-686. **Nōs:** emphatic; App. 247.
trepidāre, excutere, restinguere: histor-
ical infinitives, with a conative mean-
ing for the last two, *we tried to*; App.
257; 351, 1, c.

686. **sānctōs:** because of their divine
origin. **fontibus = aquis:** *water*; me-
tonymy; App. 433, 243.

688. **caelō = ad caelum:** dat. of direc-
tion; App. 306.

690. **hoc tantum (quaerō):** *only so
much (do I ask).*

690-691. **a(d)spice, dā, firmā:** impera-
tives. The Romans often asked for a
second omen to confirm the first.

692. **senior:** as in ll. 509, 544.

693. **intonuit laevum:** *it thundered on
the left*, which was considered a good omen.
laevum: best taken as an adverbial acc.;
App. 93, 94, 310.

694. **stēlla:** *a meteor.* **facem dūcēns:**

- signantemque viās; *īum longō* limite sulcus
dat lūcem et lātē circum loca sulphure fūmant.
Hīc vērō victus genitor sē tollit ad aurās
 700 *adfāturque deōs et sānctum sīdus adōrat.*
‘Jam jam nūlla mora est; sequor et quā dūcītis adsum,
đi patrū; servāte domum, servāte nepōtem.
Vestrum hoc augurium, vestrōque in nūmine Troja est.
Cēdō equidem nec, nāte, tībī comes īre recūsō.’
 705 *Dixerat ille, et jam per moenia clārīor ignis*
audītur, propiusque aestūs incendia volvunt.
‘Ergō age, cāre pater, cervīci impōnere nostrae;
ipse subībō umerīs nec mē labor iste gravābit;
quō rēs cumque cadent, ūnum et commūne perīclum,
 710 *ūna salūs ambōbus erit. Mihī parvus Iūlus*
sit comes, et longē servet vestigia conjūnx.

adfor, fari, fātus address, accost*
 adōrō (1) entreat, worship, honor
 aestus, ūs *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat
 ambō, ae, ō both
 augurium, (i) *n.* omen, augury
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, cease; go†*
 cervix, icis *f.* neck
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
 commūnis, e common, mutual, general
 cumque *see* quō . . . cumque†
 equidem indeed, truly*
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 fūmō (1) smoke, reek, fume†
 gravō (1) burden, load, oppress†
 impōnō, ere, posui, positus place (on) (*dat.*)*
 incendium, (i) *n.* flame, conflagration
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
 Iūlus, i *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*

lātē widely, far and wide
 limes, itis *m.* path, boundary, trail†
 longē far (away), (from) afar*
 mora, ae *f.* delay, hesitation, hindrance*
 nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
 parvus, a, um small, little*
 peric(u)lum, i *n.* danger, peril, risk
 prope near; *compar.* propius nearer*
 quā where(by), in any (some) way
 quō . . . cumque (quōcumque) whereso-
 ever, whithersoever†
 recūsō (1) refuse, decline, object
 salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, deliverance, health
 sānctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered*
 signō (1) mark (out), indicate
 sulcus, i *m.* furrow, trench, track
 sulphur, uris *n.* sulphur, brimstone†
 vērō truly, indeed, but
 vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
 vestigium, (i) *n.* step, track, trace†*

making a trail of light by "drawing a torch" across the sky.

697. (nostrās) viās: indicating that they should flee to the forests of Mt. Ida for protection. *longō limite: long drawn;* abl. of quality; App. 330.

698. *circum:* adv.

699. *sē tollit ad aurās: arises* (from his couch).

702.* *domum: family, household;* metonymy; App. 433. (*meum*) *nepōtem =* Ascanium.

703. *Vestrum* (est), *vestrō:* rhetorical repetition; App. 413. *Troja:* Anchises considered that all that remained of Troy was this one family.

705-745. Aeneas places his aged father, Anchises, on his shoulders, and

thus bearing him and the images of the gods, he flees, accompanied by his young son, Ascanius, and his wife, Creūsa, but loses Creūsa on the way.

706. *aestūs:* acc. plural.

707. *impōnere:* imp. middle, *place yourself;* App. 309. *cervīci: on my shoulders;* dat. with compound; App. 298.

708. (tē) *subībō. umeris:* abl. of means.

709. *quō . . . cumque:* separated by tmesis; App. 445. *peric(u)lum (erit).*

710. (nōbīs) *ambōbus. Mihī:* dat. of possession or reference; App. 299, 301.

711. *sit, servet:* volitive subjunctives; App. 254. (*mea*) *vestigia: i.e., let Creūsa follow.*



Art Extension Society, New York

THE FALL OF TROY

Baroccio

Aeneas is carrying his father, Anchises. Little Iulus is at the left and Creusa, his wife, is following him.



Hector Le Roux.

Metropolitan Museum of Art

ROMAN LADIES AT THE TOMBS OF THEIR ANCESTORS

Hector Le Roux

Vôs, famulî, quae dicam animîs advertite vestrîs.

Est urbe ēgressîs tumulus templumque vetustum

dēsertae Cereris, juxtāque antiq̄ua cupressus

relligiōne patrum multôs servāta per annôs.

715

Hanc ex diversō sēdem veniēmus in ūnam.

Tū, genitor, cape sacra manū patriōsque penātîs;

mē bellō ē tantō digressum et caede recentî

attrectāre nefās, dōnec mē flūmine vivō

abluerō.'

720

Haec fātus lātôs umerôs subjectaque colla

veste super fulvique insternor pelle leōnis,

succēdōque onerî; dextrae sē parvus Iūlus

implicuit sequiturque patrem nōn passibus aequîs;

pōne subit conjūnx. Ferimur per opāca locōrum,

725

abluō, ere, ī, ūtus wash, purify†

advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward, regard†

aequus, a, um equal, even, just

annus, ī m. year, season*

attrectō (1) handle, touch†

caedēs, is f. slaughter, blood(shed), murder

Cerēs, eris f. (goddess of) grain

collum, ī n. neck*

cupressus, ī f. cypress†

dēserō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake*

digredior, ī, gressus (de)part, go away†

diversus, a, um different, various*

dōnec until, as long as, while

ēgredior, ī, gressus go forth, depart

famulus, ī m. servant, attendant

flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood*

fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond

implicō, āre, āvi (ui), ātus (itus) enfold, wind, twine, cling (*dat.*)

insternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay on, cover, spread, strew†

Iūlus, ī m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas*

juxtā next, near (by), close, nigh*

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*

leō, ōnis m. lion†

nefās n. indecl. guilt, impiety, wrong*

onus, eris n. burden, load, weight

opācus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy†

parvus, a, um small, little*

passus, ūs m. step, pace, gait, stride†

pellis, is f. hide, skin, pelt†

penātēs, ium m. household gods*

pōne behind, from behind

recēns, entis recent, fresh, new, late

re(l)ligiō, ōnis f. religion, sanctity

subjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus place under

succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go under, approach (*dat.*)

templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*

tumulus, ī m. mound, hill†*

vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*

vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

vetustus, a, um old, ancient, former†

vivus, a, um living, alive; running

712. (ea) quae dicam: *what I shall say; dicam* is fut. indic.

713-714. (ex) urbe. (illis) ēgressîs: *dat. of reference; App. 301. templum dēsertae Cereris:* hypallage for *dēsertum templum Cereris; App. 426. cupressus (est).*

715. re(l)ligiōne: *abl. of cause; App. 332; an example of tree worship, one of the more primitive forms of religion.*

716. in hanc ūnam sēdem. ex diversō: *from different (directions); they were not to go together, because so large a group would be sure to attract the attention of the Greeks.*

717. Tū: *emphatically contrasted with mē; App. 247.*

718-719. nefās (est) mē, digressum ē tantō bellō et caede recentî, attrectāre (sacra patriōsque penātîs). flūmine vivō: *running water was supposed to be especially pure and was much used in religious ceremonies.*

721. umerôs, colla: *objects of insternor, used as a middle; I cover my shoulders and neck; App. 309.*

722. veste, pelle: *ablatives of means. super: adv.*

723. onerî: *dat. with compound; App. 298.*

dextrae: *dat. with compound.*

725. opāca locōrum = opāca loca.

- et mē, quem dūdum nōn ūlla injecta movēbant
tēla neque adversō glomerātī ex agmine Graji,
nunc omnēs terrent aerae, sonus excitat omnis
suspēsum et pariter comitūque onerique timentem.*
730 *Jamque propinquābam portis omnemque vidēbar
ēvāsisse viām, subitō cum crēber ad auris
visus adesse pedum sonitus, genitorque per umbram
prōspiciēns 'nāte' exclāmat 'fuge, nāte; propinquant.
Ardentis clipeōs atque aera micantia cernō.'*
735 *Hīc mihi nescio quod trepidō male nūmen amicum
cōnfūsam ēripuit mentem. Namque āvia cursū
dum sequor et nōtā excēdō regiōne viārum,
heu miserō conjūnx fātōne ērepta Creūsa
substitit, errāvitne viā seu lassa resēdit,
740 incertum; nec post oculis est reddita nostris.
Nec prius āmissam respexī animumve reflexī*

adversus, a, um opposing, facing*
aes, aeris n. bronze*
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
āmittō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose*
auris, is f. ear*
āvius, a, um pathless, remote†
clipeus, i m. shield, buckler*
cōfundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus confuse†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, numerous*
Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind
at the sack of Troy
dūdum for a long time, long since†
ēvādō, ere, si, sus traverse, escape
excēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart
excitō (1) arouse, startle, stir (up)
exclāmō (1) cry out, shout, exclaim
glomerō (1) roll together, assemble
Grajus, a, um Greek*
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful
injiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast on
lassus, a, um tired, weary, worn (out)†
male badly, poorly, not
micō, āre, uī flash, glitter, vibrate, dart
nesciō, īre, īvi (īi) not know, know not

nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
onus, eris n. burden, load, weight
pariter equally, side by side*
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*
post behind, after (acc.); afterward*
prius sooner, before, formerly
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (dat.)†
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look forth
reddō, ere, didi, ditus return, give back,
render*
reflectō, ere, flexi, flexus turn back†
regiō, ōnis f. region, district
residō, ere, sēdi sit down
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look back
(at, for)*
sive, seu or (if), whether
sonitus, ūs m. sound, crash, roar, noise*
sonus, i m. sound, noise, roar,
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
subsistō, ere, stiti halt, stop, withstand
suspēsus, a, um doubtful, anxious
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
trepidus, a, um agitated, alarmed

726-729. omnēs aerae mē suspēsum
et timentem terrent. Graji: pronounce
Grajji, making the first syllable long by
position; App. 6, b. comitī: Ascaniō.
oneri: Anchisae.

730. portis: dat. with special verb;
App. 297.

732. visus (est): seemed.

733. (Danai) propinquant.

734. aera = tēla.

735. mihi trepidō: dat. of separation;
App. 305. nescio: with the final o irreg-
ularly short; nescio quod nūmen: I don't

know what divinity = some divinity or
other. male amicum = inimicum: un-
friendly, hostile; litotes; App. 431.

736. āvia (loca): out-of-the-way section.

738-740. heu, conjūnxne Creūsa,
ērepta miserō fātō, substitit, errāvitne
(ex) viā, seu lassa resēdit, (est) incer-
tum: snatched away, alas! by an unhappy
fate, did my wife Creūsa halt? etc. (mihi)
miserō: dat. of separation; App. 305. -ne
... -ne, seu: whether ... or, or; the three
clauses depend loosely on incertum (est).

741. Nec (eam = Creūsam) āmissam

quam tumulum antiquae Cereris sedemque sacratam
venimus: hic demum collectis omnibus una
defuit, et comites natumque virumque fefellit.

Quem non incusavi amens hominumque deorumque,
aut quid in eversa vidi crudelius urbe? 745

Ascanium Anchisenque patrem Teucrosque penatis
commendo sociis et curvam valle recondo;
ipse urbem repeto et cingor fulgentibus armis.

Stat casus renovare omnis omnemque reverti
per Trojam et rursus caput objectare periculis. 750

Principio muros obscuraque limina portae,
qua gressum extuleram, repeto et vestigia retrō
observata sequor per noctem et lumine lustrō:
horror ubique animo, simul ipsa silentia terrent. 755

amēns, entis mad, insane, distracted
Ascanius, (i) m. son of Aeneas*
Cerēs, eris f. (goddess of) grain
cingō, ere, cingi, cinctus gird, encircle*
colligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus collect, gather
commendō (1) intrust, commit
crudēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody*
curvus, a, um curved, winding, bent*
dēmum at length, finally
dēsum, esse, fui be absent, lack†
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus carry forth,
raise, lift*
ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus overturn, destroy
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, baffle,
elude, escape the notice of*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi gleam, flash, glitter†
gressus, ūs m. step, course, gait
homō, inis m. (f.) man, mortal, human*
horror, ōris m. horror, terror, shudder(ing)
incūsō (1) accuse, blame, chide
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart*

objectō (1) throw to, expose†
obscurus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy*
observō (1) observe, watch, note†
penātēs, ium m. household gods*
peric(u)lum, ī n. danger, peril, risk
porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*
principiō first(ly), at first†
quā where(by), in any (some) way
quam than, how, as*
recondō, ere, didi, ditus establish; hide
renovō (1) renew, revive
repetō, ere, ivi (ii), itus seek again
retrō back(ward), again
revertor, ī, rsus return, turn back†
rursus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
silentium, (i) n. silence, stillness, quiet
terreō, ēre, ui, itus frighten, terrify
tumulus, ī m. hill, mound*
ubique everywhere, anywhere
vallis, is f. valley, vale, dale
vestigium, (i) n. step, track, trace*

respexi animumve reflexi: nor did I look
back for her lost as she was or cast a thought
behind. In the excitement and confusion,
Aeneas forgets to look back for his wife
or even to think of her. Thus he loses
her. It may be noted here that it is
essential to the plot that Aeneas should
be without a wife both at Carthage and
when he finally arrives in Latium.

742. (ad) tumulum, (ad) sedem.

743. collectis omnibus: abl. abs.

745. Quem hominumque deorumque:
partitive genitives; App. 286. deorum-
que: the final e is elided before the initial
diphthong of the next verse, making l.
745 hypermetric; App. 402.

746-794. Aeneas returns to search for

Creüsa, but is met by her ghost, who in-
forms him of her death and urges him to
hasten his flight from Troy.

748. (in) curvam valle.

749. urbem repetō et cingor armis: for
the hysteron proteron, see the note on
I, 69; App. 429. cingor: middle = mē
cingō; App. 309.

750. Stat (mihi sententia): I am
determined.

751. (meum) caput = vitam.

752. Principiō: correlative with inde,
in l. 756.

754. lumine = oculō: used here for the
sake of the alliteration or for metrical
reasons, or both.

755. horror (est meō) animō.

- Inde domum, si forte pedem, si forte tulisset,
 mē referō: inruerant Danaī et tēctum omne tenēbant.
 Illicet ignis edāx summa ad fastigia ventō
 volvitur; exsuperant flammae, furit aestus ad aurās.
 760 Prōcēdō et Priamī sēdēs arcemque revisō:
 et jam porticibus vacuīs Jūnōnis asylō
 custōdēs lēctī Phoenix et dirus Ulixēs
 praedam adservābant. Hūc undique Trōia gaza
 incēnsis ērepta adytis, mēnsaeque deōrum
 765 crātēresque aurō solidī, captīvaque vestis
 congeritur. Puerī et pavidāe longō ordine matrēs
 stant circum.
 Ausus quī etiam vōcēs jactāre per umbram
 implēvī clāmōre viās, maestusque Creūsam
 770 nēquiquam ingemināns iterumque vocāvī.
 Quaerentī et tēctis urbis sine fine ruentī
 infelix simulācrum atque ipsius umbra Creūsae

adservō (1) guard, watch†
 adytum, ī *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
 aestus, ūs *m.* flood, tide, surge; heat
 asylum, ī *n.* refuge, sanctuary†
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 captivus, a, um captive, captured†
 congerō, ere, gessi, gestus heap up†
 crātēr, ēris *m.* mixing bowl
 Creūsa, ae *f.* wife of Aeneas, left behind
 at the sack of Troy
 custōs, ōdis *m.* (f.) guard(ian), keeper*
 dirus, a, um dire, terrible, cursed*
 edāx, ācis devouring, eating, consuming†
 etiam even, also, besides, yet, still*
 exsuperō (1) surmount, mount (high)†
 fastigium, (i) ī *n.* top, roof, summit
 gaza, ae *f.* wealth, treasure
 illicet immediately, at once
 impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy*
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus burn, kindle*
 inde thence, thereupon*
 ingeminō (1) redouble, repeat, increase
 inruō, ere, uī rush in

iterum again, anew, a second time†
 jactō (1) hurl, toss, fling; utter*
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, collect*
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
 mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
 ordō, inis *m.* order, array, row*
 pavidus, a, um terrified, fearful
 Phoenix, icis *m.* Greek leader†
 porticus, ūs *f.* colonnade, portico
 praeda, ae *f.* booty, spoils, prey
 prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance†
 quīn nay even, (but) that*
 revisō, ere see again, revisit
 simulācrum, ī *n.* image, phantom, likeness
 sine without (*abl.*)*
 solidus, a, um solid, firm, massive
 Trōius, a, um Trojan*
 Ulixēs, is (ei, ī) *m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek
 leader*
 undique everywhere, from all sides*
 vacuus, a, um empty, vacant, free
 vestis, is *f.* garment, cloth(ing), robe*

756. si forte, si forte: rhetorical repetition, representing the repeated thought in the mind of Aeneas; App. 413. si tulisset: implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

759. ad aurās = ad caelum.

761. (in) porticibus: ablative of place where. asylō: in apposition with porticibus; the use of this Greek word, meaning a place not to be plundered, emphasizes the impiety of the Greeks in thus desecrating the holy sanctuary of Juno's temple.

764. adytis: dat. of separation; App. 305. mēnsae: tables on which food and other offerings were placed for the gods.

765. aurō: abl. of material; App. 324.

766. congeritur: agreeing in number with the nearest subject; App. 236. b. Pueri, matrēs (= fēminae): to be carried off into slavery.

770. iterumque iterumque: rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

771. (in) tēctis.

771-773. mihi quaerenti et ruenti si-

vīsa mihi ante oculōs et nōtā major imāgō.

Obstipui, steteruntque comae et vōx faucibus haesit.

Tum sic adfāri et cūrās hīs dēmere dictīs:

775

'Quid tantum insānō iuvat indulgēre dolōri,

Ō dulcis conjūnx? Nōn haec sine nūmine dīvum

ēveniunt; nec tē hīc comitem asportāre Creūsam

fās, aut ille sinit superi rēgnātor Olympi.

Longa tibi exsilia et vastum maris aequor arandum,

780

et terram Hesperiam veniēs, ubi Lȳdius arva

inter opīma virum lēni fluit agmine Thybris:

illic rēs laetae rēgnumque et rēgia conjūnx

parta tibi; lacrimās dilēctae pelle Creūsae.

Nōn ego Myrmidonum sēdēs Dolopumve superbās

785

adfor, fāri, fātus address, accost*

arō (1) plow, furrow, till†

asportō (1) carry away, carry from†

coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses*

Creūsa, ae f. wife of Aeneas, left behind at the sack of Troy

dēmō, ere, mpsi, mptus remove, take away†

diligō, ere, lēxi, lēctus love, cherish

Dolopes, um m. Greeks of Thessaly

dolor, ōris m. grief, anger, pain, passion*

dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*

ēveniō, ire, vēni, ventus come out, happen†

exsilium, (i)ī n. exile, place of exile

fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine will*

faucēs, ium f. jaws, throat; pass

fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow, ebb, stream

haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus stick, cling (to)*

Hesperius, a, um Hesperian, western, Italian

illic there, at that place

imāgō, inis f. image, phantom, likeness*

indulgeō, ēre, lsi, ltus indulge in, yield to (dat.)†

insānus, a, um mad, frantic, insane

juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*

lēnis, e gentle, soft, mild†

Lȳdius, a, um Lydian, of Lydia, a country of Asia Minor, earlier home of the Etruscans who settled in Italy and probably founded Rome†

Myrmidones, um m. Greeks of Thessaly

nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*

obstipescō, ere, stipui be dazed, stand agape*

Olympus, ī m. a Greek mountain, home of the gods, heaven

opīmus, a, um rich, fertile, sumptuous

pariō, ere, peperī, partus acquire, win, produce

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (away), dismiss

rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*

rēgnātor, ōris m. ruler, sovereign, lord

sine without (abl.)*

sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow*

superbus, a, um proud, haughty*

Thybris, (id)is m. Tiber, a river of Italy†

mulācrum et umbra Creūsae visa (est).

infelix: a transferred epithet; App. 446.

ipsius: for the short penult, see the note on illius, I, 16. visa (est): agrees with its nearest subject. (imāgine mihi) nōtā:

abl. with comparative; App. 327. The shades of the dead, as well as the gods, regularly appeared as larger than human beings.

774. steterunt: with short penult.

775. (Creūsa) adfāri et dēmere: historical infinitives; App. 257.

776. Quid = cūr: why? (tē) iuvat. dolōri: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

777. Nōn sine nūmine: litotes; App. 431. div(ōr)um.

778. comitem: (as) a comrade.

779. fās (est). aut = nec. rēgnātor: Jupiter.

780. exsilia tibi (ferenda sunt). arandum (est tuis nāvibus).

781. (ad) terram.

782. vir(ōr)um: gen. with opima; App. 287.

783. rēgia conjūnx: Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus, was married to Aeneas shortly after his arrival in Italy.

784. parta (est): agrees with the nearest subject; App. 236, b. Creūsae: obj. gen., tears of (for) Creūsa; App. 284.

785. ego: emphatic, as always when expressed; App. 247.

aspiciam aut Grajis servitum mātribus ibō,
Dardanis et dīvae Veneris nurus;
sed mē magna deum genetrix hīs dētinet ōris.
Jamque valē et nātī servā communis amōrem.'

- 790 Haec ubi dicta dedit, lacrimantem et multa volentem
dicere dēseruit, tenuisque recessit in aurās.
Ter cōnātus ibi collō dare bracchia circum;
ter frūstrā cōmprēnsa manūs effūgit imāgō,
pār levibus ventīs volucrique simillima somnō.
795 Sic dēmum sociōs cōsūptā nocte revisō.

Atque hīc īgentem comitum adflūxisse novōrum
inveniō admirāns numerum, mātresque virōsque,
collēctam exsiliō pūbem, miserābile vulgus.
Undique convēnēre animīs opibusque parātī

adfluō, ere, flūxī, flūxus flow together†
admirō, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire†
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look
(at)*
bracchium, (i)ī n. (fore)arm†*
colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
collum, ī n. neck*
commūnis, e common, mutual, general
compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus grasp†
cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor†
cōsūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus consume,
waste†
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come together,
assemble
Dardanis, idis f. Trojan woman†
dēmum at length, finally
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus detain, hold
back†
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape, flee from
exsiliū, (i)ī n. exile, place of exile
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
genetrix, icis f. mother
Grajus, a, um Greek*
ibi there, then
imāgō, inis f. image, likeness, phantom*

inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, come
upon
lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight
miserābilis, e miserable, wretched
numerus, ī m. number, multitude*
nurus, ūs f. daughter-in-law
ops, opis f. help, resources, power,
wealth*
pār, paris equal, like, similar (dat.)*
pūbēs, is f. youth, young men*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, re-
tire
revisō, ere revisit, see again
serviō, ire, īvī (īi), itus be a slave, serve
(dat.)†
similis, e like, similar (dat.)*
tenuis, e slight, thin, fine†
ter thrice, three times*
undique everywhere, from all sides*
valeō, ēre, uī be strong, fare well, be
able
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and
beauty*
volucer, cris, cre winged, swift*
vulgus, ī n. (m.) crowd, rabble, herd

786. servitum: supine in um after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

788. de(ōr)um genetrix: Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods. (in) ōris.

790. (mē) lacrimantem.

792. cōnātus (sum). collō dare bracchia circum: to place my arms around her neck; circum is here an adverb.

794. ventis, somnō: dat. with the adj., pār; App. 304.

795-804. Aeneas returns to his comrades and finds a great number of men and women collected ready to follow wherever he may be willing to lead them.

798. exsiliō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

799. convēnēre = convēnērunt. animis, opibus: ablatives of respect; App. 325. parātī (ire mēcum).

*in quāscumque velim pelagō dēducere terrās.
Jamque jugīs summae surgēbat Lūcifer Īdae
ducēbatque diem, Danaīque obsessa tenēbant
līmīna portārum, nec spēs opis ūlla dabātur.
Cessī et sublātō montīs genitōre petīvī.*

800

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart*
dēducō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead forth,
launch†

Īda, ae f. mountain near Troy†

jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge*

Lūcifer, erī m. morning star, light-
bringer†

obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus besiege, beset
ops, opis f. help, resources, wealth
power*

porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
whoever, whatever*

spēs, speī f. hope, expectation*

800. velim: subj. in implied indir.
disc.; App. 390. **dēducere:** the technical
word among the Romans for leading out
a colony.

801. (in) jugīs: abl. of place where.

803. spēs opis: hope of helping Troy
or of receiving help from Troy.

804. montīs: Mt. Ida, near Troy, thus
following the trail blazed out by the
meteor; see l. 697.

BOOK III

POSTQUAM *rēs Asiae Priamūque ēvertere gentem*
 immeritam *vīsum superīs*, ceciditque superbum
 Īlium *et omnis humō fūmat Neptūnia Troja*,
 dīversa exsilia *et dēsertās quaerere terrās*
 5 auguriīs *agimur dīvum, classemque sub ipsā*
 Antandrō *et Phrygiae mōlimur montibus Īdae*,
 incertī *quō fāta ferant, ubi sistere dētur*,
 contrahimusque *virōs. Vix prima incēperat aestās*
et pater Anchīsēs dare fātis vēla jubēbat,
 10 *litora cum patriae lacrimāns portūsque relinquō*
et campōs ubi Troja fuit. Feror exsul in altum

aestās, ātis *f.* summer, summer time
 altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
 Antandros (us), ī *f.* town near Troy†
 Asia, ae *f.* Asia (Minor)
 augurium, (i)ī *n.* omen, prophecy
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 contrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus draw to-
 gether, gather†
 dēsērō, ere, ul, rtus desert, abandon*
 diversus, a, um separated, far apart*
 ēvertō, ere, ī, rsus overturn, destroy
 exsilium, (i)ī *n.* (place of) exile
 exsul, ulis *m. (f.)* exile, refugee†
 fūmō (1) smoke, reek, fume
 humus, ī *f.* ground, soil, earth*
 Īda, ae *f.* mountain near Troy

Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy
 immeritus, a, um undeserving, guilt-
 less†
 incertus, a, um doubtful, uncertain
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, under-
 take*
 lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
 mōlior, iri, itus do, make, build, effect
 Neptūnius, a, um Neptunian, of Neptune,
 god of the sea, who with the help of
 Apollo built the walls of Troy
 patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 postquam after (that), when*
 sistō, ere, steti, status set(tle), stop
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty*

1-12. The Trojan survivors build a fleet near Antandros at the foot of Mt. Ida and set sail in search of new homes.

1. *rēs, gentem*: objects of *ēvertere*. *ēvertere*: subj. of *visum (est)*, *it seemed (best)*; App. 258.

2. *immeritam*: emphatic by position. *superis (deis)*.

3. (ab) *humō*: abl. of separation; App. 340. *Neptūnia Troja*: see II, 610, 625, and note.

4. *dēsertās*: the small band of Trojans were too weak to seize any lands already occupied.

5. *auguriīs dīv(ōr)um*.

7. *incertī*: an inconsistency with the prediction of Creūsa, II, 781; due either to the caprice of the poet, to the un-

finished condition of the poem, or to the fact that Aeneas did not trust the proph-
 ecies of his wife. (*nōs ferant, dētur*: indirect questions, depending on *incertī*; App. 349. *dētur (nōbis)*: *it is granted*; the subject is *sistere*; App. 258.

8. *prima aestās*: *the first (of) summer*; App. 246; the Trojan fugitives had spent the winter near Antandros.

9. *pater Anchīsēs*: in ancient Roman times the father (*pater familiās*) was the recognized head of the house. *dare fātis vēla*: modeled on the expression *dare ventis vēla*, but indicating the spirit of the Trojans as they set out trusting to the gods and "with a heart for any fate."

11. *Troja fuit*: cf. II, 325, *fuiumus Trōes, fuit Īlium*, and the note.

cum sociis nātōque, penātibus et magnis dīs.

Terra procul vastis colitur Māvortia campis
(Thrāces arant) *ācrī quondam rēgnāta Lycūrgō,*
hospitium antiquum Trojae sociique penātēs
dum fortūna fuit. Feror hūc et litore curvō
moenia prīma locō fātis ingressus iniquis
Aeneadāsque meō nōmen dē nōmine fingō.

15

Sacra Diōnaeae mātīrī divisque ferēbam
auspiciibus coeptōrum operum, superōque nitentem
caelicolum rēgī mactābam in litore taurum.
Forte fuit juxtā tumulus, quō cornea summō

20

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*
Aeneadae, ārum m. descendants (followers) of Aeneas
arō (1) plow, till, cultivate
auspex, icis m. (f.) seer, guardian, guide†
caelicola, ae m. (f.) god, divinity
coepti, isse, ptus begin, undertake
colō, ere, ui, cultus cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor*
corneus, a, um of cornel, a kind of tree†
curvus, a, um bent, curved, winding*
Diōnaeus, a, um Dionean, of Dione, mother of Venus†
fingō, ere, finxi, fictus form, make, fashion
hospitium, (i)ī n. hospitality, ally, alliance, friend(ship)

ingredior, i, gressus enter, begin, land†
iniquus, a, um unfavorable, unjust, unfair, adverse
juxtā close, near, next, nigh (*acc.*)*
locō (1) place, establish, locate*
Lycūrgus, i m. king of Thrace†
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
Māvortius, a, um martial, beloved of Mars, god of war
nitēns, entis shining, white, sleek
opus, eris n. work, task, labor, deed*
penātēs, ium m. household gods*
rēgnō (1) rule, reign, govern, sway
socius, a, um allied, friendly
taurus, i m. bull, bullock, ox*
Thrāx, ācis m. Thracian†
tumulus, i m. mound, hill, tomb*

12. cum sociis nātōque, penātibus et magnis dīs: indicating the various factors of most importance for the future. The **penātēs**, household gods, are here distinguished from the major divinities (**magni dī**), such as Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, Minerva, Vesta, etc. Observe the spondaic verse giving a solemn and majestic close; App. 395.

13-18. Founding of Aenos, or Aenea, in Thrace.

13. procul (ā Trojā): *at a (little) distance*, only across the Hellespont, a narrow strait. **campis:** *abl. of quality or of place where;* App. 330, 319. **terra Māvortia:** the chief god of the fierce Thracians was Mars, the brutal god of war.

14. Thrācēs: *nom. pl., a Greek form;* App. 65, *a. (illam terram) Thrāces arant. ācrī Lycūrgō:* *dat. of agent;* App. 302. He had attacked the women attendants of Bacchus with an ox goad. For this he was first blinded and then destroyed by Jupiter.

15. hospitium antiquum Trojae (fuit) et penātēs (fuērunt) socii (cum penātibus Trojae).

16. dum fortūna (Trojae) fuit: some of the same pathos as in II, 325, *fuit illium. (in) litore.*

17. ingressus (terram). fātis iniquis: *abl. abs.;* App. 343.

18. Aeneadās: *apposition with nōmen;* App. 241. Either Aenos, at the mouth of the Hebrus, or Aenea, on the west coast of Thrace, may be referred to here; or Vergil may have confused the two towns. **nōmen (meis viris) fingō.**

19-48. Aeneas prepares to offer sacrifice, but is deterred by the omens of the murdered Polydorus.

19. Diōnaeae mātīrī: Venus, the mother of Aeneas and daughter of Dione. **divisque (aliis).**

20-21. auspiciibus: *apposition with mātīrī divisque;* App. 241. **superō regi caelicol(ā)rūm:** Jupiter.

22. tumulus: a mound formed by the

- virgulta et dēnsīs hastīlibus horrida myrtus.
 Accessī viridemque ab humō convellere silvam
 25 cōnātus, rāmīs tegerem ut frondentibus ārās,
 horrendum et dictū videō mirābile mōnstrum.
 Nam quae prīma solō ruptīs rādīcibus arbōs
 vellitur, huic ātrō liquuntur sanguine guttae
 et terram tābō maculant. Mihi frigidus horror
 30 membra quatit gelidusque coit formidine sanguis.
 Rūrsus et alterius lentum convellere vīmen
 insequor et causās penitus temptāre latentis:
 āter et alterius sequitur dē cortice sanguis.
 Nulla movēns animō nymphās venerābar agrestīs

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach
 agrestis, e rustic, rural†
 alter, era, erum another (of two), second*
 arbōs (or), oris f. tree, wood(s)*
 causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion*
 coēō, ire, īi (ivī), itus come together,
 curdle†
 cōnor, āri, ātus try, attempt, endeavor
 convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter
 cortex, icis m. (f.) bark, rind, shell†
 dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
 formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread
 frigidus, a, um cold, chilly, frosty
 frondēns, entis leafy, fronded†
 gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
 gutta, ae f. drop†
 hostile, īlis n. spear-shaft, shoot
 horridus, a, um dreadful, horrible*
 horridus, a, um bristling, horrible
 horror, ōris m. shudder, terror, dread
 humus, ī f. ground, soil, earth*
 insequor, ī, secūtus follow, proceed*
 latēns, entis hiding, hidden, secret
 lentus, a, um pliant, tough, flexible†
 liquor, ī flow, trickle, drip, run†

maculō (1) spot, stain, pollute†
 membrum, ī n. member, limb, body*
 mirābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
 mōnstrum, ī n. omen, prodigy, monster*
 myrtus, ī f. myrtle, a shrub sacred to
 Venus and the dead†
 nymp̄ha, ae f. nymph, one of the demi-
 goddesses who presided over the sea,
 rivers, fountains, forests, trees, etc.
 penitus within, far, wholly, deeply*
 quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
 rādix, icis f. root†
 rāmus, ī m. branch, bough, shoot†*
 rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst
 (forth)*
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
 solum, ī n. ground, soil*
 tābūm, ī n. corruption; gore, blood†
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect*
 temptō (1) try, test, explore, examine*
 vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus tear (up)
 veneror, āri, ātus reverence, supplicate†
 vīmen, inis n. twig, shoot, with†
 virgultum, ī n. thicket, bush, copse†
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous†*

action of the wind and waves over the unburied body of Polydorus. quō (in) summō (erant): on the summit of which (were); App. 246.

23. virgulta (erant). hastilibus: the cornel and myrtle shoots were often used as spear shafts and are here called hastilia for the additional reason given in the story which follows.

24. (tumulum) accessī. silvam: thickēt. cōnātus (sum). ut tegerem: purpose; App. 359.

26. dictū: supine, used as abl. of respect with mirābile; App. 271.

27-28. ruptis rādīcibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. nam guttae ātrō sanguine

(= ātri sanguinis) liquuntur huic arbori (= ex hāc arbore) quae vellitur prima. (ex) solō. arbōs: attracted into the rel. clause, becoming nom. instead of dat.; App. 242, a. huic (arbori): dat. of separation; App. 305. ātrō sanguine: abl. of quality denoting material; App. 330, 324.

29. Mihi: dat. of reference equivalent to a possessive adjective.

30. gelidus: proleptic; App. 440. formidine: abl. of cause; App. 332.

31. alterius (arboris).

34. movēns: pondering. (meō) animō: abl. of place where or means; App. 319, 331. nymphās: as patron deities of the

Grādivumque patrem, Geticis quī praesidet arvīs, rite secundārent visūs ōmenque levārent.	35
Tertia sed postquam majōre hastilia nīsū adgredior genibusque adversae obluctor harēnae (ēloquar an sileam?) gemitus lacrimābilis imō audītur tumulō et vōx reddita fertur ad aurīs:	40
‘Quid miserum, Aenēā, lacerās? Jam parce sepultō, parce piās scelerāre manūs. Nōn mē tibi Troja externum tulit aut cruor hic dē stipite mānat. Heu fuge crūdēlis terrās, fuge litus avārum: nam Polydōrus ego. Hīc cōnfixum ferrea tēxit tēlōrum seges et jaculis increvit acūtīs.’	45

acūtus, a, um sharp, keen, pointed
adgredior, i, gressus approach, attack
adversus, a, um opposite, facing, op-
posing*
an whether, or*
auris, is f. ear*
avārus, a, um greedy, avaricious
cōnfigō, ere, xi, xus pierce, transfix
crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
cruor, ōris m. blood, gore†
ēloquor, i, locūtus speak (out), declare†
externus, a, um foreign, strange†
ferreus, a, um (of) iron†
gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament*
genū, ūs n. knee
Geticus, a, um Getic, of the Getae, a
people on the Danube†
Grādivus, i m. Mars, god of war†
harēna, ae f. sand, beach*
hastile, ilis n. spear shaft, spear-like shoot
incrēscō, ere, crēvi, crētus grow up (in)†
jaculum, i n. spear, javelin†
lacerō (1) tear, lacerate, mutilate†
lacrimābilis, e tearful, mournful†
levō (1) lighten, alleviate, lift, remove

mānō (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)†
nisus, ūs m. effort, struggle, exertion†
obluctor, āri, ātus struggle against
(dat.)†
ōmen, inis n. omen, sign, portent*
parcō, ere, peperci (parsi), parsus spare,
refrain, forbear (dat.)
Polydōrus, i m. son of Priam, killed by
Polymnestor, king of Thrace†
postquam after (that), when*
praesideō, ēre, sēdi, sessus preside over
(dat.)†
reddō, ere, didi, ditus give (back),
utter, render, return*
rite duly, fittingly, with due ceremony†
scelerō (1) defile, pollute, stain
secundō (1) prosper, make favorable†
seges, etis f. crop, harvest, grain field
sepultus, i m. one buried, corpse
sileō, ēre, uī be silent, be still, hush
stipes, itis m. trunk, stock, shoot†
tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect*
tertius, a, um third*
tumulus, i m. mound, hill, tomb*
visus, ūs m. sight, view, vision, aspect

place. All trees, groves, fountains, and streams were sacred to the nymphs.

35. arvīs: dat. with compound; App. 298.

36. (ut) secundārent, levārent: subst. clauses developed from vol. or opt. and depending upon venerābor, I was beseeching; App. 360, 253.

38. genibus: abl. of manner or means; App. 328, 331. harēnae: dat. with compound; App. 298.

39-40. ēloquar an sileam: deliberative questions; App. 348. (ex) imō tumulō: from the lowest (depths of the) mound; App. 246. (meās) aurīs.

41. (mē) miserum. (mihi) sepultō: dat. with special verb, parce; App. 297.

42-43. (tuās) piās manūs. tibi externum. cruor (externus tuō cruōri). nōn dē stipite (arboris sed dē meō corpore) hic cruor mānat.

44. crūdēlis, avārum: transferred epithets; App. 446.

45-46. ego (sum). (mē) cōnfixum. ferrea tēlōrum seges: Polydorus had been pierced with a number of spears, which had taken root in his slain body and produced the myrtle grove. jaculis acūtis: abl. of quality or material with seges; App. 330, 324.

*Tum vērō ancipitī mentem formīdine pressus
obstipui steteruntque comae et vōx faucibus haesit.*

- 50 *Hunc Polydōrum aurī quondam cum pondere magnō
infēlix Priamus fūrtim mandārat alendum
Thrēiciō rēgī, cum jam diffideret armīs
Dardaniae cingīque urbem obsidiōne vidēret.
Ille, ut opēs frāctae Teucrum et Fortūna recessit,
rēs Agamemnoniās victriciaque arma secūtus*
55 *fās omne abrupit: Polydōrum obtruncat, et aurō
vī potitur. Quid nōn mortālia pectora cōgis,
aurī sacra famēs! Postquam pavor ossa reliquit,
dēlēctōs populī ad procerēs primumque parentem*

abrupō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (off)†
Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon,
leader of the Greeks against Troy†
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, rear†
anceps, cipitis doubtful, double†
cingō, ere, cingī, cinctus surround,
gird(le)*
cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus force (together),
drive*
coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses*
Dardania, ae f. city of Dardanus, Troy
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
diffidō, ere, sus sum distrust, mistrust
(dat.)†
famēs, is f. hunger, famine, greed
fās n. indecl. justice, right, divine will*
faucēs, ium f. throat, jaws; pass
formidō, inis f. fear, terror, fright, dread
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter*
fūrtim stealthily, secretly, furtively
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus stick (to)
(dat.)*
mandō (1) intrust, commit†

mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
obsidiō, ōnis f. siege, blockade†
obstipescō, ere, stipui be amazed, stand
agape*
obtruncō (1) kill, slaughter, slay, butcher
ops, opis f. help, resources, power, wealth*
os, ossis n. bone
pavor, ōris m. terror, shudder(ing), alarm
Polydōrus, ī m. son of Priam, treacher-
ously murdered by Polymnestor, king
of Thrace
pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass, load
populus, ī m. people, nation, race*
postquam after (that), when*
potior, iri, itus possess, gain (abl.)
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (op) press,
repress, check, control*
procer, eris m. leader, chief, noble
recedō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart
Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace,
a country northeast of Greece†
vērō truly, indeed, but
victrix, icis f. victorious, conquering†

47. **ancipiti formīdine:** from the sight
and the voice. **mentem:** acc. of respect
with **pressus** (= **oppressus**); App. 311.

48. **steterunt:** with short penult.

49-56. The story of the murder of
Polydorus.

50. **mandā(ve)rat. alendum:** the ge-
rundive expressing purpose, *to be reared*;
App. 268.

51-52. **Thrēiciō rēgī:** Polymnestor.
armīs: abl. or dat. with **diffideret**; App.
297, 325. (**Priamus**) **diffideret, vidēret:**
cum descriptive; App. 378.

53. **Ille = Thrēicius rēx (l. 51) = Polym-**
nēstor. frāctae (sunt). Teucr(ōr)um.
Fortūna (Teucrōrum).

54. **rēs:** *fortunes*. **secūtus:** (treacher-
ously) *going over to*.

55. **fās omne abrupit:** he was bound
by treaty and by the sacred ties of hospi-
tality to Troy. **aurō:** abl. with **potitur**;
App. 342.

56. **vī:** abl. of manner; App. 328.
potitur: here of the third conjugation,
but ordinarily of the fourth. **Quid:** cog-
nate acc. (inner obj.); App. 313; or
supply **facere**.

57-68. The Trojans in solemn session
decide to give Polydorus a proper burial
and abandon the haunted spot.

57. **auri:** obj. gen., *greed, hunger of*
(*for*) *gold*; App. 284. **sacra:** *accursed*;
sacer meant anything *set aside or conse-*
crated to the gods, and hence here *devoted*
to destruction. (**mea**) **ossa.**

58. **primumparentem (meum):** Aeneas

mōnstra deum referō, et quae sit sententia poscō.
 Omnibus idem animus, sceleratā excēdere terrā, 60
 linquī pollūtum hospitium et dare classibus Austrōs.
 Ergō instaurāmus Polydōrō fūnus: et ingēns
 aggeritur tumulō tellūs; stant mānibus ārae,
 caeruleis maestae vittis ātrāque cupressō,
 et circum Īliades crīnem dē mōre solūtae; 65
 inferimus tepidō spūmantia cymbia lacte
 sanguinis et sacri paterās, animamque sepulcrō
 condimus et magnā suprēmum vōce ciēmus.

aggerō, ere, gessi, gestus heap (up)†
 Auster, tri m. (south) wind*
 caeruleus, a, um dark (blue), sable*
 cieō, ēre, civi, citus rouse, summon,
 stir (up), excite, invoke*
 condō, ere, didi, ditus lay (away), hide,
 found, establish*
 crinis, is m. hair, locks, tresses*
 cupressus, i f. cypress, a tree sacred to
 the dead and often planted around
 tombs
 cymbium, (i) i n. bowl†
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 excēdō, ere, cessi, cessus withdraw,
 depart (abl.)
 fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster*
 hospitium, (i) i n. hospitality, ally, alli-
 ance
 Īlias, adis f. Trojan (woman)
 inferō, ferre, tulī, illātus bring to, offer

instaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
 lac, lactis n. milk†
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
 mănēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, shades,
 ghost; Hades†*
 mōnstrum, i n. omen, prodigy, monster*
 mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, law*
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl
 polluō, ere, uī, ūtus defile, profane, pollute†
 Polydōrus, i m. son of Priam
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
 scelerō (1) defile, pollute, stain
 sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose, view
 sepulcrum, i n. tomb, grave, burial
 solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose, pay, free*
 spūmō (1) foam, froth*
 tepidus, a, um warm, tepid†
 tumulus, i m. mound, hill, tomb*
 vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band*

consults the Trojan chiefs in turn, as though they were Roman senators; and Anchises, as *princeps*, first in rank and age, speaks first.

59. de(ōr)um. referō: according to the Roman custom of consulting the senate when important prodigies occurred, referō being the technical word for laying a matter before that body. quae sententia sit: indir. quest.; App. 349.

60-61. Omnibus (est): dat. of possession; App. 299. (nōs) excēdere, (nōs) linquī, (nōs) dare: in apposition with animus. dare classibus Austrōs (ventōs): a poetical variation of the more usual expression dare ventis classēs (vēla). Cf. III, 9, dare fātis vēla, and see App. 426.

62. instaurāmus: it was important that all funerals should be properly performed, with all due ceremonies, as otherwise the soul of the dead would not be able to rest in peace. Polymnestor had not given Polydorus a proper burial, and so this ceremony is duly per-

formed by Aeneas. The description of the funeral is adapted to Roman custom.

63. mānibus (Polydōri): to the soul (of Polydorus), dat. of reference; App. 301.

65. Īliades (stant). crīnem solūtae: a conventional sign of grief; crīnem is obj. of the middle part. solūtae; App. 309, a.

66. tepidō lacte: freshly milked; abl. of material; App. 324. Other common offerings to the dead were wine, honey, and oil.

67-68. sanguinis sacri: the blood of victims sacrificed to the gods. animam condimus: we "lay the ghost," by giving the body a proper burial, and thus enabling the soul to cross the river Styx and to rest in peace in Hades. The souls of the unburied must wander in misery for a hundred years. suprēmum: adverbial; for the last (time); see note on I, 219, and on II, 644. The poet is describing the usual Roman rite.

- Inde ubi p̄rma fidēs pelagō, plācātaque ventī
 70 dant maria et lēnis crepitāns vocat Auster in altum,
 dēdūcunt sociī nāvīs et litora complent.
 Prōvehimur portū terraeque urbēsq̄ recēdunt.
 Sacra marī colitur mediō grātissima tellūs
 Nēreidum māt̄rī et Neptūnō Aegaeō,
 75 quam pius Arquiteenēs ōrās et litora circum
 errantem Myconō ē celsā Gyarōque revīnxit,
 immōtamque colī dedit et contemnere ventōs.
 Hūc feror: haec fessōs tūtō placidissima portū
 accipit. Ēgressī venerāmur Apollinis urbem.

Aegaeus, a, um of the Aegean Sea†
 altum, i n. the deep (sea); heaven
 Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 Arquiteenēs (arci-), entis m. archer,
 Apollo†
 Auster, tri m. (south) wind*
 celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
 colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit,
 cherish, honor*
 compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete
 contemnō, ere, temp̄si, temptus despise,
 scorn†
 crepitō (1) crackle, rustle, creak†
 dēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus draw down,
 launch
 ēgredior, i, gressus step out, disembark
 fides, ei f. faith, trust(worthiness)*

grātus, a, um pleasing, agreeable, grate-
 ful
 Gyaros, i f. an island in the Aegean†
 immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
 inde thence, after that, next*
 lēnis, e gentle, soft, mild, light
 Myconus, i f. an island in the Aegean†
 Neptūnus, i m. Neptune, god of the sea*
 Nēreis, idis f. a sea-nymph, daughter of
 Nereus†
 placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
 plācō (1) propitiate, calm, quiet
 prōvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry (for-
 ward), convey
 recēdō, ere, cessi, cessus depart, recede
 revinciō, ire, vīxi, vinctus bind (fast)
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
 veneror, āri, ātus reverence, supplicate

69-89. They land in Delos to consult the oracle.

69. (est) pelagō: dat. of possession; App. 299; or abl. = fidēs (est nobīs in) pelagō; App. 319; or dat. with the construction of fidō; App. 297. ventī (positi).

70. vocat (nōs).

71. dēdūcunt: launch; subdūcere is the technical term for beaching vessels on the shore at the end of a voyage, and dēdūcō is the technical term for launching them or drawing them down into the water again.

72. (ā, ex) portū. recēdunt: an optical illusion familiar to all travelers.

73-74. (in) mediō marī: in the midst of the sea. sacra tellūs: the island of Delos, sacred to Apollo as his birthplace. grātissima māt̄rī Nēreidum et Neptūnō. Nēreidum māt̄rī: Doris, goddess of the sea and wife of the sea god Nereus. māt̄rī et Neptūnō Aegaeō: note the two cases

of hiatus and the spondaic fifth foot; App. 399, 395.

75. pius Arquiteenēs: (Apollo) in (filial) devotion. According to the story, the goddess Latona was an outcast and could find no land willing to receive her till she came to Delos, at that time a floating island. The island allowed her to remain, where she gave birth to the twins, Apollo and Diana. In gratitude for this hospitality, Apollo bound Delos fast to the neighboring islands and so made it a firm and habitable land. errantem circum ōrās et litora: App. 414.

76. ē celsā Myconō Gyarōque: off lofty Myconus and Gyaros. Myconus is in fact a low island.

77. dedit (illam terram esse) immōtam et colī et contemnere ventōs: formerly the island had been floating around at the mercy of the wind and waves and was uninhabitable.

78-79. haec (tellūs) accipit (nōs) fessōs. Apollinis urbem: Delos, a city of the same name as the island.

Rēx Anius, rēx idem hominum Phoeбіque sacerdos, 80
vittis et sacra redimitus tempora lauro
occurrit; veterem Anchisēn agnovit amicum.
Jungimus hospitio dextrās et tecta subimus.

Templa dei saxo venerābar strūcta vetustō:
'Dā propriam, Thymbraee, domum; dā moenia fessis 85
et genus et mansuram urbem; servā altera Trojae
Pergama, reliquiās Danaum atque immitis Achilli.
Quem sequimur? Quōve ire jubēs? Ubi pōnere sedēs?
Dā, pater, augurium atque animīs inlābere nostris.'

Vix ea fātus eram: tremere omnia vīsa repente, 90
liminaque laurusque dei, tōtusque movērī
mōns circum et mūgire adytis cortina reclusis.

Achillēs, is (ei, i) *m.* Greek leader*
adytum, i *n.* inner shrine, sanctuary
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alter, era, erum another (of two), second*
amicus, i *m.* friend, comrade*
Anius, (i) i *m.* king of Delos†
augurium, (i) i *n.* augury, omen, portent
cortina, ae *f.* tripod, caldron, on which
the priestess sat when delivering
oracles†
homō, inis *m.* (f.) man, mortal, human*
hospitium, (i) i *n.* hospitality, ally, alliance
immitis, e cruel, harsh, fierce, unfeeling
inlābor, i, lāpsus glide (into) (*dat.*)
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke*
laurus, i (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen tree
sacred to Apollo
mūgiō, ire, ivi (iī), itus bellow, roar†
occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)
meet (*dat.*)
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*

Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
and prophecy*
proprius, a, um one's own, secure, per-
manent
reclūdō, ere, i, sus open, disclose
redimiō, ire, iī (ivī), itus bind around,
encircle†
re(l)liquiae, ārum *f.* rest, remnant, leav-
ings
repente suddenly, unexpectedly, quickly
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)*
struō, ere, ūxī, ūctus heap up, build
templum, i *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
Thymbraeus, a, um of Thymbra, a city
of the Troad, sacred to Apollo†
tremō, ere, ūi tremble, quiver, shake*
veneror, āri, ātus reverence, supplicate
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
vetustus, a, um old, ancient, former
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*

80. **idem**: the union of government and religion is common among primitive peoples, as at Rome under the early kings.

81. **vittis**: as a symbol of his priestly office. **tempora**: temples; object of the middle participle **redimitus**; App. 309, a. **laurō sacra** (Apollini).

82. (**nōbis**) **occurrit. veterem amicum.**

83. **hospitiō**: abl. of manner; App. 328.

84. **saxo vetustō**: abl. of material; App. 324.

85. **Thymbraee** (Apollō): voc. **Dā** (**nōbis**). **dā** (**nōbis**) **fessis**.

86. **mānsuram**: *that shall abide.*

87. **re(l)liquiās Dana(ōr)um atque immitis Achilli**: subj. genitives, as in I, 30, *the remnants of (allowed to escape by) the Danaans, etc.*; App. 284.

88. **Quem sequimur**: the pres. ind. is occasionally used where one would expect the fut. ind. (**quem sequēmur**) or the deliberative subj. (**quem sequāmur**); App. 348, a, 351, 1, c. See note on II, 322, **quam prendimus arcem**. (**jubēs**) **pōnere**.

89. **pater**: a common appellation for an ancient god. **animīs**: dat. with compound; App. 298.

90-98. The oracle bids them seek the "ancient mother of their race," i.e., the original home of the Trojans.

90. **ea** (**dicta**). **vīsa** (**sunt**): true pass. of **videō**, *were seen*.

91. **liminaque**: with **e** forming a long syllable; App. 394, a. Cf. **pulvis**, I, 478, and **domus**, II, 563.

92. **mōns**: Mt. Cynthus, sacred to

- Summissi petimus terram et vix fertur ad auris:
 'Dardanidae duri, quae vos a stirpe parentum
 95 prima tulit tellus, eadem vos ubere laeto
 accipiet reducēs. Antiquam exquirite matrem.
 Hic domus Aenae cunctis dominabitur oris
 et nati natorum et qui nascentur ab illis.'
 Haec Phoebus; mixtoque ingens exorta tumultu
 100 laetitia, et cuncti quae sint ea moenia quaerunt,
 quo Phoebus vocet errantis jubeatque reverti.
 Tum genitor veterum volvens monimenta virorum
 'Audite, O proceres,' ait 'et spes discite vestras.
 Cræta Jovis magni mediō jacet insula pontō,
 105 mons Idaeus ubi et gentis cunabula nostrae.
 Centum urbēs habitant magnās, uberrima regna,

auris, *is f.* ear*
 centum hundred*
 Cræta, *ae f.* large island in the eastern
 Mediterranean†
 cunabula, *orum n.* cradle, birthplace†
 Dardanidēs, *ae m.* Dardanian, Trojan
 discō, *ere, didici* learn (how)
 dominor, *ari, ātus* hold sway, rule, govern
 durus, *a, um* hard(y), harsh, rough*
 exorior, *iri, ortus* (a)rise, spring up
 exquirō, *ere, quisivi, quisitus* search
 (out)†
 habitō (1) dwell, inhabit, possess†
 Idaeus, *a, um* Idaean, of Ida, a mountain
 near Troy and one in Crete
 insula, *ae f.* island
 jaceō, *ēre, ui, itus* lie (low, outspread)*
 laetitia, *ae f.* joy, delight, gladness

miscēō, *ēre, ui, mixtus* mingle, mix*
 monimentum (monumentum), *i n.* re-
 minder, memorial, record, tradition†
 nascor, *i, natus* be born, arise*
 Phoebus, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy*
 pontus, *i m.* sea, waves*
 procer, *eris m.* leader, chief, noble
 redux, *ducis* returning, restored
 revertor, *i, rsus* turn back, return
 spēs, *ei f.* hope, expectation*
 stirps, *is f.* stock, lineage, stem, race
 summissus, *a, um* prostrate, humble†
 tumultus, *ūs m.* tumult, uproar, din
 ūber, *eris n.* fertility, wealth, bosom;
adj. rich, fertile†
 vester, *tra, trum* your (own), yours*
 vetus, *eris* old, aged, ancient, former*

Apollo. *cortina*: the kettle on the tripod
 which served as a seat for the priestess
 when she delivered the oracles.

93. Summissi petimus terram: we fall
 low on the ground, fall prostrate.

94 95. Dardanidae: descendants of
 Dardanus. Dardanus had once lived in
 Italy, making the term especially appropri-
 ate here. quae tellus prima tulit vōs:
 as later developments show, this reference
 was to Italy, but the Trojans failed to
 understand it so. Ancient oracles were
 commonly ambiguous. eadem (tellus).

97. Hic = in hac terrā, vestrā antiquā
 matrē. oris: dat. with special verb, or
 abl. of place where; App. 297. 319.

98. et (ei) qui.

99-120. Led by Anchises's false in-
 terpretation of the oracle they sail for
 Crete.

99. Haec (dicta) Phoebus (fātus est).
 exorta (est). mixtō tumultū: abl. abs.;
 App. 343.

100-101. ea moenia: the city; prom-
 ised by Apollo, ll. 95-98. sint, vocet,
 jubeat: subjunctives in indirect questions;
 App. 349. quō Phoebus (nōs) errantis
 vocet jubeatque (nōs) reverti.

102. volvens: as though written on a
 scroll, the form of the ancient book.
 (meus genitor): Anchisēs.

104. Cræta Jovis magni: since Jove
 was born and reared there. mediō (in)
 pontō: in the midst of the sea; App. 246.

105. mons Idaeus (est) et cunabula
 (sunt). There was a Mt. Ida in Crete as
 well as in the Troad, evidence to Anchises
 of the Cretan origin of the Trojans.

106. (illi viri Crætae) habitant. regna:
 each city formed an independent king-
 dom.

*maximus unde pater, sī rīte audita recordor,
Teucus Rhoetēas primum est advectus in ōrās,
optāvitque locum rēgnō. Nōndum Īlium et arcēs
Pergameae steterant; habitābant vallibus imīs.* 110
*Hinc māter cultrix Cybeli Corybantiaque aera
Īdaeumque nemus, hinc fida silentia sacris,
et jūcti currum dominae subiēre leōnēs.
Ergō agile et divum dūcunt quā jussa sequāmur:
placēmus ventōs et Gnōsia rēgna petāmus.* 115
*Nec longō distant cursū: modo Juppiter adsit,
tertia lūx classem Crētaeis sistet in ōrīs.
Sic fātus meritōs ārīs mactāvit honōrēs,*

advehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry to, convey
aes, aeris *n.* bronze, bronze cymbals, used in the worship of Cybele*
Corybantiūs, a, um of the Corybantes, priests of Cybele, Mother of the Gods†
Crētaeus, a, um Cretan, of Crete†
cultrix, icis *f.* dweller, inhabitant†
currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
Cybelus, ī *m.* mountain in Phrygia, sacred to Cybele, the Great Mother of the Gods†
distō, āre stand apart, be distant†
domina, ae *f.* mistress, queen, lady†
ergō therefore, hence, consequently*
fidus, a, um faithful, true, trustworthy*
Gnōs(s)ius, a, um of Gnosus, a city of Crete†
habitō (1) dwell, inhabit, possess
Īdaeus, a, um of Mt. Ida, near Troy and in Crete
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Ilium, Troy

jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke*
jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
leō, ōnis *m.* lion
mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter; honor
mereō, ēre, ui, itus deserve, merit, earn*
modo only, (just) now
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
nōndum not yet†
optō (1) wish (for), choose, hope (for)*
Pergameus, a, um of Pergamum, Trojan†
placō (1) propitiate, calm, quiet, soothe
quā where(by), in any (some) way
recordor, āri, ātus recall, remember†
Rhoetūs, a, um of Rhoetūm, a promontory near Troy†
rite duly, with proper ceremonies
silentium, (i)ī *n.* silence, mystery, quiet
sistō, ere, steti, status station, set(tle)
tertius, a, um third*
Teucus (cer), cri *m.* early king of Troy
unde whence, from which place*
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale

107. (noster) maximus (nātū) pater: our eldest (earliest) ancestor. audita: what I have heard.

109. rēgnō: dat. of purpose; App. 303.

110. (illi viri) habitābant: cf. l. 106, habitant. (in) vallibus.

111. Hinc: ex Crētā. Hinc (vēnit) māter (deūrum) cultrix (montis) Cybeli. Cybeli: obj. gen. with cultrix; App. 284. Corybantia aera: the Corybantes, priests and attendants of Cybele, accompanied the processions of the goddess with loud clashing of cymbals and violent, ecstatic dancing and leaping.

112. Īdaeum nemus: a grove on Mt. Ida sacred to the goddess. nemus: with the last syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, a. silentia sacris: according to this account, the secret and mysterious

ceremonies of Cybele and the custom of representing her as being drawn in a chariot by a yoke of lions all came from Crete. sacris: dat. of reference with vēnit understood.

113. currum subiēre (= subiērun): went beneath the car = went beneath the yoke of the car. Cybele was often represented in a chariot drawn by lions or other wild animals.

114-115. sequāmur, quā jussa de(ōr)um (nōs) dūcunt. sequāmur, placēmus, petāmus: vol.; App. 254.

116. Nec longō cursū: about 150 miles; abl. of degree of difference; App. 335. Juppiter: as the god of the sky, of the weather, and of storms. adsit: subj. in a proviso clause; App. 375.

117. lūx (diēi). (nostram) classem.

118. sic fātus (Anchisēs).

120 taurum Neptūnō, taurum tibi, pulcher Apollō,
nigram Hiemī pecudem, Zephyris fēlicibus albam.

Fāma volat pulsum *rēgnīs* cessisse paternis
Īdomenēa ducem, dēsertaque litora Crētae,
hoste vacāre *domum sēdēsque* astāre *relictās*.
Linquimus Ortygiae *portūs pelagōque* volāmus
125 bacchātamque jugīs Naxum viridemque Donūsam,
Ōlearum niveamque Parum sparsāsque *per aequor*
Cycladas, *et crēbris* legimus freta cōnsita terrīs.
Nauticus exoritur variō certāmine *clāmor*:
hortantur *socii* Crētā proavōsque *petāmus*.

130 Prōsequitur *surgēns ā puppī ventus euntis*,

albus, a, um white†*

Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*

a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (by, ready)*

bacchor, āri, ātus revel (over), traverse
in Bacchic revel, celebrate the rites
of Bacchus†

cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus withdraw, yield*

certāmen, inis *n.* rivalry, contest†*

cōnserō, ere, sēvi, situs sow, scatter,
sprinkle†

crēber, bra, brum frequent, numerous*

Crēta, ae *f.* large island in the eastern
Mediterranean

Cyclades, um *f.* islands of the Aegean†

dēsērō, ere, ui, rtus abandon, desert*

Donūsa, ae *f.* island of the Aegean†

dux, ducis *m.* leader, guide, pilot*

exorior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up

fēlix, icis happy, favorable, fortunate*

fretum, i *n.* strait, sea, waters

Hiems, emis *f.* Winter, Storm*

hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite*

hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*

Īdomeneus, ei *m.* king of Crete†

jugum, i *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*

legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, skim*

linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*

nauticus, a, um of sailors, nautical†

Naxos, i *f.* island of the Aegean†

Neptūnus, i *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*

niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky*

niveus, a, um white, snowy

Ōleus (os), i *f.* island of the Aegean†

Ortygia, ae *f.* early name of Delos, an
island of the Aegean†

Paros, i *f.* island of the Aegean, famous
for its clear white marble†

paternus, a, um paternal, ancestral†

pecus, udis *f.* animal, member of flock*

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive (out)

proavus, i *m.* ancestor, forefather†

prōsequor, i, secūtus accompany, attend

pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,
illustrious, noble*

spargō, ere, rsi, rsus strew, scatter*

taurus, i *m.* bull, bullock, ox*

vacō (1) be empty, be free (*abl.*)

varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*

viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

volō (1) fly (forth, abroad)*

Zephyrus, i *m.* the (west) wind

120. albam (pecudem): white victims were offered to kindly divinities, black victims to destructive ones.

121-134. The founding of the Cretan Pergamum.

121-123. (ex) *rēgnīs*. cessisse, dēserta (esse), vacāre, astāre: indir. statement depending on *fāma volat* = *dīcunt*; App. 390. Observe the differences of tense; App. 351, 1 and 4. Īdomenēa: acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 69. The legend relates that Idomeneus was overtaken by a storm while returning from the expedition against Troy, and vowed to the god of the sea that he would sacrifice the first one who met him on

his safe return home. This proved to be his own son, and the gods in anger at such a sacrifice sent a pestilence which caused Idomeneus to be driven from Crete and later to settle in Italy. dēserta (esse). hoste: *abl.* of separation with vacāre; App. 340.

124. pelagō: *abl.* of route; App. 338.

125-127. bacchātam: used passively. (in) jugīs. Naxum, Donūsam, Ōleus, Parum, Cycladas, freta: objects of legimus.

128. variō certāmine: the ships are racing each other.

129. (ut) petāmus: *subst. vol.* clause; App. 360.

130. (nōs) euntis: as we sail.

et tandem antiquis Cūrētum adlābimur orīs.
Ergō avidus mūrōs optātae mōlior urbis
Pergameamque vocō, et laetam cognōmine gentem
hortor amāre focōs arcemque attollere tēctis.

Jamque ferē siccō subductae litore puppēs;

135

cōnūbiis arvisque novis operāta juventūs;
jūra domōsque dabam: subitō cum tābida membris
corruptō caeli tractū miserandaque vēnit
arboribusque satisque luēs et lētifer annus.
Linquēbant dulcīs animās aut aegra trahēbant
corpora; tum sterilis exūrere Sīrius agrōs,

140

adlābor, *i*, lāpsus glide to (*dat.*)†
 aeger, *gra*, *grum* sick, weary, wretched*
 ager, *grī m.* field, territory, land*
 amō (1) love, cherish, like*
 annus, *i m.* year; season*
 arbōs (or), *oris f.* tree; wood(s)*
 attollō, *ere* raise, lift, rear*
 avidus, *a*, *um* eager, desirous
 cognōmen, *inis n.* (sur)name, title
 cōnūbium, (i) *i n.* marriage, wedlock
 corruptō, *ere*, *rūpi*, *ruptus* break up,
 spoil, taint
 Cūrētes, *um m.* Cretan priests of Jupiter
 identified with the Corybantes†
 dulcīs, *e* sweet, dear, fond*
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 exūrō, *ere*, *ussī*, *ustus* burn (up), con-
 sume
 ferē almost, about†
 focus, *i m.* hearth, fireplace, home†
 hortor, *ārī*, *ātus* urge, encourage, incite*
 jūs, *jūris n.* law, right, justice, decree

juventūs, *ūtis f.* youth, young men*
 lētifer, *era*, *erum* deadly, death-bearing†
 linquō, *ere*, *liqui*, *lictus* leave, give up*
 luēs, *is f.* blight, pestilence, plague†
 membrum, *i n.* member, limb, body*
 miserandus, *a*, *um* piteous, pitiable
 mōlior, *irī*, *itus* do, make, build, effect
 mūrus, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart*
 operor, *ārī*, *ātus* be busy, be occupied
 with (*dat.*)†
 optō (1) desire, choose, wish, hope (for)*
 Pergameus, *a*, *um* of Pergamum, Tro-
 jan
 sata, *ōrum n.* crops, harvest
 siccus, *a*, *um* dry, thirsty
 Sīrius, (i) *i m.* the dog star†
 sterilis, *e* barren, unfruitful, sterile†
 subducō, *ere*, *dūxi*, *ductus* draw up,
 beach, remove
 subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
 tābidus, *a*, *um* wasting, decayed†
 tractus, *ūs m.* region, quarter†

131. Cūrētum: priests and attendants of Jupiter during his infancy in Crete. orīs: *dat.* with compound; App. 298.

133. (et hanc urbem) vocō Pergameam: Pergamum, a Cretan city, is thus connected by Vergil with Troy (Pergamum) and the wanderings of Aeneas. cognōmine: *abl.* of cause with *laetam*; App. 332.

134. hortor amāre = hortor ut ament: App. 360, *a*. tēctis: *for (to protect) their homes*; *dat.* of reference; App. 301.

135-146. A grievous pestilence falls upon man and beast and all living things, and they prepare to consult the oracle again.

135. (in) litore subductae (erant): the ships were drawn up on land when not in active use and were launched only

on the occasion of a voyage. See the note on l. 71.

136. cōnūbiis: pronounced here as though spelled cōnūbjīs, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. cōnūbiis, arvis: *datives or ablatives of means* with *operāta* (*erat*); App. 331.

137-139. cum subitō, corruptō caeli tractū, vēnit (*there came*) membris arboribusque satisque tābida miserandaque luēs. membris: *dat.* of direction with *vēnit*, or of reference; App. 306, 301.

138. corruptō tractū: *abl. abs.*, or *abl.* of source; App. 343, 323. This was formerly a common explanation of plagues, usually interpreted as being produced by divine wrath.

141. sterilis: proleptic; Sīrius parched the fields bare, i.e., till they became bare; App. 440. Sīrius: the Dog Star rises with the sun in the latter part of summer,

- 145 *ārēbant herbae et victum seges aegra negābat.*
Rūrsus ad ōrāclum Ortygiae Phoebumque remēnsō
hortātur pater īre marī veniamque precārī,
quam fessīs finem rēbus ferat, unde labōrum
temptāre auxilium jubeat, quō vertere cursūs.
Nox erat et terrīs animālia somnus habēbat:
 150 *effigiēs sacrae dīvum Phrygiūque penātēs,*
quōs mēcum ab Trojā mediūisque ex ignibus urbis
extuleram, vīsī ante oculōs astāre jacentis
in somnīs multō manifestī lūmine, quā sē
plēna per insertās fundēbat lūna fenestrās;
tum sīc adfārī et cūrās hīs dēmere dictīs:
‘Quod tibi dēlātō Ortygiam dictūrus Apollō est,

adfor, fārī, fātus address, accost*
 aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
 animal, ālis *n.* animal, living thing†
 Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 āreō, ēre, uī be dry; parch†
 a(d)stō, āre, stiti stand (by, ready)*
 auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
 dēferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring (down) to,
 convey†
 dēmō, ere, mpsi, mptus remove
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus carry forth,
 raise*
 effigiēs, ēi *f.* image, likeness, ghost
 fenestra, ae *f.* window, opening
 herba, ae *f.* grass, herbage, sward*
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
 inserō, ere, uī, rtus place, insert†
 jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
 lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
 manifestus, a, um clear, plain, manifest

negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
 ōrāc(u)lum, ī *n.* oracle, prophecy
 Ortygia, ae *f.* ancient name of Delos,
 an island in the Aegean
 penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
 Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy*
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 plēnus, a, um full, complete, swelling
 precor, āri, ātus pray (for, to), invoke†*
 quā where, where(by), in any (some)
 way
 remētiōr, irī, mēnsus romeasure, re-
 traverse
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
 seges, etis *f.* crop, harvest, grain field
 temptō (1) try, seek, test, examine*
 unde whence, from what source*
 venia, ae *f.* favor, pardon, grace
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, (ex)change*
 victus, ūs *m.* food, living, victuals

during the intensely hot weather known
 as "dog days" (canicular days), once
 thought to be due to the combined heat
 of the Dog Star (Sirius) and the sun.
 exūrere: hist. inf.; App. 257.

143-144. *remēnsō marī*: abl. abs.,
remēnsō being used as a passive. *pater*
 (Anchisēs) *hortātur (nōs) īre = ut eāmus*;
 App. 360, a.

145-146. *quam finem ferat* (Phoebus),
 unde (nōs) *temptāre auxilium jubeat*,
 quō (jubeat nōs) *vertere cursūs*: indir.
 questions depending on the idea of asking
 implied in *veniam precārī*; App. 349.
 (nōbīs) *fessīs. labōrum auxilium*: *help*
of (for) our troubles; obj. gen.; App.
 284.

147-171. The penates (household gods)
 appear to Aeneas by night and tell him

to leave Crete and seek a western land
 called Hesperia by the Greeks but Italy
 by the inhabitants.

147. (in) *terrīs*.

148-151. *effigiēs Phrygiūque penātēs*
... vīsī (sunt) astāre. dīv(ōr)um. jacen-
tis (mei) in somnīs: as I lay asleep.

151. *manifestī*: modifying *effigiēs*
Phrygiūque penātēs, and agreeing with
 the latter. *quā*: adv.

152. *insertās*: *set* (in the walls).

153. *adfārī, dēmere*: depending on
vīsī sunt understood, or else historical in-
 finitives, with *effigiēs Phrygiūque penātēs*
 (understood) as subject; App. 257.
cūrās (meās).

154. *dēlātō*: *having arrived*, i.e., if you
 should go. *Ortygiam*: acc. of place to
 which; App. 315, a.

hic canit et tua nōs ēn ultrō ad līmina mittit. 155
Nōs tē Dardaniā incēnsā tuaque arma secūtī,
nōs tumidum sub tē permēnsī classibus aequor,
īdem ventūrōs tollēmus in astra nepōtēs
imperiumque urbī dabimus. Tū moenia magnīs
magna parā longumque fugae nē linque labōrem. 160
Mūtandae sēdēs. Nōn haec tibi litora suāsīt
Dēlius aut Crētae jussit cōsidere Apollō.
Est locus, Hesperiam Grajī cognōmine dicunt,
terra antiqua, potēns armīs atque ūbere glaebae;
Oenōtrī coluēre virī; nunc fāma minōrēs 165
Ītaliā dīxisse ducis dē nōmine gentem:
hae nōbīs propriae sēdēs, hīnc Dardanus ortus
Īasiusque pater, genus ā quō princepe nostrum.

Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
astrum, i *n.* star, constellation*
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), prophesy, proclaim, chant*
cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
colō, ere, ui, cultus cultivate, inhabit, cherish, honor, foster*
cōsīdō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down), settle
Crēta, ae *f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean
Dardania, ae *f.* city of Dardanus, Troy
Dardanus, i *m.* early king of Troy†
Dēlius, a, um Delian, of Delos, birth-place of Apollo†
dux, ducis *m.* leader, guide, pilot*
ēn lo! behold! see! look!
glæba, ae *f.* soil, sod, glebe
Grajus, a, um Greek*
Hesperia, ae *f.* Italy, Westland

Īasius, (i) *i* *m.* brother of Dardanus†
incendō, ere, i, ēnsus kindle, burn*
linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert, omit*
minōrēs, um *m.* descendants, posterity
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
Oenōtr(i)us, a, um of Oenotria, a district of southern Italy
orior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up
permētior, iri, mēnsus measure through, traverse†
potēns, entis powerful, mighty*
princeps, cipis *m.* first, chief, leader
proprius, a, um one's own, secure, permanent
suādēō, ēre, suāsi, suāsus persuade, recommend
tumidus, a, um swollen, surging
ūber, eris *n.* udder, bosom, fertility
ultrō beyond, voluntarily*

156-157. *Dardaniā incēnsā:* abl. abs. *sub tē = tē duce.* *Nōs secūtī* (sumus), *nōs permēnsī* (sumus).

158. (*nōs*) *īdem. tuōs nepōtēs:* refers to the power and the glory of the Roman race, and especially to the deification of Julius and Augustus Caesar, who traced their ancestry to Aeneas.

159-160. (*tuae*) *urbi: Rome. moenia magnis magna:* mighty walls for the mighty. With *magnis* understand either *viris* or *rēbus*. Perhaps the poet deliberately left it ambiguous. *moenia magnis magna, longum linque labōrem:* intentionally impressive alliteration; App. 411.

160. *parā, linque:* imperatives; the use of *nē* with the imp. is poetic; App. 256, a.

161. *Mūtandae* (sunt).

162. *Crētae:* loc.; the only example in the *Aeneid* of the loc. case of an island; App. 345.

163. *Grajī:* pronounce *Grajji*; App. 6, b. (*quem*) *Grajī dicunt* (= *vocant*) *Hesperiam.* ll. 163-166 = I, 530-533.

164. *armīs, ūbere:* ablatives of respect; App. 325.

165. *Oenōtrī viri coluēre* (= *coluērent terram*). *fāma* (est) = *dicunt*.

166. *dixisse* (= *vocāvisse*) *gentem Ītaliā. dē nōmine ducis* (Itali).

167. *sēdēs* (sunt), *ortus* (est).

167-168. *Dardanus Īasiusque:* Dardanus and his brother *Īasius* were born in Etruria. On growing up, Dardanus emigrated to Asia Minor and married the

- 170 *Surge age et haec laetus longaevō dicta parenti
haud dubitanda refer: Corythum terrāsque requirat
Ausoniās: Dictaea negat tibi Juppiter arva.
Tālibus attonitus vīsīs et vōce deōrum
(nec sopor illud erat, sed cōram agnōscere vultūs
vêlātāsque comās praesentiaque ōra vidēbar;
175 tum gelidus tōtō mănābat corpore sūdor)
corripio ē strātis corpus tendōque supinās
ad caelum cum vōce manūs et mūnera libō
intemerāta focis. Perfectō laetus honōre
Anchisēn faciō certum remque ordine pandō.
180 Agnōvit prōlem ambiguam geminōsque parentīs,
sēque novō veterum dēceptum errōre locōrum.
Tum memorat: 'Nāte, Īliacīs exercite fātīs,*

agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize*
ambiguus, a, um doubtful, ambiguous
attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, as-
tounded†
Ausonius, a, um Italian, Ausonian
certus, a, um determined, sure, fixed,
reliable; certum facere inform*
coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses*
cōram face to face, before the face
corripio, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
Corythus, ī m. a city of northern Italy,
Cortona†
dēcipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus deceive†
Dictaeus, a, um Dictean, of Dictē, a
Cretan mountain†
dubitō (1) waver, doubt, hesitate†
error, ōris m. mistake, wandering
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass*
focus, ī m. hearth, fireplace, home
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*

intemerātus, a, um pure, undefiled
libō (1) taste, pour (as a libation)
longaevus, a, um long-lived, aged
mānō (1) flow, drip, ooze (out)
memorō (1) (re)call, relate, recount, say*
negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
ordō, inis m. order, arrangement, array*
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open, reveal*
perficiō, ere, fēci, fectus accomplish,
execute, finish, perfect†
praesēns, entis present, at hand
prōlēs, is f. offspring, progeny, race*
requirō, ere, quīsivī, quisitus (re)seek
sopor, ōris m. slumber, sleep
strāta, ōrum n. bed; pavement
sūdor, ōris m. sweat, perspiration
supinus, a, um supine, upturned†
vêlō (1) cover, veil, envelop, wrap (up)
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
visum, ī n. sight, appearance, vision†
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

daughter of Teucer or Teucrus (l. 108),
from whom he inherited the kingdom of
Troy. Iasius emigrated to Samothrace.
pater: a purely honorary title here. ā
quō principe (Dardanō ortum est) nos-
trum genus.

169. longaevō parenti (tuō): Anchises.

170. refer: imp. (Anchisēs) requirat:
vol. (jussive) subj. or indir. command;
App. 254.

172-191. Aeneas reports his vision to
Anchises, and the Trojans set sail happy
at the prospect of soon ending their
wanderings.

172. (ego) attonitus.

173. vultūs (deōrum).

175. corpore: abl. of separation; App.
340.

176-177. supinās manūs: the attitude
of prayer; compare the note on palmās,
I, 93. mūnera: offerings of wine.

178. focis: upon the hearth, which
served as the altar of the penates; dat.
of direction; App. 306.

180. ambiguam prōlem geminōsque
parentis: i.e., Teucer in Crete and
Dardanus in Italy.

181. dēceptum (esse). locōrum: obj.
gen.; App. 284. novō veterum: the
words are contrasted by being brought
together, a Vergilian conceit. novō
veterum errōre locōrum: interlocked
order; App. 442.

182. Nāte, exercite: vocatives.

sōla mihi tālis cāsūs Cassandra canēbat.
Nunc repetō haec generī portendere dēbita nostrō
et saepe Hesperiam, saepe Itāla rēgna vocāre. 185
Sed quis ad Hesperiae ventūrōs litora Teucrōs
crēderet? Aut quem tum vātēs Cassandra movēret?
Cēdāmus Phoebo et monitī meliōra sequāmur.'
Sic ait, et cūctī dictō pārēmus ovanēs.
Hanc quoque dēserimus sēdem paucisque relictīs 190
vēla damus vastumque cavā trabe currimus aequor.
 Postquam altum tenuēre ratēs nec jam amplius ūllae
 appārent terrae, caelum undique et undique pontus,
 tum mihi caeruleus suprā caput astitit imber
 noctem hiememque ferēs, et inhorruit unda tenebris. 195
 Continuō ventī volvunt mare magnaue surgunt
 aequora, dispersi jactāmur gurgite vastō;

altum, *i n.* the deep (sea); heaven
amplius *comp. adv.* more, farther
appāreō, *ēre, uī, itus* appear
a(d)stō, *āre, stiti* stand (by, near)*
caerul(e)us, *a, um* dark (blue), gloomy*
canō, *ere, cecini, cantus* sing (of), proph-
 esy, chant, proclaim*
Cassandra, *ae f.* daughter of Priam, a
 prophetess whom none believed
cavus, *a, um* hollow, vaulted*
cēdō, *ere, cessi, cessus* yield, fall to*
continuō immediately, at once†
crēdō, *ere, didi, ditus* believe, trust (*dat.*)*
currō, *ere, cucurri, cursus* run (over)
dēbeō, *ēre, uī, itus* owe, be due, be
 destined
dēserō, *ere, uī, rtus* desert, abandon*
dispergō, *ere, rsi, rsus* scatter, disperse†
gurgēs, *itis m.* whirl (pool, wind), flood*
Hesperia, *ae f.* Italy, Westland
hiems, *emis f.* storm, winter*
imber, *bris m.* rain, storm, flood, water
inhorreō, *ēre, uī* shiver, bristle†

Ītalus, *a, um* Italian, of Italy
jactō (1) toss (about), buffet, hurl, fling*
melior, *ius* better, superior, preferable
moneō, *ēre, uī, itus* advise, warn (of)
ovō (1) triumph, rejoice, exult†
pāreō, *ēre, uī, itus* obey, yield (*dat.*)
paucus, *a, um* small, few, meager*
Phoebus, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy*
pontus, *i m.* sea; waves*
portendō, *ere, i, ntus* foreshadow, stretch
 forth†
postquam after (that), when*
quoque also, even, too, likewise*
ratis, *is f.* raft, ship, boat*
repetō, *ere, ivi (ii), itus* reseek, recall,
 repeat
saepe often, frequently*
suprā over, above (*acc.*)†
tenebrae, *arum f.* darkness, gloom
trabs (*trabēs*), *trabis f.* beam, timber,
 ship
undique on (from) all sides*

184. **repetō** (Cassandram) **porten-**
dere (= portendisse). See the note on
 II, 247, for Cassandra's prophecies. **dē-**
bita (*as*) *due*.

185. (Cassandram) **saepe Hesperiam**
 (*vocāre*), **saepe Itāla rēgna vocāre**. *vo-*
cāre: spoke of, mentioned.

186-187. **crēderet, movēret**: deliber-
 ative subjunctives; App. 348. **vātēs**:
 (*as*) *a seer*.

188. **Cēdāmus**: *vol. subj.*; App.
 254.

189. **dictō**: *dat.* with special verb;
 App. 297.

190. **paucis relictīs**: to account for

the legend that Cretan Pergamum was
 founded by Trojans. See I. 133.

191. **vēla (ventis) damus**.

192-218. Soon after leaving Crete a
 violent storm drives the Trojans out of
 their course to the Strophades, some
 small islands infested by Harpies.

192. **tenuēre** = tenuerunt.

193. (*et postquam*) **caelum** (*appāret*).

195. **tenebris**: *abl.* of manner or
 means; App. 328, 331.

196. **venti volvunt mare magna**:
 double alliteration of *v v* and *m m*.

197. (*in*) **gurgite**.

- involvĕre *diem* nimbī et nox ūmida caelum
 abstulit, ingeminant abruptis nūbibus ignēs.
 200 Executimur cursū et caecis errāmus in undīs.
Ipse diem noctemque negat discernere caelō
nec meminisse viae mediā Palinūrus in undā.
 Tris adeō incertōs caecā cāligine sōlēs
 errāmus pelagō, totidem sine sīdere noctēs.
 205 Quārtō terra diē primum sē attollere tandem
vīsa, aperīre procul montīs ac volvere fūmum.
Vēla cadunt, rēmīs insurgimus; *haud* mora, nautae
 adnixi torquent spūmās et caerula verrunt.
Servātum ex undīs Strophadum mē litora primum
 210 excipiunt. Strophades Grajō stant nōmine dictae
 insulae Īoniō in magnō, quās dira Celaenō

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off
 adeō to such an extent, indeed
 adnitor, i, sus (nixus) lean upon, strive
 aperiō, ire, uī, rtus open (out)*
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
 auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus carry away,
 rob†
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue), gloomy*
 cāligō, inis f. fog, darkness, gloom†
 Celaenō, ūs f. a harpy†
 dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
 discernō, ere, crēvī, crētus distinguish,
 discern†
 excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, catch
 executiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake off, drive
 from*
 fūmus, i m. smoke, vapor, fume
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 incertus, a, um indistinguishable, un-
 certain
 ingeminō (1) redouble, increase, repeat

insula, ae f. island
 insurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise (on)
 (dat.)†
 involvō, ere, i, volūtus envelop, wrap in
 Īonius, a, um Ionian (Sea), Greek†
 meminī, isse remember, recall (gen.)
 mora, ae f. delay, pause, hindrance*
 nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner†
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say not (no)
 nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm*
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist*
 Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot†*
 quārtus, a, um fourth†
 sine without (abl.)*
 sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*
 spūma, ae f. foam, froth, spray
 Strophades, um f. islands of the Ionian
 Sea†
 torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, toss, sway*
 totidem an equal number, so many
 trēs, tria three*
 ūmidus, a, um wet, damp, moist
 verrō, ere, i, rsus sweep (over), scour

198. involvĕre = involvĕrunt.

201. Ipse Palinūrus: the master (pilot).
 (sē) discernere (in) caelō.

202. viae: gen. with meminisse; App.
 288. nec meminisse = et (negat sē) me-
 minisse: inf. of indir. statement; App. 263.

203. Tris incertōs sōlēs (= diēs): it
 was so dark that it was uncertain whether
 day or night prevailed; acc: of duration
 of time; App. 314. caecā cāligine: abl.
 of cause with incertōs; App. 332.

204. (in) pelagō: or abl. of the route;
 App. 338. totidem noctēs (errāmus).

205-206. terra vīsa (est) sē attollere,
 aperīre, ac volvere. volvere fumum: to
 send up wreaths of smoke.

207. Vēla cadunt: on nearing the
 shore, the ancients furled the sails of
 their boats and used the oars. rēmīs:
 dat. with compound; App. 298. mora
 (est).

208. caerul(e)a (aequora).

210. dictae = vocātae. stant = sunt,
 but more picturesque.

211-213. insulae: with the final diph-
 thong shortened before the initial vowel
 of the following word. This is called
semi-hiatus; App. 400. Īoniō (marī).
 Phinēia domus: to punish Phineus
 for his crimes, Jupiter blinded him
 and sent the Harpies, which defiled
 his food when he attempted to eat. Two

*Harpypiaeque colunt aliae, Phinēia postquam
clausa domus mēnsāsque metū liquēre priōres.
Trīstius haud illīs mōnstrum, nec saevior ūlla
pestis et ira deum Stygiis sēsē extulit undīs.*

215

*Virginei volucrum vultūs, foedissima ventris
prōluviēs uncaeque manūs et pallida semper
ōra famē.*

Hūc ubi dēlātī portūs intrāvimus, ecce

*laeta boum passim campīs armenta vidēmus
caprigenumque pecus nullō custōde per herbās.*

220

*Inruimus ferrō et divōs ipsumque vocāmus
in partem praedamque Jovem; tum litore curvō
exstruimusque torōs dapibusque epulāmur opīmīs.*

armentum, *i n.* herd, drove (of cattle)
bōs, *bovis m. (f.)* ox, bull, cow
caprigenus, *a, um* goat(-born)†
claudō, *ere, i, sus* shut (in), (in)close*
colō, *ere, ui, cultus* cultivate, inhabit*
curvus, *a, um* bent, curved, wind-
ing*
custōs, *ōdis m. (f.)* guard(ian), keeper*
daps, *is f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet**
dēferō, *ferre, tulī, lātus* bring down,
convey
ecce see! look! behold!*
efferō, *ferre, extulī, ēlātus* carry (out),
raise*
epulor, *ārī, ātus* feast, banquet (*abl.*)†
exstruō, *ere, strūxī, strūctus* build (up),
pile†
famēs, *is f.* hunger, famine, greed
foedus, *a, um* foul, filthy, loathsome†
Harpypia, *ae f.* harpy, a ravenous monster
with the body of a bird and the face
of a woman†
herba, *ae f.* grass, herb(age), sward*
inruō, *ere, ui* fall (on), rush on
intrō (*l*) enter, penetrate†
linquō, *ere, liquī, lictus* leave, desert*
mēnsa, *ae f.* table*

metus, *ūs m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
mōnstrum, *i n.* portent, monster, prodigy*
opimus, *a, um* rich, sumptuous, fer-
tile
pallidus, *a, um* pale, pallid, wan
passim everywhere, all about*
pecus, *oris n.* herd, flock, drove*
pestis, *is f.* plague, pestilence, curse
Phinēius, *a, um* of Phineus, king of
Thrace, blinded by the gods and
tormented by the harpies for his crimes†
postquam after (that), when*
praeda, *ae f.* booty, plunder, spoils
prior, *ius* former, previous, prior*
prōluviēs, *ēi f.* overflow, excrement†
saevus, *a, um* fierce, cruel, stern*
semper always, ever*
Stygius, *a, um* Stygian, infernal, of the
River Styx in Hades†*
subitus, *a, um* sudden, unexpected
torus, *i m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
uncus, *a, um* curved, hooked, bent
venter, *tris m.* belly, maw
virgineus, *a, um* of a girl, maidenly;
pure
volucris, *is f.* bird, fowl†
vultus, *ūs m.* countenance, face, aspect*

of the Argonauts, Zetes and Calais, finally chased the Harpies away, and they then took up their abode in the Strophades. **Harpypiae**: *yi* form a diphthong, pronounced *we*.

213. clausa (est). **metū**: *abl.* of cause; App. 332. **liquēre** = **liquērunt**.

214. illis: *abl.* with comparative; App. 327. **mōnstrum (sē extulit)**.

215. de(ōr)um.

216. vultūs (erant).

218. famē: with long *e*, as though of the fifth declension; *abl.* of cause.

219-244. The Harpies rudely disturb the sacrificial banquet of the Trojans but are finally beaten off.

221. caprigenum pecus: *flock of goats. nullō custōde*: *with no one to guard them; abl. abs.*; App. 343.

222-223. ferrō: *abl.* of means. **divōs vocāmus**: *i.e.*, a portion of the booty was promised to the gods as a sacrifice, on condition that they would help the Trojans secure it. (*in*) **litore**.

224. torōs: *couches of turf on which*

- 225 *At subitae horrificō lāpsū de montibus adsunt*
Harpyiae et magnīs quatiunt clangōribus ālās,
diripiuntque dapēs contāctūque omnia foedant
immundō; tum vōx taetrum dira inter odōrem.
Rūrsus in sēcessū longō sub rūpe cavātā
- 230 [*arboribus clausam circum atque horrentibus umbrīs*]
instruimus mēnsās ārīsque repōnimus ignem;
rūrsus ex diversō caelī caecīsque latebrīs
turba sonāns praedam pedibus circumvolat uncīs,
polluit ōre dapēs. Sociīs tunc arma capessant
- 235 *ēdicō, et dirā bellum cum gente gerendum.*
Haud secus ac jussī faciunt tēctōsque per herbam
dispōnunt ēnsis et scūta latentia condunt.
Ergō ubi dēlāpsae sonitum per curva dedēre

āla, *ae f.* wing*
 arbōs (or), *oris f.* tree, wood(s)*
 caecus, *a, um* blind, hidden, dark*
 capessō, *ere, ivi (ii), itus* seize (eagerly)
 cavō (1) hollow (out)
 circumvolō (1) fly around
 clangor, *ōris m.* noise, whir, clang
 claudō, *ere, si, sus* shut (in), (in)close*
 condō, *ere, didi, ditus* establish, found,
 place; hide*
 contāctus, *ūs m.* contact, touch†
 curvus, *a, um* bent, curved, winding*
 daps, *is f.* (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
 dēlābor, *i, lāpsus* glide down, slip (down)
 diripiō, *ere, ui, reptus* tear apart, plunder
 dirus, *a, um* terrible, dire, dreadful*
 dispōnō, *ere, posui, positus* arrange, dis-
 tribute†
 diversus, *a, um* separate(d), different*
 ēdicō, *ere, dixi, dictus* proclaim, order†
 ēnsis, *is m.* sword, knife*
 ergō therefore, hence, consequently*
 foedō (1) defile, pollute, befoul
 gerō, *ere, gessi, gestus* bear, wage*
 Harpyia, *ae f.* harpy, a ravenous monster
 with the face of a woman and the
 body of a bird

herba, *ae f.* grass, herb(age), sward*
 horreō, *ēre, ui* bristle, shudder (at)*
 horrificus, *a, um* horrible, horrifying†
 immundus, *a, um* foul, filthy, dirty†
 instruō, *ere, struxi, strūctus* build (up),
 equip, array, heap up, instruct
 lāpsus, *ūs m.* gliding, slip, swoop
 latebra, *ae f.* hiding place, retreat, lair
 latēns, *entis* hiding, hidden, secret
 mēnsa, *ae f.* table*
 odor, *ōris m.* odor, scent, stench
 polluō, *ere, ui, ūtus* defile, pollute, profane
 praeda, *ae f.* booty, plunder, spoils
 quatiō, *ere, quassus* shake, shatter
 repōnō, *ere, posui, positus* replace*
 rūpēs, *is f.* rock, cliff, crag*
 rūrsus, *um* again, anew, back(ward)*
 scūtum, *i n.* shield
 sēcessus, *ūs m.* retreat, recess, nook
 secus otherwise, differently
 sonitus, *ūs m.* sound, roar, crash, noise
 sonō, *āre, ui, itus* (re)sound, roar*
 subitus, *a, um* sudden, unexpected
 taeter, *tra, trum* foul, filthy, loathsome†
 tegō, *ere, tēxi, tēctus* hide, cover*
 turba, *ae f.* crowd, mob, throng, uproar
 uncus, *a, um* curved, bent, hooked

to recline at the banquet. *dapibus*: abl. with *epulāmur* = *vēscimur*; App. 342; a variety of the abl. of means.

226. *magnis clangōribus*; with a terrible din of their wings.

228. *vōx dira* (est).

229-230. Almost the same as I, 310-311.

232. *diversō* = *diversā parte*.

233. *pedibus*: abl. of means. *turba* (*Harpyiārum*).

234. (*nostrās*) *dapēs*. (*ut*) *capessant*: a subst. vol. clause, depending on *ēdicō*; App. 360.

235. *gerendum* (esse): indir. statement, depending on *ēdicō*; App. 263, 360, *a. dirā gente* (*Harpyiārum*).

236-237. *ac: than. tēctōs, latentia*: proleptic; equivalent to *ita dispōnunt ēnsis ut tegantur et ita condunt scūta ut lateant*; App. 440.

238. *dedēre* = *dedērunt*.

litora, dat signum speculā Misēnus ab altā
aere cavō. Invādunt socii et nova proelia temptant, 240
obsceñās pelagī ferrō foedāre volucris.
Sed neque vim plūmīs ūllam nec vulnera tergō
accipiunt, celerique fugā sub sīdera lāpsae
sēmēsam praedam et vestīgia foeda relinquunt.
Ūna in praecelsā cōnsēdit rūpe Celaenō, 245
infēlix vātēs, rumpitque hanc pectore vōcem:
‘Bellum etiam prō caede boum strātisque juvencis,
Lāomedontiadae, bellumne inferre parātis
et patriō Harpyiās insōntis pellere rēgnō?
Accipite ergō animīs atque haec mea figite dicta, 250
quae Phoebō pater omnipotēns, mihi Phoebus Apollō
praedixit, vōbīs Furiarūm ego maxima pandō.

aes, aeris *n.* bronze (utensil, trumpet)*
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
bōs, bovis *m. (f.)* bull, ox, cow
caedēs, is *f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
Celaenō, ūs *f.* a harpy
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy*
cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit, settle*
ergō therefore, hence, consequently*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, (im)print*
foedō (l) defile, mangle, disfigure
foedus, a, um filthy, foul, loathsome
Furiae, ārum *f.* Furies, avenging spirits
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous monster with the body of a bird and the face of a woman
inferō, ferre, tulī, illātus bring to, offer, wage
insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
invādō, ere, sī, sus go (into), attack
juvencus, i *m.* bullock, steer, ox†*
Lāomedontiādēs, ae *m.* descendant of Laomedon; Trojan†
Misēnus, i *m.* Trojan trumpeter†

obsceñus, a, um disgusting, filthy, foul†
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
pandō, ere, i, passus open (up), disclose*
pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus drive (away), strike
Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
plūma, ae *f.* feather, plume†
praecelsus, a, um lofty, high†
praeda, ae *f.* booty, plunder, spoils
praedicō, ere, dixi, dictus foretell, predict†
prō in behalf of, (in return) for (*abl.*)*
proelium, (i) *n.* battle, conflict, fray
rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst (forth), utter*
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēmēsus, a, um half-eaten†
signum, i *n.* sign(al), mark, token*
specula, ae *f.* lookout, height, watch-tower†
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay (low, down), strew, spread, fell*
temptō (l) try, seek, test, examine*
tergum, i *n.* back, hide, rear*
vestigium, (i) *n.* step, track, trace*
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

240. *aere cavō = tubā, with the trumpet.*
nova proelia: strange (unusual) combats.

241. *foedāre: in loose apposition with proelia.*

242. (in) *plūmīs, (in) tergō:* the weapons of the Trojans glance from the feathers and the backs of the Harpies.

243. *sub: up toward.*

245-258. In revenge, Celaeno, leader of the Harpies, gives a horrifying oracle.

246. *rumpit vōcem: breaks forth (with) this cry; vōcem is cognate acc.; App. 313. See II, 129, and note. (ex) pectore.*

247. *Bellum: emphatic by position and by rhetorical repetition; App. 413. prō (in return for) caede bo(v)um: sarcastic.*

248. *Lāomedontiadae: in derision, as Laomedon, the legendary ancestor of the Trojans, was a famous perjurer and cheat. See II, 610, and note. inferre (nōbīs).*

249. (ē) *patriō rēgnō (nostrō).* Harpyiās: *yi* form a diphthong pronounced *we*.

250-251. (in) *animīs. quae Phoebō pater omnipotēns (praedixit). pater omnipotēns: Jupiter.*

252. (quae) *ego maxima (nātū) Furiā-*

- Italiam cursū petitis ventisque vocātis:*
ibitis Italiam portūque intrāre licēbit.
 255 *Sed nōn ante datam cingētis moenibus urbem*
quam vōs dira famēs nostraeque injūria caedis
ambēsās subigat mālīs absūmere mēnsās.
Dixit, et in silvam pennīs ablāta refūgit.
At sociīs subitā gelidus formīdine sanguis
 260 *dēriguit: cecidēre animī, nec jam amplius armīs,*
sed vōtīs precibusque jubent exposcere pācem,
sive deae seu sint dirae obscēnaeque volucrēs.
Et pater Anchīsēs passīs dē litore palmīs
nūmina magna vocat meritōsque indicit honōrēs:
 265 *‘Dī, prohibēte minās; dī, tālem āvertite cāsum*
et placidī servāte piōs.’ Tum litore fūnem

absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume, destroy
 ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus eat, gnaw around†
 amplius more (abundantly)
 auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus carry off, remove, bear away
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus avert, turn away*
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 caedēs, is f. slaughter, murder, massacre
 cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctus surround, gird (le)*
 dērigēscō, ere, rigui stiffen, freeze†
 dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
 exposcō, ere, poposcī demand, beg, ask†
 famēs, is f. hunger, famine, greed
 formīdō, inis f. fear, fright, terror, dread
 fūnis, is m. rope, cable, line, cord
 gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
 indicō, ere, dixī, dictus proclaim
 injūria, ae f. wrong, injury, injustice
 intrō (l) enter, penetrate

licet, ēre, uit; itum it is allowed*
 māla, ae f. jaw, cheek-bone†
 mēnsa, ae f. table*
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, merit, earn*
 minae, ārum f. threat, menace, danger†
 obscēnus, a, um filthy, disgusting
 palma, ae f. palm, hand*
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), reveal*
 pāx, pācis f. peace, indulgence, favor
 penna, ae f. wing, feather†
 placidus, a, um peaceful, gracious, calm*
 prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty*
 prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus forbid, hinder
 quam than, how, as†
 refugiō, ere, fūgi flee (back), retire
 sive, seu whether, or (if)
 subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus compel, force under
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
 volucris, is f. bird, fowl
 vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

rum pandō: a poetic confusion of the Furies and Harpies, which were supposed to be distinct.

253-254. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328. ventis vocātis: alliteration. Italiam, Italiam: intentionally impressive iteration. (ad) Italiam. (vōbis) licēbit.

255. ante . . . quam: sooner . . . than, until. datam (ā fātis).

256. famēs: a punishment to fit the crime. nostrae injūria caedis: the wrong of our (attempted slaughter) = the wrong you have done by trying to slay us, appositional gen.; App. 281. nostrae: equivalent to an obj. gen.; App. 284.

257. subigat: with ante quam; App. 376, a. ambēsās mēnsās (vestrās): this dreadful prophecy is fulfilled in a harmless manner. The Trojans after arriving in

Italy use broad cakes as plates on which to spread their food. After consuming the layer of food, they finally eat these cakes, thus devouring their "tables" and fulfilling the prophecy. See VII, 112-129.

259-288. In great alarm the Trojans depart and soon reach Actium where they celebrate games in honor of Apollo, and then remain for the winter.

259. sociīs: dat. of reference; App. 301.

260. cecidēre = cecidērunt.

261. jubent (mē).

262. sive (illae Harpyiae) sint deae: subj. in informal indir. disc.; App. 390, a.

263. passis palmīs: the usual attitude of prayer. See I, 93, and note.

266. (nōs) piōs. fūnem: collective.

dēripere excussōsque jubet laxāre rudentis.
Tendunt vēla Notī: fugimus spūmantibus undīs
quā cursum ventusque gubernātorque vocābat.
Jam mediō appāret flūctū nemorōsa Zacynthos 270
Dūlichiumque Samēque et Nēritos ardua saxīs.
Effugimus scopulōs Ithacae, Lāertia rēgna,
et terram altricem saevī exsecrāmur Ulixī.
Mox et Leucātae nimbōsa cacūmina montis
et formidātus nautis aperitur Apollō. 275
Hunc petīmus fessī et parvae succēdimus urbī;
ancora dē prōrā jacitur, stant litore puppēs.
Ergō inspērātā tandem tellūre potītī
lūstrāmurque Jovī vōtisque incendimus ārās,
Actiaque Īliacīs celebrāmus litora lūdis. 280

Actius, a, um of Actium, a promontory of western Greece†
altrix, icis f. nurse, nourisher†
ancora, ae f. anchor
aperiō, ire, uī, rtus open (out), loom*
Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and prophecy*
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
arduus, a, um high, steep, difficult
cacūmen, inis n. summit, top, peak†
celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
dēripiō, ere, uī, reptus tear away
Dūlichium, (i)ī n. island of the Ionian Sea†
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape (from), flee
ergō therefore, then, thence, consequently*
excutiō, ere, ī, cussus shake out, loose(n), unfold*
exsecror, āri, ātus curse, execrate, revile†
formidō (1) fear, dread, be afraid†
gubernātor, ōris m. helmsman, pilot†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian, of Ilium*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, burn*
inspērātus, a, um un hoped for†
Ithaca, ae f. island of the Ionian Sea, kingdom of Ulysses, wily Greek leader†
iaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, hurl†

Lāertius, a, um of Lāertes, father of Ulysses†
laxō (1) loose(n), relax, open, free
Leucāta, ae f. promontory of Leucas in western Greece†
lūdus, ī m. play, game, sport, contest†
lūstrō (1) purify, traverse, survey*
mox presently, soon†
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner
nemorōsus, a, um wooded, woody†
Nēritos, ī f. island of the Ionian Sea†
nimbōsus, a, um cloudy, stormy
Notus, ī m. (south) wind
parvus, a, um small, little*
potior, irī, itus gain, possess (abl.)
prōra, ae f. prow
quā where(by), in any (some) way
rudēns, entis m. rope, cable, sheet
saevus, a, um cruel, fierce, stern*
Samē, ēs f. island of the Ionian Sea†
scopulus, ī m. rock, crag, cliff*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach (dat.)
Ulixēs, is (eī, ī) m. Ulysses, wily Greek leader*
vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
Zacynthus (os), ī f. island of the Ionian Sea†

268. undīs: abl. of the route; App. 338.

270. (in) flūctū.

271. saxīs: abl. of cause. ardua saxīs: with its lofty crags.

273. Ulixī: obj. gen.; App. 284.

275. nautis: dat. of agent or reference; App. 302, 301. Apollō: i.e., the temple of Apollo at Actium, dreaded by sailors on account of the dangers to navigation in that region.

276. Hunc (Apollinem) = hoc templum Apollinis. urbī: dat. with compound. Actium became famous as the scene of the great naval victory of Augustus over Antony and Cleopatra in 31 B.C.

277. (in) litore.

278. tellūre: abl. with potior; App. 342.

279. vōtis: abl. of means.

280. Īliacīs lūdis: abl. of means. A festival had been celebrated here in an-

- Exercent *patriās oleō lābente* palaestrās
 nūdātī *sociī*: *juvat ēvāsisse tot urbēs*
 Argolicās *mediōsque fugam tenuisse per hostīs*.
 Intereā *magnum sōl* circumvolvitur annum
 285 *et glaciālis hiems Aquilōnibus asperat undās*:
 aere cavō clipeum, *magnī gestāmen* Abantis,
 postibus adversīs figō *et rem carmine signō*:
AENĒAS HAEC DĒ DANAIS VICTŌRIBUS ARMA.
 Linquere *tum portūs jubeō et cōsīdere trānstrīs*.
 290 *Certātīm sociī feriunt mare et aequora verrunt*.
 Prōtinus āeriās Phaeācum abscondimus arcēs
lītoraque Ēpīrī legimus portūque subimus
-
- Abās, antis *m.* king of Argos†
 abscondō, ere, (di)di, ditus hide; see disappear†
 adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
 āerius, a, um airy, lofty, towering†
 aes, aeris *n.* bronze (implement)*
 annus, i *m.* year, circuit; season*
 Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
 Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
 asperō (1) roughen†
 carmen, inis *n.* song, verse, poem†
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
 certātīm in rivalry, emulously, eagerly
 circumvolvō, ere, volūtus roll around†
 clipeus, i *m.* shield, buckler*
 cōsīdō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down), settle*
 Ēpīrus, i *f.* a district of northwestern Greece†
 ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go forth, escape (from)
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus practice, drive, engage in, harass*
 feriō, ire strike, smite, kill
 figō, ere, xī, xus fasten, fix (im)print*
 gestāmen, inis *n.* equipment, accoutrement†
 glaciālis, e icy, cold†
 hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
 hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, choose, pass (by), skirt*
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*
 nūdō (1) bare, strip, expose, uncover
 oleum, i *n.* oil†
 palaestra, ae *f.* wrestling (place, bout)†
 Phaeāces, um *m.* Phaeacians, a mythical people off the western coast of Greece†
 postis, is *m.* column, post, portal, door
 prōtinus immediately, continuously
 signō (1) sign, mark, designate
 sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
 tot so many, as many*
 trānstrum, i *n.* cross bench, rowers' bench, thwart†
 verrō, ere, i, rsus sweep (over), scour
-

cient times and was renewed by Augustus in honor of his victory at Actium in 31 B.C. Vergil assigns the original foundation of the festival and games to Aeneas, to add to their renown and to bestow a bit of delicate flattery on Augustus.

281. *oleō lābente*: the ancient athletes, especially wrestlers, oiled themselves.

282. *nūdātī*: ancient athletes wore no clothing while playing their games. *juvat* (nōs): *we rejoice*.

284. *annum*: obj. of *circum* in *circumvolvitur*, or cognate acc. of the middle verb; App. 308, 309, 313.

286. *aere cavō*: abl. of quality denoting material; App. 330, 324.

287. (in) *postibus adversīs*: on the entrance pillars (of the temple). *carmine*: such poetical inscriptions were common.

288. *Aenēās* (dedit Apollinī) *Haec Arma* (tracta) *Dē Danaīs Victōribus*. *Victōribus*: *victorious*, but not wholly so, as Aeneas's inscription means to show.

289-299. They land in Epirus, now under the rule of Trojan Helenus and Andromache, after the death of Pyrrhus.

289. (in) *trānstrīs*.

292. *portū*: dat. with compound.

Chāoniō et celsam Būthrōtī accēdimus urbem.

*Hīc incredibilis rērum fāma occupat auris,
Priamidē Helenum Grajās rēgnāre per urbīs* 295
*conjugiō Aeacidāe Pyrrhī scēptrisque potitum,
et patriō Andromachē iterum cēssisse maritō.*
*Obstipui mīrōque incēsum pectus amōre
compellāre virum et cāsūs cognōscere tantōs.*
Prōgredior portū classīs et litora linqūēns, 300
*sollemnis cum forte dapēs et tristia dōna
ante urbem in lūcō falsi Simoēntis ad undam
libābat cinerī Andromachē mānisque vocābat
Hectoreum ad tumulum, viridi quem caespite inānem*

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus approach, reach
Aeacidēs, ae m. descendant of Aeacus,
grandfather of Achilles

Andromachē, ēs f. wife of Hector

auris, is f. ear*

Būthrōtum, ī n. city of Epirus†

caespes, itis m. turf, sod†

cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, retire,
fall to*

celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*

Chāoniūs, a, um Chaonian, of Chaonia,
a district of northwestern Greece†

cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), em-
bers*

cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus learn

compellō (1) address, speak to, accost
conjugium, (i) ī n. wedlock, wife, husband

daps, is f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet*

falsus, a, um false, pretended, mock,
counterfeit

Grajus, a, um Greek*

Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan
hero

Helenus, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam†

inānis, e empty, vain, useless*

incendō, ere, ī, cēsus kindle, burn*

incrēdibilis, e unbelievable, incredible†

iterum again, a second time, anew*

libō (1) pour out, offer (as a libation)

linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*

lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood

mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead*

maritus, ī m. husband†

mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous
obstipēscō, ere, stipui be amazed, stand
agape*

occupō (1) possess; surprise; occupy†

potior, iri, itus gain, possess (*abl.*)

Priamidēs, ae m. descendant of Priam†

prōgredior, ī, gressus advance†

Pyrrhus, ī m. Neoptolemus, son of
Achilles

rēgnō (1) reign, rule, govern, sway

scēptrum, ī n. scepter, (royal) power

Simoīs, entis m. river near Troy

sollemnis, e annual, solemn, customary

tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb*

viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

294. (nōstrās) auris.

295. rēgnāre: indir. statement depend-
ing on the idea of saying implied in fāma;
App. 390, 263.

296. conjugio (=conjugē=Andromachē)
scēptrisque: ablatives with the verb
potior; App. 342. Andromache, the ill-
fated wife of Hector, had been allotted
in the distribution of the booty to
Neoptolemus (Pyrrhus), son of Achilles
and descendant of Aeacus. scēptris:
poetic plural; App. 243.

297. patriō: i.e., Trojan.

298-299. amōre: abl. of means. in-
cēsum (est) pectus (meum). amōre
compellāre: desire to speak to. Cf.
amor cognōscere, II, 10, and see App. 264.

300-343. The pathetic meeting of

Aeneas with Andromache at the empty
tomb of Hector.

300. (ā) portū.

301. dapēs, dōna: food offerings to
the dead. Such offerings usually con-
sisted of wine, milk, oil, honey, and some-
times of more solid foods, such as eggs
and beans.

302. falsi Simoēntis: i.e., a Simoīs
named after the one at Troy.

303. cinerī: i.e., of Hector. mānis
vocābat: to the sacrificial meal.

304. tumulum inānem: an empty
tomb erected here in honor of Hector,
whose ashes had been buried at Troy.
Such monuments, common in antiquity,
were called *cenotaphs*. caespitē: abl. of
material; App. 324.

- 305 *et geminās, causam lacrimās, sacrāverat ārās.*
Ut mē cōnspexit venientem et Trōia circum
arma amēns vidit, magnīs exterrita mōnstrīs
dēriguit visū in mediō, calor ossa reliquit;
lābitur et longō vix tandem tempore fātur:
- 310 *‘Vērane tē faciēs, vērus mihi nuntius adfers,*
nāte deā? Vivisne? Aut, sī lūx alma recessit,
Hector ubi est?’ Dixit, lacrimāsque effūdīt et omnem
implēvit clāmōre locum. Vix pauca furentī
subjiō et rārīs turbātus vōcibus hīscō:
- 315 *‘Vivō equidem vītāmq̄e extrēma per omnia dūcō;*
nē dubitā, nam vēra vidēs.
Heu! quis tē cāsus dējectam conjuge tantō
excipit, aut quae digna satis fortūna revisit,
Hectoris Andromachē? Pyrrhīn cōnūbia servās?’

adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to, present†
 almus, a, um kind(ly), nourishing
 amēns, entis crazy, frantic, distracted
 Andromachē, ēs f. wife of Hector
 calor, ōris m. heat, warmth, glow†
 causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion*
 cōnspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at
 cōnūbium, (i)ī n. marriage, wedlock
 dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast down†
 dērigēscō, ere, rigui stiffen, freeze
 dignus, a, um worthy (of), suitable (abl.)
 dubitō (1) doubt, hesitate, waver
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, shed*
 equidem indeed, surely, truly*
 excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, catch
 exterreō, ēre, ui, itus frighten, startle†
 extrēma, ōrum n. extremity, death, end*
 faciēs, ēi f. appearance, face, form*
 Hector, oris m. Trojan leader*
 hīscō, ere gape, falter, stammer†

impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy*
 mōnstrum, i m. prodigy, omen, marvel*
 nuntius, (i)ī m. messenger, message
 os, ossis n. bone*
 paucus, a, um small, few, scanty*
 Pyrrhus, i m. Neoptolemus, son of
 Achilles
 rārūs, a, um rare, disjointed, broken
 recēdō, ere, cessi, cessus withdraw, re-
 cede, depart
 revisō, ere revisit, see again
 sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
 sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
 subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place beneath,
 interpose
 Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 turbō (1) disturb, trouble, agitate*
 vērus, a, um true, real, genuine*
 vīsus, ūs m. sight, view, vision, aspect
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive

305. *causam lacrimīs*: a cause for tears; dat. of reference; App. 301.

306. *Ut (Andromachē) mē cōnspexit.* Ut: as, when.

307. *mōnstrīs*: the sudden appearance of Aeneas, whom she thought dead, seems miraculous to her, and she thinks it must be his ghost.

308. *visū in mediō*: as she gazed; App. 246.

309. *longō tempore* = post longum tempus; App. 322.

310. *faciēs, nuntius*: in apposition with the subject of *adfers*, (as) a true appearance and true messenger, do you present yourself?

312. *Hector ubi est*: if Aeneas had

come from the land of the shades, he should be accompanied by Hector or at least be able to bring news of him, since Hector was his old friend and comrade. Andromache's first thought is of her beloved Hector.

313. *(ei) furenti*: with difficulty do I reply briefly to her in her passionate appeal.

314. *rārīs vōcibus*: with broken words, abl. of manner; App. 328.

317. *dējectam conjuge tantō*: fallen from the high honor of being Hector's wife.

319. *Pyrrhīn(e)*: Andromache had been married, against her will, to her captor Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, but he was now dead.

<i>Dējēcit vultum et dēmissā vōce locūta est:</i>	320
<i>'Ō fēlix ūna ante aliās Priamēia virgō,</i>	
<i>hostilem ad tumulum Trojae sub moenibus altīs</i>	
<i>jussa morī, quae sortītūs nōn pertulit illōs</i>	
<i>nec victōris herī tetigit captīva cubile!</i>	
<i>Nōs patriā incēnsā diversa per aequora vectae</i>	325
<i>stirpis Achillēae fastūs juvenemque superbum</i>	
<i>servitiō ēnixae tulimus; quī deinde secūtus</i>	
<i>Lēdaeam Hermionēn Lacedaemoniōsque hymenaeōs</i>	
<i>mē famulō famulamque Helenō trānsmisit habendam.</i>	
<i>Ast illum ēreptae magnō flammātus amōre</i>	330
<i>conjugis et scelerum Furiis agitātus Orestēs</i>	

Achillēus, a, um of Achilles, a Greek leader†
agitō (1) drive, harass, pursue, agitate
captīvus, a, um captive, captured
cubile, is n. couch, bed†
deinde then, thereafter, next*
dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast down
dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down, lower*
diversus, a, um separate(d), different*
ēnitor, i, sus (nixus) bear, give birth to†
famula, ae f. bondswoman, maidservant
famulus, i m. slave, manservant
fastus, ūs m. disdain, insolence, pride†
fēlix, icis happy, fortunate, blessed*
flammō (1) inflame, fire, kindle†
Furiae, ārum f. Furies, avenging spirits
Helenus, i m. a prophet, son of Priam
Hermionē, ēs f. daughter of Helen†
herus, i m. master, owner, lord†
hostilis, e hostile, of an enemy†
hymenaeus, i m. Hymen, (god of) marriage
incendō, ere, i, cēnsus kindle, burn*
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man, woman)*

Lacedaemonius, a, um of Lacedaemon (Sparta), a district of southern Greece†
Lēdaeus, a, um of Leda, mother of Helen†
loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, talk*
moriōr, i, mortuus die, perish*
Orestēs, is m. son of Agamemnon; he killed his mother to avenge the murder of his father, and for this was pursued by the Furies†
patria, ae f. fatherland, country, home town*
perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus endure, bear (to the end)
Priamēius, a, um of Priam, king of Troy
scelus, eris n. crime, guilt, sin, villainy*
servitium, (i) i n. slavery, bondage
sortītus, ūs m. (drawing of) lots, allotment†
stirps, is f. stock, lineage, stem, race
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
trāsmittō, ere, misi, missus transmit, hand over†
tumulus, i m. mound, tomb*
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey*
virgō, inis f. (unmarried) girl, daughter*
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

321. Priamēia (= Priamī) virgō: Polyxena, who was sacrificed by the Greeks as an offering at the tomb of Achilles.

323. sortītūs: the captives and other booty were regularly distributed among the victors by lot.

325. nōs = ego: the "editorial we," contrasted with Polyxena; App. 247.

326. stirpis Achillēae: Pyrrhus (Neoptolemus), son of Achilles. **fastūs, juvenem:** objects of tulimus.

327. (in) servitiō: as a captive slave. **ēnixae:** having borne (him) children, a son Molossus according to tradition. **qui = is = Pyrrhus.**

328. Lēdaeam Hermionēn: Hermione, daughter of Helen and granddaughter of

Leda. Her home was in Lacedaemon, a district of southern Greece.

329. famulō famulam: the words are intentionally emphasized by being brought together. **mē famulō famulam Helenō:** interlocked order; App. 442. **habendam:** gerundive expressing purpose; App. 268.

330-331. illum: Pyrrhus. **ēreptae conjugis:** obj. gen.; App. 284. Hermione had been betrothed to Orestes, but was later given in marriage to Pyrrhus. **scelerum Furiis agitātus Orestēs:** on his return from the Trojan war, Agamemnon, father of Orestes, had been murdered by his own wife, Clytaemnestra, and her lover, Aegisthus. To avenge this crime, Orestes killed the guilty pair, but for

- excipit incautum *patriāsque* obtruncat *ad ārās*.
Morte Neoptolemī *rēgnōrum* reddita cessit
pars Helenō, *quī* Chāoniōs cognōmine *campōs*
 335 Chāoniamque *omnem* Trojānō *ā* Chāone *dixit*,
Pergamaque Īliacamque *jugīs hanc* addidit *arcem*.
Sed tibi quī cursum ventī, quae fāta dedēre?
Aut quisnam ignārum nostrīs deus appulit ōrīs?
Quid puer Ascanius? Superatne et vēscitur aurā?
 340 *quem tibi jam Troja —*
Ecqua tamen puerō est āmissae cūra parentis?
Ecquid in antīquam virtūtem animōsque virilis
et pater Aenēās et avunculus excitat Hector?’
Tālia fundēbat lacrimāns longōsque ciēbat
 345 *incassum flētūs, cum sēsē ā moenibus hērōs*

addō, ere, didī, dītus add*
 āmittō, ere, misī, missus let go, lose*
 appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive to (dat.)
 Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
 avunculus, ī *m.* maternal uncle†
 cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, fall to*
 Chāōn, onis *m.* son of Priam
 Chāonia, ae *f.* a region of northwestern
 Greece†
 Chāonius, a, um Chaonian, of Chaonia,
 a district of northwestern Greece†
 ciēō, ēre, civī, citus arouse, excite, pro-
 duce, stir up*
 cognōmen, inis *n.* (sur)name, title
 equis, qua, quid any(one, at all)†
 excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, catch
 excitō (1) arouse, excite, stir up
 flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, lamentation, tears
 Hector, oris *m.* Trojan leader*
 Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam

hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
 Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
 incassum in vain, uselessly†
 incautus, a, um heedless, unaware
 jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
 lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament
 Neoptolemus, ī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
 obtruncō (1) slay, kill, slaughter, butcher
 Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
 quisnam, quāenam, quidnam who (which,
 what) in the world†
 reddō, ere, didī, dītus give (back, duly),
 cede, return, render*
 superō (1) overcome, surmount, survive*
 tamen nevertheless, however, but*
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 vēscor, ī feed on, breathe (abl.)
 virilis, e manly, heroic, virile†
 virtūs, ūtis *f.* manliness, valor, virtue*

murdering his mother he was driven mad by the Furies.

332. *patriās ad ārās*: at an altar raised to Achilles at Delphi.

333. *Morte*: abl. of time; App. 322.

334. cognōmine: abl. of respect; App. 325.

335. *omnem*: for *omne*, attracted to the gender of the predicate noun Chāoniam, called the plains Chaonian and the whole land Chaonia, from Chaon, a brother of Helenus, who had been accidentally killed by him. *dixit* = *vocāvit*.

337. *venti* (*dedērunt*). *dedēre* = *dedērunt* (*cursum tibi*).

338. (*tē*) *ignārum*: *unaware* (that we lived here). *ōrīs*: dat. with compound; App. 298.

339. *Quid* (*agit*) *Ascanius*: *how fares Ascanius?* the usual Roman formula for

inquiring of one's health. *aurā*: abl. with *vēscor*; App. 342.

340. An incomplete verse and sentence, broken off for the pathetic effect. See the note on I, 534.

341. *āmissae parentis*: Creūsa; Andromache assumes that Creūsa has been killed or captured; *parentis* is obj. gen.; App. 284.

343. *avunculus Hector*: Creūsa was a sister of Hector. *excitat*: does the glory of their achievements rouse him to emulate them?

344-440. Helenus, who is both prophet and king, receives the Trojans hospitably and warns them of their coming dangers on land and sea.

344. *Tālia* (*dicta*).

Prīamidēs *multīs* Helenus comitantibus adfert,
agnōscitque suōs laetusque ad līmina dūcit,
et multum lacrimās verba inter singula fundit.

Prōcēdō et parvam Trojam simulātaque magnīs

Pergama et ārentem Xanthī cognōmine rivum

350

agnōscō, Scaeaēque amplector līmina portae.

Nec nōn et Teucrī sociā simul urbe fruuntur.

Illōs porticibus rēx accipiēbat in amplīs:

aulāi mediō libābant pōcula Bacchī

impositis aurō dapibus, paterāsque tenēbant.

355

Jamque diēs alterque diēs prōcessit, et aurae

vēla vocant tumidōque inflātur carbasus Austrō:

hīs vātem adgredior dictīs ac tālia quaesō:

adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to, present
adgredior, ī, gressus approach, address
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alter, era, erum another (of two), second*
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
amplus, a, um large, spacious, broad, full
ārēns, entis dry, parched, arid
aula, ae f. hall, court, palace
Auster, tri m. (south) wind*
Bacchus, ī m. (god of) wine
carbasus, ī f. flax, sail†
cognōmen, inis n. (sur)name, title
comitō (1) accompany, attend, escort,
follow
daps, dapis f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
fruo, ī, fructus enjoy (abl.)†
Helenus, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place (on)*
inflō (1) blow in(to), inflate, swell†
libō (1) pour (as a libation), offer

medium, (i) ī n. middle, midst, center
parvus, a, um small, little*
patera, ae f. (libation) bowl
Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*
pōculum, ī n. (drinking) cup, goblet
porta, ae f. gate, exit, portal, entrance*
porticus, ūs m. colonnade, portico
Prīamidēs, ae m. descendant of Priam
prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance, pass,
proceed
quaesō, ere, sīvī, sītus beg, seek, inquire†
rivus, ī m. stream, rivulet, brook†
Scaeus, a, um Scaean, name of a famous
gate in the walls at Troy
simulō (1) imitate, pretend, make like
singulus, a, um separate, single, one by one
socius, a, um allied, associated, friendly
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk
Xanthus, ī m. river near Troy†

347. suōs: *his fellow countrymen* = nōs. dūcit (nōs).

348. multum lacrimās fūdit: *weeps copious tears (of joy)*. multum: adverb.

349-350. magnīs (Pergamīs): dat. with simulāta. parvam, ārentem: in this reproduction of their old Trojan home, everything is on a much smaller scale than the original; the city itself is parva and the river ārēns in marked contrast with the lofty Troy and the "deep-eddy" Xanthus in Asia Minor. Xanthī: appositive gen. with cognōmine. cognōmine: abl. of quality; App. 330.

351. amplector līmina: in joy at the revival of old memories, Aeneas embraces the gateway copied after the great Scaean gate at Troy. Embracing the gate or doorpost was an ancient custom of those who had been away from home a long time.

352. Nec nōn et: *likewise also*. urbe: abl. with fruor; App. 342.

353. rēx: Helenus. accipiēbat: imperf. of repeated action; App. 351, 2; *day after day the king entertained them*, l. 356.

354. aulāi = aulae: an archaic form; App. 34, b. Observe that it has three syllables (au-lā-i) whereas aulae has only two (au-lae). (in) mediō. Bacchī: by metonymy for vinī, wine; App. 433. libābant: a ceremony regularly performed at each banquet; App. 351, 2.

355. impositis dapibus: abl. abs.; App. 343. aurō: gold = golden trays; App. 433; dat. with compound, impositis; App. 298. paterās tenēbant: a detail added for the sake of vividness.

356. diēs alterque diēs: *day after day*.

358. vātem: Helenus was a famous seer. quaesō: old form of quaerō.

- 360 'Trojugena, interpres *dīvum*, quī *nūmina* Phoebī,
quī tripodas, Clariī laurōs, quī *sīdera* sentīs
et volucrum linguās et praepetis ōmina pennae,
fāre age (*namque omnis cursum mihi prospera dīxit*
relligiō, et cūctī suāsērunt nūmine dīvī
Ītaliā petere et terrās temptāre repostās;
365 *sōla novum dictūque nefās Harpyia Celaenō*
prōdigium canit et trīstīs dēnuntiat irās
obscēnamque famem) quae pīma perīcula vitō?
Quidve sequēns tantōs possim superāre labōrēs?
Hīc Helenus caesis pīmum dē mōre iuvenēis
370 *exōrat pācem dīvum vittāsque resolvit*
sacrātī capitis, mēque ad tua līmina, Phoebe,
ipse manū multō suspēnsū nūmine dūcit,

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down),
kill
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant,
prophecy, proclaim*
Celaenō, ūs *f.* chief harpy
Clarius, a, um Clarian, of Claros, a
center of the worship of Apollo†
dēnuntiō (1) announce, foretell, threaten†
exōrō (1) entreat, beg, win, persuade†
famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
Harpyia, ae *f.* harpy, a foul and ravenous
monster with the body of a bird and
the face of a woman
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
interpres, pretis *m.* interpreter, agent†
juvencus, ī *m.* bullock, ox, steer*
laurus, ī (ūs) *f.* laurel, an evergreen sacred
to Apollo
lingua, ae *f.* tongue, language
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, rule, ritual, law*
nefās *n. indecl.* wrong, impiety, sin*
obscēnus, a, um filthy, disgusting, foul
ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign*

pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, grace, repose
penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
peric(u)lum, ī *n.* peril, danger, risk
Phoebus, ī *m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
and prophecy*
praepes, etis flying, flyer†
prōdigium, (i) ī *n.* omen, portent†
prosperus, a, um favorable, fortunate†
re(l)ligiō, ōnis *f.* religion, prophecy
repos(i)tus, a, um stored (up), remote
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, open
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive,
understand, know
suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus persuade, urge
superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
suspēnsus, a, um suspended, anxious
temptō (1) try, seek, test, attempt*
tripūs, podis *m.* tripod, oracle†
Trojugena, ae *m.* Trojan-born†
vitō (1) avoid, shun, dodge, escape
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, wreath*
volucris, is *f.* bird, fowl

359-360. Trojugena, interpres: voca-
tives. dīv(ōr)um. quī (sentis) nūmina
Phoebī, quī (sentis) tripodas, (quī sentis)
laurōs. tripodas, laurōs: sacred to
Apollo. sīdera sentis: as an astrologer.

361. volucrum linguās: ancient seers
were supposed to understand and in-
terpret the language and movements of
birds and animals.

362. fāre: imp. of for.

363-364. suāsērunt (mē) petere. repo-
s(i)tās: the uncontracted form (~~~~~)
could not be used in hexameter.

365-366. Harpyia: yi form a diph-
thong, pronounced *ue*. novum prōdigium.
dictū nefās: a horror to tell, dictū being
the abl. of the supine; App. 271.

367. vitō: for the ind. compare the
note on sequimur, III, 88, and see App.
351, 1, c; 348, a.

368. Quid sequēns: (*by*) following
what (*course*). possim: conclusion of a
future less vivid condition, the condition
being implied in sequēns; App. 381.

369. caesis juvenēis: abl. abs.

370. pācem dīvum (Phoebum): two
accusatives; App. 316. vittās resolvit:
in order that he may yield himself com-
pletely to the influence of the god, the
seer loosens the fillets, which he had worn
while sacrificing, and unbinds his gar-
ments.

372. (mē) suspēnsū multō nūmine:
deeply moved by the divine presence.

atque haec deinde canit divinō ex ōre sacerdōs:

*'Nāte deā (nam tē majōribus ire per altum
auspiciis manifesta fidēs, sic fāta deum rēx
sortitur volūitque vicēs, is vertitur ordō),
pauca tibi ē multis, quō tūtior hospita lūstrēs
aequora et Ausoniō possis cōnsidere portū,
expediām dictis: prohibent nam cētera Parcae
scīre Helenum fārīque vetat Sātūrnia Jūnō.
Principiō Italiam, quam tū jam rēre propinquam
vicinōsque, ignāre, parās invādere portūs,
longa procul longīs via dividit invia terrīs.
Ante et Trinacriā lentandus rēmus in undā
et salis Ausoniī lūstrandum nāvibus aequor
infernīque lacūs Aeaeaeque insula Circae,*

Aeaeus, a, um of Aeaea, of Colehis,
original home of Circe†

altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven

Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian†

auspiciū, (i) ī n. augury, auspice(s)†

canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant,
prophesy, proclaim*

cēterus, a, um other, rest, remaining

Circē, ēs (ae) f. famous enchantress,
daughter of the Sun, who settled on an
island off the western coast of Italy†

cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (on), set-
tle*

deinde then, thereupon, next*

dividō, ere, visī, vīsus divide, separate

divīnus, a, um divine, inspired, sacred

expediō, ire, ivī (iī), itus disentangle,
explain

fidēs, ei f. faith, fidelity, evidence*

Helenus, ī m. a prophet, son of Priam

hospitus, a, um strange; hospitable†

ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*

infernus, a, um of the underworld, in-
fernal†

insula, ae f. island

invādō, ere, sī, sus go (into), attack

invius, a, um pathless, trackless

lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere

lentō (ī) bend†

lūstrō (ī) traverse; survey; purify*

manifestus, a, um clear, evident

ordō, inis m. arrangement, order, rank*

Parcae, ārum f. the Fates

paucus, a, um little, slight, few*

principiō first(ly), in the first place

prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus forbid, hinder

propinquus, a, um near, neighboring

reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon

sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)*

sal, salis m. (n.) salt, sea, brine

Sātūrnus, a, um of Saturn, father of the
gods

sciō, ire, ivī, itus know (how), under-
stand

sortior, iri, itus obtain by lot, allot

Trīnacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian

tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*

vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*

vetō, āre, ui, itus forbid, prevent, hinder

vicinus, a, um near, close at hand†

vīcis (gen.; no nom.) f. change, alterna-
tion, fortune

374-375. *Nāte deā: goddess-born! ma-
jōribus auspiciis:* abl. of attendant
circumstance; App. 329. *tē ire:* indir.
statement with *manifesta fidēs (est)*, *it*
is clearly true; App. 263.

376. *ordō (rērum).*

377-379. *pauca expediām. quō (= ut
eō) lūstrēs et possis:* purpose; App.
359. (in) *portū.*

380. *Helenum = mē:* intentionally im-
pressive use of the third person instead of
the first. *vetat (eum = mē).*

381. *Italiam:* the eastern coast of Italy
was quite near, but not the part of Italy

where Aeneas was fated to settle; this
he must reach by a long and circuitous
journey. *rēre = rēris*, from *reor*; App.
204, 4.

381-383. *longa via invia dividit Italiam
procul (ā tē) longīs terrīs. (cujus) portūs
pāras invādere.* Line 383 is an allitera-
tive and jingling verse, to give an oracular
effect. Observe the cumulative effect of
longa procul longīs, to indicate the great
distance to be traveled.

384-385. *Ante:* with *quam* in l. 387.
lentandus (est), lūstrandum (est).

386. *infernī lacūs:* the region of

- quam tūtā possīs urbem compōnere terrā.
 Signa tibi dicam, tū condita mente tenētō:
 cum tibi sollicitō sēcrētī ad flūminis undam
 390 litoreis ingēns inventa sub ilicibus sūs
 trīgintā capitum fētūs ēnixa jacēbit,
 alba, solō recubāns, albī circum ūbera nātī,
 is locus urbis erit, requiēs ea certa labōrum.
 Nec tū mēnsārum morsūs horrēscē futurōs:
 395 fāta viam invenient aderitque vocātus Apollō.
 Hās autem terrās Italique hanc litoris ōram,
 proxima quae nostrī perfunditur aequoris aestū,
 effuge; cūncta malīs habitantur moenia Grajīs.
 Hīc et Nārycii posuērunt moenia Locri,
 400 et Sallentinōs obsēdit milite campōs

aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
 albus, a, um white*
 Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 autem but, however, moreover*
 certus, a, um certain, sure, fixed, reliable*
 compōnō, ere, posui, positus put together,
 build, compose
 condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, found;
 hide*
 effugiō, ere, fugi escape (from), avoid
 ēnitor, ī, sus (nixus) bear, give birth (to)
 fētus, ūs *m.* young, offspring, brood
 flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
 horrēscō, ere, horrui shudder (at), dread
 ilex, icis *f.* holm oak†
 inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus find, come
 upon
 Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
 jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
 litoreus, a, um of the shore†
 Locrius, a, um Locrian, Greek†

malus, a, um bad, wicked, evil*
 mēnsa, ae *f.* table*
 miles, itis *m.* soldier(y), troops
 morsus, ūs *m.* bite, eating, gnawing
 Nārycius, a, um of Naryx, a city of
 Greece†
 obsideō, ēre, sēdi, sessus besiege, beset
 perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour through,
 bathe
 proximus, a, um next, nearest, closest
 quam than, how, as*
 recubō (1) lie, recline†
 requiēs, ētis (ēi) *f.* rest, repose, respite†
 Sallentinus, a, um Sallentinian, of the
 Sallentini, an Italian tribe†
 sēcrētus, a, um secret, secluded, remote,
 lonely
 signum, ī *n.* sign, token, signal, mark*
 sollicitus, a, um anxious, worried†
 solum, ī *n.* ground, soil, earth*
 sūs, suis *m. (f.)* hog, pig, swine
 trīgintā thirty
 tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
 ūber, eris *n.* udder, bosom, fertility

Avernus in Campania, where one of the entrances to the lower world was reputed to be.

387. possīs: subj. with ante quam; App. 376, a. (in) terrā.

388. (haec signa) condita mente tenētō. tenētō: fut. imp. of teneō.

389-390. tibi sollicitō: dat. of agent with inventa, or dat. of reference; App. 302, 301. litoreis: growing on the banks (of the Tiber).

391. trīgintā capitum: gen. of definition; App. 282. fētūs: obj. of ēnixa.

392. (in) solō = in terrā = humī. albi

nātī (jacēbunt): the prophecy is fulfilled in VIII, 82.

393. ea (erit) certa requiēs.

394. horrēscē: imp.

396-398. Hās terrās, hanc ōram effuge: apparently Helenus points toward the nearest parts of Italy, inhabited by Greeks and hence called Magna Graecia, contrasted with the more remote section where Aeneas was to settle. Grajīs: pronounce Grajīs; App. 6, b; dat. of agent; App. 302.

400. milite: collective, soldiery; abl. of means.

Lyctius Idomeneus; *hinc illa ducis Meliboei*
parva Philoctetae subnixa Petelia mūrō.
Quin ubi transmissae steterint trans aequora classēs
et positīs ārīs jam vōta in litore solvēs,
 purpureō vēlāre comās adopertus amictū, 405
nē qua inter sānctōs ignīs in honōre deōrum
hostilis faciēs occurrat et ōmina turbet.
Hunc socii mōrem sacrōrum, hunc ipse tenētō;
hāc casti maneant in religiōne nepōtēs.
Ast ubi digressum Siculae tē admōverit ōrae 410
ventus, et angustī rārēscēt claustra Pelōri,
laeva tibi tellūs et longō laeva petantur
aequora circuitū; dextrum fuge litus et undās.

admoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus move to, bring to (*dat.*)†
 adoperiō, ire, ui, rtus cover†
 amictus, ūs *m.* veil, wrap, robe
 angustus, a, um narrow, strait
 castus, a, um pure, chaste, holy†
 circuitus, ūs *m.* circuit, detour†
 claustrum, i *n.* barrier, straits, bar
 coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
 digredior, i, gressus separate, depart
 dux, ducis *m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief*
 faciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, face, form*
 hostilis, e hostile, unfavorable
 Idomeneus, ei *m.* Cretan king who settled in Italy
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
 Lyctius, a, um Lyctian, of Lyctus, a Cretan city†
 Meliboeus, a, um of Meliboea, a city of Thessaly†
 mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ceremony, ritual*
 mūrus, i *m.* (city) wall, rampart*
 nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
 occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to) meet (*dat.*)

ōmen, inis *n.* omen, portent, sign*
 parvus, a, um small, little*
 Pelōrus (um), i *m. (n.)* northeastern promontory of Sicily†
 Petelia, ae *f.* city of southern Italy founded by Philoctetes†
 Philoctētēs, ae *m.* Greek leader of Meliboeus who settled in Italy†
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
 quin nay even, but that, why not*
 rārēscō, ere widen, (grow) thin†
 re(l)igiō, ōnis *f.* religion, ritual, sacred custom
 sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered*
 Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
 solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), discharge, pay*
 subnitor, i, sus (nixus) rest on, lean on (*dat.*)
 trāns across, over, beyond (*acc.*)†
 trāsmittō, ere, misi, missus send across, transmit
 turbō (1) disturb, confuse, agitate*
 vēlō (1) veil, adorn, wrap, wreath
 vōtum, i *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

401. Lyctius Idomeneus: expelled from Crete; see III, 121-123. illa: that renowned.

402. Petelia (est). mūrō: abl. of means with subnitor.

405. vēlāre: imp. passive, with middle force; veil (for yourself) your head; refers to the old Roman custom of covering the head while praying, to avoid seeing or hearing anything of evil omen (hostilis faciēs); cf. l. 407. comās: obj. of vēlāre; App. 309, a.

408. Hunc mōrem: Vergil thus assigns a Trojan origin to this good old Roman

custom. socii (tenentō). (tū) tenētō: fut. imp.

410. ōrae: dat. with compound; App. 298.

412. laeva tellūs: Sicily. tibi: dat. of agent; App. 302.

413. dextrum litus: Italy; i.e., instead of rounding the southern point of Italy, passing along the Italian coast through the straits and turning to the north, Aeneas is told to make the larger circuit around Sicily and thus avoid the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis. fuge: imp.

- 415 *Haec loca vī quondam et vastā convulsa ruīnā*
(tantum aevi longinqua valet mutāre vetustās)
dissiluisse ferunt, cum prōtinus utraque tellūs
ūna foret: vēnīt mediō vī pontus et undīs
Hesperium Siculō latus absceidit, arvaque et urbēs
lītore diductās angustō interluit aestū.
- 420 *Dextrum Scylla latus, laevum implācāta Charybdis*
obsidet, atque īmō barathrī ter gurgite vastōs
sorbet ī abruptum flūctūs rūsusque sub aurās
ērigit alternōs, et sīdera verberat undā.
At Scyllam caecīs cohibet spēlunca latebrīs
- 425 *ōra exsertantem et nāvis ī saxa trahentem.*
Prīma hominis faciēs et pulchrō pectore virgō

abruptum, ī *n.* depth, abyss, bottom†
absceidō, *ere*, *scidī*, *scissus* cut off,
 tear (off), rend†
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
aevum, ī *n.* age, life, time, eternity
alternus, *a*, *um* alternate, alternating
angustus, *a*, *um* narrow, strait
barathrum, ī *n.* abyss, chasm, pit†
caecus, *a*, *um* blind, hidden, dark*
Charybdis, *is f.* famous whirlpool near
 Scylla, between Italy and Sicily†
cohibeō, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* restrain, confine†
convellō, *ere*, *ī*, *vulsus* tear (up), shatter,
 rend
didūcō, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus* draw apart,
 separate†
dissiliō, *ire*, *uī* leap apart†
ērigō, *ere*, *rēxī*, *rēctus* raise, erect†
exsertō (1) thrust forth†
faciēs, *ēi f.* appearance, face, form*
gurgēs, *itis m.* whirlpool, gulf, abyss*
Hesperius, *a*, *um* Hesperian, western,
 Italian†
homō, *inis m. (f.)* man, mortal, human*
implācātus, *a*, *um* implacable, insatiable†
interluō, *ere* flow between, wash between†
laevus, *a*, *um* left (hand), on the left*

latebra, *ae f.* hiding place, lair, retreat
latus, *eris n.* side, flank*
longinquus, *a*, *um* long, distant†
medium, (i) *i n.* middle, midst, center
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
obsideō, *ēre*, *sēdī*, *sessus* besiege, beset
pontus, *i m.* sea; waves*
prōtinus continually, continuously, right
 on(ward)
pulcher, *chra*, *chrum* beautiful, hand-
 some, illustrious, noble*
ruīna, *ae f.* downfall, convulsion
rūsus, *um* again, anew, back(ward)*
Scylla, *ae f.* ravenous sea-monster with
 the body of a beautiful woman en-
 circled about the waist with dogs or
 wolves, and with the tail of a fish†
Siculus, *a*, *um* Sicilian, of Sicily
sorbeō, *ēre*, *uī* suck in, swallow (up)†
spēlunca, *ae f.* cave, cavern, grotto
ter thrice, three times*
utroque, *utraque*, *utrumque* each (of two),
 either*
valeō, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* be strong, be able
verberō (1) beat, lash, strike, whip†
vetustās, *ātis f.* antiquity, (lapse of) time†
virgō, *inis f.* girl, daughter, maiden*

414-417. *ferunt* (= *dicunt*) *haec loca quondam convulsa vī et vastā ruīnā dissiluisse*. *aevi* = *temporis*. *foret*: *cum* concessive; App. 379. *mediō* = *in medium*: dat. of direction; App. 306. *vī*: abl. of manner; App. 328. *undīs*: abl. of means.

418. *Hesperium latus*: *the western side (of Italy)*. *Siculō* (*latere*): *from the Sicilian (side)*.

419. *litore*: abl. of respect; App. 325; the singular for the plural, referring to

the shores on either side of the straits. *angustō aestū*: *with a narrow tideway*.

420. *Scylla* (*obsidet*).

421. (*in*) *gurgite*. *ter*: *three times* (a day).

422. (*Charybdis*) *sorbet*.

424-425. *Scyllam ōra exsertantem et nāvis trahentem*.

426. *Prima*: *in front*. *hominis faciēs* (*est*): *her appearance is that of a human*. *pectore*: abl. of quality; App. 330.

pūbe tenus, postrēma *immānī corpore* pistrīx
 delphīnum caudās uterō commissa lupōrum.
 Praestat Trīnacrīi mētās lūstrāre Pachynī
 cessantem, *longōs et circumflectere cursūs*, 430
 quam semel informem *vastō vīdisse sub antrō*
 Scyllam et caeruleīs canibus resonantia saxa.
 Praetereā, *sī qua est* Helenō prūdentia vātī,
sī qua fidēs, animum sī vērīs implet Apollō,
ūnum illud tibi, nāte deā, prōque omnibus ūnum 435
 praedicam et repetēns iterumque iterumque monēbō,
Jūnōnis magnae prīmum prece nūmen adōrā,
Jūnōnī cane vōta libēns dominamque potentem

adōrō (1) honor, entreat, worship
 antrum, *i n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
 Apollō, *inis m.* god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
 canis, *is m. (f.)* dog, hound†
 canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,
 prophesy, proclaim*
 cauda, ae *f.* tail†
 cessō (1) loiter, linger, delay, stop
 circumflectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend
 around, turn around, double†
 committō, ere, mīsī, missus join
 to(gether)
 delphin, *inis m.* dolphin, a kind of fish†
 domina, ae *f.* lady, mistress, queen
 fidēs, ei *f.* faith, trust(worthiness)*
 Helenus, *i m.* a prophet, son of Priam
 impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
 informis, e shapeless, monstrous†
 iterum again, anew, repeatedly*
 libēns, entis willing(ly), glad(ly)†
 lupus, *i m.* wolf
 lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
 mēta, ae *f.* goal, turning point, limit

moneō, ēre, ūi, itus advise, warn
 Pachynus (um), *i m. (n.)* southeastern
 promontory of Sicily†
 pistrīx, icis *f.* fish-like sea monster†
 postrēmus, a, um hindmost, last†
 potēns, entis powerful, ruling (*gen.*)*
 praedicō, ere, dixī, dictus foretell, predict
 praestō, āre, stitī, stitus stand before,
 be superior (better)
 praetereā besides, also, in addition*
 prex, precis *f.* prayer, vow, entreaty*
 prō for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
 prūdentia, ae *f.* foresight, discretion†
 pūbēs, is *f.* waist, loins; youth*
 quam than, how, as†*
 repetō, ere, ivī (ii), itus reseek, repeat,
 recall
 resonō (1) (re)sound, roar†
 Scylla, ae *f.* a sea-monster
 semel once (for all)†
 tenus up to, down to, as far as (*abl.*)
 Trinacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian
 uterus, *i m.* womb, belly
 vērūm, *i n.* truth, right(eousness)
 vōtum, *i n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

427. postrēma (faciēs est): *behind.*

428. caudās: obj. of commissa used
 as a middle; App. 309, a. The tails of
 dolphins are joined to the bodies of
 wolves. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 650-655.

"The one seemed woman to the waist,
 and fair,
 But ended foul in many a scaly fold
 Voluminous and vast, a serpent armed
 With mortal sting; about her middle
 round
 A cry of hell-hounds never ceasing barked
 With wide Cerberean mouths full loud."

429. mētās: used figuratively to in-
 dicate that they should sail around
 Pachynus as around a turning post in

a race course. (tē) lūstrāre: subj. of
 praestat; App. 258.

430. cessantem (tē): subj. of lūstrāre.

432. canibus = the dogs or wolves of
 l. 428; a touch of the poetic caprice which
 scorns an unimaginative consistency.

433. Helenō = mihi: the third person
 is used in order to be more impressive.

434. fidēs (est mihi). animum (meum).

435. ūnum: emphatic by repetition,
 as is iterum below; App. 413.

437-438. adōrā: imp. Jūnōnis, Jū-
 nōnī: emphatic by position and repeti-
 tion. cane vōta: *utter (chant) your*
prayers; Roman prayers were often made
 according to rhythmic formulas. Com-
 pare the English word *cant* from Latin
 canō. dominam potentem = Jūnōnem.

- supplicibus superā dōnīs: sīc dēnique victor
 440 Trīnacrīā fīnīs Italōs mittēre relictā.
Hūc ubi delātus Cūmaeam accesseris urbem
divinōsque lacūs et Averna sonantia silvīs,
insānam vātem aspiciēs, quae rūpe sub imā
fāta canit foliīsque notās et nōmina mandat.
 445 Quaecumque in foliīs dēscripsit carmina virgō
 digerit in numerum atque antrō sēclūsa relinquit:
illa manent immōta locīs neque ab ordine cēdunt.
Vērū eadem, versō tenuis cum cardine ventus
impulit et tenerās turbāvit jānuā frondēs,
 450 numquam deinde cavō volitantia prendere saxō

accēdō, ere, cessi, cessus go to, approach
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto*
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look
 (at)
 Avena, ōrum n. region about Lake
 Avernus in Italy†
 canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,
 prophesy, proclaim*
 cardō, inis m. hinge, pivot, socket
 carmen, inis n. song, verse, prophecy
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield (to), move*
 Cūmaeus, a, um Cumaean, of Cumae, an
 Italian city, home of the Sibyl, an an-
 cient prophetess†
 dēferō, ferre, tuli, lātus carry down,
 convey
 deinde then, thereupon, next*
 dēnique finally, at last
 dēscribō, ere, psi, ptus write (down)†
 digerō, ere, gessi, gestus distribute,
 arrange
 divinus, a, um divine, sacred, celestial
 folium, (i) n. leaf, foliage
 frōns, frondis f. leaf, frond, foliage*
 immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive, stir
 insānus, a, um insane, frenzied, inspired
 Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
 jānuā, ae f. door, gate, entrance
 lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere
 mandō (1) intrust, command, commend
 nota, ae f. mark, sign, letter, writing†
 numerus, i m. number, order, multitude*
 numquam never, at no time
 ordō, inis m. order, rank, position*
 pre(he)ndō, ere, i, ēnsus grasp, seize
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 whoever, whichever, whatever*
 rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag*
 sēclūdō, ere, si, sus shut (off, up)
 sonō, āre, ui, itus (re)sound, roar*
 superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
 tener, era, erum tender, soft, delicate
 tenuis, e thin, slight, fine
 Trinacria, ae f. Trinacria, Sicily†
 turbō (1) disturb, confuse, agitate*
 vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change*
 vērū but, truly, however
 virgō, inis f. (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
 volitō (1) fly, flutter†

439. superā: imp.

440. (ad) finis mittēre (= mittēris):
 App. 204, 4.

441-462. But Aeneas must first visit
 the Sibyl, the mad prophetess of Cumae,
 who will tell him all the rest he needs
 to know.

442. divinōs: sacred to the gods of the
 lower world. silvis: abl. of means with
 sonantia.

443. insānam vātem: the famous
 Cumaean Sibyl. Compare the note on
 furēs, II, 345.

444. notās et nōmina: written on
 leaves as prophetic utterances.

445. virgō: the Sibyl.

446. in numerum: in the order of
 occurrence of the events which she
 predicts. (in) antrō = rūpe sub imā of
 l. 443.

447. (in) locis.

448. eadem (folia): obj. of pre(he)n-
 dere, in l. 450. versō cardine (jānuae):
 abl. abs.; App. 343.

449. jānuā: when opened.

450. (in) cavō saxō = (in) antrō of
 l. 446.

nec revocāre sitūs aut jungere carmina cūrat.
Incōnsultī abeunt sēdemque ōdēre Sibyllae.
Hic tibi nē qua morae fuerint dispendia tantī,
quamvis increpitent sociī et vī cursus in altum
vēla vocet, possisque sinūs implēre secundōs,
quīn adeās vātem precibusque ōrācula poscās,
ipsa canat vōcemque volēns atque ōra resolvat.
Illa tibi Italiae populōs ventūraque bella
et quō quemque modō fugiāsque ferāsque labōrem
expediat, cursūsque dabit venerāta secundōs.
Haec sunt quae nostrā liceat tē vōce monēri.
Vāde age et ingentem factis fer ad aethera Trojam.'

455

460

abeō, ire, īi (īvi), itus go away, depart*
adeō, ire, īi (īvi), itus approach, visit
aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, heaven, ether
altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
carmen, inis n. song, verse, prophecy
cūrō (1) care (to, for), regard, heed
dispendium, (i)ī n. expenditure, cost, loss†
expediō, ire, īvi (īi), itus disentangle, explain
factum, ī n. deed, achievement, exploit*
impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy*
incōnsultus, a, um unconsulted; uncounseled†
increpitō (1) chide, challenge, rebuke
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke, unite*
licet, ēre, uīt, itum it is allowed*

modus, ī m. measure, manner, way*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
mora, ae f. delay, pause, hindrance*
ōdī, isse hate, detest, loathe
ōrāc(u)lum, ī n. oracle, prophecy
populus, ī m. people, nation, race*
poscō, ere, poposcī demand, ask (for)*
prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow*
quamvis although, however much†
quīn not that, but that, nay even, why not*
quisque, quaeque, quodque each (one), every(one)
resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose, open
revocō (1) call back, recall, restore
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess†
sinus, ūs m. fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
situs, ūs m. situation, position†
vādō, ere go, proceed, rush
veneror, āri, ātus reverence, worship

451. revocāre sitūs: *to restore (them to) their places.*

452. abeunt: the subject is general, *people who have come to consult the oracle.*
ōdēre = ōdērunt.

453-457. morae: subj. gen., *damage of delay, i.e., damage caused by delay;* App. 284; or appositional gen.; App. 281. **Hic nē qua dispendia morae fuerint tantī tibi quīn adeās vātem precibusque poscās (ut) ipsa (Sibylla) canat ōrācula. fuerint:** vol. subj.; App. 254. **tantī:** *of so great value (importance);* gen. of value; App. 292. **vī:** abl. of manner. **increpitent, vocet, possis:** concessive subjunctives introduced by **quamvis;** App. 384. **sinūs (vēlōrum).** **sinūs implēre secundōs = sinūs implēre secundis ventis;** **secundōs** thus being a transferred epithet; App. 446. **quīn**

adeās, poscās: result; App. 366; or with a negatived expression of preventing; App. 362. **(ut) canat, (ut) resolvat:** subst. clauses developed from the volitive depending on **poscās;** App. 360. **ipsa:** directly, not with leaves, as described in ll. 444 ff.

459. quō modō fugiās, ferās: indir. questions, *how you can avoid trouble (as far as possible) and how you can bear the rest;* App. 349.

460. venerāta: used passively, *modify-ing illa* in l. 458.

461. Haec sunt (dicta) quae liceat: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. **quae:** retained secondary obj. of **monēri;** App. 309, a. **tē:** subj. of **monēri.**

462. Vāde, age, fer: imperatives. **aethera:** acc. sing., a Greek form; App. 68.

- 465 *Quae postquam vātēs sic ōre effātus amicō est,*
dōna dehinc aurō gravia sectōque elephantō
imperat ad nāvīs ferrī, stipatque carinīs
ingēns argentum Dōdōnaeōsque lebētās,
lōricam cōnsertam hāmīs aurōque trilicem,
et cōnum insignis galeae cristāsque comantīs,
arma Neoptolemī. Sunt et sua dōna parentī.
 470 *Addit equōs, additque ducēs,*
rēmigium supplet, sociōs simul instruit armīs.
Intereā classem vēlīs aptāre jubēbat
Anchīsēs, fieret ventō mora nē qua ferentī.
Quem Phoebī interpres multō compellat honōre:
 475 *‘Conjugiō, Anchīsā, Veneris dignāte superbō,*
cūra deum, bis Pergameīs ērepte ruīnīs,

addō, ere, didi, ditus add*
 amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
 aptō (1) fit, equip, prepare, furnish
 argentum, i n. silver
 bis twice*
 carina, ae f. keel, ship, boat*
 comāns, antis hairy, shaggy
 compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
 conjugium, (i) i n. marriage, wedlock
 cōnsērō, ere, uī, rtus join, fasten (to-
 gether)
 cōnus, i m. cone, peak (of helmet)†
 crista, ae f. crest, plume†
 dehinc thence, thereupon, next
 dignor, āri, ātus deem worthy (abl.)
 Dōdōnaeus, a, um of Dodona, seat of a
 famous Greek oracle†
 dux, ducis m. leader, guide, pilot*
 effor, fāri, fātus speak out, say
 elephantus, i m. elephant, ivory†
 fiō, fieri, factus become, be made
 galea, ae f. helmet
 gravis, e heavy, serious, weighty*

hāmus, i m. hook, link†
 imperō (1) command, bid, order†
 insignis, e marked, distinguished*
 instruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build up,
 equip
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 interpres, etis m. interpreter, prophet
 lebēs, ētis m. basin, kettle, caldron†
 lōrica, ae f. breastplate, cuirass†
 mora, ae f. delay, pause, hindrance*
 Neoptolemus, i m. Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
 Pergameus, a, um of Pergamum, Trojan
 Phoebus, i m. Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy*
 postquam after (that), when*
 rēmigium, (i) i n. oarage, body of oarsmen
 ruīna, ae f. downfall, ruin, destruction
 secō, āre, uī, sectus cut, saw, slice*
 stipō (1) stuff, cram, stow, crowd
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
 suppleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill (up), supply†
 trilix, icis three-ply, triple†
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty*

463-505. The Trojans, richly laden with gifts, depart amid the tears and lamentations of all.

464. *dōna*: making gifts at the meeting and parting of friends was a common mark of esteem and affection. An exchange of gifts was also common, as in I, 647. *gravia*: with the final syllable lengthened under the metrical accent.

466. *Dōdōnaeōs lebētās*: such kettles as were suspended in the sacred grove at Dodona, from the sound of which when struck the priests interpreted the will of Jupiter. *lebētās*: acc. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, a.

467. *lōricam cōnsertam* etc.: a coat of mail triply woven of gold chains.

469. *sua*: appropriate; *sua* is usually reflexive, but here refers to *parentī* instead of to the subject; App. 248, a. *parentī (meō)*: Anchises.

473. *fieret*: negative purpose; App. 359. *ventō*: dat. of reference. *ferentī*: favorable.

474. *Phoebī interpres*: Helenus.

475-476. *Conjugiō*: abl. with *dignor*; App. 337, a. *dignāte*: deponent participle used in passive sense. *Anchīsā, dignāte, cūra, ērepte*: vocatives. *de-(ōr)um. bis*: compare the notes on II, 642-643.

ecce tibi Ausoniae tellūs: hanc arripe vēlīs.
 Et tamen hanc pelagō praeterlābāre necesse est:
 Ausoniae pars illa procul quam pandit Apollō.
 Vāde,' ait 'Ō fēlix nātī pietāte. Quid ultrā 480
 prōvehor et fandō surgentīs dēmoror Austrōs?'
 Nec minus Andromachē digressū maesta suprēmō
 fert pictūrātās aurī subtēmine vestīs
 et Phrygiam Ascaniō chlamydem (nec cēdit honōre)
 textilibusque onerat dōnīs, ac tālia fātur 485
 'Accipe et haec, manuum tibi quae monimenta meārum
 sint, puer, et longum Andromachae testentur amōrem.
 conjugis Hectoreae. Cape dōna extrēma tuōrum,
 Ō mihi sōla meī super Astyanactis imāgō.

Andromachē, ēs (ae) f. wife of Hector
Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and
 prophecy*

arripio, ere, uī, repts seize (upon)†

Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*

Astyanax, actis m. infant child of Hector
 and Andromache, dashed to death
 from the walls of Troy by the Greeks

Ausonia, ae f. Ausonia, Italy†

Auster, trī m. (south) wind*

cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield (to), depart;
 be inferior*

chlamys, ydis f. cloak, mantle†

dēmoror, āri, ātus delay, detain, hinder

digressus, ūs m. departure†

ecce see! look! behold!*

extrēmus, a, um final, uttermost, last*

fēlix, icis happy, blessed, fortunate*

Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan
 leader

imāgō, inis f. likeness, image, phan-
 tom*

maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
minus less

monimentum (monumentum), ī n. re-
 minder, memorial

necesse necessary; necessity†

onerō (1) burden, load, overwhelm

pandō, ere, ī, passus spread (open), dis-
 close*

Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*

pictūrō (1) embroider, picture†

pietās, ātis f. devotion, loyalty, sense of
 duty, righteousness, nobility*

praeterlābor, ī, lāpsus glide past†

prōvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry forward,
 convey

subtēmen, inis n. woof, threads†

tamen nevertheless, however, but*

testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify (to)

textilis, e woven, textile†

ultrā beyond (*acc.*); further†

vādō, ere go, proceed, rush

vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

477-478. **tibi**: ethical dat.; App. 300;
 best left untranslated. **ecce tellūs (est)**:
yonder lies the land. **hanc, hanc**: the first
hanc refers to Italy in general, including the
 part where Aeneas was destined to settle,
 the second **hanc** refers to the eastern coast
 of Italy, forbidden to Aeneas. **arripe**: imp.

478. **(ut) praeterlābāre = (ut) prae-**
terlābāris: substantive clause developed
 from the volitive; App. 204, 4; 360; it
 is subject of *necesse est*.

479. **pars illa (est) procul**: refers to
 Latium on the western coast where
 Aeneas was destined to settle.

480. **Vāde**: imp. **pietāte**: abl. of cause
 with **fēlix**; App. 332. **Quid dēmoror**
Austrōs: *why do I delay the winds*, which
 are eager to waft your ships on their way?

That is, why do I detain you from sailing
 with the favorable winds?

481. **fandō**: from *for*; gerund, abl.
 of means.

482. **digressū**: abl. of cause.

484. **honōre**: abl. of respect; App.
 325. **nec (Helenō) cēdit honōre**: *and*
she vies with Helenus in showing us honor.

485. **tālia (dicta)**.

486-488. **et haec**: *these also*, as well
 as the gifts of Helenus. **Accipe, Cape**:
 imperatives. **quae sint, et testentur**: rel.
 clauses of purpose; App. 388.

489. **sōla super**: *sole surviving*. **super**:
 adverbial = *quae superēs*. **Astyanactis**:
 at the capture of Troy, the Greeks killed
 the boy Astyanax by hurling him from
 the wall.

- 490 *Sic oculos, sic ille manus, sic ora ferēbat;
et nunc aequālī tēcum pūbēsceret aevō.¹
Hōs ego digrediēns lacrimīs adfābar obortīs:
'Vivite fēlicēs, quibus est fortūna perācta
jam sua: nōs alia ex aliīs in fāta vocāmur.*
- 495 *Vōbīs parta quiēs: nūllum maris aequor arandum,
arva neque Ausoniae semper cēdentia retrō
quaerenda. Effigiem Xanthi Trojamque vidētis
quam vestrae fēcēre manūs, meliōribus, optō,
auspiciīs, et quae fuerit minus obvia Grajīs.*
- 500 *Sī quandō Thybrim vicīnaque Thybridis arva
intrārō gentīque meae data moenia cernam,
cognātās urbēs ōlim populōsque propinquōs,
Ēpirō Hesperiam (quibus idem Dardanus auctor*

adfor, fāri, fātus address, accost*
aequālis, e equal, of the same age†
aevum, i n. age, life, time, eternity
arō (1) plow, furrow, till
auctor, ōris m. founder, author, sponsor
Ausonia, ae f. Ausonia, Italy
auspiciū, (i) i n. omen, auspice(s)
cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield (to), depart;
be inferior*
cognātus, a, um kindred, akin†
Dardanus, i m. early Trojan king
digredior, i, gressus depart, separate
effigiēs, ēi f. likeness, image, statue
Ēpirus, i f. district of northwestern Greece
fēlix, icis happy, fortunate, blessed*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
Hesperia, ae f. Hesperia, Italy, Westland
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
melior, ius better, superior
minus less

oborior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up†
obvius, a, um in the way, exposed (dat.)
ōlim once, at some time, formerly*
optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for)*
pariō, ere, peperī, partus bear, gain
peragō, ere, ēgi, āctus accomplish, fin-
ish†
populus, i m. people, nation, race*
propinquus, a, um near, neighboring
pūbēscō, ere, pūbui be a youth, grow
(up)†
quandō ever, when, since
quiēs, ētis f. rest, quiet, peace, repose*
retrō back(ward), again, anew
semper always, ever, continually*
Thybris, (id)is m. Tiber, a river of Italy
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vicinus, a, um near, neighboring
vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive
Xanthus, i m. river near Troy

490. Sic (ille ferēbat) oculos.

491. pūbēsceret: implied condition contrary to fact; App. 382. aevō: abl. of quality; App. 330. Asryanax, if he had lived, would have been about as old as his cousin Ascanius.

493. Vivite: imp. farewell! quibus: dat. of reference.

494. sua: irregularly referring to quibus instead of to the subject; App. 248, a. alia ex aliis in fāta: from one fate to another.

495. Vōbis: dat. of reference or of agent. parta (est) quiēs. arandum (est vōbis).

497. quaerenda (sunt vōbis).

498-499. fēcēre = fēcērunt. meliōribus auspiciis: (under) with better auspices

(than those of the original Troy); abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329.

499. fuerit: fut. perf., will prove to be.

500. Thybridis: gen. with vicina; App. 287.

501. intrā(ve)rō.

502-505. ōlim faciēmus cognātās urbēs populōsque propinquōs utramque ūnam Trojam animis. After the battle of Actium in 31 B.C., Augustus founded Nicopolis in Epirus to commemorate his victory. Vergil is probably alluding to this fact in this passage.

503-504. Ēpirō (cognātām et propinquam) Hesperiam. Hesperiam: in partitive apposition with populōs. quibus: dat. of possessor. idem auctor (erat), idem cāsūs (erant). utramque = ambās urbēs.

*atque idem cāsūs), ūnam faciēmus utramque
Trojam animīs: maneat nostrōs ea cūra nepōtēs.*

505

*Prōvehimur pelagō vicīna Ceraunia juxtā,
unde iter Italiam cursusque brevissimus undīs.
Sōl ruit intereā et montēs umbrantur opāci.*

Sternimur optatae gremiō tellūris ad undam

sortitī rēmōs passimque in litore siccō

510

corpora cūrāmus: fessōs sopor inrigat artūs.

Necdum orbem medium Nox Hōris ācta subibat:

haud sēgnis strātō surgit Palinūrus et omnīs

explōrat ventōs atque auribus āera captat;

sīdera cūncta notat tacitō lābentia caelō,

515

Arctūrum pluviāsque Hyadas geminōsque Triōnēs

āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, cloud, mist

Arctūrus, ī m. a bright star in the constellation Boōtes

artus, ūs m. limb, joint, body*

auris, is f. ear*

brevis, e short, brief, shallow

captō (1) (try to) catch, listen (to, for)†

Ceraunia, ōrum n. mountain range of the western coast of Greece†

cūrō (1) care (for, to), heed, refresh

explōrō (1) search (out), test, examine

gremium, (i) ī n. bosom, lap, embrace

hōra, ae f. hour, season, time†

Hyades, um f. constellation supposed to bring rain

inrigō (1) irrigate, flow into, bedew

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*

iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*

juxtā near, next (*acc.*)†*

necdum not yet

nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*

notō (1) mark, observe†

opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy†

optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*

orbis, is m. circle, orbit, earth*

Palinūrus, ī m. Trojan pilot

passim everywhere, all about*

pluvius, a, um rainy, rain-bringing

prōvehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear forward, convey

sēgnis, e slow, slothful, inactive†

siccus, a, um dry, thirsty

sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*

sopor, ōris m. sleep, slumber

sortior, iri, itus get by lot, allot

sternō, ere, strāvi, strātus lay (low), spread, stretch out*

strātum, ī n. bed, couch; pavement

tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still

Triōnēs, um m. northern constellations, the Great and Little Bear

umbrō (1) shade, shadow, cover†

unde whence, from which source*

uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*

vicinus, a, um near, neighboring

utramque: in apposition with *urbēs* and *populōs*, but attracted to the gender of *Trojam*. *animis:* abl. of respect; App. 325.

506-529. The Trojans skirt the coast of Greece to the point nearest Italy and, after a short rest, sail straight across; at dawn they catch sight of the Promised Land, which they joyfully greet as their future home.

506-507. *pelagō, undīs:* abl. of route. *iter* (est ad) *Italiam*. *brevissimus:* modifies both *iter* and *cursus*, but agrees with the nearest; the Adriatic is only some forty miles wide at this point.

508. *Sōl ruit* (in mare).

509. *Sternimur:* middle (reflexive), *we lay ourselves down*. (in) *gremiō. ad undam:* near the water.

510. *sortiti:* the hard work is distributed by lot as in I, 507-508; this is done in the evening, so that they may start during the night, if weather conditions prove favorable.

512. *orbem:* its course through the vaulted heavens. It was not yet midnight, as is seen from *necdum medium*. *hōris:* abl. of means.

513. *strātō:* abl. of separation.

514. *auribus captat:* listens to.

- armātumque aurō circumspicit Ōriōna.
 Postquam cūcta videt caelō cōnstāre serēnō,
 dat clārum ē puppī signum: nōs castra movēmus
 520 temptāmusque viām et vērōrum pandimus ālās.
Jamque rubescēbat stēllis Aurōra fugātis
cum procul obscurōs collis humilemque vidēmus
Italiam. Italiam primus conclāmat Achātēs,
Italiam laetō socii clāmōre salūtant.
 525 *Tum pater Anchīsēs magnum crātēra corōnā*
induit implēvitque merō, divōsque vocāvit
stāns celsā in puppī:
‘Dī maris et terrae tempestātumque potentēs,
ferre viām ventō facilem et spirāte secundī.’
 530 Crēbrēscunt optātae aurae portusque patēscit
 jam propior, templumque appāret in arce Minervae.

Achātēs, *ae m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*

āla, *ae f.* wing*

appāreō, *ēre, uī,* itus appear

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*

Aurōra, *ae f.* (goddess of) the dawn*

castra, *ōrum n.* camp, encampment*

celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering*

circumspiciō, *ere, spexī, spectus* look around (upon)

clārus, *a, um* clear, distinct, illustrious*

collis, *is m.* hill

conclāmō (1) shout, exclaim, cry out

cōnstō, *āre, stiti, status* stand firm, be settled†

corōna, *ae f.* garland, wreath, crown

crātēr, *ēris, acc. ēra, m.* mixing bowl

crēbrēscō, *ere, brui* become frequent, renew†

facilis, *e* easy, smooth, favorable

fugō (1) put to flight, rout, disperse

humilis, *e* low(ly), low-lying, humble†

impleō, *ēre, ēvi, ētus* fill, satisfy*

induō, *ere, uī, ūtus* put on, clothe, wreath

merum, *i n.* (unmixed) wine

Minerva, *ae f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts

obscurus, *a, um* dark, obscure, gloomy*

optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*

Ōriōn, *ōnis, acc. ōna, m.* a bright constellation, supposed to represent a famous hunter armed with shining golden weapons

pandō, *ere, i, passus* spread (open), reveal*

patēscō, *ere, patui* open (up)

postquam after (that), when*

potēs, *entis* powerful, ruling (*gen.*)*

propior, *ius* nearer, closer, nigher

rubescō, *ere, rubui* blush, reddent†

salūtō (1) greet, salute†

secundus, *a, um* second, favorable*

serēnus, *a, um* clear, calm, tranquil

signum, *i n.* sign, signal, token, mark*

spirō (1) breathe, blow, exhale

stēlla, *ae f.* star, constellation

tempestās, *ātis f.* weather, storm, season*

templum, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*

temptō (1) try, test, attempt, examine*

517. aurō: referring to Orion's belt and upraised sword composed of shining golden stars. Ōriōna: acc. sing., a Greek form; note the spondaic fifth foot; App. 395.

518. (in) caelō.

519. clārum signum: probably with a trumpet. castra movēmus: a military term, used also of naval expeditions.

523-524. Italiam: thrice repeated for effect; the Promised Land at last; cf. App. 413. clāmōre: abl. of manner. socii (mei).

525. crātēra: acc. sing., a Greek form; see note on I, 724.

527. in puppi: where the images of the patron gods of the ship were carried.

528. maris, terrae, tempestātum: objective genitives, with potentēs; App. 284.

529. (nōbis) ferte: imp. ventō: abl. of means. spirāte: imp.

530-547. The Trojans land and sacrifice according to the Trojan ritual.

530. portus: probably Portus Veneris in southeast Italy.

Vēla legunt socii et prōrās ad litora torquent.

Portus ab Eurōō flūctū curvātus in arcum,

objectae salsā spūmant aspergine cautēs,

ipse latet: geminō dimittunt braccia mūrō

535

turrīti scopuli refugitque ab litore templum.

Quattuor hīc, primum ōmen, equōs in grāmine vidī

tondentis campum lātē, candōre nivālī.

Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Bellum, Ō terra hospita, portās:

bellō armantur equī, bellum haec armenta minantur.

540

Sed tamen idem ōlim currū succēdere suētī

quadripedēs et frēna jugō concordia ferre:

spēs et pācis' ait. Tum nūmina sāncta precāmur

Palladis armisonae, quae prīma accēpit ovantis,

*arcus, ūs m. arch, bow**

armentum, i n. herd, drove (of cattle)

armisonus, a, um (re)sounding with arms†

*armō (l) arm, equip, furnish**

a(d)spergō, inis f. sprinkling, spray†

*bracchium, (i) i n. arm, forearm**

candor, ōris m. whiteness, gleam, glow†

cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, ledge†

concors, rdis harmonious, concordant†

*currus, ūs m. chariot, car**

curvō (l) curve, bend, arch, wind†

dimittō, ere, misī, missus send away,

extend

Eurōus, a, um East, Eastern†

frēnum, i n. rein, curb, bridle†

grāmen, inis n. grass, herb(age), sward

hospitus, a, um strange, hospitable

*jugum, i n. yoke, (mountain) ridge**

lātē widely, far and wide

*lateō, ēre, ui lie hid, hide, lurk**

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, choose,

*furl, gather in**

minōr, āri, ātus threaten, menace; tower

*mūrus, i m. (city) wall, rampart**

nivālis, e snow†

objiciō, ere, jēci, jectus place before

*ōlim once, (at) some time, formerly**

*ōmen, inis n. omen, portent, sign**

ovō (l) exult, rejoice, triumph

Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wis-

dom and the arts

pāx, pācis f. peace, favor, repose, grace

*portō (l) carry, bear, bring, convey**

*precor, āri, ātus pray, beg, entreat**

*prōra, ae f. prow**

quadripēs (upēs), edis m. quadruped,

horse†

quattuor four†

refugiō, ere, fūgī flee back, recede

salsus, a, um briny, salty

*sānctus, a, um sacred, holy, revered**

*scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag**

*spēs, ei f. hope, expectation**

*spūmō (l) foam, froth, spray**

succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach,

submit (to) (dat.)

suēscō, ere, suēvi, suētus accustom, be

accustomed†

*tamen nevertheless, however, but**

*templum, i n. temple, shrine, sanctuary**

tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, crop

*torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, sway**

turrītus, a, um tower-like, with towers,

turreted†

532. *Vēla legunt:* they furl their sails and then row the ships to the land.

533. *ab Eurōō flūctū:* abl. of agent, of a non-person, a rare usage; App. 333, 437.

535. *ipse (portus).* *geminō mūrō:* abl. of quality; App. 330. *dimittunt (in mare).*

536. *refugit:* as they near the shore, the temple is seen to be farther back than appeared at a distance.

537. *primum ōmen:* the first sight to

strike the eyes in a new land was often taken as an omen.

538. *candōre:* abl. of quality.

540. *bellō:* dat. of purpose; App. 303. *bellum:* observe the rhetorical repetition; App. 413.

541-542. *idem quadripedēs suētī (sunt) succēdere currū.* *currū:* dat. with compound; App. 298. *jugō:* abl. of means.

543. *spēs (est) et (also) pācis.*

544. *Palladis armisonae:* they had landed near a temple of Minerva at

- 545 *et capita ante ārās Phrygiō vēlāmur amictū,*
praeceptisque Helenī, dederat quae maxima, rīte
Jūnōnī Argivae jussōs adolēmus honōrēs.
- Haud mora, continuō perfectīs ordine vōtīs*
cornua vēlātārū obvertimus antennārū,
 550 *Grajugenumque domōs suspectaque linquimus arva.*
Hinc sinus Herculeī (sī vēra est fāma) Tarentī
cernitur, attollit sē dīva Lacīnia contrā,
Caulōnisque arcēs et nāvifragum Scylacēum.
Tum procul ē flūctū Trinacria cernitur Aetna,
 555 *et gemitum ingentem pelagī pulsātaque saxa*
audīmus longē frāctāsque ad litora vōcēs,
exsultantque vada atque aestū miscentur harēnae.

adoleō, ēre, uī, adultus worship, burn
 aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
 Aetna, *ae f.* volcano in Sicily†
 amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, robe, garment
 antenna, *ae f.* sail-yard†
 Argivus, *a, um* Argive, Greek
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
 Caulōn, ōnis *m.* city of South Italy†
 continuō immediately, forthwith
 contrā opposite, in reply (to) (*acc.*)*
 cornū, ūs *n.* horn, tip, end
 exsultō (1) leap up, rejoice, exult
 frangō, ere, frēgī, fractus break, smash*
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
 Grajugena, *ae m.* Grecian-born, Greek†
 harēna, *ae f.* sand, beach*
 Helenus, *i m.* a prophet, son of Priam
 Hercules, *a, um* Herculean, of Hercules,
 god of strength, son of Jupiter and
 Alcmena, celebrated for his twelve
 labors while on earth†
 Lacinius, *a, um* of Lacinium, a promon-
 tory of South Italy with a temple of
 Juno†
 linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert*
 longē far (away), at a distance*

miscēō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
 mora, *ae f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
 nāvifragus, *a, um* ship-wrecking†
 obvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward†
 ordō, inis *m.* order, arrangement, row*
 perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, accom-
 plish
 Phrygius, *a, um* Phrygian, Trojan*
 praeceptum, *i n.* precept, command
 pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, batter†
 rite duly, according to custom
 Scylacēum, *i n.* city in southern Italy†
 sinus, ūs *m.* fold, bosom, bay, hol-
 low*
 suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look up at;
 suspect
 Tarentum, *i n.* city of southern Italy,
 founded by Hercules†
 Trinacrius, *a, um* Trinacrian, Sicilian
 vadum, *i n.* shallow, depths (of waters)
 vēlō (1) veil, cover (the face), wrap, equip
 with sails
 vērus, *a, um* true, real, genuine, hon-
 est*
 vōtum, *i n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offer-
 ing*

Castrum Minervae; see l. 531. accēpit
 (nōs).

545. *capita*: object of the middle verb
vēlāmur, *we veil* (for ourselves); App.
 309. They thus follow the instructions
 given in ll. 405-409.

546. *praeceptis*: according to the be-
 hests; *abl.* of accordance; App. 326.
maxima: (as) most important.

547. *Jūnōnī Argivae*: Argos was a
 famous center of the worship of Juno.

548-569. They sail southward along
 the eastern coast of Italy and of Sicily to
 Mt. Etna, where they land.

548. *Haud mora* (est). *ordine*: *in*
due form.

549. *cornua antennārū*: the tips of
 the yards. Note the spondaic fifth foot;
 App. 395.

550. *Grajugen(ār)um*.

552. *diva Lacīnia* = Juno; here refers
 to a temple of Juno on the promontory
 of Lacinium.

553. *arcēs* (sē attollunt).

554. *ē flūctū*: (rising) from the
 waves.

555. *pulsāta* (undīs).

556. *vōcēs* (undārūm): the roar of the
 breakers.

*Et pater Anchīsēs: 'Nimīrum hīc illa Charybdis:
hōs Helenus scopulōs, haec saxa horrenda canēbat.
Ēripite, Ō socii, pariterque insurgite rēmīs.'*

560

*Haud minus ac jussī faciunt, primusque rudentem
contorsit laevās prōram Palinūrus ad undās;
laevam cūcta cohors rēmīs ventīsque petiuit.
Tollimur in caelum curvātō gurgite, et īdem
subductā ad mānis īmōs dēsēdimus undā.*

565

*Ter scopulī clāmōrem inter cava saxa dedēre,
ter spūmam ōlisam et rōrantia vīdimus astra.
Intereā fessōs ventus cum sōle reliquit,
ignārīque viāe Cyclōpum adlābimur ōrīs.*

*Portus ab accessū ventōrum immōtus et ingēns
ipse: sed horrificis juxtā tonat Aetna ruīnis,
interdumque ātram prōrumpit ad aethera nūbem*

570

accessus, ūs *m.* approach, access†
adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to (*dat.*)
aethēr, eris, *acc. era*, *m.* upper air, sky,
heaven*
Aetna, ae *f.* volcano of Sicily
astrum, ī *n.* star, constellation*
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,
prophecy, proclaim*
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
Charybdis, is *f.* whirlpool opposite Scylla,
between Sicily and Italy
cohors, rtis *f.* troop, mass, fleet†
contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl
curvō (1) curve, bend, arch, wind
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-eyed
giants on the eastern coast of Sicily
near Mt. Etna†
dēsīdō, ere, sēdī sink down, subside†
ēlīdō, ere, sī, sus dash (out, up)†
gurgis, itis *m.* whirl(pool, wind), depth*
Helenus, ī *m.* a prophet, son of Priam
horrendus, a, um dreadful, horrible*
horrificus, a, um terrifying, horrify-
ing
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable

insurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise (on)
(*dat.*)
interdum at times, meanwhile
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
juxtā near, next (*acc.*); close at hand*
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
minus less
nimīrum doubtless, no wonder, of course†
nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
pariter equally, all together, in unison,
side by side*
prōra, ae *f.* prow*
prōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break forth,
shoot forth
rōrō (1) drip with dew, be dewy†
rudō, ere, īvī (īi), itus roar, creak†
ruīna, ae *f.* downfall, ruin; convulsion
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray
subdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus withdraw
(from beneath), remove
ter thrice, three times*
tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar†

558. hīc (est) illa Charybdis.

559. Helenus (canēbat), (Helenus)
canēbat.

560. Ēripite (vōs), insurgite: impera-
tives.

561. ac: than.

564. (nōs) idem.

565. subductā undā: abl. abs., imply-
ing cause.

566. dedēre = dedērunt.

568. cum sōle: at sundown. (nōs)
fessōs.

569. Cyclōpum ōrīs: *dat.* with com-
pound; the east coast of Sicily near Mt.
Etna.

570-587. The Trojans pass an uneasy
night in the neighborhood of the volcano.

570-571. Portus (est). ingēns ipse:
spacious (in) itself.

571. ruīnis: downfall (of lava, etc.);
abl. of cause.

572. nūbem: cognate *acc.* with prō-
rumpit; App. 313. Compare rumpit

- turbine fūmantem piceō et candente favillā,
attollitque globōs flammārum et sīdera lambit,
575 interdum scopulōs āvulsaque viscera montis
ērigit ērūctāns, liquefactaque saxa sub aurās
cum gemitū glomerat fundōque exaestuat īmō.
Fāma est Enceladī sēmustum fulmine corpus
urgērī mōle hāc, ingentemque īnsuper Aetnam
580 impositam ruptīs flammam expīrāre camīnis,
et fessum quotiēns mūtet latus, intremere omnem
murmure Trīnacriam et caelum subtexere fūmō.
Noctem illam tēctī silvīs immānia mōnstra
perferimus, *nec quae sonitum det causa vidēmus.*
585 *Nam neque erant astrōrum ignēs nec lūcidus aethrā*
sīdereā polus, obscurō sed nūbila caelō,

aethra, *ae f.* radiance, bright light†
Aetna, *ae f.* volcano of Sicily
astrum, *i n.* star, constellation*
attollō, *ere* lift, rear, raise*
āvellō, *ere, (vuls) i, vulsus* tear away
caminus, *i m.* furnace, chimney†
candēns, *entis* shining, white, hot†
causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, occasion*
Enceladus, *i m.* one of the fire-breathing
giants who attempted to capture
heaven, overthrown by Jupiter's thun-
derbolt and buried under Mt. Etna†
ērigō, *ere, rēxi, rēctus* raise, upheave
ērūctō (1) belch forth, vomit forth†
exaestuō (1) boil forth, seethe, surge†
expīrō (1) breathe out, exhale, die†
favilla, *ae f.* hot ashes, embers†
fulmen, *inis n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
fūmō (1) smoke, steam, fume, reek
fūmus, *i m.* smoke, vapor, fume, fog
fundus, *i m.* bottom, foundation, base
gemitus, *ūs m.* groan, roar, lament*
globus, *i m.* ball, globe, sphere†
glomerō (1) roll together, assemble
impōnō, *ere, posui, positus* place upon,
pile upon*
īnsuper (from) above
interdum at times, meanwhile
intremō, *ere, ui* tremble, quake, shake†

lambō, *ere* lick, lap
latus, *eris n.* side, flank*
liquefaciō, *ere, fēcī, factus* melt, liquefy†
lūcidus, *a, um* bright, clear, shining†
mōlēs, *is f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mōnstrum, *i n.* portent, marvel, mon-
ster*
murmur, *uris n.* murmur, roar, rumble
mūtō (1) (ex)change, turn, transform*
nūbila, *ōrum n.* clouds, cloudiness†
obscurus, *a, um* dark, gloomy, obscure*
perferō, *ferre, tuli, lātus* endure
piceus, *a, um* pitchy, black†
polus, *i m.* pole, sky, heaven
quotiēns as often as†
rumpō, *ere, rūpi, ruptus* break, burst
(forth)*
scopulus, *i m.* rock, cliff, crag*
sēmustus, *a, um* half-burnt, half-con-
sumed†
sidereus, *a, um* starry, of the stars†
sonitus, *ūs m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
subtexō, *ere, ui, xtus* weave beneath,
veil (from below)†
tegō, *ere, tēxi, tēctus* cover, bury, hide*
Trīnacia, *ae f.* Trinacria, Sicily
turbō, *inis m.* whirl (pool, wind), storm
urgeō, *ēre, ursi* press (upon), urge, incite
viscus, *eris n.* vitals, bowels, flesh

vōcem, II, 129; III, 246. aethra: acc.
sing., a Greek form.

577. fundō: abl. of separation.

578-580. corpus expīrāre flammam:
thus the ancients accounted for the
volcano by the story of a great fire-
breathing giant buried beneath the
mountain.

578. Fāma est = dicunt, and so fol-
lowed by indir. disc.; App. 390.

579. mōle hāc (montis).

581. mūtet latus: turns over; thus the
ancients accounted for earthquakes, by
the story of a great giant buried alive
who shook the earth when he tried to
turn over.

583. mōnstra: the mysterious noises.

585-586. polus (erat) lūcidus. aethrā:
abl. of cause. nūbila (erant) caelō.
caelō: dat. of possessor or abl. of place.

et lūnam in nimbō nox intempesta tenēbat.

Postera jamque diēs primō surgēbat Eōō
ūmentemque Aurōra polō dīmōverat umbram,
cum subito ē silvīs maciē cōnfecta suprēmā 590
ignōtī nova forma virī miserandaque cultū
prōcēdit supplexque manūs ad litora tendit.
Respicimus. Dīra inluviēs immissaque barba,
cōnsertum tegimen spīnīs: *at cētera Grajus,*
et quondam patrīs ad Trojam missus in armīs. 595
Isque ubi Dardaniōs habitūs et Trōia vidit
arma procul, paulum aspectū conterritus haesit
continuitque gradum; mox sēsē ad litora praeceps
cum flētū precibusque tulit: 'Per sīdera testor,
per superōs atque hoc caelī spirābile lūmen, 600
tollite mē, Teucrī; quāscumque abdūcite terrās:

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead away, carry away†

n(d)spectus, ūs m. appearance, sight

Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of the) dawn*

barba, ae f. beard, whiskers

cēterus, a, um other, rest, remaining

cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish,

finish, do thoroughly, wear out†

cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus fasten, join

conterreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify†

contineō, ēre, uī, tentus hold together, check

cultus, ūs m. dress, mode of life†

Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*

dimoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move apart, disperse†

dīrus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*

Eōus, i m. eastern star, morning star, dawn

flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament

forma, ae f. form, shape, beauty*

gradus, ūs m. step, gait, stride, rung

Grajus, a, um Greek*

habitus, ūs m. garb, appearance, dress

haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to, fast), halt*

ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange

immittō, erē, misī, missus let go, let grow

inluviēs, ēi f. filth, dirt, squalor†

intempestus, a, um unseasonable, gloomy†

lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight*

maciēs, ēi f. leanness, emaciation†

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*

mox soon, presently

nimbus, i m. (rain-)cloud*

paulum a little, slightly†

polus, i m. pole, sky, heaven

posterus, a, um following, rear, next

praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*

prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow*

prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque

whoever, whichever, whatever; any*

respiō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back), look at*

spīna, ae f. thorn, backbone†

spirābilis, e breathable, vital†

subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*

supplex, icis suppliant, humble*

teg(i)men, inis n. covering, garment

testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify

Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*

ūmēns, entis dewy, wet†

587. nox intempesta: the dead of night.

588-611. While preparing to set sail the Trojans discover Achaemenides, a Greek who had been deserted by Ulysses when he escaped from the cave of the Cyclops.

588. primō Eōō: at daybreak, abl. of time.

591. nova: strange.

593. Respicimus: the Trojans were departing when their attention is called by the appearance of the strange figure, and they look back. inluviēs (erat illi), barba (erat illi).

594. cōnsertum (erat). cētera: acc. of respect; App. 311. Grajus (erat).

599. testor (vōs) = ōrō, precor.

600. lūmen = āera.

601. tollite mē (vōbiscum): take me (with you). (ad) quāscumque terrās.

- hoc sat erit. / Scio mē Danaīs ē classibus ūnum
et bellō Īliacōs fateor petiisse penātis.*
 605 *Prō quō, sī sceleris tanta est injūria nostrī,
spargite mē in fluctūs vastōque immergite pontō;
sī pereō, hominum manibus periisse juvābit.*
*Dixerat et genua amplexus genibusque volūtāns
haerēbat. Quī sit fārī, quō sanguine crētus,
hortāmur, quae deinde agitet fortūna fatērī.*
 610 *Ipse pater dextram Anchīsēs haud multa morātus
dat juvenī atque animum praesentī pignore firmat.*
Ille haec dēpositā tandem formīdine fātur:
*'Sum patriā ex Ithacā, comes infēlicis Ulixī,
nōmine Achaemenidēs, Trojam genitōre Adamastō*
 615 *paupere (mānsissetque utinam fortūna!) profectus.*

Achaemenidēs, *ae m.* comrade of Ulysses,
rescued by Aeneas from the land of the
Cyclopes†

Adamastus, *i m.* father of Achaemenides†
agitō (1) drive, pursue, agitate, harass
amplector, *i, plexus* embrace, enfold*
crēscō, *ere, crēvi, crētus* grow, spring
deinde then, thereupon, next*
dēpōnō, *ere, posuī, positus* lay aside
fateor, *ēri, fassus* confess, admit
firmō (1) confirm, strengthen, encourage
formidō, *inis f.* fear, terror, fright, dread
genū, *ūs n.* knee
haereō, *ēre, haesī, haesus* stick (to),
cling (to) (*dat.*)*
homō, *inis m. (f.)* man, mortal, human*
hortor, *ārī, ātus* encourage, urge, incite*
Īliacus, *a, um* Trojan, Ilían*
immergō, *ere, rsī, rsus* plunge into (*dat.*)†
injūria, *ae f.* wrong, injury, injustice
Ithaca, *ae f.* island-kingdom of Ulysses,
wily Greek leader

juvenis, *is m. (f.)* youth, young (man,
woman)*

juvō, *āre, jūvi, jūtus* help, please*
moror, *ārī, ātus* delay, hesitate, detain*
patria, *ae f.* fatherland, country*
pauper, *eris* poor, needy
penātēs, *ium m.* household gods*
pereō, *ire, ii (ivī), itus* perish, die
pignus, *oris n.* pledge, token, security†
pontus, *i m.* sea, waves*
praesēns, *entis* present, immediate
prō for, in behalf of, before (*abl.*)*
proficiscor, *i, fectus* set out, go
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
scelus, *eris n.* crime, guilt, sin, villainy*
sciō, *ire, ivi, itus* know (how), under-
stand
spargō, *ere, rsī, rsus* scatter, strew*
Ulixēs, *is (ei, i) m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek
leader*
utinam would that! O that!
volūtō (1) roll (over and over), revolve

602. Sciō: with final vowel irregularly
short. mē (esse).

605. spargite, immergite: imperatives.
(in) pontō.

606. pereō hominum: hiatus; App.
399. juvābit (mē).

607-609. genua (nostra) amplexus
genibus (suis) volūtāns (nōbis) haerēbat.
hortāmur (illum) fārī quī (= quis) sit
(ille) (et) quō sanguine (sit) crētus.
(hortāmur eum) fatērī quae fortūna
(eum) agitet.

611. praesentī pignore: by an im-
mediate pledge (of friendship); i.e., the
right hand just given him by Anchises.

612-654. Warned by Achaemenides of
the ferocity of the Cyclopes, the Trojans
immediately set sail, taking Achaemeni-
des with them.

613. infēlicis: from the point of view
of a Greek.

614-615. nōmine: *abl.* of respect;
App. 325. (ad) Trojam. genitōre pau-
pere: *abl. abs.*; because of my father's
poverty; said to excuse his part in the
Trojan War and to win the sympathy
of his hearers. Compare Sinon's tale
to the same effect, II, 87. mānsisset
utinam fortūna: *opt. subj.*; App. 253;

*Hic mē, dum trepidi crūdēlia līmina linquunt,
 immemorēs sociū vastō Cyclōpis in antrō
 dēseruēre. Domus saniē dapibusque cruentis,
 intus opāca, ingēns. Ipse arduus, atque pulsat
 sīdera (dī tālem terrīs āvertite pestem!)* 620
*nec vīsū facilis nec dictū adfābilis ūllī;
 vīsceribus miserōrum et sanguine vēscitur ātrō.
 Vīdī egomet duo dē numerō cum corpora nostrō
 prēnsa manū magnā mediō resupīnus in antrō
 frangeret ad saxum, saniēque aspersa natārent* 625
*līmina; vīdī ātrō cum membra fluentia tābō
 manderet et tepidī tremarent sub dentibus artūs —
 haud impūne quidem, nec tālia passus Ulixēs
 oblitusve suī est Ithacus discriminē tantō.
 Nam simul explētus dapibus vīnōque sepultus* 630

adfābilis, e may be addressed, may be
 spoken to, approachable, affable†
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto*
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
 artus, ūs m. joint, limb, body*
 a(d)spērgō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle†
 āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn aside, avert*
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter*
 cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
 Cyclōps, ōpis m. one of a race of one-
 eyed, man-eating giants in Sicily
 daps, dapis f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
 dēns, dentis m. tooth†
 dēserō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake*
 discrimen, inis n. crisis, danger, dis-
 tinction, difference
 duo, ae, o two, a pair*
 expleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, stuff, fulfil
 facilis, e easy, endurable, favorable
 fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow, stream
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, smash,
 crush*
 immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful
 impūne with impunity, without punish-
 ment†
 intus within, on the inside

Ithacus, i m. native of Ithaca, Ulysses
 linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert*
 mandō, ere, i, mānsus crunch, chew†
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body*
 natō (1) swim, float, overflow†
 numerus, i m. number, order*
 obliviscor, i, litus forget (gen.)
 opācus, a, um dark, gloomy, obscure
 patior, i, passus suffer, endure, permit*
 pestis, is f. plague, curse, scourge
 pre(he)ndō, ere, i, ēnsus seize, grasp
 pulsō (1) beat, smite, lash, batter
 quidem indeed, surely, at least†
 resupīnus, a, um supine, flat on the
 back
 saniēs, ēi f. blood, gore
 sepeliō, ire, ivi (ii), sepultus bury, inter
 tābum, i n. corruption, gore
 tepidus, a, um warm, tepid
 tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
 trepidus, a, um trembling, alarmed
 Ulixēs, is (ei, i) m. Ulysses, a wily Greek
 leader*
 vēscor, i feed on (abl.)
 vinum, i n. wine*
 vīscus, eris n. vitals, flesh, bowels

would that our fortune had remained, so
 that it would not have been necessary
 for me to go forth as a soldier of for-
 tune!

616. dum: regularly with the pres.
 ind.; App. 372. trepidi (socii).

617. immemorēs (mei). Cyclōpis:
 Polyphemus was the name of this particu-
 lar Cyclops.

618 dēseruēre = dēseruērunt. Domus
 (Cyclōpis est). saniē, dapibus: abla-
 tives of quality; App. 330

619. Ipse (Cyclōps est) arduus.

620. dī: voc. āvertite: imp.

621. vīsū, dictū: supines; ablatives of
 respect; App. 271. ūllī: dat. of refer-
 ence.

622. vīsceribus, sanguine: ablatives
 with vēscor; App. 342.

628. passus (est).

629. sui: gen. with obliviscor; App.
 288; forgot himself, i.e., his accustomed
 cunning.

630. simul (atque): as soon as.

- cervicem inflexam posuit, jacuitque per antrum
immēsus sanie[m] ēructāns et frusta cruentō
per somnum commixta merō, nōs magna precātī
nūmina sortitīque vicēs ūnā undique circum
635 fundimur, et tēlō lūmen terebrāmus acūtō
ingēns quod torvā solum sub fronte latēbat,
Argolicī clipei aut Phoebeāe lampadis instar,
et tandem laetī sociōrum ulciscimur umbrās.
Sed fugite, Ō miserī, fugite atque ab litore fūnem
640 rumpite.
Nam quālis quantusque cavō Polyphēmus in antrō
lānigerās claudit pecudēs atque ūbera pressat,
centum aliū curva haec habitant ad litora vulgō
infandī Cyclōpes et altīs montibus errant.
645 Tertia jam lūnae sē cornua lūmine complent

acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, acute
antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto*
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
centum hundred*
cervix, icis f. neck
claudō, ere, si, sus shut (in), (in)close*
clipeus, i m. shield, buckler*
commisceō, ēre, ui, mixtus mix, mingle†
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete
cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
curvus, a, um curved, curving, arched*
Cyclōps, ōpis m. one of a race of one-
eyed, man-eating giants
ēructō (1) belch out, vomit (forth)
frōns, frontis f. forehead, front, brow*
frustum, i n. piece, fragment, morsel
fūnis, is m. rope, cable, cord
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
immēsus, a, um enormous, immense
infandus, a, um unspeakable, accursed
inflectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, turn†
instar n. likeness, appearance (gen.)
jaceō, ēre, ui, itus lie (low, outspread)*
lampas, adis f. torch, lamp, light†
lāniger, era, erum wool-bearing, woolly†

lateō, ēre, ui lie hid, hide, lurk*
lūna, ae f. moon, moonlight*
merum, i n. (unmixed) wine
pecus, udis f. animal, member of flock*
Phoebeus, a, um of Phoebus (Apollo),
god of light, music, and prophecy†
Polyphēmus, i m. a one-eyed, man-eating
giant, one of the Cyclopes†
precor, āri, ātus pray (to, for), entreat*
pressō (1) press, squeeze, crush†
quālis, e of what sort, what kind*
quantus, a, um how great, how much,
as great as*
rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst
(forth)*
saniēs, ēi f. blood, gore
sortior, iri, itus obtain by lot, allot
terebrō (1) bore, pierce
tertius, a, um third*
torvus, a, um fierce, scowling, grim†
ūber, eris n. udder, breast, fertility
ulciscor, i, ultus avenge, punish
ūnā together, at the same time
undique on (from) all sides*
vicis (gen.; no nom.) f. change, alterna-
tion; danger
vulgō commonly, everywhere†

631. (Cyclōps) posuit. per: denoting the huge size of the monster.

633. merō: given to the Cyclopes by Ulysses.

634. vicēs (nostrās): the part each is to play in the following action.

635. tēlō: a sharpened stake, with blazing point. lūmen = oculus, as often.

636. latēbat: the deep-set eye seemed to hide beneath his beetling brow.

637. Argolicī clipei (instar): the clipeus was a large round shield, bright

and shining, and big enough to cover the body of a man. Phoebeāe lampadis: the sun; gen. with instar, referring to the size and dazzling effect of the Cyclops's eye.

639-640. fugite, rumpite: imperatives.

641-643. quālis quantusque (est) Polyphēmus (qui) claudit, centum (talēs tantique) alii habitant.

644. (in) montibus. Cyclōpēs: with short ē, a Greek form; App. 65, a.

645. Tertia: translate as though an

*cum vitam in silvīs inter dēserta ferārum
lūstra domōsque trahō, vastōsque ab rūpe Cyclōpas
prōspiciō sonitumque pedum vōcemque tremēscō.
Victum infēlicem, bācās lapidōsaque corna,
dant rāmī, et vulsīs pascunt rādīcibus herbae.
Omnia conlūstrāns hanc primum ad litora classem
cōspexī venientem. Huic mē, quaecumque fuisset,
addixī: satis est gentem effūgisse nefandam.
Vōs animam hanc potius quōcumque absūmite lētō.'*

650

*Vix ea fātus erat summō cum monte vidēmus
ipsū inter pecudēs vastā sē mōle moventem
pāstōrem Polyphēmum et litora nōta petentem,
mōnstrum horrendum, informe, ingēns, cui lūmen adēptum.*

655

absūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume, de-
stroy
addicō, ere, dixī, dictus assign to, surren-
der†
adimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus remove†
bāca, ae f. berry†
conlūstrō (1) light up, survey, traverse†
cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look
at
cornū, ī n. cornel berry†
Cyclōps, ōpis m. one of a race of one-
eyed, man-eating giants
dēsērō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
effugiō, ere, fūgī escape, shun, avoid
fera, ae f. wild beast, animal
herba, ae f. herb(age), grass, plant*
horrendus, a, um horrifying, horrible*
informis, e shapeless, monstrous
lapidōsus, a, um stony, hard†
lētum, ī n. death, destruction, ruin*
lūstrum, ī n. bog, fen, lair†
mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, bulk, bur-
den*

mōnstrum, ī n. portent, monster, mar-
vel*
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, terrible
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus feed (on), graze
pāstor, ōris m. shepherd, herdsman
pecus, udīs f. animal, member of a
herd*
Polyphēmus, ī m. a one-eyed, man-eating
giant, one of the Cyclopes
potius rather, preferably†
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus discern,
look forth (on)
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
whoever, whichever, whatever*
rādix, icis f. root
rāmūs, ī m. branch, bough, twig*
rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag*
sat(is) sufficient(ly), enough*
sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, crash, noise*
tremēscō, ere tremble (at), shake†
vellō, ere, vulsī, vulsus pluck, pull (up)
victus, ūs m. food, victuals, living

adverb, for the third time; i.e., the moon
has been full three times since . . .

646-647. cum trahō: English employs
the perfect, since I have been dragging
(out). The present tense is used, as in
French, to indicate that this condition
continues into the present: I am still
dragging (out); App. 351, 1, b.

650. dant (mihi), pascunt (mē). vul-
sīs rādīcibus: abl. of means.

652. quaecumque fuisset: whatever it
should be, implied indir. disc.; App. 390.

653. gentem nefandam = the Cyclopes.

654. hanc (meam) animam = vitam.
potius (quam mē relinqūdis). absūmite:
imp.

655-714. Frightened by the appear-
ance of Polyphēmus and the other
Cyclopes, the Trojans flee in terror, but
remembering the advice of Helenus,
they avoid the dangers of Scylla and
Charybdis and sail around the eastern,
southern, and western coast of Sicily to
Drepanum, where Anchises dies.

655. summō (in) monte.

656. vastā mōle: abl. of quality or
manner; App. 330, 328.

658. A shaggy verse, corresponding
to the sense. cui: dat. of separation;
App. 305. lūmen (= oculus) adēptum
(erat).

- Trunca *manum* pinus regit et *vestigia* firmat;
 660 *lāniger*ae comitantur ovēs; *ea sōla* voluptās
sōlāmenque malī.
 Postquam *altōs* tetigit *flūctūs* et ad *aequora* vēnit,
lūminis effossī fluidum lavit inde cruōrem
 dentibus infrendēns gemitū, graditurque per *aequor*
 665 *jam* *mediū*, necdum *flūctus* latera ardua tīnxit.
Nōs *procul* inde *fugam* trepidī celerāre receptō
 supplece *sic* meritō tacitūque incidere fūnem,
 vertimus et prōnī certantibus *aequora* rēmīs.
Sēnsit, et ad sonitum *vōcis* *vestigia* torsit.
 670 *Vērūm* ubi *nūlla* datur *dextrā* adfectāre potestās
nec potis *Īoniōs* *flūctūs* *aequāre* sequendō,

adfectō (1) grasp (at), seize†
 aequō (1) equal(ize), match, even, level*
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
 celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
 certō (1) strive, struggle, vie
 comitor, āri, ātus accompany, attend,
 escort, follow*
 cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
 dēns, dentis *m.* tooth
 effodiō, ere, fōdi, fossus dig out, gouge
 out, excavate
 firmō (1) strengthen, support
 fluidus, a, um flowing, liquid, fluid†
 fūnis, is *m.* rope, cable, cordage
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
 gradior, ī, gressus walk, stride, march,
 go
 incidō, ere, ī, sus cut†
 inde then(ce), thereupon, next*
 infrend(e)ō, ēre gnash, grate†
 Īonius, a, um Ionian, a sea off the western
 coast of Greece
 lāniger, era, erum wool-bearing, woolly
 latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
 lavō, āre (ere), (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash†
 malum, ī *n.* trouble, evil, woe, misfor-
 tune*
 mereor, ēri, itus deserve, earn, merit*

necdum not yet
 ovis, is *f.* sheep, ewe†
 pinus, ūs (ī) *f.* pine tree†
 postquam after (that), when*
 potestās, ātis *f.* power, ability, oppor-
 tunity†
 potis, e able, powerful†
 prōnus a, um bending forward, sloping
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus take (back),
 welcome, receive*
 regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, guide*
 sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus perceive, under-
 stand, feel
 sōlāmen, inis *n.* solace, consolation†
 sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, roar, crash, noise*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
 tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, still
 tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus touch, reach*
 ting(u)ō, ere, tīnxi, tīnctus wet, tinge
 torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, whirl, sway,
 turn*
 trepidus, a, um trembling, alarmed
 truncus, a, um lopped, trimmed†
 verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*
 vērūm but, indeed, truly
 vestigium, (i)ī *n.* (foot)step, trace, track*
 voluptās, ātis *f.* pleasure, joy, delight†

659. *manum*: i.e., he uses the trunk of a pine tree as a cane.

660. (illum) comitantur. *ea* (erat illi): *ea*, although referring to ovēs, is attracted into the number and gender of the predicate noun voluptās; App. 240, a.

662. *aequora* (alta).

663. *inde*: with water from the sea.

664. *dentibus*: abl. of means. *gemitū*: abl. of manner.

666-667. *celerāre*, *incidere*: historical infinitives; App. 257. *receptō* supplece:

abl. abs., referring to Achaemenides. *sic meritō*: having deserved (it, by warning us of the danger).

668. *vertimus et* = *et vertimus*. *rēmīs*: abl. of means.

669. (Polyphēmusid) sēnsit. *vōcis*: the splash (of the oars).

670. *adfectāre* (nōs) *potestās*: for the prose construction *adfectandī* (nōs) *potestās*; App. 264.

671. *potis* (est Polyphēmus) = *potest* Polyphēmus. *sequendō* (nōs).

clāmōrem immēnsūm *tollit*, *quō* *pontus et omnēs*
contremuēre undae, *penitusque* *exterrita tellūs*
Italīae *curvisque* *immūgiit* *Aetna cavernis*.

At genus ē silvīs *Cyclōpum et montibus altīs*
excitum ruit ad portūs et litora *complent*.

675

Cernimus *astantis nēquiquam lūmine* *torvō*
Aetnaeōs frātrēs caelō capita alta ferentīs,
concilium horrendum: quālēs cum vertice celsō
āeriae quercūs aut cōniferae cyparissī
cōnstitērunt, silva alta Jovis lūcusve Diānae.

680

Praecipitīs metus ācer agit quōcumque *rudentīs*
excutere et ventīs intendere vēla *secundis*.

ācer, cris, cre sharp, fierce, spirited*

āerius, a, um airy, lofty

Aetna, ae f. volcano of Sicily

Aetnaeus, a, um of Etna, a volcano of Sicily†

a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*

caverna, ae f. cave, cavern, grotto

celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*

compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, complete

concilium, (i)ī n. gathering, assemblage

cōnifer, era, erum cone-bearing†

cōnstō, āre, stitī, status stand (firm)

contremiscō, ere, tremui tremble, shake†

curvus, a, um curved, curving, winding*

Cyclōps, ōpis m. one of a race of one-eyed, man-eating giants

cyparissus, i f. cypress, an evergreen tree sacred to Diana and the dead†

Diāna, ae f. goddess of the chase, of the moon, and of Hades

excitō, ire, ivī (iū), itus summon (forth), arouse†

excutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake out, loosen*

exterreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify

frāter, tris m. brother*

horrendus, a, um horrifying, terrible*

immēnsus, a, um immense, enormous

immūgiō, ire, ivī (iū) bellow, roar†

intendō, ere, i, ntus stretch (out, to, toward)

lūcus, i m. (sacred) grove, wood*

metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety*

nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*

penitus within, deep(ly), wholly*

pontus, i m. sea, waves*

praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*

quālis, e of what sort, of what kind, such (as)*

quercus, ūs f. oak, a tree sacred to Jove†

quōcumque where(so)ever

rudēns, entis m. cable, rope, cordage

secundus, a, um favorable, second*

torvus, a, um savage, scowling, grim

vertex, icis m. peak, summit, head, top*

672. *quō*: abl. of cause.

673. *contremuēre* = *contremuērunt*. *exterrita* (est).

675-676. *genus ruit et complent*: observe the singular verb followed by the plural, since *genus* is collective and may take either; App. 236, a.

677. *lūmine torvō*: with *glaring eye*; effective use of the singular to emphasize the fact that each Cyclops had but one eye. *nēquiquam*: because unable to do us harm.

678. *caelō*: dat. of direction; App. 306. *Aetnaeōs frātrēs*: the Cyclopes who lived around Mt. Etna.

679. (in) *vertice (montis)*.

681. *cōnstitērunt*: with the penult irregularly short. *silva Jovis* = *quercūs*; *lūcus Diānae* = *cyparissī*; since the oak was sacred to Jove and the cypress to Hecate, the Diana of Hades.

682. *metus ācer agit (nōs) praecipitīs*.

683. *ventis secundis*: abl. of means; apparently a south wind. In their anxiety to escape the Cyclopes the Trojans flee with the wind, in spite of the warning of Helenus, but suddenly recalling the dangers of Scylla and Charybdis, they turn back, and with the aid of the wind, which has veered to the north, they sail safely past the land of the Cyclopes.

- Contrā jussa monent Helenī, Scyllam *atque* Charybdim
 685 *inter*, utramque *viam* lēti discrimine parvō,
 nī *teneant cursūs*; certum est dare lintea retrō.
 Ecce autem Boreās angustā *ab sēde* Pelōrī
missus adest: vīvō praetervehor ōstia saxō
 Pantagiae Megarōsque sinūs Thapsūmque jacentem.
 690 *Tālīa* mōnstrābat relegēns *errāta* retrōrsus
litora Achaemenidēs, *comes infēlicis* Ulixī.
 Sicaniō praetenta sinū jacet insula contrā
 Plēm̄yrium undōsum, *nōmen dīxere* priōrēs
 Ortygiam. Alphēum *fāma est hūc* Ēlidis amnem

Achaemenidēs, *ae m.* comrade of Ulysses, rescued by Aeneas from the land of the Cyclopes

Alphēus, *i m.* Greek river (god) in love with the nymph Arethusa, whom he pursued under the sea to Sicily where he reappeared in her fountain at Syracuse†

amnis, *is m.* river, stream*

angustus, *a, um* narrow, strait

autem moreover, however, but*

Boreās, *ae m.* north wind†

certus, *a, um* certain, fixed, sure, determined*

Charybdis, *is f.* dangerous whirlpool opposite Scylla, between Italy and Sicily
contrā opposite, on the contrary, facing (*acc.*)*

discrimen, *inis n.* crisis, difference; danger
ecce see! look! behold!*

Ēlis, *idis f.* district of southwestern Greece†

Helenus, *i m.* a prophet, son of Priam

insula, *ae f.* island

jaceō, *ēre, uī, itus* lie (low, outspread)*

jussum, *i n.* command, order, behest

lētum, *i n.* death, destruction, ruin*

linteum, *i n.* linen; sail†

Megarus, *a, um* of Megara, a city of Sicily†

moneō, *ēre, uī, itus* advise, warn

mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach*

nisi, *nī* if not, unless*

Ortygia, *ae f.* an island off Syracuse
ōstium, (i) *i n.* mouth, entrance, harbor

Pantagiās, *ae m.* river of Sicily†

parvus, *a, um* small, little*

Pelōrus, *i m.* promontory of northeast Sicily

Plēm̄yrium, (i) *i n.* promontory of Sicily near the harbor of Syracuse†

praetendō, *ere, i, ntus* stretch before†

praetervehō, *ere, vēxi, vectus* carry (beyond), convey (past)†

prior, *ius* former, sooner, prior*

relegō, *ere, lēgī, lēctus* retrace, pass over again†

retrō back(ward), again, anew

retrōrsus, *um* back(ward)†

Scylla, *ae f.* sea-monster, with the head and body of a woman, girt with dogs or wolves

Sicanus, *a, um* Sicanian, Sicilian†

sinus, *ūs m.* fold, bosom, bay, hollow*

Thapsus, *i m.* city of Sicily†

Ulixēs, *is (ei, i) m.* Ulysses, a wily Greek leader*

undōsus, *a, um* full of waves, wave-beaten†

uterque, *utroque*, **utrumque** each (of two), both*

vīvus, *a, um* living, alive, natural

684-685. **Contrā inter Scyllam atque Charybdim**: App. 414. **utramque viam**: in apposition with **Scyllam atque Charybdim**. **discrimine parvō**: abl. of attendant circumstance; App. 329. Translate, *each a way of death with little difference*.

686. **nī (socii mei) teneant cursūs**: *that they should not hold their course*; substantive clause developed from volitive, the object of **monent**; App. 360. **nī** is here equivalent to **nē**. **certum est (nōbis)**: *we decide*; i.e., we determine to risk the dangers of the Cyclopes

rather than those of Scylla and Charybdis.

688. **missus**: by some thoughtful and sympathetic divinity. **vīvō saxō**: *living* (i.e., *natural*) rock, as in I, 167; abl. of material; App. 324.

690. **errāta**: *having been wandered over* (before), modifies **litora**, and refers to his previous voyage with Ulysses.

692. **Sicaniō sinū**: dat. with compound, refers to the harbor of Syracuse.

693. **dixere** = **dixerunt** = **vocāverunt**.

694-695. **fāma est Alphēum amnem Ēlidis ēgise hūc occultās viās**.

occultās ēgisse viās subter mare, quī nunc
 ōre, Arethūsa, tuō Siculis cōfunditur undīs. 695
Jussī nūmina magna locī venerāmur, et inde
exsuperō praepingue solum stāgnantis Helōrī.
Hīnc altās cautēs prōjectaque saxa Pachynī
rādīmus, et fātīs numquam concessa movērī 700
appāret Camerīna procul campīque Gelōī,
immānisque Gelā fluvīī cognōmine dicta.
Arduus inde Acragās ostentat maxīma longē
moenia, magnanimum quondam generātor equōrum:
tēque datīs līnquō ventīs, palmōsa Selīnūs, 705
et vada dūra legō saxīs Lilybēia caecīs.

Acragās, antis m. Agrigentum, a Greek city of southwestern Sicily†
appāreō, ēre, uī, itus appear
arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
Arethūsa, ae f. nymph of a famous Syracusan fountain, beloved by the river (god) Alpheūs†
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, secret*
Camerīna, ae f. a Greek city of southern Sicily†
cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, ledge
cognōmen, inis n. (sur)name, title
concēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, allow
cōfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour together, mix
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, dangerous*
exsuperō (1) rise above, (sur)pass
fluvīus, (i) i m. river, stream, flood
Gelā, ae f. a Greek city of southern Sicily†
Gelōus, a, um of Gela, a city of southern Sicily†
generātor, ōris m. producer, breeder†
Helōrus, i m. river of southeastern Sicily†
inde then(ce), thereupon, next*
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, collect, traverse, skim, skirt*

Lilybēius, a, um Lilybean, of Lilybaeum, a promontory on the western coast of Sicily†
linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert*
longē far (away), at a distance*
magnanīmus, a, um great-souled, generous, spirited
numquam never, at no time
occulō, ere, uī, itus hide, secrete, conceal
ostentō (1) show, display, exhibit, parade†
Pachynus (um), i m. (n.) promontory of southeastern Sicily
palmōsus, a, um full of palms, palmy†
praepinguis, e very fat, very rich†
prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast forth, jut†
rādō, ere, i, sus scrape, graze, skirt†
Selīnūs, untis f. city of southwestern Sicily†
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
solum, i n. ground, soil, earth*
stāgnāns, antis stagnant, marshy†
subter beneath, under (acc.)†
vadum, i n. shallow, ford, depth
veneror, āri, ātus reverence, entreat

696. **ōre, Arethūsa, tuō:** at your fountain (ōre), Arethusa. According to the story, the river Alpheūs of Elis in Greece fell in love with the nymph of the fountain Arethusa and pursued her under the sea to Syracuse, where she emerged. Cf. Shelley's *Arethusa*.

697. **Jussī:** presumably by Helenus.

700. **fātīs:** abl. of accordance; App. 326.

701. **Camerīna:** contrary to the commands of an oracle, the people of Camerina drained a neighboring marsh of the same name, and through this space their enemies advanced and captured the city.

702. **Gelā:** nom. sing. with long final vowel, a Greek form. **fluvīī:** there is only one other example in Vergil (IX, 151) of the double i in the gen. ending of nouns in ius, ium. **dicta = vocāta.**

704. **magnanim(ōr)um:** spirited. **quondam:** from the point of view of Vergil, not Aeneas.

705. **datīs ventīs:** the gods are with them and have again changed the winds for them, as they have now rounded the southern point of Sicily and are veering toward the north.

706. **saxīs:** abl. of cause with **dūra, dangerous.**

- Hinc Drepani mē portus et inlaetābilis ōra
accipit. Hic pelagi tot tempestātibus āctus
heu, genitōrem, omnis cūrae cāsūque levāmen,
710 āmittō Anchīsēn. Hic mē, pater optime, fessum
dēseris, heu, tantis nēquiquam ērepte periclis!
Nec vātēs Helenus, cum multa horrenda monēret,
hōs mihi praedixit lūctūs, nōn dira Celaenō.
Hic labor extrēmus, longārum haec mēta viārum.
715 Hinc mē digressum vestrīs deus appulit ōrīs.”
Sic pater Aenēās intentīs omnibus ūnus
fāta renārrābat dīvum cursūque docēbat.
Conticuit tandem factōque hīc fine quīēvit.*

āmittō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose*
appellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive to (dat.)
Celaenō, ūs *f.* chief of the harpies, foul
monsters with bodies of birds and faces
of women
conticēscō, ere, ticui become silent, hush
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
digredior, ī, gressus depart, separate
dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, inform, tell*
Drepanum, ī *n.* city of western Sicily†
extrēmus, a, um utmost, last, extreme*
Helenus, ī *m.* a seer, son of Priam
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dreadful*
inlaetābilis, e mournful, desolate†

intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch (toward, to,
out)
levāmen, inis *n.* alleviation, solace†
lūctus, ūs *m.* grief, sorrow, lament
mēta, ae *f.* turning point, goal, limit
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
optimus, a, um best, finest, dearest
peric(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk
praedicō, ere, dixi, dictus foretell, predict
quīēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus become quiet, rest*
renārrō (1) relate, recount†
tempestās, ātis *f.* weather, storm; season*
tot so many, as many*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*

707. inlaetābilis: because Anchises died there.

709. cūrae cāsūque: objective genitives; App. 284.

710-711. pater: voc., modified by optime and ērepte. nēquiquam: since he did not live to reach the Promised Land. peric(u)lis: dat. of separation; the longer form (vv-) could not be used in hexameter.

712. monēret: cum concessive; App. 379.

713. Celaenō nōn (hōs mihi praedixit lūctūs).

714. Hic (fuit), haec (fuit): the pronouns agree with their predicate nouns, labor and mēta; App. 240, a.

715-718. Setting sail from Drepanum for Italy, the goal of their wanderings,

the Trojans are overtaken by a violent storm and driven to the northern coast of Africa, as described in the first book of the *Aeneid*. Aeneas thus completes the story of his adventures. During the whole recital Dido's interest has been growing, and she has fallen deeply in love with Aeneas as the hero of these marvelous adventures.

715. Hinc: the story thus connects with I, 34 (vix ē cōspectū Siculae tellūris, etc.).

716. intentīs omnibus: just as in II, 1, at the beginning of Aeneas's speech.

717. renārrābat: recounted, related (not retold, but went through them again by thus recalling them). dīv(ōr)um.

718. factō fine: abl. abs. and alliteration; App. 343, 411.

BOOK IV

AT *rēgīna* gravī jamdūdum saucia cūrā
 vulnus alit vēnīs *et* caecō carpitur *ignī*.
Multa virī virtūs animō multusque recursat
gentis honōs: haerent infixī pectore vultūs
 verbaque, *nec* placidam membrīs dat cūra quiētem. 5
 Postera Phoebēā lūstrābat lampade terrās
 ūmentemque Aurōra polō dīmōverat umbram,
 cum sīc ūnanimam adloquitur male sāna sorōrem:
 “Anna soror, quae mē suspēnsam insomnia terrent!
 Quis novus hic nostrīs successit sēdibus hospes, 10

adloquor, ī, locūtus address, accost
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, cherish
Anna, ae f. sister of Dido†
Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of) dawn*
caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, waste
dīmōveō, ēre, ōvī, ōtus divide, remove
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus stick (to),
 cling (to) (dat.)*
hospes, itis m. (f.) guest, host, stranger
infīgō, ere, xī, xus fix (in, on), fasten
insomnium, (i)ī n. dream, vision in sleep†
jamdūdum long since, for some time
lampas, adis f. torch, lamp, light
lūstrō (l) traverse; survey; purify*
male badly, ill, scarce, not
membrum, ī n. member, limb, body*
Phoebēus, a, um of Phoebus (Apollo),
 god of light, music, and prophecy*

placidus, a, um calm, kindly, quiet*
polus, ī m. pole, sky, heaven
posterus, a, um following, later, next
quiēs, ētis f. quiet, sleep, rest*
recurso (l) run back, come back, recur
sānus, a, um sane, sound, rational†
saucius, a, um wounded, hurt
soror, ōris f. sister*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach
 (dat.)
suspēnsus, a, um suspended, agitated
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
ūmēns, entis moist, dewy, wet
ūnanimus, a, um one-minded, sympathiz-
 ing†
vēna, ae f. vein†
verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk
virtūs, ūtis f. manliness, virtue, valor*
vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow*
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

1-30. Dido, madly in love with Aeneas, discloses her feelings to her sister Anna.

The Dido episode is one of the most famous in all literature, and its effect on later writers has been marked. One of the best known of the English versions is found in Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*.

1. **At**: denotes the return of the poet to his own narrative and contrasts the restlessness of Dido with the calm (*quiēvit*) indicated by the last line of III. **rēgīna**: Dido. **gravī cūrā**: *passionate love*.

2. **vēnīs**, **ignī**: ablatives of means.

3. **Multa**, **multus**: the repetition intentionally strengthens and makes more vivid the idea of frequency and repetition; App. 413. **virī** = *Aenēae*. **animō** = *ad animum*: dat. of direction.

4. **gentis honōs**: his noble birth, being a member of the royal family and descended from Jupiter and Venus. (*in*) **pectore**.

5. **verba**: the four causes mentioned as arousing the love of the queen for Aeneas are: his courage (**virtūs**), his noble birth (**gentis honōs**), his handsome appearance (**vultūs**), and his fine words (**verba**).

6-7. **Postera Aurōra lūstrābat**. **Phoebēā lampade** = *with the sun's rays*.

7. IV, 7 = III, 589.

8. **male sāna** = *nōn sāna* = *insāna*: cf. **male fida** = *infida*, II, 23; *litotes*; App. 431.

10. **Quis (est) hic novus hospes, (quī) nostrīs sēdibus successit**: *what a marvelous stranger this is, who has come to our house!*

- quem sēsē ōre ferēns, quam fortī pectore et armīs!
 Crēdō equidem, nec vāna fidēs, genus esse deōrum.
 Dēgenerēs animōs timor arguit. Heu, quibus illē
 jactātus fātis! Quae bella exhausta canēbat!
 15 Sī mīhi nōn animō fixum immōtumque sedēret
 nē cui mē vinclo vellem sociāre jugālī,
 postquam prīmus amor dēceptam morte fefellit;
 sī nōn pertaesum thalamī taedaeque fuisset,
 huic ūnī forsā potuī succumbere culpaē.
 20 Anna, fatēbor enim, miserī post fāta Sychaeī
 conjugis et sparsōs frāternā caede penātis
 sōlus hīc inflexit sēnsūs animūque labantem

Anna, *ae f.* sister of Dido
 arguō, *ere, ui, ūtus* prove, make clear†
 caedēs, *is f.* slaughter, murder, massacre
 canō, *ere, cecinī, cantus* sing (of), chant,
 prophesy, recount*
 crēdō, *ere, didī, ditus* believe, trust (*dat.*)*
 culpa, *ae f.* fault, blame, weakness, sin
 dēcipiō, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* deceive
 dēgener, *eris* degenerate, base, ignoble
 enim for, indeed, truly*
 equidem indeed, truly*
 exhauriō, *ire, hausi, haustus* drain, ex-
 haust; bear [mock*]
 fallō, *ere, fefelli, falsus* deceive, cheat,
 fateor, *ērī, fassus* confess, agree
 fidēs, *ei f.* faith, belief, trust (worthiness)*
 figō, *ere, xī, xus* fix, fasten, imprint*
 fors(it)an perhaps, perchance
 fortis, *e* brave, strong, valiant, stout*
 frāternus, *a, um* fraternal, of a brother†
 immōtus, *a, um* unmoved, immovable

inflectō, *ere, flexi, flexus* bend, turn
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, hurl, fling*
 jugālīs, *e* of wedlock, matrimonial†
 labō (1) totter, waver, vacillate
 penātēs, *ium m.* household gods*
 pertaedet, *ēre, taesum* it wearies (*gen.*)†
 post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
 postquam after (that), when*
 quam how, than, as*
 sedeō, *ēre, sēdi, sessus* sit, settle*
 sēnsūs, *ūs m.* feeling, perception, sense†
 sociō (1) unite, ally, share (as partner)
 spargō, *ere, rsi, rsus* scatter, sprinkle* ✓
 succumbō, *ere, cubuī, cubitus* yield (to)
 (*dat.*)†
 Sychaeus, *i m.* deceased husband of Dido
 taeda, *ae f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)†
 thalamus, *i m.* (bridal) chamber, wedlock*
 timor, *ōris m.* fear, dread, cowardice
 vānus, *a, um* vain, empty, idle, groundless
 vinc(u)lum, *i n.* chain, bond, cable*

11. quem sēsē ōre ferēns: how noble
 in appearance. quam fortī pectore et
 (fortibus) armis: ablatives of quality;
 App. 330.

12. (illum) esse genus deōrum. nec
 (mea) fidēs (est) vāna.

13. Dēgenerēs: therefore Aeneas's soul
 is not dēgener, as he has always been so
 fearless.

14. jactātus (est).

15. (in) animō. Sī...nōn...sedēret:
 condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

16. nē vellem: not to be willing, sub-
 stantive clause, subject of sedēret; App.
 360. cui: indefinite, any one. vinc(u)lō
 jugālī: in bonds of wedlock.

17. (mē) dēceptam fefellit = mē dēcēpit
 et fefellit.

18. sī nōn (mē) pertaesum fuisset.
 thalamī, taedae: genitives with the im-
 personal pertaedet; App. 290. taedae:
 the (marriage) torch, by metonymy for

marriage; App. 433. Torches were
 carried by attendants in the wedding
 procession. Cf. Milton, *Paradise Lost*,
 XI, 590-591:

"They light the nuptial torch and bid
 Invoke Hymen."

19. potuī: the ind. instead of the more
 usual subj. expresses the conclusion in a
 more positive way, as though it were prac-
 tically realized; App. 382, d. huic ūnī cul-
 pae: dat. with compound; Dido refers
 to the sin (culpa) of loving Aeneas after
 having sworn eternal fidelity to her former
 husband, Sychaeus.

21. frāternā: equivalent to a subj.
 gen. with caede; the murder of Sychaeus
 by my brother. Cf. I, 343-356.

22-23. sōlus hīc (Aenēās). hīc: with
 a short syllable here instead of the more
 usual long; App. 107, 3, c. (meum)



Gramstorff Bros.

THE GODS DECIDING THE FATE OF TROY

Luigi Sabatelli



Gramstorff Bros.

AENEAS AT DIDO'S COURT

P. N. Guérin

Behind Dido and leaning on her couch is Anna. At her side is Cupid, disguised as Ascanius.

impulit. Agnōscō veteris vestigia flammae.
Sed mihi vel tellūs optem prius ima dehiscat
vel pater omnipotēns abigat mē fulmine ad umbrās, 25
pallentis umbrās Erebo noctemque profundam,
ante, pudor, quam tē violō aut tua jūra resolvō.
Ille meōs, primus quā mē sibi jūnxit, amōrēs
abstulit; ille habeat sēcum servetque sepulcrō."
Sic effāta sinum lacrimis implēvit obortis. 30
Anna refert: "Ō lūce magis dilēcta sorōri,
sōlane perpetuā maerēns carpēre juventā
nec dulcis nātōs Veneris nec praemia nōris?
Id cinerem aut mānis crēdis cūrāre sepultōs?

abigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive (away), force†
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize*
 Anna, ae f. sister of Dido
 auferō, erre, abstulī, ablātus take away,
 carry off
 carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume,
 waste
 cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers*
 crēdō, ere, didī, dītus believe, trust (dat.)*
 cūrō (1) care (for, to), heed, regard
 dehiscō, ere yaw, gape, open (up)
 diligō, ere, lēxi, lēctus love, cherish
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 effor, āri, ātus speak out, say
 Erebus, i m. underworld, Hades†
 fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning*
 impellō, ere, puli, pulsus strike, drive on
 impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, sate*
 jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūnctus join, yoke*
 jūs, jūris n. right, law, decree, justice
 juvena, ae f. youth, young manhood,
 young womanhood
 maereō, ēre mourn, grieve, pine

magis more, rather*
 mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades*
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; perf. know*
 oborior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up
 omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
 optō (1) desire, choose, hope (for, to)*
 pallēns, entis pale, pallid, want†
 perpetuus, a, um continual, lasting†
 praemium, (i) i n. reward, prize*
 prius sooner, before
 profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast
 pudor, ōris m. shame, modesty, honor†
 quam how, than, as*
 resolvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), relax
 sepeliō, ire, ivi (ii), pultus bury, inter
 sepulcrum, i n. tomb, grave, burial
 sinus, ūs m. fold, bosom, bay, hollow*
 soror, ōris f. sister*
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty,
 love*
 vestigium, (i) i n. step, track, trace*
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
 violō (1) outrage, violate, defile

animum labantem impulit = meum animum sic impulit ut labāret; App. 440.

24-25. tellūs ima: the lowest (deeps of) the earth; App. 246. prius: with quam, l. 27, but repeated as ante in l. 27 because of the intervening clauses. optem: potential subj.; App. 252. (ut) dehiscat, (ut) abigat: substantive clauses developed from the optative; App. 360. pater omnipotēns = Jupiter. ad umbrās = ad mortem, defined by the next verse.

27. ante: repeating prius of l. 24. pudor: the Romans considered it quite discreditable for a widow to marry.

28. Ille: Sychaeus.

29. habeat (meōs amōrēs) servetque (eōs in) sepulcrō: volitive (jussive) subjunctives; App. 254.

30. lacrimis: an indication of the

strength of the feeling she is trying to suppress.

31-53. Anna encourages Dido to look forward to marriage with Aeneas.

31. magis dilēcta: more beloved = dearer. lūce (= vitā): abl. with comparative; App. 327. sorōri = mihi: dat. of agent; App. 302.

32. juvenā: abl. of time; practically equivalent to an acc. of duration; App. 322, 314. carpēre = carpēris; App. 204, 4.

33. Veneris praemia: the joys of love. nō(ve)ris: fut. perf.; with force of a fut.

34. Id: whether you remarry or not. cinerem aut mānis (Sychaei): subjects of cūrāre. Anna's answer to Dido's statement in ll. 28-29 is that her actions

- 35 *Estō: aegram nulli quondam flexere mariti,
non Libyae, non ante Tyro; despectus Iarbas
ductoresque alii, quos Africa terra triumphis
dives alit: placitōne etiam pugnabis amorī?
Nec venit in mentem quorum consederis arvis?*
- 40 *Hinc Gaetulae urbēs, genus insuperabile bellō,
et Numidae infrēni cingunt et inhospita Syrtis;
hinc dēserta siti regiō lātēque furentēs
Barcaeī. Quid bella Tyro surgentia dicam
germānique minās?*
- 45 *Dis equidem auspiciis reor et Jūnōne secundā*

aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
 Africus, a, um African, of Africa†
 alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, rear
 auspex, icis m. protector, guide; seer
 Barcaeī, ōrum m. tribe of North Africa†
 cingō, ere, cīxi, cinctus surround,
 gird(le)*
 considō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down),
 settle*
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
 dēspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look down
 on, scorn, despise, disdain†
 di(ve)s, di(vi)tis rich, wealthy
 ductor, ōris m. leader, chieftain, guide
 equidem indeed, surely, truly*
 etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
 flectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, move
 Gaetulus, a, um of the Gaetuli, a tribe
 of North Africa†
 germānus, i m. brother*
 Iarbas, ae m. African chieftain, one of
 Dido's suitors†

infrēnus, a, um unbridled, without
 bridles†
 inhospitus, a, um inhospitable, wild†
 insuperabilis, e unconquerable†
 lātē widely, far and wide
 Libya, ae f. country of North Africa*
 maritus, i m. (prospective) husband,
 suitor
 minae, ārum f. threat, menace, peril
 Numidae, ārum m. tribe of North Af-
 rica†
 placeō, ēre, uī, itus please (dat.)
 pugnō (1) fight, oppose, resist (dat.)†
 regiō, ōnis f. region, district, quarter
 reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon
 secundus, a, um second, favorable*
 sitis, is f. thirst, drought†
 Syrtis, is f. region of quicksand on the
 northern coast of Africa
 triumphus, i m. triumph, victory
 Tyrus, i f. famous city of Phoenicia,
 birthplace of Dido

cannot possibly disturb the ashes and shade of Sychaeus.

35. *Estō*: imp. 3d sing. of *sum*; (so) *be it, granted that*. (*tē*) *aegram*: while you mourned for your husband (during the time immediately following his death).

36. *Libyae*: loc.; App. 345. (*in*) *Tyro*: loc. abl. *dēspectus* (*est tibi*).

37-38. *Africa terra triumphis dives*: Vergil is thinking of the many triumphs later celebrated by Roman generals for their victories in Africa, triumphs being abl. of respect with *dives*; App. 325. *placitō*: with active force, *agreeable, pleasing* (to you). *pugnabis* = *resistēs*. *amorī*: dat. with special verb; App. 297.

39. *Nec venit in (tuam) mentem*: does it not occur to you? *quōrum consederis* (*in*) *arvis*: indir. quest.; App. 349;

subject of *venit*; what sort of people (i.e., how fierce and hostile) they are in whose territory you have settled.

40-42. *Hinc . . . hinc*: from this side . . . from that side. *infrēni*: unbridled; possibly a play on words, denoting that the Libyans rode their horses without bridles and that they were a wild, fierce, unrestrained (unbridled) tribe. *cingunt* (*tē*). *siti*: abl. of cause with *dēserta*.

43. *Barcaeī* (*sunt*). *Tyro*: abl. of place from which; App. 320, a.

44. *germāni*: Pygmalion. See I, 346-364, 563-564.

45. *Dis auspiciis*, *Jūnōne secundā*: ablatives absolute. *Jūnōne*: both as goddess of marriage and as guardian of Carthage.

*hunc cursum Īliacās ventō tenuisse carinās.
 Quam tū urbem, soror, hanc cernēs, quae surgere rēgna
 coniugiō tālī! Teucrum comitantibus armīs
 Pūnica sē quantīs attollet glōria rēbus!
 Tū modo posce deōs veniam, sacrīsque litātīs
 indulgē hospitīō causāsque innecte morandī,
 dum pelagō dēsaevit hiems et aquōsus Oriōn,
 quassātaeque ratēs, dum nōn tractābile caelum.”*

*Hīs dictīs impēnsō animum flammāvit amōre
 spemque dedit dubiae mentī solvitque pudōrem.
 Principiō dēlūbra adeunt pācemque per ārās
 exquirunt; mactant lēctās dē mōre bidentīs
 lēgiferae Cererī Phoebōque patrīque Lyaeō,*

50

55

adeō, ire, īi (īvi), itus approach
 aquōsus, a, um watery, rainy†
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
 bidēns, entis f. with two teeth, two-
 year old sheep†
 carīna, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
 causa, ae f. cause, reason, pretext*
 Cerēs, eris f. (goddess of) grain
 comitor, āri, ātus accompany, escort,
 attend, follow*
 conjugium, (i) ī n. wedlock, husband, wife
 dēlūbrum, i n. shrine, temple, sanctuary
 dēsaeviō, ire, īvi (īi), itus rage (furiously)†
 dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering
 exquirō, ere, quisivi, quisitus seek (out)
 flammō (1) inflame, burn, fire
 glōria, ae f. renown, glory, fame, pride
 hiems, emis f. winter, storm*
 hospitium, (i) ī n. hospitality, welcome
 Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
 impēnsus, a, um vast, vehement†
 indulgeō, ēre, īsī, ltus indulge, favor
 (dat.)
 innectō, ere, x(u)ī, xus weave, connect†
 lēgifer, era, erum law-bringing†
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, collect*

litō (1) sacrifice (favorably), appease
 Lyaeus, i m. Bacchus, (god of) wine
 mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
 modo only, (just) now
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
 mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, manner*
 Oriōn, ōnis m. the storm-bringing con-
 stellation, named for a famous hunter
 transported to heaven
 pāx, pācis f. peace, favor, grace, repose
 Phoebus, i m. Apollo, god of light, music,
 and prophecy*
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
 principiō first(ly), in the first place
 pudor, ōris m. shame, modesty, honor
 Pūnicus, a, um Punic, Carthaginian
 quantus, a, um how great, how much,
 how many*
 quassō (1) shake, shatter, toss
 ratis, is f. raft, ship, boat*
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), release,
 break down, free, pay*
 soror, ōris f. sister*
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation*
 tractābilis, e manageable, favorable†
 venia, ae f. favor, pardon, grace

46. hunc cursum: *their course hither.*
 47. Quam, quae: *how great! what (a)!*
 quam urbem hanc cernēs (surgere), quae
 rēgna (cernēs) surgere.
 48. coniugiō tālī: abl. of cause.
 ſeu(ōr)um.
 49. quantis rēbus: *to what heights of
 achievement!*
 50. deōs veniam: two accusatives with
 a verb of asking; App. 316.
 52. Oriōn: a constellation rising at
 the rainy and stormy season.
 53. quassātae (sunt) ratēs, nōn trac-
 tābile (est) caelum.

- 54-59. Love drives Dido to frenzy.

54. (jam) impēnsō.
 56. (Dido Annaque) adeunt. dēlūbra
 (urbis), ārās (urbis). pācem (deōrum),
 or pācem (deōs).
 57. bidentis: literally *two-toothed*, be-
 cause of the two prominent teeth sheep
 have when about two years old. At this
 age they were considered especially ac-
 ceptable for sacrifice.
 58. lēgiferae: *law-giving*, because of
 the civilizing influence of agriculture on
 early man.

- Jūnōnī ante omnīs, cui vincla jugālia cūrae.*
 60 *Ipsa tenēns dextrā pateram pulcherrima Dīdō*
candentis vaccae media inter cornua fundit,
aut ante ōra deum pinguis spatiātur ad ārās,
īnstauratque diem dōnīs, pecudumque reclusīs
pectoribus inhiāns spirantia cōnsulit exta.
 65 *Heu, vātum ignārae mentēs! Quid vōta furentem,*
quid dēlūbra juvant? Ēst mollis flamma medullās
intereā et tacitum vivit sub pectore vulnus.
Ūritur infēlix Dīdō tōtāque vagātur
urbe furēns, quālis conjectā cerva sagittā,
 70 *quam procul incautam nemora inter Crēsia fixit*
pāstor agēns tēlis liquitque volātile ferrum
nescius: illa fugā silvās saltūsque peragrat

candēns, entis white, shining, sleek
 cerva, ae f. deer, doe†
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, shoot
 cōnsulō, ere, uī, ltus consult, consider†
 cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end
 Crēsius, a, um of Crete, Cretan†
 dēlūbrum, ī n. shrine, temple, sanctuary
 edō, ere (ēsse), ēdi, ēsus eat, consume†
 exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals†
 figō, ere, xi, xus fix, pierce, imprint*
 ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
 incautus, a, um unaware, unsuspecting
 inhiō (1) yawn, gape†
 īnstauro (1) renew, refresh, repeat
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial
 juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*
 linguō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*
 medulla, ae f. marrow†
 mollis, e soft, yielding, tender
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, wood*
 nescius, a, um ignorant, unaware

pāstor, ōris m. shepherd, herdsman
 patera, ae f. (libation) bowl
 pecus, udīs f. animal (of the flock)*
 peragrō (1) wander through, scour
 pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble,
 splendid, handsome, illustrious*
 quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
 recludō, ere, si, sus open, disclose
 sagitta, ae f. arrow
 saltus, ūs m. forest, glade, pasture†
 spatio, āri, ātus walk, stride†
 spirō (1) breathe (forth), blow, quiver
 tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, secret
 ūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn, consume
 vacca, ae f. heifer, young cow†
 vagor, āri, ātus wander, roam
 vinc(u)lum, ī n. chain, bond, cable*
 vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive
 volātilis, e flying, winged, swift†
 vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering*
 vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow*

59. Jūnōnī: as presiding over marriage. ante omnīs (aliōs deōs). cui vinc(u)la (sunt) cūrae: cui and cūrae are double datives; App. 308, a.

61. fundit (vinum, wine): it was customary to pour an offering of wine between the horns of the victim as part of the sacrificial ceremony.

62. ante ōra de(ōr)um: i.e., before their images. pinguis: modifying ārās; observe the long vowel of the ending. The altars were fat (rich) with offerings.

63. dōnīs: gifts (to the gods), sacrificēs.

64. pectoribus: with the final syllable irregularly long under the metrical accent; App. 394, a.

65. vātum: the seers who interpret the omens apparently encourage Dido in her hopeless love, not realizing (mentēs ignārae) that she is past praying for. quid vōta (juvant) furentem (amōre): how can sacrificēs help one crazed (with love)?

66. Ēst: from edō; observe the long vowel.

69-71. (in) urbe. furēns (amōre). quālis cerva (vagātur), sagittā conjectā (abl. abs.), quam incautam inter Crēsia nemora pāstor agēns tēlis procul fixit. The chance shot of a shepherd has taken effect without his knowing it. quam: refers to the deer (cerva).

72. nescius: i.e., of the success of his shot. fugā: abl. of manner.

Dictaeōs; haeret lateri lētālis harundō.

Nunc media Aenēān sēcum per moenia dūcīt

Sidoniāsque ostentat opēs urbemque parātā,

75

incipit effārī mediāque in vōce resistit;

nunc eadem lābente diē convīvia quaerit,

Īliacōsque iterum dēmēns audīre labōrēs

exposcit pendetque iterum nārrantis ab ōre.

Post ubi digressī, lūmenque obscūra vicissim

80

lūna premit suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs,

sōla domō maeret vacuā strātisque relictis

incubat. *Illum absēns absentem auditque videtque,*

aut gremiō Ascanium genitōris imāgine capta

dētinet, infandum sī fallere possit amōrem.

85

absēns, entis absent, separated, distant

Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, set*

convivium, (i)ī *n.* feast, banquet

dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, distracted

dētineō, ēre, uī, tentus retain, hold back

Dictaeus, a, um of Dicte, a mountain in

Crete; Cretan

digredior, i, gressus (de)part, separate

effor, āri, ātus speak (out), say

exposcō, ere, poposcī demand, entreat

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat,

mock, beguile*

gremium, (i)ī *n.* bosom, lap, embrace

haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling to, stick

to (dat.)*

harundō, inis *f.* reed, arrow†

Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*

imāgō, inis *f.* likeness, form, phantom*

incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, under-

take*

incubō, āre, uī, itus recline (upon) (dat.)

infandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable

iterum again, anew, a second time*

latus, eris *n.* side, flank*

lētālis, ē deadly, mortal, lethal, fatal†

lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*

maereō, ēre mourn, grieve, pine

nārrō (1) narrate, tell, recount

obscurus, a, um dark, obscure, gloomy*

ops, opis *f.* help, resources, wealth,

power*

ostentō (1) show (off), display, exhibit,

parade

pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend*

post after, behind (acc.); afterward*

premo, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press*

resistō, ere, stiti stop, resist (dat.)

Sidonius, a, um of Sidon, a famous city

of Phoenicia

strātum, ī *n.* bed, couch; pavement

suādeō, ēre, āsi, āsus persuade, advise

vacuus, a, um empty, free, vacant

vicissim in turn, by turns†

75-76. Sidoniās: Dido came from Tyre not from Sidon. Vergil's knowledge of geography is hazy, and he often confuses Tyre and Sidon, the two great cities of Phoenicia. Cf. I, 338. opēs urbemque: subtle temptations to the needy Aeneas and his followers (omnium egēnōs, I, 599), who were so eager to found a city where they might end their wanderings. mediā: App. 246.

77. lābente diē: as the day wanes, the usual time for the chief meal.

78. dēmēns: Aeneas's presence would serve to aggravate her unhappy passion.

79. pendet ab ōre (Aenēae) nārrantis: hangs on his words.

80. Post: adv. ubi (omnēs) digressi (sunt). lūmen (suum).

81. premit = reprimis.

82. strātis relictis (ab Aenēā): in the banqueting hall, after the guests have departed, she throws herself on the couch which Aeneas had occupied, to appease her sense of desolation felt in the absence of one secretly loved.

83. absēns absentem: bringing the same or similar words together is a favorite type of play on words among many classical authors.

84. Ascanium: he has now been brought back from Idaliūm, and Cupid is no longer substituting for him. Vergil, however, tells us nothing of this second exchange. genitōris imāgine: i.e., his resemblance to his father.

85. sī possit: implied indir. quest.; App. 349.

*Nōn coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, nōn arma iuventūs
exercet portūsve aut prōpugnācula bellō
tūta parant: pendent opera interrupta minaeque
mūrōrum ingentēs aequātaque mächina caelō.*

90

*Quam simul ac tālī persēnsit peste tenērī
cāra Jovis conjūnx nec fāmam obstāre furōrī,
tālībus adgreditur Venerem Sātūrnia dictīs:
“Ēgregiam vērō laudem et spolia ampla refertis
tūque puerque tuus (magnum et memorābile nūmen),
ūna dolō dīvum sī fēmina victa duōrum est.
Nec mē adeō fallit veritam tē moenia nostra
suspectās habuisse domōs Karthāginis altae.*

95

*Sed quis erit modus, aut quō nunc certāmine tantō?
Quīn potius pācem aeternam pactōsque hymenaeōs*

adeō to such an extent, so (much)
adgredior, i, gressus attack, address
adsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise
aequō (1) (make) equal, match, level,
even*

aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal*
amplus, a, um large, grand, ample, wide
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
certāmen, inis n. contest, rivalry, strife*
coepī, isse, ptus begin, commence
dolus, i m. deceit, stratagem, fraud*
duo, ae, o two*

ēgregius, a, um remarkable, noble
exerceō, ēre, ui, itus drive, exercise*
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, cheat,
mock, escape the notice (of)*

fēmina, ae f. woman, female
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion*
hymenaeus, i m. wedding (hymn); Hymen
interrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus interrupt†
juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*
Karthāgō, inis f. Carthage, a city of
North Africa

laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*
mächina, ae f. machine, engine, device
memorābilis, e memorable, glorious

minae, ārum f. threat, menace, pinnacle
modus, i m. manner, measure, limit*
mūrus, i m. (city) wall, battlement*
obstō, āre, stiti, status oppose, resist
(dat.)

opus, eris n. work, labor, deed, task*
paciscor, i, pactus stipulate, bargain, fix†
pāx, pācis f. peace, favor, grace, repose
pendeō, ēre, pependi hang, depend*
persentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus feel deeply,
perceive (thoroughly)†
pestis, is f. plague, destruction, scourge
potius rather, preferably
prōpugnāculum, i n. rampart, battlement†
quīn that not, but that, why not, nay
even*

Sātūrnia, ae f. daughter of Saturn, Juno
spolium, (i) i n. booty, spoils, plunder
suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look from
beneath, suspect
turris, is f. tower, turret
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty;
love*

vereor, ērī, itus fear, dread, revere
vērō truly, indeed, but

87. bellō: dat. of purpose.

88-89. minae mūrōrum: threatenings
of walls = threatening walls. Cf. II, 235,
rotārum lāpsūs, glidings of wheels = glid-
ing wheels.

90-128. Juno favors the marriage, that
she may turn Aeneas aside from Italy,
and so agrees to help Venus consummate
the affair, promising to devise a suitable
situation.

90. Quam: Dido; subj. of tenērī,
that she was held. peste = amōre; or =
peste amōris.

91. fāmam: (regard for) her reputa-
tion, good name. Jovis conjūnx: Juno.

93. Ēgregiam: scornful sarcasm. re-
fertis: a technical term for carrying off
the spoils won in battle.

94. puer tuus: Cupid. (est) nūmen
(vestrum).

96-97. adeō: to such an extent (as you
think). tē habuisse: subj. of fallit.

98. modus (certāminis), aut quō
(tendimus) certāmine tantō. quō:
whither, how far.

99. Quin = cūr nōn. hymenaeōs (Di-
dōnis Aenēaeque).

- exercēmus? *Habēs tōtā quod mente petistī:* 100
ardet amāns Didō trāxitque per ossa furōrem.
 Commūnem hunc ergō populum paribusque regāmus
 auspiciis; liceat Phrygiō servīre maritō
 dōtālisque tuae Tyriōs permittere dextrae.”
- Ollī* (sēnsit enim simulātā mente locūtā, 105
quō rēgnum Ūtaliae Libycās āverteret ōrās)
sīc contrā est ingressa Venus: “Quis tālia dēmēns
abnuat aut tēcum mālīt contendere bellō?
Sī modo quod memorās factum fortūna sequātur.
Sed fātis incerta feror, sī Juppiter ūnam 110
esse velit Tyriūs urbem Trojāque profectis,
miscērīve probet populōs aut foedera jungī.
Tū conjūnx, tibi fās animū temptāre precandō.

abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod dissent, refuse†
 amō (1) love, like, cherish*
 auspiciū, (i)ī n. auspices, power
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn aside, avert*
 commūnis, e (in) common, joint, mutual
 contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, contend
 contrā opposite, facing, in reply*
 dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, distracted
 dōtālis, e of a dower, as a dower†
 enim for, indeed, truly*
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, exercise,
 perform*
 factum, ī n. deed, act, exploit*
 fās n. right, justice, decree, law*
 foedus, eris n. treaty, pact, alliance
 furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion*
 incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful
 ingredior, ī, gressus enter, proceed
 jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke*
 Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of
 North Africa*

licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
 mālō, malle, mālui prefer, wish rather†
 maritus, ī m. husband
 memorō (1) recall, recount, relate, say*
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
 modo only, (just) now
 os, ossis n. bone*
 pār, paris equal, like, similar*
 permittō, ere, mīsī, missus intrust, allow
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 populus, ī m. people, nation, race*
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
 probō (1) test, prove, approve†
 proficiscor, ī, fectus set out, go
 regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus rule, direct*
 sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus feel, perceive
 serviō, ire, īvi (ii), itus serve (dat.)
 simulō (1) simulate, counterfeit, pretend
 temptō (1) try, test, seek, examine*
 Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty;
 love*

101. *ardet amāns Didō* = *ardet amōre Didō*.

102-103. *paribus auspiciis: with equal authority*, since only the highest Roman magistrates had the right to take the auspices. Juno proposes that she and Venus shall preside over the united peoples (Trojans and Carthaginians) with equal authority.

103. *liceat* (Didōnī): vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254. *maritō* = Aeneas: dat. with special verb, *servire*; App. 297.

104. *dōtālis*: predicatively, as a dower.

105. *Ollī* (Jūnōnī): an archaic form of *illi*; it depends on *ingressa est* (*dicere*) in l. 107. *sēnsit* (Jūnōnem) *locūtā* (*esse*).

106. *rēgnum Ūtaliae: the (destined) kingdom of Italy*. *quō* (= ut) *āverteret*: purpose; App. 388. (*ad*) *ōrās*.

107. *Quis dēmēns abnuat*: deliberative subj.; App. 348.

109. *Sī modo* (= *utinam*) *factum fortūna sequātur*: *may fortune attend the deed* (of uniting the two peoples); opt. subj.; App. 253. Venus implies, but does not definitely promise, that she would consent under certain vaguely suggested conditions.

110-111. *sī... velit*: indir. quest.; App. 349. (*illis*) *Trojā profectis*: dat. of possession; equivalent to *Teucris*.

113. *Tū* (*es*) *conjūnx* (*Jovis*), *tibi* (*est*).

- Perge, *sequar*." *Tum sīc excēpit rēgia Jūnō*:
 115 "*Mēcum erit iste labor. Nunc quā ratiōne quod instat*
cōnfieri possit, paucīs (adverte) docēbō.
Vēnātum Aenēās ūnāque miserrima Dīdō
in nemus ire parant, ubi primōs crāstinus ortūs
extulerit Titān radiīsque retēxerit orbem.
 120 *Hīs ego nigrantem commixtā grandine nimbū,*
dum trepidant ālae saltūsque indāgine cingunt,
dēsūper infundam et tonitrū caelum omne ciēbō.
Diffugient comitēs et nocte tegentur opacā:
spēluncam Dīdō dux et Trojānus eandem
 125 *dēvenient. Aderō et, tua sī mihi certa voluntās,*
cōnūbiō jungam stabili propriamque dicābō.

advertō, ere, i, rsus turn to, heed
 āla, ae f. wing, hunters, beaters*
 certus, a, um fixed, sure, certain, reliable*
 cieō, ēre, civi, citus stir up, arouse*
 cingō, ere, cinxi, cinctus surround, gird(le)*
 commisceō, ēre, ui, mixtus mix, mingle
 cōnfīō, fieri, fectus be done, be finished†
 cōnūbium, (i) i n. wedlock, matrimony
 crāstinus, a, um tomorrow's, of tomorrow†
 dēsūper from above
 dēveniō, ire, vēni, ventus come down, arrive (at)
 dicō (1) consecrate, assign, proclaim
 diffugiō, ere, fūgi flee apart, scatter
 doceō, ēre, ui, ctus teach, tell, inform*
 dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief*
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus carry (out), raise*
 excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus take up, rejoin
 grandō, inis f. hail(storm, stones)†
 indāgō, inis f. (circle of) nets, toils†
 infundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour (into, upon)†
 instō, āre, stitī press on, desire, urge

iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
 jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūnctus join, yoke*
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, wood*
 nigrāns, antis black, dusky, dark†
 nimbus, i m. (storm)cloud, rainstorm*
 opācus, a, um dark, gloomy, dusky
 orbis, is m. circle, orb(it), earth*
 ortus, ūs m. rising, source†
 paucus, a, um little, few, slight, scanty*
 pergō, ere, perrēxi, rēctus proceed
 proprius, a, um one's own, permanent
 radius, (i) i m. rod, spoke, ray†
 ratiō, ōnis f. manner, purpose, reason
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
 retegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus uncover, recover
 saltus, ūs m. forest, glade, pasture
 spēlunca, ae f. cave, cavern, grotto
 stabilis, e firm, stable, lasting
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect*
 Titān, ānis m. a god, the sun†
 tonitrus, ūs m. thunder†
 trepidō (1) tremble; scurry; quiver
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 ūnā at the same time, together
 vēnor, āri, ātus hunt, go hunting†
 voluntās, ātis f. will, wish, consent†

115-116. *mēcum* = *cum mē*; App. 321, *a*; here equivalent to *meus*. *quod instat*: the business in hand; subj. of *possit*. *quā ratiōne* . . . *possit*: indir. quest.; App. 349. *paucīs* (dictis).

117. *Vēnātum*: supine of *vēnor*, after a verb of motion, to express purpose; App. 270.

120-122. *Hīs* (*Didōnī et Aenēae*), *dum ālae trepidant cinguntque saltūs indāgine*, *ego infundam dēsūper nimbū*. *ālae*: troops of beaters, who frighten the game and drive them past the hunters.

122. *tonitrū*: ordinarily the prerogative of Jove, but here wielded by Juno, as by Pallas (*Minerva*) in I, 42.

124. (*in*) *spēluncam*.

125. *Aderō*: in her capacity of goddess of marriage (*Jūnō Prōnuba*). *voluntās* (est).

126. *cōnūbiō*: pronounced here as though spelled *cōnūbjō*, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. *jungam* (*Dīdōnem Aenēae*) *et* (eam) *propriam dicābō*. This verse is repeated from I, 73.

Hic hymenaeus erit." *Nōn adversāta petentī*
adnuit atque dolis risit Cytherēa repertīs.

Ōceanum intereā surgēns Aurōra reliquit.

It portis jubare exortō dēlēcta juventūs, 130

rētia rāra, plagae, lātō vēnābula ferrō,

Massylīque ruunt equitēs et odōra canum vīs.

Rēginam thalamō cūctantem ad limina primī

Poenōrum exspectant, ostrōque insignis et aurō
stat sonipēs ac frēna ferōx spūmantia mandit. 135

Tandem prōgreditur magnā stīpante catervā

Sidoniam pictō chlamydem circumdata limbō; *mid d*

cui pharetra ex aurō, crinēs nōdantur in aurum,

aurea purpuream subnectit fibula vestem.

adnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod assent, promise

adversor, āri, ātus oppose, resist (*dat.*)†

aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*

Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of) dawn*

canis, is m. (f.) dog, hound

caterva, ae f. band, troop, crowd

chlamys, ydis f. cloak, mantle, cape

circumdō, dare, dedī, dantis surround,
encircle

crinis, is m. hair, tresses, locks*

cūctor, āri, ātus delay, linger, wait†

Cytherēa, ae f. Venus, born at Cythera

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select

dolus, is m. deceit, stratagem, fraud*

eques, itis m. horseman, knight†

exorior, iri, ortus (a)rise, spring up

ex(s)pectō (1) expect, (a)wait, linger*

ferōx, ōcis fierce, spirited, fiery, wild

fibula, ae f. brooch, buckle, clasp†

frēnum, ī n. bridle, bit, curb

hymenaeus, ī m. wedding (hymn); Hymen

insignis, e marked, notable, splendid*

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*

jubar, aris n. ray of light, sunshine†

juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*

lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*

limbus, ī m. border, fringe, hem

mandō, ere, ī, mānsus champ, chew
Massylus, a, um of the Massyli, a people
of North Africa†

nōdō (1) (tie in a) knot, bind, fasten†

Ōceanus, ī m. Ocean

odōrus, a, um smelling, keen-scented†

ostrum, ī n. purple, scarlet, crimson

pharetra, ae f. quiver

pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider

plaga, ae f. net, snare, toils†

Poenus, ī m. Carthaginian, Phoenician

porta, ae f. gate, entrance, exit, portal*

prōgredior, ī, gressus advance, proceed

purpureus, a, um purple, crimson

rārus, a, um scattered, wide-meshed

reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus find (out)†

rēte, is n. net, snare, toils†

rideō, ēre, risi, risus smile, laugh (at)†

Sidonius, a, um of Sidon, Sidonian

sonipēs, pedis m. prancing steed†

spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*

stīpō (1) stuff, stow, crowd, throng

subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexu tie (be-
neath), fasten

thalamus, ī m. (bridal) chamber, wedlock*

vēnābulum, ī n. hunting spear†

vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

127. *Hic*: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a; pronounce *hic*, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. *Nōn adversāta* (Jūnōnī) *petentī*: not opposing her request.

128. *dolis* (Jūnōnis) *reperit*: abl. abs.

129-159. Aeneas and Dido go on a hunting party.

130. *portis*: abl. of the route or of separation. *jubare* (sōlis) *exortō*: abl. abs. *juventūs*, collective noun = Tyrii et Teucri.

132. *ruunt*: zeugma, as it strictly applies to only the last two of its subjects, while with the first three it means *are hurried forth*; App. 447. *odōra canum vis*: keen-scented pack of hounds, *odōra* being a transferred epithet; App. 446.

135. Note the alliteration; App. 411.

136. *prōgreditur* (Didō).

137. *chlamydem*: object of *circumdata* used as a middle; App. 309, a.

138. *cui pharetra* (est); *dat.* of possession. *crinēs nōdantur in aurum*: *her hair is tied into a knot with gold*, i.e., with a golden cord or clasp of some sort.

- 140 *Nec nōn et Phrygiī comitēs et laetus Iūlus*
incēdunt. *Ipsē ante aliōs pulcherrimus omnīs*
infert sē sociūm Aenēās atque agmina jungit.
Quālis ubi hibernam Lyciam Xanthique fluenta
dēserit ac Dēlum māternam invisit Apollō
- 145 *Instauratque chorōs, mixtique altāria circum*
Crētesque Dryopesque fremunt pictique Agathyrsi:
ipse jugīs Cynthī graditur mollique fluentem
fronde premit crīnem fingēns atque implicat aurō,
tēla sonant umerīs: haud illō sēgnior ibat
- 150 *Aenēās, tantum ēgregiō decus ēnitit ōre.*
Postquam altōs ventum in montīs atque invia lūstra,
ecce ferae saxī dējectae vertice caprae

Agathyrsi, ōrum *m.* people of Scythia in southeastern Europe†
altāria, ium *n.* altar
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
capra, ae *f.* she-goat†
chorus, ī *m.* song, dance, choral band
Crētes, ium *m.* Cretans, inhabitants of Crete†
crinis, is *m.* hair, tresses, locks*
Cynthus, ī *m.* mountain of Delos
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dignity
dējiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw (down), dislodge
Dēlos, ī *f.* island of the Aegean, birth-place of Apollo†
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
Dryopes, um *m.* a people of northern Greece†
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēgregius, a, um remarkable, noble
ēniteō, ēre, uī shine forth, gleam, glitter†
ferus, a, um wild, savage, fierce, cruel*
fingō, ere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, mold
fluentum, ī *n.* stream, flood†
fluō, ere, flūxi, flūxus flow, stream, ebb
fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, shout, groan*
frōns, frondis *f.* leaf, foliage, garland*
gradior, ī, gressus walk, stride, march, go

hibernus, a, um wintry, of the winter, stormy
implicō, āre, āvī (uī), ātus (itus) entwine
incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go (proudly)
inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring (to), present
instaurō (1) renew, refresh, repeat
invisō, ere, ī, sus visit, look on, view†
invius, a, um pathless, trackless
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
jugum, ī *n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūnctus join, yoke*
lūstrum, ī *n.* marsh, bog, lair
Lycia, ae *f.* country of Asia Minor†
māternus, a, um maternal, of one's mother†
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mollis, e soft, yielding, tender
Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider, tattoo
postquam after (that), when*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press, cover, confine*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome, splendid, illustrious*
quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
sēgnis, e slow, slothful, inactive
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy†

140. *Nec nōn: likewise.*
142. *Aenēās agmina (sua) jungit* (agminibus Didōnis).
143. *Quālis:* Aeneas is here likened to Apollo, as Dido was likened to Diana in I, 498 ff. *hibernam Lyciam:* his winter quarters in Lycia.
146. *Crētesque:* with a long final syllable under the verse accent, before the pause, and before the following Dr(-); App. 394, a; 16. *Crētes, Dryopes, Agathyrsi:* strange worshippers come from all sorts of remote regions.

147. *ipse:* Apollo.
148. *fronde:* of the laurel, sacred to Apollo.
149. *tēla sonant umerīs:* from Homer. Apollo was the archer god.
150. *tantum (est illis):* they came, with the emphasis on the action rather than on the actors.
152. *dējectae:* by the beaters composing the ālae of l. 121.

dēcurrēre jugīs; <i>aliā dē parte</i> patentīs trāsmittunt <i>cursū campōs atque agmina cervī</i> pulverulenta <i>fugā</i> glomerant <i>montisque relinquunt.</i>	155
<i>At puer Ascanius mediīs in vallibus ācī</i> gaudet <i>equō jamque hōs cursū, jam praeterit illōs,</i> spūmantemque <i>dari</i> pecora <i>inter inertia vōtis</i> optat <i>aprum, aut fulvum dēscendere monte leōnem.</i>	
Intereā <i>magnō miscērī murmure caelum</i>	160
incipit, Insequitur commixtā grandine nimbus, <i>et Tyrī comitēs passim et Trojāna juventūs</i> Dardaniusque nepōs Veneris <i>dīversa per agrōs</i> <i>tēcta metū petiēre; ruunt dē montibus amnēs.</i> Spēluncam <i>Dīdō dux et Trojānus eandem</i>	165
dēveniunt. <i>Prīma et Tellūs et prōnuba Jūnō</i>	

acer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fiery*
ager, grī m. field, territory, land*
amnis, is m. river, stream*
aper, pri m. wild boar
Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*
cervus, ī m. deer, stag
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
dēcurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run
(down), hasten
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come (down),
arrive (at)
diversus, a, um separated, different*
dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief*
fulvus, a, um tawny, yellow, blond
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
glomerō (1) roll together, gather, collect
grandō, inis f. hail(storm, stones)
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake*
iners, rtis lazy, spiritless, tame, idle
insequor, ī, secūtus follow*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge*
juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*

leō, ōnis m. lion
metus, ūs m. fear, fright, anxiety*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle,
confuse*
murmur, uris n. murmur, roar, rumble
nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*
nimbus, ī m. rainstorm, (storm)cloud*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
passim everywhere, all about*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
pecus, oris n. flock, herd
praetereō, ire, iī (ivī), itus surpass, pass
(by)†
prōnuba, ae f. matron of honor, bride-
woman†
pulverulentus, a, um dusty†
spēlunca, ae f. cave, cavern, grotto
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
trāsmittō, ere, misī, missus cross, send
across
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
vallis, is f. valley, vale, dale
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty;
love*
vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, desire*

154. (sē) trāsmittunt *cursū campōs*:
campōs is object of the preposition trāns
in composition, while cursū is abl. of
manner; App. 308, 328.

157. equō: abl. of cause.

158. pecora inertia: as ferae caprae
and cervī, which Ascanius disdainfully
calls tame herds. vōtis: (in answer) to
his prayers; indir. obj. with dari.

160-172. While all are intent on the
chase, Juno sends a sudden tempest,
scattering the party and driving Aeneas
and Dido to the same lonely cave, where

they go through a form of marriage under
unlucky omens.

163. nepōs Veneris = Ascanius.

166-168. Vergil here indicates the vari-
ous features in a Roman wedding and
represents Nature herself as performing
these ceremonies. Earth and Heaven,
as universal parents, take the part of
human parents in bringing the couple
together; the lightnings (ignēs) are the
wedding torches (taedae); Juno performs
the duty of the matron of honor (prōnuba),
and the cries of the mountain nymphs

- dant signum; fulsere ignēs et cōnscius aethēr
cōnūbiis, summōque ululārunt vertice nymphae.
Ille diēs prīmus lēti prīmusque malōrum
170 causa fuit; neque enim speciē fāmāve movētur
nec jam fūrtivum Dīdō meditātur amōrem:
conjugium vocat, hōc praetexit nōmine culpam.
Exemplō Libyae magnās it Fāma per urbēs,
Fāma, malum quā nōn aliud vėlōcius ūllum:
175 mōbilitāte viget vīrisque adqūirit eundō,
parva metū prīmō, mox sēsē attollit in aurās
ingrediturque solō et caput inter nūbila condit.
Illam Terra parēns irā inritāta deōrum
extrēmam, ut perhibent, Coeō Enceladōque sorōrem

adquirō, ere, quisivī, sītus acquire, gain†
aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, heaven, ether*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
Coeus, i *m.* one of the Titans, a giant,
son of Earth†
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, hide*
conjugium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, husband,
wife
cōnscius, a, um conscious, confederate,
witness
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
culpa, ae *f.* fault, offense, guilt, blame
Enceladus, i *m.* one of the Titans, a giant,
son of Earth
enim for, indeed, truly*
exemplō immediately, at once, suddenly
extrēmus, a, um final, last, furthest*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi shine, flash, gleam
fūrtivus, a, um secret, stolen†
ingredior, ī, gressus enter, proceed
inritō (1) vex, enrage, provoke†

lētum, i *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
Libya, ae *f.* country of North Africa*
malum, i *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
meditor, āri, ātus meditate, design
metus, ūs *m.* fear, fright, anxiety*
mōbilitās, ātis *f.* activity, motion, speed†
mox soon, presently
nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness
nympha, ae *f.* nymph, minor female di-
vinity of the forests, waters, etc.
parvus, a, um small, little*
perhibeō, ēre, uī, itus present, say†
praetexō, ere, uī, xtus fringe, cloak†
prīmō at first, in the beginning
signum, i *n.* sign, signal, token, mark*
solum, i *n.* ground, soil, earth*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*
speciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, sight, aspect
ululō (1) howl, wail, shout, shriek
vėlōx, ōcis swift, quick, rapid, fleet†
vertex, icis *m.* peak, summit, head, top*
vigeō, ēre, uī flourish, be strong, thrive

take the place of the wedding song and festal cries. **Prima Tellūs:** Earth was called **prima** as the oldest of the gods; as Mother Earth, the producer and nurse of life, she presided over marriage. **prō-nuba:** the matron whose function it was to join the hand of the bride to that of the groom at the wedding.

167. dant signum: i.e., for the wedding. **ignēs (lightnings):** instead of the marriage torches ordinarily employed at weddings. **cōnscius:** witness (to the marriage).

168. cōnūbiis: to the marriage; poetic plural; pronounced here as though spelled cōnūbjis, for the sake of the meter; App. 401. **ululā(vē)runt:** instead of the marriage songs ordinarily sung at weddings. (in) vertice (montis).

170-171. speciē fāmāve: by (regard for) appearances or (for) her reputation. **movētur nec Dīdō meditātur:** in Latin the subject of two such clauses is often placed in the second, contrary to English usage.

173-197. Dame Gossip (Rumor) spreads exaggerated reports of the love affair, finally carrying the news to Iarbas, an African chieftain and one of Dido's rejected suitors.

174. quā: abl. with compar.; App. 327. **nōn (est).**

175. eundō: abl. of the gerund of eō; App. 269.

177. (in) solō = (in) terrā.

178. deōrum: obj. gen. with irā; App. 284. In anger at the gods for slaying her

prögenuit *pedibus* celerem et pernīcibus ālis, 180
 mōnstrum horrendum, *ingēns*, cui quot sunt corpore plūmae,
 tot vigilēs *oculī* subter (mīrābile dictū),
 tot linguae, totidem ōra sonant, tot subrigit aurīs.
Nocte volat caelī mediō terraeque per umbram
 strīdēns, nec dulcī dēclīnat lūmina somnō; 185
lūce sedet custōs aut summī culmine tēctī
 turribus aut altīs, et magnās territat urbēs,
 tam fictī prāvique tenāx quam nuntia vēri.
Haec tum multiplicī populōs sermōne replēbat
 gaudēns, et pariter facta atque infecta canēbat: 190
vēnisse Aenēān Trojānō sanguine crētum,
 cui sē pulchra virō dignētur jūngere *Didō*;

āla, ae f. wing*
 auris, is f. ear*
 canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant,
 tell, proclaim, prophesy*
 celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick*
 crētus, a, um grown, sprung
 culmen, inis n. roof, summit, top, peak*
 custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel*
 dēclīnō (1) turn aside, bend down, droop†
 dignor, āri, ātus deem worthy, deign
 (abl.)
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 factum, ī n. deed, act, exploit*
 fictum, ī n. falsehood, fiction†
 gaudeō, ērē, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
 horrendus, a, um awful, terrible, dire*
 infectus, a, um not done, false†
 jūngō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, yoke*
 lingua, ae f. tongue, language
 medium, (i)ī n. middle, center
 mīrābilis, e wonderful, marvelous
 mōnstrum, ī n. prodigy, portent, mon-
 ster*
 multiplex, icis manifold, multiple†
 nuntia, ae f. messenger†
 pariter equally, alike*
 pernīx, icis active, nimble, swift†

plūma, ae f. feather, plume
 populus, ī m. people, nation, race*
 prāvum, ī n. wrong, perverse act†
 prōgignō, ere, genuī, genitus bring forth,
 bear†
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,
 splendid, illustrious, noble*
 quam how, than, as*
 quot as many as
 repleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, stuff
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit (down),
 settle*
 sermō, ōnis m. conversation, gossip
 sonō, āre, ūi, itus (re)sound, roar*
 strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, whir, rustle
 subrigō, ere, surrēxi, rēctus raise, rise†
 subter beneath, below†
 tam so, as, such*
 tenāx, ācis tenacious, holding (to)†
 territō (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†
 tot so many, as many*
 totidem the same number, so many
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 turris, is f. tower, turret
 vērūm, ī n. truth, right, reality
 vigil, ilis wakeful, watchful, sleepless†
 volō (1) fly, flit, speed*

children, the Titans, Earth bore the
 giants, Rumor being one of them.

181. Rumor is covered with feathers;
 and beneath each feather is an eye, a
 tongue, a mouth, and an ear. cui: dat. of
 possessor.

182. oculi (sunt) subter (plūmās).

183. (Fāma) subrigit tot auris: Rumor
 raises as many listening ears.

184. caeli mediō terraeque: 'twixt
 heaven and earth.

185. strīdēns: with her wings as she

flies, referring to the buzz of gossip.
 lūmina (sua) = oculōs, as often.

186-187. lūce: by day, abl. of time;
 App. 322. (in) culmine aut (in) tur-
 ribus.

188. ficti: gen. with tenāx; App. 287.

189. Haec = Fāma.

190. facta atque infecta: "fact and
 fiction." Literally, things done and not
 done. canēbat: followed by indir. disc.

192. virō = conjugī. jūngere: com-
 plementary inf.; App. 259.

- nunc hiemem inter sē luxū, quam longa, fovēre
rēgnōrum immemorēs turpique cupidine captōs.
195 Haec passim dea foeda virum diffundit in ōra.
Prōtinus ad rēgem cursūs dētorquet Iarbān
incenditque animū dictīs atque aggerat irās.
— Hic Hammōne satus raptā Garamantide nymphā
templa Jovī centum lātīs immānia rēgnīs,
200 centum ārās posuit vigilemque sacrāverat ignem,
excubiās divum aeternās, pecudumque cruore
pingue solum et variīs flōrentia līmīna sertīs.
*(Isque amēns animū et rūmōre accēnsus amārō
dicītūr ante ārās mediā inter nūminā divūm*
205 *multa Jovem manibus supplex ōrāsse supīnīs:*

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, inflame
aeternus, a, um eternal, everlasting*
aggerō (1) heap up, pile up, increase†
amārus, a, um bitter, unpleasant†
āmēns, entis mad, crazy, frenzied
centum hundred*
cruor, ōris m. blood, gore
cupidō, inis f. love, desire, longing
dētorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn (away)†
diffundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus scatter, spread
excubiae, ārum f. watch(fire), senti-
nel†
flōreō, ēre, uī bloom, flourish, blossom†
foedus, a, um foul, loathsome, filthy
foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus cherish, fondle
Garamantis, idis of the Garamantes, an
African tribe†
Hammōn, ōnis m. god of North Africa,
famous for his oracle and identified by
the Romans with Jupiter†
hiems, emis f. winter, storm*
Iarbās, ae m. African chieftain, one of
Dido's unsuccessful suitors
immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, burn, inflame*
lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
luxus, ūs m. luxury, splendor, excess
nymphā, ae f. nymph, one of the minor
divinities of the forests, waters, etc.
ōrō (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat*
passim everywhere, all about*
pecus, udis f. animal (of the flock)*
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
prōtinus continuously, immediately
quam how, than, as*
rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (away), seize,
ravish*
rūmor, ōris m. rumor, report, gossip†
sacrō (1) consecrate, hallow, dedicate*
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
sertum, ī n. wreath, garland
solum, ī n. ground, soil, earth*
supinus, a, um flat, upturned
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*
turpis, e shameful, disgraceful
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
vigil, ilis watchful, wakeful, sleepless

193. (Didōnem et Aenēān) inter sē
fovēre hiemem quam longa (ea hiems
sit). inter sē fovēre: were caressing one
another the whole long winter; inter sē is
commonly thus employed to denote re-
ciprocal action. quam longa (sit): however
long it may be.

194. rēgnōrum: Carthage and Italy.

195. vir(ōr)um.

198-218. Iarbas prays to his father,
Jupiter Ammon, for help, reproaching
him that he had allowed Aeneas, a mere
adventurer, to be preferred to himself.

198. Hic: pronounce hicc.

199-200. templa centum (posuit), cen-
tum ārās posuit: Latin commonly ex-
presses the verb with only the second
of two such clauses, English with the
first. Compare the note on ll.
170-171.

201. excubiās: apposition with ignem;
the never-dying fire stands sentry in honor
of the gods, like the sacred fire of Vesta
at Rome.

202. pingue: from the blood and the
fat of the many sacrifices.

203. Is: Iarbas. * animī: gen. with
āmēns; or loc.; App. 287, 37, c.

204. media inter nūmina: amid the
divine presences.

"*Juppiter* omnipotēns, cui nunc Maurūsia pictis
 gēns epulāta toris Lēnaeum libat honōrem,
 aspicias haec? An tē, genitor, cum fulmina torquēs
 nēquiquam horrēmus, caecique in nūbibus ignēs
 210 terrificant animōs et inānia murmura miscent?
 Fēmina, quae nostris errāns in finibus urbem
 exiguum pretiō posuit, cui litus arandum
 cuique loci lēgēs dedimus, cōnūbia nostra
 reppulit ac dominum Aenēan in rēgna rēcēpit.
 Et nunc ille Paris cum sēmivirō comitatū,
 215 Maconīa mēntum mītrā crīnemque madentē
 subnexus, raptō potitur: nōs munera templis
 quippe tūc sērius fāmamque fovēmus inānem."
 Talibus orantem dictis arāsque tenentem

an whether, or*
 arō (1) plow, till, furrow
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold*
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
 comitātus, ūs m. retinue, train, company†
 cōnūbium, (i)ī n. wedlock, marriage
 crinis, is m. long hair, locks, tresses*
 dominus, ī m. master, lord, ruler
 epulor, āri, ātus feast, banquet (abl.)
 exiguus, a, um small, scanty, petty†
 fēmina, ae f. woman, female
 foveō, ēre, fōvi, fōtus cherish, fondle
 fulmen, inis n. thunderbolt, lightning*
 horreo, ēre, uī shudder (at), quake
 inānis, e empty, useless, vain, idle*
 Lēnaeus, a, um Lenaeus, Bacchic, of
 Bacchus, god of wine†
 lēx, legis f. law, jurisdiction, term
 libō (1) pour (as a libation), offer
 madeō, ēre, uī drip, be wet, reek†
 Maeonius, a, um Maeonian, Lydian,
 Asiatic†
 Maurūsus, a, um Moorish†

mentum, ī n. chin, beard†
 misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
 mitra, ae f. mitre, cap, turban†
 murmur, uris n. murmur, roar, rumble
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist*
 omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
 orō (1) pray (for), beseech, entreat*
 Paris, idis m. Trojan prince, eloped with
 Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
 pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider
 potior, iri, itus possess, gain (abl.)
 pretium, (i)ī n. price, reward, value†
 quippe forsooth, surely, indeed
 raptum, ī n. plunder, prey, booty†
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, recover*
 repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus reject, repel
 sēmivir, iri half-man, effeminate†
 subnectō, ere, nex(u)i, nexus tie (under)
 templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*
 terrificō (1) frighten, terrify, alarm†
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, sway, hurl*
 torus, ī m. (banqueting) couch, bed*

206-207. Maurūsia gēns: the people of Iarbas.

208-210. "Are all your thunders and lightnings but empty threats? You do not really reward the good and punish the wicked."

211-212. Fēmina: Dido; emphatic by position. pretiō: abl. of price; App. 336. She had not taken the place by force, but had been compelled to buy it, a confession of weakness.

212-213. See the note on ll. 199-200.

214. dominum: said with bitter disdain.

215. Paris: Aeneas is another Paris in stealing the woman Iarbas was passing to marry. sēmivirō: the hardy African

chieftain despises the more cultured Trojans as being effeminate Orientals.

216-217. mentum, crinem: objects of the middle participle subnexus; App. 309, a. madentem: dripping (with perfume), another mark of effeminacy. raptō: abl. with potitur; App. 342. potitur: with i irregularly short.

218. quippe: ironical. fāmamfovēmus inānem: we keep alive a baseless belief in your power and justice.

219-237. Moved by the prayer of Iarbas, Jupiter sends Mercury to Aeneas to remind him of his high destiny and of his duty to his son Ascanius.

219. (Iarbān) orantem: obj. of audiūt.

- 220 *audiit Omnipotēns, oculōsque ad moenia torsit*
rēgia et oblitōs fāmae meliōris amantīs.
Tum sic Mercurium adloquitur ac tālia mandat:
"Vādē agē, nāte, vocā Zephyrōs et lābere pennīs
Dardaniumque ducem, Tyriā Karthāgine quī nunc
 225 *expectat fātisque datās nōn respiciit urbēs,*
adloquere et celeris dēfer mea dicta per aurās.
Nōn illum nōbīs genetrīx pulcherrima tālem
prōmisit Grajumque ideō bis vindicat armīs;
sed fore quī gravidam imperiūs bellōque frementem
 230 *Italiam regeret, genus altō ā sanguine Teucrī*
prōderet, ac tōtum sub lēgēs mitteret orbem.
Sī nūlla accendit tantārum glōria rerū
nec super ipse suā mōlitur laude labōrem,

accendō, ere, i, ēnsus kindle, inflame
 adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost
 amāns, antis *m. (f.)* lover
 bis twice*
 celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick*
 Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
 dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry (down),
 report
 dux, ducis *m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief*
 ex(s)pectō (1) (a)wait, expect, linger,
 tarry, dally*
 fremō, ere, ui, itus rage, roar, ring*
 genetrīx, tricis *f.* mother
 glōria, ae *f.* renown, glory, fame, pride
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 gravidus, a, um heavy, burdened, preg-
 nant, filled, teeming†
 ideō therefore, for this reason†
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of
 North Africa
 laus, laudis *f.* glory, praise, merit*
 lēx, lēgis *f.* law, jurisdiction, term
 mandō (1) command, intrust, enjoin

melior, ius better, superior, preferable
 Mercurius, (i) *m.* messenger of the gods,
 god of commerce, and escort of de-
 parted souls to Hades†
 mōlior, irī, itus do, (strive to) accomplish
 obliviscor, i, litus forget (*gen.*)
 omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
 orbis, is *m.* circle, orb(it), earth*
 penna, ae *f.* wing, feather
 prōdō, ere, didi, ditus betray, transmit
 prōmittō, ere, misi, missus promise*
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble,
 splendid, handsome, illustrious*
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
 regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)
 at, regard*
 Teucer (crus), cri *m.* early king of Troy
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, sway, hurl*
 vādō, ere go, proceed, advance
 vindicō (1) vindicate, claim (as free),
 rescue†
 Zephyrus, i *m.* (west) wind

220-221. moenia rēgia: of Carthage.
 fāmae: *gen.* with oblitōs; App. 288.

222. adloquitur: with final syllable
 irregularly long, due to the pause and
 the verse accent; App. 394, a.

223. Zephyrōs, pennīs: he is to use
 every contrivance for speed. lābere:
 imp. pennīs: attached to his sandals.

224. ducem: obj. of the imp. ad-
 loquere, l. 226.

226. dēfer: imp.; App. 202.

227. tālem (virum).

228. ideō: for this purpose; that he
 might dally at ease in Carthage. bis
 vindicat: rescued; once from Diomedes
 (I, 96-98, and notes), and again at the

fall of Troy (II, 620 ff.). armīs: abl. of
 separation.

229-230. sed (genetrīx prōmisit illum)
 fore (tālem) quī regeret: rel. clause of
 characteristic; App. 389. imperiūs: with
 (future) empire.

231. tōtum orbem: through the later
 development of the Roman Empire,
 especially under Augustus, who is here
 thus complimented by the poet.

232. accendit (illum).

233-234. super laude suā. pater: em-
 phatic; could a father do this, and have
 so little true paternal feeling? Ascaniō:
 indir. obj. of invidet. arcēs: dir. obj. of
 invidet.

Ascaniōne pater Rōmānās invidet arcēs?
Quid struit? Aut quā spē inimicā in gente morātur
nec prōlem Ausoniam et Lāvīnia respicit arva?
Nāvīget! Hāec sūmma est, hīc nōstrī nūntius estō."

235

Dixerat. Ille patris magnī pārēre parābat
imperio: et primum pedibus tālāria necit
aurea, quae sublimem ālis sive aequorā suprā
seu terram rapidō pariter cum flāmine portant.
Tum virgam capit: hāc animās ille ēvocat Orcō
pallentīs, aliās sub Tartara trīstia mittit,
dat somnōs adimitque, et lūmina morte resignat.
Illā frētus agit ventōs et turbida trānat
nūbila. Jamque volāns apicem et latera ardua cernit
Atlantis dūrī caelum quī vertice fuleit,

240

245

adimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus take away
 āla, ae f. wing*
 apex, icis m. peak, summit, head
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, towering*
 Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*
 Atlās, antis m. god who supports heaven
 on his shoulders, grandfather of Mer-
 cury; a mountain of Northwest Africa
 aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
 Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
 ēvocō (1) call out, summon†
 flāmen, inis n. breeze, blast, wind†
 frētus, a, um relying (on) (abl.)†
 fulciō, ire, lsi, ltus support, prop†
 inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
 invidēō, ēre, vidī, visus begrudge (dat.)*
 latus, eris n. side, flank*
 Lāvīn(i)us, a, um of Lavinium, an early
 Italian city
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, detain*
 nāvīgō (1) (set) sail, navigate
 nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten
 nūbila, ōrum n. clouds, cloudiness
 nuntius, (i)ī m. messenger, message

Orcus, ī m. Hades, (god of) the lower
 world
 pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan
 pārēō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (dat.)
 pariter equally, alike*
 portō (1) carry, bear, convey*
 prōlēs, is f. progeny, offspring, race*
 rapidus, a, um swift, snatching*
 resignō (1) (un)seal, open, close†
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)
 at, regard*
 Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
 sive, seu whether, or, either if, or if
 spē, ei f. hope, expectation*
 struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, plan
 sublimis, e on high, towering, lofty
 summa, ae f. sum, substance, chief thing†
 suprā over, above (acc.)
 tālāria, ium n. (winged) sandals, anklets†
 Tartara, ōrum n. Hades, the lower world†
 trānō (1) swim across, float†
 turbidus, a, um troubled, stormy†
 vertex, icis m. peak, summit, head, top*
 virga, ae f. staff, wand, twig†
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit*

235. spē inimicā: hiatus; App. 399.
 inimicā gente: Vergil is thinking of later
 times when Rome and Carthage were such
 bitter foes.

237. Nāvīget: vol. subj.; App. 254.
 hic nostri nuntius estō: this be our (my)
 message. nostri: gen. pl. of ego. estō:
 imp.

238-258. Mercury hastens from
 Olympus to Carthage.

240. ālis: attached to the tālāria.
 (illum) sublimem. aequora suprā =
 suprā aequora: anastrophe; App. 414.

242. virgam: the cādūceus or magic
 winged wand entwined with serpents.
 hāc (virgā): as escort of the souls of the
 dead, Mercury conducted them in both
 directions; to Hades after death, and
 back to the upper world as ghosts.

245. Compare the flight of Raphael in
 Paradise Lost, V, 255 ff. Illā (virgā):
 abl. of means with frētus. agit ventōs:
 outstrips the winds.

247. Atlantis: in the following de-
 scription, Vergil skillfully mingles the
 conception of Atlas as a god and as a
 mountain.

- Atlantis, cinctum adsiduē cui nūbibus ātrīs
 pīniferum caput et ventō pulsatur et imbrī,
 250 nix umerōs infūsa, tegit, tūm flūmina mentō
 praecipitānt senis| et glaciē rigēt| horrīdā| barbā.
Hic primum paribus nitēns Cyllēnius ālis
 cōstitit: *hinc tōtō* praeceps sē corpore ad undās
 mīsīt avī similis, quae circum litora, circum
 255 piscōsōs scopulōs humilis volat aequora juxtā.
Haud ālītēr tērrās intēr cādūmq̄ vōlābāt 10
 litus harēnōsum ad Libyae, ventōsque secābat
 mātērnō veniēns ab avō Cyllēnia prōlēs.
Ut primum ālātīs tetigit māgālia plantīs,
 260 *Aenēān* fundantem arcēs ac tēcta novantem
 cōspicit. *Atque illi* stellātus iaspide fulvā

adsiduē constantly, ever, continually†
 āla, ae f. wing*
 ālātus, a, um winged, furnished with wings†
 aliter otherwise, differently*
 Atlās, antis m. god who supports heaven on his shoulders, grandfather of Mercury; mountain of Northwest Africa
 avis, is f. bird, fowl†
 avus, i m. grandfather; ancestor
 barba, ae f. beard, whiskers
 cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus surround, gird(le)*
 cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
 cōstō, āre, stitī, status stand firm, halt
 Cyllēnius, (i) i m. the Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury; *adj.*, Cyllēnius, a, um Cyllenean, of Mt. Cyllene in Arcadia, birthplace of Mercury†
 flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood*
 fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
 fundō (1) found, build, establish†
 glaciēs, ēi f. ice†
 harēnōsus, a, um sandy†
 horridus, a, um bristling, awful, rough
 humilis, e low(ly), low-lying, humble
 iaspis, idis f. jasper, a semi-precious stone†
 imber, bris m. rain, flood, storm, water

infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour on (in) juxtā close (to), next (to) (acc.)*
 Libya, ae f. country of Northwest Africa*
 māgālia, ium n. huts, hovels
 mātērnus, a, um maternal, of a mother
 mentum, i n. chin, beard
 nitor, i, sus (nixus) strive, rest on (abl.)
 nix, nivis f. snow†
 novō (1) renew, make (new), build†
 nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist*
 pār, paris equal, balanced, like*
 pīnifer, era, erum pine-bearing†
 piscōsus, a, um fishy, fish-haunted†
 planta, ae f. heel; sole of foot†
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
 praecipitō (1) fall headlong, hasten
 prōlēs, is f. progeny, offspring, race*
 pulsō (1) beat, strike, lash, batter
 rigeō, ēre, uī be stiff, be rigid
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag*
 secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
 senex, senis m. old man*
 similis, e like, similar (*dat.*, *gen.*)*
 stellātus, a, um starred, star-spangled†
 tangō, ere, tetigī, tātus touch, reach*
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect*
 umerus, i m. shoulder
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit*

248. cinctum (est). cui: whose.

250. (dē) mentō: abl. of separation.

252. Hic: on the summit of Atlas.
 ālis: abl. of means with nitēns.

257. ad litus: App. 414.

258. mātērnō avō: Atlas. The mother of Mercury was Maja, daughter of Atlas.

259-278. Mercury finds Aeneas busily engaged in furthering Dido's plans; he delivers his message and disappears.

261-262. stellātus ēnsis: only the hilt was studded.

ēnsis erat Tyriōque ardēbat mūrce laena
 dēmissa ex umerīs, dīves quae mūnera Dīdō
 fēcerat, et tenuī tēlās discrēverat aurō.
 Continuō invādit: "Tū nuñc Karthāginis altae 265
 fundāmenta locās pulchramque uxōrius urbem
 extruīs? Heu, rēgnī rērumque oblīte tuārum!
 Ipse deum tibi mē clārō dēmittit Olympō
 rēgnātor, caelum ac terrās quī nūmine torquet:
 ipse haec ferre jubet celeris mandāta per aurās: 270
 Quid struis? Aut quā spē Libycis teris ōtia terris?
 Sī tē nulla movet tantārum glōria rērum
 [nec super ipse tuā mōliris laude labōrem,]
 Ascanium surgentem et spēs hērēdis Iūli
 respice, cui rēgnum Italiae Rōmānaque tellūs 275
 dēbētur." Tātī Cyllēnius ōre locūtus
 mortālīs vīsūs mediō sermōne reliquit
 et procul in tenuem ex oculīs ēvānuīt auram.

Ascanius, (i)ī *m.* son of Aeneas*
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy*
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
 continuō immediately, at once
 Cyllēnius, (i)ī *m.* the Cyllenean; Mercury,
 born on Mt. Cyllene
 dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, be
 destined
 dēmittō, ere, misi, missus let down, send
 down, lower, drop*
 dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy
 discernō, ere, crēvi, crētus separate
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
 ēvānescō, ere, nuī vanish, disappear†
 extruō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build (up),
 rear
 fundāmentum, i *n.* foundation, base
 glōria, ae *f.* glory, renown, fame, pride
 hērēs, ēdis *m.* heir, successor†
 invādō, ere, sī, sus attack, address
 Iūlus, i *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of
 North Africa
 laena, ae *f.* (woolen) mantle, cloak†
 laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
 Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a coun-
 try of North Africa*

locō (1) place, lay, establish, locate*
 loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
 mandātum, i *n.* command, order, behest
 mōlior, iri, itus undertake, accomplish, do
 mortālīs, e mortal, human, earthly*
 mūrex, icis *m.* purple (dye), crimson,
 scarlet†
 obliviscor, i, litus forget (*gen.*)
 Olympus, i *m.* Greek mountain, home of
 the gods; heaven
 ōtium, (i)ī *n.* leisure, idleness, quiet†
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,
 noble, splendid, illustrious*
 rēgnātor, ōris *m.* ruler, lord, director
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)
 at, regard*
 Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
 sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
 spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation*
 struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, contrive
 tēla, ae *f.* web, textile†
 tenuis, e slight, thin, fine, delicate
 terō, ere, trivi, tritus rub, wear, waste†
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, hurl, sway*
 uxōrius, a, um wife-ruled, uxorious, hen-
 pecked†
 vīsus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, view, aspect

264. tenuī aurō: she had interwoven
 the warp with fine gold thread.

266. uxōrius: wife-enslaved; used as
 a term of reproach.

267. oblīte: vocative of the participle
 of obliviscor. rēgnī rērumque: genitives
 with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

274. Iūli: obj. gen.

277. mediō (in) sermōne: in the
 middle (of his) speech, abruptly; App. 246.

278. in tenuem auram: cf. Shake-
 speare, *Tempest*, IV, i, 148-150:

"These our actors,
 As I foretold you, were all spirits and
 Are melted into air, into thin air."

- 280 *At vērō Aenēās aspectū obmūtuit āmēns,*
arrēctaeque horrōre comae et vōx faucibus haesit.
Ardet abire fugā dulcisque relinquere terrās,
attonitus tantō monitū imperiōque deōrum.
Heu quid agat? Quō nunc rēginam ambire furentem
audeat adfātū? Quae prīma exordia sūmat?
- 285 *Atque animum nunc hūc celerem nunc dividit illūc*
in partisque rapit variās perque omnia versat.
Haec alternantī potior sententia vīsa est:
Mnēsthea Sergestumque vocat fortemque Serestum,
classem aptent tacitī sociōsque ad litora cōgant,
- 290 *arma parent et quae rēbus sit causa novandis*
dissimulent; sēsē intereā, quandō optima Didō

abeō, ire, iī (ivī), itus depart*
 adfātus, ūs m. address, speech†
 alternō (1) change, alternate, waver†
 ambiō, ire, ivī (iī), itus go around; con-
 ciliate†
 āmēns, entis mad, frenzied, distraught
 aptō (1) equip, make ready, furnish
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus erect, stand on
 end
 a(d)spectus, ūs m. sight, appearance
 attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, astounded
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 causa, ae f. cause, reason, occasion*
 celer, eris, ere swift, speedy, quick*
 cōgō, ere, coēgī, coactus muster, com-
 pel*
 coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses*
 dissimulō (1) conceal, dissimulate, pre-
 tend otherwise
 dividō, ere, visī, vīsus divide, distribute
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 exordium, (i)ī n. beginning, commence-
 ment†
 faux, faucis f. jaws, throat; gulf

fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to),
 halt (dat.)*
 horror, ōris m. shudder(ing), horror, alarm
 illūc thither, to that place†
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 Mnēstheus, ei (eos), acc. ea, m. Trojan
 leader†
 monitus, ūs m. advice, warning†
 novō (1) renew, make new, alter, build
 obmūtēscō, ere, tui be dumb, stand
 speechless†
 optimus, a, um best, finest
 potior, ius preferable, better
 quandō when, since, because
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus seize, snatch, rob*
 sententia, ae f. opinion, resolve, view
 Serestus, i m. Trojan leader
 Sergestus, i m. Trojan leader*
 sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, employ
 tacitus, a, um silent, still, secret
 varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
 vērō truly, indeed, but
 versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

279-295. Obeying the divine com-
 mands Aeneas instructs his followers
 to prepare secretly for the voyage, and
 seeks a favorable opportunity for in-
 forming Dido of his plan to depart.

281. fugā: abl. of manner. relinquere
 terrās (Carthāginis): Vergil constantly
 endeavors to represent his hero Aeneas
 as a man of such thorough devotion (pius
 Aenēās) that he is ever ready to sacri-
 fice self to the will of Heaven and to
 surrender whatever life holds most dear,
 if it be the divine will.

283-284. agat, audeat, sūmat: deliber-
 ative subjunctives; App. 348. furentem
 (amōre).

285. animum celerem dividit: Cf.
 Tennyson, *Passing of Arthur*,

"This way and that dividing the swift
 mind."

286. rapit (animum), versat (animum).
 287. (Aenēae) alternantī: whether he
 should inform Dido.

289-291. (ut) aptent, cōgant, parent,
 dissimulent: indir. commands after
 vocat, which implies et imperat or some
 such expression; App. 390. rēbus no-
 vandis: an expression commonly used
 for taking a new step, such as a revolution.
 quae... sit causa: indir. quest.; App.
 349.

291-293. sēsē temptātūrum (esse):

nesciat *et tantōs* rumpī nōn spēret amōrēs,
temptātūrum aditūs *et quae* mollissima fandī
tempora, quis rēbus dexter modus. Ōcius omnēs
imperio laeti pārent *et jussa* facessunt.

295

At rēgīna dolōs (quis fallere possit amantem?)

praesēnsit, mōtūsque excēpit *prima* futūrōs
omnīa tūta timēns. *Eadem* impia Fāma furentī
dētulit armārī *classem* cursumque parārī.

Saevit inops animī *tōtamque* incēnsa per urbem

300

bacchātur, quālis commōtīs excita sacrīs

Thyias, *ubi auditō* stimulant trietērica Bacchō

orgia nocturnusque *vocat* clāmōre Cithaerōn.

aditūs, ūs *m.* approach, access

amāns, antis *m.* (f.) lover

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*

bacchor, āri, ātus rush wildly, rave

Bacchus, ī *m.* (god of) wine

Cithaerōn, ōnis *m.* Greek mountain near
Thebes, on which the rites of Bacchus
were celebrated†

commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, stir,
shake, agitate

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, re-
port

dolus, ī *n.* deceit, stratagem, fraud*

excio, ire, ivi, itus arouse, excite, stir

excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, catch,
understand, reply

facessō, ere, (iv)i, itus do, make, fulfill†

fallō, ere, fefellī, falsus deceive, cheat,
mock*

impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, burn*

inops, opis needy, destitute, bereft (of)†

jussum, ī *n.* command, behest, order

modus, ī *m.* manner, limit, method*

mollis, e soft, yielding, easy, mild

mōtus, ūs *m.* movement, emotion†

nesciō, ire, ivi (ii) not know, be igno-
rant

nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal

ōcior, ius swifter, quicker; very swift†

orgia, ōrum *n.* mystic rites, orgies†

pāreō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (*dat.*)

praesentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive
first, suspect†

quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*

rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst
(forth), utter*

saeviō, ire, ivi (ii), itus rage, storm

spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*

stimulō (1) spur, goad, prick, incite†

temptō (1) try, attempt, seek, test*

Thyias, adis *f.* Bacchante, a woman

devotee of the worship of Bacchus†

timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread*

trietēricus, a, um triennial†

tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*

implied indir. disc., dependent on vocat,
l. 288, which implies *et dicit* or some
such expression; App. 390. nesciat:
subj. in a dependent clause in indir. disc.;
App. 390, b.

293-294. quae tempora (sint), quis
modus (sit): indir. questions, objects of
temptātūrum (esse); App. 349.

296-300. Dido, learning that the fleet
was being equipped and suspecting the
truth, bitterly reproaches Aeneas and
with tears and prayers attempts to pre-
vail on him to remain.

296. possit: deliberative subj.; App.
348.

298. tūta: (no matter how) safe, with
omnia. furenti (Didōni).

300. animi: gen. with adj. inops;
App. 287.

302-303. Thyias: yi form a diphthong
pronounced *we*. The Bacchic revels
celebrated every third year on Mt.
Cithaeron, near Thebes, were famous.
When the *sacra* were brought out of the
temple and shaken, the Thyiads or
Bacchantes ran wild, dressed themselves
in fawn skins, and joined the Bacchic
orgies, where they brandished the thyrsi
(wands), and danced to the accom-
paniment of clashing cymbals. Cf.
Wordsworth, *Duddon Sonnets*, 20:

"Dance like a Bacchanal from rock to
rock,
Tossing her frantic thyrsus wide and
high."

auditō Bacchō: abl. abs.; as the cry
'Bacchus' is heard. The worshippers

- Tandem hīs Aenēan compellat vōcibus ultrō:*
 305 "Dissimulāre etiam spērāstī, perfide, *tantum*
posse nefās tacitusque meā dēcēdere terrā?
Nec tē noster amor nec tē data dextera quondam
nec moritūra tenet crūdēli fūnere Didō?
 Quin etiam hibernō mōliris sīdere classem
 310 *et mediīs properās Aquilōnibus ire per altum,*
crūdēlis? Quid, sī nōn arva aliēna domōsque
ignōtās peterēs, et Troja antiqua manēret,
Troja per undōsum peterētur classibus aequor?
Mēne fugis? Per ego hās lacrimās dextramque tuam tē
 315 *(quandō aliud mihi jam miserae nihil ipsa reliquī),*
per cōnūbia nostra, per inceptōs hymenaeōs,
sī bene quid dē tē meruī, fuit aut tibi quicquam
dulce meum, miserēre domūs lābentis et istam,
ōrō, sī quis adhūc precibus locus, exue mentem.
 320 *Tē propter Libycae gentēs Nomadumque tyrannī*
ōdēre, infēnsī Tyrī; tē propter eundem

adhūc to this point, till now
 aliēnus, a, um belonging to another,
 other's, alien, foreign†
 altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven
 Aquilō, ōnis m. (north) wind
 bene well, rightly, securely, fully†
 compellō (1) address, accost, speak to
 cōnūbium, (i) ī n. wedlock, marriage
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, bitter*
 dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart†
 dissimulō (1) conceal, dissimulate, pre-
 tend otherwise
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, pleasant, delightful*
 etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
 exuō, ere, uī, ūtus bare, doff, discard
 fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster*
 hibernus, a, um wintry, of the winter
 hymenaeus, ī m. marriage (song), god
 of marriage, Hymen
 ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
 infēnsus, a, um hostile, bitter
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*

Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of
 North Africa*
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
 misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate (*gen.*)*
 mōlior, īri, itus prepare, attempt, do
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
 nefās n. indecl. impiety, sin, crime*
 nihil, nūl nothing, not at all
 Nomas, adis m. tribe of North Africa†
 ōdī, isse hate, detest, loathe
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
 perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious†
 prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow*
 properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
 propter on account of, near (*acc.*)†
 quandō when, since, if ever, because
 quin why not, but that, nay even*
 quisquam, quicquam anyone, anything
 spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
 tacitus, a, um silent, noiseless, secret
 tyrannus, ī m. ruler, chieftain, tyrant
 ultrō further, voluntarily*
 undōsus, a, um billowy, wavy

shouted 'iō Bacche,' and 'Euoe Bacche.'
 stimulant (illam), vocat (illam).

305-306. etiam spērā(vi)stī, perfide,
 (tē) posse dissimulāre tantum nefās?

309. hibernō sidere = tempore. The
 ancients regularly suspended navigation
 during the winter months.

311-313. Quid, sī, etc.: you wouldn't
 sail now, even if you were going back to
 secure homes in Troy, and were not (as
 you are) sailing away to strange foreign

lands (arva aliēna). Troja peterētur
 (hibernō sidere): the conclusion of the
 conditions contrary to fact, sī peterēs
 and sī manēret; App. 382.

314-319. Mē: emphatic by position,
 obj. of fugis. per lacrimās et per dex-
 tram. tē: obj. of ōrō. miserēre: imp.
 domūs: gen. with misereor; App. 289.

319. sī quis (indef.). locus (sit).

320-321. gentēs et tyrannī ōdēre (mē).
 ōdēre = ōdērunt. infēnsī (mihi sunt)

extinctus pudor *et, quā sōlā sīdera* adibam,
fāma prior. *Cui mē moribundam dēseris, — hospes*
(hoc solum nōmen quoniam dē conjugē restat)?
Quid moror? An mea Pygmalion dum moenia frāter 325
dēstruat aut captam dūcat Gaetūlus Iarbās?
Saltem sī quā mihī dē tē suscepta fuisset
ante fugam subolēs, sī quis mihī parvulus aulā *only use of diminutive*
lūderet Aenēās, quī tē tamen ore referret, *adjective in all Vergil*
nōn equidem omnīnō capta ac dēserta viderer." 330

Dixerat. Ille Jovis monitis immōta tenēbat
lūmina et obnixus cūram sub corde premēbat.
Tandem pauca refert: "Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō
ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, rēgina, negābō

adeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus approach
an whether, or*
aula, ae f. hall, palace, court
cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
dēstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus destroy†
ēnumerō (1) recount, enumerate†
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
exting(u)ō, ere, inxī, inctus extinguish,
 blot out, destroy, ruin
frāter, tris m. brother*
Gaetūlus, a, um of the Gaetuli, an African
 tribe
hospes, itis m. (f.) stranger, guest, host
Iarbās, ae m. African prince, one of Dido's
 suitors
immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken
lūdō, ere, sī, sus play, sport, mock
monitum, i n. advice, warning
moribundus, a, um dying, about to
 die†
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*

negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
numquam never, at no time
obnitor, i, sus (nixus) struggle†
omnīnō altogether, completely, utterly†
parvulus, a, um tiny, very small, lit-
 tle†
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty*
premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,
 crush*
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
pudor, ōris m. shame, modesty, honor
Pygmalion, ōnis m. wicked brother of
 Dido
quoniam since, because†
restō, āre, stitī remain, be left
saltem at least, at any rate
subolēs, is f. offspring, progeny, child†
suscipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus take up, beget,
 bear
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able,
 fare well

Tyrīi: the native chieftains, as well as
 her own people, resented her kindly
 attitude toward Aeneas and the Trojans,
 who were foreigners.

322. et (fāma) quā sīdera adibam:
was about to gain immortal fame. (ex-
stincta est) fāma (mea): (my) reputation.

323. moribundam = moritūram.

324. hoc nōmen = hospes. dē con-
jugē = dē nōmine conjugis.

325. Quid (= cūr) moror (mortem
meam). An (moror): am I waiting? dum
dēstruat, dūcat: anticipatory subjunc-
 tives with *dum*; App. 374.

327. suscepta: refers to the Roman
 custom of placing a new-born child on the
 ground before the father, who picked it

up if he wished to acknowledge and rear
 it as his own.

329. referret: characteristic; App.
 389.

331-361. Aeneas replies that he is
 not following his own desires but the
 plans of the gods and the stern decrees
 of fate.

331. Dixerat (Didō). monitis: abl.
 of cause with *tenēbat*.

332. lūmina = oculōs. premēbat = re-
primēbat: repressing all outward indica-
 tions of his feelings.

333-335. Ego, rēgina, numquam
negābō tē prōmeritam (esse dē mē) plūrima
quae: answer to Dido's *sī meruī* of l. 317.

- 335 *prōmeritam, nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae
dum memor ipse meī, dum spīritus hōs regit artūs.
Prō rē pauca loquar. Neque ego hanc abscondere fūrtō
spērāvī (nē finge) fugam, nec conjugis umquam
praetendī taedās aut haec in foedera vēnī.*
- 310 *Mē sī fāta meīs paterentur dūcere vītam
auspiciīs et sponte meā compōnere cūrās,
urbem Trojānam primum dulcisque meōrum
relliquiās colerem, Priamī tēcta alta manērent,
et recidiva manū posuissem Pergama victis.*
- 345 *Sed nunc Italiā magnam Grŷnēus Apollō,
Italiā Lyciae jussēre capessere sortēs;
hic amor, haec patria est. Sī tē Karthāginis arcēs
Phoenissam Libyaeque aspectus dētinēt urbis,
quae tandem Ausoniā Teucrōs cōsidere terrā*

abscondō, ere, (di)dī, ditus hide
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and
prophecy*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member, body*
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, appearance
Ausonius, a, um Ausonian, Italian
auspicium, (i)ī *n.* auspices, authority
capessō, ere, ivi, itus (try to) seize, reach
colō, ere, ui, cultus cultivate, dwell (in),
cherish, honor*
compōnō, ere, posui, positus put together,
settle, calm, quiet
cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down),
settle*
dētineō, ēre, ui, tentus hold back, detain
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
Elissa, ae *f.* Dido†
fingō, ere, finxi, fictus fashion, pretend,
imagine, form, mold
foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, pact
fūrtum, ī *n.* stealth, theft, trick†
Grŷnēus, a, um of Grynium, a town in
Asia Minor, with an oracle of Apollo†
Karthāgō, inis *f.* Carthage, a city of
North Africa
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a
country of North Africa*

loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
Lycia, ae *f.* country of Asia Minor
memini, isse remember, recall (*gen.*)
memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
patior, i, passus suffer, endure, allow*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty*
Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician woman, Dido
piget, ēre, uit it displeases†
praetendō, ere, i, ntus hold before, use as
screen
prō instead of, in behalf of, for, before
(*abl.*)*
prōmereor, ēri, itus deserve, render
service, merit, earn†
recidivus, a, um revived, renewed†
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
re(l)iquiae, ārum *f.* remnants, relics,
leavings
sors, rtis *f.* lot, fate, portion, oracle*
spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
spīritus, ūs *m.* breath, spirit, life, soul†
spōns, spontis *f.* wish, will, desire†
taeda, ae *f.* (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
umquam ever, at any time

valēs = potes. Elissae = Didōnis; *gen.*
with memini; App. 288.

336. dum memor (sum) meī.

337. Prō rē: in defense of my course.

338. nē finge: poetical negative imperative for prose nōli fingere; App. 256, a.

339. praetendī taedās: held out (the prospect of) marriage. haec in foedera: i.e., of marriage.

340. paterentur: condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

343-344. colerem, manērent, posuissem: conclusions contrary to fact; App.

382. victis (Teucris): dat. of reference.

346. Lyciae sortēs = sortēs Lycii Apollinis.

347. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. hic (est) amor, haec patria est: refer to Italy, each pronoun being attracted into the gender of its predicate noun; App. 240, a.

349-350. quae invidia est (tibi) Teu-

invidia est? Et nōs fās extera quaerere rēgna. 350
Mē patris Anchīsae, quotiēns ūmentibus ūmbrīs
nox operit terrās, quotiēns astra ignea surgunt,
admonet in somnīs et turbida terret imāgō;
mē puer Ascanius capitisque injūria cārī,
quem rēgnō Hesperiae fraudō et fātālibus arvīs. 355
Nunc etiam interpres dīvum Jove missus ab ipsō
(testor utrumque caput) celeris mandāta per aurās
dētulit: ipse deum manifestō in lūmine vidī
intransent mūrōs vōcemque hīs auribus hausī.
Dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlis; 360
Italiam nōn sponte sequor."

Tālia dīcentem jamdūdum āversa tuētur
hūc illūc volvēns oculōs tōtumque pererrat
lūminibus tacitis et sic accēnsa profātur:

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle, burn

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn†

Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*

astrum, ī n. star, constellation*

auris, is f. ear*

āvertor, ī, rsus turn away, avert

cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*

celer, eris, ere swift, quick, speedy*

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus carry down, report

dēsino, ere, sīvī (ī), situs cease, desist†

etiam also, even, besides, furthermore*

exterus, a, um outside, foreign

fās n. indecl. right, justice, divine law*

fātālis, e fated, fatal, destined

fraudō (1) defraud, deprive, cheat†

hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drink (in), drain

Hesperia, ae f. Hesperia, Italy, Westland

igneus, a, um fiery, flaming†

illūc thither, to that place

imāgō, inis f. image, likeness, ghost*

incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle, burn*

injūria, ae f. wrong, injury, injustice

interpres, etis m. (f.) interpreter, agent

intrō (1) enter, penetrate

invidia, ae f. grudge, envy, jealousy

jamdūdum long since, for a long time

mandātum, ī n. command, mandate

manifestus, a, um clear, manifest

mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, battlement*

operiō, ire, uī, rtus cover, hide†

pererrō (1) wander over, survey

profor, āri, ātus speak (out), say

querēla, ae f. complaint, lament†

quotiēns how often, as often as

spōns, spontis f. wish, will, desire

tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still, secret

terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify

testor, āri, ātus call to witness, swear by, testify

tuēor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, protect, eye*

turbidus, a, um troubled, agitated

ūmēns, entis moist, dewy, damp

uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two), both*

crōs cōsidere: cōsidere is the subject and *invidia* the predicate of *est*.

350. Et: also, too (as well as you). *fās (est).*

351-353. patris Anchīsae: with *imāgō*.

354. mē puer Ascanius (movet): (the thought of) *my son Ascanius urges me on. capitis cārī = Ascani; obj. gen., the wrong (I am doing) to Ascanius; App. 284.*

355. rēgnō, arvis: abl. of separation.

356. interpres dīv(ōr)um: Mercury.

357. utrumque = et meum et tuum.

361. sponte (meā).

362-392. Carried away by her furious passion, Dido curses Aeneas and all his race, hurries from his presence, and falls fainting into the arms of her attendants.

362. tuētur: of past action continued into the present, *has long been eyeing and is still eyeing; App. 351, 1, b.*

363. tōtum (Aenēan) pererrat.

- 365 "Nec tibi dīva parēns generis nec Dardanus auctor,
perfide, sed dūris genuit tē cautibus horrēns
Caucasus Hyrcānaeque admōrunt ūbera tigrēs.
Nam quid dissimulō aut quae mē ad majōra reservō?
Num flētū ingemuit nostrō? Num lūmina flexit?
370 Num lacrimās victus dedit aut miserātus amantem est?
Quae quibus anteferam? Jam jam nec maxima Jūnō
nec Sātūrnus haec oculīs pater aspicit aequīs.
Nūquam tūta fidēs. Ejectum litore, egentem
excēpi et rēgnū dēmēns in parte locāvī.
375 Āmissam classem, sociōs ā morte redūxi
(heu furiis incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,
nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Jove missus ab ipsō

admoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move to
aequus, a, um equal, propitious, favor-
able, just
amāns, antis *m. (f.)* lover
āmittō, ere, misi, missus lose, let go*
antefērō, ferre, tulī, lātus set before,
prefer, choose first†
Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and
prophecy*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold,
look (at)*
auctor, ōris *m. (f.)* author, founder, spon-
sor
augur, uris *m. (f.)* augur, prophet†
Caucasus, ī *m.* rugged mountain range
between Europe and Asia†
cautēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag
Dardanus, ī *m.* early king of Troy
dēmēns, entis crazy, mad, frenzied
dissimulō (1) pretend otherwise, conceal,
dissimulate
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, rough*
egēns, entis needy, in want, desti-
tute
ējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast out, eject
excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, take
fidēs, ei *f.* faith, trust, confidence*

flectō, ere, flexī, flexus bend, move
flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, lament
furiae, ārum *f.* furies, madness, frenzy
gignō, ere, genui, genitus bear, produce,
beget
horreō, ēre, uī shudder, be rough*
Hyrcānus, a, um Hyrcanian, of Hyrcania,
a wild district on the Caspian Sea†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kindle,
burn*
ingemō, ere, uī groan, roar, lament
locō (1) place, locate, establish*
Lycius, a, um Lycian, of Lycia, a country
of Asia Minor
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*
num *interrog.*, expecting answer no†
nūquam nowhere, never
perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious
redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead back, re-
store
reservō (1) reserve, keep back, save†
Sātūrnus, a, um (born) of Saturn, father
of Jupiter and Juno
sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
tigris, (id)is *m. (f.)* tiger, tigress†
tūtus, a, um protected, safe, secure*
ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility

365. tibi (est).

366-367. dūris cautibus: abl. of cause
with horrēns or of place where. These are
stock comparisons for hard-heartedness
in love. admō(vē)runt ūbera (tibi):
suckled you.

368. majōra (mala): greater wrongs.

369. flētū: abl. of cause. ingemuit:
the third person, since she contemptu-
ously talks about rather than to him.
lūmina = oculōs.

370. miseror: with the acc., while

miseror takes the gen. (mē) aman-
tem.

371. Quae quibus anteferam: what
shall I say (do) first?

372. Sātūrnus pater = Juppiter.

373. (in) litore. (eum or tē) egentem:
Aeneas had said of himself and his
followers that they were omnium egēnōs,
I, 599.

376-377. nunc, nunc, nunc: a scorn-
ful rejoinder to the nunc, nunc of Aeneas,
ll. 345, 356; App. 413.

interpres *dīvum fert* horrida jussa *per aurās*.
 Scilicet *is superis labor est, ea cūra* quiētōs
 sollicitat. *Neque tē teneō neque dicta* refellō: 380
ī, sequere Italiam ventis, pete rēgna per undās.
 Spērō equidem *mediis, sī quid pia nūmina possunt*,
 supplicia hausūrum scopulis *et nōmine Dīdō*
saepe vocātūrum. Sequar ātrīs ignibus absēns
et, cum frigida mors animā sēdūxerit artūs, 385
omnibus umbra locis aderō. Dabis, improbe, poenās.
Audiam et haec mānīs veniet mihi fāma sub īmōs."
Hīs mediū dictīs sermōnem abrumpt et aurās
aegra fugit sēque ex oculis āvertit et aufert,
linquēns multa metū cūctantem et multa parantem 390
dicere. Suscipiunt famulae conlāpsaque membra

abrupō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off
 absēns, entis absent, separated
 aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
 artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, body*
 auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātus carry
 away, remove
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
 conlābor, ī, lāpsus collapse, faint†
 cūctor, āri, ātus delay, hesitate, linger
 equidem indeed, truly, surely*
 famula, ae *f.* maid servant
 frigidus, a, um cold, chilly, frigid
 hauriō, ire, hausi, haustus drink (in),
 drain
 horridus, a, um rough, horrible
 improbus, a, um wicked, cruel
 interpres, etis *m. (f.)* interpreter, agent

jussum, ī *n.* command, order, behest
 linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*
 mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
 membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*
 metus, ūs *m.* fear, dread, anxiety*
 quiētus, a, um quiet, serene, calm
 refellō, ere, ī, contradict, refute†
 saepe often, frequently, again and again*
 scilicet of course, forsooth, doubtless
 scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
 sēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus withdraw,
 separate†
 sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
 sollicitō (l) agitate, disquiet, disturb†
 spērō (l) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
 supplicium, (i) ī *n.* punishment, torture†
 suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus take up, rear

378-380. Scornfully sarcastic. *is*: subj., attracted into the gender of the predicate, App. 240, *a.* (*superōs*) quiētōs.

381. *ī, sequere*: imperatives. *sequere Italiam*: a contemptuous rejoinder to the *Italiam sequor* of l. 361.

382-384. *mediis (in) scopulis*: Dido hopes that the ships of Aeneas may be wrecked on reefs in the midst of the sea; App. 246. *quid*: indef., *anything*. (*tē*) *hausūrum (esse)*. *Dīdō*: acc., a Greek form; obj. of *vocātūrum*. *ātrīs ignibus*: the remorseful thoughts about Dido will pursue Aeneas like fires with their *smoking torches*. The idea is that, although far away (*absēns*), she will pursue him with the pangs of a guilty conscience, and after death her ghost will haunt him wherever he may be. Cf. Tasso, *Jerusalem Delivered*, 16, 59-60:

"Go, cruel man, and take with thee that peace

Thou leav'st with me; I do not bid thee stay.

But I will follow — hope for no release — My angry shade shall haunt thee on thy way;

Like a new Fury I will dog thy path,
 With torch and serpents armed, to wreak my wrath."

385. *animā*: the ancients often thought of death as the separation of the body from the soul.

386. *umbra*: (*as*) a ghost. *Dabis poenās*: you shall pay the penalty, suffer punishment.

388-389. *aurās* (= *lūcem*) fugit: she rushes indoors.

390. *metū*: abl. of cause; *for fear* (of making matters worse).

391-392. *Suscipiunt*: catch her (*as she faints and falls*). *thalamō*: dat. of direction; equivalent to *in thalamum*. (*in*) *strātis*.

marmoreō referunt thalamō strātisque repōnunt.

- At pius Aenēās, quamquam lēnīre dolentem
sōlandō cupit et dictīs āvertere cūrās,
395 multa gemēns magnōque animum labefactus amōre
jussa tamen dīvum exsequitur classemque revīsīt.
Tum vērō Teucrī incumbunt et līlore celsās
dēdūcunt tōtō nāvīs. Natat ūncta carīna,
frondentisque ferunt rēmōs et rōbora silvīs
400 infabricāta fugae studiō.
Migrantīs cernās tōtāque ex urbe ruentīs.
Ac velut ingentem formīcae farris acervum
cum populant hiemis memorēs tēctōque repōnunt,
it nigrum campīs agmen praedamque per herbās
405 convectant calle angustō: pars grandia trūdunt
obnixae frūmenta umerīs, pars agmina cōgunt

acervus, *i m.* heap, pile, mass†
angustus, *a, um* narrow, strait
āvertō, *ere, ī, rsus* turn away, avert, di-
vert*
callis, *is m.* path, track†
carīna, *ae f.* keel; ship, boat*
celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering*
cōgō, *ere, cōēgi, cōactus* bring together,
force*
convectō (1) convey, carry along†
cupiō, *ere, īvī (ii), itus* desire, wish
dēdūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* lead down,
launch
doleō, *ēre, uī, itus* grieve, suffer, resent
exsequor, *ī, secūtus* follow out, perform†
far, *farris n.* spelt, a kind of grain†
formica, *ae f.* ant†
frondēns, *entis* leafy, fronded
frūmentum, *i n.* grain, corn†
gemō, *ere, uī, itus* groan, lament, roar
grandis, *e* large, great, tall, huge†
herba, *ae f.* herb(ago), grass, plant*
hiems, *emis f.* winter, storm*
incumbō, *ere, cubui, cubitus* recline upon,
urge on (work)
infabricātus, *a, um* unfashioned, rough†

jussum, *i n.* command, order, behest
labefaciō, *ere, fēci, factus* shake, stagger†
lēniō, *ire, īvī (ii), itus* soothe, calm
marmoreus, *a, um* (of) marble, white†
memor, *oris* mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
migrō (1) migrate, depart†
natō (1) swim, float, overflow
niger, *gra, grum* black, dark, dusky*
obnītor, *ī, sus (nixus)* push against, strive
populō (1) devastate, plunder, ravage
praeda, *ae f.* booty, spoils, prey
quamquam although, and yet, however
repōnō, *ere, posui, pos(i)tus* replace, lay
away, store (up), deposit*
revīsō, *ere* revisit, see again, return to
rōbur, *oris n.* oak, strength*
sōlor, *ārī, ātus* console, comfort, solace
strātum, *i n.* bed, couch; pavement
studium, (i) *i n.* eagerness, desire, zeal
tamen nevertheless, however, but*
thalamus, *i m.* bridal chamber, bedroom*
trūdō, *ere, sī, sus* push, shove†
ung(u)ō, *ere, ūnxi, ūnctus* anoint, smear,
calk†
velut(i) *as, just as**
vērō truly, indeed, but

393-449. Her own efforts proving un-
availing, Dido sends her sister Anna,
hoping that she may persuade Aeneas;
but he is deaf to all entreaties.

393. dolentem (Didōnem).

395. animum: acc. of respect; App.
311.

397. incumbunt (labōri).

399. frondentis: in their eagerness,

studiō, they do not take time to strip off
the leaves.

401. cernās: potential subj.; App.
252.

404-405. it, convectant: the collective
noun, agmen, may take its verb either
in the sing. or pl.; App. 236, a.

406. agmina cōgunt: close up the ranks,
to keep the others from straggling; a
military term.

castigantque morās, opere omnis sēmita fervet.
 Quis tibi tum, Didō, cernentī tālia sēnsus,
 quōsve dabās gemitūs, cum litora fervere lātē
 prōspicerēs arce ex summā, tōtumque vidērēs 410
 miscērī ante oculōs tantīs clāmōribus aequor!
 Improbe Amor, quid nōn mortālia pectora cōgis!
 Ire iterum in lacrimās, iterum temptāre precandō
 cōgitur et supplex animōs summittere amōrī,
 nē quid inexpertum frūstrā moritūra relinquat. 415
 "Anna, vidēs tōtō properārī litore circum:
 undique convēnere; vocat jam carbasus aurās,
 puppibus et laetī nautae imposuere corōnās.
 Hunc ego sī potuī tantum spērāre dolōrem,
 et perferre, soror, poterō. Miserae hoc tamen ūnum 420
 exsequere, Anna, mihī; sōlam nam perfidus ille
 tē colere, arcānōs etiam tibi crēdere sēnsūs;

Anna, ae f. sister of Dido
arcānus, a, um secret, hidden
carbasus, i f. linen; sail
castigō (1) reprove, chastise, punish†
cōgō, ere, coēgi, coactus bring together,
 force*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, honor*
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come together,
 convene
corōna, ae f. wreath, garland, crown
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, (in)trust
 (dat.)*
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger*
etiam also, even, besides, yet, still*
exsequor, i, secūtus follow out, perform
ferv(e)ō, ōre, (bu)ī boil, be busy
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gemitus, ūs m. groan, roar, lament*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place upon,
 set to (dat.)*
improbis, a, um wicked, cruel, bad
inexpertus, a, um untried†
iterum again, anew, a second time*

lātē widely, far and wide
miscēō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, loitering*
moriōr, i, mortuus die, perish*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner
opus, eris n. work, toil, task, deed*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, endure
perfidus, a, um treacherous, perfidious
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, be-
 hold
sēmita, ae f. path
sēnsus, ūs m. feeling, perception, sense
soror, ōris f. sister*
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
summittō (sub), ere, misi, missus lower,
 submit
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
temptō (1) try, seek, attempt, test*
undique on (from) all sides*

408. sēnsus (erat).

409. fervere: as though of the third conjugation, although fervet, a second conjugational form, has just occurred, l. 407.

410. arce: probably some sort of tall watch tower of Dido's palace.

412. quid cōgis: see the note on quid cōgis, III, 56.

413. temptāre (Aenēan).

415. nē quid (indef.) inexpertum relinquat (et sic moriātur) frūstrā: there would be no object in her dying so long

as there was any possibility of winning back Aeneas.

416. properārī: used impersonally.

418. corōnās: as a sign of joy at the prospect of immediate departure. On entering or leaving port, sailors often decked their ships with garlands.

420. perferre poterō: Dido is deceiving Anna if she has already determined on suicide in case she loses Aeneas.

422. colere, crēdere: historical infinitives; App. 257.

- sōla virī mollis aditūs et tempora nōrās:*
 ī, soror, atque hostem supplex adfāre superbum:
 425 *nōn ego cum Danaīs Trojānam exscindere gentem*
Aulide jūrāvī classemve ad Pergama mīsī,
nec patris Anchīsae cinerēs mānīsve revelli:
cūr mea dicta negat dūrās dēmittere in aurīs?
Quō ruit? Extrēmum hoc miserae det mūnus amanti:
 430 *expectet facilemque fugam ventōsque ferentīs.*
Nōn jam conjugium antiquum, quod prōdidit, ōrō,
nec pulchrō ut Latiō careat rēgnumque relinquat:
tempus ināne petō, requiem spatiumque furōrī,
dum mea mē victam doceat fortūna dolēre.
 435 *Extrēmam hanc ōrō veniam (miserēre sorōris),*
quam mihi cum dederit cumulātam morte remittam."
Tālibus ōrābat, tālisque miserrima flētūs
fertque refertque soror. Sed nullīs ille movētur
flētibus, aut vōcēs ūllās tractābilis audit;
 440 *fāta obstant placidāsque virī deus obstruit aurīs.*

adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to*
 aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access
 amāns, antis *m.* (f.) lover
 Aulis, idis *f.* port in eastern Greece whence
 the Greek fleet set sail to attack Troy†
 auris, is *f.* ear*
 careō, ēre, uī be without, lack (*abl.*)
 cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
 conjugium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
 cumulō (1) heap (up), pile (high)†
 cūr why? wherefore?
 dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missus send down,
 let down, let fall; receive*
 doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
 doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer, resent
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
 exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus destroy,
 root out
 ex(s)pectō (1) (a)wait, expect, hope (for)*
 extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
 facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
 flētus, ūs *m.* weeping, tears, tearful ap-
 peal, lament
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, passion*
 hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 inānis, e empty, idle, useless, vain*

jūrō (1) take oath, swear, conspire†
 Latium, (i)ī *n.* district in central Italy*
 mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
 misereor, ērī, itus pity, commiserate
 (*gen.*)
 mollis, e soft, yielding, gentle, delicate
 negō (1) deny, refuse, say no (not)
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; *perf.* know*
 obstō, āre, stitī, status hinder, oppose
 obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus block, stop†
 ōrō (1) pray (to, for), entreat, beseech*
 Pergama, ōrum *n.* (citadel of) Troy*
 placidus, a, um calm, kind(ly), peaceful*
 prōdō, ere, didī, ditus betray, hand down
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, noble,
 splendid, handsome, illustrious*
 remittō, ere, misi, missus return, repay
 requiēs, ētis (ēi) *f.* rest, respite, repose
 revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off (up, away)†
 soror, ōris *f.* sister*
 spatium, (i)ī *n.* space, time, period†
 superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
 tractābilis, e manageable, gentle
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 venia, ae *f.* favor, pardon, grace

423. tempora: (*suitable*) time (for approach). nō(ve)rās.

429-430. det, expectet: vol. (jussive); App. 254. ventōs ferentis: *favorable winds*, a common meaning.

432. pulchrō Latiō: contemptuously; *abl.* with careat. ut careat, (ut) relinquat: subst. vol. clauses; obj. of ōrō; App. 360.

435. miserēre: *imp.*

436. cumulātam: participle with quam, referring to the favor (veniam) which she asks for. morte: *abl.* of time or means. The meaning of Dido's statement is obscure, perhaps intentionally so.

438. fertque refertque (ad Aenēan).

Ac velut annōsō validam cum rōbore quercum
 Alpīnī Boreae nunc hinc nunc flātibus illinc
 ēruere inter sē certant; it stridor, et altae
 cōnsternunt terram concussō stīpite frondēs;
 ipsa haeret scopulis et quantum vertice ad aurās 445
 aetheriās, tantum rādice in Tartara tendit:
 haud secus adsiduīs hinc atque hinc vōcibus hērōs
 tunditur, et magnō persentit pectore cūrās;
 mēns immōta manet, lacrimae volvuntur inānēs.
 Tum vērō infēlix fātis exterrita Dīdō 450
 mortem ōrat; taedet caelī convexa tuērī.
 Quō magis inceptum peragat lūcemque relinquat,
 vidit, tūricremīs cum dōna impōneret ārīs,
 (horrendum dictū) laticēs nigrēscere sacrōs
 fūsaque in obscēnum sē vertere vīna cruōrem. 455
 Hoc vīsum nūllī, nōn ipsī effāta sorōrī.

adsiduus, a, um constant, unceasing†
 aetherius, a, um high in the air, airy
 Alpinus, a, um Alpine, of the Alps†
 annōsus, a, um aged, old, full of years†
 Boreās, ae m. (north) wind
 certō (1) strive, rival, fight, vie
 concutiō, ere, ussī, ussus shake, shatter
 cōsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low,
 strew†
 convexum, ī n. hollow, vault, dome
 cruor, ōris m. blood, gore
 effor, āri, ātus speak out, say, tell
 ēruō, ere, uī, utus uproot, overthrow
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
 flātus, ūs m. blast, wind, blowing†
 frōns, ondīs f. leaf, foliage, frond*
 haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to)
 (dat.)*
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
 horrendus, a, um horrible, dreadful*
 illinc from that side, thence†
 immōtus, a, um unmoved, unshaken
 impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on (dat.)*
 inānis, e empty, idle, useless, vain*
 inceptum, ī n. beginning, undertaking
 latex, icis m. liquid, water, wine
 magis more, rather, preferably*

nigrēscō, ere, grūī turn black, darken†
 obscēnus, a, um foul, filthy, disgusting
 ōrō (1) pray (for, to), entreat, beseech*
 peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, finish
 persentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive, feel
 quantum how much, how greatly, (as
 much) as
 quercus, ūs f. oak
 rādix, icis f. root
 rōbur, oris n. oak, strength*
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag*
 secus otherwise, differently
 soror, ōris f. sister*
 stipes, itis m. stock, trunk, stem
 stridor, ōris m. noise, creaking, roar
 taedet, ēre, uit, taesum it wearies†
 Tartara, ōrum n. the underworld, Hades
 tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, look at*
 tundō, ere, tutūdi, tū(n)sus beat, assail
 tūricremus, a, um incense-burning†
 validus, a, um strong, mighty, sturdy
 velut(i) as, just as*
 vērō indeed, truly, but
 vertex, icis m. top, peak, head, summit*
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
 vīnum, ī n. wine*
 vīsum, ī n. sight, appearance, vision

441. rōbore: abl. of quality; App. 330.

444. concussō stīpite: abl. abs.

445. ipsa (quercus).

446. in: toward.

447. hērōs (Aenēās).

450-473. Terrified by omens and dis-

turbed by dreams, Dido determines to die.

451. taedet (eam).

452. Quō peragat, (quō) relinquat: subjunctives of purpose; App. 388.

453. ārīs: dat. with compound.

454-455. An omen of evil.

456. effāta (est Dīdō).

- Praetereā fuit in tectis dē marmore templum
 conjugis antiquū, mīrō quod honōre colēbat,
 velleribus niveis et fēstā fronde revinctum:
 hinc exaudīrī vōcēs et verba vocantis
 vīsa virī, nox cum terrās obscūra tenēret,
 sōlaque culminibus fērālī carmine būbō
 saepe querī et longās in flētum dūcere vōcēs;
 multaque praetereā vātum praedicta priōrum
 terribilī monitū horrificant. Agit ipse furentem
 in somnīs ferus Aenēās, semperque relinquit
 sōla sibi, semper longam incomitātā vidētur
 īre viam et Tyriōs dēsertā quaerere terrā,
 Eumenidum velutī dēmēns videt agmina Pentheus
 et sōlem geminum et duplicēs sē ostendere Thēbās,
 aut Agamemnonius scaenīs agitātus Orestēs,
 armātam facibus mātrem et serpentibus ātrīs

Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon,
 king of Mycenae

agitō (1) drive, hunt, pursue, harass

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*

būbō, ōnis m. (f.) owl†

carmen, inis n. song, chant, note

colō, ere, ui, cultus cultivate, honor*

culmen, inis n. roof, top, peak, summit*

dēmēns, entis mad, crazy, frenzied

dēsērō, ere, ui, rtus desert, forsake*

duplex, icis double, two-fold

Eumenides, um f. Furies, avenging
 spirits†

exaudiō, ire, ivi (iī), itus hear (from)

fax, facis f. torch, firebrand*

fērālīs, e funereal, of death, fateful†

ferus, a, um wild, savage, fierce*

fēstus, a, um festal, festive, holiday

flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament

frōns, ondis f. leaf, foliage, frond*

horrificō (1) horrify, terrify, alarm†

incomitātus, a, um unaccompanied, alone

marmor, oris n. marble†

mīrus, a, um wonderful, marvelous

monitus, ūs m. advice, warning

niveus, a, um white, snowy

obscurus, a, um dark, dim, gloomy*

Orestēs, is (ae) m. son of Agamemnon and
 Clytaemnestra; he killed his mother
 for murdering his father and so was
 driven mad by the Furies

ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, display*

Pentheus, ei (eos) m. legendary king of
 Thebes, driven mad for opposing the
 worship of Bacchus; he began to see
 everything double, and was finally torn
 to pieces by his mother and aunts†

praedictum, i n. prophecy, prediction†

praetereā besides, also, in addition*

prior, ius former, ancient, prior*

queror, i, questus complain, (be)wail

revinciō, ire, vīnxi, vīctus bind, wreath

saepe often, frequently, repeatedly*

scaena, ae f. stage, scene, background

semper always, ever, repeatedly*

serpens, entis m. (f.) serpent, snake

sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*

templum, i n. temple, shrine, sanctu-
 ary*

terribilis, e terrible, terrifying, dire†

Thēbae, ārum f. famous Greek city†

vellus, eris n. fleece, wool†

velut(i) as, just as*

verbum, i n. word, speech, talk

457. templum: a little chapel in honor
 of her dead husband, in accordance with
 a common ancient custom. in tectis:
 probably in the open court within the
 palace.

460. hinc = ex hōc templō.

461. viri = conjugis.

462. culminibus: of the palace. būbō
 (visa est): another evil omen, and so

considered by the superstitious even
 today.

466. in somnis: in her dreams, a not
 uncommon meaning of somnus, especially
 in the plural.

468. viam: cognate acc.; App. 313.

471. Orestēs: a favorite subject of
 Greek and Roman drama; see the notes
 on III, 331.

cum fugit ultricēsque sedent in limine Dirae.

Ergō ubi concēpit furiās ēvicta dolōre
dēcrēvitque morī, tempus sēcum ipsa modumque 475
exigit, et maestam dictīs adgressa sorōrem
cōnsilium vultū tegit ac spem fronte serēnat:
“Invēnī, germāna, viām (grātāre sorōrī)
quae mihi reddat eum vel eō mē solvat amantem.
Ōceanī finem juxtā sōlemque cadentem 480
ultimus Aethiopum locus est, ubi maximus Atlās
axem umerō torquet stēllis ardentibus aptum:
hinc mihi Massylae gentis mōnstrāta sacerdōs,
Hesperidum templī custōs, epulāsque dracōnī
quae dabat et sacrōs servābat in arbore rāmōs, 485

adgredior, ī, gressus attack, address
Aethiops, opis *m.* Ethiopian, African†
amō (1) love, like, cherish*
aptus, a, um fitted, equipped, studded†
arbōs (or), oris *f.* tree; wood(s)*
Atlās, antis *m.* god who supported the
heavens on his shoulders; high moun-
tain in Northwest Africa

axis, is *m.* axle, axis, wheel, vault, sky
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
concipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus conceive,
realize†

cōnsilium, (i)ī *n.* plan, advice; council
custōs, ōdis *m. (f.)* guard(ian), sentinel*
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus decide†
Dirae, ārum *f.* Furies

dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dracō, ōnis *m.* serpent, dragon

epulae, ārum *f.* feast, banquet, food
ergō therefore, then, consequently*

ēvincō, ere, vicī, victus conquer, master
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus work out, plan

frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face*
furia, ae *f.* fury, madness, frenzy

germāna, ae *f.* sister
grātor, āri, ātus congratulate, wish joy
to (*dat.*)†

Hesperides, um *f.* daughters of Atlas
and Hesperia, keepers of a dragon,

which guarded a magic tree bearing
golden apples†

inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, come upon
juxtā close (to), next (*acc.*)*

maestus, a, um sad, gloomy, mournful*
Massylus, a, um of the Massylians, a
tribe of North Africa

modus, ī *m.* manner, method, limit*
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct*

morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
Ōceanus, ī *m.* Ocean

rāmus, ī *m.* branch, limb, bough*
reddō, ere, didi, ditus give back, return,
render, answer*

sacerdōs, ōtis *m. (f.)* priest(ess)*
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit, settle*

serēnō (1) (make) clear, make serene
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*

solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
soror, ōris *f.* sister*

spēs, ei *f.* hope, expectation*
stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation

tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus conceal, cover*
templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*

torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, sway*
ultimus, a, um last, utmost, farthest,
remotest*

ultrix, icis avenging; avenger
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

473. in limine: to prevent the escape
of their victim.

474-503. Concealing her plans from
her sister, Dido builds a great funeral
pyre in the palace court, pretending that
she is preparing a magic rite which will
bring back Aeneas or else free her of her
love for him.

478. sorōrī: *dat.* with grātāre, which
is *imp.*; App. 297.

479. quae reddat, (quae) solvat: sub-
junctives of characteristic; App. 389.
eum, eō: Dido consciously avoids men-
tioning the name of Aeneas and refers to
him in the vaguest way possible by using
the colorless pronoun is rather than one
more definite, such as ille.

483. hinc = ex hōc locō. mōnstrāta
(est).

485. et (sic) servābat: by means of
the dragon, the priestess guards the
magic tree with its golden apples.

spargēns ūmida mella sopōriferumque papāver.
*Haec sē carminibus prōmittit solvere mentēs
quās velīt, ast aliīs dūrās immittere cūrās,
sistere aquam fluvīis et vertere sīdera retrō,*
490 *nocturnōsque movet mānis: mūgīre vidēbis
sub pedibus terram et dēscendere montibus ornōs.*
Testor, cāra, deōs et tē, germāna, tuumque
dulce caput, magicās invītām accingier artīs.
Tū sēcŕēta pyram tēctō interiōre sub aurās
495 *ērige, et arma virī thalamō quae fixa reliquit
impius exuviāsque omnīs lectumque jugālem,
quō periī, superimpōnās: abolēre nefandī*

aboleō, ēre, ēvī, itus destroy, abolish
accingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus surround,
gird(le)
aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*
ars, artis *f.* art, device, artifice, skill*
carmen, inis *n.* song, poem, incantation,
charm
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus erect, raise
exuviae, ārum *f.* spoils, relics, mementos
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, transfix*
fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream
germāna, ae *f.* sister
immittō, ere, mīsī, missus send in (to),
bring on
impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal
interior, ius inner, interior
invitus, a, um unwilling, reluctant
jugālis, e of wedlock, matrimonial
lectus, ī *m.* bed, couch†
magicus, a, um magic†

mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead, Hades*
mel, mellis *n.* honey
mūgiō, ire, ivi (ii), itus roar, bellow
nefandus, a, um unspeakable, unutter-
able
nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal†
ornus, ī *f.* ash tree
papāver, eris *n.* poppy, poppy juice
pereō, ire, ī (ivi), itus, perish, die
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missus promise*
pyra, ae *f.* funeral pile, pyre†
retrō backward(s), back
sēcŕētus, a, um remote, secret, secluded
sistō, ere, steti, status stop, stay, set(tle)
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
sopōrifer, era, erum sleep-bringing†
spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
superimpōnō, ere, posui, positus lay
above†
testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify
thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, bed-
room*
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, wet
vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*

486. *sopōriferum*: used here as a purely ornamental general epithet, as a sleep-producing food would be the last thing in the world for the keeper to give to a dragon which was playing the part of a watchdog.

487-488. *Haec* (sacerdōs). *mentēs* (ā cūrīs) *solvere*, aliīs (mentibus) *cūrās* immittere.

489. *sistere*, *vertere*: some of the stock claims of witches and magicians. *fluvīis*: dat. of reference.

490-491. *nocturnōs mānis*: ghosts ordinarily appear only at night. *terram mūgīre*, *dēscendere ornōs*: through the magic power of the priestess.

492-493. The better classes of Vergil's

time condemned the use of witchcraft and magic as being unsportsmanlike. (mē) *invitam accingier* = *accingī*: an old form of the passive inf., used as a middle, with *artis* as its obj.; App. 309.

494. (in) *tēctō interiōre sub aurās*: in the courtyard.

495. *virī*: Dido continues to avoid mentioning the name of Aeneas; *virī* here possibly means *conjugis*, as often.

495-496. *thalamō, lectum jugālem*: Dido persists in her contention that Aeneas was actually her husband. See ll. 172 and 324.

497. *superimpōnās*: vol., equivalent to an imp.; App. 254.

cuncta viri monumenta juvat monstratque sacerdos."

Hæc effata silet, pallor simul occupat ora.

Nôn tamen Anna novis prætexere funera sacris

500

germanam credit, nec tantos mente furorês

concipit aut graviora timet quam morte Sychæi.

Ergo jussa parat.

At regina pyra penetrâli in sede sub aurâs

erectâ ingenti taedâs atque ilice sectâ,

505

intenditque locum sertis et fronde coronat

funerea; super exuvias enseque relictum

effigiemque toro locat haud ignara futuri.

Stant aræ circum et crinis effusa sacerdos

ter centum tonat ore deos, Erebumque Chaosque

510

Anna, ae f. sister of Dido

centum hundred*

Chaos (*nom. and acc.*) *n.* Chaos, (god of) the lower world†

concipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus conceive, grasp

coronō (1) crown, wreath, encircle

crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*

crinis, is m. hair, locks, tresses*

effigiēs, ēi f. image, likeness, effigy

effor, āri, ātus speak out, say, tell

effundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour out; di-

shevel*

ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*

Erebus, i m. Hades, (god of) the lower

world

ergō therefore, then, consequently*

ērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus erect, raise

exuviae, ārum f. spoils, relics, mementoes

frōns, ondis f. leaf, foliage, frond*

fūnereus, a, um funereal, of death†

fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster*

furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion*

futūrum, i n. the future†

germāna, ae f. sister

gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*

ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*

ilex, icis f. holm-oak

intendō, ere, i, ntus stretch, cover

jussum, i n. command, order, behest

juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*

locō (1) place, locate, establish*

monimentum (**monumentum**), *i n.* re-

minder, memorial

mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct*

occupō (1) seize (beforehand), occupy

pallor, ōris m. paleness, pallor†

penetrālis, e inner, innermost

prætexō, ere, uī, xtus veil, cover, fringe

pyra, ae f. funeral pile, pyre

quam how, than, as*

sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)*

secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, slice, cleave*

serta, ōrum n. wreath, garland

sileō, ēre, uī be silent, hush, be still

Sychæus, i m. deceased husband of

Dido

taeda, ae f. (bridal) torch, pine (faggot)

tamen, however, nevertheless, but*

ter three times, thrice*

timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*

tonō, āre, uī, itus thunder, roar

torus, i m. (banqueting) couch, bed*

498. *juvat* (*mē*): the subj. is *abolere*. *mōnstrat* (*mihi*).

500-502. *tamen Anna nōn credit germanam* (*Didōnem*) *prætexere funera* (*his*) *sacris novis, nec* (*Anna*) *tantos furorês* (*Didōnis*) *concipit mente* (*suâ*). *morte*: abl. of time.

504-521. Dido offers prayers and sacrifices to the gods of the lower world.

504. *penetrâli in sede* = *in tectō interiore*: see l. 494.

507. *super*: adverb.

508. *effigiem* (*Aenêae*): Greek and Roman magicians commonly thus em-

ployed an image of a person or something belonging to him, claiming that thus they could affect the one bewitched and cause him to suffer a fate similar to that experienced by the objects.

509. *crinis*: obj. of the middle part. *effusa*; App. 309, *a*.

510-511. *deos*: cognate acc.; App. 313. The lower world and its deities were especially invoked in witchcraft and magic rites. *ora*: apposition with *Hecatēn*. *tria virginis ora Dianae*: in apposition with and explanatory of *tergeminam Hecatēn*, as the goddess was Luna in heaven, Diana on earth, and

- tergeminamque Hecatēn, tria virginis ōra Diānae.
 Sparserat et laticēs simulātōs fontis Avernī,
 falcibus et messae ad lūnam quaeruntur aēnis
 pūbētēs herbae nigrī cum lacte venēnī;
 515 *quaeritur et nāscētis equī dē fronte revulsus
 et mātīrī praereptus amor.*
*Ipsa molā manibusque pīs altāria juxtā
 ūnum exūta pedem vinclis, in veste recīnctā,
 testātur moritūra deōs et cōnscia fātī*
 520 *sīdera; tum, sī quod nōn aequō foedere amantīs
 cūrae nūmen habet jūstumque memorque, precātur.*
*Nox erat et placidum carpēbant fessa sopōrem
 corpora per terrās, silvaeque et saeva quīerant*

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen
 aequus, a, um equal, mutual, just
 altāria, ium *n.* altar
 amāns, antis *m.* (f.) lover
 Avernus, a, um of Lake Avernus in Italy,
 of the lower world*
 carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, take;
 enjoy
 cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate
 Diāna, ae *f.* goddess of the chase and the
 moonlight, identified with Hecate
 exuō, ere, uī, ūtus bare, doff, put off
 falx, falcis *f.* scythe, sickle†
 foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, pact
 fōns, fontis *m.* fountain, source, spring
 frōns, frontis *f.* front, forehead, face*
 Hecatē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world,
 identified with Diana†
 herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
 jūstus, a, um just, true, righteous, fair
 juxtā next, close (to) (*acc.*)*
 lac, lactis *n.* milk, juice, sap
 latex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
 lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
 memor, oris mindful, remembering
 (*gen.*)*

metō, ere, messuī, messus reap, cut†
 mola, ae *f.* meal†
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
 nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise*
 niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
 placidus, a, um calm, quiet, kind(ly)*
 praeripiō, ere, uī, reptus seize first†
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
 pūbēns, entis growing, vigorous†
 quīescō, ere, ēvi, ētus (become) quiet,
 rest*
 recingō, ere, cīnxi, cīnctus ungirdle,
 loosen†
 revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear (off, up),
 pluck
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, raging*
 simulō (l) pretend, simulate, counterfeit
 sopor, ōris *m.* sleep, slumber
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
 tergeminus, a, um triple, three-fold†
 testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify
 trēs, tria three*
 venēnum, ī *n.* poison, drug, venom
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
 vinc(u)lum, ī *n.* bond, fastening, cable*
 virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

Hecate in Hades, and thus was often represented by a three-headed statue. Observe the interlocked order; App. 442.

513. ad lūnam: at the right time of the moon, or by moonlight. aēnis: implements of bronze, as belonging to an earlier age, were much used in magical ceremonies.

515-516. amor revulsus dē fronte nāscētis equī et praereptus mātīrī, quaeritur: the ancients believed that a tumor, called hippomanēs, was found on the forehead of a colt at its birth. The mother of the colt bit this off at once; but if she could be forestalled and this tumor secured, it made an unusually

effective love charm (amor). mātīrī: dat. with compound.

517. Ipsa: Dido; see note on ipsa, I, 42.

518. exūta pedem, recīncta: see the note on l. 509 and the one on III, 370.

520-521. sī quod (whatever) nūmen. nōn aequō foedere amantis: those who love on unequal terms, i.e., those whose love is unrequited.

521. cūrae habet (sibi): cares for; cūrae is dat. of purpose.

522-553. Dido bewails her fate and strengthens her resolve to die.

523. quī(ve)rant.

*aequora, cum mediō volvuntur sīdera lāpsū,
cum tacet omnis ager, pecudēs pictaeque volucrēs,* 525
*quaeque lacūs latē liquidōs quaeque aspera dūmīs
rūra tenent, somnō positae sub nocte silentī.
[Lēnībant cūrās et corda oblīta labōrum.]
At nōn infēlix animī Phoenissa neque umquam
solvitur in somnōs oculīsve aut pectore noctem* 530
*accipit: ingeminant cūrae rūrsusque resurgēns
saevit amor magnōque trārum fluctuat aestū.
Sic adeō insistit sēcumque ita corde volūtāt:
“Ēn, quid agō? Rūrsusne procōs inrīsa priōrēs
experiar, Nomadumque petam cōnūbia supplex,* 535
*quōs ego sim totiēns jam dēdignāta marītōs?
Īliacās igitur classīs atque ultima Teucrum
jussa sequar? Quiane auxiliō juvat ante levātōs*

adeō to such an extent, so (greatly)
aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
ager, grī *m.* field, country, territory*
asper, era, erum rough, harsh*
auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
cōnūbium, (i)ī *n.* wedlock, marriage
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēdignor, āri, ātus disdain, scorn†
dūmus, i *m.* brier, thicket†
ēn see! look! behold!
experior, iri, pertus test, try, learn
fluctuō (1) fluctuate, wave, surge†
igitur therefore, accordingly†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, increase
inrīdēō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), mock†
insistō, ere, stiti begin, continue†
ita thus, so, in this way
jussum, i *n.* command, order, behest
juvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*
lacus, ūs *m.* lake, marsh, mere
lāpsus, ūs *m.* gliding, slipping, course
lātē widely, far and wide
lēniō, ire, ivi (ii), itus soothe, calm
levō (1) lift, raise, relieve, remove

liquidus, a, um clear, fluid, liquid†
maritus, i *m.* husband
Nomas, adis *m.* tribe of North Africa
obliviscor, i, litus forget (*gen.*)
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (Dido)
pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider,
variegated
prior, ius former, prior, ancient*
procus, i *m.* suitor, lover, wooer†
quia because
resurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise
again
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
rūs, rūris *n.* country, lands, fields
saeviō, ire, ivi (ii), itus rage, storm
silēns, entis silent, still, quiet
solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), relax, pay*
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
taceō, ēre, ui, itus be silent, hush*
totiēns so many times, so often
ultimus, a, um last, uttermost, utmost*
umquam ever, at any time
volucris, is *m. (f.)* bird, fowl
volūtō (1) revolve, keep turning; ponder

526. quaeque . . . quaeque: both (those)
which . . . and (those) which. dūmīs: abl.
of cause with aspera.

527. (in) somnō. positae: middle,
having lain down.

528. Lēnībant = lēniēbant, which cannot
be used in hexameter. oblīta (erant).
labōrum: gen. with oblīta; App. 288.

529. animī: loc. or gen. with infēlix.
At nōn Phoenissa (Didō cūrās suās
lēnibat).

534. quid agō = quid agam: with fut.

or subj. meaning, as in II, 322. See App.
351, 1, c; 348, a. inrīsa: only to be laughed
at; proleptic; App. 440.

535. experiar, petam: deliberative
questions; App. 348.

536. quōs sim dēdignāta: rel. clause
of characteristic; App. 389. marītōs: (as
prospective) husbands.

538-539. Quiane = sequar ea jussa
quia. (eōs) juvat (meō) auxiliō (sē esse)
ante levātōs et apud (eōs) memorēs stat
grātia (mei) facti: bitterly ironical.

- et bene apud memorēs veteris stat grātia factī?
 540 Quis mē autem, fac velle, sinet ratibusque superbis
 invisam accipiet? Nescis heu, perdita, necdum
 Lāomedontēae sentis perjūria gentis?
 Quid tum? Sōla fugā nautās comitābor ovantis?
 An Tyriūs omnique manū stipāta meōrum
 545 inferar et, quōs Sidoniā vix urbe revelli,
 rūrsus agam pelagō et ventis dare vēla jubēbō?
 Quin morere ut merita es, ferrōque āverte dōlōrem.
 Tū lacrimis ēvicta meis, tū prīma furentem
 hīs, germāna, malis onerās atque objicis hosti.
 550 Nōn licuit thalamī expertem sine crimine vitam
 dēgere mōre ferae, tālis nec tangere cūrās!

an whether, or*

apud among, near, at (acc.)

autem moreover, however, but*

āvertō, ere, i, rsus turn away, avert*

bene well, rightly, securely, fully
 comitor, āri, ātus accompany, attend,
 escort, follow*

crimen, inis n. crime, guilt, sin; charge

dēgō, ere, i spend, pass†

dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger*

ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victus conquer, over-
 come

expers, rtis free from, without (gen.)†

factum, ī n. deed, achievement, act*

fera, ae f. wild beast

germāna, ae f. sister

grātia, ae f. favor, gratitude, grace†

hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*

inferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear (against);
 pass. proceed

invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious

Lāomedontēus, a, um of Laomedon, a
 notorious perjurer and founder of Troy†

licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*

malum, ī n. evil, misfortune, trouble*

memor, oris mindful, remembering (gen.)*

mereor, ēri, itus deserve, earn, merit*

moriōr, ī, mortuus die, perish*

mōs, mōris m. custom, manner, way*

nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner

necdum not yet

nesciō, ire, ivi (ii) be ignorant, not know
 objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place before,
 expose (dat.)

onerō (1) load, burden, overwhelm

ovō (1) rejoice, exult, triumph

perdō, ere, didi, ditus destroy, lose,
 ruin†

perjūrium, (i) ī n. perjury, falsehood†

quin but that, why not, nay even*

ratis, is f. raft, ship, boat*

revellō, ere, i, vulsus tear (away, up),
 pluck

rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*

sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus perceive, feel

Sidonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a
 Phoenician city

sine without (abl.)*

sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit*

stipō (1) crowd, attend, throng; stow

superbus, a, um proud, haughty*

tangō, ere, tetigi, tactus touch, reach*

thalamus, ī m. bridal chamber, bedroom*

vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

540. fac (mē) velle (sequi jussa Teu-
 crōrum). fac: suppose; imp.; App. 202.

541. perdita (Didō): addressing herself.

542. Lāomedontēae: see note on III,
 248.

543. nautās (Teucrōs) ovantis: cf. l.
 418, laeti corōnās, and note.

545-546. inferar (middle) et rūrsus
 agam (Tyriōs), quōs vix revelli.

547. Quin morere: nay die, die now.
 She is addressing herself, as in l. 541.
 morere: imp.

548. tū prīma: Dido blames Anna for
 having first encouraged her to yield
 to her love for Aeneas. (mē) furentem.

549. germāna: voc., though of course
 Anna is not present.

550. thalamī expertem: without mar-
 riage; App. 287. Nōn licuit (mihi):
 exclamatory; (alas) that I was not per-
 mitted!

551. mōre: abl. of manner; like some
 wild creature, alone in the woods. cūrās
 (amōris).

Nōn servāta fidēs cinerī prōmissa Sychaeō."

Tantōs illa suō rumpēbat pectore questūs:

Aenēas celsā in puppī jam certus eundī

carpēbat somnōs rēbus jam rite parātīs.

555

Huic sē forma deī vultū redeuntis eōdem

obtulit in somnīs rūrsusque ita vīsa monēre est,

omnia Mercuriō similis, vōcemque colōremque

et crīnis flāvōs et membra decōra juventae:

"Nāte deā, potes hōc sub cāsū dūcere somnōs,

560

nec quae tē circum stent deinde perīcula cernīs,

dēmēns, nec Zephyrōs audīs spīrāre secundōs?

Illa dolōs dirumque nefās in pectore versat

certa morī, variōsque īrārū concitat aestūs.

Nōn fugis hīnc praeceps, dum praecipitāre potestās?

565

Jam mare turbārī trabibus saevāsque vidēbis

aestus, ūs *m.* boiling, surge, tide
carpō, ere, psī, ptus pluck, consume, take;
enjoy

celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*

certus, a, um certain, fixed, sure, reliable,
determined (on) (*gen.*)*

cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), em-
bers*

color, ōris *m.* color, hue, appearance†

concitō (1) excite, arouse, stir (up)†

crīnis, is *m.* hair, locks, tresses*

decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly

deinde then, thereupon, next*

dēmēns, entis mad, frenzied, distracted

dirus, a, um terrible, dire, dreadful*

dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick*

fidēs, eī *f.* faith, trust, fidelity*

flāvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond

forma, ae *f.* shape, beauty, form*

ita thus, so, in this way

juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood

membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*

Mercurius, (i)ī *m.* Mercury, messenger
of the gods

moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn

morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*

nefās *n. indecl.* crime, wickedness, im-
piety*

obferō, ferre, tulī, lātus present, offer

peric(u)lum, ī *n.* danger, peril, risk

potestās, ātis *f.* power, ability, chance

praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*

praecipitō (1) throw (fall) headlong, flee

prōmittō, ere, misī, missus promise*

questus, ūs *m.* complaint, lament†

redeō, īre, īī (ivi), itus return

rite properly, duly, ritually

rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break (off), burst

(forth), utter*

rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*

saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, raging*

secundus, a, um favorable, second*

similis, e like, similar (*gen., dat.*)*

spīrō (1) breathe (forth), exhale, blow

Sychaeus, a, um of Sychaeus, deceased

husband of Dido†

trabs (trabēs), trabis *f.* beam, ship

turbō (1) confuse, disturb, agitate*

varius, a, um varied, different, variable*

versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve

vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

552. *Nōn servāta (est mihi) fidēs.*

553. *rumpēbat questūs*: same con-
struction as *rumpit vōcem*, II, 129.

554-583. Again urged by Mercury to
hasten his departure, Aeneas arouses
his sleeping comrades and hurriedly sails
away by night.

554. *certus eundī*: = *certus ire*: de-
termined to go; *eundī* is objective genitive
of the gerund from *eō*.

556. *eōdem*: the same, as in ll.
238 ff.

558. *omnia*: acc. of respect. *colōrem-*
que: hypermetric; App. 402.

563. *Ille*: Dido.

564. *mori*: the inf. depends on *certa*;
App. 265.

565. *praecipitāre (tibi) potestās (est)*.
praecipitāre: dependent on *potestās*;
App. 264.

566. *trabibus (Didōnis)* = *nāvibus*
Tyriis.

conlūcēre facēs, jam fervere litora flammīs,
 sī tē hīs attigerit terrīs Aurōra morantem.
 Heia age, rumpe morās. Varium et mutābile semper
 570 fēmina." Sic fātus noctī sē immiscuit ātrāe.

Tum vērō Aenēās subitis exteritis umbrīs
 corripit ē somnō corpus sociōsque fatigat
 praecipitis: "Vigilāte, virī, et cōnsidite trānstrīs;
 solvite vēla citī. Deus aethere missus ab altō
 575 fēstināre fugam tortōsque incidere fūnīs
 ecce iterum instimulat. Sequimur tē, sācte deōrum,
 quisquis es, imperiōque iterum pārēmus ovantēs.
 Adsis Ō placidusque juvēs et sīdera caelō
 dextra ferās." Dīxit vāgināque ēripit ēnsem
 580 fulmineum strictōque ferit retinācula ferrō.
 Idem omnīs simul ardor habet, rapiuntque ruuntque;
 litora dēseruēre, latet sub classibus aequor,

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
 ardor, ōris *m.* ardor, zeal, heat†
 attingō, ere, tigi, tāctus touch, reach
 Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
 citus, a, um swift, stirred, quick
 conlūcēō, ēre, lūxi shine, gleam, glare†
 cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down),
 settle, subside*
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
 ecce see! look! behold!†
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
 fatigō (1) worry, weary, harass, rouse
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
 fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
 feriō, ire strike, smite, cut, kill
 ferv(e)ō, ēre, (bu)ī boil, glow
 fēstinō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
 fulmineus, a, um flashing, lightning-like†
 fūnīs, is *m.* rope, cable, cord
 heia ho! up! come!†
 immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mingle (in)
 (dat.)
 incidō, ere, ī, sus cut (into)
 instimulō (1) goad (on), urge, prick†
 iterum again, anew, a second time*

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*
 lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
 mora, ae *f.* (cause of) delay, hindrance*
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
 mutābilis, e changeable, fickle†
 ovō (1) rejoice, exult, triumph
 pārēō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (dat.)
 placidus, a, um calm, kind(ly), quiet*
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
 quisquis, quidquid whoever, whichever,
 whatever
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), plunder*
 retināculum, ī *n.* cable, rope, hawser†
 rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break (off), burst
 (forth), utter*
 sāctus, a, um holy, sacred, revered*
 semper always, ever, continually*
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax, pay*
 stringō, ere, strīxi, strictus brush, draw
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
 torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl, sway*
 trānstrum, ī *n.* rowing bench, thwart
 vāgina, ae *f.* sheath, scabbard†
 varius, a, um varied, different, varia-
 ble*
 vērō truly, indeed, but
 vigilō (1) awake, wake (up), watch†

567. ferverē: as though of the third conjugation, as in l. 409. flammis (tuārum nāvium).

568. attigerit: fut. perf.

569-570. Varium et mutābile (est) fēmina: woman is ever fickle and a changeable thing. Observe the gender of the adjectives. noctī: dat. with immiscuit; App. 298.

571. umbris: apparition.

575. (nōs) fēstināre, (nōs) incidere. 576. sācte deōrum: holy god; part. gen.; App. 286.

578-579. Adsis, juvēs, ferās: vol. or opt.; App. 254, 253. sidera dextra: favorable weather.

581. Idem ardor habet omnīs (Teu- crōs). rapiuntque ruuntque: alliteration; App. 411.

582. dēseruēre: instantaneous perfect.

adnixī torquent spūmās *et* caerula verrunt.

Et jam prīma novō spargēbat lūmine terrās
Tithōnī croceum linquēns Aurōra cubile. 585

Rēgīna ē speculīs ut prīmam albēscere lūcem
vidit et aequātis classem prōcēdere vēlis,
litoraue et vacuōs sēnsit sine rēmige portūs,
terque quaterque manū pectus percussa decōrum
flāvētisque abscissa comās "Prō Juppiter! *ibit*
hic," ait "et nostrīs inlūserit advena rēgnīs? 590

Nōn arma expedient tōtāque ex urbe sequentur,
dēripientque ratēs aliī nāvālibus? Ite,
ferte citī flammās, date tēla, impellite rēmōs!

Quid loquor? Aut ubi sum? Quae mentem insānia mūtāt? 595
Infelix Dīdō, nunc tē facta impia tangunt?

Tum decuit, cum scēptra dabās. En dextra fidēsque,

abscindō, ere, scidi, scissus tear, cut off
adnixō, ī, sus (nixus) lean (on), strive
advena, ae *m.* foreigner, adventurer†
aequō (1) equal(ize), level, square*
albēscō, ere become white†
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
caerula, ōrum *n.* the (blue) sea
citus, a, um quick, excited, swift
coma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron, ruddy
cubile, is *n.* couch, bed
decet, ēre, uit be becoming, be fitting†
decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious,
seemly

dēripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, tear
down

ēn see! look! behold!

expediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus disentangle, pre-
pare, bring forth

factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, act*

fidēs, ei *f.* faith, trust, fidelity*

flāvēns, entis yellow, tawny, blond†

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive on, impel
impīus, a, um wicked, disloyal

inlūdō, ere, sī, sus mock, flout (*dat.*)
insānia, ae *f.* madness, frenzy, folly
linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, forsake*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
mūtō (ex)change, transform, alter*
nāvālia, ium *n.* shipyard, arsenal†
percutiō, ere, cussi, cussus strike, shatter
prō oh! ah!
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus advance
quater four times
ratēs, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
rēmex, igis *m.* rower, oarsman, crew†
scēptrum, ī *n.* scepter, (royal) power
sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus feel, perceive
sine without (*abl.*)*
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
specula, ae *f.* watch tower, lookout
spūma, ae *f.* foam, froth, spray
tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus touch, reach*
ter three times, thrice*
Tithōnus, ī *m.* husband of Aurora†
torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl, sway*
vacuus, a, um empty, free, deserted
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

584-629. Dido's frenzy increases as
from her palace window she sees the
Trojan fleet depart. She again calls
down curses on Aeneas and his followers
and prays that some avenger may rise
from her ashes to punish such perfidy.

586. ē speculīs = arce ex summā: l.
410.

587. aequātis vēlis: the god has sent
a favorable breeze blowing directly from
behind.

588. vacuōs: predicate to both litora
and portūs; App. 238, 239.

589-591. pectus, comās: objects of
the middle participles percussa and ab-
scissa; App. 309, a. terque quaterque:
three times, yea even four times, as in I, 94.
flāvētis comās: blondes were much ad-
mired and preferred by the Greeks and
Romans. inlūserit: fut. perf. advena:
used scornfully, like English *adventurer*.

591. hic: pronounce hicc, making a
long syllable; App. 107, 3, c.

592. Nōn(ne) (Tyrii) expedient arma.

596. facta impia: her unfaithfulness
to the memory of Sychaeus.

597. Tum decuit (tua facta impia

quem sēcum patriōs ajunt portāre penātīs,
 quem subiisse umerīs cōfectum aetāte parentem!
 600 Nōn potuī abreptum divellere corpus et undīs
 spargere? Nōn sociōs, nōn ipsum absūmere ferrō
 Ascanium patrūisque epulandum pōnere mēnsis?
 Vērūm anceps pugnae fuerat fortūna. — Fuisset:
 quem metuī moritūra? Facēs in castra tulissem
 605 implēssemque forōs flammīs nātumque patremque
 cum genere extinxem, mēmet super ipsa dedissem.
 Sōl, quī terrārum flammīs opera omnia lūstrās,
 tūque hārum interpres cūrārum et cōnsencia Jūnō,
 nocturnisque Hecatē triviīs ululāta per urbēs
 610 et Dirae ultricēs et dī morientis Elissae,
 accipite haec, meritumque malīs advertite nūmen
 et nostrās audīte precēs. Sī tangere portūs

abripiō, ere, uī, repta tear away, seize
 absūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus destroy, con-
 sume

advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to, heed
 aetās, ātis f. age, life, time (of life)

anceps, cipitis doubtful, double

Ascanius, (i) ī m. son of Aeneas*

castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment*

cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus accomplish;
 wear out

cōnscius, a, um conscious; confederate

Dirae, ārum f. Furies

divellō, ere, (vuls) ī, vulsus tear in pieces

Elissa, ae f. Dido, queen of Carthage

epulor, āri, ātus feast (upon), banquet

extingūō, ere, inxi, inctus destroy, blot
 out, extinguish

fax, facis f. torch, firebrand*

forus, ī m. deck, gangway†

Hecatē, ēs f. goddess of the lower world,
 identified with Diana

impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy*

interpres, etis m. (f.) interpreter, agent
 lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*

malum, ī n. evil, sin, misfortune, trouble*

mēnsa, ae f. table*

mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*

metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious

morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*

nocturnus, a, um of the night, noc-
 turnal

opus, eris n. work, achievement, task*

penātēs, ium m. household gods*

portō (1) bear, carry, bring, take*

prex, precis f. prayer, imprecation, curse*

pugna, ae f. battle, fight, combat, fray*

sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*

spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*

tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus touch, reach*
 trivium, (i) ī n. junction of three roads,
 crossroads†

ultrix, icis avenging; avenger

ululō (1) howl, wail, invoke, shriek

vērūm but (yet), truly

tangere tē), cum scēpra dabās (Aenēae).
 dextra fidēsque (ejus).

598. ajunt: pronounce ajunt, making
 the first syllable long by position; App.
 6, b.

599. quem (ajunt).

600. Nōn = nōnne, as often.

602. epulandum: a form of revenge men-
 tioned more than once in ancient legend,
 the best-known instance being the famous
 feast where the sons of Thyestes were slain
 and served up to their father in a banquet.

603. fuerat: mixed condition; App.
 382, d. Fuisset: concessive; (suppose) ū
 had been (so); App. 384.

604-606. quem metuī moritūra: whom
 had I to fear, since I was going to die any-

way? castra: where the Trojan ships were
 beached and protected. tulissem, im-
 plē(vi)ssem, extinx(iss)em, dedissem:
 I could have hurled, etc.; the subjunctives
 are best taken as potential; App. 252.
 cum genere (Teucrōrum). mē dedissem
 (in ignis).

609. Hecatē triviis: Diana of the
 Crossroads, where she was worshipped at
 night by weird cries, howls of dogs, and
 various magical ceremonies.

612-629. The curse of a dying person
 was supposed to be especially potent
 and almost sure to be fulfilled by the gods.
 Vergil represents this curse as being later
 fulfilled literally in the life and fortunes
 of Aeneas.

infandum caput ac terris adnāre necesse est,
 et sic fāta Jovis poscunt, hic terminus haeret:
 at bellō audācis populī vexātus et armīs, 615
 finibus extorris, complexū āvulsus Iūli
 auxilium implōret videatque indigna suōrum
 fūnera; nec, cum sē sub lēgēs pācis inīquae
 trādiderit, rēgnō aut optātā lūce fruātur,
 sed cadat ante diem mediāque inhumātus harēnā. 620
 Haec precor, hanc vōcem extrēmam cum sanguine fundō.
 Tum vōs, Ō Tyrī, stirpem et genus omne futūrum
 exercēte odiīs, cinerique haec mittite nostrō
 mūnera. Nullus amor populīs nec foedera suntō.
 Exoriāre aliquis nostrīs ex ossibus ultor 625
 quī face Dardaniōs ferrōque sequāre colōnōs,
 nunc, ōlim, quōcumque dabunt sē tempore vīrēs.

adnō (1) swim (float) to (*dat.*)
 aliquis, qua, quid some (one, thing)*
 audāx, ācis daring, bold, valiant†
 auxilium, (i)ī *n.* aid, help, assistance*
 āvellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear from
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 cinis, eris *m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
 colōnus, ī *m.* settler, colonist, farmer
 complexus, ūs *m.* embrace, grasp
 Dardan(i)us, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
 exerceō, ēre, uī, itus work, harass*
 exorior, irī, ortus (a)rise, spring up
 extorris, e outside, foreign†
 extrēmus, a, um final, last, extreme*
 fax, facis *f.* torch, fire(brand)*
 foedus, eris *n.* treaty, agreement, truce
 fruor, ī, frūctus (fruitus) enjoy (*abl.*)
 fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
 haereō, ēre, haesī, haesus cling (to),
 stand fixed*
 harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
 implōrō (1) implore, beseech, entreat†

indignus, a, um unworthy, undeserved
 infandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
 inhumātus, a, um unburied
 inīquus, a, um unequal, unjust, unfair
 Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
 lēx, lēgis *f.* law, condition, compact
 necesse *indecl.* necessary; necessity
 odium, (i)ī *n.* hatred, enmity, grudge
 ōlim once, formerly, at some time*
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
 os, ossis *n.* bone*
 pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, agreement
 populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
 whoever, whichever, whatever*
 stirps, pis *m.* (f.) stock, lineage, stem, race
 terminus, ī *m.* boundary, goal, end†
 trādō, ere, didi, ditus deliver, transfer†
 ultor, ōris *m.* avenger
 vexō (1) agitate, vex, harass, annoy†

613. infandum caput = Aeneas.

615-620. It was customary even up to recent times to open at random some revered book such as the Bible or the Aeneid, and take the first passage meeting the eye as a prophecy of the future. It is said that Charles I of England once tried this and opened the Aeneid at this fateful passage; Introd. 9.

615. audācis populī: this people proved to be the Rutulians.

616. finibus: *abl.* of separation.

617-620. implōret, videat, fruātur, ca-dat: volitives or optatives; App. 254, 253. lūce (vitae). (sit) inhumātus.

621 ff. Dido's second prophecy and prayer are also framed in such a way as to find fulfillment in the Second Punic War, when in the "eternal enmity" between Rome and Carthage, Hannibal arose as Dido's avenger (ultor) and brought the Roman Republic to the verge of ruin.

624. populis: Rome and Carthage; *dat.* of possession.

625. Exoriāre (= exoriāris): vol.; App. 254; rise some avenger!

626. quī sequāre (= sequāris): rel. clause of purpose or of characteristic; App. 388, 389.

627. dabunt sē = dabuntur.

*Litora litoribus contrāria, fluctibus undās
imprecor, arma armīs: pugnent ipsīque nepōtēsque.*"

- 630 *Haec ait, et partīs animū versābat in omnīs,
invisam quaerēns quā primum abrumpere lūcem.
Tum breviter Barcēn nūtricem adfāta Sychaeī,
namque suam patriā antiquā cinis āter habēbat:*
"Annam, cāra mihī nūtrix, hūc siste sorōrem:
635 *dīc corpus properet fluviālī spargere lymphā,
et pecudēs sēcum et mōnstrāta piācula dūcat.
Sic veniat, tūque ipsa piā tege tempora vittā.
Sacra Jovī Stygiō, quae rite incepta parāvī,
perficere est animus finemque impōnere cūrīs*
640 *Dardanīque rogam capitis permittere flammae.*"
Sic ait. Illa gradum studiō celebrābat anilī.

abrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break off
adfor, āri, ātus address, accost*
anilis, e of an old woman, aged†
Anna, ae f. sister of Dido
Barcē, ēs f. nurse of Dido's deceased
husband Sychaeus†
breviter briefly, shortly, concisely
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
celebrō (1) frequent; repeat; hasten
cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead); tomb*
contrārius, a, um opposite, opposed
Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
fluviālis, e of a stream, flowing†
gradus, ūs m. step, gait, pace, stride
impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place (on, to)
(dat.)*
imprecor, āri, ātus imprecate, invoke†
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, undertake*
invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
lymphā, ae f. water
mōnstrō (1) show, point out, instruct*
nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*
nūtrix, icis f. nurse
patria, ae f. fatherland, country*

pecus, udis f. animal (of the flock)*
perficiō, ere, fēci, fectus finish, complete
permittō, ere, misi, missus permit, com-
mit
piāculum, ī n. expiation, expiatory offer-
ing†
properō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
pugnō (1) fight, battle, oppose, contend
quam how, than, as; quam primum as
soon as possible*
rite duly, properly, ritually
rogus, ī m. funeral pyre†
sistō, ere, steti, status stand, station,
stop
soror, ōris f. sister*
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
studium, (i)ī n. desire, zeal, eagerness
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a
river in Hades*
Sychaeus, ī m. deceased husband of Dido
tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, protect*
tempus, oris n. temple, brow
versō (1) keep turning, roll, revolve
vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band*

628-629. contrāria: with litora, undās
and arma. pugnent: vol. or opt.; App.
254, 253. The verse is hypermetric; App.
402.

630-705. That nothing may interrupt
her plan Dido sends away her husband's
old nurse Barce and kills herself with
Aeneas's sword on top of the pyre.

631. quam primum: as soon as possible.
633. suam (nūtricem). suam irregu-
larly referring to Dido rather than to the
subject of the sentence; App. 248, a.

635. dic: imp.; App. 202. (ut) pro-

peret: subj. in indir. disc. for imp.;
App. 390. spargere: as a ceremony of
purification.

637. Sic: with the animals for sac-
rifice, after she has duly purified herself.
Dido's real object is to delay the return
of the nurse and her sister so that she
may kill herself in the meantime.

638. Jovī Stygiō = Pluto.

639. est animus (mihī) = volō; App.
264. Dido is concealing her real purpose.

640. Dardanī capitis = Aeneas, whose
name Dido avoids mentioning.

641. Illa: Barce, the nurse.

At trepida et coeptis immānibus effera Dīdō
sanguineam volvens aciem, maculisque trementis
interfusa genās et pallida morte futurā, 645
interiōra domūs inrumpit limina et altōs
cōnscendit furibunda gradūs ēnsemque reclūdit
Dardanium, nōn hōs quaesitum mūnus in ūsus.
Hīc, postquam Īliacās vestīs nōtumque cubile
cōnspexit, paulum lacrimīs et mente morāta
incubuitque torō dixitque novissima verba: 650
“Dulcēs exuviae, dum fāta deusque sinēbat,
accipite hanc animam mēque hīs exsolvite cūrīs.
Vixi et quem dederat cursum fortūna perēgi,
et nunc magna meī sub terrās ibit imāgō.
Urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī, 655
ulta virum poenās inimicō ā frātre recēpī,
fēlix, heu nimium fēlix, sī litora tantum

aciēs, ēi f. edge, line, eye(sight)*
coeptum, i n. undertaking, beginning
cōnscendō, ere, i, ēnsus mount, climb
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, be-
 hold

cubile, is n. couch, bed
Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*

dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*

efferus, a, um wild, savage, mad†

ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*

exsolvo, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), free†

exuviae, ārum f. spoils, relics, mementos

fēlix, icis happy, fortunate, blessed*

frāter, tris m. brother*

furibundus, a, um wild, frenzied†

gena, ae f. cheek†

gradus, ūs m. step, gait, pace, stride

Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*

imāgō, inis f. likeness, image, ghost, soul,
 form*

incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus recline on
 (dat.)

inimicus, a, um hostile, enemy, unfriendly

inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break into†

interfundo, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour among,
 suffuse†

interior, ius inner, interior
macula, ae f. spot, splotch, stain†
moror, āri, ātus delay, hesitate, hin-
 der*

nimium too (much), excessively†

nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*

pallidus, a, um pale, wan, pallid

paulum (a) little, slightly, somewhat

peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish, fin-
 ish

postquam after (that), when*

praeclārus, a, um very renowned†

recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus receive, take*

reclūdō, ere, sī, sus open, unsheathe

sanguineus, a, um bloody, bloodshot

sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow*

statuō, ere, uī, ūtus set (up), found

tantum so much, only, merely

torus, i m. (banqueting) couch, bed*

*tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake**

trepidus, a, um trembling, excited

ulciscor, i, ultus avenge, punish

ūsus, ūs m. use, service, employment

verbum, i n. word, speech, talk

vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive

642. *coeptis*: abl. of cause.

643. *aciem* (*oculorum*).

644. *genās*: acc. of respect; App. 311.

645. *interiōra limina*: of the inner court, where the pyre had been erected.

647. *quaesitum*: Dido had apparently begged the sword of Aeneas, who had given it to her as a keepsake.

648. *Īliacās vestis*: some more presents from Aeneas; cf. I, 648 ff.

649. *lacrimis et mente*: in tearful recollection; abl. of manner; App. 328.

650. *novissima*: last.

652. *exsolvite* (per mortem).

657. *fēlix* (*fuissem*): implied conclusion of a condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

- numquam Dardaniae tetigissent nostra carinae."
Dixit, et ōs impressa torō "Moriēmur inultae,
 660 *sed moriāmur*" *ait.* "Sic, sic juvat ire sub umbrās.
Hauriat hunc oculis ignem crūdēlis ab altō
Dardanus, et nostrae sēcum ferat ōmina mortis."
Dixerat, atque illam media inter tālia ferrō
 665 *conlāpsam aspiciunt comitēs, ēnsemque cruōre*
spūmantem sparsāsque manūs. *It clāmor ad alta*
ātria: concussam bacchātur Fāma per urbem.
Lāmentis gemitūque et fēmineō ululātū
tēcta fremunt, resonat magnīs plangōribus aethēr,
nōn aliter quam sī immissis ruat hostibus omnis
 670 *Karthāgō aut antiqua Tyros, flammaeque furentēs*
culmina perque hominum volvantur perque deōrum.
Audiit exanimis trepidōque exterrita cursū
unguibus ōra soror foedāns et pectora pugnīs
per mediōs ruit, ac morientem nōmine clāmat:

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
 aliter otherwise, differently*
 altum, ī *n.* the deep (sea); heaven
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, behold*
 ātrium, (i)ī *n.* hall, court, atrium
 bacchor, āri, ātus rave, rush wildly
 carina, ae *f.* keel; ship, boat*
 clāmō (1) shriek, cry (out), call (on)†
 concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shatter
 conlābor, ī, lāpsus fall in a heap, faint
 crūdēlis, e cruel, harsh, bloody*
 cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
 culmen, inis *n.* roof, peak, summit, top*
 Dardan(i)us, (i)ī *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
 Dardan(i)us, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
 ēnsis, is *m.* sword, knife*
 exanimis, e breathless, lifeless†
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
 fēmineus, a, um feminine, of women
 foedō (1) pollute, defile, disfigure
 fremō, ere, uī, itus shout, roar, groan*
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
 hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drain, drink
 (in)
 homō, inis *m.* (f.) man, human, mortal*

hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 immittō, ere, mīsi, missus let in, send in
 imprimō, ere, pressi, pressus press
 (upon), imprint†
 inultus, a, um unavenged, unpunished
 iuvō, āre, jūvi, jūtus help, please*
 Karthāgō, inis *f.* city of North Africa
 lāmenta, ōrum *n.* lamentation, shriek†
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
 numquam never, at no time
 ōmen, inis *n.* portent, omen, sign*
 plangor, ōris *m.* wailing, beating (of
 breast)
 pugnus, ī *m.* fist†
 quam how, than, as*
 resonō (1) (re)sound, roar
 soror, ōris *f.* sister*
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
 tangō, ere, tetigī, tāctus touch, reach*
 torus, ī *m.* (banqueting) couch, bed*
 trepidus, a, um trembling, excited
 Tyrus (os), ī *f.* city of Phoenicia, birth-
 place of Dido
 ululātus, ūs *m.* wail, shriek, howl, shout†
 unguis, is *m.* nail, claw†

659. ōs: obj. of the middle part. im-
 pressa; a farewell kiss.

660. Sic, sic: possibly Dido stabs
 herself with each sic.

661-662. Hauriat, ferat: volitives;
 App. 254. Dardanus = Aeneas. ōmina:
 which will bring him continual sorrow
 and misfortune.

663. ferrō: abl. of means.

667. fēmineō ululātū: hiatus; App. 399.

669. quam si ruat: conditional clause
 of comparison; App. 383.

670. Tyrōs: nom. sing., a Greek form;
 App. 67.

671. culmina (tēctōrum Didōnis).

672. cursū: abl. of manner.

673. ōra foedāns et pectora: as an ex-
 pression of grief.



A ROMAN PERISTYLE

The court of a Roman house in the Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York,
around which the antiquities of the Museum are exhibited



Alinari, Rome

THE DEATH OF DIDO

Guercino

Until comparatively recently artists painted classical or biblical characters in contemporary costume. Dido is here garbed like a seventeenth-century Italian lady.

"Hoc illud, germāna, fuit? Mē fraude petēbās?
Hoc roguis iste mihi, hoc ignēs āraeque parābant?
Quid primum dēserta querar? Cōmitemne sorōrem
sprēvistī moriēns? Eadem mē ad fāta vocāssēs:
īdem ambās ferrō dolor atque eadem hōra tulisset.
Hīs etiam strūxī manibus patriōsque vocāvī
vōce deōs, sic tē ut positā, crūdēlis, abessem?
Exstīnxtī tē mēque, soror, populumque patrēsque
Sidonīōs urbemque tuam. Date, vulnera lymphis
abluam et, extrēmum sī quis super hālitus errat,
ōre legam." *Sic fāta gradūs ēvāserat altōs,*
sēmianimemque sinū germānam amplexa fovēbat
cum gemitū atque ātrōs siccābat veste cruorēs.
Illa gravīs oculōs cōnāta attollere rūsus
dēficit; infixum strīdit sub pectore vulnus.
Ter sēsē attollēns cubitōque adnixa levāvit,
ter revolūta torō est oculisque errantibus altō

abluō, ere, uī, ūtus wash (off)
 absum, esse, afūi be away, be distant
 adnitor, ī, sus (nixus) lean on, struggle
 ambō, ae, ō both
 amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
 cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, hardhearted*
 cruor, ōris *m.* blood, gore
 cubitum, ī *n.* elbow, arm†
 dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, faint
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
 dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
 etiam also, even*
 ēvādō, ere, sī, sus go forth (from), pass over
 exstinguō, ere, inxi, inctus blot out,
 destroy, extinguish
 extrēmum, a, um, final, last, extreme*
 foveō, ēre, fōvī, fōtus fondle, cherish
 fraus, fraudis *f.* deceit, guile, fraud†
 gemitus, ūs *m.* groan, roar, lament*
 germāna, ae *f.* sister
 gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
 hālitus, ūs *m.* breath, exhalation†

hōra, ae *f.* hour, season, time
 infigō, ere, xi, xus fix, pierce, fasten
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
 legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, gather, catch*
 levō (1) lift, lighten, raise, relieve
 lymphā, ae *f.* water
 morior, ī, mortuus die, perish*
 populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
 queror, ī, questus complain, (be) wail
 revolvo, ere, ī, volūtus roll over, revolve
 roguis, ī *m.* funeral pyre
 rūsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
 sēmianimis, e half-dead, dying†
 siccō (1) dry, stanch†
 Sidonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a city
 of Phoenicia
 sinus, ūs *m.* fold; bosom; bay; hollow*
 soror, ōris *f.* sister*
 spernō, ere, sprēvi, sprētus scorn, reject
 strīd(e)ō, ēre, ī hiss, gurgle, rustle
 struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, plan
 ter three times, thrice*
 torus, ī *m.* (banqueting, funeral) couch, bed*
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
 vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

675-676. Hoc, hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable. Hoc (fuit) illud (quod parābās): was this (your own death) that which you were planning?

677. Quid querar: deliberative question; App. 348.

678-679. vocā(vi)ssēs, *tulisset: best taken as optatives; App. 253.

680. strūxī (tuum rogua).

681. ut abessem: purpose; App. 359.

682. Exstīnxti(is)ti.

684. (ut) abluam: an obj. clause. super: adv.

685. ōre legam: it was a Roman custom to catch with a kiss the last breath of a dying kinsman or friend. gradūs: of the funeral pyre.

686. sēmianimem: pronounce sēm-janimem here; App. 401.

689. strīdit: from the gurgling blood.

690. cubitō: abl. of means with adnitor.

691. (in) torō.

quaesivit caelō lūcem ingemuitque repertā luce.

- Tum Jūnō omnipotēns longum miserāta dolōrem
difficilisque obitūs Īrim dēmīsit Olympō*
695 *quae luctantem animam nexōsque resolveret artūs.
Nam quia nec fātō meritā nec morte peribat,
sed misera ante diem subitōque accēnsa furōre,
nōndum illī flāvum Prōserpina vertice crīnem
abstulerat Stygiōque caput damnāverat Orcō.*
700 *Ergō Īris croceīs per caelum rōscida pennīs
mille trahēns variōs advērsō sōle colōrēs
dēvolat et suprā caput astitit. "Hunc ego Dītī
sacrum jussa ferō tēque istō corpore solvō."
Sic ait et dextrā crīnem secat: omnis et ūnā*
705 *dilāpsus calor atque in ventōs vīta recessit.*

accendō, ere, i, ēnsus inflame, burn
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, member*
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus take away
calor, ōris m. heat, warmth, glow
color, ōris m. color, hue, tint
crinis, is m. hair, locks, tresses*
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron, ruddy
damnō (1) condemn, sentence, doom, de-
vote†
dēmītto, ere, misī, missus send down, let
go, drop, lower*
dēvolō (1) fly down†
difficilis, e difficult, hard, painful†
dilābor, i, lāpsus glide away, depart†
Dis, Dītis m. Pluto, god of the lower
world†
dolor, ōris, m. grief, pain, passion, anger*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
flāvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
furor, ōris m. madness, frenzy, passion*
ingemō, ere, uī groan, roar, lament
Īris, (id)is f. goddess of the rainbow,
messenger of Juno†
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
luctor, āri, ātus struggle, wrestle
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
mille; pl. milia, ium n. thousand*
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*

nectō, ere, nexuī, nexus weave, fasten,
bind
nōndum not yet
obitus, ūs m. death, downfall, ruin†
Olympus, i m. high Greek mountain,
home of the gods; heaven
omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
Orcus, i m. (god of) the lower world,
Hades
penna, ae f. wing, feather
pereō, ire, iī (ivī), itus perish, die
Prōserpina, ae f. Pluto's queen, goddess
of the lower world†
quia because
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart, with-
draw
reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus find
resolvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), free
rōscidus, a, um dewy†
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*
solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a
river in Hades*
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
suprā above, over (*acc.*)
ūnā together, at the same time
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
vertex, icis m. top, peak, head, sum-
mit*

692. *repertā (lūce):* abl. abs.

695. *nexōs (animae). resolveret:* rel.
clause of purpose; App. 388. For the
thought see the note on l. 385.

696. *fātō:* natural death was supposed
to be occasioned by a decree of the
gods.

698. *illi:* dat. of reference. *Prōser-
pina:* she was supposed to cut a lock
from the head of the dying, as a sort

of offering to the gods of the lower
world.

701. The rainbow. *adversō sōle:* abl.
abs. denoting cause.

702-703. *Hunc (crīnem). ego jussa*
(ā Jūnōne). *istō = tuō,* as often.

705. *in ventōs:* the soul was identified
with the breath, *anima, spiritus* (cf. the
English word *spirit*) and at death van-
ished into the air.

BOOK V

INTEREĀ medium Aenēās jam classe tenēbat
certus iter flūctūsque ātrōs Aquilōne secābat
moenia respiciēns, quae jam infēlicis Elissae
conflūcent flammīs. Quae tantum accenderit ignem
causa latet; dūrī magnō sed amōre dolōrēs 5
pollūtō, nōtumque furēns quid fēmina possit,
trīste per augurium Teucrōrum pectora dūcunt.
Ut pelagus tenuēre ratēs nec jam amplius ūlla
occurrit tellūs, maria undique et undique caelum,
ollī caeruleus suprà caput astitit imber 10

accendō, ere, i, ēnsus inflame, kindle
amplius more, farther
Aquilō, ōnis *m.* (north) wind
a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (ready, by)*
augurium, (i)ī *n.* portent, prophecy
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
causa, ae *f.* cause, reason, occasion*
certus, a, um certain, determined, fixed*
conlūceō, ēre shine (brightly), glare
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
Elissa, ae *f.* Dido
fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
imber, bris *m.* rain, cloud, storm, flood

intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
nōtum, i, *n.* knowledge
occurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus (run to)
meet (*dat.*)
polluō, ere, uī, ūtus defile, outrage, pro-
fane
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
respi-ciō, ere, spexī, spectus look (back)
at*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
suprà above, over (*acc.*)
undique on (from) all sides*

1-41. On sailing from Carthage for Italy, Aeneas is driven by a tempest to Drepanum in Sicily, where Anchises had died the previous year. King Acestes again hospitably receives the Trojans.

The fifth book of the *Aeneid* forms a restful episode in the midst of the stirring action of the poem. This episode, with its somewhat tedious account of the games, does not serve any useful purpose in advancing the plot of the poem and may be omitted with less loss than any other of the six books. The fifth book, however, gives the poet a fine opportunity to develop the character of his hero as pious Aenēās, as here displayed in his deep devotion to the memory of his dead father. This is the best justification for the episode. It also furnishes an inter-

esting picture of an ancient athletic contest.

1. Intereā: while Dido carries out her plan to commit suicide.

2. Aquilōne: with ātrōs: specific (north wind) for the general (wind), and really inapplicable here since the Trojans were sailing north. As often, the poet sacrifices logical consistency for the sake of vividness or metrical convenience.

4-5. Quae causa accenderit: indir. quest.; App. 349.

5-7. dūrī magnō sed amōre, etc.: but the harsh sufferings when a great love is profaned and the knowledge (of) what a love-crazed woman may do lead the hearts of the Trojans through gloomy forebodings. amōre pollūtō: from Dido's point of view; abl. abs. quid possit: indir.

- noctem hiememque ferēns et inhorruit unda tenebrīs.*
Ipse gubernātor puppī Palinūrus ab altā:
"Heu quianam tantī cīnxērunt aethera nimbī?
Quidve, pater Neptūne, parās?" Sic deinde locūtus
 15 colligere arma jubet validisque incumbere rēmīs,
 obliquatque sinūs in ventum ac tālia fātur:
 "Magnanime Aenēā, nōn, sī mihi Iuppiter auctor
 spondeat, hōc spērem Italiam contingere caelō.
 Mūtātī trānsversa fremunt et vespere ab ātrō
 20 cōnsurgunt ventī, atque in nūbem cōgitur āēr.
 Nec nōs obnītī contrā nec tendere tantum
 sufficimus. Superat quoniam Fortūna, sequāmur,
 quōque vocat vertāmus iter. Nec litora longē
 fīda reor frāterna Erycis portūsque Sicānōs,
 25 sī modo rite memor servāta remētiōr astra."

āēr, aeris *m.* air, mist, fog
 aethēr, eris, *acc. era, m.* upper air, sky*
 astrum, *i n.* star, constellation*
 auctor, ōris *m.* founder, originator,
 sponsor
 cīngō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctus surround,
 gird(le)*
 cōgō, ere, cōēgī, cōactus force (together)*
 colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus collect, gather
 cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise†
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, touch, reach*
 contrā against, opposite (*acc.*); in op-
 position*
 deinde then, thence, thereupon*
 Eryx, ycis *m.* son of Venus and half-
 brother of Aeneas; settled in Sicily
 fidus, a, um faithful, safe, trustworthy*
 frāternus, a, um fraternal, of a brother
 fremō, ere, ui, itus roar, groan, shout*
 gubernātor, ōris *m.* pilot, helmsman
 hiems, emis *f.* winter, storm*
 incumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus recline on,
 bend to (*dat.*)
 inhorrēscō, ere, horruī grow rough, shud-
 der
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
 longē (from) afar, far off*
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
 magnanimus, a, um noble, great-souled

memor, oris mindful, remembering (*gen.*)*
 modo only, (just) now
 mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
 Neptūnus, ī *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
 nimbus, ī *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
 nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, mist, fog*
 obliquō (1) turn sideways, slope, slant†
 obnītōr, ī, sus (nixus) lean against,
 struggle
 Palinūrus, ī *m.* Trojan pilot*
 quianam why? wherefore?†
 quoniam since, because
 remētiōr, īrī, mēnsus remeasure, retrav-
 erse
 reor, rēri, ratus suppose, think, reckon
 rite duly, correctly, ritually
 Sicānus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily†
 sinūs, ūs *m.* fold (of sails); bosom, bay*
 spērō (1) hope (for, to), expect, suppose*
 spondeō, ēre, spōndī, spōnsus promise,
 vouch for†
 sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus suffice, be able
 superō (1) surmount, overcome, survive*
 tenebrae, ārum *f.* darkness, gloom
 trānsversa *adv.* crosswise, athwart (one's
 course)†
 validus, a, um strong, powerful, stout
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change*
 vesper, eris (eri) *m.* evening (star), west

quest., in apposition with nōtum; App.
 349. pectora = animōs, mentis.

15-16. arma (nāvium) = vēla, etc. si-
 nūs (vēlōrum).

17. auctor: (as) guarantor.

18. spondeat: less vivid fut. condition;
 App. 381. spērem: conclusion.

20. cōgitur āēr: the ancients thought

that clouds were composed of condensed
 air.

23. litora (abesse): indir. statement
 with reor; App. 263.

24. frāterna = frātris tui.

25. servāta astra: previously observed,
 i.e., on their voyage from Sicily to Car-
 thage.

Tum pius Aenēas: "Equidem sic poscere ventōs
jamdūdum et frūstrā cernō tē tendere contrā.
Flecte viām vēlis. An sit mihi grātor ūlla,
quōve magis fessās optem dēmittere nāvīs,
quam quae Dardanium tellūs mihi servat Acestēn 30
et patrīs Anchīsae gremiō complectitur ossa?"
Haec ubi dicta, petunt portūs et vēla secundi
intendunt Zephyrī; fertur cita gurgite classis,
et tandem laetī nōtae advertuntur harēnae.
At procul ex celsō mirātus vertice montis 35
adventum sociāsque ratēs occurrit Acestēs,
horridus in jaculis et pelle Libystidis ursae,
Trōia Crīnisō conceptum flūmine māter
quem genuit. Veterum nōn immemor ille parentum
grātātur reducēs et gazā laetus agrestī 40

adventus, ūs *m.* arrival, approach†
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to (*dat.*)
agrestis, e of the fields, rustic
an whether, or*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
citus, a, um quick, swift, excited
complector, ī, plexus embrace, hold
concupiscere, ere, cēpi, ceptus conceive
contrā opposite, against, in opposition*
Crīnisus, ī *m.* river (god) of Sicily†
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send down,
land, lower, drop*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
flectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, turn
flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gaza, ae *f.* treasure, wealth
gignō, ere, genui, genitus beget, bear
grātor, āri, ātus congratulate, wish joy
to
grātus, a, um agreeable, welcome
gremium, (i)ī *n.* bosom; lap; embrace
gurgis, itis *m.* whirlpool, deep sea*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
horridus, a, um rough, bristling

immemor, oris unmindful, forgetful
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain
jaculum, ī *n.* spear, dart
jamdūdum long since, for some time
Libystis, idis *f.* Libyan, of Libya, a
country of North Africa†
magis more, rather, preferably*
miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire*
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)
meet
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for, to)*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
pellis, is *f.* skin, hide, pelt
poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, re-
quire, ask (for, to)*
quam how, than, as*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
reducō, ucis led back, returned, restored
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
socius, a, um allied, fellow, friendly
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
ursa, ae *f.* she-bear†
vertex, icis *m.* top, peak, head*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
Zephyrus, ī *m.* (west) wind

27. cernō: of a past action continuing into the present; *I (have long perceived and still) perceive*; App. 351, 1, b.

28. vēlis: abl. of means. ūlla (tellūs) sit: potential; App. 252.

29. quō optem: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389. quō = ad quam.

30. quam (than) tellūs quae.

33. gurgite = undā: abl. of route; App. 338.

36. occurrit (illis).

37. pelle: commonly worn in earlier times.

38. māter: Egesta or Segesta. Crīnisō flūmine: abl. of source; App. 323.

39. Veterum parentum: his ancestry, which makes him related to Aeneas and the other Trojans.

40. (Teucrōs) reducēs.

excipit, *ac fessōs* opibus sōlātur amīcis.

Postera *cum primō* stēllās Oriente fugārat
clāra diēs, sociōs in coetum lītore ab omnī
advocat *Aenēās* tumulique *ex aggere fātur*:

- 45 "Dardanidae magnī, genus altō ā sanguine dīvum,
annuus exāctis complētur mēnsibus orbis,
ex quō relliquiās dīvīnīque ossa parentis
condidimus terrā maestāsque sacrāvimus ārās.
Jamque diēs, nisi fallor, *adest*, quem semper acerbum,
50 semper honōrātum (*sic dī voluistis*) habebō.
Hunc ego Gaetūlis *agerem* sī Syrtibus exsul,
Argolicōve marī dēprēnsus et urbe Mycēnae,
annua vōta tamen sollemnīsque ordine pompās
exsequerer strueremque suis altāria dōnīs.

acerbus, a, um bitter, grievous, harsh
advocō (1) call (to), summon, invite†
agger, eris m. mound, embankment
altāria, ium n. altar
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
annuus, a, um annual, yearly†
Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
coetus, ūs m. assembly, throng, troop
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, found;
hide, bury*
Dardanidēs, ae m. descendant of Dardanus, Trojan
dēpre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, catch†
divinus, a, um divine, sacred, sainted
exāctus, a, um completed; learned
excipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, reply
exsequor, ī, secūtus fulfil, perform
exsul, ulis m. (f.) exile, refugee
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, trick*
fugō (1) rout, put to flight, disperse
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli, a North African tribe
honōrō (1) honor, respect, venerate, revere†
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*

mēnsis, is m. month
Mycēnae (a), ārum (ae), f. city of Greece, capital of Agamemnon
nisi, nī if not, unless*
ops, opis f. help, wealth, resources, power*
orbis, is m. circle, circuit, orb(it), earth*
ordō, inis m. order, rank, succession*
Oriēns, entis m. East, dawn
os, ossis n. bone*
pompa, ae f. (solemn) procession, festival†
posterus, a, um later, following
re(1)liquiae, ārum f. remains, remnant, leavings, relics
sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
semper always, ever, continually*
sollemnis, e solemn, annual, stated
sōlor, āri, ātus console, comfort, solace
stēlla, ae f. star, constellation
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus heap up, build
Syrtis, is f. sand-banks off the northern coast of Africa
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tumulus, i m. mound, tomb*
vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, (votive) offering*

42-71. Announcement of the funeral games in honor of Anchises, and the prizes for the various contests.

42. fugā(ve)rat.

44. tumulique ex aggere: as Roman generals in Vergil's day addressed their troops from a mound thrown up for the occasion.

45. genus (ortum): a race sprung.

46. exāctis mēnsibus: abl. abs.

47. ex quō (tempore): since. divini:

Anchises was thought of as having acquired sanctity after death.

50. sic dī voluistis: one of the many examples of the unquestioning faith of the hero and his pious resignation to the will of the gods who do all things well.

51-52. Hunc (diem). (in) Gaetūlis. (in) Syrtibus. (in) marī, (in) urbe. Mycēnae: appositional gen.; App. 281; this word usually has the plural form.

54. exsequerer strueremque: conclusions of implied condition contrary to

Nunc ultrō ad cinerēs ipsius et ossa parentis 55
haud equidem sine mente, reor, sine nūmine dīvum
adsumus et portūs delātī intrāmus amīcōs.
Ergō agite et laetum cūctī celebrēmus honōrem:
poscāmus ventōs, atque haec mē sacra quotannīs
urbe velit positā templīs sibi ferre dicātīs. 60
Bīna boum vōbīs Trojā generātus Acestēs
dat numerō capīta in nāvīs; adhibēte penātīs
et patriōs epulīs et quōs colit hospes Acestēs.
Praetereā, sī nōna diem mortālībus alium
Aurōra extulerit radiisque retēxerit orbem, 65
prīma citae Teucrīs pōnam certāmina classīs;
quīque pedum cursū valet, et quī vīribus audāx
aut jaculō incēdit melior levibusque sagittīs,

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itus invite (to), employ†
almus, a, um kind(ly), nurturing
amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*
audāx, ācis daring, bold, valiant
Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of the) dawn*
bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos
bōs, bovis m. (f.) bull, ox, cow
celebrō (1) throng, solemnize, celebrate
certāmen, inīs n. contest, struggle*
cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), em-
bers*
citus, a, um quick, swift, excited
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, honor*
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring (down, to
land), convey
dicō (1) consecrate, dedicate, proclaim
effērō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring out,
raise*
epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
generātus, a, um born, descended†
hospes, itis m. host, guest, stranger

incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go, stride
intrō (1) enter, penetrate
jaculum, ī n. dart, spear
levis, e light, swift, slight, quick
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
nōnus, a, um ninth†
numerus, ī m. number, multitude*
orbis, is m. circle, circuit, orb(it), earth*
os, ossis n. bone*
penātēs, ium m. household gods*
poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
praetereā besides, in addition, further-
more*
quotannīs annually, yearly†
radius, (i) ī m. spoke, rod, ray
reor, rēri, ratus suppose, think, reckon
retegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus unveil, reveal
sagitta, ae f. arrow, shaft, bolt
sine without (abl.)*
templum, ī n. temple, shrine, sanctuary*
ultrō further, voluntarily*
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able

fact; App. 382. suis: irregularly referring to altaria instead of to the subject; App. 248, a.

56. haud sine mente (dīvorum): i.e., by the will of the gods.

57. adsumus et intrāmus: hysteron proteron; App. 429. intrāmus: historical present; App. 351, 1, a.

59-60. poscāmus ventōs: vol.; App. 254; they are to pray to the manes of Anchises for favorable winds when they get ready to leave. atque (ut pater Anchisēs) velit, urbe positā, mē ferre quotannīs haec sacra templīs dicātīs sibi: the reference is to the parentalia, an annual Roman festival in honor of the

dead. The ut-clause is object of poscāmus; App. 360.

61. Trojā: abl. of origin with generātus; App. 323.

62-63. numerō: abl. of respect with bīna; App. 325. adhibēte epulīs et patriōs penātīs et (penātīs) quōs Acestēs colit.

64-65. nōna Aurōra: referring to the Roman ceremonies of the novemdiale, a festival celebrated in honor of the deceased nine days after the funeral.

66. prima: first of all.

67. quī: their antecedents are indicated in cūctī of l. 70.

68. incēdit: more picturesque than est.

- 70 seu crūdō fīdit pugnam committere caestū,
cūnctī adsint meritaque expectent praemia palmae.
Ōre favēte omnēs et cingite tempora rāmīs."
- Sic fātus vēlat mātērnā tempora myrtō.*
Hoc Helymus facit, hoc aevi mātūrus Acestor,
hoc puer Ascanius, sequitur quōs cētera pūbēs.
- 75 *Ille ē conciliō multīs cum milibus ibat*
ad tumultum magnā mediū comitante catervā.
Hic duo rīte merō libāns carchēsia Bacchō
fundit humī, duo lacte novō, duo sanguine sacro,
purpureosque jacit flōrēs ac tālia fātur:
- 80 "Salvē, sānete parēns, iterum salvēte, recepti
 nēquiquam cinerēs animaeque umbraeque paternae.

aevum, *i n.* age, time, life, eternity
 Ascanius, (*i i m.* son of Aeneas*)
 Bacchus, *i m.* (god of) wine
 caestus, *ūs m.* boxing-glove, gauntlet,
 made of a thong of raw-hide with balls
 of lead or iron fastened in; wrapped
 around the hands of the boxer†
 carchesium (*i i n.* cup, goblet†
 caterva, *ae f.* troop, band, crowd
 ceterus, *a, um* rest, remaining, other(s)
 cingō, *ere, cīnxi, cinctus* surround,
 gird(le)*
 cinis, *eris m.* ashes (of the dead), embers*
 comitō (*1*) accompany, attend, escort
 committō, *ere, misi, missus* join, begin
 concilium, (*i i n.* assembly, council
 crūdus, *a, um* raw, rough, untanned†
 duo, *ae, o* two*
 expectō (*1*) expect, await, tarry, hope
 (for)*
 faveō, *ēre, fāvī, fautus* favor, befriend
 fidō, *ere, fisisum* trust (in) (*dat., abl.*)*
 flōs, *flōris m.* flower, blossom, bloom
 Helymus, *i m.* Sicilian leader†
 humus, *i f.* ground, soil, earth*
 iterum again, anew, a second time*
 jaciō, *ere, jēci, jactus* throw, hurl

lac, *lactis n.* milk
 libō (*1*) pour (as a libation), offer
 mātērnus, *a, um* of a mother, maternal
 mātūrus, *a, um* mature, grown, ripe, ad-
 vanced†
 mereō, *ēre, uī, itus* deserve, earn, merit*
 merus, *a, um* pure, unmixed
 mille; *pl. milia, ium n.* thousand*
 myrtus, *i (ūs) f.* myrtle, a tree sacred to
 Venus and to the dead
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly*
 palma, *ae f.* palm, hand, prize*
 paternus, *a, um* of one's father, paternal
 praemium, (*i i n.* reward, prize*
 pūbēs, *is f.* youth, (group of) young
 men*
 pugna, *ae f.* battle, fight, combat, fray*
 purpureus, *a, um* purple, crimson
 rāmus, *i m.* branch, limb, bough*
 recipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus* get back, save*
 rīte duly, correctly, ritually
 salvē, *ēre* be well, hail, farewell†
 sāctus, *a, um* sacred, blessed, sainted*
 sive, *seu* or (if), whether
 tempus, *oris n.* temple, brow
 tumulus, *i m.* mound, tomb*
 vēlō (*1*) veil, cover, wrap, wreath

69. caestū: the ancient boxing gloves, made of untanned (crūdō) hide and often weighted with lead and iron, were quite brutal and sometimes deadly. Boxers were often disfigured and sometimes killed in such contests.

71. Ōre favēte: *favor* with your speech, i.e., avoid all words of bad omen. The surest way to do this is to refrain from speaking; hence ōre (or linguīs) favēre, *preserve a holy silence*, is a common formula used by priests at the beginning of religious rites.

72-103. The propitiatory sacrifice to the manes of Anchises.

73. Hoc, hoc: pronounce *hocc*, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c. aevi: gen. of respect with mātūrus; App. 294.

75. Ille: Aenēas.

76. tumultum (Anchisae).

77. Bacchō: abl. of quality; App. 330.

78. sanguine: of a sacrificial victim.

80-81. nēquiquam: since he did not live to reach Italy, the Promised Land. cinerēs recepti (ex Trojā).

*Nōn licuit finīs Italōs fātāliaque arva
nec tēcum Ausonium, quicumque est, quaerere Thybrim."*

*Dixerat haec, adytīs cum lūbricus anguis ab imīs
septem ingēns gŷrōs, septēna volūmina trāxit* 85

*amplexus placidē tumulum lāpsusque per ārās,
caeruleae cui terga notae maculōsus et aurō
squāmam incendēbat fulgor, ceu nūbibus arcus
mille jacet variōs adversō sōle colōrēs.*

Obstipuit vīsū Aenēās. Ille agmine longō 90

*tandem inter paterās et lēvia pōcula serpēns
libāvitque dapēs rūrsusque innoxius imō
successit tumulō et dēpāsta altāria liquit.*

Hōc magis inceptōs genitōrī īnstaurat honōrēs,

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
adytum, ī n. inner shrine, sanctuary
altāria, ium n. altar
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, encircle*
anguis, is m. snake, serpent
arcus, ūs m. (rain)bow, arc, arch*
Ausonium, a, um Ausonian, Italian
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
ceu as, just as, as if
color, ōris m. color, hue, tint
daps, dapis f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
dēpascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed (on)
fātālis, e fatal, fated, destined
fulgor, ōris m. gleam, glitter, sheen†
gŷrus, ī m. fold, circle, coil†
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, brighten*
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake*
innoxius, a, um harmless, innocent
īnstauro (1) renew, refresh, repeat
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, hurl
lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery†
libō (1) pour (out), offer, sip, taste
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, forsake*

lūbricus, a, um smooth, slippery, slimy
maculōsus, a, um spotted, mottled, flecked
magis more, rather, preferably*
mille: *pl.* milia, *ium n.* thousand*
nota, ae f. mark, sign, spot
nūbēs, is f. cloud, mist, fog*
obstipescō, ere, puī be amazed*
patera, ae f. (libation) bowl, cup
placidē gently, calmly, peacefully†
pōculum, ī n. (drinking) cup, goblet
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque
whoever, whichever, whatever*
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
septem seven
septēni, ae, a seven (each) by sevens†
serpō, ere, psī, ptus creep, crawl
sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*
squāma, ae f. scale(s)†
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach (*dat.*)
tergum, ī n. back, hide*
Thybris, (id)is m. Tiber, a river of Italy
tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb*
varius, a, um varied, different, diverse*
vīsus, ūs m. sight, appearance, vision
volūmen, inis n. fold, coil, roll

82. *licuit (mihi quaerere tēcum) finīs Italōs.*

83. *quicumque est:* whatever the Tiber may be; intentional insistence of the poet that his hero does not know the land to which he is going but is obediently following the will of the gods. There is perhaps also an additional touch of Roman pride in the implied contrast of the present fame of the Tiber and of Rome.

84. *adytis:* the tomb served as a shrine. *anguis:* the protecting genius, or guardian spirit (divinity) of a place or of a dead person, was often represented as a serpent, and the worship of serpents was very common in antiquity.

85. *septem septēna:* seven, like three, was a sacred, mystical number, supposed to be of great potency in bringing good fortune.

87-88. *cui terga caeruleae notae (incendēbant) et (cui) squāmam fulgor maculōsus aurō incendēbat:* whose back blue spots brightened, etc., *cui* being *dat.* of reference. *nūbibus:* *abl.* of place where; App. 319, b.

90. *Ille:* the serpent; the pronoun being used, as often, to indicate a change of subject.

94. *īnstaurat:* because interrupted by the appearance of the serpent. *hōc:* all the more; *abl.* of degree of difference:

- 95 *incertus geniumne loci famulumne parentis
esse putet; caedit binās dē mōre bidentis
totque suēs, totidem nigrantis terga iuvencoēs,
vīnaque fundēbat pateris animamque vocābat
Anchīsae magni mānisque Acheronte remissōs.*
- 100 *Nec nōn et socii, quae cuique est cōpia, laeti
dōna ferunt, onerant arās mactantque iuvencoēs;
ordine aēna locant alii fūsi que per herbam
subiciunt veribus prūnās et viscera torrent.*
- 105 *Expectāta diēs aderat nōnamque serēnā
Aurōram Phaethontis equi jam luce vehēbant,
fāmaque finitimōs et clārī nōmen Aestae
excierat: laetō complērant litora coetū*

Acherōn, ontis *m.* (river of) Hades†
aēnum, i *n.* bronze (kettle, caldron)
Aurōra, ae *f.* (goddess of) dawn*
bidēns, entis *f.* sheep (with two teeth)
bini, ae, a two (each), by twos
caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down),
 kill
clārus, a, um clear, bright, famous*
coetus, ūs *m.* assembly, gathering
compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete
cōpia, ae, f. abundance, supply; *pl.* forces
exciō, ire, ivi (ii), itus arouse, stir (up)
ex(s)pectō (l) await, expect, hope (for)*
famulus, i *m.* servant, attendant
finitimus, i *m.* neighbor; adjoining people†
genius, (i) i *m.* guardian spirit, genius†
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
incertus, a, um uncertain, doubtful
iuvencoēs, i *m.* bullock, ox, bull*
locō, (l) establish, place, locate, set up*
mactō (l) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
mānēs, ium *m.* (souls of) the dead,
 Hades*
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*

nigrāns, antis black, dusky, dark
nōnus, a, um ninth
onerō (l) load, burden, overwhelm
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, line*
patera, ae *f.* (libation) bowl, cup
Phaethōn, ontis *m.* the sun (god)†
prūna, ae *f.* live coal, ember†
putō (l) think, suppose, consider, reckon
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)
 each, every(one)
remittō, ere, misi, missus send back, let
 go
serēnus, a, um clear, calm, serene
subjiō, ere, jēci, jectus place under
 (*dat.*)
sūs, suis *m. (f.)* hog, pig, swine
tergum, i *n.* back, hide*
torreō, ēre, ui, tostus roast, boil, parch
tot so many*
totidem an equal number of, as many
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey*
verū, ūs *n.* spit, spike, broach
vinum, i *n.* wine*
viscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh, bowels

App. 335; refers to the favorable omen of the snake's appearance.

95. **famulum**: thus indicating that Anchises had been admitted among the divinities and had been assigned his own personal attendant. -*ne* . . . -*ne*: *whether . . . or.*

96-97. **putet**: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. This sacrifice is called the *suovelaurlia* (**sūs, ovis, taurus**). **nigrantis**: black victims were offered to the shades of the dead and to the gods of the lower world. **terga**: acc. of respect; App. 311.

99. **mānis (ex) Acheronte remissōs**:

the souls of the dead could thus be temporarily released from the lower world and partake of the funeral offerings made at their graves. See III, 303.

100. **Nec nōn**: *likewise*. **quae cuique est cōpia**: *each according to his means*.

102. **fūsi**: middle; App. 309.

104-113. The gathering of the contestants and spectators.

105. **lūce**: abl. of manner with **vehēbat** or of quality with **Aurōram**; App. 328, 330.

106. **fāma**: the report of the games and the prizes.

visūrī Aeneadās, pars et certāre parātī.

*Mūnera principiō ante oculōs circōque locantur
in mediō, sacrī tripodes viridēsque corōnae
et palmae pretium victōribus, armaque et ostrō
perfūsae vestēs, argentī aurique talentum;
et tuba commissōs mediō canit aggere lūdōs.*

110

*Prīma parēs ineunt gravibus certāmine rēmīs
quattuor ex omnī dēlēctae classe carīnae.*

115

*Vēlōcem Mnēstheus agit ācrī rēmige Pristim,
mox Italus Mnēstheus, genus ā quō nōmine Memmī,
ingentemque Gyās ingentī mōle Chimaeram,
urbis opus, triplici pūbēs quam Dardana versū
impellunt, ternō cōnsurgunt ordine rēmī;
Sergestusque, domus tenet ā quō Sergia nōmen,*

120

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
Aeneadēs, ae m. descendant (follower) of Aeneas
agger, eris m. mound, embankment
argentum ī n. silver
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, proclaim, prophesy*
carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle*
certō (1) contend, compete, strive, vie
Chimaera, ae f. fire-breathing monster; name of a ship†
circus, ī m. circle, race-course†
committō, ere, misi, missus join, begin
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise
corōna, ae f. wreath, garland, crown
Dardanus, a, um Dardanian, Trojan
dēligo, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, select
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader
impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive, impel
ineō, ire, īi (ivī), itus enter†
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
locō (1) establish, place, locate, set up*
lūdus, ī m. game, sport, play, contest
Memmius, (i) ī m. noted Roman family†
Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader*

mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
mox soon, presently
opus, eris n. work, toil, product, deed*
ordō, inis m. order, row, rank, bank*
ostrum, ī n. purple, scarlet, crimson
palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize*
pār, paris equal, well-matched, similar*
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus bathe, drench, dye
pretium, (i) ī n. reward, price, prize
principiō first(ly), in the first place
Pristis, is f. Shark; name of a ship†
pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men*
quattuor four
rēmex, igis m. rower, oarsman, crew
Sergestus, ī m. Trojan leader*
Sergius, a, um of Sergius, a famous Roman family†
talentum, ī n. talent, worth about \$1200†
ternus, a, um three (each), triple
triplex, icis triple, threefold†
tripūs, odis m. tripod
tuba, ae f. trumpet
vēlōx, ōcis swift, speedy, fleet
versus, ūs m. row, tier, line, verse
vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

108. visūrī: *desiring to see*; a common meaning of the fut. part.; App. 274.
certāre: inf. with parātī, which is pl. with the collective noun pars; App. 265.

114-285. Cloanthus wins the boat race.

114. rēmīs: abl. of quality.

116. Pristim: *Sea Serpent*; each of these ships probably bore a figurehead representing its name. ācrī rēmige: collective.

117. ā quō nōmine (est) genus Memmī: the great Roman families loved to trace their ancestry back to Troy. This passage of the *Aeneid* is a good example of the fanciful etymologizing often resorted to in order to establish the connection.

118. Gyās (agit).

119. urbis opus = urbis instar: the size of a city. triplici versū (rēmōrum): a trireme.

121-123. Sergestus, Sergia, Cloanthus, Cluenti: more fanciful etymologies. The

Centaurō invehitur *magnā*, Scyllāque Cloanthus
caeruleā, *genus unde tibi*, Rōmāne Cluentī.

- 125 *Est procul in pelagō saxum spūmantia contrā
litora, quod tumidis summersum tunditur ōlim
flūctibus hiberni condunt ubi sīdera Cōri;
tranquillō silet immōtāque attollitur undā
campus et apricis statio grātissima mergis.
Hic viridem Aenēās frondenti ex ilice mētam*
130 *cōstituit signum nautis pater, unde reverti
scirent et longōs ubi circumflectere cursūs.
Tum loca sorte legunt ipsique in puppibus aurō
ductōrēs longē effulgent ostrōque decōri;
cētera pōpuleā vēlātur fronde iuventūs
135 nūdātōsque umerōs oleō perfūsa nitēscit.*

apricus, a, um sunny, sun-loving†
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
Centaurus, i m. monster with the head
of a man and the body of a horse; f.
name of a ship†
cēterus, a, um remaining, other, rest
circumflectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend,
turn
Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader
Cluentius, (i)i famous Roman family†
condō, ere, didi, ditus establish, bury*
cōstituō, ere, ui, ūtus establish
contrā against, opposite (acc.)*
Cōrus, i m. (northwest) wind†
decōrus, a, um beautiful, glorious, seemly
ductor, ōris m. leader, commander, chief
effulgeō, ēre, lsi gleam, shine, glit-
ter
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded
frōns, frondis f. leaf, foliage, frond*
grātus, a, um agreeable, welcome
hibernus, a, um of the winter, win-
try
ilex, icis f. holm-oak
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
invehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey
iuventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, gather*
longē afar, from afar*

mergus, i m. gull, diver†
mēta, ae f. turning point, goal, bound
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner
nitēscō, ere, nitui shine, glisten, gleam†
nūdō (1) bare, strip, uncover, expose
oleum, i n. olive oil
ōlim at some time, once, formerly*
ostrum, i n. purple, crimson, scarlet
perfundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus bathe, drench
pōpuleus, a, um (of) poplar, a tree sacred
to Hercules, the perfect athlete and
patron saint of athletes†
revertor, i, rsus return, turn back
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
sciō, ire, ivi (ii), itus know (how), under-
stand
Scylla, ae f. sea-monster; name of a ship†
signum, i n. mark, sign, signal, token*
sileō, ēre, ui be silent, hush, be still
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
statio, ōnis f. station, post, anchorage
summergō (subm-), ere, rsi, rsus sub-
merge, sink
tranquillum, i n. calm (weather)
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
tundō, ere, tutudi, tū(n)sus beat, buffet
unde whence, from which source*
vēlō (1) veil, cover, wrap, wreath
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

ability to contrive such distorted deri-
vations once passed as a mark of real
scholarship. Cloanthus (invehitur).

124. saxum: a rock just at the surface
of the water.

126. condunt (nūbibus, with clouds).

127. tranquillō: abl. abs
immōtā undā: abl. abs

128. campus: (as) a flat surface.

130-131. unde = ex quō locō. unde
scirent: purpose.

134. cētera iuventūs: the crew, as con-
trasted with the ductor of each ship.

135. umerōs: obj. of the middle part.
perfūsa; App. 309, a. oleō: see note on
III, 281.

Cōnsidunt trānstrīs, intentaque bracchia rēmīs;
 intentī expectant signum, exsultantiaque haurit
 corda pavor pulsāns laudumque arrēcta cupīdō.
 Inde ubi clāra dedit sonitum tuba, finibus omnēs,
 haud mora, prōsiluēre suīs; ferit aethera clāmōr
 nauticus, adductīs spūmant freta versa lacertīs.
 Infūdunt pariter sulcōs, tōtumque dehīscit
 convulsū rēmīs rōstrisque tridentibus aequor.
 Nōn tam praecipitēs bijugō certāmine campum
 corripuēre ruuntque effūsī carcere currūs,
 nec sīc immissīs aurīgae undantia lōra
 concussēre jugīs prōnīque in verbera pendent.
 Tum plausū fremitūque virum studiisque faventum

140

145

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw to, lead to†
 aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air,
 heaven*
 arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, rouse
 auriga, ae m. charioteer, driver†
 bijugus, a, um double-yoked, two-
 horsed; team, chariot†
 brachium, (i)ī n. (fore)arm*
 carcer, eris m. prison, barrier, starting
 point
 certāmen, inis n. struggle, contest*
 clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
 concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
 cōsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (on), settle*
 convellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear up, shatter*
 cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
 corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch up, dash
 over*
 cupidō, inis f. desire, love, passion
 currus, ūs m. chariot, car*
 dehīscō, ere, hivi yawn, open, gape
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, let go*
 ex(s)pectō (1) await, expect, hope (for)*
 ex(s)ultō (1) leap up, exult, rejoice
 favēns, entis m. (f.) partisan, supporter
 feriō, ire strike, smite, beat, cut, kill
 fremitus, ūs m. roar, shout(ing)
 fretum, ī n. strait, sea, waters
 hauriō, ire, hausi, haustus drain, exhaust
 immittō, ere, misi, missus let go
 inde thence, after that, next*

infūdō, ere, fidī, fissus split, cleave†
 intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain
 jugum, ī n. yoke, team; (mountain) ridge*
 lacertus, ī m. (upper) arm†
 laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*
 lōrum, ī n. thong, rein, check
 mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance*
 nauticus, a, um of sailors, nautical
 pariter equally, side by side*
 pavor, ōris m. fear, alarm, anxiety
 pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
 plausus, ūs m. applause, clapping
 praiceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
 prōnus, a, um leaning forward, prone
 prōsiliō, ire, uī (ivī, ii) leap forward†
 pulsō (1) beat, lash, strike, throb, batter
 rōstrum, ī n. beak, snout; prow†
 signum, ī n. mark, sign, signal, token*
 sonitus, ūs m. sound, roar, crash, noise*
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
 studium, (i)ī n. zeal, desire, pursuit
 sulcus, ī m. furrow, track, trench
 tam so (much), so greatly, such*
 trānstrum, ī n. rowing-bench, thwart
 tridēns, entis triple-pointed, three-
 toothed
 tuba, ae f. trumpet
 undō (1) wave, sway, undulate, fluctuate
 verber, eris n. blow, lash, whipt
 verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*

136. intenta (sunt).

139. finibus: from their starting places.

140. haud mora (est) = sine morā.

141. adductis (ad pectora): as they make the stroke. versa: probably from

vertō, turn, but possibly from verrō, sweep.
144. bijugō: with the first syllable short, since the j was originally initial, bijugō being a compound of bis, double,

and jugum, yoke; App. 6, b.

145. effūsī: middle; App. 309. The galleys are compared to chariots in a race, the commanders to the charioteers and the rowers to the horses. carcere = finibus of l. 139.

147. jugis = equis: metonymy and dat. of reference; App. 433, 301. in verbera (danda) = ut verbera dent.

148. vir(ōr)um.

cōnsonat omne nemus, vōcemque inclūsa volūtant
150 litora, pulsātī collēs clāmōre resultant.

Effugit ante aliōs primīsque elābitur undīs
turbam inter fremitumque Gyās; quem deinde Cloanthus
cōnsequitur, melior rēmīs, sed pondere pīnus
tarda tenet. Post hōs aequō discrimine Pristis
155 Centaurusque locum tendunt superāre priōrem;
et nunc Pristis habet, nunc victam praeterit ingēns
Centaurus, nunc ūnā ambae jūctisque feruntur
frontibus et longā sulcant vada salsa carinā.
Jamque propinquābant scopulō mētamque tenēbant
160 cum princeps mediōque Gyās in gurgite victor
rēctōrem nāvis compellat vōce Menoetēn:
“Quō tantum mihi dexter abīs? Hūc dērige gressum;
litus amā et laevā stringat sine palmula cautēs;

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart*
aequus, a, um equal, just, even, fair
ambō, ae, ō both
amō (1) love, cherish; hug*
carīna, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, ledge
Centaurus, i m. monster with the head
of a man and the body of a horse;
f. name of a ship
Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader
collis, is m. hill
compellō (1) speak to, address, accost
cōnsequor, i, secūtus follow, overtake
cōnsonō, āre, uī (re)sound, echo†
deinde then, thence, thereupon, next*
dērigō (dī-), ere, rēxi, rēctus direct
discrimen, inis n. difference, interval
effugiō, ere, fūgi escape, shoot forth
elābor, i, lāpsus glide forth, escape
fremitus, ūs m. roar, shout(ing)
frōns, frontis f. front, forehead, face*
gressus, ūs m. step, course, gait, pace
gurgēs, itis m. whirlpool, sea, gulf*
Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader
inclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut (in), inclose
jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūctus join, yoke*
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable

Menoetēs, ae m. Trojan pilot†
mēta, ae f. goal, turning point, bound
nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest*
palmula, ae f. oar-blade, oar†
pīnus, ūs (i) f. pine tree; ship
pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass
post after, behind (acc.); afterward*
praetereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus pass
princeps, cipis first, leading, (as) leader
prior, ius former, first, prior*
Pristis, is f. Shark; name of a ship
propinquō (1) approach, (draw) near
(dat.)
pulsō (1) beat, strike, lash, throb, batter
rēctor, ōris m. pilot, leader, master†
resultō (1) rebound, re-echo, reverberate†
salsus, a, um briny, salty
scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag*
sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit*
stringō, ere, strīnxi, strictus brush, graze
sulcō (1) plow, furrow, cleave†
superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass,
survive*
tardus, a, um delayed, slow, late, lazy
turba, ae f. crowd, mob, throng, uproar
ūnā together, at the same time
vadum, i n. shoal, sea
volūtō (1) roll, revolve, ponder

149. inclūsa: surrounded (by the hills).
151. primis undis: over the foremost
waves, in front of the other ships.

152. inter turbam fremitumque.
153. pinus = nāvis: metonymy; App.
433.

154. (Cloanthum) tenet. aequō dis-
crimine: abl. of degree of difference;
App. 335.

155. locum superāre priōrem: to gain
the lead.

156. habet (priōrem) locum.
157-158. jūctis frontibus = pariter;
cf. l. 142.

159. tenēbant: were about to reach;
App. 351, 2, a.

160. victor: Gyas had been leading
thus far.

162. mihi: dat of reference, “to
my hurt,” or ethical dat.; App. 301,
300.

163. litus amā: hug the shore; i.e., the

altum *alī teneant.*" *Dixit; sed caeca Menoetēs*
saxa timēns prōram pelagī dētorquet ad undās. 165
"Quō diversus abīs?" Iterum "Pete saxa, Menoetē!"
cum clāmōre Gyās revocābat, et ecce Cloanthum
respicit instantem tergō et propiōra tenentem.
Ille inter nāvemque Gyae scopulōsque sonantis
rādīt iter laevum interior subitōque priōrem 170
praeterit et mētīs tenet aequora tūta relictīs.
Tum vērō exarsit juvenī dolor ossibus ingēns
nec lacrimīs caruēre genae, sēgnemque Menoetē
oblitus decorisque suī sociumque salūtis
in mare praecipitem puppī dēturbat ab altā; 175
ipse gubernāclō rēctor subit, ipse magister
hortāturque virōs clāvumque ad litora torquet.
At gravis ut fundō vix tandem redditus imō est
jam senior madidāque fluēns in veste Menoetēs

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart*
 altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven
 caecus, a, um blind, hidden, dark*
 careō, ēre, uī be free from, lack (abl.)
 clāvus, ī m. helm, rudder, tiller
 Cloanthus, ī m. Trojan leader
 decus, oris n. beauty, grace, dignity
 dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn
 (aside)
 dēturbō (1) hurl down, cast down†
 diversus, a, um apart, separated, aside*
 dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger*
 ecce see! look! behold!*
 exardescō, ere, arsi, arsus flame forth
 fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus flow, stream, drip
 fundus, ī m. bottom, foundation, base
 gena, ae f. cheek
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
 gubernāc(u)lum, ī n. helm, rudder, tiller†
 Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, in-
 cite*
 instō, āre, stitī press on, urge (on) (dat.)
 interior, ius inner, inside, interior
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*
 iterum again, anew, a second time*
 juvenis, is m. youth, young (man,
 woman)*
 laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*

madidus, a, um wet, dripping†
 magister, trī m. master, skipper, pilot
 Menoetēs, ae m. Trojan pilot
 mēta, ae f. goal, turning point, bound
 obliviscor, ī, litus forget (gen.)
 os, ossis n. bone*
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
 praetereō, ire, ii (ivī), itus pass
 prior, ius former, first, prior*
 propior, ius nearer, closer
 prōra, ae f. prow*
 rādō, ere, si, sus scrape, shave; skirt
 rēctor, ōris m. pilot, leader, master
 reddō, ere, didi, ditus return, render*
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see (behind),
 look back (at), regard*
 revocō (1) call back, recall, restore
 salūs, ūtis f. safety, health, welfare
 scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag*
 sēgnis, e slow, lazy, inactive
 senior, ōris m. old (aged) man, sire
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
 subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
 tergum, ī n. back, hide, rear*
 timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
 torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, sway*
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
 vērō indeed, truly, but
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

saxum of l. 124 which served as a turning point. (ut) stringat: obj. of sine, an imp. laevā (manū) on the left.

167. revocābat: conative, he kept trying to call back; App. 351, 2, a.

168. tergō: dat. with compound. (loca) propiōra (saxō): the inside track,

since the rock served as the turning point.

169. Ille (Cloanthus).

170. iter: cognate acc.; App. 313. interior: between Gyas and the rock.

172. juvenī: dat. of reference.

174. soci(ōr)um.

176. ipse (Gyās) rēctor: (as) pilot.

- 180 *summa petit scopulī siccāque in rūpe resēdit.*
Illum et lābentem Teucrī et risēre natantem
et salsōs rident revomentem pectore flūctūs.
Hic laeta extrēmīs spēs est accēnsa duōbus,
 Sergestō Mnēstheique, Gyān superāre morantem.
- 185 *Sergestus capit ante locum scopulōque propinquat,*
nec tōtā tamen ille prior praeēunte carinā;
parte prior, partim rōstrō premit aemula Pristis.
At mediā sociōs incēdēns nāve per ipsōs
 hortātur Mnēstheus: "*Nunc, nunc insurgite rēmīs,*
 190 *Hectoreī sociū, Trojae quōs sorte suprēmā*
dēlēgī comitēs; nunc illās prōmite vīrīs,
nunc animōs, quibus in Gaetūlis Syrtibus ūsī
Īoniōque marī Maleaeque sequācibus undīs.
Nōn jam prīmā petō Mnēstheus neque vincere certō
 195 *(quamquam Ō! — sed superent quibus hoc, Neptūne, dedistī),*

accendō, ere, i, ēnsus inflame, kindle
 aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous†
 carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
 certō (1) struggle, contend, vie, compete
 dēlēgō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, select
 duo, ae, o two*
 extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
 Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of the Gaetuli,
 an African tribe
 Gyās, ae m. Trojan leader
 Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan
 leader
 hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
 incēdō, ere, cessī, cessus go, stride
 insurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise (on)
 (dat.)
 Īonius, a, um Ionian, a sea off the west
 coast of Greece
 Malea, ae f. promontory of southern
 Greece, dangerous to navigation†
 Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader*
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
 natō (1) swim, float, overflow
 Neptūnus, i m. Neptune, god of the sea*
 partim partly, partially†
 praeēō, ire, ii (ivī), itus go before, lead†

premō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press,
 pursue*
 prior, ius former, prior, first*
 Pristis, is f. Shark; name of a ship
 prōmō, ere, mpsī, mptus put forth
 propinquō (1) approach, (draw) near (dat.)
 quamquam although, however, but
 residō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down), settle
 revomō, ere, ūi vomit (forth), disgorge†
 rideō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), smile
 rōstrum, i n. beak, snout; prow
 rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag*
 salsus, a, um briny, salty
 scopulus, i m. rock, cliff, crag*
 sequāx, ācis pursuing, swift†
 Sergestus, i m. Trojan leader*
 siccus, a, um dry, thirsty
 sors, rtis f. lot, fortune, portion; ora-
 cle*
 spēs, ei f. hope, expectation*
 superō (1) surmount, overcome, surpass,
 win, survive*
 Syrtis, is f. sand-bank off the northern
 coast of Africa
 tamen however, nevertheless, but*
 ūtor, i, ūsus use, employ, enjoy (abl.)

183. extrēmīs duōbus: dat. of reference.

184. Mnēstheī: dat., a Greek form; two syllables by synizesis; App. 69, 403.

185. ante: adverbial, first, before (the others).

186. praeēunte: with the first syllable short. This prefix is often shortened before a following vowel.

190. sorte suprēmā: abl. of time when.

192. (illōs) animōs, quibus ūsī (estis). quibus: abl. with ūtor; App. 342.

194. prima (loca). Mnēstheus = ego.

195. quamquam Ō: a wish left unexpressed and thus made more vivid; a good example of effective aposiopesis; App. 416. Cf. I, 135, note.

extrēmōs pudeat rediisse: *hoc vincite, cīvēs,
et prohibēte nefās.*" *Ollī certāmine summō*
prōcumbunt: vastīs tremit ictibus aerea *puppis*
subtrahiturque solum, tum crēber anhelitus artūs
āridaque ōra quatit, sūdor fluit undique rīvīs. 200
Attulit ipse virīs optātum cāsus honōrem.
Namque furēns animī dum prōram *ad saxa* suburget
interior spatiōque subit Sergestus iniquō,
infelix saxīs in prōcurrentibus haesit.
Concussae cautēs *et acūtō in* mūrce *rēmī* 205
obnixī crepuere inlisaque prōra pependit.
Cōnsurgunt nautae et magnō clāmōre morantur
ferrātāsque trudēs *et acūtā* cuspide contōs
expediunt frāctōsque legunt *in* gurgite *rēmōs.*
At laetus Mnēstheus successūque *ācrior ipso* 210
agmine rēmōrum celerī ventīsque vocātīs

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
acūtus, a, um sharp, pointed, acute
adferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring to
aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad
anhēlitus, ūs m. panting, gasping†
āridus, a, um dry, parched
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, member*
cautēs, is f. rock, cliff, ledge
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle, race*
cīvis, is m. (f.) citizen, compatriot
concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake, shatter
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise
contus, i m. boat hook, pike, pole†
crēber, bra, brum frequent, hurried*
crepō, āre, uī, itus clatter, crash†
cuspis, idis f. point
expediō, ire, ivi (iī), itus disentangle,
bring forth
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
ferrātus, a, um shod with iron, iron-clad†
fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus flow, stream, drip
frangō, ere, frēgi, fractus break, shatter*
gurges, itis m. whirlpool, sea, gulf*
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to), stick*
ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust
iniquus, a, um unfavorable, unjust
inlidō, ere, sī, sus strike on, dash on
interior, ius inner, inside, interior
legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus collect, choose*

Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader*
moror, āri, ātus delay, hinder, tarry*
mūrex, icis m. purple (mollusk), rock
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner
nefās n. indecl. sin, shame, impiety*
obnitor, ī, sus (nixus) press against,
struggle
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
pendeō, ēre, pependi hang*
procumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus lean for-
ward, incline, recline
prōcurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus jut, pro-
ject†
prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, forbid
prōra, ae f. prow*
pudet, ēre, uit it shames†
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
redeō, ire, iī (ivī), itus return
rīvus, i m. stream, rivulet
Sergestus, i m. Trojan leader*
solum, i n. ground, surface (of the sea)*
spatium, (i)ī n. space, position
subtrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus draw (up),
withdraw†
suburgeō, ēre press close†
successus, ūs m. success, progress
sūdor, ōris m. sweat, perspiration
tremō, ere, uī tremble, quiver, shake*
trudis, is f. pole, pike†
undique on (from) all sides*

196. (nōs) extrēmōs.
197. nefās: i.e., of being last (ex-
trēmōs rediisse).
199. solum (maris).
200. rīvīs: in streams, abl. of means.
201. virīs: to Mnestheus's crew.

202. animī: loc., or a gen. of respect
with furēns; App. 345, 294.
204. in saxīs prōcurrentibus: on rocks
jutting out; beneath the water and hence
hidden (caeca), l. 164.
205. Concussae (sunt).

- prōna petit maria et pelagō dēcurrit apertō.
 Quālis spēluncā subitō commōta columba,
 cui domus et dulcēs latebrōsō in pūmice nidī,
 215 fertur in arva volāns plausumque exterrita pennīs
 dat tēctō ingentem, mox āere lāpsa quietō
 rādīt iter liquidum celerīs neque commovet ālās:
 sic Mnēstheus, sic ipsa fugā secat ultima Pristis
 aequora, sic illam fert impetus ipse volantem.
 220 Et prīmum in scopulō luctantem dēserit altō
 Sergestum brevibusque vadīs frūstrāque vocantem
 auxilia et frāctīs discentem currere rēmīs.
 Inde Gyān ipsamque ingentī mōle Chimaeram
 cōsequitur; cēdit, quoniam spoliāta magistrō est.
 225 Sōlus jamque ipsō superest in fine Cloanthus:
 quem petit et summīs adnexus vīribus urget.
 Tum vērō ingeminat clāmor cūnctīque sequentem

adnitor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle, strive
 āēr, āeris *m.* air, mist, fog
 āla, *ae f.* wing*
 apertus, a, um open, clear, free
 auxilium, (i)ī *n.* help, aid, assistance*
 brevis, e short, shallow, brief
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, fall behind*
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
 Chimaera, *ae f.* fire-breathing monster;
 name of a ship
 Cloanthus, ī *m.* Trojan leader
 columba, *ae f.* dove, pigeon
 commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, startle
 cōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, hasten
 dēcurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run down
 dēserō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
 discō, ere, didici learn (how); *perf.* know
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus break, shatter*
 frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
 Gyās, *ae m.* Trojan leader
 impetus, ūs *m.* impetus, momentum
 inde then, thence, next*
 ingeminō (1) reiterate, (re)double, in-
 crease
 iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
 latebrōsus, a, um sheltering, crannied†

liquidus, a, um liquid, fluid, clear
 luctor, āri, ātus struggle, wrestle
 magister, tri *m.* master, skipper, pilot
 Mnēstheus, ei (eos) *m.* Trojan leader*
 mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
 mox soon, presently
 nidus, ī *m.* nest(ing)†
 penna, *ae f.* wing, feather
 plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, beating
 Pristis, is *f.* Shark; name of a ship
 prōnus, a, um leaning forward, slop-
 ing downward
 pūmex, icis *m.* pumice, a porous stone†
 quālis, e of what kind, (such) as*
 quietus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet
 quoniam since, because
 rādō, ere, sī, sus shave, graze, skim
 scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
 secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
 Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
 spēlunca, *ae f.* cave, cavern, grotto
 spoliō (1) deprive (of), rob, despoil (*abl.*)†
 subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
 supersum, esse, fui remain, be left
 ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
 urgeō, ēre, ursi press, urge
 vadum, ī *n.* shoal, sea
 vērō indeed, truly, but
 volō (1) fly, speed, hasten*

212. prōna: to one standing on the shore, the sea seems higher than the land and to slope down to it. Cf. dēvēnēre, I, 365; dēlātō, III, 154; dēmittere, V, 29; dēlāti, V, 57.

213-215. Quālis columba, subitō (ex) spēluncā commōta, cui domus et dulcēs nidī (sunt) in latebrōsō pūmice, fertur, etc.

216. (ex) tēctō = ē spēluncā.

218-219. ipsa Pristis secāt ultima ae-
 quora. ultima aequora: the home stretch.
 illam (Pristim).

220. (Pristis) dēserit.

221. vocantem: calling for.

224. cēdit (Chimaera).

227. clāmor: of those on shore.

instigant studiis, resonatque fragoribus aethēr.
 Hī proprium decus et partum indignantur honōrem
 nī teneant, vltamque volunt prō laude pacisci; 230
 hōs successus alit: possunt, quia posse videntur.
 Et fors aequātis cēpissent praemia rōstris,
 nī palmās pontō tendēns utrāsque Cloanthus
 fūdissetque precēs divōsque in vōta vocāset:
 "Dī, quibus imperium est pelagī, quōrum aequora currō, 235
 vōbīs laetus ego hōc candentem in litore taurum
 cōstituam ante ārās vōtī reus, extaque salsōs
 prōjiciam in flūctūs et vīna liquentia fundam."
 Dixit, eumque īmīs sub flūctibus audiit omnis
 Nēreidum Phorcique chorus Panopēaque virgō, 240
 et pater ipse manū magnā Portūnus euntem
 impulit: illa Notō citius voluerique sagittā
 ad terram fugit et portū sē condidit altō.
 Tum satus Anchisā cūctis ex mōre vocātis

aequō (1) equal(ize), even, level, match*
 aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, sky*
 alō, ere, uī, (i)tus nourish, support
 candēns, entis white, shining, sleek
 chorus, i m. band, company, dance
 citō quickly, swiftly
 Cloanthus, i m. Trojan leader
 condō, ere, didi, ditus found; bury, hide*
 cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus place, stand
 currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, speed (over)
 decus, oris n. beauty, glory, dignity
 exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals
 fragor, ōris m. crash, uproar
 impellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive on
 indignor, āri, ātus disdain, be angry
 instigō (1) goad, incite, spur, urge on†
 laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*
 liquēns, entis liquid, clear
 mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, manner*
 Nēreis, idis f. Nereid, a sea-nymph,
 daughter of Nereus, a sea-god
 nisi, nī if not, unless*
 Notus, i m. (south) wind
 paciscor, i, pactus pledge, stake
 palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize*
 Panopēā, ae f. a sea-nymph, daughter of
 Nereus†

pariō, ere, peperī, partus gain, bear
 Phorcus, i m. a sea-god†
 pontus, i m. sea, waves*
 Portūnus, i m. god of harbors†
 praemium, (i)i n. reward, prize*
 prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow*
 prō for, before, on behalf of (abl.)*
 prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast forth†
 proprius, a, um one's own, secure
 quia because
 resonō (1) (re) sound, roar
 reus, i m. defendant, debtor, payer†
 rōstrum, i n. beak, snout; prow
 sagitta, ae f. arrow, bolt, shaft
 salsus, a, um briny, salty
 serō, ere, sēvi, satus sow, beget*
 studium, (i)i n. desire, eagerness, zeal,
 favor, partisanship
 successus, ūs m. success, progress
 taurus, i m. bull, bullock, ox*
 uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of
 two), both*
 vinum, i n. wine*
 virgō, inis f. girl, daughter, maiden*
 volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet, swift*
 vōtum, i n. vow, prayer, (votive) offer-
 ing*

229-231. Hī...hōs: the sailors of
 Cloanthus...the sailors of Mnesteus.
 nī teneant: subordinate clause in implied
 indir. disc.; App. 358.

232. fors: perhaps.

233. pontō: dat. of direction.

235. aequora: obj. of currō, used
 transitively.

237. vōtī: gen. with a word of con-
 demning, reus; App. 291.

241. (nāvem) euntem.

242. illa (nāvis Cloanthi). Notō, sa-
 gittā: ablatives with the comparative;
 App. 327.

244. satus Anchisā: Aeneas.

- 245 *victōrem magnā praecōnis vōce* Cloanthum
dēclārat viridīque advēlat tempora laurō,
mūneraque in nāvīs ternōs optāre juvencōs
vināque et argentī magnum dat ferre talentum.
Ipsīs praecipuōs ductōribus addit honōrēs:
- 250 *victōrī* chlamydem aurātā, *quam plūrima circum*
purpura Maeandrō duplici Meliboea cucurrit,
intextusque *puer* frondōsā rēgius Idā
vêlōcīs jaculō cervōs *cursūque* fatigat
ācer, anhelantī similis, *quem* praepes ab Idā
255 sublinem pedibus rapuit *Jovis* armiger uncīs:
longaevī palmās nēquīquam *ad sīdera tendunt*
custōdēs, saevitque canum lātrātus *in aurās.*
At quī deinde locum tenuit virtūte secundum,

ācer, *cris*, *cre* sharp, spirited, fierce*
addō, *ere*, *didī*, *ditus* add*
advēlō (1) veil, cover, wreath†
anhēlō (1) pant, gasp, puff†
argentum, *i n.* silver
armiger, *eri m.* armor-bearer
aurātus, *a, um* gilded, embroidered with
gold
canis, *is m. (f.)* dog, hound
cervus, *i m.* deer, stag
chlamys, *ydis f.* cloak, scarf, cape
Cloanthus, *i m.* Trojan leader
currō, *ere*, *cucurri*, *cursus*, run, speed
(over)
custōs, *ōdis m. (f.)* guard(ian), sentinel*
dēclārō (1) proclaim, make clear†
deinde then, next, after that*
ductor, *ōris m.* leader, commander, chief
duplex, *icis* twofold, double
fatigō (1) weary, chase, harass, rouse
frondōsus, *a, um* leafy, fronded†
Idā, *ae f.* mountain near Troy
intexō, *ere*, *uī*, *xtus* weave in
jaculum, *i n.* spear, dart, lance
juvencus, *i m.* bullock, bull, ox*
lātrātus, *ūs m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)†
laurus, *i (ūs) f.* laurel

longaevus, *a, um* aged, long-lived
Maeander, *dri m.* winding river of Asia
Minor; meandering pattern†
Meliboeus, *a, um* Meliboean, of Meliboea,
a Thessalian town
nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
palma, *ae f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pēs, *pedis m.* foot
praecipuus, *a, um* especial, choice†
praecō, *ōnis m.* crier, herald†
praepes, *petis* swift, swooping
purpura, *ae f.* purple, crimson†
rapiō, *ere*, *uī*, *ptus* snatch (up), rob*
rēgius, *a, um* royal, regal, princely*
saevio, *ire, ii (ivi)*, *itus* rage, storm
secundus, *a, um* second, favorable*
similis, *e* like, similar (*dat.*)*
sublimis, *e* lofty, aloft, on high
talentum, *i n.* a talent, worth about \$1200
tempus, *oris n.* temple, brow
terni, *ae, a* three (each), by threes
uncus, *a, um* crooked, curved
vêlōx, *ōcis* swift, speedy, fleet
vinum, *i n.* wine*
viridis, *e* green, fresh, vigorous*
virtūs, *ūtis f.* manhood, merit, courage*

247-248. optāre, ferre: infinitives of purpose; App. 261.

250-251. circum quam (chlamydem) plūrima purpura cucurrit.

251. Maeandrō: abl. of manner.

252. puer rēgius: Ganymede, son of Tros, king of Troy. He was carried to heaven by an eagle, to be Jove's cup-bearer. Cf. I, 28. Two scenes are woven in the robe; the first representing the boy as hunting and the second his being

carried away by the eagle while his aged guardians lift their hands toward heaven and his dogs bark at the eagle.

255. Jovis armiger: the eagle was often represented by the ancients as bearing in his talons the thunderbolt, the weapon of Jupiter. Some United States coins bear this device.

257. lātrātus: barking (at the eagle).

258. quī: its antecedent is huic, in l. 259.

lēvibus *huic* hāmīs cōnsertam *aurōque* trilicem
lōricam, *quam* Dēmoleō dētrāxerat *ipse* 260
victor apud rapidum Simoēnta *sub* Īliō altō,
dōnat habēre, *virō* decus et tūtāmen *in* armīs.
Vix illam famulī Phēgeus Sagarisque *ferēbant*
multiplicem cōnixī *umerīs*; indūtas at ōlim
Dēmoleos *cursū* pālantis Trōas *agēbat*. 265
Tertia dōna facit geminōs ex aere lebētas
cymbiaque argentō perfecta *atque* aspera signīs.
Jamque adeō dōnātī *omnēs* opibusque superbī
pūniceis *ībant* ēvinctī tempora taenīs,
cum saevō ē scopulō *multā* *vix* arte revulsus 270
āmissis *rēmīs* *atque* ordine dēbilis *ūnō*
inrīsam sine *honōre* ratem Sergestus *agēbat*.

adeō to such an extent, so
aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
āmittō, ere, misī, missus lose, let go*
apud among, at, near (*acc.*)
argentum, ī *n.* silver
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, device, cunning*
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
cōnitor, ī, sus (nixus) struggle†
cōnserō, ere, uī, rtus fasten, join
cymbium, (i)ī *n.* bowl, cup
dēbilis, e weakened, crippled†
decus, oris *n.* ornament, glory, dig-
nity
Dēmoleos (us), ī (ō) *m.* Greek leader†
dētrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus strip (off)
(*abl.*)†
dōnō (1) present, give, bestow, grant†
ēvinciō, ire, vinxi, victus bind, tie†
famulus, ī *m.* slave, attendant
hāmus, ī *m.* hook, link
Īlium, (i)ī *n.* Troy, Ilium
induō, ere, uī, ūtus clothe, don
inrideō, ēre, sī, sus laugh at, ridicule
lebēs, ētis *m.* kettle, caldron
lēvis, e smooth, polished, slippery
lōrica, ae *f.* breastplate, cuirass

multiplex, icis with many folds
ōlim once, formerly, at some time*
ops, opis *f.* aid, wealth, resources, power*
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, bank*
pālor, āri, ātus straggle, scatter†
perficiō, ere, fēci, fectus finish, form
Phēgeus, ī *m.* Trojan slave†
pūniceus, a, um purple, crimson†
rapidus, a, um swift, quick, whirling*
ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
revellō, ere, (vuls)ī, vulsus tear away
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Sagaris, is *m.* Trojan slave†
scopulus, ī *m.* rock, cliff, crag*
Sergestus, ī *m.* Trojan leader*
signum, ī *n.* mark, sign, signal, fig-
ure*
Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy
sine without (*abl.*)*
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
taenia, ae *f.* ribbon, band, fillet†
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tertius, a, um third*
trilix, liciis three-leashed, triple-threaded
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
tūtāmen, inis *n.* protection, defense†

260. Dēmoleō: dat. of separation.
ipse (Aenēās).

261. Īliō altō: semi-hiatu; App. 400.

262. habēre: inf. of purpose; App.
261. in armīs = in bellō: metonymy;
App. 433.

263. Vix ferēbant: tradition, which
is regularly handed down by the old men,
continually insists that everything was
much better "in the good old days" and
that men of former generations were

much stronger and braver than their
degenerate descendants.

265. cursū: abl. of manner; App. 328.

266. dōna, lebētas: two accusatives
with a verb of making; App. 316, a. lebē-
tās: acc. pl., a Greek form; App. 65, a.

267. aspera signis: embossed with
figures.

269. taen(i)is.

271. ordine ūnō: in one bank of oars;
abl. of respect; App. 325.

- Quālis saepe *viae* dēprēnsus *in* aggere serpēns,
 aerea *quem* oblīquum rota trānsiit *aut* gravis ietū
 275 sēminecem liquit *saxō* lacerum*que* viātor;
 nēquīquam *longōs fugiēns dat corpore* tortūs
parte ferōx *ardēnsque oculis et sībila colla*
 arduus attollēns; *pars* vulnere clauda retentat
 nexantem nōdis *sēque in sua membra* plicantem:
 280 *tālī rēmigiō nāvis sē tarda movēbat;*
vēla facit tamen et vētis subit ōstia plēnis.
 Sergestum *Aenēās* prōmissō *mūnere* dōnat
servātam ob *nāvem laetus sociōsque* reductōs.
Ollī *serva datur operum* *haud ignāra* Minervae,
 285 Crēssa *genus, Pholoē, geminīque sub ūbere nātī.*
Hōc pius Aenēās missō certāmine *tendit*
grāmineum in campum, quem collibus undique *curvis*

areus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad*
 agger, eris m. mound, embankment
 arduus, a, um lofty, steep, upraised*
 attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
 certāmen, inis n. struggle, contest, race*
 claudus, a, um lame, crippled†
 collis, is m. hill
 collum, i n. neck*
 Crēssa, ae f. Cretan (woman), of Cretet†
 curvus, a, um curving, bent, winding*
 dēpre(he)ndō, ere, i, ēnsus seize, catch
 dōnō (1) give, present, bestow, grant
 ferōx, ōcis fierce, spirited, wild
 grāmineus, a, um grassy, of grass†
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
 ictus, ūs m. blow, stroke, wound
 membrum, i n. member, limb, body*
 Minerva, ae f. goddess of wisdom, the
 arts and handicrafts
 nēquīquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
 nexō, āre bind, twine, weave, coil†
 nōdus, i m. knot, fold, coil
 ob on account of, for (the sake of) (acc.)
 obliquus, a, um aslant, across†

opus, eris n. work, labor, art, product*
 ōstium, (i) i n. mouth, entrance, harbor
 Pholoē, ēs f. a Cretan slave†
 plēnus, a, um full, filled, swelling
 plicō, āre, uī (āvi), itus (ātus) fold, coil†
 prōmittō, ere, misī, missus promise*
 quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
 redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead back, bring
 back
 rēmigium, (i) i n. oarage, rowing
 retentō (1) hold back, retard, detain†
 rota, ae f. wheel, chariot, car
 saepe often, frequently, repeatedly*
 sēminex, necis half-dead†
 Sergestus, i m. Trojan leader*
 serpēns, entis m. (f.) serpent, snake
 serva, ae f. female slave†
 sibilus, a, um hissing
 tamen however, nevertheless, but*
 tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy
 tortus, ūs m. twisting, writhing†
 trānsēdō, ire, ii (ivī), itus cross, pass (by,
 beyond)
 ūber, eris n. udder, breast, fertility
 undique on (from) all sides*
 viātor, ōris m. traveler, wayfarer†
 vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow*

273. Quālis: correlative with tāli in l. 280. *viae* aggere: the Roman roads were carried across valleys on high embankments or on arches of masonry.

274-278. *rota*: of a wagon or chariot. *gravis ictū* = gravi ictū. *ictū, parte, oculis*: ablatives of respect; App. 325.

276. *fugiēns*: the present of attempted action (conative present); App. 351, l. c.

284. *datur*: with the final syllable lengthened before the pause and under the metrical accent; App. 394, α. *Minervae*: such as spinning, weaving, and other household accomplishments.

285. *genus*: acc. of respect; App. 311. *sub ūbere*: at her breast.

286-362. By a trick of Nisus, Euryalus wins the foot race.

cingēbant *silvae, mediāque in valle theātri*
circus erat; quō sē multīs cum milibus hērōs
cōnsessū medium tulit exstrūctōque resēdit. 290
Hīc, quī forte velint rapidō contendere cursū,
invitat pretiīs animōs, et praemia pōnit.
Undique conveniunt Teucrī mixtiq̄ue Sicānī,
Nīsus et Euryalus primī,
Euryalus formā insignis viridīque juventā, 295
Nīsus amōre piō puerī; quōs deinde secūtus
rēgius ēgregiā Priamī dē stirpe Diōrēs;
hunc Salius simul et Patrōn, quōrum alter Acarnān,
alter ab Arcadiō Tegeaeae sanguine gentis:
tum duo Trinacriī juvenēs, Helymus Panopēsque, 300
adsuētī silvīs, comitēs seniōris Acesae;
multī praetereā, quōs fāma obscura recondit.

Acarnān, ānis *m.* Acarnanian, of Acarnania in northwestern Greece†
adsuēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus accustom (to)†
alter, era, erum one (of two), the other (of two)*
Arcadius, a, um Arcadian, of Arcadia in southern Greece†
cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctus surround, gird(le)*
circus, ī *m.* circle, race-course
cōnsessus, ūs *m.* assembly, spectators†
contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, contend
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus assemble
 deinde then, next, after that*
Diōrēs, is *m.* Trojan noble†
duo, ae, o two*
ēgregius, a, um eminent, noble, remarkable
Euryalus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
exstrūctum, ī *n.* mound, raised platform
forma, ae *f.* form, shape, beauty*
Helymus, ī *m.* a Sicilian
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
insignis, e distinguished, marked*
invitō (1) invite, summon, induce, tempt†
juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man, woman)*

juventa, ae *f.* youth, young manhood
 mille; *pl.* milia, *ium n.* thousand*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
Nīsus, ī *m.* a Trojan†
obscurus, a, um dim, obscure, dusky*
Panopēs, ae *m.* a Sicilian†
Patrōn, ōnis *m.* a Greek†
praemium, (i) ī *n.* prize, reward*
praetereā besides, in addition*
pretium, (i) ī *n.* prize, reward, price
rapidus, a, um swift, speedy, whirling*
recondō, ere, didi, ditus establish, hide
rēgius, a, um royal, regal, princely*
residō, ere, sēdī sit (down)
Salius, (i) ī *m.* a Greek†
senex, senis; *comp.* senior old, aged*
Sicānus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily†
stirps, is *f.* stock, lineage, race, stem
Tegeaeus, a, um Tegean, of Tegea, a city of Arcadia†
theātrum, trī *n.* theater, grandstand
Trinacrius, a, um Trinacrian, Sicilian
undique on (from) all sides*
vallis, is *f.* valley, vale, dale
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

288-289. theātri circus: the ancient theater was semicircular in shape. Advantage was usually taken of the head of a valley on a curving hillside as a suitable location for placing the seats. hērōs (Aenēās).

290. cōnsessū: dat. of purpose, for an assembly; or else dat. of direction, to the assembly. (in) exstrūctō: Aeneas prepares to address the assembly, just as a Roman general was accustomed to speak to his soldiers from a raised plat-

form (agger), usually made by heaping up earth and stones.

291-292. invitat pretiīs animōs (eōrum) quī velint. velint: implied indir. disc.; App. 357. Pope parodies this contest in the *Dunciad*, II, 35 ff.

294. Nīsus et Euryalus: the heroes of one of Vergil's most beautiful episodes (IX, 176 ff.) are very effectively introduced here.

296. puerī: Euryalus. secūtus (est).

298. Salius (secūtus est). alter (erat).

- Aenēas quibus in mediis sic deinde locūtus:*
 "Accipite haec animās laetāsque advertite mentēs.
 305 Nēmō ex hōc numerō mihi nōn dōnātus abibit.
 Gnōsia bīna dabō lēvātō lūcida ferrō
 spīcula caelātamque argentō ferre bipennem;
 omnibus hīc erit ūnus honōs. Trēs praeemia primū
 accipient flāvāque caput nectentur olivā.
 310 Prīmus equum phaleris insignem victor habētō;
 alter Amāzoniam pharetram plēnamque sagittīs
 Thrēiciis, lātō quam circum amplectitur aurō
 balteus et teretī subnectit fibula gemmā;
 tertius Argolicā hāc galeā contentus abitō."
 315 Haec ubi dicta, locum capiunt signōque repente
 corripunt spatia audītō līmenque relinquunt,
 effūsī nimbō similēs: simul ultima signant.
 Prīmus abit longēque ante omnia corpora Nisus

abeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus depart*
 advertō, ere, ī, rsuſ turn (to), heed
 alter, era, erum one (of two), the other
 (of two)*
 Amāzonius, a, um of the Amazons, a race
 of warlike women†
 amplector, ī, plexus embrace, encircle*
 argentum, ī n. silver
 Argolicus, a, um Argive, Greek
 balteus, ī m. belt, baldric†
 bīnī, ae, a two (each), by twos
 bipennis, is f. two-edged ax
 caelō (l) engrave, chase, carve
 contentus, a, um content, satisfied†
 corripō, ere, ui, reptus snatch up, speed
 over*
 deinde then, next, thereafter*
 dōnō (l) present, give, reward, bestow
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour forth,
 stream*
 fibula, ae f. brooch, buckle, clasp
 flāvus, a, um yellow(ish), tawny, blond
 galea, ae f. helmet
 gemma, ae f. gem, jewel
 Gnōs(s)ius, a, um Gnessian, of Gnosus,
 a Cretan city
 insignis, e marked, distinguished, noble*
 lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*

lēvō (l) polish, smooth†
 longē (from) afar, (by) far*
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk*
 lūcidus, a, um shining, bright, clear
 nectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten
 nēmō, inis m. (f.) no one, none†
 nimbus, ī m. storm cloud, rainstorm*
 Nisus, ī m. a Trojan
 numerus, ī m. number, throng, order*
 oliva, ae f. olive†
 phalerae, ārum f. trappings†
 pharetra, ae f. quiver
 plēnus, a, um full, filled, teeming
 praeium, (i) ī n. reward, prize*
 repente suddenly, quickly, unexpectedly
 sagitta, ae f. arrow, shaft, bolt
 signō, (l) mark, observe, note
 signum, ī n. sign, signal, mark, token*
 similis, e like, similar (dat., gen.)*
 spatium, (i) ī n. space, distance, course
 spiculum, ī n. spear, dart, arrow†
 subnectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind
 (fasten) under
 teres, etis smooth, polished, rounded†
 tertius, a, um third*
 Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace
 trēs, tria three*
 ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*

305. mihi: dat. of agent; App. 302.
 306. (cuique) dabō.
 307. ferre: inf. of purpose; App.
 261.
 308. ūnus = idem.
 309. caput: obj. of the middle verb,
 nectentur; App. 309.

312. lātō aurō: abl. of means.
 313. teretī gemmā: abl. of means.
 314. galeā: abl. with contentus; App.
 337. abitō: imper.
 316. līmen: the starting point.
 317. ultima (loca): the goal. signant
 (oculis).

ēmicat *et ventīs et fulminis* ōcior ālis;
 proximus *huic, longō sed* proximus intervallō, 320
 insequitur Salius; spatiō post deinde *relictō*
 tertius Euryalus;
 Euryalumque Helymus *sequitur; quō deinde sub ipsō*
 ecce volat calcemque terit *jam* calce Diōrēs
 incumbēns *umerō, spatia et sī plūra* supersint 325
 trānseat ēlāpsus prior *ambiguūque relinquat.*
Jamque ferē spatiō extrēmō *fessūque sub ipsam*
finem adventābant, lēvī *cum sanguine* Nīsus
 lābitur *infēlix, caesis ut forte* juvencīs
 fūsus humum viridisque *super* madefēcerat herbās. 330
Hīc juvenis *jam victor* ovāns vestigia pressō
 haud tenuit titubāta solō, *sed prōnus in ipsō*
 concidit immundōque fimō *sacrōque* cruōre.
Nōn tamen Euryalī, *nōn ille* oblītus amōrum:

adventō (1) approach, keep coming
 nearer†
 āla, *ae f.* wing*
 ambiguus, *a, um* doubtful, uncertain
 caedō, *ere, cecidī, caesus* cut (down),
 kill
 calx, *calcis f.* heel, foot†
 concidō, *ere, ī* fall (in a heap)
 cruor, *ōris m.* blood, gore
 deinde then, next, thereafter*
 Diōrēs, *is m.* Trojan nobleman
 ecce see! look! behold!*
 ēlābor, *i, lāpsus* slip out, get ahead
 ēmicō, *āre, uī, ātus* flash forth, dart
 Euryalus, *i m.* a Trojan
 extrēmus, *a, um* final, last, extreme*
 ferē almost, about
 fimus (um), *i m. (n.)* filth, manure†
 fulmen, *inis n.* lightning, thunderbolt*
 Helymus, *i m.* a Sicilian
 herba, *ae f.* grass, herb(age), plant*
 humus, *i f.* ground, soil, earth*
 immundus, *a, um* filthy, dirty, foul
 incumbō, *ere, cubui, cubitus* lean on,
 (dat.)
 insequor, *i, secūtus* follow, pursue*

intervallum, *i n.* interval, space between†
 juvencus, *i m.* bullock, bull, ox*
 juvenis, *is m. (f.)* young (man, woman)*
 lēvis, *e* smooth, slippery, polished
 madefaciō, *ere, fēcī, factus* wet, soak†
 Nīsus, *i m.* a Trojan
 obliviscor, *i, litus* forget (*gen.*)
 ōcior, *ius* swifter, faster
 ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
 post behind, after (*acc.*); afterward*
 premō, *ere, pressī, pressus (re)* press*
 prior, *ius* prior, former, first*
 prōnus, *a, um* prone, flat
 proximus, *a, um* next, closest
 Salius, (i) *i m.* a Greek
 solum, *i n.* ground, soil, earth*
 spatium, (i) *i n.* space, distance, course
 supersum, *esse, fui* remain, be left
 tamen however, nevertheless, but*
 terō, *ere, trivi, tritus* rub, graze
 tertius, *a, um* third*
 titubō, (1) totter, stagger, reel†
 trānseō, *ire, iī (ivī), itus* pass by
 vestigium, (i) *i n.* step, foothold, track*
 viridis, *e* green, fresh, vigorous*
 volō (1) fly, speed, hasten*

319. *fulminis ālis*: the ancients often represented the thunderbolt as winged.

320. A spondaic line; App. 395.

323. *quō sub ipsō*: close upon him.

324. *calcem calce = pedem pede*; App. 443.

325-326. *supersint*: the present here instead of the more usual *pluperf.* in conclusions of conditions contrary to fact;

App. 382. *trānseat, relinquat*: conclusions contrary to fact.

328. *finem*: irregularly feminine.

330. *super*: adv. *on the surface*. *fūsus* (*erat sanguis*).

333. *sacrō*: *sacrificial*.

334. *Nōn* (Nīsus oblītus est) Euryalī: *gen.* with a verb of forgetting; App. 288.

- 335 *nam sēsē opposuit Saliō per lūbrica surgēns,*
ille autem spissā jacuit revolūtus harēnā:
ēmicat Euryalus et mūnere victor amīci
prīma tenet, plausūque volat fremitūque secundō.
Post Helymus subit et nunc tertia palma Diōrēs.
- 340 *Hīc tōtum caveae cōsessus ingentis et ōra*
prīma patrum magnīs Salius clāmōribus implet,
ēreptumque dolō reddi sibi poscit honōrem.
Tūtātur favor Euryalum lacrimaeque decōrae,
grātor et pulchrō veniēns in corpore virtūs.
- 345 *Adjuvat et magnā prōclāmat vōce Diōrēs,*
quī subiit palmae frūstrāque ad praemia vēnit
ultima, sī primī Saliō reddentur honōrēs.
Tum pater Aenēās "Vestra" inquit "mūnera vōbīs
certa manent, puerī et palmam movet ordine nēmō;
- 350 *mē liceat cāsūs miserārī insontis amīci."*
Sic fātus tergum Gaetūli immāne leōnis

adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, assist†
amicus, ī *m.* friend, lover, comrade*
autem however, moreover, but*
cavea, ae *f.* hollow, seats (for spectators),
grand stand†
certus, a, um fixed, certain, sure, reliable*
cōsessus, ūs *m.* assembly, spectators
decōrus, a, um beautiful, becoming
Diōrēs, is *m.* Trojan nobleman
dolus, ī *m.* deceit, stratagem, fraud, trick*
ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart
Euryalus, ī *m.* a Trojan
favor, ōris *m.* favor, popularity†
fremitus, ūs *m.* shout(ing), roar
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
Gaetūlus, a, um Gaetulian, of Gaetulia
in Northwest Africa
grātus, a, um welcome, agreeable
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
Helymus, ī *m.* a Sicilian
impleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill, satisfy*
inquam, is, it say*
insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
leō, ōnis *m.* lion
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted, it is
allowed*
lūbricus, a, um slippery, smooth, slimy

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate
(*gen.*)*
nēmō, inis *m.* (f.) no one, none
oppōnō, ere, posui, positus place in the
way of (*dat.*)
ordō, inis *m.* order, row, rank, array*
palma, ae *f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
plausus, ūs *m.* clapping, applause
poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
post behind, after (*acc.*); later*
praemium, (i) ī *n.* reward, prize*
prōclāmō (1) proclaim, announce†
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,
splendid, illustrious, noble*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, (duly)
render, give back*
revolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll over, revolve
Salius, (i) ī *m.* a Greek
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
spissus, a, um thick, dense, crowded
tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
tertius, a, um third*
tūtōr, āri, ātus protect, guard, defend
ultimus, a, um last, final, farthest*
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
virtūs, ūtis *f.* manhood, excellence,
courage*
volō (1) fly, speed, hasten*

335. lūbrica (loca).

336. ille: Salius.

337. Euryalus: with the last syllables
lengthened under the metrical accent and
before the pause; App. 394, a.

340-341. ōra prīma patrum: in the Ro-

man theater the front seats were occupied
by the senators (patrēs) and other distin-
guished persons.

342. reddī = ut reddātur.

345. Adjuvat (Euryalum).

350. liceat: vol.; App. 254.

dat Saliō villis onerōsum atque unguibus aureīs.
Hic Nisus "Sī tanta" inquit "sunt praemia victīs,
et tē lāpsōrum miseret, quae mūnera Nisō
digna dabis, prīmam meruī quī laude corōnam 355
nī mē, quae Salium, fortūna inimica tulisset?"
Et simul hīs dictīs faciem ostentābat et ūdō
turpia membra fimō. Rīsīt pater optimus ollī
et clipeum efferri jussit, Didymāonis artīs,
Neptūnī sacro Danaīs dē poste refixum. 360
Hōc juvenem ēgregium praestantī mūnerē dōnat.
 Post, ubi cōfectī cursūs et dōna perēgit:
 "Nunc, sī cui virtūs animusque in pectore praesēns,
 adsit et ēvinctīs attollat braccia palmīs."
 Sic ait, et geminum pugnae prōpōnit honōrem, 365

ars, artis *f.* art, skill, workmanship*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
bracchium, (i) i n. forearm*
clipeus (um), i m. (n.) shield, buckler*
cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, use up
corōna, ae f. crown, wreath, chaplet
Didymāon, onis m. an unknown artist†
dignus, a, um worthy, fitting, seemly
dōnō (1) present, give, bestow, grant
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth,
 raise*
ēgregius, a, um eminent, noble, remark-
 able
ēvinciō, ire, vīnxi, vinctus bind, tie
faciēs, ēi f. appearance, face, aspect*
fimus (um), i m. (n.) filth, manure
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
inquam, is, it say*
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
 woman)*
laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*
membrum, i n. member, limb, body*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
miseret, ēre, uit, itum it distresses (*gen.*)

Neptūnus, i m. Neptune, god of the sea*
nisi, nī if not, unless, except*
Nisus, i m. a Trojan
onerōsus, a, um heavy, burdensome†
optimus, a, um best, finest
ostentō (1) keep showing, exhibit, display
palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus complete, finish
post behind, after (*acc.*); later*
postis, is m. column, post, door, gate
praemium, (i) i n. reward, prize*
praesēns, entis present, ready, prompt
praestāns, antis excellent, surpassing
prōpōnō, ere, posui, positus set forth,
 display†
pugna, ae f. fight, battle, fray, com-
 bat*
refigō, ere, xī, xus unfasten, take down†
rideō, ēre, sī, sus laugh (at), smile
Salius, (i) i m. a Greek
turpis, e shameful, filthy, disgraceful
ūdus, a, um wet, moist, damp†
unguis, is m. claw, nail, talon
villus, i m. shaggy hair, tuft, nap
virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, excellence, valor*

352. aurejs: two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

354. tē lāpsōrum (virōrum): acc. and gen. with a verb of pitying; App. 289. Nisō = mihi; therefore quī merui instead of quī meruit.

355-356. meruī, tulisset: mixed condition; App. 382, d. nī eadem (inimica) fortūna, quae Salium (tulit), mē tulisset. tulisset: had ruined me.

357. dictis: abl. of accompaniment with simul; App. 321.

359. artis: apposition with clipeum.

360. Danaīs: dat. of agent; App. 302.

Apparently this shield had been taken by Aeneas as spoils from the Greeks, who had removed (refixum) it from a temple of Neptune, where it had formerly been dedicated by some worshipper.

363-484. The aged Entellus defeats the youthful boaster, Dares, in boxing.

363. cui (indef.): dat. of possession. virtūs (est).

364. adsit: vol. (hortatory); App.

254. ēvinctis: i.e., with the caestūs, boxing gloves, mentioned in l. 69.

- victōrī vĕlātum aurō vittisque iuvenum,*
ēnsem atque īnsignem galeam sōlācia victō.
Nec mora; continuō vastīs cum viribus effert
ōra Darēs magnōque virum sē murmure tollit,
 370 *sōlus quī Paridem solitus contendere contrā,*
īdemque ad tumulum quō maximus occubat Hector
victōrem Būtēn immānī corpore, quī sē
Bebryciā veniēns Amycī dē gente ferēbat,
perculit et fulvā moribundum extendit harēnā.
 375 *Tālīs prīma Darēs caput altum in proelia tollit,*
ostenditque umerōs lātōs alternaque jactat
bracchia prōtendēns et verberat ictibus aurās.
Quaeritur huic alius; nec quisquam ex agmine tantō
audet adire virum manibusque inducere caestūs.
 380 *Ergō alacris cūctōsque putāns excēdere palmā*
Aenēae stetit ante pedēs, nec plūra morātus

adeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus approach
 alacer (cris), cris, cre eager, elated†
 alternus, a, um alternate, in (by) turns†
 Amycus, ī m. famous boxer†
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 Bebrycia, ae f. Bebrycia, a country in Asia Minor†
 brachium, (i)ī n. forearm*
 Būtēs, ae m. famous boxer†
 caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet, made of rawhide wrapped around bits of lead and iron
 contendō, ere, ī, ntus struggle, contend
 continuō at once, immediately
 contrā against, opposite (acc.); in reply*
 Darēs, (ēt)is m. Trojan boxer†
 efferō, ferre, extuli, ēlātus bear forth, raise*
 ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, retire
 extendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch out, extend†
 fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
 galea, ae f. helmet
 harēna, ae f. sand, beach*
 Hector, oris m. Trojan leader*

ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust
 indūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw on†
 insignis, e marked, distinguished, noble*
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, swing, strike*
 iuvenus, ī m. bullock, bull, ox*
 lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
 mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance*
 moribundus, a, um dying, ready to die
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
 murmur, is n. murmur, roar, rumble
 occubō, āre lie (dead, buried)
 ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
 palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
 Paris, idis m. Trojan prince, eloped with Helen and thus caused the Trojan war
 percellō, ere, culī, culsus strike down†
 proelium, (i)ī n. battle, fight, contest
 prōtendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch forth†
 putō (1) think, suppose, consider, ponder
 quisquam, quaequam, quidquam any(one, thing)
 sōlācium, (i)ī n. solace, consolation†
 soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
 tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb*
 vĕlō (1) veil, cover, wreath, clothe
 verberō (1) strike, lash, beat, whip
 vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band*

366. vĕlātum aurō: referring to the custom of gilding the horns of sacrificial victims.

369. vir(ōr)um.

370. Paridem: Paris, the idol of the ladies, was a great athlete.

371-374. ad tumulum: funeral games were celebrated at the tombs of great

warriors. īdem (Darēs) perculit Būtēn, quī veniēns (ex) Bebryciā ferēbat sē (esse) dē gente Amycī. victōrem: champion.

378. huic alius: another to match him.

380. alacris: alacer is the more common form of the nom. masc.

tum laevā taurum cornū tenet atque ita fātur:
"Nāte deā, sī nēmō audet sē crēdere pugnae,
quae finis standi? Quō mē decet ūsque tenērī?
Dūcere dōna jubē." Cūctī simul ōre fremēbant 385
Dardanidae reddique virō prōmissa jubēbant.
Hīc gravis Entellum dictis castīgat Acestēs,
proximus ut viridante torō cōnsēderat herbae:
"Entelle, hērōum quondam fortissime frūstrā,
tantane tam patiēns nūllō certāmine tollī 390
dōna sinēs? Ubi nunc nōbīs deus ille (magister
nēquiquam memorātus) Eryx? Ubi fāma per omnem
Trinacriam et spolia illa tuīs pendentia tēctīs?"
Ille sub haec: "Nōn laudis amor nec glōria cessit
pulsa metū; sed enim gelidus tardante senectā 395
sanguis hebet, frigentque effētae in corpore virēs.
Sī mihi quae quondam fuerat quāque improbus iste
exsultat fidēs, sī nunc foret illa iuventās,

audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
castīgō (1) chastise, rebuke, punish
cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, give in*
certāmen, inis n. struggle, contest, strife*
cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down), settle*
cornū, ūs n. horn, tip, end
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*
Dardanidēs, ae m. Trojan, Dardanian
decet, ēre, uit it is fitting, it is proper
effētus, a, um worn out, exhausted†
enim for, truly, indeed*
Entellus, i m. Sicilian boxer†
Eryx, ycis m. famous Sicilian boxer, half-brother of Aeneas†
ex(s)ultō (1) exult, vaunt, boast, rejoice
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum trust (in) (*dat., abl.*)*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
fremō, ere, uī, itus rage, roar, shout*
frigeō, ēre be cold, be stiff, freeze†
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
glōria, ae f. fame, glory, reputation
gravis, e heavy, weighty, venerable*
hebeō, ēre be blunt, be sluggish†
herba, ae f. herb(age), grass, plant*
hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
improbus, a, um shameless, wicked
iste, ta, tud that one (you mention)*

ita thus, so, in this way
iuventās, ātis f. youth, young manhood†*
laeva, ae f. left hand*
laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*
magister, trī m. master, trainer, chief
memorō (1) recount, recall, celebrate*
metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety*
nēmō, inis m. (f.) no one, none
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
patiēns, entis patient, calm, enduring
pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus strike, drive (out)
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang, depend*
prōmissum, i n. promise, agreement
proximus, a, um next, closest, nearest
pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, combat*
quō . . . ūsque = **quōusque** how long, to what extent†
reddō, ere, didi, ditus give (back), render (duly)*
senecta, ae f. old age, eld, senility†
sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit*
spolium, (i) n. spoils, trophy, plunder
tam so, to such an extent, such*
tardō (1) hinder, check, retard, impede†
taurus, i m. bull, bullock, ox*
torus, i m. couch, bank*
Trinacria, ae f. Sicily
ūusque *see* **quō . . . ūusque**†
viridās, antis green, flourishing†

384. **finis**: more commonly **masc.**
Quō . . . ūusque = **quōusque**: an example of what is known as **tnesis**; App. 445.

385. **jubē** (**mē**) **dūcere dōna**.

391-392. **Ubi nōbīs** (**est**) **ille deus Eryx, memorātus nēquiquam** (**tuus**) **ma-**

gister? Ubi (**est**) **fāma? nōbīs**: ethical **dat.**; App. 300.

393. **spolia**: won in boxing contests.

397. **Sī mihi** (**foret illa iuventās, quae quondam fuerat. quā: abl. of cause.** **improbus iste**: *that braggart* = Dares.

- 400 *haud equidem pretiō inductus pulchrōque juvencō
vēnissem, nec dōna moror.*" *Sic* deinde locūtus
in medium geminōs immānī pondere caestūs
prōjēcit, *quibus ācer Eryx in proelia suētus
ferre manum dūrōque* intendere braccia tergō.
Obstipūere *animī: tantōrum ingentia* septem
405 *terga boum plumbō insūtō ferrōque* rigēbant.
Ante omnīs stupet *ipse Darēs longēque* recūsāt,
magnanimusque Anchisiadēs et pondus et ipsa
hūc illūc vinclōrum immēnsa volūmina versat.
Tum senior tālis referēbat pectore vōcēs:
410 "*Quid, sī quis caestūs ipsius et Herculis arma
vidisset trīstemque hōc ipsō in litore pugnam?*
*Haec germānus Eryx quondam tuus arma gerēbat
(sanguine cernis adhūc sparsōque infecta cerebrō),
hīs magnum Alcīden contrā stetit, hīs ego suētus,*

ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
adhūc to this point, thus far, still, yet
Alcidēs, *ae m.* descendant of Alceus,
Hercules†
Anchisiadēs, *ae m.* descendant of An-
chises, Aeneas†
bōs, *bovis m. (f.)* bull, ox, cow
bracchium, (*iī n.* forearm*
caestus, *ūs m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
cerebrum, *i n.* brain†
contrā against, opposite (*acc.*)*
Darēs, (*ēt*) *is m.* Trojan boxer
deinde then, next, thereupon*
dūrus, *a, um* hard(y), harsh, stern*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
Eryx, *ycis m.* Sicilian boxer, half-brother
of Aeneas
germānus, *i m.* brother*
gerō, *ere, gessi, gestus* carry (on), wear*
Herculēs, *is m.* god of strength, son of
Jupiter and Alcmena, noted for his
twelve labors
illūc thither, in that direction
immēnsus, *a, um* boundless, vast
indūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* lead on, draw on
inficiō, *ere, feci, fectus* taint, stain†
insuō, *ere, ui, ūtus* sew in†
intendō, *ere, i, ntus* stretch (out)

juvencus, *i m.* bullock, bull, ox*
longē (from) afar*
loquor, *i, locūtus* speak, say, talk*
magnanimus, *a, um* great-souled
medium, (*iī n.* middle, midst, center
moror, *āri, ātus* delay, care for, hinder*
obstipēscō, *ere, pui* be amazed*
plumbum, *i n.* lead†
pondus, *eris n.* weight, burden, mass
pretium, (*iī n.* prize, reward, price
proelium, (*iī n.* battle, fight, contest
prōjiciō, *ere, jēci, jectus* throw forward
pugna, *ae f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
pulcher, *chra, chrum* beautiful, hand-
some, splendid, illustrious*
recūsō (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be
reluctant
rigeō, *ēre, ui* be stiff, be rigid
senior, *ōris m.* old (aged) man, sire
septem seven
spargō, *ere, rsi, rsus* scatter, sprinkle*
stupeō, *ēre, ui* be amazed
suēscō, *ere, suēvi, suētus* be(come) ac-
customed
tergum, *i n.* back, hide; boxing glove*
versō (1) roll, revolve, keep turning
vinc(u)lum, *i n.* bond, fastening*
volūmen, *inis n.* coil, fold, roll

402. suētus (erat).

409. senior: Entellus.

410. ipsius Hercules: of Hercules himself. The et connects caestūs and arma.

411. tristem pugnam: because Eryx was killed in it.

412. germānus tuus: he is speaking to Aeneas.

413. sanguine, cerebrō: of men he had killed in his day.

414. Alcīden: the form Herculēn (-v-) could not be used in dactylic hexameter. suētus (eram pugnāre, to fight).

dum melior vīrīs sanguis dabat, aemula necdum 415
temporibus geminīs cānēbat sparsa senectūs.
Sed sī nostra Darēs haec Trōius arma recūsāt
idque piō sedet Aenēae, probat auctor Aestēs,
aequēmus pugnās. Erycis tibi terga remittō
(solve metūs), et tū Trojānōs exue caestūs." 420
Haec fātus duplicem ex umerīs rejēcit amictum
et magnōs membrōrum artūs, magna ossa lacertōsque
exuit atque ingēns mediā cōsistit harēnā.
Tum satus Anchīsā caestūs pater extulit aequōs
et paribus palmās ambōrum innexuit armīs. 425
Cōstitit in digitōs extemplō arrēctus uterque
bracchiaque ad superās interritus extulit aurās.
Abdūxere retrō longē capita ardua ab ictū
immiscentque manūs manibus pugnamque lacessunt,
ille pedum melior mōtū frētusque iuventā, 430

abdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus withdraw
aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, even*
aequus, a, um equal, even, just, fair
ambō, ae, ō both
amictus, ūs m. cloak, wrap, mantle
arduus, a, um lofty, upraised, steep*
arrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus raise, lift
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, member*
auctor, ōris m. author, backer, founder
bracchium, (i) i n. forearm*
caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet
cāneō, ēre, uī be white (gray, hoary)†
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
Darēs, (ēt)is m. Trojan boxer
digitus, i m. finger, toe†
duplex, icis double, twofold
efferrō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth,
 raise*
Eryx, ycis m. Sicilian boxer, half-brother
 of Aeneas
extemplō suddenly, immediately, forth-
 with
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus doff, bare, remove
frētus, a, um depending on (*abl.*)
harēna, ae f. sand, beach*
ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust
immisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus bind, fasten
interritus, a, um undaunted, fearless†

iuventa, ae f. youth, young manhood
lacertus, i m. upper arm
lacessō, ere, ivī (ii), itus provoke†
longē (from) afar, far (away)*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
membrum, i n. member, limb, body*
metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety*
mōtus, ūs m. movement, motion, agility
necdum not yet
os, ossis n. bone*
palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pār, paris equal, like, similar*
probō (1) test, try, prove, approve
pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, combat*
recūsō (1) decline, refuse, recoil, be re-
 luctant
rejiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw back†
remittō, ere, misī, missus let go, give up
retrō back(ward), again
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle; suit*
senectūs, ūtis f. old age, eld, senility†
serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), dismiss*
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
tempus, oris n. temple, brow
tergum, i n. back, hide; boxing glove*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),
 both*

415. aemula: *jealous* of my youthful strength.

418. Aenēae: dat. of reference.

419. tibi: dat. of reference. *terga* = caestūs.

421. rejēcit: pronounce *rejjēcit* here, making the first syllable long by position.

422. lacertōsque: hypermetric; App. 402.

424. Anchīsā: *abl. of source*; App. 323.

426. in digitōs (pedum), *on their toes.*

429. They begin by sparring.

430-431. ille, hic: *the former (Dares), the latter (Entellus).*

- hic membrīs et mōle valēns; sed tarda trementī
genua labant, vastōs quatit aeger anhelitus artūs.
Multa virī nēquiquam inter sē vulnera jactant,
multa cavō laterī ingeminant et pectore vastōs
435 dant sonitūs, erratque auris et tempora circum
crēbra manus, dūrō crepitant sub vulnere mālae.
Stat gravis Entellus nīsūque immōtus eōdem
corpore tēla modo atque oculīs vigilantibus exit.
Ille, velut celsam oppugnat quī mōlibus urbem
440 aut montāna sedet circum castella sub armīs,
nunc hōs, nunc illōs aditūs, omnemque pererrat
arte locum et variīs adsultibus inritus urget.
Ostendit dextram insurgēns Entellus et altē
extulit: ille ictum venientem ā vertice vēlōx
445 praevidit celerique ēlāpsus corpore cessit;
Entellus virīs in ventum effūdīt et ultrō*

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, access
adsultus, ūs *m.* assault, attack†
aeger, gra, grum sick, painful, weary*
altē (on) high, loftily
anhēlitus, ūs *m.* panting, gasping
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
artus, ūs *m.* joint, limb, member*
auris, is *f.* ear*
castellum, i *n.* fort, castle, fastness†
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, withdraw*
celer, eris, ere quick, swift, speedy, fast*
celsus, a, um high, lofty, towering*
crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated*
crepitō (1) rattle, crash, rustle
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus bring forth, lift*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ēlābor, i, lāpsus slip (out, aside)
Entellus, i *m.* Sicilian boxer
exeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus go out, escape
genū, ūs *n.* knee
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
ictus, ūs *m.* stroke, blow, thrust
immōtus, a, um unmoved, immovable
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, reiterate
inritus, a, um useless, ineffectual
insurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise (on)

jactō (1) toss; hurl, buffet, fling*
labō (1) totter, stagger, waver
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
māla, ae *f.* jaw
membrum, i *n.* member, limb, body*
modo only, (just) now
mōlēs, is *f.* mass, bulk; war engine*
montānus, a, um mountain(ous)
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nisus, ūs *m.* effort, strain, po(i)se
oppugnō (1) attack, storm, assault†*
ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, display*
pererrō (1) wander over, survey, traverse
praevideō, ēre, vidī, visus foresee†
quatiō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle; encamp*
sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, noise, roar
tardus, a, um slow, late, lazy, retarded
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quaver*
ultrō further, voluntarily*
urgeō, ēre, ursī press (hard), push, urge
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able
varius, a, um varying, different, diverse*
vēlōx, ōcis swift, quick, fleet, fast
velut(i) as, just as*
vertex, icis *m.* summit, head, top, peak*
vigilāns, antis watchful, watching
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

431. (ei) trementī: dat. of reference.

432. genua: pronounce as two syllables here, genva; App. 401.

434. multa (vulnera).

439. An attempt to capture a city by assault. Ille: Dares.

440. Siege operations.

444. ā vertice: from above.



THE VENUS OF MELOS

Louvre



Alinari, Rome

Vatican Museum

APOLLO OF THE BELVEDERE

On his back, a quiver full of arrows. His right hand draws back the string,
and with his left he holds his bow.

*ipse gravis graviterque ad terram pondere vastō
concidit, ut quondam cava concidit aut Erymanthō
aut Idā in magnā rādicibus ēruta pinus.*

Cōnsurgunt studiis Teucrī et Trinacria pūbēs; 450

*it clāmor caelō prīmusque accurrit Acestēs
aequaeumque ab humō miserāns attollit amicum.*

*At nōn tardātus cāsū neque territus hērōs
ācrior ad pugnam redit ac vim suscitāt ira;*

tum pudor incendit vīrīs et cōnsēcia virtūs, 455

*praecipitemque Darēn ardēns agit aequore tōtō
nunc dextrā ingemināns ictūs, nunc ille sinistrā.*

*Nec mora nec requiēs: quam multā grandine nimbī
culminibus crepitant, sic dēnsīs ictibus hērōs
crēber utrāque manū pulsāt versatque Darēta.* 460

*Tum pater Aenēās prōcēdere longius irās
et saevire animīs Entellum haud passus acerbīs,*

accurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run up†
ācer, cris, cre sharp, spirited, fierce*
acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad
aequaevus, a, um equal-aged, of the
same age
amicus, i m. friend, lover, comrade*
attollō, ere lift, rear, raise*
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
concidō, ere, i fall (in a heap)
cōnscius, a, um conscious, aware
cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise
crēber, bra, brum frequent, incessant*
crepitō (1) rattlc, crash, rustle
culmen, inis n. peak, summit, roof, top*
Darēs, (ēt)is, acc. ēn (ēta), m. Trojan
boxer
dēnsus, a, um thick, frequent, constant*
Entellus, i m. Sicilian boxer
ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, ruin
Erymanthus, i m. Greek mountain†
grandō, inis f. hail(stone, storm)
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
graviter heavily, grievously, seriously
hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
humus, i f. ground, soil, earth*
ictus, ūs m. stroke, blow, thrust
Idā, ae f. mountain near Troy
incendō, ere, i, ēnsus inflame, burn*
ingeminō (1) (re)double, repeat, reiter-
ate

longē far, (from) afar*
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*
mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nimbus, i m. storm cloud, rainstorm*
patior, i, passus endure, suffer, allow*
pinus, ūs (i) f. pine tree
pondus, eris n. weight, burden, mass
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance
pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men*
pudor, ōris m. (sense of) shame, honor
pugna, ae f. battle, fight, contest, com-
bat*
pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
quam how, than, as*
rādix, icis f. root
redeō, ire, iī (iui), itus return
requiēs, ētis (ēi) f. rest, respite, re-
pose
saeviō, ire, iui (iui), itus rage, storm
sinister, tra, trum left (hand)
studium, (i) i n. desire, zeal, eagerness
suscitō (1) (a)rouse, stir up
tardō (1) check, hinder, retard
terreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
Trinacrius, a, um Sicilian
uterge, utraque, utrumque each (of two),
both*
versō (1) keep turning, spin, revolve
virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, excellence, valor*

448-449. cava pinus. (in) Eryman-
thō. rādicibus: abl. of separation.

451. caelō = ad caelum: dat. of di-
rection; App. 306.

456. aequore: over the plain; abl. of

route; App. 338. Darēn: acc., a Greek
form; App. 66.

458. quam multā grandine: as thick
as the hail.

460. Darēta: acc., a Greek form; App. 68.

- sed finem imposuit pugnae fessumque Darēta
 ēripuit mulcēns dictīs ac tālia fātur:
 465 "Infelix, quae tanta animum dēmentia cēpit?
 Nōn virīs aliās conversaue nūmina sentīs?
 Cēde deō." Dixitque et proelia vōce dirēmit.
 Ast illum fidī aequālēs genua aegra trahentem
 jactantemque utrōque caput crassumque cruōrem
 470 ōre ējectantem mixtōsque in sanguine dentēs
 dūcunt ad nāvīs; galeamque ēnsemque vocātī
 accipiunt, palmam Entellō taurumque relinquunt.
 Hic victor superāns animīs taurōque superbus
 "Nāte deā, vōsque haec" inquit "cognōscite, Teucrī,
 475 et mihi quae fuerint juvenālī in corpore virēs
 et quā servētis revocātum ā morte Darēta."
 Dixit, et adversī contrā stetit ōra juvenē
 quī dōnum astābat pugnae, dūrōsque reductā
 librāvit dextrā media inter cornua caestūs
 480 arduus, effrāctōque inlīsīt in ossa cerebrō:
 sternitur exanimisque tremēns prōcumbit humī bōs.

adversus, *a, um* opposite, facing*
 aeger, *gra, grum* sick, painful, weary*
 aequālis, *is m. (f.)* comrade, mate
 arduus, *a, um* high, upraised, steep*
 a(d)stō, *āre, stitī* stand (near, by)*
 bōs, *bovis m. (f.)* bull, ox, cow
 caestus, *ūs m.* boxing glove, gauntlet
 cēdō, *ere, cessī, cessus* yield, retire*
 cerebrum, *i n.* brain
 cognōscō, *ere, nōvī, nitus* learn, recog-
 nize; *perf.* know
 contrā against, opposite (*acc.*)*
 convertō, *ere, ī, rsus* turn, change
 cornū, *ūs n.* horn, tip, end
 crassus, *a, um* thick, clotted, coarse†
 cruor, *ōris m.* blood, gore
 Darēs, (*ēt*)is, *acc. ēn (ēta), m.* Trojan
 boxer
 dēmentia, *ae f.* madness, folly, frenzy†
 dēns, *dentis m.* tooth
 dirimō, *ere, ēmi, ēmptus* separate, end†
 dūrus, *a, um* hard(y), harsh, stern*
 effringō, *ere, frēgi, frāctus* shatter†
 ējectō (1) cast out, vomit, eject†
 ēnsis, *is m.* sword, knife*
 Entellus, *i m.* Sicilian boxer
 exanimis, *e* breathless, lifeless
 fidus, *a, um* faithful, safe, trusty*

galea, *ae f.* helmet
 genū, *ūs n.* knee
 humus, *i f.* ground, soil, earth*
 impōnō, *ere, posuī, positus* place (on)
 (*dat.*)*
 inlīdō, *ere, sī, sus* strike in, dash (in, on)
 inquam, *is, it* say*
 jactō (1) toss, hurl, buffet, fling*
 juvenālis, *e* youthful, young
 juvenus, *i m.* bullock, bull, ox*
 librō (1) poise, balance, brandish†
 misceō, *ēre, ui, mixtus* mix, mingle*
 mulceō, *ēre, lsī, lsus* soothe, calm, allay
 os, *ossis n.* bone*
 palma, *ae f.* palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
 prōcumbō, *ere, cubuī, cubitus* sink for-
 ward, fall; recline
 proelium, (*i*) *n.* battle, fight, contest
 pugna, *ae f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*
 reducō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* draw back
 revocō (1) recall, call back, restore
 sentiō, *ire, sēnsī, sēnsus* feel, perceive
 sternō, *ere, strāvī, strātus* lay (low), fell*
 superbus, *a, um* proud, haughty*
 superō (1) surpass, win, triumph*
 taurus, *i m.* bull, ox, bullock*
 tremō, *ere, uī* tremble, quiver, shake*
 utrōque to each side, from side to side†

466. *conversa nūmina*: the gods have deserted you and are on the side of Entellus, to whom they have given new strength (*aliās virēs*).

473. *taurō*: abl. of cause.

481. The monosyllabic ending suggests the thud of the falling animal.

Ille super tālis effundit pectore vōcēs:

"Hanc tibi, Eryx, meliōrem animam prō morte Darētis persolvō; hīc victor caestūs artemque repōnō."

Prōtinus *Aenēās* celerī certāre sagittā 485

*invitat quī forte velint et praemia dīcit,
īngentīque manū mālum dē nāve Serestī
ērigit et volucrem trājectō in fūne columbam,
quō tendant ferrum, mālō suspendit ab altō.*

Convēnere virī dējectamque aerea sortem 490
accēpit galea; et prīmus clāmōre secundō

*Hyrtacidae ante omnīs exit locus Hippocoōntis;
quem modo nāvālī Mnēstheus certāmine victor
cōsequitur, viridī Mnēstheus ēvīnetus olīvā.*

Tertius Eurytiōn, tuus, Ō clārissime, frāter, 495

aereus, a, um bronze, bronze-clad
ars, artis f. art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
caestus, ūs m. boxing glove, gauntlet
celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle*
certō (1) struggle, compete, contest, vie
clārus, a, um clear, bright, illustrious*
columba, ae f. dove, pigeon
cōsequor, ī, secūtus follow, overtake
conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus assemble
Darēs, (ēt)is, acc. ēn (ēta), m. Trojan boxer
dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast (down)
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
ērigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus erect, raise
Eryx, ycis m. Sicilian boxer, half-brother
of Aeneas
Eurytiōn, ōnis m. Lycian archer, ally of
the Trojans†
ēvinciō, ire, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, wreath
exeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus go forth, escape
frāter, tris m. brother*
fūnis, is m. rope, cord, cable
galea, ae f. helmet
Hippocoōn, ontis m. Trojan archer†
Hyrtacidēs, ae m. son of Hyrtacus, a
Trojan†

invitō (1) invite, challenge, summon, induce
mālus, ī m. mast, staff, pole†
melior, ius better, preferable, superior*
Mnēstheus, ei (eos) m. Trojan leader*
modo only, (just) now
nāvālis, e naval, of the ships
oliva, ae f. olive
persolvō, ere, ī, solūtus pay (fully),
render
praemium, (i)ī n. reward, prize, premium*
prō before, in behalf of, for (abl.)*
prōtinus immediately, continuously
repōnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down, re-
sign*
sagitta, ae f. arrow, bolt, shaft
secundus, a, um second, favorable*
Serestus, ī m. Trojan leader
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion; ora-
cle*
suspendō, ere, ī, ēnsus suspend*
tertius, a, um third*
trājiciō, ere, jēci, jectus pass (through,
across, over, around)
viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet, swift*

483. **meliōrem**: as a more acceptable offering to the god than would be the life of a man.

485-544. Eurytion is first in archery, but the first prize is awarded to Acastes, on account of his age and dignity and because his arrow shot at random into the sky miraculously took fire and left behind a trail of light.

486. **invitat (eōs) quī velint**: implied indir. disc.; App. 357.

488. **trājectō**: thrown over (the mast).

489. **quō tendant ferrum** (= **sagittam**): rel. clause of purpose; App. 388.

490. **sortem**: the lots were placed in a helmet which was then shaken. The order in which the lots fell out of the helmet determined the order in which the contestants were to try their skill.

491-492. **primus exit locus**: Hippocoōn's lot was the first to fall out.

493. **victor**: he had won second place.

- Pandare, *quā quondam jussus cōfundere foedus*
in mediōs tēlum torsisti prīmus Achīvōs.
 Extrēmus galeāque imā subsēdit Acestēs,
 ausus et ipse manū juvenum temptāre labōrem.
 Tum validīs flexōs incurvant viribus arcūs
 prō sē quisque viri et dēprōmunt tēla pharetrīs,
 prīmaque per caelum nervō stridente sagitta
 Hyrtacidae juvenis volucrīs dīverberat aurās,
 et venit adversique infigitur arbore māli.
 Intremuit mālus timuitque exterrita pennīs
 āles, et ingentī sonuērunt omnia plausū.
 Post ācer Mnēstheus adductō cōstitit arcū
 alta petēns, pariterque oculōs tēlumque tetendit.
 Ast ipsam miserandus avem contingere ferrō
 nōn valuit; nōdōs et vincula līnea rūpit

ācer, *cris*, *cre* sharp, spirited, fierce*
 Achivus, *a*, *um* Achaean, Greek
 addūcō, *ere*, *dūxi*, *ductus* draw (to)
 adversus, *a*, *um* opposite, facing*
 āles, *itis m. (f.)* bird, fowl
 altum, *i n.* the deep (sea); the height,
 heaven
 arbōs (or), *oris f.* tree, wood(s)*
 arcus, *ūs m.* bow, arch, arc*
 audeō, *ēre*, *ausus sum* dare, venture*
 avis, *is f.* bird, fowl
 cōfundō, *ere*, *fūdī*, *fusus* confuse,
 shatter
 cōstō, *āre*, *stīti*, *status* stand (fast)
 contingō, *ere*, *tīgī*, *tactus* touch, reach*
 dēprōmō, *ere*, *mpsī*, *mptus* draw forth†
 dīverberō (1) strike apart, divide, cleave,
 cut†
 exterreō, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* terrify, frighten
 extrēmus, *a*, *um* last, final, extreme*
 flectō, *ere*, *flexī*, *flexus* curve, bend
 foedus, *eris n.* treaty, agreement, truce
 galea, *ae f.* helmet
 Hyrtacidēs, *ae m.* son of Hyrtacus, *a*
 Trojan archer
 incurvō (1) bend, arch, curve†
 infīgō, *ere*, *xī*, *xus* fasten in, impale
 intremō, *ere*, *uī* tremble, quiver, shake†
 juvenis, *is m. (f.)* youth, young (man,
 woman)*
 lineus, *a*, *um* of linen, flaxen†
 mālus, *i m.* mast, staff, pole

miseror, *ārī*, *ātus* pity, commiserate*
 Mnēstheus, *eī (eos) m.* Trojan leader*
 nervus, *i m.* tendon, bowstring†
 nōdus, *i m.* knot, fold, coil
 Pandarus, *i m.* Lycian archer, ally of the
 Trojans. While a truce was being ar-
 ranged between the Greeks and Trojans
 he was instigated by Minerva to wound
 Menelaüs, thus breaking the truce†
 pariter equally, side by side*
 penna, *ae f.* wing, feather
 pharetra, *ae f.* quiver
 plausus, *ūs m.* clapping, applause
 post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
 prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
 quisque, *quaque*, *quidque* (quodque)
 each (one), every (one)
 rumpō, *ere*, *rūpī*, *ruptus* break, burst
 (forth)*
 sagitta, *ae f.* arrow, bolt, shaft
 sonō, *āre*, *uī*, *itus* (re)sound, roar*
 strid(e)ō, *ēre*, *i* hiss, whirl, buzz, crash
 subsidō, *ere*, *sēdī*, *sessus* subside, re-
 main†
 temptō (1) try, test, attempt; exam-
 ine*
 timeō, *ēre*, *uī* fear, dread, be anxious*
 torqueō, *ēre*, *rsī*, *rtus* twist, whirl, shoot*
 valeō, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus* be strong, be able
 validus, *a*, *um* strong, mighty, stout
 vinc(u)lum, *i n.* fastening, band, cord*
 volucer, *cris*, *cre* winged, swift, fleet

496. jussus (ā Minervā).

498. Acestēs = sors Acestae. Acestes' s
 lot came out last.

499. et ipse: in spite of the fact that
 he was well advanced in years (aevi
 mātūrus, of l. 73).

501. quisque prō sē: each for himself,
 quisque being in partitive apposition with
 viri.

505. timuit pennīs: fluttered its wings
 in terror (feared by flapping its wings).

508. alta petēns: aiming aloft.

<i>quīs innexa pedem mālō pendēbat ab altō;</i> <i>illa Notōs atque alta volāns in nūbila fūgit.</i> <i>Tum rapidus, jamdūdum arcū contenta parātō</i> <i>tēla tenēns, frātre[m] Eurytiōn in vōta vocāvit,</i> <i>jam vacuō laetam caelō speculātus et ālis</i> 515 <i>plaudentem nigrā figit sub nūbe columbam.</i> <i>Dēcidit exanimis vītamque reliquit in astrīs</i> <i>aetheriīs fixamque refert dēlāpsa sagittam.</i> <i>Āmissā sōlus palmā superābat Acestēs,</i> <i>qui tamen aeriās tēlum contorsit in aurās</i> 520 <i>ostentāns artemque pater arcumque sonantem.</i> <i>Hīc oculīs subitum objicitur magnōque futūrum</i> <i>auguriō mōnstrum; docuit post exitus ingēns</i> <i>sēraque terrifici cecinērunt ōmina vātēs.</i> <i>Namque volāns liquidīs in nūbibus arsit harundō</i> 525 <i>signāvitque viam flammīs tenuisque recessit</i>	
--	--

āerius, a, um airy, lofty, towering
aetherius, a, um of the upper air, ethereal
āla, ae f. wing*
āmittō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose*
arcus, ūs m. bow, arch, arc*
ars, artis f. art, skill, stratagem, cunning*
astrum, ī n. star, constellation*
augurium, (i)ī n. omen, portent, augury
canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,
 predict, proclaim*
columba, ae f. dove, pigeon
contendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, aim, strive
contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl,
 shoot
dēcidō, ere, ī fall, drop†
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
Eurytiōn, ōnis m. Lycian archer, brother
 of Pandarus, ally of Troy
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless
exitus, ūs m. outcome, result
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, imprint*
frāter, tris m. brother*
harundō, inis f. reed, arrow, shaft
innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus tie, fasten
jamdūdum long since, for some time
liquidus, a, um liquid, fluid, clear
mālus, ī m. mast, staff, pole
mōnstrum, ī n. portent, monster, sign*

niger, gra, grum black, dusky*
Notus, ī m. (south) wind
nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist*
nūbila, ōrum n. clouds, cloudiness
objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus oppose (to),
 present (to)
ōmen, inis n. omen, portent, token*
ostentō (l) exhibit, show, display, parade
palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
pendeō, ēre, pependī hang*
plaudō, ere, sī, sus clap, flap†
post after, behind (*acc.*); later*
rapidus, a, um swift, quick, whirling*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessus withdraw, dis-
 appear
sagitta, ae f. arrow, bolt, shaft
sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy
signō (l) mark, observe, note, notice
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
speculor, āri, ātus spy (out), watch
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
superō (l) surmount, surpass, remain*
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
tenuis, e thin, slight, fine, delicate
terrificus, a, um terrifying, dire†
vacuus, a, um empty, free, vacant
volō (l) fly, speed, flit, flutter*
vōtum, ī n. vow, prayer, (votive) offer-
 ing*

511. *quīs* = *quibus*: App. 109, c. *pe-*
dem: obj. of the middle part. *innexa*;
 App. 309, a.

512. (in) *Notōs*.

514. *tēla*: poetic plural. *frātre[m]*:
 Pandarus, patron saint of archery.

518. *fixam* (in corpore). *refert* (ad
 terram).

521. *pater*: with the final syllable
 lengthened under the metrical accent
 and before the pause; App. 394, a.

522-523. *mōnstrum subitum futūrum-*
que magnō auguriō.

523. *auguriō*: dat. of purpose; App.
 303. *post*: adv., afterward.

524. *sēra*: the seers chanted forth the

- cōnsūmpta in ventōs: caelō ceu saepe refixa
trānscurrunt crīnemque volandia sīdera dūcunt.
Attonitīs haesēre animīs superōsque precātī
530 Trīnacrīi Teucrīque virī, nec maximus ōmen
abnuīt Aenēās, sed laetum amplexus Acestēn
mūneribus cumulat magnīs ac tālia fātur;
“Sūme, pater: nam tē voluīt rēx magnus Olympī
tālībus auspiciīs exsortem dūcere honōrēs.
535 Ipsius Anchīsae longaevī hoc mūnus habēbis,
crātēra impressum signīs, quem Thrācius ōlim
Anchīsae genitōrī in magnō mūnere Cisseus
ferre suī dederat monimentum et pignus amōris.”
Sīc fātus cingit viridantī tempora laurō
540 et prīmum ante omnīs victōrem appellat Acestēn.
Nec bonus Eurytiōn praelātō invidit honōrī,

abnuō, ere, uī, ūtus nod dissent, deny,
reject
amplector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold*
appellō (1) name, call, address, proclaim†
attonō, āre, uī, itus stupefy, astound
auspiciū, (i) ī n. auspice, omen, sign
bonus, a, um good(ly), kind(ly), noble*
ceu as, just as
cingō, ere, cinxi, cinctus surround, en-
circle*
Cisseus, ei m. king of Thrace and father
of Hecuba, wife of Priam†
cōnsūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus consume
crātēr, ēris, acc. ēra, m. mixing bowl
crinis, is m. hair, (flowing) train, locks*
cumulō (1) heap up, load (down), increase
Eurytiōn, ōnis m. Lycian archer, ally of
Troy
exsors, rtis choice, special, exempt from
lot†
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling to (dat.);
halt, be amazed*
imprimō, ere, pressī, pressus impress,
embrace
invidēō, ēre, vīdī, visus begrudge, envy
(dat.)*

laurus, ī (ūs) f. laurel
longaevus, a, um aged, long-lived
monimentum (monumentum) ī n. re-
minder, memorial
ōlim formerly, once, at some time*
Olympus, ī m. high mountain in Thessaly,
home of the gods, heaven
ōmen, inis n. omen, portent, token*
pignus, oris n. pledge, token, proof
praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus prefer†
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
refigō, ere, xi, xus unfasten. The ancients
thought stars were fixed, a belief per-
petuated in the term *fixed stars*.
saepe often, frequently*
signum, ī n. sign, figure, mark, carv-
ing*
sūmō, ere, mpsī, mptus take, use, select
tempus, oris n. temple, brow
Thrācius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace†
trānscurrō, ere, (cu)currī, cursus run
across†
Trīnacrīus, a, um Sicilian
viridāns, antis green, verdant, flourish-
ing
volō, (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

omens (interpretation) late; i.e., after the event had taken place. It is uncertain to what event the poet here refers.

527. (dē) caelō.

530-531. nec ōmen abnuīt: the Romans immediately accepted omens which they thought were good, by saying, "Ōmen accipiō." They refused to accept those which they considered of evil portent. By this method they hoped to secure the advantages and avoid the disadvantages of the various prodigies sent

as signs by the gods. laetum: apparently Aestes also considers it a good omen.

534. exsortem: a term applied to a part of the booty excepted from the general distribution by lot (sors) and bestowed upon some warrior who had especially distinguished himself.

538. ferre: inf. of purpose; App. 261. suī: obj. gen. with monimentum; App. 284.

539. tempora (Aestae).

541. Nec praelātō invidit honōrī: be-

quamvis solum avem caelo deiecit ab alto.

Proximus ingreditur donis qui vincula rupit,
extremus volucri qui fixit harundine malum.

At pater Aeneas nondum certamine missō
custodem ad sese comitemque impubis Iuli
Epytidē vocat, et fidam sic fatur ad aurem:
"Vade age et Ascaniō, si jam puerile paratum
agmen habet secum cursusque instruxit equorum,
ducit avo turmas et sese ostendat in armis
dic" ait. Ipse omnem longō discēdere circō
infusum populum et campos jubet esse patentis.
Incēdunt pueri pariterque ante ora parentum
frēnatis lūcent in equis, quos omnis euntis
Trinacriae mirata fremit Trojaeque iuventūs.
Omnibus in morem tonsa coma pressa coronā;

Ascanius, (i) m. son of Aeneas*
auris, is f. ear*
avis, is f. bird, fowl
avus, i m. grandfather, ancestor
certamen, inis n. contest, struggle*
circus, i m. circle, race course, circuit
coma, ae f. hair, locks, tresses*
corōna, ae f. wreath, garland, crown
custos, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel*
deiciō, ere, jēci, jectus strike down
discēdō, ere, cessi, cessus withdraw
Epytidēs, ae m. son of Epytus, a Trojan†
extremus, a, um final, last, extreme*
fidus, a, um faithful, safe, trusty*
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, pierce, imprint*
fremō, ere, uī, itus roar, applaud*
frēnō (l) bridle, curb, check, restrain
harundō, inis f. reed, arrow (shaft)
impubēs, is youthful, boyish†
incēdō, ere, cessi, cessus advance, stride
infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour in
ingredior, i, gressus advance, enter
instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus array, ar-
range, equip

Iulus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
juventūs, ūtis f. youth, young men*
lūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, glisten, gleam†
mālus, i m. mast, staff, pole
miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire*
mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, man-
ner*
nōdum not yet
ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, exhibit*
pariter equally, evenly, side by side*
pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
populus, i m. people, nation, race*
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press*
proximus, a, um next, closest
puerilis, e boyish, of boys†
quamvis although, as (much as) you wish
rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break, burst
(forth)*
tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip
Trinacria, ae f. Sicily
turma, ae f. band, troop, company†
vādō, ere go (on), proceed
vinc(u)lum, i n. bond, fastening, cable*
volucer, cris, cre winged, swift; fleet*

grudged not the honor (to Acestes) preferred
(to his own).

543. donis: abl. of respect with
proximus; App. 325.

545-603. Ascanius and the noblest of
the Trojan youth stage equestrian games
and a sham battle in honor of the sainted
Anchises.

547. fidam ad aurem: secretly. Aeneas
plans a surprise for the spectators.

548-551. Ascaniō dic: observe the
shorter form of the imperatives, dic, dūc,
fac, fer; App. 202. (ut) ducat, (ut)

ostendat: indir. commands; App. 390.
avō (Anchisae): dat. of reference, in
honor of his grandfather. Ipse (Aeneas):
see note on I, 42. longō circō: the space
cleared was oblong, not round.

554-555. quos euntis: obj. of mirata.
omnis iuventūs.

556. in morem = de more: according
to custom. Vergil is here representing
that this sport (the Iulus Trojae), which
was an annual affair at Rome in his own
day, was of great and revered antiquity.
See the note on Iliacis ludis, III, 280.
pressa (est).

- cornea bīna *ferunt* praefixa hastilia ferrō,
pars lēvis umerō pharetrās; it pectore summō
flexilis obtortī per collum circulus aurī.
- 560 Trēs equitum numerō turmae ternique vagantur
 ductōrēs; *puerī bis sēnī quemque secūtī*
agmine partitō fulgent paribusque magistrīs.
Ūna aciēs juvenum, dūcit quam parvus ovanter
nōmen avi referēns Priamus, tua clāra, Politē,
- 565 prōgeniēs, auctūra Italōs; *quem Thrācius albīs*
 portat *equus bicolor maculīs, vestigia primī*
alba pedis frontemque ostentāns arduus albam.
 Alter Atys, *genus unde Atiī dūxere* Latīnī,
 parvus Atys *puerōque puer dilēctus Iūlō.*

aciēs, *ēi f.* edge, battle-line, army*
 albus, *a, um* white*
 alter, *era, erum* the other (of two), the
 one (of two)*
 arduus, *a, um* high, lofty, steep*
 Atius, (*i*) *m.* famous Roman family†
 Atys, *yos m.* a Trojan†
 augeō, *ēre, auxī, auctus* increase, mag-
 nify†
 avus, *i m.* grandfather, ancestor
 bicolor, *ōris* dappled, of two colors†
 binī, *ae, a* two (each), by twos
 bis twice*
 circulus, *i m.* circlet, necklace†
 clārus, *a, um* clear, bright, illustrious*
 collum, *i n.* neck*
 corneus, *a, um* of cornel wood, cornel
 diligō, *ere, lēxi, lēctus* love, cherish
 ductor, *ōris m.* leader, guide, chief
 eques, *itis m.* horseman, knight
 flexilis, *e* pliant, flexible†
 frōns, *frontis f.* front, forehead, brow*
 fulg(e)ō, *ēre, lsi* gleam, glitter, shine
 hostile, *is n.* spear(shaft)
 Italus, *a, um* Italian, of Italy
 Iūlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
 juvenis, *is m. (f.)* youth, young (man,
 woman)*
 Latinus, *a, um* Latin, of Latium, Roman

lēvis, *e* smooth, polished, slippery
 macula, *ae f.* spot, stain, splotch
 magister, *tri m.* master, trainer, chief
 numerus, *i m.* number, throng, order*
 obtorqueō, *ēre, rsi, rtus* twist†
 ostentō (*1*) show, display, exhibit, pa-
 rade
 ovō (*1*) exult, rejoice, triumph
 pār, *paris* equal, similar, like, even; pair*
 partior, *iri, itus* divide, part, distribute
 parvus, *a, um* small, little*
 pharetra, *ae f.* quiver
 Politēs, *ae m.* Trojan leader, legendary
 founder of Politorium, an Italian city
 portō (*1*) bear, carry, convey, bring*
 praefigō, *ere, xi, xus* tip, point†
 Priamus, *i m.* a Trojan, grandson of
 Priam, king of Troy†
 prōgeniēs, *ēi f.* progeny, descendant
 quisque, *quaque, quidque (quodque)*
 each (one)
 sēnī, *ae, a* six (each), by sixes
 ternī, *ae, a* three (each), by threes
 Thrācius, *a, um* Thracian, of Thrace
 trēs, *tria* three*
 turma, *ae f.* band, troop, company
 unde whence, from which source*
 vagor, *ari, ātus* wander, roam, stray
 vestigium, (*i*) *n.* foot(print), step, track*

557-558. (*pars*) *ferunt*, *pars* (*ferunt*).
pectore summō: at their throats; abl. of
place; App. 319, 246.

559. *per = circum.*

560. *turmae equitum (sunt) trēs*
numerō: abl. of respect; App. 325.

561. *quemque (ductōrem). bis sēnī:*
thus making thirty-six boys, in addition
to their three leaders.

562. *magistris: the ductōrēs of l. 561.*
agmine partitō (in trīs turmās).

563. *aciēs (est).*

564. *Politē: voc., a Greek form; App.*
66.

565. *auctūra Italōs: by his descendants*
and great achievements. According to
legend, the Italian city Politorium was
founded by Polites.

566-567. *primī pedis: the first (part)*
of the foot, just above the hoof; App. 246.

568. *Alter (ductor est) Atys. Atys,*
Atiī: more fanciful etymologizing.

569. *puerōque puer dilēctus Iūlō: a*
fine touch of the poet in representing

Extrēmus formāque ante omnīs pulcher Iūlus 570
 Sīdoniō est invectus equō, quem candida Dīdō
 esse suū dederat monumentum et pignus amōris.
 Cētera Trinacriūs pūbēs seniōris Acestae
 fertur equīs.
 Excipiunt plausū pavidōs gaudentque tuentēs 575
 Dardanidae, veterumque agnōscunt ōra parentum.
 Postquam omnem laeti cōnsestum oculōsque suōrum
 lūstrāvēre in equīs, signum clāmōre parātīs
 Ēpytidēs longē dedit insonuitque flagellō.
 Ollī discurrēre parēs atque agmina ternī 580
 diductīs solvēre choris, rūrsusque vocātī
 convertēre viās infēstaque tēla tulēre.
 Inde aliōs ineunt cursūs aliōsque recursūs
 adversī spatiīs, alternōsque orbibus orbīs

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
alternus, a, um alternate, alternating
candidus, a, um lustrous, white, fair†
cēterus, a, um other, remaining, rest
chorus, i m. band, train, chorus
cōnsestus, ūs m. assembly, crowd
convertō, ere, ī, rsus turn, change
Dardanidēs, ae m. Trojan, Dardanian
didūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus draw apart
discurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run apart†
Ēpytidēs, ae m. son of Epytus, a Trojan
excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus receive, welcome
extrēmus, a, um last, final, extreme*
flagellum, i n. whip, scourge, lash†
forma, ae f. form, beauty, shape*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
inde thence, thereupon, next*
ineō, ire, ii (ivi), itus enter, undertake
infēstus, a, um hostile, threatening
insonō, āre, uī (re)sound, roar
invehō, ere, vēxī, vectus carry, convey
Iūlus, i m. Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
longē (from) afar, far (away)*

lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*
monimentum (monumentum), i n. re-
 minder, memorial
orbis, is m. circle, orb(it), earth*
pār, paris equal, similar, like, even; pair*
pavidus, a, um fearful, nervous, timid
pignus, oris n. pledge, token, proof
plausus, ūs m. clapping, applause
postquam after (that), when*
pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men*
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-
 some, noble, splendid, illustrious*
recursus, ūs m. a running back, retreat†
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
senior, ōris m. old (aged) man, sire
Sidonius, a, um Sidonian, of Sidon, a
 Phoenician city
signum, i n. sign, signal, token, mark*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), separate*
spatium, (i) i n. space, place, interval
ternī, ae, a three (each), by threes
Trinacrius, a, um Sicilian
tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) watch, gaze (on)*
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

Atys, the ancestor of the Atii, as a bosom friend of Iulus, the ancestor of the Julii. Octavius (Augustus) Caesar was by birth a member of the gens Atia, Julius Caesar of the gens Jūlia. puerō Iulō: dat. of agent; App. 302.

572. esse: inf. of purpose; App. 261. sui monumentum.

575. (eōs puerōs) pavidōs: shy, nervous, since they were unaccustomed to performing in public.

576. agnōscunt (in pueris).

579. flagellō: abl. of means.

580-582. Vergil is apparently describing the intricate movements of the Lūsus Trojae, which he had himself witnessed at Rome. The various figures and evolutions may be compared to those performed by a well-trained chorus of ballet dancers, with much apparent confusion but always preserving the strictest order. discurrēre, solvēre, tulēre = discurrerunt, etc. infēsta tēla: a sham battle, as pugnae simulācra in l. 585.

584. spatiīs: abl. of respect with adversi.

- 585 impediunt pugnaeque cient simulācra sub armīs;
et nunc terga fugā nūdant, nunc spīcula vertunt
infēnsī, factā pariter nunc pāce feruntur.
Ut quondam Crētā fertur Labyrinthus in altā
 parietibus textum caecis iter ancipitemque
 590 mille viīs habuisse dolum, quā signa sequendī
 frangeret indēprēnsus et inremeābilis error:
haud aliō Teucrum nātī vestigia cursū
impediunt texuntque fugās et proelia lūdō,
delphīnum similēs quā per maria ūmida nandō
 595 Carpathium Libycumque secant (lūduntque per undās).
Hunc mōrem cursūs atque haec certāmina prīmus
Ascanius, Longam mūrīs cum cingeret Albam,
rettulit et priscōs docuit celebrāre Latīnōs,
quō puer ipse modō, sēcum quō Trōia pūbēs;

Alba, *ae f.* Alba Longa, a city in Latium, mother of Rome

anceps, cipitis doubtful, perplexing

Ascanius, (i) *m.* son of Aeneas*

caecus, *a, um* blind, dark, hidden*

Carpathius, *a, um* Carpathian, of Carpathus, an island of the Aegean Sea†

celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize

certāmen, *inis n.* contest, struggle*

cieō, ēre, civī, citus stir, (a) rouse*

cingō, ere, cingi, cinctus surround, gird(le)*

Crēta, *ae f.* large island in the eastern Mediterranean

delphīn, *inis m.* dolphin, a fish

docoō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*

dolus, *i m.* deceit, puzzle, trick, fraud*

error, ōris *m.* wandering, maze, error

frangō, ere, frēgi, fractus break (off)*

impediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus hinder, entangle†

indēprēnsus, *a, um* undiscovered, insoluble†

infēnsus, *a, um* hostile, threatening

inremeābilis, *e* irretraceable†

iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*

Labyrinthus, *i m.* the Labyrinth, a famous structure in Crete built by Daedalus for King Minos and full of intricate, winding passages†

Latīnus, *a, um* Latin, of Latium, Roman

Libycus, *a, um* Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*

Longa, *ae* *see* Alba

lūdō, ere, si, sus sport, play, mock

lūdus, *i m.* sport, play, game, contest

mille; *pl.* milia, *ium n.* thousand*

modus, *i m.* manner, measure, limit*

mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*

mūrus, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart*

nō (1) swim, float

nūdō (1) bare, expose, denude, strip

pariēs, etis *m.* (house) wall

pariter equally, evenly, side by side*

pāx, pācis *f.* peace, favor, quiet, rest

priscus, *a, um* ancient, primitive†

proelium, (i) *n.* battle, fight, contest, fray

pūbēs, *is f.* youth, (group of) young men*

pugna, *ae f.* battle, fight, contest, combat*

quā where, whereby; in any (some) way

secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*

signum, *i n.* sign, signal, mark, token*

similis, *e* like, similar (*gen., dat.*)*

simulācrum, *i n.* likeness, appearance, pretence, phantom

spiculum, *i n.* spear, dart, arrow

tergum, *i n.* back, hide, rear*

texō, ere, uī, xtus weave, intertwine

Trōius, *a, um* Trojan, of Troy*

ūmidus, *a, um* moist, watery, wet

vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change*

vestigium, (i) *n.* step, track, trace*

589. parietibus: pronounce parjetibus here; App. 401.

590-591. mille viīs dolum: a maze with a thousand winding ways; abl. of quality. quā frangeret: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

593. lūdō: abl. of manner.

594. delphinum: gen. with adj., similis; App. 287.

595. Carpathium Libycumque (mare).

599. quō modō puer ipse (celebravit), quō (modō) Trōia pūbēs (celebravit).

Albānī docuēre suōs; *hinc maxima porro* 600
accēpit Rōma et patrium servāvit honōrem;
Trojaque nunc puerī, Trojānum dicitur agmen.
Hāc celebrāta tenus sāctō certāmina patrī.

Hinc primum Fortūna fidem mūtata novāvit.
Dum variis tumulō referunt sollemnia lūdis, 605
Īrim dē caelō mīsīt Sātūrnīa Jūnō
Īliacam ad classem ventōsque aspirat euntī,
multa movēns necdum antiquum saturata dolōrem.
Illā viam celerāns per mille colōribus arcum
nullī vīsa citō dēcurrit trāmite virgō. 610

Cōspicit ingentem concursum et litora lūstrat
dēsertōsque videt portūs classemque relictam.
At procul in sōlā sēcētāe Trōades actā
āmissum Anchīsēn flēbant, cūctaeque profundum

acta, ae f. beach, shore†
Albānus, a, um Alban, of Alba Longa
āmittō, ere, mīsī, missus let go, lose*
arcus, ūs m. (rain)bow, arch, arc*
a(d)spirō (1) breathe (blow) upon
celebrō (1) throng, celebrate, solemnize
celerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
certāmen, inis n. contest, struggle, game*
citus, a, um quick, swift
color, ōris m. color, hue, tint
concursum, ūs m. crowd, throng
cōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at
dēcurro, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run down
dēsērō, ere, uī, rtus desert, forsake*
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger*
fidēs, ei f. faith, protection, fidelity*
flēō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, bewail, lament
hāc . . . tenus = hāctenus so far, still, yet†
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
Īris, idis f. goddess of the rainbow, mes-
 senger of Juno
lūdus, ī m. sport, game, play, contest
lūstrō (1) traverse; survey; purify*

mille; pl. milia, ium n. thousand*
mūtō (1) change, transform, shift, alter*
necdum not yet
novō (1) make new, alter
porrō further, in succession†
profundus, a, um deep, profound, vast
Rōma, ae f. Rome
sāctus, a, um holy, sainted, sacred*
Sātūrnīus, a, um of Saturn, ancient
 Italian god of agriculture, father of
 Jupiter, Juno, Neptune, and several
 other gods
saturō (1) sate, assuage, fill, satisfy†
sēcētus, a, um remote, secluded, secret
sollemne, is n. ceremony, rite
tenus see *hāc . . . tenus*†
trāmes, itis m. path†
Trōas, adis (ados) f. Trojan woman†
Troja, ae f. Troy; name of an equestrian
 game†
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb*
varius, a, um varying, different, diverse*
virgō, inis f. (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

602. *puerī (dicuntur = vocantur) Troja = is cursus puerōrum dicitur Troja. dicitur = vocātūr.* Vergil is thus assigning a Trojan origin to these games and equestrian evolutions, which had in fact been instituted by Sulla and revived by Julius and Augustus Caesar. See Introd. 6.

603. *Hāc . . . tenus = hāctenus:* a case of tmesis or separation of a compound word into its original parts; App. 445. *celebrāta (sunt) certāmina patrī (Anchisae).*

604-663. Juno sends Iris from heaven to the Trojan women, who are weary of

their wanderings, and instigates them to set fire to the fleet, in the hope that Aeneas will be forced to give up his undertaking and to settle in Sicily.

604. *novāvit:* changed (from good to bad). See the note on *novandis*, IV, 290.

605. (in) *tumulō.*

607. (ei) *euntī.*

608. *dolōrem:* obj. of the middle part. *saturāta;* App. 309, *a.*

609-610. *mille colōribus:* abl. of quality; App. 330. *Illā virgō = Īris.* per arcum: down a rainbow. *citō trāmite:* abl. of the route.

- 615 pontum aspectābant flentēs. *Heu tot vada fessīs
et tantum superesse maris, vōx omnibus ūna.
Urbem ōrant, taedet pelagī perferre labōrem.
Ergō inter mediās sēsē haud ignāra nocendi
conjicit et faciemque deae vestemque repōnit;*
620 fit Beroē, Tmariī *conjūnx* longaeva Dorycli,
*cui genus et quondam nōmen nātique fuissent,
ac sic Dardanidum mediam sē mātibus infert.
“Ō miseræ, quās nōn manus” inquit “Achāica bellō
trāxerit ad lētum patriae sub moenibus! Ō gēns
infelīx, cui tē exitiō Fortūna reservat?*
625 Septima post Trojae excidium jam vertitur aestās,
*cum freta, cum terrās omnīs, tot inhospita sara
sīderaque ēmēnsae ferimur, dum per mare magnum
Ītaliā sequimur fugientem et volvimur undīs.
Hīc Erycis finēs frāternī atque hospes Acestēs:*
630 *quīs prohibet mūrōs jacere et dare cīvibus urbem?*

Achāicus, a, um Achaeen, Greek
aestās, ātis f. summer (time)
a(d)spectō (1) look at, behold
Beroē, ēs f. a Trojan woman†
cīvis, is m. (f.) citizen, compatriot
conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, fling
Dardanis, idis f. Trojan woman
Doryclus, i m. a Greek, husband of Beroē†
ēmētiōr, iri, mēnsus measure off, trav-
erse†
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
Eryx, ycis m. half-brother of Aeneas,
settled in Sicily
excidium, (i) n. destruction, downfall
exitium, (i) n. destruction, doom
faciēs, ēī f. appearance, face, aspect*
fiō, fieri, factus become, be made
fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus weep, bewail, lament
frāternus, a, um of a brother, fraternal
fretum, i n. strait, sea, waters
hospes, itis m. host, guest, stranger, friend
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
inferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear in(to)
inhospitus, a, um inhospitable, wild
inquam, is, it say*

iaciō, ere, jēci, jactus throw (up), erect
lētum, i n. death, destruction, ruin*
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
mūrus, i m. (city) wall, rampart*
noceō, ēre, ui, itus harm, hurt†
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear, endure
pontus, i m. sea, waves*
post after, behind (acc.); later*
prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus prevent, prohibit
repōnō, ere, posui, positus replace, lay
aside*
reservō (1) keep (back), reserve, save
(up)
septimus, a, um seventh
supersum, esse, fui remain, be left
taedet, ēre, uit, taesum it wearies
Tmarius, a, um Tmarian, of Tmarus, a
Greek mountain†
tot so many, as many*
vadum, i n. shallow, sea
vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, revolve, roll
(round)*
vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

616. superesse: exclamatory inf.;
App. 262. vōx (est) ūna (= eadem).

617. Urbem (deōs) ōrant: such verbs
may take two accusatives, one of the
person asked and the other of the thing
requested; App. 316. taedet (eōs).

618. nocendi: gen. of the gerund with
adj.; App. 287, 266.

619. (Īris) conjicit.

620-621. Beroē cui (magnum) genus
et (magnum) nōmen nātique (multi)
fuissent: rel. clause of characteristic,
with accessory idea of cause; App.
389.

623-624. trāxerit: causal rel. clause;
App. 357. For a similar thought compare
I, 94-96; III, 321-324.

627. freta (omnia).

Ò patria et rapti nēquiquam ex hoste penātēs,
 nullane jam Trojae dicentur moenia? Nūsqum
 Hectoreōs amnis, Xanthum et Simoēnta, vidēbō?
 Quin agite et mēcum infaustās exūrite puppīs. 635
 Nam mihi Cassandrae per somnum vātis imāgō
 ardentis dare vīsa facēs: 'Hic quaerite Trojam;
 hic domus est' inquit 'vōbīs.' Jam tempus agī rēs,
 nec tantis mora prōdigiis. En quattuor ārae
 Neptūnō; deus ipse facēs animūque ministrat." 640
 Haec memorāns prīma infēsum vī corripit ignem
 sublātāque procul dextrā cōnixa coruscat
 et jacit. Arrēctae mentēs stupefactaque corda
 Iliadum. Hic ūna ē multis, quae maxima nātū,
 Pyrgō, tot Priamī nātōrum rēgia nūtrix: 645
 "Nōn Beroē vōbīs, nōn haec Rhoetēia, mātēr,
 est Doryclī conjūnx; dīvinī signa decōris
 ardentisque notāte oculos; quī spīritus illī,
 quis vultus vōcisque sonus vel gressus euntī.

amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
 arrigō, ere, rēxi, rēctus raise, rouse
 Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman
 Cassandra, ae *f.* prophetess, daughter of
 Priam, believed by none
 cōnitor, i, sus (nixus) struggle, strain
 cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
 corripio, ere, ui, reptus snatch (up)*
 coruscō (1) flash, wave, brandish†
 decor, ōris *m.* beauty, grace, charm†
 divinus, a, um divine, heavenly, sacred
 Doryclus, i *m.* a Greek
 ēn see! look! behold!
 exūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn (up), con-
 sume
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
 gressus, ūs *m.* walk, gait, step, tread
 Hectoreus, a, um of Hector, a Trojan
 leader
 hostis, is *m.* (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
 Ilias, adis *f.* Trojan woman, Ilian
 imāgō, inis *f.* form, likeness, ghost*
 infaustus, a, um ill-omened, accursed†
 infēsus, a, um hostile, dangerous
 inquam, is, it say*
 jaciō, ere, jēci, jactus throw (up), erect
 memorō (1) recall, recount, relate*

ministrō (1) tend, serve, furnish, provide
 mora, ae *f.* delay, pause, hindrance*
 nātus, ūs *m.* (only in abl. sing.) birth†
 Neptūnus, i *m.* Neptune, god of the sea*
 nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
 notō (1) observe, mark, note, notice
 nūsqum nowhere, never
 nūtrix, icis *f.* nurse
 patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
 penātēs, ium *m.* household gods*
 prōdigium, (i) *n.* omen, portent, prodigy
 Pyrgō, ūs *f.* nurse of Priam's children†
 quattuor four
 quīn that not, but that, why not, nay
 even*
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (away), rob*
 rēgius, a, um royal, regal, kingly*
 Rhoetēius, a, um Rhoeteian, of Rhoeteūm,
 a promontory near Troy, Trojan†
 signum, i *n.* sign, mark, signal, token*
 Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy
 sonus, i *m.* sound, tone, noise
 spīritus, ūs *m.* spirit, air, life, soul
 stupefaciō, ere, fēci, factus astound†
 tot so many*
 vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*
 Xanthus, i *m.* river near Troy

632. nēquiquam: if we must always wander.

633. dicentur = vocābuntur.

636. Cassandrae: eagerly accepted by the women here as prophesying something they want.

638. tempus (est) rēs agī: rēs being subject of the passive inf. agī.

639. nec tantis (est) mora prōdigiis: nor do such prodigies (dat.) admit delay.

644. quae maxima nātū (erat): who was oldest.

646. vōbīs: ethical dat.; App. 300.

648. quī spīritus (sit) illī: indir. quest. after notāte; App. 349.

- 650 *Ipsa egomet dūdum Beroēn digressa reliquī*
aegram, indignantem tālī quod sōla carēret
mūnere nec meritōs Anchīsae inferret honōrēs."
Haec effāta.
- 655 *At mātres pīmō ancipitēs oculisque malignis*
ambiguae spectāre ratēs miserum inter amōrem
praesentis terrae fātisque vocantia rēgna:
cum dea sē paribus per caelum sustulit ālis
ingentemque fugā secuit sub nūbibus arcum.
- 660 *Tum vērō attonitae mōnstris āctaeque furōre*
conclāmant, rapiuntque focis penetrālibus ignem
(pars spoliāt ārās), frondem ac virgulta facēsque
conjiiciunt. Furi immissis Volcānus habēnis
trānstra per et rēmōs et pictās abiete puppīs.
- 665 *Nuntius Anchīsae ad tumultum cuneōsque theātrī*
incēnsās perfert nāvīs Eumēlus, et ipsī
respiciunt ātram in nimbō volitāre favillam.

abiēs, etis *f.* fir
 aeger, gra, grum sick, weary, wretched*
 āla, ae *f.* wing*
 ambiguus, a, um doubtful, hesitating
 anceps, cipitis doubtful, uncertain
 arcus, ūs *m.* (rain)bow, arch, arc*
 attonitus, a, um amazed, astounded
 Beroē, ēs *f.* a Trojan woman
 careō, ēre, uī lack, have no part in (*abl.*)
 conclāmō (1) shout, call, exclaim
 conjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, fling
 cuneus, ei *m.* wedge, block (of seats)†
 digredior, i, gressus depart, separate
 dūdum just now, lately
 effor, āri, ātus speak, say, declare
 Eumēlus, i *m.* a Trojan†
 favilla, ae *f.* cinder, ashes, embers
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand*
 focus, i *m.* fireplace, altar
 frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, frond*
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
 habēna, ae *f.* rein, curb, check
 immittō, ere, misī, missus let go, loose
 incendiō, ere, i, ēnsus burn, fire*
 indignor, āri, ātus disdain, fret
 inferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear to (*dat.*)

malignus, a, um hostile, spiteful†
 mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
 mōnstrum, i *n.* portent, omen, sign*
 nimbus, i *m.* (storm) cloud, rainstorm*
 nūbēs, is *f.* cloud, fog, mist*
 nuntius, (i) *m.* messenger, message
 pār, paris equal, even, well-balanced*
 penetrālis, e inner(most)
 perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, report
 pingō, ere, pinxi, pictus paint, embroider
 praesēns, entis present, ready
 quod because, the fact that
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), rob*
 ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)
 at, regard*
 secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave, slice*
 spectō (1) look at, see, view, watch†
 spoliō (1) strip, plunder, despoil
 theātrum, i *n.* theater, grandstand
 trānstrum, i *n.* rowing-bench, thwart
 tumulus, i *m.* mound, tomb*
 vērō indeed, truly, but
 virgultum, i *n.* brushwood, bush
 Volcānus (Vulcānus), i *m.* (god of) fire
 volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

651. carēret: subj. giving the reason of some one (Beroē) other than the speaker; App. 358.

655. spectāre: hist. inf.; App. 257.

656. fātis: *abl.* of means. rēgna (Italiae sē) vocantia.

658. arcum: acc. of the thing effected; App. 307.

662. habēnis: the fire rushes like a swift horse when given free rein.

663. (ex) abiete: pronounce here as though spelled abjete; App. 401.

664 679. Ascanius rushes from the games to save the ships and is followed by Aeneas. The Trojan women hide.

664. cuneōs: the wedge-shaped blocks of seats of the theater.

666. in nimbō: in a cloud (of smoke).

*Prīmus et Ascanius, cursūs ut laetus equestrīs
ducēbat, sic ācer equō turbāta petīvit
castra, nec exanimēs possunt retinēre magistrī.
"Quis furor iste novus? Quō nunc, quō tenditis" inquit, 670
"heu, miserae civēs? Nōn hostem inimicaque castra
Argīvum, vestrās spēs ūritis. Ēn, ego vester
Ascanius!" — galeam ante pedēs prōjēcit inānem,
quā lūdō indūtus bellī simulācra ciēbat.
Accelerat simul Aenēās, simul agmina Teucrum. 675
Ast illae diversa metū per litora passim
diffugiunt, silvāsque et sicubi concava fūrtim
saxa petunt; piget incepti lūcisque, suōsque
mūtātae agnōscunt excussa pectore Jūnō est.
Sed nōn idcirco flamma atque incendia vīrīs 680
indomitās posuēre; ūdō sub rōbre vīvit
stuppa vomēns tardum fūmum, lentusque carinās*

accelerō (1) hasten (up), hurry†
ācer, cris, cre keen, spirited, fierce*
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
Argīvus, a, um Argive, Greek
Ascanius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas*
carīna, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
castra, ōrum n. camp, encampment*
cieō, ēre, civi, citus stir, (a)rouse*
civis, is m. (f.) citizen, compatriot
concavus, a, um hollow, cavernous†
diffugiō, ere, fūgī flee apart, disperse
diversus, a, um separated, various*
ēn see! look! behold!
equester, tris, tre equestrian, cavalry†
exanimis, e breathless, lifeless
excutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake off*
fūmus, i m. smoke, vapor, fume
furor, ōris m. madness, fury, frenzy*
fūrtim stealthily, by stealth, furtively
galea, ae f. helmet
hostis, is m. (f.) enemy, foe, stranger*
idcirco for this (reason), therefore†
inānis, e empty, useless, vain*
incendium, (i)ī n. fire, conflagration
inceptum, i n. beginning, undertaking
indomitus, a, um untamed, wild, fierce

induō, ere, i, ūtus don, clothe, put on
inimicus, a, um hostile, unfriendly
inquam, is, it say*
iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
lentus, a, um pliant, slow, tough
lūdus, i m. game, sport, play, contest
magister, trī m. trainer, master, chief
metus, ūs m. fear, fright, anxiety*
mūtō (1) (ex)change, transform, alter*
passim everywhere, all about*
piget, ēre, uit, itum it wearies, it repents
prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl, fling
retineō, ēre, ui, tentus hold back†
rōbur, oris n. oak; strength*
sicubi if anywhere, wherever†
simulācrum, i n. likeness, appearance, pre-
tence, phantom
spēs, spei f. hope, expectation*
stuppa, ae f. tow, calking, hemp†
tardus, a, um slow, lazy, late, retarded
turbō (1) confuse, disorder, disturb*
ūdus, a, um moist, damp, wet
ūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vivō, ere, vixi, victus live, be alive
vomō, ere, ui, itus vomit, belch forth†

668. sic: just as he was dressed for the games.

669. castra (nāvium).

671. civēs (meae): my people; an appeal to their loyalty.

673. ante pedēs (eārum): Ascanius remains on his horse.

678. piget (eās).

679. Jūnō: (the power of) Juno.

680-699. Four of the ships burn; but in answer to the fervent prayer of Aeneas, Jupiter sends a heavy rainstorm which extinguishes the fire and saves the rest.

681-682. vivit stuppa = vivit ignis in stuppā, the stuppa serving as calking.

- 685 *Tum pius Aenēas umeris abscindere vestem*
auxiliōque vocāre deōs et tendere palmās:
"Juppiter omnipotēns, si nōndum exōsus ad ūnum
Trojanōs, sī quid pietās antiqua labōrēs
 690 *respicit hūmānōs, dā flammam ēvādere classī*
nunc, pater, et tenuis Teuocrum rēs ēripi lētō.
Vel tū, quod superest, infestō fulmine mortī,
sī mereor, dēmitte tuāque hīc obrue dextrā."
Vix haec ēdiderat cum effūsīs imbribus ātra
 695 *tempestās sine mōre furit tonitrūque tremēscunt*
ardua terrārū et campī; ruit aethere tōtō
turbidus imber aquā dēnsisque nigerrimus Austris,
implenturque super puppēs, sēmusta madēscunt
rōbora, restinctus dōnec vapor omnis et omnēs
quattuor āmissis servātae ā peste carinae.
 700 *At pater Aenēas cāsū concussus acerbō*

abscindō, ere, scidi, scissus tear from
 acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad
 aethēr, eris m. upper air, sky, ether*
 āmittō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose*
 aqua, ae f. water, flood, waves*
 arduum, i n. height, steep
 Auster, tri m. (south) wind*
 auxilium, (i) i n. help, aid, assistance*
 carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
 concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shatter
 dēmittō, ere, misi, missus send (hurl) down*
 dēnsus, a, um thick, dense, repeated*
 dēscendō, ere, i, ēsus descend, sink
 dōnec until, while, as long as
 ēdō, ere, didi, ditus put forth, utter†
 edō, ere (esse), ēdi, ēsus eat, consume
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out*
 ēvādō, ere, si, sus escape, come out
 exōsus, a, um hating utterly, detesting†
 flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood*
 fulmen, inis n. lightning, thunderbolt*
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
 hūmānus, a, um human, mortal, earthly
 imber, bris m. rain, flood, storm, water
 impleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, satisfy*
 infestus, a, um hostile, destructive
 infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (on, in)
 lētum, i n. death, destruction, ruin*

madēscō, ere, dui drip, become wet†
 mereor, ēri, itus deserve, earn, merit*
 mōs, mōris m. custom, wont, precedent*
 niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
 nōndum not yet
 obruō, ere, ui, utus overwhelm, bury
 omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipotent
 palma, ae f. palm, hand, prize, victor(y)*
 pestis, is f. plague, destruction, ruin
 pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, sense of
 duty, mercy, justice, nobility*
 prōsum, desse, fui be helpful, avail†
 quattuor four
 respiciō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)
 at, regard*
 restinguō, ere, inxi, inctus extinguish
 rōbur, oris n. oak; strength*
 sēmustus, a, um half-burned
 sine without (abl.)*
 supersum, esse, fui remain, be left
 tempestās, ātis f. storm; season*
 tenuis, e slight, slender, fine, thin
 tonitrus, ūs m. thunder
 tremēscō, ere tremble, shake, quiver
 Trojanus, a, um Trojan*
 turbidus, a, um confused, turbid
 vapor, ōris m. heat, fire, vapor†
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*

683. ēst: from edō; observe the long ē.
 685-686. abscindere, vocāre, tendere:
 hist. infinitives; App. 257.

687. exōsus (es). ad ūnum: to a man,
 utterly.

688. (tua) pietās.

691-692. dēmitte (id). quod superest:
 this remnant; obj. of dēmitte.

700-718. Nautes advises Aeneas to
 allow those who are weak and tired out by
 the journey to found a colony in Sicily.

nunc hūc ingentis, nunc illūc pectore cūrās
mūtābat versāns, Siculisne resideret arvīs
oblitus fātōrum, Italāsne capesseret ōrās.
Tum senior Nautēs, ūnum Tritōnia Pallas
quem docuit multāque insignem reddidit arte 705
(haec respōnsa dabat, vel quae portenderet ira
magna deum vel quae fātōrum posceret ordō) —
isque hīs Aenēan sōlātus vōcibus infit:
“Nāte deā, quō fāta trahunt retrahuntque sequāmur;
quidquid erit, superanda omnis fortūna ferendō est. 710
Est tibi Dardanius dīvīnae stirpis Acestēs:
hunc cape cōsiliis sociū et conjunge volentem;
huic trāde āmissis superant quī nāvibus et quōs
pertaesum magnī incepti rērumque tuārum est;
longaevōsque senēs ac fessās aequore matrēs 715
et quidquid tēcum invalidum metuēnsque pericli est
dēlige, et hīs habeant terrīs sine moenia fessī;

amittō, ere, mīsi, missus let go, lose*
ars, artis f. art, skill, wisdom, cunning*

capessō, ere, ivi (ii), itus strive to gain
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, unite
cōsiliū, (i) i n. plan, advice, design
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dēligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus choose, select
dīvīnus, a, um divine, heavenly, sacred
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, show, tell*
illūc thither, in that direction
inceptum, i n. beginning, undertaking
infit speak, say†

insignis, e marked, eminent, notable*
invalidus, a, um weak, feeble, infirm†
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
metuēns, entis fearful, afraid
mūtō (l) (ex)change, alter, transform, shift*

Nautēs, ae m. a Trojan†
obliviscor, i, litus forget (*gen.*)
ordō, inis m. order, rank, succession*
Pallas, adis f. Minerva, goddess of wisdom and the arts

peric(u)lum, i n. danger, peril, risk
pertaedet, ēre, taesum it wearies thoroughly

portendō, ere, i, ntus presage, portend

poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
quisquis, quaequae, quidquid (quodquod)
 whoever, whatever, whichever
reddō, ere, didi, ditus render, return*
residō, ere, sēdi settle, sit (down)
respōsum, i n. reply, answer, response
retrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus drag, draw (back), recall†

senex, is m. old man, sire*
senior, ōris m. old (aged) man, sire
Siculus, a, um Sicilian, of Sicily
sinō, ere, sivi, situs allow, permit*
sōlor, āri, ātus console, comfort, solace
stirpis, is f. stock, lineage, race, stem
superō (l) surmount, overcome, remain*
trādō, ere, didi, ditus deliver, transfer
Tritōnius, a, um Tritonian, title of Pallas
versō (l) keep turning, revolve, ponder

702-703. -ne . . . -ne: *whether . . . or.*
resideret, capesseret: subjunctives in indir. questions; App. 349.

706-707. haec respōnsa dabat vel quae portenderet ira de(ōr)um: *she (Pallas) always gave him answers either (as to) what the anger of the gods portended or; portenderet, posceret:* indir. questions; App. 349.

708. isque hīs vōcibus: *and he thus.*
711. tibi: dat. of possession. **stirpis:** gen. of quality; App. 285.

713. huic: to Acestes. (*eōs*) **quī.**
716. peric(u)li: obj. gen. with *metuēns*.

717. sine: imp. (*in*) **terrīs. (ut)** *habeant:* obj. of *sine*. **fessī:** substantively, *the weary, the wearied*.

urbem appellābunt permissō nōmine Acestam."

- 720 *Tālibus incēnsus dictīs seniōris amīci
tum vērō in cūrās animō didūcitur omnīs.
Et Nox ātra polum bigīs subvecta tenēbat:
vīsa dehinc caelō faciēs dēlāpsa parentis
Anchīsae subitō tālis effundere vōcēs:
"Nāte, mihī vītā quondam, dum vīta manēbat,
725 cāre magis, nāte, Īliacīs exercite fātīs,
imperīō Jovis hūc veniō, quī classibūs ignem
dēpulit, et caelō tandem miserātus ab altō est.
Cōnsiliis pārē quae nunc pulcherrima Nautēs
dat senior; lēctōs juvenēs, fortissima corda,
730 dēfer in Ītaliā. Gēns dūra atque aspera cultū
dēbellanda tibi Latiō est. Ditis tamen ante
infernās accēde domōs et Averna per alta*

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, come
to, go to, reach
Acesta, ae f. Segesta, a city of Sicily†
amicus, i m. friend, comrade, lover*
appellō (1) call, name, proclaim
asper, era, erum harsh, rough, fierce*
Averna, ōrum n. region around Lake
Avernus, Avernian realms, entrance to
Hades, the infernal regions, Hades
bigae, ārum f. yoke, team, chariot
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
cōnsilium, (i) i n. plan, advice, design
cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
cultus, ūs m. culture, mode of life
dēbellō (1) war down, conquer†
dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear away
dehinc thence, then, next
dēlābor, ī, lāpsus glide down, descend
dēpellō, ere, pulī, pulsus drive off†
didūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus separate, dis-
tract
Dis, Ditis m. Pluto, god of the lower
world
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter*

exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass*
faciēs, ēi f. appearance, face, aspect*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
Īliacus, a, um Trojan, Ilian*
incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle, fire*
infernus, a, um of the lower world, in-
fernal
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
woman)*
Latium, (i) i n. district of central Italy*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather*
magis more, rather, preferably*
miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*
Nautēs, ae m. a Trojan
pārēō, ēre, uī, itus obey, yield (dat.)
permittō, ere, misi, missus allow
polus, i m. pole, sky, heaven
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, hand-
some, splendid, good, fine, noble*
senex, is old, aged; senior, ōris very old,
older*
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
subvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey†
tamen however, nevertheless, but*
vērō truly, verily, indeed, but

718. *permissō* (ā tē): ordinarily Aeneas would be expected to name the city for himself. *Acestam*: Vergil thus traces the origin of Segesta to his own day.

719-745. That night the ghost of Anchises appears to Aeneas in a dream, counsels him to follow the advice of Nautēs, and urges him to sail away to Cumae in Italy to consult the Sibyl who will disclose the future to him and conduct him to the lower world, where the

future destiny of the Trojan race will be revealed.

720. *in cūrās omnīs (in) animō dī-
dūcitur*: Aeneas cannot decide what to
do; hence the dream.

722-723. *vīsa (est) effundere*.

724-725. *Nāte cāre*: voc. *vītā*: abl.
with comparative; App. 327. *cāre magis*
= *cārior*.

727. *miserātus est* (tē).

730. *dēfer*: imp.; App. 202. *Gēns*
dūra: the Rutulians.

731. *ante*: adv.

congressūs *pete, nāte, meōs*. *Nōn mē impia namque Tartara habent, tristēs umbrae, sed amoena piōrum concilia Ēlysiumque colō*. *Hūc casta Sibylla nigrārū multō pecudum tē sanguine dūcet*. 735
Tum genus omne tuum et quae dentur moenia discēs.
Jamque valē; torquet mediōs Nox ūmida cursūs et mē saevus equīs Oriēns adflāvit anhēlis.
Dixerat et tenuis fūgit ceu fūmus in aurās. 740
Aenēas "Quō deinde ruis? Quō prōripis?" inquit,
 "Quem fugis? Aut quis tē nostrīs complexibus arcet?"
Haec memorāns cinerem et sōpītōs suscitāt ignīs, Pergameumque larem et cānae penetrālia Vestae farre piō et plēnā supplex venerātur acerrā. 745
Extemplō sociōs primumque accersit Acestēn

accersō, ere, sīvī, situs summon†
acerra, ae f. censer (for incense)†
adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon
amoenus, a, um pleasant, delightful†
anhēlus, a, um panting, heaving†
arceō, ēre, uī hinder, restrain, defend
castus, a, um chaste, holy, pure, sacred
cānus, a, um hoary, gray, venerable
ceu as, just as
cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers*
colō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, inhabit, honor, cherish*
complexus, ūs m. embrace, grasp
concilium, (i)ī n. assembly, gathering
congressus, ūs m. meeting, encounter†
deinde then, next*
discō, ere, didici learn (how); *perf.* know
Ēlysium, (i)ī n. abode of the blest in Hades†
extemplō immediately, at once
far, farris n. spelt, a grain
fūmus, ī m. smoke, vapor, fog
impius, a, um wicked, accursed, disloyal
inquam, is, it say*

lar, laris m. household god†
memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate*
niger, gra, grum black, dark, dusky*
Oriēns, entis m. East, dawn
pecus, udīs f. animal of the flock*
penetrālia, ium n. shrine, chapel
Pergameus, a, um Trojan
plēnus, a, um full, filled, complete
prōripio, ere, uī, reptus tear away†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
Sibylla, ae f. a Sibyl, famous Italian prophetess
sōpitus, a, um slumbering, sleeping
supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
suscitō (1) stir, (a)rouse, rekindle
Tartara, ōrum n. (abode of sinners in) Hades
tenuis, e thin, slight, fine, delicate
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, sway*
ūmidus, a, um moist, damp, dewy
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able, fare well
veneror, āri, ātus worship, honor, venerate
Vesta, ae f. goddess of the hearth

733. *meōs* = *mēcum*.

734. *tristēs umbrae*: apposition with *Tartara*.

735. *colō*. *Hūc*: hiatus; App. 399.

736. *nigrārū*: the appropriate color for victims offered to the gloomy gods of the dark world of the dead. See I. 97, and VI, 243 ff. *multō sanguine*: abl. of means.

737-738. *genus*: your later descendants who shall be distinguished in Italy. Ghosts commonly appear at night and greatly dislike the light of day. Cf. *Hamlet*, I, 5, 58 ff.:

"But, soft! methinks I scent the morning air:

Brief let me be . . . Fare thee well at once:

The glow-worm shows the matin to be near,

And 'gins to pale his uneffectual fire."

739. *saevus*: *cruel*, since he must flee with the coming of dawn.

741. *Quō (tē) prōripis*.

744. *cānae*: a term applied to Vesta as one of the oldest of the divinities.

746-778. Obeying the commands of

- et Jovis imperium et cārī praecepta parentis*
ēdocet et quae nunc animō sententia cōnstet.
Haud mora cōsiliis, nec jussa recūsāt Acestor.
 750 *Trānscribunt urbī mātērēs populumque volentem*
dēpōnunt, animōs nīl magnae laudis egentīs.
Ipsī trānstra novant flammisque ambēsa repōnunt
rōbora nāvigiis, aptant rēmōsque rudentisque,
exigui numerō, sed bellō vivida virtūs.
 755 *Intereā Aenēas urbem dēsignat arātrō*
sortiturque domōs; hoc Īlium et haec loca Trojam
esse jubet. Gaudet rēgnō Trojānus Acestor
indicitque forum et patribus dat jūra vocātis.
Tum vīcina astris Erycinō in vertice sēdēs

ambedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus eat, consume
 aptō (1) fit, equip, furnish, prepare
 arātrum, ī n. plow†
 astrum, ī n. star, constellation*
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
 cōsiliū, (i)ī n. plan, advice, design
 cōnstō, āre, stiti, status stand fast
 dēpōnō, ere, posui, positus lay down,
 leave (behind)
 dēsignō (1) mark off, trace†
 ēdoceo, ēre, uī, ctus teach, explain†
 egeō, ēre, uī lack, require, need, desire,
 want (gen.)
 Erycinus, a, um of Eryx, a Sicilian
 mountain†
 exiguus, a, um slight, small, scanty
 forum, ī n. market-place, assembly†
 gaudeō, ēre, gāvissus rejoice, exult
 Īlium, (i)ī n. Troy, Ilium
 indicō, ere, dixi, dictus proclaim, appoint
 intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
 jūs, jūris n. law, decree, justice, right
 jussum, ī n. command, order, behest

laus, laudis f. praise, glory, merit*
 mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance*
 nāvigiū, (i)ī n. ship, galley†
 nihil, nīl nothing, not (at all)
 novō (1) renew, change, alter
 numerus, ī m. number, multitude*
 populus, ī m. people, nation, race*
 praeceptum, ī n. instruction, advice
 recūsō (1) refuse, decline; recoil
 repōnō, ere, posui, positus replace*
 rōbur, oris n. oak; strength*
 rudēs, entis m. rope, cable, hawser
 sententia, ae f. opinion, purpose, view
 sortior, iri, itus allot, cast lots (for)
 trāscribō, ere, psi, ptus copy off,
 transfer†
 trānstrum, ī n. rowing-bench, thwart
 Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 vertex, icis m. top, head, summit, peak*
 vīcinus, a, um near, neighboring
 virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, excellence,
 courage*
 vīvidus, a, um living, vigorous†

his father's ghost, Aeneas founds a city in Sicily which he names Acesta, in honor of his old friend, Acestes. There he leaves the women, the old men, and the weaklings, while he with the braver and stronger part of his followers sets out for Italy.

748. quae sententia cōnstet: indir. quest.; App. 349.

749. cōsiliis: dat. of possession with mora (est).

750. populum volentem: any of the people who wish to stay.

751. animōs: apposition with mātērēs and populum. laudis: gen. with a verb of lacking; App. 287.

752. Ipsi: the real men.

753. A hypermetric verse; App. 402.

754. numerō: abl. of respect. bellō: dat. of purpose. virtūs (est).

755. arātrō: the ancient Roman method of marking out the bounds of a new city or colony, as seen in I, 425.

756-757. jubet hoc (esse) Īlium et haec loca esse Trojam: the second half of the sentence repeats the first, as Īlium = Troja. hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c.

758. patribus dat jūra vocātis: as Augustus was doing at Rome in Vergil's time.

759. Erycinō in vertice sēdēs: a famous temple to Venus stood on Mt. Eryx.

fundātur Venerī Īdaliac, tumulōque sacerdōs 760
ac lūcus lātē sacer additur Anchisēō.

*Jamque diēs epulāta novem gēns omnis, et āris
factus honōs: placidī strāvērunt aequora ventī
crēber et aspirāns rūsus vocat Auster in altum.
Exoritur prōcurva ingēns per litora flētus; 765
complexi inter sē noctemque diemque morantur.
Ipsae jam mātres, ipsī, quibus aspera quondam
vīsa maris faciēs et nōn tolerābile nūmen,
īre volunt omnemque fugae perferre labōrem.*

*Quōs bonus Aenēās dictīs sōlātur amicīs 770
et cōnsanguineō lacrimāns commendat Acestae.*

*Trīs Erycī vitulōs et Tempestātibus agnam
caedere deinde jubet solvique ex ordine fūnem.
Ipse caput tōnsae foliis ēvinctus olivae
stāns procul in prōrā pateram tenet, extaque salsōs 775
prōjicit in flūctūs ac vīna liquentia fundit.*

addō, ere, didi, ditus add*

agna, ae f. ewe-lamb†

altum, ī n. the deep (sea); heaven

amicus, a, um friendly, kind(ly)*

Anchisēus, a, um of Anchises†

asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*

a(d)spirō (1) breathe (upon), blow

Auster, trī m. (south) wind*

bonus, a, um good, noble, kind*

caedō, ere, cecidi, caesus cut (down),
kill

commendō (1) intrust, commend

complector, ī, plexus embrace, enfold

cōnsanguineus, ī m. kinsman (by blood)†

crēber, bra, brum frequent, repeated*

deinde then, next, thereupon*

epulor, āri, ātus feast, banquet

Eryx, ycis m. half-brother of Aeneas

ēvinciō, ire, vīnxi, vīctus bind, tie

exorior, iri, ortus rise, spring up

exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals

faciēs, ēi f. appearance, face, aspect*

flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament

folium, (i) ī n. leaf, foliage

fundō (1) found, establish, build

fūnis, is m. rope, cable, cord

Īdalius, a, um of Idaliū in Cyprus, a

mountain and city sacred to Venus

lacrimō (1) weep, shed tears, lament

lātē widely, far and wide

liquēns, entis clear, liquid, fluid

lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood*

moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*

novem nine

oliva, ae f. olive

ordō, inis m. order, row, rank, array*

patera, ae f. (libation) bowl

perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus endure, bear

placidus, a, um gentle, peaceful, calm*

prōcurvus, a, um winding, curved†

prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl forth

prōra, ae f. prow*

rūsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*

sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)*

salsus, a, um briny, salty

sōlor, āri, ātus console, comfort, solace

solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), release*

sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, be-
calm, spread, strew*

Tempestās, ātis f. Storm, Tempest*

tolerābilis, e bearable, endurable†

tondē, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear, clip,

trim, cut

trēs, tria three*

tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb*

Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty*

vīnum, ī n. wine*

vitulus, ī m. (bull) calf, bullock†

760-761. Anchises is thus officially
deified. Anchisēō: a spondaic fifth foot;
App. 395.

762-763. diēs novem: the conventional
number of days for funeral ceremonies.
epulāta (erat). factus (erat in) āris.

766. inter sē: each other.

773. jubet (Teucrōs).

774. caput: obj. of the middle part.,
ēvinctus; App. 309, a.

775. procul (ab aliis). pateram tenet:
to pour a libation.

Prōsequitur surgēns ā puppī ventus euntīs;
certātīm sociī feriunt mare et aequora verrunt.

- At Venus intereā Neptūnum exercita cūrīs
780 adloquitur tālisque effundit pectore questūs:
"Jūnōnis gravis īra neque exsaturābile pectus
cōgunt mē, Neptūne, precēs dēscendere in omnīs;
quam nec longa diēs pietās nec mītigat ūlla,
nec Jovis imperiō fātisque īnfracta quiescit.
785 Nōn mediā dē gente Phrygum exēdisse nefandīs
urbem odiīs satis est nec poenam trāxe per omnem
reliquiās Trojae: cinerēs atque ossa perēemptae
īnsequitur. Causās tantī sciat illa furōris.
Ipse mihī nūper Libycīs tū testis in undīs
790 quam mōlem subitō excierit: maria omnia caelō
miscuit Aeoliīs nēquiquam frēta procellis,
in rēgnīs hoc ausa tuīs.

adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost
Aeolius, a, um of Aeolus, god of winds†
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
causa, ae f. cause, reason, pretext*
certātīm in rivalry, emulously
cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus force (together)*
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend, stoop
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, utter*
excīō, ire, īvī (ii), itus (a)rouse, stir (up)
exedō, ere, ēdī, ēsus devour, destroy†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus drive, harass*
exsaturābilis, e satiable, placable†
feriō, ire strike, smite, cut, kill
frētus, a, um relying on (abl.)
furor, ōris m. madness, fury, frenzy*
gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
īnfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter†
īnsequor, i, secūtus follow, pursue*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
Libycus, a, um Libyan, of Libya, a country of North Africa*
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mītigō (i) soften, appease, pacify†
mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, bulk, burden*

nefandus, a, um unspeakable, unutterable
Neptūnus, i m. Neptune, god of the sea*
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
nūper recently, lately†
odium, (i) i n. hate, hatred, enmity
os, ossis n. bone*
perimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus destroy†
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan
pietās, ātis f. loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, justice, nobility*
prex, precis f. prayer, entreaty, vow*
procella, ae f. blast, gust, storm
prōsequor, i, secūtus follow, attend
questus, ūs m. complaint, lament
quiescō, ere, ēvī, ētus rest, desist, repose*
re(1)liquiae, ārum f. remnant(s), rest, leavings, relics
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
sciō, ire, īvī (ii), itus know (how)
subitō, suddenly, unexpectedly*
surgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus (a)rise
testis, is m. (f.) witness†
Venus, eris f. goddess of love and beauty*
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour

† 779-834. Neptune, won over by the entreaties of Venus, calms the sea for Aeneas, giving him a safe voyage to Italy.

781. neque = et nōn.

783. quam: referring to Jūnōnis of l. 781. nec longa diēs (mitigat) nec ūlla pietās (Aenēae) mitigat. longa diēs = longum tempus.

785. exēdisse: a Homeric touch.

786. urbem (Trojam). trāx(iss)e.

787. perēemptae (Trojae).

788. sciat illa: let her know, since no one else does; a vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

789-792. tū testis (erās): the reference is to the storm described in I, 81-156. excierit: subj. in an indir. quest.; App. 349. hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable; App. 107, 3, c.

Per scelus ecce etiam Trojānis mātribus āctīs
exussit foedē puppīs et classe subēgit
āmissā sociōs ignōtae linquere terrae. 795
Quod superest, ōrō, liceat dare tūta per undās
vēla tibi, liceat Laurentem attingere Thybrim,
sī concessa petō, sī dant ea moenia Parcae."
Tum Sātūrnus haec domitor maris ēdedit altī:
"Fās omne est, Cytherēa, mēis tē fidere rēgnīs, 800
unde genus dūcis. Meruī quoque; saepe furōrēs
compressī et rabiem tantam caelīque marisque.
Nec minor in terrīs, Xanthum Simoētaque testor,
Aenēae mihi cūra tuā. Cum Trōia Achillēs
exanimāta sequēns impingeret agmina mūrīs, 805
mīlia multa daret lētō, gementque replētī
amnēs nec reperīre viam atque ēvolvere posset
in mare sē Xanthus, Pēlidāe tunc ego forti

Achillēs, is (ei, ī) *m.* famous Greek leader*
āmīttō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose*
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
attingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach
comprimō, ere, pressi, pressus restrain
concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, grant
Cytherēa, ae *f.* (goddess) of Cythera,
 Venus
domitor, ōris *m.* tamer, subduer, ruler†
ecce see! look! behold!*
ēdō, ere, didi, ditus put forth, utter
 etiam also, even, besides, too*
ēvolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll forth†
exanimātus, a, um breathless, lifeless†
exūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn, consume
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
fidō, ere, fisus sum trust, believe (*dat.*)*
foedē shamefully, foully†
fortis, e strong, brave, valiant, stout*
furor, ōris *m.* madness, fury, frenzy*
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, lament
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange
impingō, ere, pēgi, pāctus dash against†
Laurens, entis Laurentian, of Laurentum,
 an Italian city†
lētum, ī *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*

linquō, ere, liquī, lictus leave, desert*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*
 mille; *pl.* mīlia, ium *n.* thousand*
minor, us less, smaller, slighter
mūrus, ī *m.* (city) wall, battlement*
ōrō (1) beseech, pray (for), entreat*
Parcae, ārum *f.* the (three) Fates
Pēlidēs, ae *m.* son of Peleus, Achilles
 quoque also, too, even, likewise*
rabiēs, ēī *f.* rage, frenzy, fury, madness
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
repleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, cram, jam
 saepe often, frequently*
Sātūrnus, a, um Saturnian, of Saturn,
 early Italian god and father of Jupiter,
 Juno, Neptune, and several other gods
scelus, eris *n.* crime, guilt, sin*
Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy
subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus force, compel
supersum, esse, fuī remain, survive
testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify
Thybris, idis *m.* Tiber, an Italian river
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
unde whence, from which source*
Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

794-795. *classe āmissā*: abl. abs.
subēgit (Aenēan). *terrae*: loc. or dat.
 of indir. obj.

796. *Quod superest*: the remnant; cf.
 l. 691. *ōrō*: parenthetical. *liceat*: vol.

797. *tibi* = *marī*: Neptune being god
 of the sea. *liceat* (Aenēae) *attingere*
Laurentem Thybrim.

798. *ea moenia*: the city to be
 founded by Aeneas in Italy.

801. *unde genus dūcis*: according to
 one account, Venus was born from the
 foam of the sea near Cythera, hence her
 name, Cytherēa, l. 800. *Meruī* (tē *fidere*
mēis rēgnīs).

804-807. *mihi cūra* (est). *cum*: descrip-

- congressum *Aenēan nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs*
 810 *nūbe cavā rapuī, cuperem cum vertere ab imō*
strūcta mēis manibus perjūrae moenia Trojae.
Nunc quoque mēns eadem perstat mihi; pelle timōrēs.
Tūtus, quōs optās, portūs accēdet Avernī.
Ūnus erit tantum āmissum quem gurgite quaerēs;
 815 *ūnum prō multīs dabitur caput."*
Hīs ubi laeta deae permulsit pectora dictīs,
jungit equōs aurō genitor, spūmantiaque addit
frēna feris manibusque omnīs effundit habēnās.
Caeruleō per summa levis volat aequora currū;
 820 *subsīdunt undae tumidumque sub axe tonantī*
sternitur aequor aquis, fugiunt vastō aethere nimbī.
Tum variae comitum faciēs, immānia cētē,

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessus approach, reach
 addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
 aethēr, eris m. upper air, sky, ether*
 āmittō, ere, misi, missus let go, lose*
 aqua, ae f. water, waves, flood*
 Avernus, i m. lake near Cumae in Italy
 where there was an entrance to Hades*
 axis, is m. axis, axle, wheel, car
 caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
 cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
 cētus, i m.; pl. cētē n. whale, sea-monster†
 congredior, i, gressus meet (dat.)
 cupiō, ere, ivī (ii), itus desire, wish
 currus, ūs m. chariot, car*
 effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, let go*
 faciēs, ei f. appearance, face, aspect*
 ferus, i m. beast, horse*
 frēnum, i n. rein, bridle, curb, bit
 gurgēs, itis m. whirlpool, sea, gulf*
 habēna, ae f. rein, curb, check
 jungō, ere, jūnxi, jūctus join, yoke*
 levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight
 nimbus, i m. (storm) cloud, rainstorm*

nūbēs, is f. cloud, fog, mist*
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
 pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus drive, dismiss
 perjūrus, a, um perjured, treacherous
 permulceō, ēre, lsi, lsus soothe, calm†
 perstō, stāre, stīti, status stand fast, per-
 sist
 prō for, on behalf of, before (abl.)*
 quoque also, even, too, likewise*
 rapiō, ere, ui, ptus snatch (away), rob*
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
 sternō, ere, strāvī, strātus lay low, be-
 calm, strew, spread*
 struō, ere, strūxi, strūctus build, heap up
 subsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessus subside
 tantum only, so much, so great(ly)
 timor, ōris m. fear, dread, anxiety
 tonō, āre, ui, itus thunder, roar
 tumidus, a, um swelling, swollen
 tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
 varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
 vertō, ere, ī, rsus (over)turn, change*
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

tive with impingeret, daret, gement, posset; App. 378. replēti (corporibus virōrum).

809. nec dīs nec vīribus aequīs: abl. abs.; aequīs modifies both nouns. The ancient warriors were often assisted by their gods. In this case the gods helping Achilles were superior to those aiding the Trojans.

810. cum cuperem: although I desired; concessive subj.; App. 379.

811. perjūrae: referring to the famous perjury of Laomedon, who refused to pay Neptune and Apollo the price agreed upon for building the walls of Troy. See note on II, 610.

813. portūs Avernī: Cumae near Lake

Avernus, where was the fabled entrance to the lower world. From Cumae the rest of Aeneas's voyage to the Tiber was short and uneventful.

814. Ūnus: Palinurus, the pilot who fell overboard and was drowned, as is related in lines 833-860.

816. laeta: proleptic; App. 440.

817. aurō: with gold (harness).

818. feris = equīs, as ferī = equī in II, 51.

820. sub axe (currūs).

821. aquis: abl. of respect with tumi-
 dum; App. 325.

822. faciēs (visae sunt, adsunt). cētē: nom. pl., a Greek form.

et senior Glaucē chorus Īnōusque Palaemōn
Tritōnesque citi Phorcēque exercitus omnīs;
laeva tenent Thetis et Melitē Panopēaque virgō, 825
Nisaeē Spiōque Thaliaque Cymodocēque.

Hic patris Aenēae suspēnsam blanda vicissim
gaudia pertemptant mentem; jubet ōcius omnīs
attolli mālōs, intendi brachia vēlīs.
Ūnā omnēs fēcēre pedem pariterque sinistrōs, 830
nunc dextrōs solvēre sinūs; ūnā ardua torquent
cornua dētorquentque; ferunt sua flāmina classem.
Princeps ante omnīs dēnsūm Palinūrus agēbat
agmen; ad hunc alīi cursum contendere jussī.
Jamque ferē mediam caelī Nox ūmida mētām 835
contigerat, placidā laxābant membra quiēte
sub rēmīs fūsi per dūra sedilia nautae:

arduus, a, um lofty, upraised, steep*
attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
blandus, a, um persuasive, flattering
brachium, (i)ī n. arm; yardarm*
chorus, i m. (dancing) band, troop
citus, a, um quick, swift, hurried
contendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain,
 direct
contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach*
cornū, ūs n. horn; yardarm; tip
Cymodocē, ēs f. a sea-nymph†
dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*
dētorqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist (aside),
 haul down
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
exercitus, ūs m. army, host, band
ferē almost, about, nearly
flāmen, inis n. breeze, blast, wind
gaudium, (i)ī n. joy, delight, pleasure
Glaucus, i m. minor sea-god†
Īnō, ūs f. minor sea-goddess†
intendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, strain
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
laxō (l) relax, loose(n), relieve, free
mālus, i m. mast, staff, pole
Melitē, ēs f. a sea-nymph†
membrum, i n. member, limb, body*
mēta, ae f. turning-point, goal, bound
nauta, ae m. sailor, seaman, mariner

Nisaeē, ēs f. a sea-nymph†
ōcius more quickly, very quickly
Palaemōn, onis m. minor sea-god†
Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot*
Panopēa, ae f. a sea-nymph
pariter equally, evenly, concertedly*
pertemptō (l) test, seize, pervade
Phorcus, i m. minor sea-god
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
princeps, cipis first, (as) leader
quiēs, ētis f. rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
sedile, ilis n. seat, bench
senex, is old, aged; **senior, ōris** older,
 very old*
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left
sinus, ūs m. fold (of sail), bosom, bay*
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free, pay*
Spiō, ūs f. a sea-nymph†
suspēnsus, a, um suspended, bewildered,
 in suspense
Thalia, ae f. a sea-nymph†
Thetis, idis (idos) f. sea-goddess, mother
 of Achilles†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus twist, turn, whirl*
Tritōn, ōnis m. minor sea-god
ūmidus, a, um moist, wet, dewy
ūnā together, at the same time
vicissim in turn, by turns, alternately
virgō, inis f. girl, daughter, virgin*

823-826. Vergil is apparently describing a famous sculptured group which in his day stood in the Circus Flaminius at Rome. *laeva (loca).*

830. *fēcēre pedem: hauled the sheet.*

832. *sua:* favorable; irregularly referring to *classem* instead of to the subject; App. 248, a.

834. *agmen(nāvium). hunc:* Palinurus.

835-861. Seeing that everything is so secure, the pilot, Palinurus, succumbs to sleep during the night voyage. He falls overboard and is drowned.

835. *mediam mētām:* the zenith, making it midnight. See III, 429.

- cum levis aetheriis delāpsus Somnus ab astris*
āera dimōvit tenebrōsum et dispulit umbrās,
 840 *tē, Palinūre, petēns, tibi somnia tristia portāns*
insontī; puppique deus cōnsēdit in altā
Phorbantī similis funditque hās ore loquēlās:
"Iasidē Palinūre, ferunt ipsa aequora classem,
aequātae spirant aerae, datur hōra quieti.
 845 *Pōne caput fessōsque oculos fūrāre labōrī.*
Ipsē ego paulisper prō tē tua mūnera inibō."
Cui vix attollēns Palinūrus lūmina fātur:
"Mēne salis placidī vultum flūctūsque quietōs
ignōrāre jubēs? Mēne huic cōnfidere mōnstrō?
 850 *Aenēān crēdam (quid enim?) fallācibus aurīs*
et caelō, totiēns dēceptus fraude serēnī?"
Tālia dicta dabat, clāvumque adfixus et haerēns
nūsqum āmittēbat oculosque sub astra tenēbat.

adfigō, ere, xī, xus fasten to, join to†
 aequō (1) equal(ize), balance, adjust*
 āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, fog, mist
 aetherius, a, um of the upper air, heaven-
 only
 āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus let go, lose*
 astrum, i n. star, constellation*
 attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
 clāvus, i m. nail, tiller, rudder†
 cōnfidō, ere, sus sum trust, believe (dat.)
 cōnsidō, ere, sēdi, sessus sit (down),
 settle*
 crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust (dat.)*
 dēcipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus beguile, de-
 ceive
 dēlābor, i, lāpsus glide down, descend
 dimoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus move apart,
 sunder
 dispellō, ere, puli, pulsus drive apart,
 dispel
 enim for, indeed, truly*
 fallāx, ācis deceitful, treacherous†
 fraus, fraudis f. deceit, treachery, fraud
 fūr, āri, ātus steal (away), withdraw†
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to)*
 hōra, ae f. hour, season, time
 Iasidēs, ae m. descendant of Iasius, son

of Jupiter and Electra, and brother of
 Dardanus†
 ignōrō (1) not know, mistake, ignore†
 ineō, ire, ii (ivī) itus enter (upon)
 insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
 levis, e light, unsubstantial, slight
 loquēla, ae f. voice, speech, conversa-
 tion†
 mōnstrum, i n. portent, monster, sign*
 nūsqum nowhere, never
 Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot*
 paulisper gradually, (for) a little while†
 Phorbās, antis m. son of Priam, killed in
 the Trojan war†
 placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
 portō (1) carry, bear, bring, convey*
 prō before, in behalf of, for (abl.)*
 quiēs, ētis f. rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
 quietus, a, um quiet, undisturbed, calm
 sal, is m. (n.) salt, brine; sea
 serēnum, i n. fair weather, calm
 similis, e similar, like (dat.)*
 somnium, (i) i n. dream, vision†
 spirō (1) breathe, blow, exhale, expire
 tenebrōsus, a, um dark, dusky, gloomy†
 totiēns so many times, so often
 vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

841. deus = Somnus of l. 838.
 844. aequātae aerae: see note on IV,
 587.
 845. labōri: dat. of separation; App.
 305.
 847. lūmina = oculos.
 849. (jubēs)ne mē cōnfidere huic
 mōnstrō (= mari): dat. with special

verb; the sea as a thing of treachery and
 danger is a cruel monster.

850-851. crēdam: deliberative subj.;
 App. 348. quid enim (id faciam). auris
 et caelō: datives with crēdam. fraude:
 abl. of means or cause with dēceptus.

853. āmittēbat: with the final syllable
 lengthened under the metrical accent and

Ecce deus rānum Lēthaeō rōre madentem
vīque sopōrātum Stygiā super utraque quassat 855
tempora, cūctantīque natantia lūmina solvit.
Vix primōs inopina quiēs laxāverat artūs,
et superincumbēns cum puppis parte revulsā
cumque gubernāclō liquidās prōjēcit in undās
praecipitem ac sociōs nēquiquam saepe vocantem; 860
ipse volāns tenuis sē sustulit āles ad aurās.
Currit iter tūtum nōn sētius aequore classis
prōmissisque patris Neptūni interrita fertur.
Jamque adeō scopulōs Sīrēnum advecta subibat,
difficilis quondam multōrumque ossibus albōs 865
(tum rauca adsiduō longē sale saxa sonābant),

adeō to such an extent, to that point
adsiduus, a, um constant, incessant
advehō, ere, vēxi, vectus carry to(ward)
albus, a, um white*
āles, itis winged; bird
artus, ūs m. joint, limb, body*
cūctor, āri, ātus delay, linger, hesitate
currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, speed
difficilis, e difficult, dangerous, painful
ecce see! look! behold!*
gubernāc(u)lum, ī n. rudder, helm
inopinus, a, um unexpected, unfore-
seen†
interritus, a, um unafraid, unterrified
iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*
laxō (l) relax, loose(n), relieve, free
Lēthaeus, a, um Lethean, of Lethe, the
river of forgetfulness in Hades†
liquidus, a, um clear, liquid, fluid
longē (from) afar*
madeō, ēre, uī drip, be wet
natō (l) swim, float, overflow
Neptūnus, ī m. Neptune, god of the sea*
nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
os, ossis n. bone*
praeceps, cipitis headlong, headforemost*
prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus hurl, fling,
cast

prōmissum, ī n. promise, pledge
quassō (l) shake, shatter
quiēs, ētis f. rest, sleep, peace, quiet*
rāmus, ī m. branch, bough, limb*
raucus, a, um hoarse, thunderous
revellō, ere, ī, vulsus tear off, dislodge
rōs, rōris m. dew, moisture†
saepe often, frequently*
sal, is m. (n.) salt, brine; sea
scopulus, ī m. rock, cliff, crag*
secus; compar. sētius otherwise, differ-
ently
Sīrēnes, um f. beautiful maidens who by
their sweet songs lured sailors to their
destruction†
solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax*
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
sopōrō (l) make sleepy, drug†
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a
river in Hades*
superincumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus lean
over, swoop upon†
tempus, oris n. temple, brow
tenuis, e slight, thin, fine, delicate
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),
both*
volō (l) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

before the pause; App. 394, a. sub
astra: fixed on the stars.

854-855. deus = Somnus of l. 838.
Lēthaeō, Stygiā: referring to the under-
world streams which brought forgetful-
ness and death.

856. (Palinūrō) cūctantī: dat. of
reference.

857. primōs: agrees with artūs but goes
in thought with laxāverat.

859. (eum) prōjēcit (Somnus).

861. ipse: Somnus.

862-871. Awakening and perceiving
that the ship is drifting unsteadily,
Aeneas seizes the tiller and steers the
vessel safe to the harbor of Cumae,
the home of the Sibyl.

862. iter: cognate acc.; App. 313.

863. prōmissis = ll. 812-815.

865. quondam: from the point of view
of Vergil, not of Aeneas.

866. sale saxa sonābant: alliteration;
App. 411.

870

*cum pater āmissō fluitantem errāre magistrō
sēnsit, et ipse ratem nocturnīs rēxit in undīs
multa gemēns cāsūque animum concussus amīcī:*
“*Ō nimium caelō et pelagō cōnfise serēnō,
nūdus in ignōtā, Palinūre, jacēbis harēnā.*”

amicus, *i m.* friend, comrade, lover*
āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus let go, lose*
concutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake, shat-
ter
cōnfidō, ere, fisis sum trust, believe
(*dat.*)
fluitō (1) waver, drift, float†
gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, lament, mourn
harēna, ae f. sand, beach*
ignōtus, a, um unknown, strange

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
magister, tri m. master, pilot, chief
nimium too much, too (greatly)
nocturnus, a, um nocturnal, of the night
nūdus, a, um naked, bare; unburied
Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot*
ratis, is f. raft, ship, boat*
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
sentiō, ire, sēnsi, sēnsus feel, perceive
serēnus, a, um calm, clear, serene

867. *pater* (*Aenēās*). *āmissō magistrō* (*Palinūrō*): *abl. abs.*; App. 343. *fluitantem* (*nāvem*). *errāre*: *was drifting unsteadily*; *indir. disc.*; App. 390.

868. *ipse* (*Aenēās*); *the master*; see the note on *ipsōs*, I, 40.

869. *multa*: *adverbial*; App. 93-94. *animum*: *acc. of respect*; App. 311.

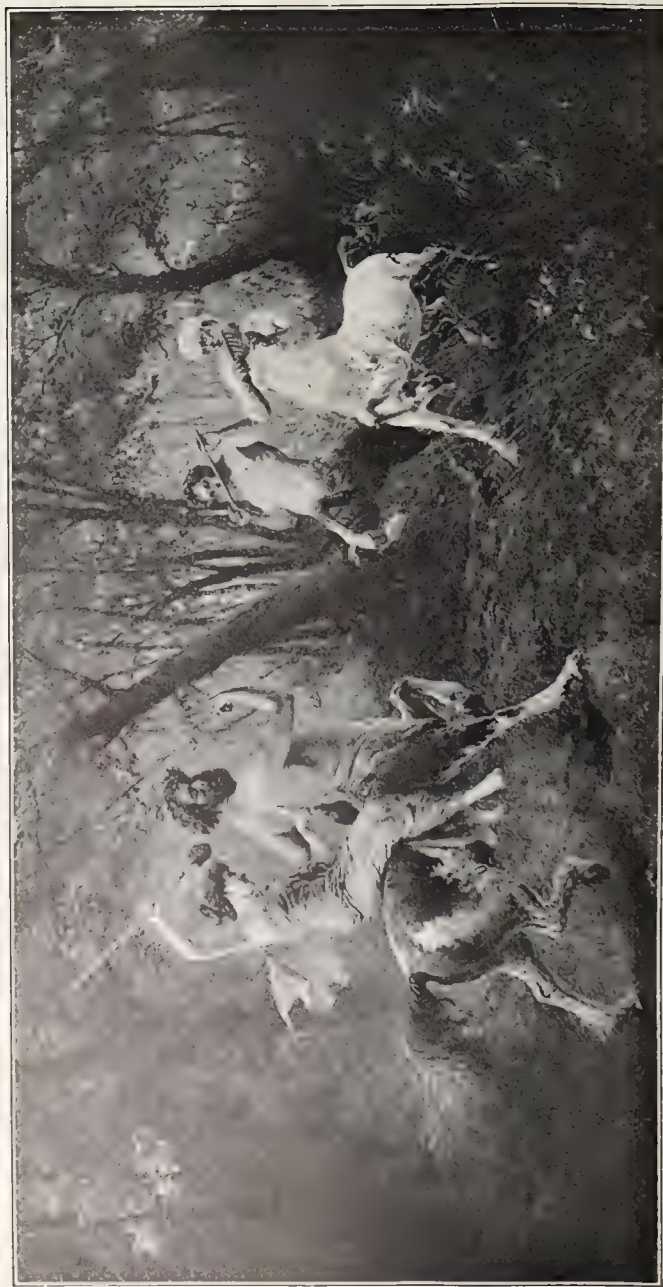
870-871. *Ō Palinūre nimium cōnfise*: *O Palinurus (who) trusted too much in, etc. nūdus: unburied*; a piteous fate according to ancient ideas.



Anderson

Michelangelo

THE CUMAEAN SIBYL
From the Sistine Chapel in the Vatican



CENTAURS AND DRYAD

E. Forti, Rome

BOOK VI

*SĪC fātur lacrimāns, classīque immittit habēnās
et tandem Euboicis Cūmārum adlābitur ōrīs.*

Obvertunt *pelagō* prōrās; *tum* dente tenācī

ancora fundābat *nāvīs* et *litora* curvae

5 praetexunt *puppēs*. Juvenum *manus* ēmicat *ardēns*

lītus in Hesperium; *quaerit pars sēmina flammae*

abstrūsa in *vēnīs* silicis, *pars* dēnsa ferārum

tēcta rapit *silvās* inventaque flūmina mōnstrat.

At *pius Aenēās arcēs quibus altus Apollō*

10 praesidet horrendaeque *procul* sēcrēta Sibyllae,

antrum *immāne, petit, magnam cui mentem animumque*

ābstrūdō, ere, sī, sus hide (away)†

adlābor, ī, lāpsus glide to, approach (dat.)

ancora, ae f. anchor

antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto*

Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and prophecy*

Cūmae, ārum f. city on the bay of Naples, founded by settlers from Chalcis, a city of Euboea†

curvus, a, um winding, rounded, bent*

dēns, dentis m. tooth; fluke (of an anchor)

dēnsus, a, um thick, crowded, dense*

ēmicō, āre, uī, ātus flash forth, dart out

Euboicis, a, um Euboean, of Euboea, a large island off the eastern coast of Greece†

fera, ae f. wild beast

flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood*

fundō (l) found, establish, make fast

habēna, ae f. rein, curb, check

Hesperius, a, um western, Italian

horrendus, a, um dreadful, dire; revered*

immittō, ere, mīsi, missus send in (to), loose(n), give freely

inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus find, come upon

juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man, woman)*

lacrimō (l) weep, shed tears, lament

mōnstrō (l) point out, show, teach, guide*

obvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn to (dat.)

praesideō, ēre, sēdi, sessus rule, protect (dat.)

praetexō, ere, uī, xtus fringe, cloak

prōra, ae f. prow*

rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch (up), scour*

sēcrētum, ī n. secret (place, sanctuary)

sēmen, inis n. seed, germ, element†

Sibylla, ae f. the Sibyl, an ancient Italian prophetess

silix, icis m. (f.) flint, rock, crag

tenāx, ācis gripping, tenacious

vēna, ae f. vein

1-32. Aeneas lands at Cumae and visits the temple of Apollo founded by Daedalus, near which is the grotto of the Sibyl.

1. Sic fātur (Aenēās): refers to the lament of Aeneas over Palinurus, who fell overboard and was drowned, as told in the latter part of Book V. habēnās: reins, as though the ships were so many fiery steeds surging at the bit.

3. prōrās: ships were anchored with their prows turned seaward.

6. sēmina: sparks, which seemed to be hidden in the flint till struck out by the steel.

8. silvās: apposition with tēcta.

9. altus: referring to the lofty situation of the temple, which stood on the top of a high hill and was connected in some way with the cave of the Sibyl.

10. procul (ā portū).

Dēlius inspirāt vātēs aperitque futūra.

Jam subeunt Triviae lūcōs atque aurea tēcta.

Daedalus, *ut fāma est, fugiēns* Minōia rēgna

15

praepetibus pennīs ausus sē crēdere caelō

insuētum *per iter* gelidās ēnāvit *ad* Aretōs,

Chalcidicāque *levis tandem super* astitit *arce.*

Redditus *hīs primum terrīs tibi*, Phoebe, sacrāvīt

rēmigium ālārū *posuitque* immānia *templa.*

20

In foribus lētum Androgeō; *tum pendere poenās*

āla, *ae f.* wing*

Androgeōs (ūs), eō (eī) *m.* son of Minos, king of Crete, for whose murder the Athenians were compelled annually to choose by lot seven youths and seven maidens, who were sent to Crete and fed to the Minotaur†

aperiō, *ire, ui, ertus* open, disclose, reveal*
Arctos (us), *i f.* the Bear, a northern constellation†

a(d)stō, āre, stitī stand (by, near)*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*

aureus, *a, um* gold(en), of gold*

Chalcidicus, *a, um* Chalcidian, of Chalcis, a city of Euboea, from which Cumae was founded†

crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust (*dat.*)*

Daedalus, *i m.* famous Greek artisan, father of Icarus and builder of the Labyrinth for King Minos in Crete; inventor of the first wings by means of which he and Icarus escaped from Crete†

Dēlius, *a, um* Delian, of Delos, birthplace of Apollo

ēnō (1) swim out, fly forth, float†

foris, *is f.* door, gate, entrance

futūrum, *i n.* the future, what is to be

gelidus, *a, um* cold, chilly, icy

inspirō (1) breathe into, inspire, blow into

insuētus, *a, um* unaccustomed, unused†

iter, itineris, *n.* way, road, journey*

lētum, *i n.* death, destruction, ruin*

levis, *e* light, swift, nimble, unsubstantial

lūcus, *i m.* (sacred) grove, wood*

Minōius, *a, um* Minoan, of Minos, king of Crete†

pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus weigh out, pay†

penna, *ae f.* wing, feather

Phoebus, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*

praepes, etis swift, flying

reddō, ere, didī, ditus return, restore*

rēmigium, (i)ī, *n.* oarage, rowing equipment

sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*

templum, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*

Trivia, *ae f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world

12. Dēlius vātēs: Apollo, born at Delos, and giver of oracles.

13. subeunt (Aenēās et socii). Triviae lūcōs: the grove was sacred to Hecate (Trivia), since it stood near the entrance to the lower world.

14. Daedalus: the most famous artisan of antiquity. With his son, Icarus, he had emigrated to Crete, where Pasiphaë, queen of Minos, had fallen in love with a beautiful bull. He assisted her to gratify her unholy passion, and from this love was born the Minotaur, a savage monster, half-man and half-bull. Daedalus was then compelled by Minos to build the Labyrinth within whose winding passages the Minotaur might be confined. Finally Daedalus contrived wings for himself and his son Icarus and thus escaped from Crete. During their flight, Icarus flew too close to the sun, which

melted the waxen fastenings of his wings and allowed him to fall into the sea and drown. After the death of Icarus, Daedalus continued his flight to Cumae, where he erected a temple to Apollo, to whom he dedicated his wings, and where he made some beautiful carved doors for the temple. On these doors he engraved the scenes described in ll. 20-30.

15. pennīs: abl. of means.

16. insuētum iter: the air.

20-30. A description of the scenes engraved by Daedalus on the temple doors at Cumae, which are: (1) death of Androgeos; (2) drawing of lots to see who shall be sent as victims of the Minotaur; (3) Pasiphaë and the Minotaur; (4) the Labyrinth with Ariadne and Theseus. lētum (est). Androgeō: gen., a Greek form; App. 67. The Athenians had murdered him and as a punishment had

Cecropidae *jussī* (*miserum!*) septēna quotannis
corpora nātōrum; stat ductīs sortibus urna.
 Contrā ēlāta marī respondet Gnōsia tellūs:
hīc crūdēlis amor taurī suppostaque fūrtō
 Pāsiphaē mixtumque genus prōlēsque biformis 25
 Minōtaurus inest, Veneris monumenta nefandae;
hīc labor ille domūs et inextricābilis error;
magnum rēgīnae sed enim miserātus amōrem
 Daedalus *ipse* dolōs tēctī ambāgēsque resolvit,
 caeca regēns filō vestigia. *Tū quoque magnam* 30

ambāgēs, *is f.* winding (passage)
biformis, *e* two-formed, double-shaped†
caecus, *a, um* blind, dark, hidden*
Cecropidēs, *ae m.* descendants of Cecrops, Athenians†
contrā opposite, facing*
crūdēlis, *e* cruel, pitiless, bloody*
Daedulus, *i m.* famous Greek artisan, and the first aviator; builder of the Labyrinth constructed to confine the Minotaur
dolus, *i m.* deceit, fraud, trick, scheme*
efferō, *ferre*, **extulī**, **ēlātus** lift (up), raise*
enim for, indeed, truly*
error, **ōris m.** wandering, maze, error
filum, *i n.* thread, clew, cord†
fūrtum, *i n.* theft, stealth, fraud
Gnōs(s)ius, *a, um* Gnosian, of Gnosus, a city of Crete
inextricābilis, *e* inextricable, insoluble†
insum, **esse**, **fui** be in, be present†
Minōtaurus, *i m.* savage Cretan monster, half bull and half man, the memorial of Pasiphaē's love for the bull†
misceō, **ēre**, **ui**, **mixtus** mix, mingle*

miseror, **āri**, **ātus** pity, commiserate*
monimentum (**monumentum**), *i n.* reminder, memorial
nefandus, *a, um* unspeakable, unutterable
Pāsiphaē, *ēs f.* wife of Minos, king of Crete, who fell in love with a beautiful bull and was assisted by Daedulus to gratify her passion†
prōlēs, *is f.* progeny, offspring, race*
quoque also, even, too, likewise*
quotannis annually, yearly
regō, **ere**, **rēxi**, **rēctus** rule, direct, guide*
resolvō, **ere**, **i**, **solūtus** loose(n), unravel
respondeō, **ēre**, **i**, **ōnsus** answer, correspond*
septēnus, *a, um* seven (each), by sevens
sors, **rtis f.** lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
suppōnō, **ere**, **posuī**, **pos(i)tus** place under, subject to†
taurus, *i m.* bull, ox, bullock*
urna, *ae f.* urn, vase (used in drawing lots)†
Venus, **eris f.** (goddess of) love*
vestigium, (*i i n.* step, track, trace*)

been compelled by Minos to send annually seven youths and seven maidens as tribute to Crete, where they were thrown into the Labyrinth to be eaten by the Minotaur. The Minotaur was finally killed by Theseus, an Athenian prince, who had been sent as one of the seven annual victims. He was assisted by Ariadne, daughter of Minos, who had fallen in love with him and had given him a clew of thread with which to guide his steps and thus find his way out of the Labyrinth with its countless winding passages.

21. Cecropidae (sunt). **miserum:** acc. of exclamation; App. 318.

22. ductīs sortibus: abl. abs. **stat urna:** represents the scene where the lots

had just been drawn from the urn at Athens, to see who should be sent as victims of the Minotaur.

23. Contrā: on the opposite door. **marī:** abl. of separation.

24. hic: on the door just mentioned. **amor taurī:** the love (of Pasiphaē) for the bull; **taurī** is obj. gen.; App. 284.

26. Veneris = amoris.

27. labor ille domūs: that famous house, so laboriously built, i.e., the Labyrinth; **domūs** is gen. of apposition.

28. rēgīnae: the princess, Ariadne, who fell in love with Theseus and assisted his escape.

30. vestigia: (Theseus's returning) steps.

- partem opere in tantō, sineret dolor, Īcare, habērēs.*
 Bis cōnātus erat cāsūs effingere in aurō,
 bis patriae cecidēre manūs. Quin prōtinus omnia
 perlegerent oculis, nī jam praemissus Achātēs
 35 adforet atque ūnā Phoebī Triviaeque sacerdōs,
 Dēiphobē Glauci, fātur quae tālia rēgī:
 "Nōn hoc ista sibi tempus spectācula poscit;
 nunc grege dē intāctō septem mactāre iuvencōs
 praestiterit, totidem lēctās dē mōre bidentis."
 40 Tālibus adfāta Aenēān (nec sacra morantur
 jussa viri) Teucrōs vocat alta in templa sacerdōs.

Achātēs, ae *m.* faithful comrade of Aeneas*
 adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to*
 bidēns, entis *f.* sheep (with two front teeth)
 bis twice*
 cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, fail, sink, die*
 cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor
 Dēiphobē, ēs *f.* prophetess and priestess of Apollo and Hecate†
 dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
 effingō, ere, finxi, fictus fashion, portray†
 Glaucus, ī *m.* a sea-god gifted with prophetic powers, father of Deiphobe, the Cumaean Sibyl
 grex, gregis *m.* herd, flock†
 Īcarus, ī *m.* son of Daedalus, who in his flight with his father from Crete flew too near the sun, melted his wings, fell into the sea, and was drowned†
 intāctus, a, um untouched, unbroken
 iste, ta, tud that (of yours)*
 iuvencus, ī *m.* bullock, ox*

legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus choose, gather*
 mactō (1) sacrifice, slaughter, kill; honor
 moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
 mōs, mōris *m.* custom, ritual, manner*
 nisi, nī if not, unless*
 opus, eris *n.* work (of art); toil, labor*
 perlegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus survey, examine†
 Phoebus, ī *m.* god of light, music, and prophecy*
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
 praemittō, ere, misi, missus send forward
 praestō, āre, stitī, status (stitus) excel, be better
 prōtinus continuously, at once
 quin (but) that, nay even, why not*
 sacerdōs, ōtis *m. (f.)* priest(ess)*
 septem seven
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow*
 spectāculum, ī *n.* sight, spectacle†
 templum, ī *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
 totidem as many, so many
 Trivia, ae *f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower world
 ūnā together, at the same time

31. *sineret dolor*: did grief permit; equivalent to a condition contrary to fact. *habērēs*: conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382.

32. (Daedalus) *bis cōnātus erat cāsūs (Īcari) effingere in aurō*.

33-76. In obedience to the command of the Sibyl, Aeneas performs the customary sacrifices, prays to the gods, imploring their favor, entreats the help of the prophetess, and vows to Apollo and Diana a temple, with sacred games to Apollo and a special sanctuary and college of priests to the Sibyl.

33. *omnia*: pronounce here as though spelled *omnja*, the *i* becoming consonantal; App. 401.

34. (Aenēās et socii) *perlegerent, nī adforet*: conclusion and condition contrary to fact; App. 382.

35-36. *sacerdōs*: the Sibyl who is priestess of Apollo and Hecate. *Glauci*: (daughter) of Glaucus. *rēgī (Aenēae)*.

37. *hoc*: pronounce *hocc*, making a long syllable. *ista spectācula*: those sights on which you are gazing.

38. *intāctō*: untouched (by the yoke).
 39. *praestiterit: it were better*; potential subj.; App. 252.

40. *sacra*: substantively, *sacrifices*, modified by *jussa*, and object of *morantur* whose subject is *virī (Teucrī)*.

41. *templa*: a cave in the rocky hillside, as is seen from the following line.

Excisum Euboicae latus *ingēns* rūpis in antrum,
quō lāti dūcunt aditūs centum, ōstia centum,
unde ruunt totidem vōcēs, respōnsa Sibyllae.

[*Ventum erat ad limen, cum virgō* "Poscere fāta
tempus" ait; "deus ecce deus!" Cui tālia fanti 45
ante forēs subitō nōn vultūs, nōn color ūnus,
nōn cōmptae mānsēre comae; sed pectus anhēlum,
et rabiē fera corda tument, majorque vidērī
nec mortāle sonāns, adflāta est nūmine quandō 50
jam propiōre deī. √ "Cessās in vōta precēsque,
Trōs" ait "Aenēā? Cessās? Neque enim ante dehīscēt
attonitae magna ōra domūs." Et tālia fāta
conticuit. Gelidus Teucrīs per dūra cucurrit
ossa tremor, funditque precēs rēx pectore ab īmō: 55

adflō (1) breathe upon, blow upon, in-
spire
aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance
anhēlus, a, um panting, gasping
antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
attonitus, a, um thunderstruck, amazed
centum hundred*
cessō, (1) cease, pause, delay, hesitate
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
cōma, ae *f.* hair, locks, tresses*
cōmō, ere, mpsi, mptus arrange (prop-
erly)†
conticēscō, ere, ticui become silent, hush
cor, rdis *n.* heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
currō, ere, cucurri, cursus run, course
dehīscō, ere, hivi yawn, gape, open
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ecce see! look! behold!*
enim for, indeed, truly*
Euboicus, a, um Euboean, of Euboea, a
large island off the eastern coast of
Greece, from which Cumae was settled
excidō, ere, ī, sus cut, hew (out)
ferus, a, um wild, fierce, untamed*
foris, is *f.* door, gate, entrance

gelidus, a, um cold, chilly, icy
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
latus, eris *n.* side, flank*
mortālis, e mortal, human, earthly*
os, ossis *n.* bone*
ōstium, (i) ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
prex, precis *f.* prayer, entreaty*
propior, ius nearer, closer
quandō when, since, because
rabiēs, ēi *f.* rage, fury, frenzy
respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, reply, response
rūpēs, is *f.* rock, cliff, crag*
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
sonō, āre, ui, itus (re)sound, roar*
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
totidem as many, so many
tremor, ōris, *m.* trembling, shudder
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan*
tumeō, ēre, ui swell, be swollen
unde whence, from which source*
virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*
vōtum, ī *n.* vow, prayer, (votive) offer-
ing*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

42. Euboicae: see l. 2 and vocabulary.

45. Ventum erat (ā Teucris et Sibyllā): they had come. limen (antri).

45-46. Poscere fāta tempus (est): it is time to ask for the oracles. deus ecce deus: the Sibyl apparently falls into a trance and sees a vision of the god approaching.

47. nōn vultūs (mānsēre): her countenance changed. ūnus = idem, as often.

48. comae: under the influence of the god, her hair streams forth in wild disorder. pectus (est) anhēlum.

49. major (est) vidērī: she is larger to look upon = major visa est. One of the effects of her inspiration is to make her appear larger.

50. mortāle: cognate acc.; App. 313. nec mortāle sonāns (est): her voice does not sound human.

51. Cessās (ire).

52. Neque ante(quam in vōta eās).

53. attonitae domūs: of the cave, awe-struck (by the presence of the god). fāta: from for.

55. rēx (Aenēas).

- "Phoebe, gravis *Trojae* semper miserâte *labôrês*,
Dardana quâ Paridis dêrêxti *têla manûsque*
corpus in *Acacidae*, *magnâs* obeuntia *terrâs*
 tot *maria* intrâvi duce *tê* penitusque repostâs
 60 *Massÿlum gentîs* praetentaque *Syrtibus arva*:
jam tandem Italïae fugientîs prendimus *ôrâs*,
hâc Trojâna *tenuis fuerit* *fortûna secûta*.
Vôs quoque Pergameae jam fâs est parcere *gentî*,
dîque deaeque omnês, quibus obstitit *Îlium et ingêns*
 65 *glôria Dardaniae*. *Tûque, Ô* *sânctissima vâtês*,
praescia ventûri, dâ (*nôn* *indêbita* *poscô*
rêgna mêtis fâtis) *Latiô côsîdere Teucrôs*
errantîsque deôs *agitâtaque nûmina Trojae*.
Tum Phoebô et Triviae solidô dē *marmore templum*

Aeacidês, *ae m.* descendant of Aeacus,
 Achilles

agitô (1) drive, harass, toss, agitate
côsîdô, *ere*, **sêdî**, *sessus sit* (down);
 settle*

Dardania, *ae f.* Troy, city of Dardanus
Dardanus, *a, um* Trojan, Dardanian
dêrigô (*dirigô*), *ere*, **rêxî**, *rêctus* direct,
 guide

dux, **ducis**, *m. (f.)* leader, guide, chief*
fâs *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine
 will*

glôria, *ae f.* glory, fame, reputation
gravis, *e* heavy, grievous, serious*

hâc . . . tenuis = **hâctenus** thus far, hith-
 erto

Îlium, (*i*) **î** *n.* Troy, Ilium
indêbitus, *a, um* not due, not owed, un-
 due†

intrô (1) enter, penetrate
Latium, (*i*) **î** *n.* district of central Italy*

marmor, *oris n.* marble

Massÿli, (*ôr*) **um** *m.* tribe of North
 Africa

miseror, **ârî**, *âtus* pity, commiserate*

obeô, *ire*, *ii (ivî)*, *itus* approach, traverse,
 skirt†

obstô, *âre*, *stiti*, *status* stand in the way,
 oppose (*dat.*)

parcô, *ere*, **peperci** (*parsi*), *parsus* spare
 (*dat.*)

Paris, *idis (os) m.* Trojan prince, eloped
 with Helen and thus caused the Trojan
 war

penitus deep(ly), (from) within*

Pergameus, *a, um* Trojan

Phoebus, *i m.* god of light, music, and
 prophecy*

poscô, *ere*, **poposci** demand, seek, ask*

praescius, *a, um* foreknowing, prescient
 (*gen.*)†

praetendô, *ere, î*, *ntus* stretch before, ex-
 tend

pre(he)ndô, *ere, î*, *ênsus* seize, grasp
 quoque also, furthermore, too, likewise

repos(i)tus, *a, um* secluded, remote
sânctus, *a, um* holy, sacred, sainted*

semper always, ever*

solidus, *a, um* solid, whole, firm

Syrtis, *is f.* quicksands off the northern
 coast of Africa

templum, *i n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*
tenuis see **hâc . . . tenuis**

tot so many*

Trivia, *ae f.* Hecate, goddess of the lower
 world

Trojânus, *a, um* Trojan, of Troy*
ventûrum, *i n.* the future, what is to come

56. Phoebe miserâte: voc.

57. dêrêx(is)tî: Apollo as god of
 archery had directed the fatal arrow of
 Paris, which struck Achilles in his heel,
 his only vulnerable spot, and killed him.

60. Syrtibus: *dat.* with compound.

62. hâctenus Trojâna fortûna fuerit
secûta: thus far, and thus far only let
 Trojan misfortune have followed me.
fuerit: vol. (jussive) subj.; App. 254.

66-67. ventûri: more picturesque than
 futûri; *gen.* with *praescia*. *dâ côsîdere*:
grant that the Trojans may settle; the inf.
 with a verb of granting; App. 260. (*in*)
Latiô.

68. deôs: especially the Trojan pe-
 nates.

69-70. Vergil here refers to the mag-
 nificent temples on the Palatine, built by
 Augustus to Apollo and Diana, and to

institutam fēstōsque diēs dē nōmine Phoebī. 70
Tē quoque magna manent rēgnīs penetrālia nostrīs:
hīc ego namque tuās sortīs arcānaque fāta
dicta meae gentī pōnam, lēctōsque sacrābō,
alma, virōs. Foliīs tantum nē carmina mandā,
nē turbāta volent rapidīs lūdbria ventīs: 75
ipsa canās ōrō." Finem dedit ōre loquendī.

At Phoebī nōndum patiēns immānis in antrō
bacchātur vātēs, magnum sī pectore possit
excussisse deum; tantō magis ille fatigat
ōs ravidum, fera corda domāns, fingitque premendō. 80
Ōstia jamque domūs patuēre ingentia centum
sponte suā vātisque ferunt respōnsa per aurās:
"Ō tandem magnīs pelagī dēfūcte periclis

almus, a, um nourishing, kind(ly)
 antrum, i n. cave, cavern, grotto*
 arcānus, a, um secret, hidden
 bacchor, āri, ātus rave, storm, rage
 canō, ere, cecini, cantus sing (of), chant,
 prophesy, proclaim*
 carmen, inis n. song, verse, oracle
 centum hundred*
 cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
 dēfungor, i, fūctus perform, finish (abl.)†
 domō, āre, uī, itus tame, subdue
 excutiō, ere, cussi, cussus shake off*
 fatigō (1) weary, tire (out), harass
 ferus, a, um wild, fierce, untamed*
 fēstus, a, um festal, festival, holiday
 fingō, ere, finxi, fictus mold, train
 folium, (i) i n. leaf, foliage
 institūō, ere, uī, ūtus set up, ordain†
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus select, gather*
 loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, tell, talk*
 lūdbrium, (i) i n. sport, mockery†
 magis more, rather*

mandō (1) order, intrust, commend
 nōndum not yet
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
 ōstium, (i) i n. mouth, entrance; harbor
 pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
 patiēns, entis enduring, tolerating (gen.)
 penetrālia, ium n. inner part, sanctuary
 peric(u)lum, i n. danger, peril, risk
 Phoebus, i m. god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
 control*
 quoque also, too, even, furthermore*
 ravidus, a, um raving, mad, frenzied†
 rapidus, a, um swift, snatching, whirling*
 respōnsū, i n. answer, reply, response
 sacrō (1) consecrate, dedicate, hallow*
 sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
 spōns, spontis f. free will, choice
 tantum only, so much, so far
 turbō (1) confuse, disarrange, disturb*
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

the Lūdī Apollinārēs, a great Roman festival in honor of Apollo.

71. Tē: addressed to the Sibyl; refers to the keeping of the famous Sibylline books in the Capitol at Rome.

73. lēctōs virōs: at first two, then ten, and finally fifteen men (the quīndecem-virī) were intrusted with the care of the Sibylline books, which were supposed to contain prophecies dealing with the fate of Rome and which were consulted in times of great crisis.

74. nē mandā: cf. III, 444, 456, 457, and notes. nē with the imp. is chiefly poetic; App. 256, a.

75. ventis: dat. of reference.

76. (ut tū) ipsa canās: obj. of ōrō.

77-79. The Sibyl announces to Aeneas his future wars and urges him to be steadfast and endure to the end.

77. nōndum Phoebī patiēns: not yet submissive to Phoebus, i.e., she still struggles against the inspiration of the god.

78. sī possit: a conditional clause, used virtually as an indir. quest.

80. fingit (eam): a picture from breaking a spirited horse, as is the figure of the preceding verse.

83. Ō (tū) dēfūcte: voc. peric(u)lis: abl. with dēfungor; App. 342.

- (*sed terrae graviōra manent*), *in rēgna Lavīni*
 85 *Dardanidae venient (mitte hanc dē pectore cūram),*
sed nōn et vēnisse volent. Bella, horrida bella,
et Thybrim multō spūmantem sanguine cernō.
Nōn Simois tibi nec Xanthus nec Dōrica castra
dēfuerint; alius Latiō jam partus Achillēs,
 90 *nātus et ipse deā; nec Teucrīs addita Jūnō*
ūsquam aberit, cum tū supplex in rēbus egēnis
quās gentīs Italum aut quās nōn ōrāveris urbēs!
Causa malī tantī conjūnx iterum hospita Teucrīs
externique iterum thalami.
 95 *Tū nē cēde malis, sed contrā audentior itō*
quā tua tē fortūna sinet. Via prīma salūtis,
quod minimē rēris, Grajā pandētur ab urbe."
Tālibus ex adytō dictīs Cūmaea Sibylla

absūm, esse, fūi be absent, be lack-
 ing
 Achillēs, is (eī, ī) *m.* famous Greek chief-
 tain*
 addō, ere, didi, ditus add*
 adytum, ī *n.* inner sanctuary, shrine
 audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
 castra, ōrum *n.* camp, encampment*
 causa, ae *f.* reason, cause, occasion*
 cēdō, ere, cessi, cessus yield, go*
 contrā opposite, facing*
 Cūmaeus, a, um of Cumae, a city near
 Naples
 Dardanidēs, ae *m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
 dēsum, esse, fūi be lacking, be absent
 Dōricus, a, um Doric, Greek
 egēnus, a, um needy, poor; critical
 externus, a, um outer, foreign
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 gravis, e heavy, grievous, serious*
 horridus, a, um bristling, terrible
 hospitus, a, um strange, foreign
 Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy

iterum again, anew, a second time*
 Latium, (i) ī *n.* district of central Italy*
 Lavinium, (i) ī *n.* city near Rome
 malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, disaster*
 minimē least, not at all†
 nāscor, ī, nātus be born, rise*
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
 pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, open*
 pariō, ere, peperī, partus produce, gain
 quā where(by), wherever, in any (some)
 way
 reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon
 salūs, ūtis *f.* safety, salvation, health
 Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
 Simois, entis *m.* river near Troy
 sinō, ere, sivi, situs permit, allow*
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
 thalamus, ī *m.* bridal chamber, wedlock*
 Thybris, (id)is, acc. brim, *m.* the Tiber, a
 river of Italy
 ūsquam anywhere, ever
 Xanthus, ī *m.* river near Troy

84. graviōra (pericula).
 86. sed et volent nōn vēnisse. et =
 etiam: even, also.
 89. dēfuerint: fut. perf. Translate as
 a fut. alius Achillēs: Turnus who plays
 a prominent part in the last six books of
 the *Aeneid*. See the note on IV, 615.
 90. et: also, too.
 91. supplex: Aeneas is compelled to
 go as a suppliant to Evander, who lives
 on the Palatine, the later site of Rome,
 as is related in the latter part of the
Aeneid.
 92. Ital(ōr)um.

93. Causa (erit). conjūnx hospita:
 Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus. She
 had been betrothed to Turnus, but on
 the arrival of Aeneas she was pledged by
 her father to him, and like a second Helen
 (iterum) she was the cause of war.
 95. itō: continue to go.
 96. quā (viā).
 97. (id) quod. Grajā urbe: from a
 Greek city, Palanteum on the Tiber,
 where Rome afterward stood.
 98-123. Aeneas begs the Sibyl to
 guide him on his journey to the lower

horrendās canit ambāgēs antrōque remūgit,
 obscurīs vēra involvēs: *ea frēna furentī* 100
concutit et stimulōs sub pectore vertit Apollō.
Ut primum cessit furor et rabida ōra quiērunt,
incipit Aenēās hērōs: "Nōn ūlla labōrum,
Ō virgō, nova mī faciēs inopinave surgit;
omnia praecēpī atque animō mēcum ante perēgī. 105
Ūnum ōrō: quandō hīc infernī jānuā rēgis
dīcitur et tenebrōsa palūs Acheronte refūsō,
īre ad cōspectum cārī genitōris et ōra
contingat; doceās iter et sacra ōstia pandās.
Illum ego per flammās et mille sequentia tēla 110
ēripuī hīs umerīs mediōque ex hoste recēpī;
ille meum comitātus iter maria omnia mēcum
atque omnīs pelagīque minās caelīque ferēbat,
invalidus, vīrīs ultrā sortemque senectae.

Acherōn, ontis *m.* river of Hades
 ambāgēs, *is f.* winding; mystery
 antrum, *i n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
 Apollō, inis *m.* god of light, music, and
 prophecy*
 canō, ere, cecinī, cantus *sing (of),* chant,
 prophesy, proclaim*
 cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
 cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus *yield, depart**
 comitor, āri, ātus *accompany, attend, es-*
*cort, follow**
 concutiō, ere, cussī, cussus *shake, shatter*
 cōspectus, ūs *m.* sight, interview
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus *touch, befall**
 doceō, ēre, uī, ctus *teach, tell, inform**
 faciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
 frēnum, *i n.* rein, curb, check
 furor, ōris *m.* madness, frenzy, fury*
 hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
 horrendus, a, um *horrifying, dire**
 hostis, *is m. (f.)* enemy, foe, stranger*
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus *begin, under-*
*take**
 infernus, a, um *nether, infernal*
 inopinus, a, um *unexpected, sudden*
 invalidus, a, um *weak, feeble, infirm*
 involvō, ere, i, volūtus *wrap, infold*

iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
 jānuā, ae *f.* door, entrance
 mille; *pl.* milia, ium *n.* thousand*
 minae, ārum *f.* threat, menace; pinnacle
 obscurus, a, um *dark, dim, obscure**
 ōrō (1) *pray (for), entreat, beseech**
 ōstium, (i) *i n.* mouth, entrance; harbor
 palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere†
 pandō, ere, i, passus *open, disclose**
 peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus *traverse, finish*
 praeciō, ere, cēpī, ceptus *anticipate,*
teach
 quandō *when, since, because*
 quiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus *rest, calm, cease**
 rabidus, a, um *raving, mad, frenzied*
 recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus *recover, res-*
*cue**
 refundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus *pour (back, out)*
 remūgiō, īre *bellow, roar†*
 senecta, ae *f.* old age, eld
 sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
 stimulus, *i m.* goad, spur, prick†
 tenebrōsus, a, um *dark, gloomy*
 ultrā *beyond, more than (acc.)†*
 vertō, ere, i, rsus *turn, change**
 vērum, *i n.* truth, reality, right
 virgō, inis *f.* (unmarried) girl, maid(en)*

world, that he may meet the shade of his father Anchises.

99. (ex) antrō.

100. ea (= tālia) frēna: the figure of horsemanship is continued from ll. 77-80.

102. quiē(vē)runt.

104. mī = mihī.

107. dicitur (esse). Acheronte refūsō: abl. abs.; the overflow of the Acheron was supposed to form Lake Avernus.

109. contingat (mihī): vol. clause in apposition with ūnum in l. 106. doceās, pandās: vol. subjunctives; App. 254.

112. iter: obj. of the middle part., comitātus.

- 115 Quin, *ut tē supplex peterem et tua līmina adirem*,
īdem ōrāns mandāta dabat. Nātique patrisque,
 alma, precor, miserēre (*potes namque omnia, nec tē*
nēquiquam lūcis Hecatē praefēcit Avernīs),
sī potuit mānīs accersere conjugis Orpheus
 120 Threiciā frētus citharā fidibusque canōris,
sī frātre Pollūx alternā morte redēmit
itque reditque viam totiēns. Quid Thēsea, magnum
quid memorem Alcīdēn? Et mī genus ab Jove summō."
Tālibus ōrābat dictīs ārāsque tenēbat,
 125 *cum sic orsa loquī vātēs: "Sate sanguine dīvum,*

accersō, ere, sīvī, sītus summon, invite
 adeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus approach
 Alcīdēs, ae m. Hercules, son of Jupiter
 and Alcmena, who as one of his labors
 descended to Hades and carried off Cer-
 berus, the watchdog of Pluto
 almus, a, um nurturing, kind(ly)
 alternus, a, um alternate, alternating
 Avernus, a, um of Lake Avernus in Cam-
 pania, where there was an entrance to
 Hades*
 canōrus, a, um tuneful, musical†
 cithara, ae f. lyre, harp, either
 fidēs, ium f. lyre, strings, cords; chords†*
 frāter, tris m. brother*
 frētus, a, um relying on (abl.)
 Hecatē, ēs f. goddess of the lower world
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
 lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood*
 mandātum, ī n. command, charge, be-
 hest
 mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead,
 Hades*
 memorō (1) (re)call, recount, relate*
 misereor, ēri, itus pity, commiserate
 (gen.)

nēquiquam in vain, uselessly, idly*
 ordior, īri, orsus begin, undertake
 ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
 Orpheus, ī m. famous poet and musician
 of Thrace who went down to Hades to
 bring back his wife Eurydice, but
 failed†
 Pollūx, ūcis m. son of Jupiter and Leda;
 after the death of Castor, his twin
 brother, Pollux, shared his immortality
 with him on alternate days†
 praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus set over (acc.,
 dat.)†
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat*
 quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*
 redeō, ire, īi (ivī), itus return
 redimō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus redeem†
 serō, ere, sēvī, satus sow, beget*
 supplex, icis suppliant, humble*
 Thēseus, ēi (eos), acc. ea, m. early king
 of Athens, who, among other exploits,
 descended to Hades with his friend
 Pirithoūs to carry off Proserpina†
 Threicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace, a
 region northeast of Greece
 totiēns so many times, so often

115. *ut peterem*: subst. clause of vol.
 origin in apposition with *mandāta*.

116. *Nāti, patris*: genitives with *mi-
 serēre* (imp.); App. 289.

117. *potes omnia*: *you can (do) all
 things*.

120. *citharā, fidibus*: ablatives of
 means with *frētus*.

122. *viam*: cognate acc.; App. 313.
Thēsea: acc., a Greek form; App. 69.

123. *Alcīdēn* = Hercules, a word which
 cannot be used in dactylic hexameter
 (---). As one of Hercules's cele-
 brated twelve labors, he descended to
 Hades and carried off Cerberus, the
 three-headed dog of Pluto, which guarded

the entrance of the infernal regions. *mī
 genus* (est). *mī* = *mihi*: dat. of posses-
 sion. *ab Jove*: through Venus, daughter
 of Jupiter.

124-155. The Sibyl informs Aeneas of
 the three conditions which must be ful-
 filled before he may gain admission to
 the lower world. The conditions are:
 (1) the bringing of the golden bough;
 (2) the purification of the fleet which had
 been polluted by the death of Misenus;
 (3) propitiatory sacrifices to the manes
 and gods of the lower world.

124. *ārāsque tenēbat*: as a suppliant.

125. *orsa* (est). *Sate*: voc.

Trōs Anchisiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō:
noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī jānuā Dītis;
sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,
hoc opus, hic labor est. Paucī, quōs aequus amāvīt
Juppiter aut ardēns ēvēxit ad aethera virtūs, 130
dīs genitī potuēre. Tenent media omnia silvae,
Cōcētusque sinū lābēns circumvenit ātrō.
Quod sī tantus amor mentī, sī tanta cupidō est
bis Stygiōs innāre lacūs, bis nigra vidēre
Tartara, et insānō juvat indulgēre labōrī, 135
accipe quae peragenda prius. Latet arbore opācā
aureus et foliīs et lentō vīmine rāmus,
Jūnōnī infernae dictus sacer; hunc tegit omnis
lūcus et obscurīs claudunt convallibus umbrae.

aequus, a, um equal, level, impartial
aethēr, eris, acc. era, m. upper air, heaven, sky*

amō (1) love, cherish, like*

Anchisiadēs, ae m. descendant of Anchises, Aeneas

arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood*

aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*

Avernus, i m. lake of central Italy, where there was an entrance to Hades; Hades*

bis twice*

circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus encircle†

claudō, ere, sī, sus (in)close, shut (in)*

Cōcētus, i m. river of Hades†

convallis, is f. valley, vale, dale†

cupidō, inis f. desire, love, passion

dēscēnsus, ūs m. descent†

Dīs, Dītis m. Pluto, god of Hades

ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape, come out

ēvehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear (aloft)†

facilis, e easy, favorable, ready

folium, (i) i n. leaf, foliage

gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget

gradus, ūs m. step, gait, pace, stride

indulgeō, ēre, lsi, ltus indulge (in) (dal.)

infernaus, a, um infernal, nether

innō (1) swim, float (in), navigate†

insānus, a, um mad, insane, frenzied

jānuā, ae f. door, entrance

juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus help, please*

lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere

lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*

lentus, a, um pliant, tough, flexible

lūcus, i m. (sacred) grove, wood*

medium, (i) i n. middle, midst, center

niger, gra, grum black, gloomy, dusky*

obscurus, a, um dark, shadowy, gloomy*

opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy

opus, eris n. work, task, toil, deed*

pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend

paucus, a, um small, few, scanty

peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus accomplish

prius first, sooner

quod because, but

rāmus, i m. branch, bough, limb*

revocō (1) recall, call back, retrace

sinus, ūs m. fold, bosom, bay, hollow*

Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*

Tartara, ōrum n. abode of the wicked in Hades

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, protect*

Trōs, Trōis m. Trojan*

vimen, inis n. twig, shoot

virtūs, ūtis f. manhood, excellence, valor*

126. facilis (est) dēscēnsus Avernō (= ad Avernum): dat. of direction; the descent is easy, i.e., by dying.

129. hoc: pronounce *hocc*, making a long syllable. *hoc, hic*; agree in gender with their predicate nouns, *opus, labor*; App. 240, a. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 432-433.

"Long is the way
 And hard that out of hell leads up to light."

131. potuēre (hoc): could do this.

134. innāre: inf. with (tibi) *cupidō* est which is equivalent to *cupis, you wish*. *bis:* now and again at death.

136. peragenda (sint). (in) arbore.

137. foliis, vimine: ablatives of respect.

138. Jūnōnī infernae: to Proserpina, queen of the lower world. *dictus (esse).*

- 140 *Sed nōn ante datur tellūris operta subīre*
auricomōs quam quī dēcerpserit arbore fētūs.
Hoc sibi pulchra suum ferrī Prōserpina mūnus
instituit. *Primō āvulsō nōn dēficit alter*
aureus, *et similī frondēscit virga metallō.*
- 145 *Ergō altē vestigā oculīs et rite repertum*
carpe manū; *namque ipse volēns facilisque sequētur,*
sī tē fāta vocant; aliter nōn viribus ūllis
vincere nec dūrō poteris convellere ferrō.
- 150 *Praetereā jacet exanimum tibi corpus amici*
(heu nescīs) *tōtamque incestat fūnere classem,*
dum cōnsulta petis nostrōque in limine pendēs.
Sēdibus hunc refer ante suīs et conde sepulcrō.
Dūc nigrās pecudēs; ea prima piācula suntō.
Sīc dēmum lūcōs Stygis et rēgna invia vīvīs
- 155 *aspiciēs." Dixit, pressōque obmūtuit ōre.*

aliter otherwise, differently*
altē on high, loftyly
alter, era, erum (an)other (of two),
second*
amicus, ī m. friend, lover, comrade*
arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood(s)*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, behold*
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
auricomus, a, um golden-haired, golden-
leaved†
āvellō, ere, (vuls)i, vulsus tear (off)
carpō, ere, psi, ptus pluck, pursue
condō, ere, didi, ditus found, hide, bury*
cōnsultum, ī n. resolve, decree, oracle†
convellō, ere, i, vulsus tear (off)
dēcerpō, ere, psi, ptus pluck (off)†
dēficiō, ere, fēci, fectus lack, fail
dēmum finally, at last
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless
facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
fētus, ūs m. young, produce, growth
frondēscō, ere leaf, sprout†
fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, disaster*
incestō (1) defile, pollute†
institūō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, ordain
invius, a, um pathless, trackless

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*
lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood*
metallum, ī n. metal, ore, mine†
nesciō, īre, ivi (ii) not know, be igno-
rant
niger, gra, grum black, dusky, gloomy*
obmūtēscō, ere, tui become silent, hush
opertum, ī n. mystery, hidden part
pecus, udīs f. animal (of the flock)*
pendeō, ēre, pependi hang, tarry*
piāculum, ī n. expiation, crime
praetereā besides, also, furthermore*
premo, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
control*
Prōserpina, ae f. wife of Pluto and queen
of Hades
pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,
noble, splendid*
quam how, than, as*
reperiō, īre, repperi, repertus find
rite duly, properly, ritually
sepulcrum, ī n. tomb, grave
similis, e similar, like*
Styx, Stygis f. river of the lower world†
vestigō (1) trace, search (for), track
(out)†
virga, ae f. branch, rod, twig
vīvus, a, um alive, living

140-141. ante . . . quam: until. auri-
comōs fētūs. qui: indefinite. dēcerp-
serit: fut. perf.

145-146. vestigā et rite carpe.

149. jacet: lies (unburied). tibi:
ethical dat.; best left untranslated.

150. tōtam classem: thus including
Aeneas and making it impossible for him to
sacrifice until he has been properly purified.

152. Sēdibus = ad sēdēs: dat. of di-
rection. refer: imp.; App. 202. suīs:
his proper, irregularly referring to hunc
instead of to the subject. (in) sepul-
crō.

153. Dūc: imp. nigrās: see V, 97,
and 736, with notes. ea: attracted into
the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a.
suntō: imp. of sum; App. 120.

Aenēas maestō dēfixus lūmina vultū
ingreditur linguēns antrum, caecōsque volūtāt
ēventūs animō sēcum. Cui fīdus Achātēs
it comes et paribus cūrīs vestīgia figit.

- 160 *Multa inter sēsē variō sermōne serēbant,*
quem socium exanimum vātēs, quod corpus humandum
diceret. Atque illi Mīsēnum in litore siccō,
ut vērēre, vident indignā morte perēemptum,
Mīsēnum Aeolidēn, quō nōn praestantior alter
165 *aere ciēre virōs Mārtemque accendere cantū.*
Hectoris hic magnī fuerat comes, Hectora circum
et lituō pugnās insignis obībat et hastā.
Postquam illum vitā victor spoliāvit Achillēs,
Dardaniō Aenēae sēsē fortissimus hērōs
170 *addiderat socium, nōn inferiōra secūtus.*
Sed tum, forte cavā dum personat aequora conchā,
dēmēns, et cantū vocat in certāmina divōs,

accendō, ere, ī, ēnsus kindle; rouse
Achātēs, ae m. faithful comrade of Aeneas*
Achillēs, is (ei, ī) m. Greek chieftain before Troy*
addō, ere, didi, ditus add*
Aeolidēs, ae m. descendant of Aeolus, Misenus
aes, aeris n. bronze (implement), trumpet*
alter, era, erum (an)other (of two), second*
antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto*
caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
cantus, ūs m. song, music, chant, tune
cavus, a, um hollow, vaulted*
certāmen, inis n. contest, rivalry*
ciēō, ēre, civi, citus (a)rouse, stir (up)*
concha, ae f. (sea) shell, conch†
Dardanius, a, um Trojan, Dardanian*
dēfigō, ere, xī, xus fix (down), cast down
dēmēns, entis mad, crazy, foolish
ēventus, ūs m. outcome, result, event†
exanimus, a, um breathless, lifeless
fīdus, a, um faithful, trusty, safe*
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, plant, pierce*
fortis, e brave, strong, valiant, stout*
hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart

Hector, oris, acc. ora, m. Trojan leader*
hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
humō (1) bury, inter, cover with earth†
indignus, a, um unworthy, undeserved
ingredior, ī, gressus advance, enter
insignis, e distinguished, marked*
linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, desert*
lituus, ī m. (curved) trumpet†
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
Mārs, rtis m. (god of) war
Mīsēnus, ī m. Trojan trumpeter
obeō, ire, īi (ivi), itus enter, approach
pār, paris equal, like, matched*
perimō, ere, ēmi, ēptus destroy
personō, āre, ūi, itus sound through, make (re)sound
postquam after (that), when*
praestāns, antis excellent, superior
pugna, ae f. battle, fight, fray, combat*
sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech
serō, ere, ūi, rtus join, discuss*
siccus, a, um dry, thirsty
spoliō (1) despoil, plunder, rob (abl.)
varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
vestigium, (i) ī n. track, footprint, step*
volūtō (1) revolve, turn (over), roll
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

156-182. Aeneas finds the corpse of the Trojan trumpeter, Misenus, on the shore and prepares his funeral pyre.

156. lūmina = oculōs; obj. of the middle part., dēfixus.

159. cūrīs: abl. of manner.

162. quod corpus diceret: indir. quest.

164. nōn alter (erat) praestantior.

165. ciēre: with praestantior; App. 265.

166. circum Hectora: acc., a Greek form.

168. illum: Hector.

171. conchā: Triton's horn; hence his jealousy.

- aemulus exceptum Tritōn, sī crēdere dignum est,
inter saxa virum spūmōsā immerserat undā.
- 175 Ergō omnēs magnō circum clāmōre fremēbant,
praecipuē pius Aenēās. Tum jussa Sibyllae,
haud mora, fēstinant flentēs āramque sepulcrō
congerere arboribus caelōque ēdūcere certant.
Ītur in antiquam silvam, stabula altā ferārū,
- 180 prēcumbunt piceae, sonat icta secūribus īlex
fraxineaeque trabēs cuneis et fissile rōbur
scinditur, advolvunt ingentis montibus ornōs.
- Nec nōn Aenēās opera inter tālia prīmus
hortātur sociōs paribusque accingitur armīs.
- 185 Atque haec ipse suō trīstī cum corde volūtāt
aspectāns silvam immēnsam, et sic forte precātur:
"Sī nunc sē nobīs ille aureus arbore rāmus
ostendat nemore in tantō! Quandō omnia vērē

accingō, ere, cīnxī, cinctus gird(le)
advolvō, ere, ī, volūtus roll†
aemulus, a, um emulous, jealous
arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood(s)*
a(d)spectō (1) look at, behold
aureus, a, um gold(en), of gold*
certō (1) strive, fight, vie, contend
congerō, ere, gessi, gestus heap (up)
cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust*
cuneus, ī m. wedge, block (of seats)
dignus, a, um worthy, deserving
ēdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead out, raise
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
excipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus catch, receive
fera, ae f. wild beast
fēstinō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
fissilis, e easily split, cleavable†
fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus weep, lament, mourn
fraxineus, a, um ashen, of ash-tree†
fremō, ere, uī, itus murmur, lament*
hortor, āri, ātus urge, encourage, incite*
icō, ere; icī, ictus strike, smite†
īlex, icis f. holm-oak
immēnsus, a, um boundless, measureless
immergō, ere, rsi, rsus plunge, drown
jussum, ī n. order, command, behest

mora, ae f. delay, hesitation, hindrance*
nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, wood*
opus, eris n. work, task, deed, labor*
ornus, ī f. ash-tree
ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
pār, paris equal, like, matched*
picea, ae f. pitch-pine†
praecipuē especially, particularly
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
prēcumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus fall
quandō when, since, because
rāmus, ī m. branch, bough, limb*
rōbur, oris n. oak; strength*
scindō, ere, scidi, scissus split, cleave
secūris, is f. ax
sepulcrum, ī n. tomb, grave
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
spūmōsus, a, um foamy, frothy†
stabulum, ī n. stable, stall, lair, den
trabs (trabēs), trabis f. beam, timber,
tree
Tritōn, ōnis m. sea-god famous for his
skill in blowing a conch (sea shell) as
a trumpet
vērē truly, correctly†
volūtō (1) revolve, roll (over)

173. crēdere: inf. with adj.; App. 265.

177. haud mora (est).

178. arboribus: abl. of means. caelō = ad caelum: dat. of direction.

179. Ītur: impersonal; translate they go.

182. scinditur: agrees with the nearest subject.

183-211. Guided by the two doves, Aeneas discovers the golden bough, which he brings to the Sibyl.

184. accingitur: girds himself; a middle verb.

187. Sī: with pres. subj., expressing a wish, "O that," "would that"; App. 253. (in) arbore.

heu nimium dē tē vātēs, Misēne, locūta est."
Vix ea fātus erat geminae cum forte columbae 190
ipsa sub ōra viri caelō vērēre volantēs,
et viridi sēdēre solō. Tum maximus hērōs
māternās agnōscit avīs laetusque precātur:
"Este ducēs, Ō, sī qua via est, cursumque per aurās
dērigite in lūcōs ubi pinguem dīves opācat 195
rāmus humum. Tūque, Ō, dubiis nē dēfice rēbus,
dīva parēns." Sīc effātus vestigia pressit
observāns quae signa ferant, quō tendere pergant.
Pascentēs illae tantum prōdīre volandō
quantum aciē possent oculi servāre sequentum. 200
Inde ubi vērēre ad faucēs grave olentis Avernī,
tollunt sē celerēs liquidumque per āera lāpsae
sēdibus optātis geminae super arbore sidunt,
discolor unde aurī per rāmōs aura refulsit.

aciēs, ēi f. edge; eye(sight); battle line*
 āēr, āeris, acc. āera, m. air, mist, fog
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize*
 arbōs (or), oris f. tree; wood(s)*
 Avernus, i m. lake in central Italy where
 there was an entrance to Hades*
 avis, is f. bird, fowl
 celer, eris, ere swift, quick, fleet*
 columba, ae f. dove, a bird sacred to
 Venus
 dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, faint
 dērigō (dirigō), ere, rēxī, rēctus direct,
 guide
 dī(ve)s, dī(vi)tis rich, wealthy
 discolor, ōris of different color(s)†
 dubius, a, um doubtful, wavering
 dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief*
 effor, āri, ātus speak (out), say
 faucēs, ium f. throat, jaws; pass(age)
 gravis, e heavy, foul, serious*
 hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
 humus, i f. ground, soil, earth*
 inde thence, next, thereupon*
 liquidus, a, um clear, liquid, fluid
 loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*

lūcus, i m. (sacred) grove, wood*
 māternus, a, um of a mother, maternal
 Misēnus, i m. Trojan trumpeter
 nimium too (much), excessively
 observō (1) watch, guard, observe
 oleō, ēre, uī smell, stink†
 opācō (1) darken, shade, shadow†
 optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*
 pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, pasture
 pergō, ere, perrēxī, perrēctus proceed
 pinguis, e fat, fertile, rich
 precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, invoke*
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press*
 prōdeō, ire, iī (ivī), itus advance†
 quantum (as much) as, as far as
 rāmus, i m. branch, limb, bough*
 refulgēō, ēre, lsi gleam, shine, glitter
 sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus sit, settle*
 sidō, ere, (sēd)ī sit, settle†
 signum, i n. sign, signal, token, mark*
 solum, i n. ground, soil, earth*
 unde whence, from what source*
 vestigium, (i)ī n. step, track, trace*
 viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

191. ōra viri = oculōs Aenēae.
 194. cursum (vestrum).
 196. dubiis rēbus: *wavering fortunes*;
 dat. with dēfice.
 197. (re)pressit.
 199. tantum: *only so far*. prōdīre:
 hist. inf.; App. 257. volandō: abl. of the
 gerund, expressing means.
 200. aciē servāre: *keep them in sight*.
 possent: implied indir. disc.; App. 357.

- sequent(i)um: subst., of those following
 (them).
 201. grave: translate as an adv.; App.
 310.
 203. (in) sēdibus optātis. geminae:
 the two (doves). super arbore: *on top of
 the tree*.
 204. discolor: of a different color from
 the rest of the tree. aurī aura: assonance
 and alliteration.

- 205 Quāle solet *silvīs* brūmālī frīgore vīscum
fronde virēre *novā*, quod nōn sua sēminat arbōs,
et croceō fētū teretis circumdare truncōs,
tālis erat speciēs aurī frondentis opācā
ilice, sic lēnī crepitābat brattea ventō.
- 210 Corripit *Aenēās* extemplō avidusque refringit
cūctantem, et vātis portat sub tēcta Sibyllae.
Nec minus intereā Mīsēnum in lītore Teucrī
flēbant et cinerī ingrātō suprēma ferēbant.
- 215 Principiō pinguem taedis et rōbore sectō
ingentem strūxēre pyram, cui frondibus ātrīs
intexunt latera et fērālis ante cupressōs
cōstituunt, decorantque super fulgentibus armīs.
Pars calidōs laticēs et aēna undantia flammīs
expediunt, corpusque lavant frīgētis et unguunt.

aēnum, i n. bronze (kettle, caldron)
arbōs (or), oris f. tree, wood(s)*
avidus, a, um eager, greedy, ardent
brattea, ae f. thin sheet, plate, foil†
brūmālis, e wintry, of winter†
calidus, a, um hot, warm†
cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), em-
bers*
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround
cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus place, set up
corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
crepitō (1) rattle, rustle, crash
croceus, a, um yellow, saffron
cūctor, āri, ātus delay, cling, linger
cupressus, i f. cypress, an evergreen
tree sacred to the dead
decorō (1) adorn, ornament, decorate†
expediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus bring forth
extemplō immediately, at once
fērālis, e funereal, of the dead, fateful
fētus, ūs m. offspring, fruit, shoot
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep, lament, mourn
frīgēns, entis cold, stiff; lifeless
frigus, oris n. cold, frost, chill
frondēns, entis leafy, fronded
frōns, frondis f. leaf, foliage, frond*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, īsi gleam, shine, glitter
ilex, icis f. holm-oak
ingrātus, a, um thankless, unfeeling
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*

intexō, ere, uī, xtus interweave, interlace
latex, icis m. liquid, water, wine
latus, eris n. side, flank*
lavō, āre, (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash, bathe
lēnis, e light, gentle, soft, moderate
minus less, in a less degree
Mīsēnus, i m. Trojan trumpeter
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
portō (1) carry, bear, take, convey*
principiō first(ly), in the first place
pyra, ae f. funeral pyre
quālis, e (of) what sort, (such) as*
refringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus break off†
rōbur, oris n. oak; strength*
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, slice, cleave*
sēminō (1) sow, produce, bear†
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess
soleō, ēre, itus sum be accustomed
speciēs, ēī f. appearance, sight, aspect
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctus build, heap
(up)
suprēma, ōrum n. last rites, funeral
taeda, ae f. pine, pine (torch, faggot)
teres, etis smooth, rounded, polished
truncus, i m. trunk, stem, body
undō (1) boil, wave, fluctuate, seethe
unguō, ere, ūnxī, ūnctus anoint
vireō, ēre be green, grow, flourish†
vīscum, i n. mistletoe†

206. *novā fronde*: abl. of manner.
quod nōn sua sēminat arbōs: the mistle-
toe is a parasite, and its leaves and
berries therefore are different from those
of the tree on which it grows (*arbōs sua*).

211. *cūctantem*: as it seemed to
Aeneas in his eager haste.

212-235. Aeneas erects a tomb for
Misenus at the foot of a lofty mountain,
henceforth known as Mt. Misenum.

213. *ingrātō*: thankless, because un-
feeling. *suprēma ferēbant*: were paying
the last rites, honors.

Fit gemitus. *Tum* membra torō dēflēta repōnunt 220
 purpureāsque super vestīs, vēlāmina nōta,
 conjiciunt. *Pars ingentī subiēre* feretrō,
trīste ministerium, et subjectam mōre parentum
 āversī tenuēre facem. Congesta cremantur
 tūrea dōna, dapēs, fūsō crātēres olivō. 225
 Postquam conlāpsī cinerēs et flamma quiēvit,
 relliquiās vinō et bibulam lāvēre favillam,
 ossaque lēcta cadō tēxit Corynaeus aēnō.
Īdem ter sociōs pūrā circumtulit undā
 spargēns rōre levī et rāmō fēlicis olivae, 230
 lūstrāvitque virōs dīxitque novissima verba.
At pius Aenēas ingentī mōle sepulcrum
 impōnit suaque arma virō rēmumque tubamque
 monte sub aeriō, quī nunc Misēnus ab illō
 dīcitur aeternumque tenet per saecula nōmen. 7 235

aēnus, a, um (of) bronze, brazen
 aērius, a, um airy, lofty, towering
 aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal*
 āvertō, ere, ī, rsus turn away, avert*
 bibulus, a, um thirsty, absorbent†
 cadus, ī m. cask, urn
 cinis, eris m. ashes (of the dead), embers*
 circumferō, ferre, tuli, lātus carry round,
 go round; purify†
 congerō, ere, gessī, gestus heap (up)
 conjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus heap (up)
 conlābor, ī, lāpsus fall (in), collapse
 Corynaeus, ī m. Trojan priest†
 crātēr, ēris m. mixing bowl
 cremō (1) burn, cremate, consume†
 daps, dapis f. (sacrificial) feast, banquet*
 dēflēō, ēre, ēvī, ētus bewail, lament†
 favilla, ae f. cinder, ashes, embers
 fax, facis f. torch, firebrand*
 fēlix, icis happy, fruitful, fortunate*
 feretrum, ī n. bier, death couch†
 fiō, fierī, factus become, be made
 gemitus, ūs m. groan(ing), wail(ing)*
 impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on*
 lavō, āre, (āv)ī, ātus (lautus) wash, drench
 legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus gather, choose*
 levīs, e light, slight, swift, trivial
 lūstrō (1) survey, traverse; purify*
 membrum, ī n. member, limb, body*
 ministerium, (i) ī n. service, duty, office†

Misēnus, ī m. Italian promontory†
 mōlēs, is f. (huge) mass, bulk, burden*
 mōs, mōris m. custom, ritual, manner*
 nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
 olivā, ae f. olive (tree)
 olivum, ī n. (olive) oil†
 os, ossis n. bone*
 postquam after (that), when*
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
 pūrus, a, um pure, clear, clean
 quiēscō, ere, ēvī, ētus (become) quiet,
 rest*
 rāmus, ī m. branch, limb, bough*
 re(l)iquiae, ārum f. remains, rest, leavings
 repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus replace, re-
 move*
 rōs, rōris m. dew, moisture
 saeculum, ī n. generation, age, eternity
 sepulcrum, ī n. tomb, grave
 spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
 subjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus place under
 tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus cover, hide*
 ter three times, thrice*
 torus, ī m. couch, bier*
 tuba, ae f. trumpet
 tūreus, a, um of incense†
 vēlāmen, inis n. covering, veil, garment
 verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk
 vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*
 vinum, ī n. wine*

221. purpureās vestis: the customary color at great Roman funerals.

222. feretrō: dat. with compound subeō, instead of the usual acc.

223. ministerium: apposition with pars subiēre feretrō. mōre parentum: Introd. 6.

229. circumtulit = lūstrāvit: purified.

231. novissima verba: "Valē," repeated three times. See notes on I, 219; II, 644; III, 68.

234. Misēnus: the place is still called Punta di Miseno, or Capo Miseno.

235. dicitur = vocātur, as often.

/ *Hīs āctīs* properē exsequitur praecepta Sibyllae.
 Spēlunca *alta fuit vastōque immānis* hiātū,
 scrūpea, tūta lacū nigrō nemorumque tenebris,
 quam super haud ūllae poterant impūne volantēs
 240 *tendere iter pennīs: tālis sēsē hālitus ātrīs*
faucibus effundēns supera ad convexa ferēbat:
 [unde locum Graji dīxērunt nōmine Aornon.]
 Quattuor hīc primum nigrantis terga juvencōs
 cōstituit frontīque invergit vīna sacerdōs,
 245 *et summās carpēns media inter cornua saetās*
ignibus impōnit sacrīs, libāmina prīma,
vōce vocāns Hecatēn caelōque Erebōque potentem.]
 Suppōnunt aliī cultrōs tepidumque cruōrem
 suscipiunt pateris. *Ipsē ātrī velleris agnam*

agna, *ae f.* ewe lamb
 Aornus, *i, acc. on, m. (f.)* birdless (lake),
 Avernus†
 carpō, *ere, psī, ptus* pluck, take, consume
 cōstituō, *ere, uī, ūtus* place, establish,
 stand
 convexum, *i n.* hollow, vault (of the
 sky)
 cornū, *ūs n.* horn, tip, end
 cruor, *ōris m.* blood, gore
 culter, *trī m.* knife, butcher knife†
 effundō, *ere, fūdī, fūsus* pour out*
 Erebus, *i m.* the lower world, Hades
 exsequor, *i, secūtus* perform, execute
 faucēs, *ium f.* jaws, throat, pass(age)
 frōns, *frontis f.* front, forehead, brow*
 Grajus, *a, um* Greek*
 hālitus, *ūs m.* breath, exhalation
 Hecatē, *ēs f.* goddess of the lower world
 hiātus, *ūs m.* yawning (mouth)†
 impōnō, *ere, posuī, pos(i)tus* place on
 (dat.)*
 impūne safely, with impunity
 invergō, *ere* invert, pour on†
 iter, *itineris n.* way, road, journey*
 juvencus, *i m.* bullock, ox*
 lacus, *ūs m.* lake, marsh, mere

libāmen, *inis n.* libation, offering†
 nemus, *oris n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
 niger, *gra, grum* black, gloomy, dusky*
 nigrāns, *antis* black, gloomy, dark
 patera, *ae f.* (libation) bowl
 penna, *ae f.* wing, feather
 potēns, *entis* powerful, ruling, mighty*
 praeceptum, *i n.* bidding, teaching
 properē quickly, speedily†
 quattuor four
 sacerdōs, *ōtis m. (f.)* priest(ess)*
 saeta, *ae f.* hair, bristle†
 scrūpeus, *a, um* stony, rugged, rough†
 Sibylla, *ae f.* ancient Italian prophetess
 spēlunca, *ae f.* cave, cavern, grotto
 suppōnō, *ere, posuī, pos(i)tus* place be-
 neath
 suscipiō, *ere, cēpī, ceptus* catch up
 tenebrae, *ārum f.* darkness, gloom
 tepidus, *a, um* warm, tepid
 tergum, *i n.* back, hide*
 tūtus, *a, um* safe, protected, secure*
 unde whence, from which source*
 vellus, *eris n.* fleece, wool, fillet
 vinum, *i n.* wine*
 volāns, *antis m. (f.)* bird, fowl, flying
 creature

236-263. Before the entrance to the lower world Aeneas and the Sibyl sacrifice by night to the gods of the lower world, and in answer to their prayers Hecate comes and opens the entrance shortly before daybreak.

236. (Aenēās) exsequitur.

237. Spēlunca: not the one mentioned in l. 42.

242. dīxērunt nōmine = vocāvērunt. Aornon: a Greek word meaning *birdless*. Avernus is thus fancifully derived from

Aornos for the reasons given in ll. 239-241. This line is not found in the best manuscripts and may be a later addition to the poem.

243. nigrantis: see the notes on V, 97.

244. fronti: dat. with compound.

247. (in) caelōque Erebōque potentem: she was Diana in Heaven and Hecate in Hades.

248. Suppōnunt: *place beneath* (the throats of the victims).

249. ātrī velleris: see the notes on V, 97.

Aenēās mātrī Eumenidum magnaeque sorōrī 250
ēnse ferit, sterilemque tibi, Prōserpina, vaccam.
Tum Stygiō rēgi nocturnās incohat ārās
et solida impōnit taurōrum viscera flammīs,
pingue super oleum fundēns ardentibus extīs.
Ecce autem prīmī sub lūmina sōlis et ortūs 255
sub pedibus mūgīre solum et juga coepta movērī
silvārum, vīsaeque canēs ululāre per umbram
adventante deā. "Procul Ō, procul este, profānī"
conclāmat vātēs, "tōtōque absistite lūcō;
tūque invāde viam vāgināque ēripe ferrum: 260
nunc animīs opus, Aenēā, nunc pectore firmō."
Tantum effāta furēns antrō sē immisit apertō;
ille ducem haud timidīs vādentem passibus aequat.

[*Dī, quibus imperium est animārum, umbraeque silentēs*

absistō, ere, stitī depart, withdraw
adventō (1) keep coming nearer, arrive, approach
aequō (1) equal(ize), keep pace with*
antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto*
apertus, a, um open(ed), revealed, clear
autem however, moreover, but*
canis, is m. (f.) dog, hound
coeptī, isse, ptus begin, commence
conclāmō (1) call, shout, exclaim
dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief*
ecce see! look! behold!*
effor, āri, ātus speak, say, utter
ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*
Eumenides, um f. Furies
exta, ōrum n. entrails, vitals
feriō, ire strike, smite, cut, kill
firmus, a, um stout, firm, resolute
immittō, ere, misi, missus send in, fling into
impōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus place on (dat.)*
incohō (1) commence, begin, consecrate, build†
invādō, ere, sī, sus enter (on), attack
jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge*

lūcus, ī m. (sacred) grove, wood*
mūgiō, ire, ivi (ii), itus bellow, roar
nocturnus, a, um of the night, nocturnal
oleum, ī n. (olive) oil
opus, eris n. work, need (abl.)*
ortus, ūs m. rising, source, spring
passus, ūs m. step, pace, stride, gait
pinguis, e fat, rich, fertile
profānus, a, um unholy, uninitiated†
Prōserpina, ae f. wife of Pluto and goddess of Hades
silēns, entis silent, still, quiet
sōl, sōlis m. sun, day*
solidus, a, um solid, whole, firm
solum, ī n. ground, earth, soil*
soror, ōris f. sister*
sterilis, e barren, sterile, unfruitful
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a river of Hades*
taurus, ī m. bull, ox, bullock*
timidus, a, um timid, fearful, anxious†
ululō (1) howl, wail, bark, shriek
vacca, ae f. heifer, young cow
vādō, ere go, advance, proceed, go (on)
vāgina, ae f. scabbard, sheath
viscus, eris n. vitals, flesh

250. mātrī Eumenidum magnaeque sorōrī: refer to Nox and Tellus, daughters of Chaos.

252. Stygiō rēgi: Pluto (Dis), god of the lower world. **nocturnās:** sacrifices to the deities of the lower world were regularly offered in the night.

254. super: with the final syllable irregularly lengthened under the verse accent; App. 394, a.

256-257. coepta (sunt), vīsae (sunt).

258. deā: Hecate coming to open the

way and attended by the hounds of Hades. **profānī:** the companions of Aeneas who could not go with him.

261. animis: abl. with **opus (est);** App. 341.

262. furēns: see the notes on II, 345.

264-267. Vergil here pauses in the narrative to invoke the gods of the lower world and to ask permission to reveal these sacred mysteries.

- 265 *et Chaos et Phlegethōn, loca nocte tacentia lātē,
sit mihi fās audita loqui, sit nūmine vestrō
pandere rēs altā terrā et cāligine mersās.*
*Ībant obscuri sōlā sub nocte per umbram
perque domōs Dītis vacuās et inānia rēgna:*
270 *quāle per incertam lūnam sub lūce malignā
est iter in silvis, ubi caelum condidit umbrā
Juppiter, et rēbus nox abstulit ātra colōrem.*
*Vestibulum ante ipsum prīmīs in faucibus Orci
Lūctus et ultricēs posuēre cubilia Cūrae;*
275 *pallentēsque habitant Morbī trīstisque Senectūs,
et Metus et malesuāda Famēs ac turpis Egestās,
terribilēs vīsū formae, Lētumque Labōsque;
tum cōnsanguineus Lēti Sopor et mala mentis*

auferō, ferre, abstulī, ablātus remove
cāligo, inis *f.* (thick) darkness, fog
Chaos *n. indecl.* abyss, empty space
color, ōris *m.* color, hue, tint
condō, ere, didi, dītus found; hide*
cōnsanguineus, i *m.* kinsman, brother
cubile, is *n.* couch, bed
Cūra, ae *f.* Care, Anxiety
Dis, Dītis *m.* Pluto, god of Hades
Egestās, ātis *f.* Need, Want†
Famēs, is *f.* Hunger, Famine, Greed
fās *n. indecl.* right, justice, divine will*
faucēs, ium *f.* jaws, throat; pass(age)
forma, ae *f.* shape, form, beauty*
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell (in), possess
inānis, e empty, ghostly, useless*
incertus, a, um doubtful, uncertain
iter, itineris *n.* way, road, journey*
lātē far and wide, widely
Lētum, i *n.* Death, Destruction, Ruin*
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk,
tell*
Lūctus, ūs *m.* Grief, Sorrow, Agony

lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
malesuādus, a, um ill-counseling†
malignus, a, um scanty, spiteful
malus, a, um evil, wicked, false, bad*
mergō, ere, rsi, rsus sink, plunge†
Metus, ūs *m.* Fear, Fright, Anxiety*
Morbis, i *m.* Disease, Sickmess†
obscurus, a, um dark, dim, gloomy*
Orcus, i *m.* (god of the) lower world,
Hades; tomb
pallēns, entis pale, pallid, wan
pandō, ere, ī, passus spread, disclose*
Phlegethōn, ontis *m.* fiery river of Hades†
quālis, e (of) what sort, (such) as*
Senectūs, ūtis *f.* Old Age, Eld
Sopor, ōris *m.* Sleep, Slumber
tacēns, entis silent, quiet, still
terribilis, e frightful, terrible, dire
turpis, e shameful, disgraceful
ultrix, icis avenging
vacuus, a, um empty, free, deserted
vester, tra, trum your(s), your own*
vestibulum, i *n.* entrance, vestibule

266. sit fās mihi: vol. or opt. subj.;
App. 254, 253. audita loqui: to tell what
I have heard.

267. (in) altā terrā: deep in the earth;
App. 246.

268-294. Accompanied by the Sibyl
Aeneas sets out on his journey. Near the
entrance they find the death-bringing
powers, and a little farther the horrible
monsters of Hades.

268. Ībant (Aenēās et Sibylla).

272. rēbus: dat. of separation.

274-281. Observe the personification
of abstract ideas.

277-278. Lētum; tum cōnsanguineus
Lēti Sopor: "Sleep and his brother
Death." Cf. Shelley, *Queen Mab*:

"Death and his brother Sleep,
One pale as yonder waning moon
With lips of lurid blue,
The other rosy as the morn."

and Tennyson, *In Memoriam*, 67:

"When in the down I sink my head,
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, times my
breath;
Sleep, Death's twin-brother, knows
not Death,
Nor can I think of thee as dead."

Gaudia, mortiferumque adversō in limine Bellum,
ferreique Eumenidum thalamī et Discordia dēmēns 280
vipereum crinem vittis innexa cruentis.

In mediō rāmōs annōsaque braccia pandit
ulmus opāca, ingēns, quam sēdem Somnia vulgō
vāna tenēre ferunt, foliisque sub omnibus haerent.
Multaque praetereā variārum mōnstra ferārū, 285
Centaurī in foribus stabulant Scyllaeque biformēs
et centumgeminus Briareus ac bēlua Larnae
horrendum stridēns, flammisque armāta Chimaera,
Gorgones Harpyiaque et forma tricornis umbrae.
Corripit hūc subitā trepidus formidine ferrum 290

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
annōsus, a, um aged, ancient
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
bēlua, ae f. beast, monster†
biformis, e two-formed, double-shaped
bracchium, (i)ī n. arm, limb*
Briareus, ei m. a sea-monster with a hundred hands†
Centaurus, i m. a monster with the body of a horse and the head of a man†
centumgeminus, a, um hundredfold = hundred-armed†
Chimaera, ae f. fire-breathing monster, having the head of a goat, and a tail ending in a serpent's head†
corripio, ere, ui, reptus snatch (up)*
crinis, is m. lock, hair, tresses*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
dēmēns, entis insane, mad, distracted
Discordia, ae f. Strife, Discord†
Eumenides, um f. the Furies
fera, ae f. wild beast
ferreus, a, um (of) iron
folium, (i)ī n. leaf, foliage
foris, is f. door, gate, entrance
forma, ae f. shape, form, beauty*
formidō, inis f. fear, fright, dread
Gaudium, (i)ī n. Joy, Delight, Pleasure
Gorgō, onis f. snaky-locked monster who turned all beholders to stone
haereō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to), stick*

Harpyia, ae f. foul and ravenous monster with the face of a woman and the body of a bird
horrendus, a, um horrifying, dreadful*
innectō, ere, nex(u)i, nexus weave (in)
Lerna, ae f. marsh near Argos in southern Greece, home of the Hydra, a monster with seven serpent heads, slain by Hercules as the second of his twelve labors†
medium, (i)ī n. middle, midst, center
mōnstrum, i n. monster, portent, sign*
mortifer, era, erum death-bringing†
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
pandō, ere, i, passus spread, open*
praetereā besides, also, in addition*
rāmus, i m. branch, limb, bough*
Scylla, ae f. a monster half maiden and half fish, girt around the waist with howling dogs (wolves)
Somnium, (i)ī n. Dream†
stabulō (1) dwell, be stabled†
strid(e)ō, ēre, i hiss, creak, whir
subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
thalamus, i m. (bridal) chamber, bedroom*
trepidus, a, um agitated, scared, alarmed
tricornis, oris three-bodied†
ulmus, i f. elm†
vānus, a, um empty, idle, vain
varius, a, um various, different, diverse*
vipereus, a, um snaky, of snakes†
vitta, ae f. fillet, ribbon, band*
vulgō commonly, everywhere

280. ferrei: two syllables here by synizesis; App. 403.

281. crinem: obj. of the middle part., innexa; App. 309, a.

282. In mediō (vestibulō).

284. ferunt = dicunt, as often.

288. horrendum: cognate acc.; translate an adverb. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 625-628:

"All monstrous, all prodigious things,
Abominable, inutterable, and worse

Than fables yet have feigned, or fear
conceived,
Gorgons, and Hydras, and Chimaeras
dire."

289. Gorgonēs: a Greek form; App. 65, a. Harpyiae: three syllables, the yi making a diphthong pronounced *we*. forma tricornis umbrae: Geryon, a Hispanian giant with three bodies, slain by Hercules.

*Aenēās strictamque aciem venientibus offert,
et nī docta comes tenuis sine corpore vitās
admoneat volitāre cavā sub imāgine formae,
inruat et frūstrā ferrō diverberet umbrās.*

295

Hinc via Tartareī quae fert Acherontis ad undās.

*Turbidus hīc caenō vastāque vorāgine gurgēs
aestuāt atque omnem Cōcētō ērūctat harēnam.*

300

*Portitor hās horrendus aquās et flūmina servat
terribili squālōre Charōn, cui plūrima mentō
cānitiēs inculta jacet, stant lūmina flammā,
sordidus ex umerīs nōdō dēpendet amictus.
Ipse ratem contō subigit vētisque ministrat
et ferrūgineā subvectat corpora cumbā,
jam senior, sed crūda deō viridisque senectūs.*

Acherōn, ontis *m.* (a gloomy river of)

Hades

aciēs, ēi *f.* edge; eyesight; battle-line*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, admonish

aestuō (1) boil, seethe, surge†

amictus, ūs *m.* wrap, cloak, mantle

aqua, ae *f.* water, waves, flood*

caenum, ī *n.* mud, mire, dirt, filth†

cānitiēs, ēi *f.* grayness, gray hair†

cavus, a, um hollow, empty*

Charōn, ontis *m.* ferryman who transported the souls of the dead across the river Styx in Hades†

Cōcētus, ī *m.* gloomy river of Hades

contus, ī *m.* pole, pike

crūdus, a, um raw, fresh, bloody

cumbā, ae *f.* skiff, boat, bark†

dēpendeō, ēre hang (down), depend

dīverberō (1) strike asunder, beat, cleave

doctus, a, um learned, wise, skilled

ērūctō (1) vomit, belch (forth)

ferrūgineus, a, um rusty, dusky†

flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*

forma, ae *f.* form, shape, beauty*

frūstrā in vain, uselessly, idly*

gurgēs, itis *m.* stream, whirlpool, gulf*

harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*

horrendus, a, um horrifying, dread(ful)*

imāgō, inis *f.* image, likeness, ghost*

incultus, a, um unkempt, shaggy

inruō, ere, uī rush (on), attack

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*

mentum, ī *n.* chin, beard

ministrō (1) serve, tend, provide

nisi, nī if not, unless*

nōdus, ī *m.* knot, fold

offerō, ferre, obtuli, oblātus present

portitor, ōris *m.* ferryman†

ratis, is *f.* raft, ship, boat*

senectūs, ūtis *f.* old age, eld

senex, senis old, aged; senior, ōris older,

very old*

sine without (*abl.*)*

sordidus, a, um dirty, filthy, squalid†

squālōr, ōris *m.* filth, squalor†

stringō, ere, strīnxī, strictus draw, brush

subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus force, push

subvectō (1) bear, convey, transport†

Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, abode of the wicked in Hades†

tenuis, e slight, unsubstantial, thin

terribilis, e terrible, dire, awful

turbidus, a, um wild, turbid, thick

viridis, e green, fresh, vigorous*

volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

vorāgō, inis *f.* whirlpool, whirling water†

292. vitās = animās, umbrās.

292-294. nī admoneat: condition contrary to fact. inruat, diverberet: conclusions contrary to fact. sub cavā imāgine formae: 'neath hollow show of form (Rhoades). diverberet: conative, would have tried to strike asunder; App. 351, 2, a.

295-336. The river Styx, Charon the boatman, and the souls of the unburied dead, among whom Aeneas recog-

nizes his friends, Leucaspis and Orontes.

296. caenō: *abl.* of means or cause. vastā vorāgine: *abl.* of quality.

297. Cōcētō: *dat.* of direction.

299. squālōre: *abl.* of quality. cui mentō: *on his chin.*

300. stant lūmina flammā: *his eyes are aflame with fire.*

301. nōdō: *abl.* of manner.

304. deō: *dat.* of possession.

Hūc omnis turba ad ripās effūsa ruēbat, 305
mātrēs atque virī dēfūntaque corpora vitā
magnanimum hērōum, puerī innūptaeque puellae,
impositique rogīs juvenēs ante ōra parentum:
quam multa in silvīs autumnī frīgore primō
lāpsa cadunt folia, aut ad terram gurgite ab altō 310
quam multae glomerantur avēs, ubi frigidus annus
trāns pontum fugat et terrīs immittit apricis.
Stābant ōrantēs primī trāsmittere cursum,
tendēbantque manūs ripae ulteriōris amōre.
Nāvita sed trīstis nunc hōs nunc accipit illōs, 315
ast aliōs longē summōtōs arcet harēnā.
Aenēās mīrātus enim mōtusque tumultū
“Dic” ait, “Ō virgō, quid vult concursus ad amnem?
Quidve petunt animae? Vel quō discrimine ripās
hae linquunt, illae rēmīs vada livida verrunt?” 320

amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
annus, ī *m.* year, season*
apricus, a, um sunny, sun-loving
arceō, ēre, ūi keep off, defend, confine
autumnus, ī *m.* autumn, fall†
avis, is *f.* bird, fowl
cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
concursum, ūs *m.* gathering, concourse
dēfungor, ī, fūctus finish, perform (*abl.*)
discrimen, inis *n.* distinction, crisis
effundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour out, scatter*
enim for, indeed, truly*
folium, (i)ī *n.* leaf, foliage
frigidus, a, um cold, chilly, frosty
frigus, oris *n.* cold, chill, frost
fugō (1) put to flight, rout, drive off
glomerō (1) assemble, gather, roll together
gurgēs, itis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf*
harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
immittō, ere, misi, missus send in(to),
 let go (*dat.*)
impōnō, ere, posui, pos(i)tus place on
 (*dat.*)*

innūptus, a, um unmarried, virgin
juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man,
 woman)*
linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, forsake*
lividus, a, um blue, dark, livid†
longē (from) afar, far off*
magnanimus, a, um great-souled, noble
mīror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire*
nāvita, ae *m.* sailor, ferryman†
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
pontus, ī *m.* sea, waves*
puella, ae *f.* girl, maiden
quam how, than, as*
ripa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
rogus, ī *m.* funeral pyre
summoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove†
trāns across, beyond (*acc.*)
trāsmittō, ere, misi, missus send across,
 cross
tumultus, ūs *m.* tumult, uproar, hubbub
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
ulterior, ius farther, remoter
vadam, ī *n.* shallow, ford; deep
verrō, ere, ī, rsus sweep (over), scour
virgō, inis *f.* maid(en), virgin, girl*

305. ad ripās: enlarging upon hūc.

306. vitā: *abl.* with dēfungor; App. 342.

307. magnanim(ōr)um.

309. quam multa: as many (as).
 frigore: *abl.* of time when.

313. ōrantēs trāsmittere: poetic for
 the prose ōrantēs ut trāsmittant; App.

360. (sē) trāsmittere. cursum: obj. of
 trāns in trāsmittere; App. 308, a.

314. ripae: obj. gen.; App. 284.

315. Nāvita tristis: Charon, called
 portitor in l. 298. Cf. Shakespeare, *Rich-*
ard III, I, 4, 46:

"that grim ferryman that poets write
 of."

316. submōtōs arcet = submovet et
 arcet.

318. Dic: imp. quid vult: what
 means?

320. hae (animae): refused passage
 by Charon.

- Olli sic breviter fāta est longaeva sacerdōs:*
"Anchisā generāte, deum certissima prōlēs,
Cōcȳti stāgna alta vidēs Stygiamque palūdem,
dī cūjus iūrāre timent et fallere nūmen.
- 325 *Haec omnis, quam cernis, inops inhumātaque turba est;*
portitor ille Charōn; hī, quōs vehit unda, sepultī.
Nec ripās datur horrendās et rauca fluenta
trānsportāre prius quam sēdibus ossa quiērunt.
Centum errant annōs volitantque haec litora circum;
- 330 *tum dēum admissi stāgna exoptāta revisunt."*
Cōstitit Anchisā satus et vestigia pressit
multa putāns sortemque animō miserātus iniquam.
Cernit ibi maestōs et mortis honōre carentis
Leucaspim et Lyciae ductōrem classis Orontēn,

admittō, ere, mīsi, missus admit†
 annus, ī *m.* year, season*
 breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
 careō, ēre, uī, itus lack, be free (*abl.*)
 centum hundred*
 certus, a, um certain, sure, undoubted*
 Charōn, ontis *m.* ferryman of souls
 across the Styx in Hades
 Cōcȳtus, ī *m.* mournful river of Hades
 cōsistō, ere, stiti, stitus stand (fast)*
 dēum at length, finally
 ductor, ōris *m.* leader, pilot, chief
 exoptō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)
 fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, prove
 false (to)*
 fluentum, ī *n.* stream, river, flood
 generō (1) generate, beget, bear
 horrendus, a, um horrifying, dread(ful)*
 ibi there, then
 inhumātus, a, um unburied
 iniquus, a, um unequal, unfair, unjust
 inops, opis needy, helpless, destitute
 iūrō (1) swear (by), take oath
 Leucaspis, (id)is *m.* Trojan leader†
 longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
 Lycius, a, um Lycian, Trojan
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*

miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*
 Orontēs, is *m.* Trojan leader
 os, ossis *n.* bone*
 palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
 portitor, ōris *m.* ferryman
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press*
 prius sooner
 prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
 putō (1) think, suppose, consider
 quam how, than, as*
 quiēscō, ere, ēvi, ētus rest, repose*
 raucus, a, um hoarse, roaring
 revisō, ere revisit, see again
 ripa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
 sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)*
 sepeliō, ire, ivi (ii), sepultus bury, inter
 serō, ere, sēvi, satus sow, beget*
 sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion, oracle*
 stāgnum, ī *n.* lake, marsh, mere
 Stygius, a, um of the Styx, a river of
 Hades*
 timeō, ēre, uī fear, dread, be anxious*
 trānsportō (1) carry across, transport†
 turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
 vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus convey, bear*
 vestigium, (i) ī *n.* step, track, trace*
 volitō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter

321. *longaeva*: according to the legend, the Sibyl had been granted as many years as the grains of sand she could hold in her hand, but was not allowed to retain her youth.

324. *By whose divine power the gods fear to swear and prove false.*

325. *inops*: perhaps without the small coin usually placed in the mouth of the corpse to pay his passage across the Styx. *inhumāta*: no one was allowed to cross the Styx unless duly buried.

327. *Nec datur (Charontī) trānsportāre (animās). ripās, fluenta*: objects of the preposition *trāns* in composition; App. 308, a.

328. (in) *sēdibus*: tomb, as in l. 152. *quiē(vē)runt*.

331. *Anchisā satus*: son of Anchises. (re) *pressit*.

332. (in) *animō*.

333. *mortis honōre*: burial.

334. *Orontēn*: lost in the storm, I, 113-119.

quōs simul ā Trojā ventōsa per aequora vectōs 335
obruit Auster, aquā involvēns nāvemque virōsque.

[Ecce gubernātor sēsē Palinūrus agēbat,
quī Libycō nūper cursū, dum sīdera servat,
excidērat puppī mediīs effūsus in undīs.
Hunc ubi vix multā maestum cognōyit in umbrā, 340
sic priōr adlōquitur: "Quis tē, Palinūre, dēōrūm
ēripuit nōbīs mediōque sub aequore mersit?

Dīc age. Namque mihī, fallāx haud ante repertus,
hōc unō respōnsō animum dēlūsit Apollō,
quī fore tē pontō incolumem finisque canēbat 345
ventūrum Ausoniōs. En haec prōmissa fidēs est?"

Ille autem: "Neque tē Phoebī cortīna fefellit,
dux Anchisiadē, nec mē deus aequore mersit.
Namque gubernāclum multā vī forte revulsum,
cui datus haerēbam cūstōs cursūsque regēbam," 350

adloquor, i, locūtus address, accost
Anchisiadēs, ae m. descendant of Anchises, Aeneas
Apollō, inis m. god of light, music, and prophecy*
aqua, ae f. water, waves, flood*
Ausonius, a, um Italian
Auster, trī m. (south) wind*
autem moreover, however, but*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant, prophesy, proclaim*
cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize
cortīna, ae f. caldron (resting on a tripod and serving as a seat for the priestess of Delphi when she delivered an oracle), kettle
cūstōs, ōdis m. guard(ian), sentinel*
dēlūdō, ere, sī, sus deceive, delude†
dux, ducis m. (f.) leader, guide, chief*
ecce see! look! behold!*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, hurl*
ēn see! look! behold!
excidō, ere, i fall (out), perish
fallāx, ācis deceitful, treacherous
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, cheat*

fidēs, ei f. faith, trust, pledge, fidelity*
gubernāc(u)lum, i n. tiller, rudder
gubernātor, ōris m. pilot, helmsman
haerēō, ēre, haesi, haesus cling (to)*
incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact
involvō, ere, i, volūtus wrap, engulf
Libycus, a, um of Libya, a country of North Africa*
maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
mergō, ere, rsi, rsus sink, drown
nūper recently, lately
obruō, ere, uī, utus overwhelm, bury
Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot*
Phoebus, i m. Apollo, god of light, music, and prophecy*
pontus, i m. sea, waves*
prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
prōmittō, ere, mīsi, missus promise*
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, direct, guide*
reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus find
respōnsū, i n. answer, oracle, reply
revellō, ere, i, vulsus tear off, remove
vehō, ere, vēxi, vectus bear, convey*
ventōsus, a, um windy, stormy†

337-383. They meet with the soul of Palinurus, who wishes to cross with Aeneas, but is consoled by the Sibyl with a promise of eternal fame.

337. sēsē agēbat: was passing along.

338. Libycō cursū: V, 827-871.

339. mediīs effūsus in undīs = effūsus in undās manēbat in undīs.

343. Dīc: imp.; App. 202. mihī: dat. of agent with repertus.

345. (in) pontō. (in) finis.

347. Phoebī cortīna: from which the oracles were delivered.

348. deus (Phoebus).

349. gubernāc(u)lum: obj. of trāxi, l. 351.

350. cursūs (nāvis tuae).

praecipitāns trāxī mēcum. Maria aspera jūrō
nōn ullum prō mē tantum cēpisse timōrem,
quam tua nē spoliāta armīs, excussa magistrō,
dēficeret tantis nāvis surgentibus undīs.

355 →
Chasmodon

Trīs Notus hibernās immēnsa per aequora noctēs
vēxit mē violentus aquā; vix lūmine quārtō
prōspexi Italiā summā sublimis ab undā.

360

Paulatim adnābam terrā; jam tūtā tēnēbam,
nī gēns crūdēlis madidā cūm vestē gravātum
prēnsantemque uncīs manibūs capita aspera montis
aprychus ferrō invāsisset praedamque ignāra putāset.

Nunc mē fluctus habet versantque in litore ventī.

Quod tē per caelī jūcundum lūmen et aurās,
per genitōrem ōrō, per spēs surgentis Iūli,

355

ēripe mē hīs, invicte, malīs: aut tū mihi terram
inijce, namque potes, portūsque requīre Velinōs;

adnō (1) swim, float to (*dat.*)
aqua, *ae f.* water, waves, flood*
asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
crūdēlis, e cruel, bloody, fierce*
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus fail, sink
executiō, ere, cussī, cussus shake off,
free (from)*

gravō (1) burden, weigh down, oppress
hibernus, a, um wintry, of the winter
ignārus, a, um ignorant, unaware*
immēnsus, a, um boundless, vast
inijciō, ere, jēcī, jectus cast upon
invādō, ere, sī, sus enter, attack
invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible†
Iūlus, ī *m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
jūcundus, a, um pleasant, delightful†
jūrō (1) swear (by), take oath
madidus, a, um wet, dripping
magister, trī *m.* master, pilot, chief
malum, ī *n.* evil, misfortune, trouble*
nisi, nī if not, unless*
Notus, ī *m.* (south) wind
ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, beseech*
paulatim gradually, little by little

praecipitō (1) throw, fall headlong
praeda, *ae f.* booty, spoils, plunder
pr(ē)hēnsō (1) catch, grasp, seize
prō before, in behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus discern, see
in front

putō (1) think, suppose, consider
quam how, than, as*
quārtus, a, um fourth
quod because, but, the fact that, where-
fore

requirō, ere, sīvī, sītus seek (again)
spēs, eī *f.* hope, expectation*
spoliō (1) rob, strip, despoil (*abl.*)
sublimis, e high, uplifted, aloft, exalted
timor, ōris *m.* fear, dread, anxiety
trēs, tria three*
tūtus, a, um safe, protected, secure*
uncus, a, um curved, bent, arched
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus bear, convey*
Velinus, a, um of Velia, an Italian city†
versō (1) keep turning, toss, roll
vestis, ī *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
violentus, a, um boisterous, violent†

351. (per) maria aspera jūrō.

352. tantum timōrem (mē) cēpisse: timōrem is subject and mē the object.

353-354. armīs, magistrō: ablatives of separation. armīs: here refers to the tiller. nē dēficeret: after the idea of fearing in timōrem mē cēpisse; App. 363.

356. aquā: *abl.* of route or of place. lūmine: *day*, as often.

358. tenēbam: mixed condition; App. 382, *d.*

359-361. (mē) gravātum. capita montis: *edge of the cliff*. nī invāsisset, putā(vi)sset: conditions contrary to fact; App.

382. praedam: they thought he might have some object of value on his person.

365-366. mihi terram injice: if only three handfuls, the minimum requirement for burial rites and consequent entrance into Hades.

*aut tū, sī qua via est, sī quam tibi dīva creātrix
ostendit (neque enim, crēdō, sine nūmine dīvum
flūmina tanta parās Stygiamque innāre palūdem),
dā dextram miserō et tēcum mē tolle per undās, 370
sēdibus ut saltem placidīs in morte quīescam.”*
Tālia fātus erat coepit cum tālia vātēs:
“Unde haec, Ō Palinūre, tibi tam dira cupidō?
Tū Stygiās inhumātus aquās amnemque sevērū
Eumenidum aspiciēs, rīpamve injussus adibis? 375
Dēsine fāta deum flectī spērāre precandō.
Sed cape dicta memor, dūrī sōlācia cāsūs.
Nam tua finitimī, longē lātēque per urbēs
prōdigiis actī caelestibus, ossa piābunt
et statuent tumulum et tumulō sollemnia mittent, 380
aeternumque locus Palinūrī nōmen habēbit.”
[His dictīs cūrae ēmōtae pulsusque parumper
corde dolor trīstī; gaudet cognōmine terrā.

adeō, ire, ii (ivi), itus. approach
aeternus, a, um everlasting, eternal*
amnis, is m. river, stream*
aqua, ae f. water, waves, flood*
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold*
caelestis, e heavenly, divine, celestial
coepī, isse, ptus begin, undertake
cognōminis, e of like name, of the same
name†
cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
creātrix, icis f. mother, creator†
crēdō, ere, didi, ditus believe, trust*
cupidō, inis f. desire, love, passion
dēsino, ere, sivi (ii), situs cease, desist
dirus, a, um fearful, awful, dire*
dolor, ōris m. grief, pain, passion, anger*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove
enim for, indeed, truly*
Eumenides, um f. Furies
finitimus, i m. neighbor; pl. adjoining
people
flectō, ere, flexi, flexus bend, move
flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvisus sum rejoice, exult
inhumātus, a, um unburied
injussus, a, um unbidden, uninvited†
innō (1) swim, float (on)

lātē wide(ly), far and wide
longē (from) afar, far*
memor, oris mindful, remembering*
os, ossis n. bone*
ostendō, ere, i, ntus show, display
Palinūrus, i m. Trojan pilot*
palūs, ūdis f. swamp, marsh (water),
mere
parumper for a little while, momentarily†
pellō, ere, pepuli, pulsus expel, drive (out)
piō (1) expiate, propitiate
placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
precor, āri, ātus pray, entreat, beg*
prōdigiū, (i) i n. omen, portent, prodigy
quīescō, ere, ēvi, ētus rest, repose*
rīpa, ae f. bank, shore*
saltem at least, at any rate
sevērus, a, um stern, dread, strict†
sine without (abl.)*
sōlācium, (i) i n. consolation, solace
sollemnē, is n. sacrifice, ritual
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, reckon*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtus establish, build
Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a
river of Hades*
tam so (much, greatly), such*
tumulus, i m. mound, tomb*
unde whence, from what source*

370. undās (Stygiās).

374-375. amnem Eumenidum: the
Cocytus.

379. prōdigiis actī: according to the
legend, the Lucanians, the finitimī of
l. 378, were afflicted with a pestilence,
and when they consulted the oracle,

they were ordered to make atonement
to the shades of Palinurus. This they
did by dedicating to him a ceno-
taph (empty tomb) and a grove near
Velia.

381. aeternum: called today Punta
di Palinuro. Cf. l. 235.

- Ergō iter inceptum peragunt fluviōque propinquant.
 385 Nāvita quōs jam inde ut Stygiā prōspexit ab undā
 per tacitum nemus ire pedemque advertere ripae,
 sic prior adgreditur dictis atque increpat ultrō:
 "Quisquis es, armātus quī nostra ad flūmina tendis,
 fāre age quid veniās jam istinc, et comprime gressum.
 390 Umbrārum hic locus est, somnī noctisque sopōrae:
 corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carinā.
 Nec vērō Alcīdēn mē sum laetātus euntem
 accēpisse lacū, nec Thēsea Pirithoūmque,
 dīs quamquam genitī atque invictī viribus essent.
 395 Tartareum ille manū custōdem in vincla petivit
 ipsius ā soliō rēgis trāxitque trementem;

adgredior, ī, gressus address, attack
 advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn toward
 Alcīdēs, ae m. descendant of Alceus,
 Hercules, who descended to Hades and
 carried off Cerberus, the three-headed
 dog

armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
 carina, ae f. keel; ship, boat*
 comprimō, ere, pressī, pressus (re)press
 custōs, ōdis m. (f.) guard(ian), sentinel*
 ergō therefore, then, consequently*
 flūmen, inis n. river, stream, flood*
 fluvius, (i)ī m. river, stream
 gignō, ere, genuī, genitus bear, beget
 gressus, ūs m. step, gait, walk, stride
 incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus begin, under-
 take*

increpō, āre, uī, itus reprove, chide†
 inde thence, from that point*
 invictus, a, um unconquered, invincible
 istinc from where you are†
 iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*
 lacus, ūs m. lake, marsh, mere
 laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult, delight
 nāvita, ae m. sailor, ferryman, mariner
 nefās n. indecl. sin, wrong, impiety*
 nemus, oris n. (sacred) grove, forest*
 peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus complete, do

Pirithoūs, ī m. king of the Lapiths, friend
 of Theseus†

prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*
 propinquō (1) approach, draw near
 (dat.)

prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see (be-
 fore)

quamquam although
 quisquis, quicquid whoever, whichever,
 whatever

ripa, ae f. bank, shore*
 solium, (i)ī n. throne, seat
 sopōrus, a, um slumberous, sleepy†
 Stygius, a, um Stygian, of the Styx, a
 river of Hades*

tacitus, a, um silent, quiet, still, secret
 Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, the lowest
 region of Hades

Thēseus, ei (eos), acc. ea, m. early king
 of Athens who descended to Hades
 with Pirithoūs and attempted to carry
 off Proserpina, Pluto's queen

tremō, ere, uī tremble, shake, quiver*

ultrō further, voluntarily*

vectō (1) convey, carry, bear†

vērō truly, indeed, but

vinc(u)lum, ī n. bond, chain, cable*
 vivus, a, um living, alive, natural

384-416. Charon at first refuses to
 ferry Aeneas and the Sibyl across the
 Styx, but after being shown the golden
 bough he consents.

389. istinc: from where you are, with-
 out approaching nearer.

391. nefās (est).

392. Alcīdēn: the form Herculēn
 (—v—) could not be used in dactylic
 hexameter. nec laetātus: litotes; App.

431. According to the story, Charon

was punished by a year's imprisonment
 for assisting Hercules to enter Hades by
 ferrying him across the Styx. On this
 journey Hercules carried off Cerberus to
 the upper world.

394. viribus: abl. of respect. essent:
 concession; App. 384. In classical prose
 quamquam usually takes the indica-
 tive.

395. ille: Hercules. in vinc(u)la
 petivit = petivit ut caperet vinc(u)lis.
 custōdem: Cerberus.

hī dominam Ditis thalamō dēducere adortī.
Quae contrā breviter fāta est Amphrýsia vātēs:
"Nullae hīc insidiae tālēs (absiste movērī),
nec vim tēla ferunt; licet ingēns jānitor antrō 400
aeternum lātrāns exsanguis terreat umbrās,
casta licet patruī servet Prōserpina līmen.
Trōius Aenēās, pietāte insignis et armīs,
ad genitōrem imās Erebi dēscendit ad umbrās.
Sī tē nulla movet tantae pietātis imāgō, 405
at rānum hunc" (aperit rānum quī veste latēbat)
"agnōscās." Tumida ex irā tum corda residunt.
Nec plūra hīs. Ille admīrāns venerābile dōnum
fātālis virgae longō post tempore vīsum
caeruleam advertit puppim ripaeque propinquat. 410
Inde aliās animās, quae per iuga longa sedēbant,
dēturbat laxatque forōs; simul accipit alveō

absistō, ere, stitī depart, cease, desist
admīrō, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire
adorior, irī, ortus attempt, attack†
advertō, ere, ī, rsus turn (to, toward)
aeternus, a, um eternal, continual, lasting
agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nītus recognize*
alveus, ī m. boat; hollow; trough†
Amphrýsius, a, um Amphrysian, of Amphrysus, a river along which Apollo once herded cattle†
antrum, ī n. cave, cavern, grotto*
aperiō, ire, uī, ertus open, disclose*
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
caerul(e)us, a, um dark (blue)*
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste
contrā opposite, in reply (to)*
cor, rdīs n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dēducō, ere, dūxi, ductus lead off, abduct
dēscendō, ere, ī, ēnsus descend
dēturbō (1) drive off, dislodge
Dis, Ditis m. Pluto, lord of the lower realm
domina, ae f. mistress, queen
Erebus, ī m. Hades, (god of) the lower world
exsanguis, e bloodless, pale, lifeless
fātālis, e fated, fatal, fateful
forus, ī m. gangway, deck
imāgō, inis f. appearance, likeness, phantom*

inde thence, next, thereupon*
insidiae, ārum f. ambush, plot, snare
insignis, e distinguished, marked*
jānitor, ōris m. doorkeeper, porter†
jugum, ī n. yoke, (mountain) ridge; bench*
lateō, ēre, uī lie hid, hide, lurk*
lātrō (1) bark, howl, bay†
laxō (1) loose(n), clear, open, free
licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*
patruus, ī m. paternal uncle†
pietās, ātis f. devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
post after, behind (acc.); next, later*
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (dat.)
Prōserpina, ae f. wife of Pluto and queen of Hades
rāmus, ī m. branch, limb, bough*
residō, ere, sēdi subside, settle
ripa, ae f. bank, shore*
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*
terreō, ēre, uī, itus frighten, terrify
thalamus, ī m. bridal chamber, bedroom*
Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
tumidus, a, um swollen, swelling
venerābilis, e venerable, awful†
vestis, is f. cloth(ing), garment, robe*
virga, ae f. branch, shoot, twig

397. **hī:** Theseus and Pirithoüs. **dominam:** Proserpina.

398. **Amphrýsia vātēs = Apollinēa vātēs,** and refers to the Sibyl.

400. **licet (per nōs):** so far as we are concerned.

401-402. **aeternum:** cognate acc. Translate adverbially. (ut) **terreat, (ut)**

servet. patruī = conjugis: since Proserpina married her paternal uncle.

407. **agnōscās:** vol. subj.; App. 254.

408. **Nec plūra (dicta sunt).** **his:** abl. with comparative. **dōnum:** for Proserpina.

412. **alveō:** dissyllabic here by synizesis, or hypermetric; App. 403, 402.

ingentem Aenēan. Gemuit sub pondere cumba
 sūtilis et multam accēpit rīmōsa palūdem.
 415 *Tandem* trāns fluvium incolumis vātemque virumque
 informi limō glaucāque expōnit in ulvā.

Cerberus haec ingēns lātrātū rēgna trifauci
 personat adversō recubāns immānis in antrō.
Cui vātēs horrēre vidēns jam colla colubris
 420 melle sopōrātā et medicātis frūgibus offam
 objicit. *Ille* famē rabadā tria guttura pandēns
 corripit objectam, atque immānia terga resolvit
 fūsus humi tōtōque ingēns extenditur antrō.
 Occupat Aenēas aditum custōde sepultō
 425 ēvādītque celer rīpam inremeābilis undae.

Continuō auditae vōcēs vāgītus et ingēns

aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance
 adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
 antrum, ī *n.* cave, cavern, grotto*
 celer, eris, ere quick, swift, fleet*
 Cerberus, ī *m.* monstrous three-headed
 dog in Hades†
 collum, ī *n.* neck*
 coluber, bri *m.* snake, serpent
 continuō immediately, at once
 corripio, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up)*
 cumba, ae *f.* boat, skiff
 custōs, ōdis *m. (f.)* guard(ian), senti-
 nel*
 ēvādō, ere, sī, sus escape; traverse
 expōnō, ere, posuī, positus place out,
 disembark†
 extendō, ere, ī, ntus stretch, extend
 famēs, is *f.* hunger, famine, greed
 fluvius, (i)ī *m.* river, stream
 frūx, frūgis *f.* fruit, produce, meal
 gemō, ere, uī, itus groan, roar, mourn
 glaucus, a, um gray, green, gleaming†
 guttur, uris *n.* throat, gullet†
 horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder*
 humus, ī *f.* ground, earth, soil*
 incolumis, e safe, unharmed, intact
 informis, e shapeless, hideous

inremeābilis, e from which there is no
 return, irtraceable
 lātrātus, ūs *m.* bark(ing), howl(ing)
 limus, ī *m.* slime, mud, mire†
 medicō (1) drug, medicate†
 mel, mellis *n.* honey
 objiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw (before)
 occupō (1) seize (beforehand), occupy
 offa, ae *f.* morsel, cake†
 palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
 pandō, ere, ī, passus open, extend*
 personō, āre, uī, itus (make) resound
 pondus, eris *n.* weight, burden, mass
 ravidus, a, um mad, fierce, raging
 recubō, āre recline, lie
 resolvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), relax
 rīmōsus, a, um full of cracks, leaky†
 rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
 sepeliō, īre, īvi (ii), ultus bury, inter
 sopōrō (1) make drowsy, drug
 sūtilis, e sewed, with seams†
 tergum, ī *n.* back, hide*
 trāns across, beyond (acc.)
 trēs, tria three*
 trifax, faucis three-throated†
 ulva, ae *f.* sedge, marsh grass
 vāgītus, ūs *m.* crying, wailing†

414. sūtilis: the boat was apparently
 of skins, sewed together. rīmōsa: made
 so by the unaccustomed weight placed
 upon it. palūdem: (water of) the marsh.

416. (in) limō.

417-425. Aeneas and the Sibyl find
 their way blocked by Cerberus, the huge
 three-headed dog of Hades, but they
 give him a medicated cake which puts
 him to sleep and they pass on.

422. objectam (offam).

423. humi: loc.

424. custōde (= Cerberō) sepultō
 (somnō): abl. abs.

425. inremeābilis: "from whose bourn
 no traveler returns."

426-449. Under Minos as judge the
 souls of the dead are divided into five
 classes: (1) infants; (2) those con-
 demned to death under false accusations;
 (3) suicides; (4) those who have died for
 love; (5) renowned warriors.

infantumque animae flentēs, in limine primō
 quōs dulcis vitae exsortīs et ab ūbere raptōs
 abstulit ātra diēs et funere mersit acerbō.
 Hōs juxtā falsō damnāti crimine mortis. 430
 Nec vērō hae sine sorte datae, sine jūdice, sēdēs:
 quaesitor Minōs urnam movet; ille silentum
 conciliumque vocat vitāsque et crimina discit.
 Proxima deinde tenent maestī loca, quī sibi lētum
 insontēs peperere manū lūcemque perōsī 435
 prōjēcere animās. Quam vellent aethere in altō
 nunc et pauperiem et dūrōs perferre laborēs!
 Fās obstat, trīstisque palūs inamābilis undae
 alligat et noviēs Styx interfūsa coērcet.
 Nec procul hinc partem fūsi mōnstrantur in omnem 440
 lūgentēs campī; sic illōs nōmine dicunt.]

acerbus, a, um bitter, harsh, sad
 aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
 alligō (1) bind, fasten, tie (to)
 auferō, ferre, abstuli, ablātus carry off
 coērcēō, ēre, uī, itus restrain, confine†
 concilium, (i) *i n.* assembly, council
 crimen, inis *n.* crime, accusation
 damnō (1) condemn, sentence, devote
 deinde thence, next, thereupon*
 discō, ere, didici learn, investigate
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
 exsors, rtis without a part (lot) (*gen.*)
 falsus, a, um false, unfounded, mock
 fās *n. indecl.* justice, fate, divine will*
 fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus weep, lament, mourn
 fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
 inamābilis, e unlovely, hateful†
 infāns, antis *m. (f.)* infant, baby†
 insōns, ontis innocent, guiltless
 interfundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour be-
 tween
 jūdex, icis *m. (f.)* judge, jurymen, um-
 pire†
 juxtā next, nearest to (*acc.*)*
 lētum, i *n.* death, destruction, ruin*
 lūgeō, ēre, lūxi, lūctus mourn, lament

maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
 mergō, ere, rsi, rsus sink, drown
 Minōs, ōis *m.* king of Crete, and later
 judge in Hades†
 mōnstrō (1) point out, show, teach,
 guide*
 noviēs nine times†
 obstō, āre, stiti, status oppose (*dat.*)
 palūs, ūdis *f.* swamp, marsh, mere
 pariō, ere, peperī, partus bear, cause
 pauperiēs, ēi *f.* poverty†
 perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bear (to the
 end), endure
 perōdī, ōdisse, ōsus hate, detest†
 prōjiciō, ere, jēci, jectus throw (away)
 proximus, a, um next, nearest
 quaesitor, ōris *m.* examiner, judge†
 quam how, than, as*
 rapiō, ere, uī, ptus snatch, rob*
 silēns, entis silent, dead, still
 sine without (*abl.*)*
 sors, rtis *f.* lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
 Styx, ygis *f.* hateful river in Hades
 ūber, eris *n.* udder, breast, fertility
 urna, ae *f.* urn, vase (from which lots
 were drawn for the selection of judges)
 vērō truly, indeed, but

428. vitae: obj. gen. with exsortīs.

429. ātra diēs = diēs mortis.

430. mortis: with damnāti; App. 291.

432. urnam movet: to select the jūdices, who were chosen by lot. Cf. the modern selection of jurymen. silent(i)um.

435. manū (suā).

436. Quam vellent: potential subj.;

App. 252. aethere in altō: on earth, whose air is high above Hades.

439. noviēs: Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 434-436:

"This huge convex of fire,
 Outrageous to devour, immures us round
 Ninefold."

441. nōmine dicunt = vocant.

- Hic quōs dūrus amor crūdēli tābe perēdit*
sēcrētī cēlant callēs et myrtea circum
silva tegit; cūrae nōn ipsā in morte relinquunt.
 445 *Hīs Phaedram Procrimque locīs maestamque Eriphylēn*
crūdēlis nātī mōnstrantem vulnera cernit,
Euadnēnque et Pāsiphaēn; hīs Lāodamīa
it comes et juvenis quondam, nunc fēmina, Caeneus
rūrsus et in veterem fātō revolūta figūram.
 450 *Inter quās Phoenissa recēns ā vulnere Dīdō*
errābat silvā in magnā; quam Trōius hērōs
ut primum juxtā stetit agnōvitque per umbrās
obscuram, quālem primō quī surgere mēse
aut videt aut vīdisse putat per nūbila lūnam,
 455 *dēmīsit lacrimās dulcēque adfātus amōre est*

adfor, āri, ātus address, accost*
 agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*
 Caeneus, ei (eos) *m.* girl changed to a
 young man by Neptune†
 callis, is *m.* path, track
 cēlō (1) conceal, hide, cover
 crūdēlis, e cruel, bitter, bloody*
 dēmīttō, mittere, misī, missus send down,
 let fall, drop, lower*
 dulcis, e sweet, dear, fond*
 dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
 Eriphylē, ēs *f.* wife of Amphiarāus who
 induced her husband to go to war in
 order to get rid of him, for which she
 was murdered by their son†
 Euadnē, ēs *f.* wife of Capaneus who
 threw herself on his funeral pyre†
 fēmina, ae *f.* woman, female
 figūra, ae *f.* form, shape, figure†
 hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
 juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man)*
 juxtā near, next, close to (*acc.*)*
 Lāodamīa, ae *f.* wife of Protesilaus who
 died with her husband†
 lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
 maestus, a, um sad, mournful, gloomy*
 mēnsis, is *m.* month
 mōnstrō (1) show, point out, teach,
 guide*

myrteus, a, um of myrtle, myrtle, a tree
 sacred to the dead and to Venus,
 goddess of love†
 nūbilum, i *n.* cloud, cloudiness
 obscurus, a, um dark, obscure, dim*
 Pāsiphaē, ēs *f.* wife of Minos who fell in
 love with a bull
 peredō, ere, ēdī, ēsus consume, eat (up)†
 Phaedra, ae *f.* wife of Theseus, who killed
 herself because her love for her stepson,
 Hippolytus, was unrequited†
 Phoenissa, ae *f.* Phoenician (woman),
 Dido
 Procris, (id) is *f.* jealous wife of Cepha-
 lus who spied on her husband and was
 accidentally killed by him†
 putō (1) think, suppose, consider
 quālis, e (such) as, of what sort*
 recēns, entis recent, fresh
 revolvō, ere, i, volūtus revolve, change
 again
 rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
 sēcrētus, a, um secluded, remote
 tībēs, is *f.* wasting, pining†
 tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, shel-
 ter*
 Trōius, a, um Trojan, of Troy*
 vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
 vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

443. cēlant (eōs).

446. nātī: subj. gen.; the wounds in-
 flicted by her son.

447. Pāsiphaēn: see ll. 24 ff.

450 476. Among those who have died
 for love Aeneas sees the shade of Dido
 and attempts to defend his course in de-

serting her, but she scornfully sweeps
 away out of his sight and throws herself
 into the arms of Sychaeus, her first
 husband, while Aeneas stands and weeps.

451. quam: with juxtā and understood
 with agnōvit in l. 452.

455. amōre: abl. of manner.

"*Infelix Dīdō, vērus mihi nuntius ergō
vēnerat extinctam ferrōque extrēma secūtam?
Fūneris heu tibi causa fūi? Per sīdera jūrō,
per superōs et sī qua fidēs tellūre sub imā est,
invitus, rēgīna, tuō dē litore cessī.*" *(Cithara)* 460
*Sed mē jussa deum, quae nunc hās ire per umbrās,
per loca senta sitū cōgunt noctemque profundam,
imperīis ēgēre suīs; nec crēdere quīvī
hunc tantum tibi mē discessū ferre dolōrem.
Siste gradum tēque aspectū nē subtrahe nostrō.* 465
Quem fugis? Extrēmum fātō quod tē adloquor hoc est."
*Tālībus Aenēas ardentem et torva tuentem
lēnībat dictīs animum lacrimāsque ciēbat.
Illa solō fixōs oculōs āversa tenēbat
nec magis inceptō vultum sermōne movētur* 470
*quam sī dūra silex aut stet Marpēsia cautēs.
Tandem corripuit sēsē atque inimīca refūgit*

adloquor, *i*, locūtus address, accost
a(d)spectus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, aspect
āvertō, ere, *i*, *rsus* turn away, avert*
causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, occasion*
cautēs, *is f.* rock, cliff, crag
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessus yield, depart*
cieō, ēre, civī, citus stir (up), (a)rouse*
cōgō, ere, coēgi, coāctus force (together)*
corripō, ere, uī, reptus snatch (up,
away)*
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, trust
(*dat.*)*
discessus, ūs *m.* departure, separation†
dolor, ōris *m.* grief, pain, passion, anger*
dūrus, *a, um* hard(y), harsh, stern*
ergō therefore, then, consequently*
exstinguō, ere, inxi, inctus quench, de-
stroy, extinguish
extrēma, ōrum *n.* end, death, funeral
extrēmus, *a, um* final, last, utmost*
fidēs, *ei f.* faith, honor, pledge*
figō, ere, xi, xus fasten, fix, pierce*
fūnus, eris *n.* funeral, death, disaster*
gradus, ūs *m.* step, gait, pace, stride
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake*

inimicus, *a, um* hostile, unfriendly
invitus, *a, um* unwilling, reluctant
jūrō (*l*) swear (by), take oath
jussum, *i n.* command, order, behest
lēniō, ire, ivi, itus soften, soothe, calm
magis more, rather*
Marpēs(s)ius, *a, um* of Marpe(s)sus,
a Parian mountain famous for its white
marble†
nuntius, (*i*) *i m.* messenger, message
profundus, *a, um* deep, profound, vast
quam how, than, as*
queō, quire, ivi (*ii*), itus be able, can†
refugiō, ere, fūgi flee (away), shun
sentus, *a, um* rough, thorny†
sermō, ōnis *m.* conversation, speech
silex, icis *m. (f.)* flint, rock crag
sistō, ere, steti, status stay, stop
situs, ūs *m.* position; neglect; mould
solum, *i n.* ground, earth, soil*
subtrahō, ere, trāxi, tractus withdraw
torvus, *a, um* fierce, grim, lowering
tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) look (at), watch*
vērus, *a, um* true, real, genuine*
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, aspect*

456. nuntius: we need not worry as to how this message reached Aeneas: we are dealing with imaginative poetry, not sober history.

457. (tē) exstinctam (esse). extrēma (= mortem) secūtam (esse).

461. jussa de(ōr)um: see IV, 237, 270.

466. Extrēmum: this is the last (time) I shall address you. quod: cognate acc.

hoc: pronounce hocc, making a long syllable.

467. torva: neut. acc. pl., used adverbially.

468. lēnībat = lēniēbat, which could not be used in hexameter (— — —). It has a conative meaning here, he tried to soothe; App. 351, 2, a.

470. vultum: acc. of respect.

*in nemus umbriferum, conjūnx ubi pristinus illi
respondet cūrīs aequatque Sychaeus amōrem.*

475 *Nec minus Aenēās cāsū concussus iniquō
prōsequitur lacrimīs longē et miserātur euntem.*

*Inde datum mōlitur iter. Jamque arva tenēbant
ultima, quae bellō clārī sēcrēta frequentant.*

480 *Hīc illi occurrit Tȳdeus, hīc inclutus armīs
Parthenopaeus et Adrāstī pallentis imāgō,
hīc multum flētī ad superōs bellōque cadūcī
Dardanidae, quōs ille omnīs longō ordine cernēns
ingemuit, Glaucumque Medontaque Thersilochumque,
trīs Antēnoridās Cererique sacrum Polyboetēn,*

485 *Īdaeumque etiam currūs, etiam arma tenentem.
Circumstant animae dextrā laevāque frequentēs:
nec vīdisse semel satis est; juvat ūsque morārī
et cōferre gradum et veniendī discere causās.*

Adrāstus, *i m.* Greek warrior†
aequō (1) equal(ize), match, level*
Antēnoridēs, *ae m.* a Trojan warrior,
son of Antenor†
cadūcus, *a, um* fallen, falling, destined to
fall, doomed†
cāsus, *ūs m.* chance, (mis)fortune
causa, *ae f.* cause, reason, occasion*
Cerēs, *eris f.* (goddess of) grain
circumstō, *stāre, steti* stand around
clārus, *a, um* clear, bright, famous*
concutiō, *ere, cussī, cussus* shake, shatter,
agitate
cōnferō, *ferre, tulī, lātus* unite, join†
currus, *ūs m.* chariot, car*
Dardanidēs, *ae m.* Trojan, Dardanian*
discō, *ere, didici* learn (how); *perf.* know
etiam also, even, too, likewise*
fleō, *ēre, ēvī, ētus* weep, lament
frequēns, *entis* crowded, thronging
frequentō (1) crowd, throng, frequent†
Glaucus, *i m.* Trojan warrior†
gradus, *ūs m.* step, walk, pace, stride
Īdaeus, *i m.* charioteer of Priam†
imāgō, *inis f.* image, likeness, ghost*
inclutus, *a, um* renowned, famous
inde thence, next, thereupon*
ingemō, *ere, uī* groan (over), lament
iniquus, *a, um* unjust, harsh, uneven
iter, *itineris n.* way, road, journey*

juvō, *āre, jūvī, jūtus* help, please*
laevus, *a, um* left (hand), on the left*
longē (from) afar, at a distance*
Medōn, *ontis, acc. onta, m.* Trojan war-
rior†
minus less
miseror, *ārī, ātus* pity, commiserate*
mōlior, *irī, itus* accomplish, do, make
moror, *ārī, ātus* delay, tarry, hinder*
nemus, *oris n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
occurrō, *ere, (cu)currī, cursus* (run to)
meet (*dat.*)
ordō, *inis m.* order, row, rank, array*
pallēs, *entis* pale, pallid, wan
Parthenopaeus, *i m.* Greek warrior†
Polyboetēs, *ae m.* Trojan priest†
pristinus, *a, um* ancient, former†
prōsequor, *i, secūtus* follow, attend
respondeō, *ēre, ī, ōnsus* answer; sym-
pathize with*
sat(is) enough, sufficient(ly)*
sēcrētus, *a, um* secluded, remote
semel once (for all)
Sychaeus, *i m.* deceased husband of Dido
Thersilochus, *i m.* Trojan warrior†
trēs, *tria* three*
Tȳdeus, *eī (eos) m.* Greek warrior†
ultimus, *a, um* last, outermost, utmost*
umbrifer, *era, erum* shady†
ūsque continuously, ever, still

473. illi: *dat.* of reference.

475. cāsū (Didōnis).

476. prōsequitur et miserātur (eam).

477-534. Among the renowned warriors they find Deiphobus; he has been horribly mutilated by the Greeks through the treachery of Helen, who had be-

trayed him into their hands on the night of the fall of Troy.

481. ad superōs = apud superōs: among men of the upper world.

483. Medonta: *acc. sing.*, a Greek form.

484. Cererī sacrum = priest of Ceres.

*At Danaum procerēs Agamemnoniaeque phalanges
ut vīdēre virum fulgentiaque arma per umbrās,* 490
*ingentī trepidāre metū; pars vertere terga,
ceu quondam petiēre ratēs, pars tollere vōcem
exiguam: inceptus clāmor frūstrātur hiantīs.*
Atque hīc Priamidēn laniātum corpore tōtō
Dēiphobum vīdit, lacerum crūdēliter ōra, 495
*ōra manūsque ambās, populātaque tempora raptīs
auribus et truncās inhonestō vulnere nārīs.*
*Vix adeō agnōvit pavitantem ac dīra tegentem
supplicia, et nōtīs compellat vōcibus ultrō:*
“Dēiphobe armipotēns, genus altō ā sanguine Teucrī, 500
quis tam crūdēlīs optāvit sūmere poenās?
*Cui tantum dē tē licuit? Mihī fāma suprēmā
nocte tulit fessum vastō tē caede Pelasgum
prōcubuisse super cōfūsae strāgis acervum.*

acervus, i m. heap, pile, mass

adeō so (far), indeed

Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon,
Greek king, and leader of the expedition
against Troy

agnōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus recognize*

ambō, ae, ō both, two, double

armipotēns, entis mighty in arms

auris, is f. ear*

caedēs, is f. slaughter, destruction

ceu as, just as

compellō (1) address, accost, speak to

cōfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus confuse

crūdēlīs, e cruel, brutal, bloody*

crūdēliter cruelly, brutally†

Dēiphobus, i m. son of Priam, husband

of Helen after the death of Paris

dīrus, a, um awful, dire, dreadful*

exiguus, a, um slight, weak, thin

frūstror, āri, ātus baffle, mock, fail†

fulg(e)ō, ēre, lūsi shine, gleam, glitter

hiō (1) yawn, gape, stand open†

incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake*

inhonestus, a, um shameful†

lacer, era, erum torn, mangled, maimed

laniō (1) tear, mutilate, mangle†

licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*

metus, ūs m. fear, dread, anxiety*

nārīs, is f. nose, nostril†

nōtus, a, um (well-) known, familiar*

optō (1) choose, desire, hope (for)*

pavitō (1) cower, tremble, quake

Pelasgus, a, um Pelasgian, Greek

phalanx, angis f. phalanx, troop

populō (1) strip, rob, devastate

Priamidēs, ae m. descendant of Priam

procer, eris m. leader, chief

prōcumbō, ere, cubui, cubitus sink (for-
ward), fall, recline

raziō, ere, ui, ptus snatch, tear off*

ratis, is f. raft, ship, boat*

strāgēs, is f. destruction, carnage†

sūmō, ere, mpsi, mptus take, inflict

supplicium, (i)i n. punishment, suffering

tam so (much, greatly), such*

tegō, ere, tēxi, tēctus cover, hide*

tempus, oris n. temple, brow

tergum, i n. back, hide*

Teucrus (cer), i m. early king of Troy

trepidō (1) tremble, scurry, bustle

truncus, a, um maimed, mangled

ultrō further(more), voluntarily*

vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change*

vulnus, eris n. wound, deadly blow*

491-493. *trepidāre, vertere, tollere:*
hist. infinitives. *ceu quondam:* referring
to an incident in the Trojan war when the
defeated Greeks fled to their ships. *vōcem
exiguam:* since they were only shades,
lacking in bodily strength. Cf. *Hamlet*,
I, 1, 115-116:

“The graves stood tenantless and the
sheeted dead

Did squeak and gibber in the Roman
streets.”

495-497. *ōra, manūs, tempora, nārīs:*
accusatives of respect with *lacerum*.

498. *tegentem:* the present of at-
tempted action (conative present); App.
351, I, c.

502-503. *tantum dē tē:* so much
(power) over you. *suprēmā nocte:* the

- 505 *Tunc egomet tumulum Rhoetēo litore inānem*
cōstituī et magnā mānis ter vōce vocāvī.
Nōmen et arma locum servant; tē, amīce, nequīvī
cōspicere et patriā dēcēdēns pōnere terrā.”
Ad quae Priamidēs: “Nihil Ō tibi, amīce, relictum;
 510 *omnia Dēiphobō solvistī et fūneris umbrīs.*
 [*Sed mē fāta mea et scelus exitiāle Lacaenae*
hīs mersēre malīs; illa haec monimenta reliquit.
Namque ut suprēmam falsa inter gaudia noctem
ēgerimus, nōstī: et nimium meminisse necesse est.
 515 *Cum fātālis equus saltū super ardua vēnīt*
Pergama et armātum peditem gravis attulit alvō,
illa chorum simulāns euhantis orgia circum
dūcēbat Phrygiās; flammam media ipsa tenēbat
ingentem et summā Danaōs ex arce vocābat.
 520 *Tum mē cōfectum cūrīs somnōque gravātum*

adferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring (to)
 alvus, i f. belly, womb
 amicus, i m. friend, comrade, lover*
 arduus, a, um high, lofty, steep*
 armō (l) arm, equip, furnish*
 chorus, i m. (dancing) band, troop
 cōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, use up,
 weary
 cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
 cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus set up
 dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart
 Dēiphobus, i m. son of Priam and third
 husband of Helen
 euhāns, antis celebrating with cries of
 Euhan (Bacchus) †
 exitiālis, e deadly, mortal, destructive
 falsus, a, um false, treacherous, mock
 fātālis, e fatal, fateful, fated
 fūnus, eris n. funeral, death, destruction*
 gaudium, (i) i n. joy, delight, pleasure
 gravis, e heavy, pregnant, serious*
 gravō (l) burden, weigh down, oppress
 inānis, e empty, useless, idle, vain*
 Lacaena, ae f. Spartan woman, Helen
 malum, i n. evil, misfortune, trouble*

mānēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades*
 meminī, isse remember (gen.)
 mergō, ere, rsī, rsus sink, drown
 monumentum (monumentum), i n. re-
 minder, memorial
 necesse necessary, need(ful)
 nequeō, ire, ivī (ii), itus be unable
 nihil (nil) n. nothing, not at all
 nimium too much, too (greatly)
 nōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus learn; perf. know*
 orgia, ōrum n. (sacred) rites, revels
 patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
 pedes, itis m. infantry, foot soldier(y) †
 Pergama, ōrum n. (citadel of) Troy*
 Phrygius, a, um Phrygian, Trojan*
 Priamidēs, ae m. son of Priam
 Rhoetē(i)us, a, um of Rhoeteūm, a
 Trojan promontory
 saltus, ūs m. leap, bound, dancing
 scelus, eris n. crime, villainy, sin*
 simulō (l) imitate, pretend, simulate
 solvō, ere, i, solūtus loose(n), pay,
 free*
 ter three times, thrice*
 tumulus, i m. mound, tomb*

night of the fall of Troy; abl. of time
 when.

505. tumulum inānem: a cenotaph.

505-506. These ceremonies entitled the
 shade of the departed to cross the Styx.

507. tē: your dead body. tē, amīce:
 semi-hiatus; App. 400.

509. tibi: dat. of agent with relictum
 (est).

511. Lacaenae: Helen, whom he dis-
 dains to name.

513. ut: how, introducing an indir.
 quest.

514. nō(vi)sti.

516. (in) alvō.

517-518. illa: that notorious woman;
 Deiphobus does not deign to mention
 Helen by name. orgia: cognate acc. with
 euhantis. circum: with dūcēbat = cir-
 cumdūcēbat; this separation of the
 different parts of a compound word is
 called *tnesis*; App. 445. flammam: as

*infelix habuit thalamus, pressitque jacentem
dulcis et alta quies placidaeque simillima morti.*

*Ægria interea conjunx arma omnia tectis
amovet et fidum capiti subdūxerat ensem;
intrā tecta vocat Menelāum et limina pandit,
scilicet id magnum spērāns fore mūnus amanti,
et famam exstinguī veterum sic posse malōrum.*

525

*Quid moror? Inrumpunt thalamō, comes additus unā
hortātor scelerum Aeolidēs. Dī, tālia Grajīs
instaurāte, piō sī poenās ore reposcō.*

530

*Sed tē quī vīvum cāsūs, age fāre vicissim,
attulerint. Pelagīne venīs errōribus āctus
an monitū dīvum? An quae tē fortūna fatigat,
ut tristis sine sōle domōs, loca turbida, adirēs?"*

Hāc vice sermōnum roseīs Aurōra quadrigīs

535

addō, ere, didi, ditus add, join*
adeō, ire, iī (ivī), itus approach
adferō, ferre, tuli, lātus bring (to)
Aeolidēs, ae m. putative son of Aeolus,

Ulysses, a wily Greek†
amāns, antis m. (f.) lover
āmoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus remove†
an interrog. or, whether*
Aurōra, ae f. (goddess of) dawn*
dulcis, e sweet, dear, delightful, fond*
ēgregius, a, um wonderful, remarkable
ēnsis, is m. sword, knife*
error, ōris m. wandering, mistake
exstinguō, ere, inxi, inctus destroy, blot
out

fatigō (1) weary, harass, torment, vex
fidus, a, um faithful, trusty, safe*
Grajus, a, um Greek*
hortātor, ōris m. instigator, inciter†
inrumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptus break in
instaurō (1) renew, repeat, refresh
interea meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
intrā within (acc.)
jaceō, ēre, ui, itus lie (low, outspread)*
malum, i n. evil, wrong, trouble, sin*
Menelaus, i m. Greek warrior, first hus-
band of Helen

monitus, ūs m. advice, warning
moror, āri, ātus delay, tarry, hinder*
pandō, ere, i, passus open, spread*
placidus, a, um calm, quiet, peaceful*
premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press*
quadrigae, ārum f. four-horse chariot†
quies, ētis f. rest, quiet, peace, re-
pose*

reposcō, ere demand, seek, ask (for)
roseus, a, um rosy, rose-colored, red
scelus, eris n. crime, villainy, sin*
scilicet doubtless, forsooth, of course
sermō, ōnis m. conversation, speech
similis, e similar, like (dat., gen.)*
sine without (abl.)*
sōl, sōlis m. sun; day*
spērō (1) hope (for), expect, suppose*
subdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus withdraw
(from under) (dat.)
thalamus, i m. bridal chamber, bed-
room*

turbidus, a, um confused, disordered
unā together, at the same time
vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*
vicis gen. f. (ex)change, alternation
vicissim in turn, by turns, alternately
vivus, a, um living, alive, natural

a signal to the Greek fleet to start back to Troy. Cf. II, 254 ff.

523. Ægria: ironically of Helen. This passage contradicts the account of II, 567-588, but it is useless to expect strict consistency of a great poetic genius. **conjūnx:** after the death of Paris, Helen had married Deiphobus.

526. amanti: Menelaus, her lawful husband.

529. Aeolidēs: contemptuously of

Ulysses, in accordance with the scandal which claimed that he was not the son of Laertes at all but of Sisyphus, a notorious robber and trickster, son of Aeolus.

532. Pelagīne errōribus: a Homeric conception, according to which Hades lay beyond the western ocean and could be reached only by ship. This idea is at variance with the rest of this book.

535-547. Aeneas parts with Deiphobus.

*jam medium aetheriō cursū trājēcerat axem;
et fors omne datum traherent per tālia tempus,
sed comes admonuit breviterque adfāta Sibylla est:
"Nox ruit, Aenēā; nōs flendō dūcimus hōrās.*

- 540 *Hīc locus est partīs ubi sē via findit in ambās:
dextera quae Dītis magnī sub moenia tendit,
hāc iter Ēlysium nōbis; at laeva malōrum
exercet poenās et ad impia Tartara mittit."*
Dēiphobus contrā: "*Nē saevī, magna sacerdōs;
545 discēdam, explēbō numerum reddarque tenebrīs.
Ī decus, ī, nostrum; meliōribus ūtere fātis."*
Tantum effātus, et in verbō vestigia torsit. }

*Respicit Aenēās subitō et sub rūpe sinistrā
moenia lāta videt triplici circumdata mūrō,
550 quae rapidus flammīs ambit torrentibus amnis,*

adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to*
admonēō, ēre, uī, itus warn, advise
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
ambiō, ire, ivi (ii), itus surround
ambō, ae, ō both, two
amnis, is m. river, stream*
axis, is m. axle, wheel, chariot; heaven
breviter shortly, briefly, concisely
circumdō, dare, dedī, datus surround
contrā against, opposite, in reply*
decus, oris n. ornament, glory, honor
Dēiphobus, ī m. son of Priam and third
husband of Helen
Dis, Dītis m. Pluto, god of the lower
world
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessus depart
effor, āri, ātus speak, utter
Ēlysium, (i)ī n. abode of the blessed in
Hades†
exerceō, ēre, uī, itus exercise, inflict, vex*
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus fill (out)
findō, ere, fidī, fissus divide, split†
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus weep (for), lament
hōra, ae f. hour, season, time
impīus, a, um impious, wicked, disloyal
iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*

laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
lātus, a, um broad, wide, spacious*
malus, a, um evil, wicked, bad, false*
melior, ius better, superior, preferable
mūrus, ī m. (city) wall, rampart*
numerus, ī m. number, multitude*
rapidus, a, um swift, hurrying, fleet*
reddō, ere, didī, dītus give back, return*
respicīō, ere, spexi, spectus look (back)
at, regard*
rūpēs, is f. rock, cliff, crag*
sacerdōs, ōtis m. (f.) priest(ess)*
saevīō, ire, ivi (ii), itus rage, be angry
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian priestess
sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left
subitō suddenly, unexpectedly*
Tartara, ōrum n. lowest realm of Hades
tenebrae, ārum f. darkness, gloom
torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus turn, twist, whirl*
torreō, ēre, uī, tostus burn, seethe
trājiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw across,
cross
triplex, icis triple
ūtor, ī, ūsus use, enjoy, employ (abl.)
verbum, ī n. word, speech, talk
vestigium, (i)ī n. step, track, trace*

537. fors = forsitan (fors sit an): perhaps, traherent: conclusion of an implied condition contrary to fact.

540. sē via findit: up to this point there had been only one road, but now there is a definite parting of the ways, one leading to the place of bliss (Elysium), the other to the place of torment (Tartarus).

541. dextera (via est ea) quae.

542. hāc (viā) iter (est) nōbis (ad) Ēlysium: acc. of place to which with iter (est). laeva (via): the road is said to

punish because it leads to the place of punishment.

545. explēbō numerum (umbrārum): by rejoicing them.

546. decus nostrum = decus nostrōrum.

547. in verbō: as he spoke. Cf. in vōce, IV, 76.

548-627. Description of Tartarus and some of its horrible punishments, which Aeneas does not see as he passes on toward the Elysian Fields.

Tartareus Phlegethōn, torquetque sonantia saxa.
 Porta adversa ingēns solidōque adamante columnae,
vīs ut nulla virum, nōn ipsī exscindere bellō
caelicolae valeant; stat ferrea turris ad aurās,
 Tisiphonēque sedēns pallā succincta cruentā 555
vestibulum exsomnia servat noctēsque diēsque.
Hinc exaudiri gemitūs et saeva sonāre
verbera, tum stridor ferrī trāctaeque catēnae.
 Cōstitit Aenēās strepitumque exterritus hausit.
 "Quae scelerum faciēs? Ō virgō, effāre; quibusve 560
 urgentur poenīs? Quis tantus clangor ad auris?"
 Tum vātēs sic orsa loqui: "Dux inclute Teucrum,
 nullī fās castō scelerātum insistere līmen;
 sed mē cum lūcis Hecātē praefēcit Avernīs,
 ipsa deum poenās docuit perque omnia dūxit. 565
 Gnōsius haec Rhadamanthus habet dūriissima rēgna

* **adamās, antis** *m.* adamant†
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
auris, is *f.* ear*
Avernus, a, um of Avernus, an Italian lake where there was an entrance to Hades*
caelicola, ae *m. (f.)* god(dess), divinity
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste
catēna, ae *f.* chain, shackle, fetter†
clangor, ōris *m.* noise, uproar, clang
columna, ae *f.* pillar, column, post
cōsistō, ere, stitī, stitus stand (fast)*
cruentus, a, um bloody, cruel
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
dux, ducis *m. (f.)* leader, chief, guide*
effor, āri, ātus say, tell
exaudiō, ire, ivi (ii), itus (over)hear
exscindō, ere, scidī, scissus cut out, destroy
exsomnia, e sleepless, wakeful†
exterreō, ēre, uī, itus terrify, frighten
faciēs, ēi *f.* appearance, face, aspect*
fās *n. indecl.* right, fate, divine will*
ferreus, a, um (of) iron
gemitus, ūs *m.* groan(ing), roar*
Gnō(s)sus, a, um of Gnossus, a city of Crete
hauriō, ire, hausī, haustus drain, drink (in)
Hecātē, ēs *f.* goddess of the lower world

includus, a, um renowned, famous
insistō, ere, stitī stand (on), pursue
loquor, ī, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
lūcus, ī *m.* (sacred) grove, wood*
ordior, iri, orsus begin, commence
palla, ae *f.* cloak, robe, mantle
Phlegethōn, ontis *m.* fiery stream of Hades
porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
praeficiō, ere, fēci, fectus set over (*dat.*)
Rhadamanthus, ī *m.* early king of Crete and later judge of the dead in Hades†
saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
scelerātus, a, um criminal, unholy
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
sedeō, ēre, sedī, sessus sit*
solidus, a, um solid, firm, strong
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
strepitus, ūs *m.* uproar, noise, bustle
stridor, ōris *m.* creaking, clanking, whirl
succingō, ere, cīnxi, cīnctus gird(le)
Tartareus, a, um of Tartarus, the lowest region and abode of the wicked in Hades
Tisiphonē, ēs *f.* a Fury†
torqueō, ēre, rsī, rtus turn, twist, whirl*
turris, is *f.* tower, turret
urgeō, ēre, ursī (op)press, beset
valeō, ēre, uī, itus be strong, be able
verber, eris *n.* blow, lash, whip
vestibulum, ī *n.* entrance, vestibule
virgō, inis *f.* virgin, maid(en), girl*

552. Porta (est).

557-558. stridor, catēnae: additional subjects of the hist. infinitives, exaudiri, sonāre.

560. Quae (sunt).

561. clangor (venit) ad aurīs (nos-trās).

563. fās (est).

565. de(ōr)um: subj. gen., the punishments inflicted by the gods.

- castigatque auditque dolōs subigitque fatēri
 quae quis apud superōs fūrtō laetātus inānī
 distulit in sēram commissa piacula mortem.
 570 Continuō sontis ultrix accincta flagellō
 Tisiphonē quatit insultāns, torvōsque sinistrā
 intentāns anguis vocat agmina saeva sorōrum.
 Tum dēmum horrisonō stridentēs cardine sacrae
 panduntur portae. Cernis custōdia quālis
 575 vestibulō sedeat, faciēs quae līmina servet?
 Quinquāgintā ātrīs immānis hiātibus Hydra
 saevior intus habet sēdem. Tum Tartarus ipse
 bis patet in praeceps tantum tenditque sub umbrās
 quantus ad aetherium caeli suspectus Olympum.
 580 Hīc genus antiquum Terrae, Titānia pūbēs,

accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīctus gird(le)
 aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
 anguis, is m. (f.) snake, serpent
 apud among, at, in (acc.)
 bis twice*
 cardō, inis m. hinge, pivot, socket
 castigō (1) punish, avenge, chastise
 committō, ere, misi, missus commit,
 perform
 continuō immediately, at once
 custōdia, ae f. guard(ian), care†
 dēmum at length, finally
 differō, ferre, distulī, dilātus put off,
 defer†
 dolus, i m. deceit, wiles, trick, fraud*
 faciēs, ēi f. appearance, face, aspect*
 fateor, ēri, fassus confess, agree
 flagellum, i n. whip, lash, scourge
 fūrtum, i n. theft, stealth, concealment
 hiātus, ūs m. gaping (mouth), yawning
 horrisonus, a, um horrible-sounding†
 Hydra, ae f. monster with seven (fifty)
 serpent heads, killed by Hercules†
 inānis, e empty, useless, vain, idle*
 insultō (1) leap on, insult
 intentō (1) stretch (out), threaten
 intus within, inside
 laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult, delight
 Olympus, i m. high mountain of northern
 Greece, home of the gods; heaven
 pandō, ere, ī, passus open, extend*

pateō, ēre, uī lie open, extend
 piaculum, i n. atonement, expiation,
 crime
 porta, ae f. door, gate, entrance, exit*
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, precipitous;
 in praeceps straight downward*
 pūbēs, is f. youth, (group of) young men*
 quālis, e of what sort, (such) as*
 quantus, a, um how great, how much, as*
 quatīō, ere, quassus shake, shatter
 quinquāgintā fifty
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
 sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*
 sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy
 sinister, tra, trum left (hand), on the left
 sōns, sontis guilty, impious, criminal†
 soror, ōris f. sister*
 strid(e)ō, ēre, i grate, creak, whir
 subigō, ere, ēgi, āctus force, subdue
 suspectus, ūs m. view upward†
 Tartarus, i m. the lowest part of Hades,
 abode of the wicked
 Tisiphonē, ēs f. a Fury
 Titānius, a, um of the Titans, an early
 race of giants who attempted to storm
 heaven, but who were cast down by
 the thunderbolts of Jove and confined
 in the lowest depths of Hades†
 torvus, a, um savage, grim, scowling
 ultrix, icis avenging, (as) avenger
 vestibulum, i n. entry, vestibule

568. quis: indef. apud superōs: see
 l. 481 and note. fūrtō inānī: vain conceal-
 ment, because punishment is inescapable.
 568-569. quae commissa piacula =
 commissa quōrum piacula.

574. custōdia: Tisiphone.

579. caeli: obj. gen. with suspectus
 (est), the gazing up (from earth) to heaven,

or possibly from the abyss to heaven, with
 ad aetherium Olympum added as explan-
 atory.

580-581. Titānia pūbēs: overthrown
 by Jupiter. genus, pūbēs, dējecti: ob-
 serve the three genders and two numbers,
 all referring to the same thing, the race of
 Titans.

fulmine dējectī fundō volvuntur in īmō.
Hic et Alōidās geminōs immānia vīdī
corpora, quī manibus magnum rescindere caelum
adgressī superisque Jovem dētrūdere rēgnīs.
Vīdī et crūdēlis dantem Salmōnea poenās, 585
dum flammam Jovis et sonitūs imitātur Olympī.
Quattuor hic invectus equīs et lampada quassāns
per Grajum populōs mediaeque per Ēlidis urbem
ībat ovāns, divumque sibi poscēbat honōrem,
dēmēns, quī nimbōs et nōn imitābile fulmen 590
aere et cornipedum pulsū simulāret equōrum.
At pater omnipotēns dēnsa inter nūbila tēlum
contorsit, nōn ille facēs nec fūmea taedis
lūmina, praecipitemque immānī turbine adēgit.
Nec nōn et Tityon, Terrae omniparentis alumnū, 595
cernere erat, per tōta novem cui jūgera corpus

adgredior, *i*, gressus attack, attempt
 adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive, hurl
 aes, aeris *n.* bronze (utensil)*
 Alōidae, ārum *m.* sons of Aloeus, Otus
 and Ephialtes, giants who attempted
 to storm heaven by piling up moun-
 tains, but were overthrown and con-
 fined in the lowest depths of Hades†
 alumnus, ī *m.* nursing, foster child†
 contorqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, whirl
 cornipēs, pedis horny-hoofed†
 crūdēlis, e cruel, merciless, harsh*
 dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus hurl down
 dēmēns, entis mad, frenzied, foolish
 dēnsus, a, um thick, dense, crowded*
 dētrūdō, ere, si, sus thrust down†
 Ēlis, idis *f.* district of southern Greece
 fax, facis *f.* torch, firebrand, faggot*
 fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*
 fūmeus, a, um smoky, smoking†
 fundus, ī *m.* bottom, depths
 Grajus, a, um Greek*
 imitābilis, e that may be imitated, imi-
 table†
 imitor, āri, ātus imitate, mimic†
 invehō, ere, vēxi, vectus convey
 jugerum, ī *n.* acre; more accurately
 about five-eighths of an acre†

lampas, adis *f.* torch, lantern
 nimbus, ī *m.* storm (cloud), rainstorm*
 novem nine
 nūbila, ōrum *n.* clouds, cloudiness
 Olympus, ī *m.* mountain of northern
 Greece, home of the gods; heaven
 omniparēns, entis parent of all†
 omnipotēns, entis almighty, omnipo-
 tent
 ovō (1) exult, rejoice, triumph
 poscō, ere, poposci demand, seek, ask*
 praeceps, cipitis headlong, headfore-
 most*
 pulsus, ūs *m.* beat, trample, stroke†
 quassō (1) shake, brandish; shatter
 quattuor four
 rescindō, ere, scidi, scissus tear down†
 Salmōneus, eos (ei), acc. ea, *m.* king of
 Elis, who attempted to imitate the thun-
 der and lightning of Jove by means of
 his rattling chariot and blazing torches†
 simulō (1) imitate, counterfeit, simu-
 late
 sonitus, ūs *m.* sound, thunder, roar*
 taeda, ae *f.* pine torch
 Tityos, ī *m.* giant slain by Apollo for
 attempting to violate Latona†
 turbō, inis *m.* whirl(wind, pool), gulf

581. fulmine: the thunderbolt of Jupiter.

583. corpora: in apposition with Alōidās.

585. Salmōnea: acc. sing., a Greek form.

587. hic: pronounce hicc, making a long syllable.

590-591. quī . . . simulāret: rel. clause of cause; App. 357.

593. ille: Jupiter.

594. turbine (fulminis). (Salmōnea) praecipitem.

595. Nec nōn: likewise.

596. erat: it was possible.

- porrigitur, rōstrōque immānis vultur obuncō
 immortalē jecur tondēns fēcundaque poenīs
 viscera rimāturque epulis habitatque sub altō
 600 pectore, nec fibrīs requiēs datur ūlla renātis.
Quid memorem Lapithās, Ixiona Pirithoūmque?
 .
Quō super ātra silex jam jam lāpsūra cadentique
imminet adsimilis; lūcent geniālibus altīs
 aurea fulcra torīs, epulaeque ante ōra parātae
 605 rēgificō luxū; furiārum maxima juxtā
 accubat et manibus prohibet contingere mēnsās,
 exsurgitque facem attollēns atque intonat ōre.
Hic, quibus invīsī frātrēs, dum vīta manēbat,
pulsātusve parēns aut fraus innexa clientī,
 610 *aut quī dīvitiīs sōlī incubuēre repertīs*

accubō, āre, uī, itus recline (by)†
 adsimilis, e like, similar (dat.)†
 attollō, ere lift, raise, rear*
 aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold*
 cadō, ere, cecidi, cāsus fall, sink, die*
 cliēns, entis m. client, dependant†
 contingō, ere, tigī, tāctus touch, reach*
 divitiāe, ārum f. riches, wealth†
 epulae, ārum f. banquet, feast
 exsurgō, ere, surrēxi, surrēctus rise†
 fax, facis f. torch, firebrand*
 fēcundus, a, um fruitful, productive†
 fibra, ae f. fiber, filament; entrail†
 frāter, tris m. brother*
 fraus, fraudis f. deceit, trick, wile, fraud
 fulcrum, i n. prop, support, headrest†
 furiae, ārum f. the furies, goddesses of
 vengeance
 geniālis, e festal, joyous, pleasant†
 habitō (1) inhabit, dwell, possess
 imminēō, ēre overhang, threaten
 immortalis, e immortal, undying†
 incubō, āre, uī, itus lie on; gloat over
 innectō, ere, nex(u)ī, nexus fasten,
 contrive
 intonō, āre, uī thunder (at)
 invisus, a, um hated, hateful, odious
 Ixion, onis, acc. ona, m. giant bound to a
 revolving wheel in Hades for attempt-
 ing to violate Juno†

jecur, (jecin)oris n. liver, the seat of
 evil passions†
 juxtā next, nearest, close (to)*
 Lapithae, ārum m. tribe of northern
 Greece, famous for their battle with
 the Centaurs†
 lūcēō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, beam
 luxus, ūs m. luxury, splendor, excess
 memorō (1) (re)call, recount, mention*
 mēnsa, ae f. table*
 obuncus, a, um curved, hooked†
 Pirithoūs, i m. king of the Lapiths, who
 with the help of Theseus attempted to
 carry off Proserpina, queen of Pluto
 porrīgō, ere, rēxi, rēctus stretch, extend†
 prohibēō, ēre, uī, itus prevent, pro-
 hibit
 pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
 rēgificus, a, um royal, regal, kingly†
 renāscor, ī, nātus be reborn, be renewed†
 reperiō, īre, repperī, repertus find
 requiēs, ētis (ēi) f. rest, respite
 rimor, āri, ātus split, tear (open), ex-
 plore†
 rōstrum, i n. beak, snout; prow
 silex, icis m. (f.) flint, rock, stone
 tondeō, ēre, totondī, tōnsus shear; eat
 torus, i m. (banqueting) couch*
 viscus, eris n. vitals, flesh
 vultur, uris m. vulture, buzzard†

598. jecur: supposed to be the seat of
 lust and the evil passions.

599. epulis: for his banquet; dat. of
 purpose.

600. renātis: his flesh grows again as
 fast as it is devoured by the vulture.

602-603. One or more verses describ-

ing Tantalus seem to have fallen out here.
 cadentique: hypermetric; App. 402.

604. toris: dat. of reference.

605. maxima (nātū): the eldest.

608-609. Hic (sunt ei) quibus frātrēs
 (erant) invīsī (et ei ā quibus) pulsātus
 (est) parēns aut fraus innexa (est).

*nec partem posuere suīs (quae maxima turba est),
quique ob adulterium caesi, quique arma secuti
impia nec veriti dominorum fallere dextrās,
inclusi poenam expectant. Nē quare doceri
quam poenam, aut quae forma virōs fortunave mersit.* 615
*Saxum ingens volvunt alii, radiisque rotarum
districti pendent; sedet aeternumque sedebit
infelix Thēseus, Phlegyasque miserrimus omnīs
admonet et magnā testatur voce per umbrās:
'Discite iustitiam moniti et nōn temnere divōs.'* 620
*Vendidit hic aurō patriam dominumque potentem
imposuit; fixit lēgēs pretiō atque refixit;
hic thalamum invāsīt nātae vetitōsque hymenaeōs:
ausi omnēs immāne nefās ausōque potiti.*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus warn, advise
adulterium, (i)ī n. adultery†
aeternum eternally, forever
audeō, ēre, ausus sum dare, venture*
ausum, ī n. daring deed, crime, thing
dared
caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down),
kill
discō, ere, didici learn; *perf.* know
distingō, ere, strinxi, strictus stretch
out†
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, inform*
dominus, ī m. master, lord, ruler
expectō (l) await, expect, hope (for)*
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, vio-
late*
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten, set up*
forma, ae f. shape, beauty, form*
hymenaeus, ī m. (god of) marriage
impius, a, um disloyal, treacherous
impōnō, ere, posui, positus place on*
inclūdō, ere, si, sus shut (in), inclose
invādō, ere, si, sus enter, attack
iūstitia, ae f. justice, righteousness
lēx, lēgis f. law, decree, statute
mergō, ere, rsi, rsus sink, bury, drown
moneō, ēre, uī, itus advise, warn

nāta, ae f. daughter
nefās n. indecl. impiety, crime, sin*
ob on account of (*acc.*)
patria, ae f. fatherland, country*
pendeō, ēre, pependi hang*
Phlegyas, ae m. father of Ixion, who set
fire to Apollo's temple at Delphī†
potēns, entis powerful, ruling, mighty*
potior, iri, itus attain, gain (*abl.*)
pretium, (i)ī n. price, bribe, reward
radius, (i)ī m. rod, spoke, ray
refigō, ere, xī, xus unfasten, annul, pull
down
rota, ae f. wheel; chariot, car
sedeō, ēre, sēdi, sessus sit*
temnō, ere despise, scorn, disdain
testor, āri, ātus call to witness, testify
thalamus, ī m. (bridal) chamber, bedroom*
Thēseus, ei (eos) m. early king of Athens;
he helped his friend, Pirithōus, in his
attempt to carry off Proserpina and
was condemned to sit forever on a
stone in Hades
turba, ae f. crowd, mob, confusion
vendō, ere, didi, ditus sell, betray
vereor, ēri, itus fear, dread, revere
vetō, āre, uī, itus forbid, prohibit

611. *quae*: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a.

612-613. *arma impia*: probably referring to the civil wars at Rome.

613. *dominorum*: obj. gen., the faith pledged to their masters, probably referring to the slave revolts at Rome.

615. *quam poenam* (expectant).

616. *Saxum volvunt*: Sisyphus, for example, was compelled to roll a huge stone to the top of a hill; but at the

summit the stone always escaped and rolled back to the bottom.

621. *hic*: pronounce *hicc*, making a long syllable.

622. *fixit atque refixit*: made and unmade. At Rome the laws were inscribed on bronze tablets and put in some public place; when the laws were repealed or annulled, the tablets were removed.

624. *ausi (sunt), ausōque potiti (sunt)*: dared and gained what they dared.

- 625 *Nōn, mihi sī linguae centum sint ōraque centum,
ferrea vōx, omnis scelerum comprehendere formās,
omnia poenārum percurrere nōmina possim."*
*Haec ubi dicta dedit Phoebī longaeva sacerdos,
"Sed jam age, carpe viam et susceptum perfice mūnus;
630 accelerēmus" ait; "Cyclōpum ēducta camīnis
moenia cōspiciō atque adversō fornice portās,
haec ubi nōs praecepta jubent dēpnere dōna."*
*Dīxerat et pariter gressī per opāca viārum
corripiunt spatium medium foribusque propinquant.
635 Occupat Aenēās aditum corpusque recentī
spargit aquā rārumque adversō in limine figit.*
*Hīs demum exāctis, perfectō mūnere divae,
dēvērēre locōs lactōs et amoena virecta
fortūnātōrum nemorum sēdēsque beatās.*

accelerō (1) hasten, hurry, speed
aditus, ūs *m.* approach, entrance
adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
amoenus, a, um pleasant, delightful
aqua, *ae f.* water, waves, flood*
beātus, a, um happy, blessed
camīnus, *i m.* forge, furnace, chimney
carpō, ere, psi, ptus pluck, take, consume
centum hundred*
compre(he)ndō, ere, i, ēnsus grasp,
comprise
cōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, look at
corripō, ere, ui, reptus snatch (up),
hurry over*
Cyclōps, ōpis *m.* one of a race of one-
eyed giants, workmen of Vulcan, the
smithy god
dēmum at length, finally
dēpnō, ere, posuī, positus lay down,
deposit
dēveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus come down (to),
reach
ēducō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive out, per-
form
ferreus, a, um (of) iron
figō, ere, xī, xus fix, plant, fasten*
foris, *is f.* door, gate, entrance

forma, *ae f.* shape, form, beauty*
fornix, icis *m.* arch, vault†
fortūnātus, a, um blessed, happy
gradior, i, gressus step, go, march
lingua, *ae f.* tongue, language
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
occupō (1) seize (beforehand), gain, oc-
cupy
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
pariter equally, side by side*
percurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus run
through, enumerate, recount, mention†
perficiō, ere, fēci, fectus complete, finish,
accomplish
Phoebus, *i m.* Apollo, god of light, music,
and prophecy*
porta, *ae f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
praeceptum, *i n.* instruction, order
propinquō (1) draw near, approach (*dat.*)
rāmus, *i m.* branch, limb, bough*
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new
sacerdōs, ōtis *m. (f.)* priest(ess)*
scelus, eris *n.* crime, villainy, sin*
spargō, ere, rsi, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
spatium, (i) *n.* space, distance, place
suscipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus undertake
virectum, *i n.* greensward, meadow, turf†

628-636. Aeneas and the Sibyl ap-
proach the palace of Dis, god of the lower
world, and place the golden bough at the
entrance.

629. mūnus: the presentation of the
golden bough to Proserpina.

631. fornice: abl. of quality.

636. spargit: as a rite of purification.
figit: the golden bough is apparently a
votive offering; hence Aeneas fastens it

in some way at the entrance, just as he
had hung up the shield of Abas at the en-
trance to the temple of Apollo (III, 286-
287), and as Antenor had dedicated his
arms in the temple at Patavium (I, 248-
249).

637-665. The region of the blessed
with its beautiful meadows, more abun-
dant atmosphere, and purple light. Here

Largior hīc campōs aethēr et lūmine vestit 640
 purpureō, sōlemque suum, sua sīdera nōrunt.
 Pars in grāmīneīs exercent membra palaestrīs,
 contendunt lūdō et fulvā luctantur harēnā;
 pars pedibus laudunt choreās et carmina dīcunt.
 Nec nōn Thrēicius longā cum veste sacerdōs 645
 obloquitur numeris septem discriminā vōcum,
 jamque eadem digitis, jam pectine pulsat eburnō.
 Hīc genus antiquum Teuerī, pulcherrima prōlēs,
 magnanimī hērōes, nātī meliōribus annīs,
 Ilusque Assaracusque et Trojae Dardanus auctor. 650
 Arma procul currūsque virum mirātur inānis.
 Stant terrā dēfixae hastae passimque solūtī
 per campum pascuntur equī. Quae grātia currum
 armōrumque fuit vivīs, quae cūra nitentīs

aethēr, eris *m.* upper air, sky, ether*
 annus, ī *m.* year, season, time*
 Assaracus, ī *m.* king of Phrygia, and
 grandfather of Anchises
 auctor, ōris *m.* author, founder, sponsor
 carmen, inis *n.* song, poem, chant
 chorea, ae *f.* (round) dance, choral dance†
 contendō, ere, ī, ntus strive, struggle
 currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*
 Dardanus, ī *m.* ancestor of the Trojans
 dēfigō, ere, xī, xus fix, fasten (down)
 digitus, ī *m.* finger, toe
 discrimen, inis *n.* distinction, interval
 eburnus, a, um (of) ivory†
 exerceō, ēre, ūi, itus exercise, drive*
 fulvus, a, um yellow, tawny, blond
 grāmīneus, a, um grassy, of grass
 grātia, ae *f.* charm, liking, favor
 harēna, ae *f.* sand, beach*
 hasta, ae *f.* spear, lance, dart
 hērōs, ōis *m.* hero, mighty warrior*
 Ilus, ī *m.* founder and early king of Troy
 inānis, e empty, unsubstantial, idle*
 largus, a, um abundant, spacious
 luctor, āri, ātus wrestle, struggle
 lūdus, ī *m.* sport, game, play, contest
 magnanimus, a, um great-souled
 melior, ius better, superior, preferable*
 membrum, ī *n.* member, limb, body*

mīror, āri, ātus wonder at, admire*
 nāscor, ī, nātus be born, arise*
 nitēns, entis shining, white, sleek
 nōscō, ere, nōvi, nōtus learn; perf.
 know*
 numerus, ī *m.* number, tune, measure*
 obloquor, ī, locūtus (make) accompany,
 sing responsively†
 palaestra, ae *f.* wrestling (place, bout)
 pascō, ere, pāvi, pāstus feed, graze
 passim everywhere, all about*
 pecten, inis *m.* comb, pick (for striking
 the strings of a lyre)†
 plaudō, ere, sī, sus clap, strike, beat, dance
 prōlēs, is *f.* offspring, progeny, race*
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, handsome,
 noble, splendid, illustrious*
 pulsō (1) strike, beat, lash, throb
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson
 sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)*
 septem seven
 sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*
 solvō, ere, ī, solūtus loose(n), free*
 Teucus (cer), crī *m.* early king of Troy
 Thrēicius, a, um Thracian, of Thrace,
 a country northeast of Greece
 vestiō, ire, ivi (ī), itus clothe, cover†
 vestis, is *f.* cloth(ing), garment, robe*
 vivus, a, um living, alive, natural

the souls of the righteous follow in complete freedom the pursuits to which they had devoted their lives while on earth.

641. suum, sua: as contrasted with those of our world. nō(vē)runt.

642-647. Cf. *Paradise Lost*, 2, 528 ff.

644. choreās: cognate acc.

645. Nec nōn: likewise. Thrēicius sacerdōs: Orpheus.

649. meliōribus annis: in the good old days.

651. (Aenēas) mirātur.

653. curr(u)m: obj. gen. with grātia, the delight in chariots.

654. (eis) vivis: (while) alive; dat. of possession; App. 299.

- 655 pascere equōs, eadem sequitur tellūre repostōs.
Cōnspicit, ecce, aliōs dextrā laevāque per herbam
v̄scentis lactūmque chorō paeāna canentis
inter odōrātum laurī nemus, unde supernē
plūrimus Ēridanī per silvam volvitur amnis. ✓
- 660 — Hīc manus ob patriam pugnandō vulnera passi,
quīque sacerdōtēs castī, dum vītā manēbat,
quīque pīi vātēs et Phoebō digna locūtī,
inventās aut quī vītā excoluēre per artīs,
quīque suī memorēs aliōs fēcēre merendō:
665 omnibus hīs niveā cinguntur tempora vittā.
Quōs circumfūsōs sīc est adfāta Sibylla,
Mūsaeum ante omnīs (medium nam plūrima turba
hunc habet atque umerīs exstantem suspicit altīs):
“Dīcite, fēlicēs animae, tūque, optime vātēs,

adfor, āri, ātus address, speak to*
amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, device, craft*
canō, ere, cecinī, cantus sing (of), chant*
castus, a, um pure, holy, chaste
chorus, i *m.* (dancing) band, chorus
cingō, ere, cīnxi, cinctus encircle, gird(le)*
circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour
(scatter) around
cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus see, behold
dignus, a, um deserving, worthy of (*abl.*)
ecce look! see! behold!*
Ēridanus, i *m.* the river Po in northern
Italy†
excolō, ere, uī, cultus cultivate, enrich†
extō, āre stand out, tower above†
fēlix, icis happy, blessed*
herba, ae *f.* herb(age), grass, plant*
inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus find, invent
laevus, a, um left (hand), on the left*
laurus, i (ūs) *f.* laurel, a tree sacred to
Apollo
loquor, i, locūtus speak, say, talk, tell*
memor, oris mindful, remembering*
mereō, ēre, uī, itus deserve, earn, merit*

Mūsaeus, i *m.* early Thracian bard†
nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
niveus, a, um snowy, white
ob on account of, for (*acc.*)
odōrātus, a, um scented, fragrant†
optimus, a, um best, finest
paeān, ānis, *acc.* āna, *m.* song of praise†
pascō, ere, pāvī, pāstus feed, graze
patior, i, passus suffer, endure, allow*
patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
Phoebus, i *m.* Apollo, god of light,
poetry, music, and prophecy*
pugnō (1) fight, battle, struggle, oppose
repōnō, ere, posuī, pos(i)tus lay away,
bury*
sacerdōs, ōtis *m.* (f.) priest(ess)*
Sibylla, ae *f.* ancient Italian prophetess
supernē (in the world) above†
suspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus look up (at)
tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow
turba, ae *f.* crowd, mob, confusion
unde whence, from which source*
vēscor, ī feed, eat (*abl.*)
vitta, ae *f.* fillet, ribbon, band*
vulnus, eris *n.* wound, deadly blow*

655. repos(i)tōs.

657. chorō: *abl.* of manner. paeāna: *acc. sing.*, a Greek form.

658. supernē: the Po (Eridanus) in its upper part flows some distance under ground, and was thus thought to have its source in Hades.

660. Hic (est) manus (virōrum quī) passi (sunt): manus being used collectively (= manus virōrum) is followed by the *masc. pl.*, a construction according to the sense; App. 441.

661. et (eī) quī (erant) sacerdōtēs casti.

662. vātēs (erant), locūtī (erant).

663. vītā: of mankind in general.

666-702. Aeneas and the Sibyl are guided by Musaeus to Anchises who receives his son with a great show of affection.

667. plūrima turba: indicating his prominence.

*quae regiō Anchīsēn, quis habet locus? Illius ergō
vēnimus et magnōs Erebi trānāvimus amnis.* 670

Atque huic respōnsum paucis ita reddidit hērōs:

*"Nulli certa domus; lūcis habitāmus opācis,
ripārumque torōs et prāta recentia rīvīs
incolimus." Sed vōs, si fert ita corde voluntās,* 675
hoc superāte jugum, et facilī jam trāmite sistam.

*Dixit, et ante tulit gressum campōsque nitentīs
dēsUPER ostentat; dehinc summa cacūmina linquunt.)*

*At pater Anchīsēs penitus convalle virenti
includās animās superumque ad lūmen itūrās* 680

*lūstrābat studiō recolēns, omnemque suōrum
forte recēnsēbat numerum, cārōsque nepōtēs
fātaque fortūnāsque virum mōrēsque manūsque.* Polysynchiton
Isque ubi tendentem adversum per grāmīna vīdit

Aenēān, alacris palmās utrāsque tetendit, 685

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
alacer (cris), cris, cre eager, quick
amnis, is m. river, stream*
cacūmen, inis n. summit, peak, top
cārus, a, um dear, beloved, fond*
certus, a, um fixed, sure, trusty, cer-
tain*
convallis, is f. valley, vale, dale
cor, rdis n. heart, spirit, feelings, soul*
dehinc thence, from there
dēsUPER from above
Erebus, i m. Hades, (god of) the lower
world
ergō therefore, then, consequently; on
account of, for the sake of (*gen.*)
facilis, e easy, favorable, propitious
grāmen, inis n. grass, sward, meadow
gressus, ūs m. step, walk, gait, stride
habitō (1) inhabit, dwell, possess
hērōs, ōis m. hero, mighty warrior*
includō, ere, si, sus shut (up), inclose
incolō, ere, uī inhabit, dwell (in)†
ita thus, so, in this way
jugum, i n. yoke, (mountain) ridge*
linquō, ere, liqui, lictus leave, forsake*
lūcus, i m. (sacred) grove, forest*
lūstrō (1) survey; traverse; purify*
mōs, mōris m. custom, character, man-
ner*

nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*
nitēns, entis shining, bright
numerus, i m. number, multitude*
opācus, a, um dark, shady, gloomy
ostentō (1) show (off), display, exhibit
palma, ae f. palm, hand*
paucus, a, um little, few, scanty*
penitus deep (within), deeply; wholly*
prātum, i n. meadow, greensward†
recēns, entis recent, fresh, new
recēnsēō, ēre, uī, sus (situs) review†
recolō, ere, uī, cultus survey, reflect (on),
contemplate†
reddō, ere, didi, ditus give back, render*
regiō, ōnis f. district, region, tract
respōnsum, i n. reply, answer
ripa, ae f. bank, shore*
rivus, i m. stream, rivulet
sistō, ere, steti, status set, place
studium, (i) i n. desire, zeal, pursuit
superō (1) surmount, overcome, pass
over*
torus, i m. (banqueting) couch*
trāmes, itis m. path, way
trānō (1) swim, voyage across
utereque, utraque, utrumque each (of two),
both*
virēns, entis green, flourishing
voluntās, ātis f. desire, purpose

672. **paucis (dictis).**

674. **ripārum:** (*the couches*) formed
by the banks; appositional geni-
tive.

675. **si fert ita corde voluntās:** *if your
heart thus inclines.*

678. **dehinc:** one syllable here by

synizesis. (*Aenēās et Sibylla*) linquunt
summa cacūmina.

681. **suōrum:** *of his (own) people.*

683. **manūs:** *deeds (of valor in war).*
Observe Vergil's fondness for *-que*, which
he employs four times in this line and
seven times in this sentence; App. 439.

effūsaeque genīs lacrimae et vōx excidit ōre:

"Vēnistī tandem, tuaque exspectāta parentī
vicit iter dūrum pietās? Datur ōra tuērī,
nāte, tua et nōtās audire et reddere vōcēs?"

690

Sic equidem dūcēbam animō rēbarque futūrū
tempora dīnumerāns, nec mē mea cūra fefellit.

Quās ego tē terrās et quanta per aequora vectum
accipiō! Quantis jactātum, nāte, periclis!

Quam metuī nē quid Libyae tibi rēgna nocērent!"

695

Ille autem: "Tua me, genitor, tua trīstis imāgō
saepius occurrēns haec līmina tendere adēgit;
stant sale Tyrrhēnō classēs. Dā jungere dextram,
dā, genitor, tēque amplexū nē subtrahe nostrō."

Sic memorāns largō flētū simul ōra rigābat.

700

Ter cōhatus ibi cōllo dare bracchia circum;
ter frūstrā comprēnsa manūs effūgit imāgō,
pār levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō.

Intereā videt Aenēās in valle reductā

adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus drive to, force
amplexus, ūs m. embrace, fold, grasp
autem moreover, however, but*
bracchium, (i)ī n. arm, forearm*
collum, ī n. neck*
compre(he)ndō, ere, ī, ēnsus seize, grasp
cōnor, āri, ātus attempt, try, endeavor
dīnumerō (l) count, number, compute†
dūrus, a, um hard(y), harsh, stern*
effugiō, ere, fūgī flee, escape
effundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus pour out, utter*
equidem indeed, surely, truly*
excidō, ere, ī fall from, drop
expectō (l) await, expect, hope (for)*
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus deceive, disap-
point*
flētus, ūs m. weeping, tears, lament
frūstrā in vain, uselessly, ineffectually*
gena, ae f. cheek
ibi there, then
imāgō, inis f. likeness, phantom, shade*
intereā meanwhile, (in the) meantime*
iter, itineris n. way, road, journey*
jactō (l) toss, buffet, hurl, cast, fling*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūctus join, unite*
largus, a, um abundant, large, copious
levis, e light, unsubstantial, swift
Libya, ae f. country of northern Africa;
Carthage*

memorō (l) (re)call, recount, say*
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious
noceō, ēre, uī, itus harm, hurt (dat.)
nōtus, a, um (well) known, familiar*
occurrō, ere, (cu)curri, cursus (run to)
meet (dat.)
pār, paris equal, like, similar (dat.)*
peric(u)lum, ī n. danger, peril, risk
pietās, ātis f. devotion, loyalty, sense of
duty, righteousness, nobility*
quam how, than, as*
quantus, a, um how (great, much, many),
as*
reddō, ere, didī, ditus give (back), answer*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead back, re-
tire, seclude
reor, rēri, ratus think, suppose, reckon
rigō (l) wet, water, bedew, moisten†
saepē often, frequently*
sal, salis m. (n.) salt, brine; sea
similis, e like, similar (dat.)*
subtrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus withdraw
ter thrice, three times*
tueor, ēri, itus (tūtus) look (at), watch*
Tyrrhēnus, a, um Etruscan, of Etruria
in northern Italy
vallis, is f. valley, vale, dale
vehō, ere, vēxī, vectus convey, bear*
volucer, cris, cre winged, fleet*

687. parenti (tuō) = mihi: dat. of
agent.

690. futūrū (esse).

692. (per) terrās.

696. (ad) haec līmina.

700-702. Repeated from II, 792-794.
sommō = somniō: dream.

703-751. Anchises tells Aeneas how
individual souls originate as parts of

sēclūsum nemus et virgulta sonantia silvae,
 Lēthaeumque domōs placidās quī praeñatat amnem. 705
*Hunc circum innumerae gentēs populique volābant,
 ac velut in prātīs ubi apēs aestāte serēnā
 flōribus insidunt variīs et candida circum
 lilia funduntur, strepit omnis murmurē campus.*
 Horrēscit vīsū subitō causāsque requirit 710
 īnscius Aenēās, quae sint ea flūmina porrō,
 quīve virī tantō complērint agmine rīpās. □
*Tum pater Anchīsēs: "Animae, quibus altera fātō
 corpora dēbentur, Lēthaeī ad flūminis undam
 sēcūrōs laticēs et longa oblivia pōtant. 715
 Hās equidem memorāre tibi atque ostendere cōram,
 jamprīdem hanc prōlem cupiō ēnumerāre meōrum,
 quō magis Ītaliā mēcum laetēre repertā."*
 ["*Ō pater, anne aliquās ad caelum hinc īre putandum est
 sublimīs animās iterumque ad tarda revertī 720*

aestās, ātis *f.* summer (time)
 aliquis, qua, quid some(one), any(one)*
 alter, era, erum other (of two), second*
 amnis, is *m.* river, stream*
 an(ne) interrog. whether, or†
 apis, is *f.* bee
 candidus, a, um white, shining
 causa, ae *f.* reason, cause, occasion*
 compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus fill, complete
 cōram face to face, before the face
 cupiō, ere, īvi (īi), itus wish, desire
 dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus owe, be due, ought
 ēnumerō (1) enumerate, count (off)
 equidem indeed, surely, truly*
 flōs, ōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
 flūmen, inis *n.* river, stream, flood*
 horrēscō, ere, horruī shudder, tremble
 innumerus, a, um countless†
 īnscius, a, um ignorant, unaware
 īnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus sit (down, on),
 settle (*dat.*)
 iterum again, anew, a second time*
 jamprīdem long since, for a long time
 laetor, āri, ātus rejoice, exult, delight
 lātex, icis *m.* liquid, water, wine
 Lēthaeus, a, um of Lethe, the river of
 forgetfulness in Hades
 lilium, (i)ī *n.* lily†
 magis more, rather*
 memorō (1) recount, recall, mention*

murmur, uris *n.* murmur, buzz, roar
 nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*
 oblivium, (i)ī *n.* forgetfulness, oblivion†
 ostendō, ere, ī, ntus show, display*
 placidus, a, um calm, peaceful, quiet*
 populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
 porrō further, yonder, afar (off)
 pōtō (1) drink (of), quaff†
 praeñatō (1) flow past, glide by†
 prātum, ī *n.* meadow, greensward
 prōlēs, is *f.* progeny, offspring, race*
 putō (1) think, suppose, consider
 reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus find
 requirō, ere, sīvī, situs seek, inquire
 revertor, ī, rsus return, revert
 rīpa, ae *f.* bank, shore*
 sēclūdō, ere, sī, sus shut off, seclude
 sēcūrus, a, um free(ing) from care
 serēnus, a, um clear, calm, serene
 sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
 strepō, ere, uī, itus hum, sound, rat-
 tle†
 subitus, a, um sudden, unexpected
 sublimis, e lofty, aloft, on high
 tardus, a, um slow, sluggish, late
 varius, a, um various, variegated*
 velut(i) as, just as*
 virgultum, ī *n.* thicket, bush, copse
 visus, ūs *m.* sight, vision, view
 volō (1) fly, speed, flit, flutter*

the great world-soul, how they unite
 with earthly bodies, how they are
 purified after death from the stains
 of the body, and how they return
 to the upper world and enter new
 bodies.

712. complē(ve)rint.

717. meōrum: of my descendants.

718. quō laetēre (= laetēris): rel.
 clause of purpose; App. 204. 4; 388.

719. ad caelum: to the upper air, i.e.,
 to the world of living men.

corpora? Quae lūcis miseris tam dira cupidō?"

"Dicam equidem nec tē suspēsum, nāte, tenēbō,"

suscipit Anchīsēs atque ordine singula pandit.

725 *["Principiō caelum ac terram campōsque liquētis*

lūcentemque globum lūnae Tītāniaque astra

spiritus intus alit, tōtamque infūsa per artūs

mēns agitat mōlem et magnō sē corpore miscet.

Inde hominum pecudumque genus vītaeque volantum

et quae marmoreō fert mōnstra sub aequore pontus.

730 *Igneus est ollīs vigor et caelestis oriḡō*

sēminibus, quantum nōn corpora noxia tardant

terrēnīque hebetant artūs moribundaeque membra.

Hinc metuunt cupiuntque, dolent gaudentque, neque aurās

agitō (1) move, drive, harass, agitate
alō, ere, uī, (i)tus, nourish, feed, rear
artus, ūs *m.* joint, member, limb, body*
astrum, i *n.* star, sun, constellation*
caelestis, e heavenly, celestial, divine
cupidō, inis *f.* desire, love, passion
cupiō, ere, ivi (ii), itus desire, wish
dirus, a, um terrible, dire, wild*
doleō, ēre, uī, itus grieve, suffer, resent
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice, exult
globus, i *m.* globe, sphere, orb
hebetō (1) blunt, dull, dim, weaken
homō, inis *m. (f.)* man, human, mortal*
igneus, a, um fiery, flaming
inde thence, from that source*
infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus pour (on, in),
infuse
intus within, inside
liquēns, entis clear, bright, liquid
lūceō, ēre, lūxī shine, gleam, beam
lūna, ae *f.* moon, moonlight*
marmoreus, a, um (of) marble, shining
membrum, i *n.* member, limb, body*
metuō, ere, uī fear, dread, be anxious
misceō, ēre, uī, mixtus mix, mingle*
mōlēs, is *f.* (huge) mass, bulk, burden*

mōnstrum, i *n.* monster, prodigy, omen*
moribundus, a, um dying, ready to die
noxius, a, um harmful, hurtful†
ordō, inis *m.* order, rank, array, row*
oriḡō, inis *f.* origin, source, beginning
pandō, ere, i, passus open, disclose*
pecus, udis *f.* animal (of the flock)*
pontus, i *m.* sea, waves*
principiō first(ly), in the first place
quantus, a, um how great, how much,
how many, as*
sēmen, inis *n.* seed, germ, element
singuli, ae, a separate, each, one by one
spiritus, ūs *m.* breath, air, spirit, soul
suscipio, ere, cēpi, ceptus undertake,
resume
suspēsus, a, um uncertain, anxious
tam so (much), so great(ly), such*
tardō (1) hinder, clog, impede, retard
terrēnus, a, um earthy, earthen†
Tītānius, a, um of the Titans, great
giants who rebelled against the gods;
Tītānia astra the sun (god), son of the
Titan Hyperion
vigor, ōris *m.* force, vigor, life, energy†
volāns, antis *m. (f.)*, bird, fowl, flying
thing

724. campōs liquētis = mare.

724-751. This whole passage has many difficulties and much of it is far from clear, possibly due at least partially to the unfinished condition of the poem; Introd. 5.

725-727. Tītānia astra = the sun (god), a descendant of a Titan. artūs: the universe is here conceived as an organism, filled with a vital force (anima mundi), the source of all life, thought, and motion. tōtam mōlem, magnō corpore: refer to the whole universe.

728. volant(i)um.

731. sēminibus: germs, i.e., souls; dat. of possession. quantum: so far as harmful mortal bodies do not hinder (these souls). Cf. Shakespeare's *Merchant of Venice*, V, 1, 64-65:

"But whilst this muddy vesture of decay
Doth grossly close it in."

733. Hinc: from the debasing influence of the body. (animae) metuunt. aurās = caelum.

dispiciunt clausae tenebris et carcere caecō.

Quin et suprēmō cum lūmine vīta reliquit, 735

nōn tamen omne malum miseris nec funditus omnēs

corporeae excēdunt pestēs, penitusque necesse est

mulla diū conerēta modis inolēscere mīris.

Ergō exercentur poenīs veterumque malōrum

supplicia expendunt: aliae panduntur inānēs 740

suspēnsae ad ventōs, aliīs sub gurgite vastō

infectum ēluitur scelus aut exūritur ignī —

quisque suōs patimur mānis; exinde per amplum

mittimur Ēlysium et paucī laeta arva tenēmus —

dōnec longa diēs perfectō temporis orbe 745

concrētā exēmit lābem, pūrumque relinquit

aetherium sēnsū atque aurāi simplicis ignem.

Hās omnīs, ubi mille rotam volvēre per annōs,

aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
 amplus, a, um wide, spacious, ample
 annus, i m. year, season, time*
 caecus, a, um blind, dark, hidden*
 carcer, eris m. prison, inclosure, barrier
 claudō, ere, si, sus shut (in), confine*
 concrēscō, ere, crēvi, crētus grow (with,
 in), ingrain

corporeus, a, um of the body, corporeal†
 dispiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, discern
 diū (for) a long time

dōnec until, while, as long as

ēluō, ere, ui, ūtus wash out†

Ēlysium, (i) i n. abode of the blessed in
 Hades

ergō therefore, then, consequently*

excēdō, ere, cessi, cessus withdraw, de-
 part

exerceō, ēre, ui, itus drive, torment*

eximō, ere, ēmi, ēmptus remove, destroy

exinde thence, next†

expendō, ere, i, ēnsus pay, suffer

exūrō, ere, ussi, ustus burn out, consume

funditus completely, entirely, utterly†

gurgis, itis m. whirl (pool, wind), water*

inānis, e empty, shadowy, spectral, vain*

inficiō, ere, fēci, fectus dye, work in

inolēscō, ere, lēvi, litus grow in, become

ingrained†

lābēs, is f. spot, stain, blemish; ruin
 malum, i n. evil, sin, misfortune, trouble*
 mānēs, ium m. spirit, soul, character; (lot
 in) Hades*

mille; pl. milia, ium n. thousand*

mirus, a, um wonderful, marvelous

modus, i m. manner, measure, limit*

necesse indecl. necessary; necessity

orbis, is m. circle, cycle, orb(it), earth*

pandō, ere, i, passus open, spread out*

patior, i, passus endure, suffer, allow*

paucus, a, um little, few, scanty, slight*

penitus deeply, (deep) within; wholly*

perficiō, ere, fēci, fectus finish, complete

pestis, is f. plague, scourge, infection,

curse

pūrus, a, um clean, pure, clear; unpainted

quā (but) that, nay even, why not*

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)

each (one), every (one)

rota, ae f. wheel, cycle

scelus, eris n. crime, sin, guilt*

sēnsus, ūs m. feeling, sense, perception

simplex, icis simple, unmixed†

supplicium, (i) i n. suffering, punishment

suspendō, ere, i, ēnsus hang up*

tamen nevertheless, however, but*

tenebrae, arum f. darkness, gloom

vetus, eris old, aged, ancient, former*

734. tenebris et carcere caecō: i.e.,
 in the body.

735. lūmine suprēmō: at the last day.

736. (eis) miseris: dat. of separa-
 tion.

737. corporeae pestēs: the plagues
 caused by the body to the soul.

740. inānēs (animae): unsubstantial
 (souls).

743. quisque suōs patimur mānis: each

of us endures his own spirit; each one
 suffers according to his character (mānēs).

744. pauci nōs = pauci nostrōrum.

745. longa diēs = longum tempus. per-
 fectō temporis orbe: a thousand years,
 as we see in l. 748.

747. aurāi: trisyllabic; an old form
 of the gen. sing.; App. 34, b.

748. rotam (temporis). volvēre = vol-
 vērunt.

750 Lēthaeum *ad fluvium deus ēvocat agmine magnō,*
 scilicet *immemorēs supera ut convexa revisant*
rūrsus, et incipiant in corpora velle reverti."

755 *Dixerat Anchīsēs nātumque ūnāque Sibyllam*
conventūs trahit in mediōs turbamque sonantem,
et tumultum capit unde omnīs longō ordine posset
adversōs legere et venientum discere vultūs.

760 *"Nunc age, Dardaniā prōlem quae deinde sequātur*
glōria, quā maneant Italā dē gente nepōtēs,
inlūstrīs animās nostrumque in nōmen itūrās,
expediam dictīs, et tē tua fāta docēbō.
Ille, vidēs, pūrā juvenis quī nītitur hastā,
proxima sorte tenet lūcis loca, prīmus ad aurās
aetheriās Italō commixtus sanguine surget,
Silvius, Albānum nōmen, tua postuma prōlēs,
quem tibi longaevō sērum Lāvīnia conjūnx

adversus, a, um opposite, facing*
aetherius, a, um ethereal, heavenly
Albānus, a, um of Alba Longa, the mother city of Rome
commisceō, ēre, uī, mixtus (com) mingle, mix
conventus, ūs m. assembly, gathering†
convexum, ī n. hollow, vault (of heaven)
Dardanius, a, um Dardanian, Trojan*
deinde next, thence, thereupon*
discō, ere, didici learn, recognize
doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach, tell, show*
ēvocō (1) summon, call forth, evoke
expediō, ire, ivi (ii), itus extricate, unfold, set forth
fluvius, (i)ī m. river, stream
glōria, ae f. glory, renown, reputation
hasta, ae f. spear, lance, dart
immemor, oris forgetful, unmindful
incipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus begin, undertake*
inlūstrīs, e famous, glorious†
Italus, a, um Italian, of Italy
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man, woman)*
Lāvīnia, ae f. Italian princess, second wife of Aeneas†

legō, ere, lēgi, lēctus gather, choose, scan*
Lēthaeus, a, um of Lethe, the river of forgetfulness
longaevus, a, um aged, old, long-lived
nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*
nītor, ī, sus (nixus) lean (on) (*abl.*)
ordō, inis m. order, row, rank, array*
postumus, a, um latest-born, last
prōlēs, is f. progeny, offspring, race*
proximus, a, um nearest, closest, next
pūrus, a, um clean, pure, clear; unpointed
revertor, ī, rsus return, revert
revisō, ere revisit, see again
rūrsus, um again, anew, back(ward)*
scilicet of course, forsooth, doubtless
sērus, a, um (too) late, tardy
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess
Silvius, (i)ī m. son of Aeneas and Lavinia, king of Alba Longa†
sonō, āre, uī, itus (re)sound, roar*
sors, rtis f. lot, destiny, portion; oracle*
tumulus, ī m. mound, tomb*
turba, ae f. crowd, mob, confusion
ūnā together, at the same time
unde whence, from which source*
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, aspect*

750. *immemorēs*: forgetful of the past, due to drinking of the waters of Lethe.

752-805. Anchises leads Aeneas to a height whence they pass in review their descendants yet unborn, the Alban and the Roman kings, and especially Augustus Caesar, associated with Romulus as the second founder of the Roman state.

754. *posset*: rel. clause of characteristic; App. 389.

756. *deinde*: two syllables here by synizesis.

760. *pūrā hastā*: a spear without the iron head, awarded for distinguished conduct in battle.

761. *proxima loca*: i.e., he will be born next.

762. *Italō commixtus sanguine*: since

ēdūcet *silvīs rēgem rēgumque parentem*,
 unde *genus Longā nostrum dominābitur Albā*.
 Proximus *ille Procās, Trojānae glōria gentis*,
 et Capys et Numitor et *quī tē nōmine reddet*
 Silvius Aenēās, pariter pietāte *vel armīs*
 ēgregius, *sī umquam rēgnandam accēperit* Albam. 770
Quī juvenēs! Quantās ostentant, aspice, vīrīs
atque umbrāta gerunt cīvili tempora quercū!
Hī tibi Nōmentum et Gabiōs urbemque Fidēnam,
hī Collātīnās impōnent montibus arcēs,
 Pōmetiōs Castrumque Inuī Bōlamque Coramque. 775
Haec tum nōmina erunt, nunc sunt sine nōmine terrae.
Quīn et avō comitem sēsē Māvortius addet

addō, ere, didī, ditus add, place beside*

Aeneās, ae *see* Silvius†

Alba, ae *f.* Alba Longa, mother city of Rome

a(d)spiciō, ere, spexī, spectus *see*, look upon

avus, i *m.* grandfather; ancestor

Bōla, ae *f.* Italian city†

Capys, yos *m.* king of Alba Longa†

Castrum, i *n.* Castle, Fort; Castrum Inuī, Italian city†*

cīvilis, e *civic*, civil, of a citizen†

Collātīnus, a, um of Collatia, a city near Rome†

Cora, ae *f.* Italian city†

dominor, āri, ātus rule, dominate, master
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, raise, bear

ēgregius, a, um remarkable, distinguished

Fidēna, ae *f.* Italian city†

Gabiī, ōrum *m.* Italian city†

gerō, ere, gessi, gestus carry (on), wear*
 glōria, ae *f.* fame, glory, reputation

impōnō, ere, posuī, positus place on (dat.)*

Inuus, i *m.* god of cattle†

juvenis, is *m. (f.)* youth, young (man, woman)*

Longa, ae *see* Alba

Māvortius, a, um of Mars, god of war

Nōmentum, i *n.* Italian city†

Numitor, ōris *m.* king of Alba Longa†

ostentō (1) show (off), display, parade, exhibit

pariter equally, side by side*

pietās, ātis *f.* devotion, loyalty, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*

Pōmetiī, ōrum *m.* Italian city†

Procās, ae *m.* king of Alba Longa†

proximus, a, um next, closest, nearest

quantus, a, um how (great, much, many), as*

quercus, ūs *f.* oak

quīn (but) that, nay even, why not*

reddō, ere, didī, ditus give back, recall, repeat*

rēgnō (1) rule (as king), reign, govern

Silvius, (i)ī *m.* Silvius Aeneas, king of Alba Longa

sine without (abl.)*

tempus, oris *n.* temple, brow

Trojānus, a, um Trojan, of Troy*

umbrō (1) shade, shadow, darken

umquam ever, at any time

unde whence, from which source*

he was to be the son of Aeneas, a Trojan, and of Lavinia, an Italian.

765. (in) silvis: Livy says of him *cāsū quōdam (some) in silvis nātus*.

768. Numitor: with the final syllable lengthened under the verse accent and before the pause; App. 394, a.

770. umquam: according to tradition his guardian kept him from the royal power for fifty years.

772. cīvili quercū: usually called *corōna cīvica*, a wreath of oak leaves granted to those who had saved the life of a Roman citizen in battle. The Senate decreed that such a crown should always hang before the doors of Augustus, and the poet may have this in mind here.

773. Hī (condent).

777. avō: Numitor. addet: *will join him (in the world of living men).*

- Rōmulus, Assaracī *quem sanguinis* Īlia māter
 ēdūcet. *Viden, ut geminae stant vertice cristae*
 780 *et pater ipse suō superum jam signat honōre?*
 Ēn *hujus, nāte, auspiciis illa incluta Rōma*
imperium terrīs, animōs aequābit Olympō,
septemque ūna sibi mūrō circumdabit arcēs,
 — *fēlix prōle virum: quālis Berecynthia māter*
 785 *invehitur currū Phrygiās turrīta per urbēs*
laeta deum partū, centum complexa nepōtēs,
omnīs caelicolās, omnīs supera alta tenentīs.
Hūc geminās nunc flecte aciēs, hanc aspice gentem
Rōmānōsque tuōs. Hic Caesar et omnīs Iūli
 790 *prōgeniēs magnum caelī ventūra sub axem.*
Hic vir, hic est, tibi quem prōmitti saepius audīs,

aciēs, *ēi f.* edge; line; vision, eye*
 aequō (1) equal(ize), make equal, even*
 axis, *i n.* the deep; the height, heaven
 a(d)spiciō, *ere, spexi, spectus* see, look at*
 Assaracus, *i m.* Phrygian king, grand-
 father of Anchises
 auspiciū, (i) *i n.* auspices, authority
 axis, *is m.* axis, axle, wheel; vault
 Berecynthius, *a, um* of Berecynth, *a*
 mountain in Phrygia, center of the
 worship of Cybele, mother of the godst
 caelicola, *ae m. (f.)* god(dess), divinity
 Caesar, *aris m.* great Roman statesman
 and general
 centum hundred*
 circumdō, *dare, dedī, datus* surround
 complotor, *i, plexus* embrace, enfold
 crista, *ae f.* crest, plume
 currus, *ūs m.* chariot, car*
 ēdūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus* lead out, raise,
 bear
 ēn see! look! behold!
 fēlix, *icis* happy, blessed, fruitful*
 flectō, *ere, xi, xus* bend, turn; guide
 Īlia, *ae f.* a vestal virgin, mother of Romu-
 lus and Remus by the god Mars

inclusus, *a, um* famous, renowned
 invehō, *ere, vēxi, vectus* convey, bear
 Iūlus, *i m.* Ascanius, son of Aeneas*
 mūrus, *i m.* (city) wall, rampart*
 nepōs, *ōtis m.* grandson, descendant*
 Olympus, *i m.* high Greek mountain,
 home of the gods; heaven
 partus, *ūs m.* birth, offspring
 Phrygius, *a, um* of Phrygia, a country
 of Asia Minor*
 prōgeniēs, *ēi f.* offspring, race, prog-
 eny
 prōlēs, *is f.* offspring, progeny, race*
 prōmittō, *ere, misi, missus* promise*
 quālis, *e* of what sort, as*
 Rōma, *ae f.* Rome, a city and empire
 Rōmānus, *a, um* Roman, of Rome*
 Rōmulus, *i m.* son of Mars and the vestal
 virgin Īlia, legendary founder of Rome
 saepe, *ius, issimē* often, frequently*
 septem seven
 signō (1) mark, distinguish, observe
 turrītus, *a, um* crowned with towers,
 turreted
 ūnā together, at the same time
 vertex, *icis m.* top, head, summit, peak*

779. *Viden* = *vidēsne*.

780. *pater*: Mars. *suō honōre*: i.e., the double-crested helmet (*geminae cristae*), which was a characteristic of Mars. (*eum superum*: acc. sing., marks him (as) a god.

781. *hujus auspiciis*: under his auspices, referring to the famous omen of the twelve vultures which Romulus saw, while Remus saw only six.

783. *sibi*: dat. of reference.

784. *Berecynthia māter*: Cybele, mother of the gods, usually represented as driving a chariot drawn by lions and as wearing on her head a crown with decorations representing the towers of a city wall, thus symbolizing the earth and its cities.

788. *aciēs* = *oculōs*.

789. *Caesar*: Julius (or possibly Augustus).

791. *hic*: irregularly short; App. 107, 3, c.

Augustus Caesar, *divi genus*, aurea condet
 saecula quī rursus Latīo rēgnata per arva
 Sātūrnō *quondam*, *super et Garamantas et Indōs*
 prōferet *imperium*; jacet extrā *sidera tellūs*, 795
 extrā annī sōlisque *viās*, ubi caelifer Atlās
 axem *umerō* torquet stēllis *ardentibus* aptum.
Hujus in adventum jam nunc et Caspia rēgna
respōnsis horrent divum et Maeōtia tellūs,
 et septemgeminī turbant trepida ōstia Nīlī. 800
Nec vērō Alcīdēs tantum tellūris obivit,
fixerit acripedem cervam licet, aut Erymanthi
pācārit nemora et Lernam tremefēcirit arcū;

adventus, ūs *m.* approach, arrival

aeripēs, edis bronze-hoofed†

Alcīdēs, ae *m.* descendant of Alceus,

Hercules, god of strength who wandered over the whole world in performing his famous twelve labors, among which was the killing of the bronze-footed Arcadian deer, of the Erymanthian boar, and of the Lernaean hydra

annus, ī *m.* year, season, time*

aptus, a, um fitted, studded, furnished

arcus, ūs *m.* bow, arch, arc*

Atlās, antis *m.* god who supported the heavens on his shoulders; mountain of northwestern Africa

Augustus, ī *m.* great Roman statesman†

aureus, a, um golden, (of) gold*

axis, is *m.* axle, axis, wheel; vault

caelifer, era, erum heaven-supporting†

Caesar, aris *m.* great Roman statesman†

Caspian, a, um of the Caspian Sea in Asia†

cerva, ae *f.* deer, doe

condō, ere, didī, ditus found, establish*

Erymanthus, ī *m.* mountain range of Arcadia where Hercules killed the famous wild boar

extrā beyond, outside (of) (*acc.*)

figō, ere, xī, xus (trans)fix, pierce, fasten*

Garamantes, um *m.* African tribe†

horreō, ēre, uī bristle, shudder, quake*

Indī, ōrum *m.* inhabitants of India†

jaceō, ēre, uī, itus lie (low, outspread)*

Latium, (i) ī *n.* district around Rome*

Lerna, ae *f.* marsh near Argos where Hercules killed the famous hydra, a monster with seven (fifty) serpent heads

licet, ēre, uit, itum it is permitted*

Maeōtia, a, um of Lake Maeotia, the Sea of Azov†

nemus, oris *n.* (sacred) grove, forest*

Nilus, ī *m.* the great river of Egypt†

obeō, ire, ii (ivī), itus pass over, die

ōstium, (i) ī *n.* mouth, entrance; harbor

pācō (1) pacify, tame, quiet, calm†

prōferō, ferre, tuli, lātus advance, extend†

rēgnō (1) rule (as king), reign, govern

respōnsum, ī *n.* answer, oracle, response

rursus, um again, anew, back(ward)*

saeculum, ī *n.* age, generation

Sātūrnus, ī *m.* early Italian god who ruled during the Golden Age†

septemgeminus, a, um sevenfold†

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun; day*

stēlla, ae *f.* star, constellation

torqueō, ēre, rsi, rtus twist, turn, whirl*

tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus make tremble

trepidus, a, um agitated, fluttered

turbō (1) confuse, perplex, be alarmed*

vērō truly, verily, indeed, but

792. *divi genus*: son of the deified (Julius Caesar).

793. (in) *Latīo*.

794. *Sātūrnō*: dat. of agent; Saturn was ruler of heaven and earth in the Golden Age; after his dethronement he came to Italy.

795. *sidera*: the zodiac, which denotes the course of the sun.

796. *anni sōlisque viās*: the yearly course of the sun.

800. *septemgeminī*: the Nile divides into a number of streams near its mouth, forming a delta.

802-803. *licet fixerit, pācā(ve)rit, tremefēcirit*: concessive; App.384. *cervam*: the third labor of Hercules was to capture the bronze-footed deer of Ceryneia in

- 805 *nec quā pampineis victor juga flectit habēnis*
Liber, agēns celsō Nysae dē vertice tigris.
Et dubitāmus adhūc virtūtem extendere factis,
aut metus Ausoniā prohibet cōsistere terrā?
Quis procul ille autem rāmīs insignis olivae
sacra ferēs? Nōscō crīnis incānaque menta
810 *rēgis Rōmānī prīmam quā lēgibus urbem*
fundābit Curibus parvis et paupere terrā,
missus in imperium magnum. Cui deinde subibit
ōtia quā rumpet patriae residēsque movēbit
Tullus in arma virōs et jam dēsūeta triumphīs
815 *agmina. Quem juxtā sequitur jactantior Ancus*
nunc quoque jam nimium gaudēs populārībus aurīs.
Vīs et Tarquiniōs rēgēs animamque superbam

adhūc still, yet, hitherto
 Ancus, *i m.* fourth king of Rome, pictured
 by Vergil as a demagogue†
 Ausonius, *a, um* Ausonian, Italian
 autem however, moreover, but*
 celsus, *a, um* high, lofty, towering*
 cōsistō, *ere, stiti, stitus* stand (fast)*
 crīnis, *is m.* hair, locks, tresses*
 Curēs, *ium m.* Italian city, home of Numa,
 lawgiver and second king of Rome†
 deinde then, thence, next, thereupon*
 dēsūetus, *a, um* unaccustomed, dormant
 dubitō (1) doubt, hesitate, waver
 extendō, *ere, i, ntus* extend, stretch out
 factum, *i n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
 flectō, *ere, xi, xus* bend, turn; guide
 fundō (1) found, establish, base
 gaudeō, *ēre, gāvisus sum* rejoice, exult
 habēna, *ae f.* rein, curb, check
 incānus, *a, um* hoary, gray, white†
 insignis, *e* distinguished, marked*
 jactō (1) toss, buffet, boast, vaunt*
 jugum, *i n.* yoke, (mountain) ridge*
 juxtā next, close to (*acc.*)*
 lēx, lēgis *f.* law, decree, regulation
 Liber, *eri m.* Bacchus, god of wine, who
 drove his chariot drawn by tigers (or
 panthers) all over the world†
 mentum, *i n.* chin; beard, whiskers
 metus, *ūs m.* fear, dread, anxiety*

nimium too (much, greatly)
 nōscō, *ere, nōvi, nōtus* learn, recognize;
perf. know*
 Nysa, *ae f.* mountain of India, fabled
 birthplace of Bacchus†
 oliva, *ae f.* olive
 ōtium, (i) *n.* repose, peace, leisure
 pampineus, *a, um* of vine (leaves, tendrils)†
 parvus, *a, um* small, little*
 patria, *ae f.* fatherland, country*
 pauper, *eris* poor, needy, lowly
 populāris, *e* popular, of the people†
 prohibeō, *ēre, ui, itus* prevent, prohibit
 quoque also, in addition, too, likewise*
 rāmus, *i m.* branch, limb, bough*
 reses, *idis* inactive, sluggish, dormant
 Rōmānus, *a, um* Roman, of Rome*
 rumpō, *ere, rūpi, ruptus* break, burst
 (forth)*
 superbus, *a, um* proud, haughty*
 Tarquinius, (i) *i m.* Tarquinius Priscus,
 the fifth, and Tarquinius Superbus, the
 seventh and last king of Rome†
 tigris, (id) *is m. (f.)* tiger, tigress
 triumphus, *i m.* triumph, victory
 Tullus, *i m.* a great warrior, third king
 of Rome†
 vertex, *icis m.* top, peak, summit, head*
 virtūs, *ūtis f.* manhood, excellence, valor*

Arcadia. He wounded it and then caught it. *pācā(ve)rit*: gave peace to, by killing the wild boar.

806 846. Aeneas is shown others of his descendants, among whom Caesar and Pompey attract special attention.

808. *rāmīs olivae*: a priest when sacri-

ficing often wore a wreath of olive. *ille*: Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

809. *menta*: poetic plural; App. 243.

810. *rēgis*: Numa, legendary founder of most of the early Roman laws and religious ceremonies.

816. *populārībus aurīs*: the breezes of popular favor.

817. *Vīs*: from *volō*.

ultōris Brūti, fascisque vidēre receptōs?
 Cōsulis imperium hic p̄mus saevāsque secūris
 accipiet, nātōsque pater nova bella moventīs 820
 ad poenam pulchrā prō libertāte vocābit.
 Infelix! Utcumque ferent ea facta minōrēs:
 vincet amor patriae laudumque immēsa cupīdō.
 Quin Deciōs Drūsōsque procul saevumque secūri
 aspice Torquātum et referentem signa Camillum. 825
 Illae autem paribus quās fulgere cernis in armīs,
 concordēs animae nunc et dum nocte premuntur,
 heu quantum inter sē bellum, sī lūmina vitāe
 attigerint, quantās aciēs strāgemque ciēbunt,
 aggeribus socer Alpīnis atque arce Monoeci 830

aciēs, ēī *f.* edge; battle(-line); view*
 agger, eris *m.* mound, barrier, rampart
 Alpinus, a, um Alpine, of the Alps
 a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at*
 attingō, ere, tigi, tāctus touch, attain
 autem however, moreover, but*
 Brūtus, ī *m.* expeller of the Tarquins and
 first consul at Rome, who executed his
 own sons for attempted rebellion†
 Camillus, ī *m.* conqueror of the Gauls who
 had captured Rome in 390 B.C.†
 cieō, ēre, civi, citus stir (up), arouse*
 concors, rdis harmonious, concordant
 cōsul, ulis *m.* one of the two chief magis-
 trates annually appointed at Rome†
 cupidō, inis *f.* desire, love, longing
 Decius, (i)ī *m.* name of two heroic consuls
 who devoted themselves in battle in
 the Latin and Gallic wars†
 Drūsus, ī *m.* (1) one of the consuls who de-
 feated Hasdrubal, brother of Hannibal,
 at the Metaurus in 207 B.C.; (2) brother
 of Tiberius and stepson of Augustus†
 factum, ī *n.* deed, achievement, exploit*
 fascis, is *m.* bundle of rods with ax, carried
 by lictors before Roman kings and con-
 suls as a symbol of authority†

fulg(e)ō, ěre, lsi shine, gleam, glitter
 immēsus, a, um boundless, vast
 laus, laudis *f.* praise, glory, merit*
 libertās, ātis *f.* liberty, freedom†
 minōrēs, um *m.* younger people, posterity
 Monoecus, ī *m.* Monaco, a city in north-
 ern Italy†
 pār, paris equal, similar, like*
 patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country*
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus (re)press,
 weigh down*
 prō before, on behalf of, for (*abl.*)*
 pulcher, chra, chrum beautiful, glorious,
 handsome, splendid, illustrious*
 quantus, a, um how (great, much, many),
 as*
 quin (but) that, nay even, why not*
 recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus recover, receive*
 saevus, a, um fierce, cruel, stern*
 secūris, is *f.* ax, battle-ax
 signum, ī *n.* sign, standard, mark, token*
 socer, eri *m.* father-in-law
 strāgēs, is *f.* slaughter, carnage
 Torquātus, ī *m.* consul who executed his
 own son for disobeying orders†
 ultor, ōris *m.* avenger, punisher
 utcumque how(so)ever, when(so)ever†

818. fascis: bundles of rods with an ax in the middle, used as symbols of authority by the kings of Rome but taken over (receptōs) by Brutus for the republic and henceforth symbols of the consuls.

820. nova = civil. See the note on novandis, IV, 290. The sons of Brutus plotted for the return of the expelled kings and were executed by their father.

822. Utcumque ferent minōrēs: how-soever posterity may extol the deed.

824. Drūsōs: Vergil is here complimenting Augustus, whose wife Livia belonged to this famous family.

825. signa: the standards captured by the Gauls from the Romans at the battle of the Allia, 387 B.C., but recovered by Camillus, who defeated the Gauls shortly thereafter.

826-827. Illae animae: Pompey and Caesar. fulgēre: usually of the second conjugation, but of the third conjugation here. nocte: a general term for the lower world as distinguished from the world of light and sunshine.

830. socer: Caesar, whose daughter Julia had married Pompey. aggeribus Alpīnis: beyond which Caesar had been

- dēscendēns, gener adversis instrūctus Eōis!
Nē, puerī, nē tanta animīs adsuēscite bella
neu patriae validās in viscera vertite virīs;
tūque prior, tū parce, genus quī dūcis Olympō,
 835 *prōjice telā māhū, sanguis meus! —*
Ille triumphātā Capitōlia ad alta Corinthō
victor aget currum caesis insignis Achīvīs.
Ēruet ille Argōs Agamemnoniāsque Mycēnās
ipsumque Aeacidēn, genus armipotentis Achillī,
 840 *ultus avōs Trojae templa et temerāta Minervae.*
Quis tē, magne Catō, tacitum aut tē, Cosse, relinquat?
Quis Gracchī genus aut geminōs, duo fulmina bellī,

Achillēs, is (ei, i) *m.* famous Greek chief-tain before Troy*

Achivus, a, um Achaeon, Greek adsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus make accustomed

adversus, a, um opposite, opposing, facing*

Aeacidēs, ae *m.* descendant of Aeacus; Perseus, king of Macedonia, who claimed to be descended from Aeacus through Achilles

Agamemnonius, a, um of Agamemnon, king of Mycenae, who led the Greek expedition against Troy

Argī, ōrum *m.* famous kingdom and city of southern Greece

armipotēns, entis powerful in arms avus, i *m.* grandfather; ancestor caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus cut (down), kill

Capitōlium, (i) i *n.* the Capitoline Hill, the Capitol at Rome†

Catō, ōnis *m.* famous Roman statesman, noted for his stern simplicity†

Corinthus, i *f.* famous Greek city, captured and destroyed by Lucius Mummius in 146 B.C.†

Cossus, i *m.* Roman general who was the second (Romulus being first and Marcellus third) to win the spolia opima by killing in battle the enemy's leader

currus, ūs *m.* chariot, car*

dēscendō, ere, i, ēnsus descend duo, ae, o two*

Eōus, a, um eastern, of the East ēruō, ere, uī, utus overthrow, ruin fulmen, inis *n.* thunderbolt, lightning*

gener, eri *m.* son-in-law Gracchus, i *m.* (1) Tiberius; (2) Gaius; the Gracchi, famous Roman statesmen and reformers†

insignis, e distinguished, marked*

instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus draw up

Minerva, ae *f.* goddess of wisdom and the arts

Mycēnae, ārum *f.* famous city in southern Greece

neve, neu nor, and not

Olympus, i *m.* high mountain in northern Greece, home of the gods; heaven

parcō, ere, pepercī (parsī), parsus spare (*dat.*)

patria, ae *f.* fatherland, country* prior, ius sooner, former, first, prior*

prōjiciō, ere, jēcī, jectus throw away tacitus, a, um silent, unmentioned

temerō (1) violate, desecrate, pollute, defile†

templum, i *n.* temple, shrine, sanctuary*

triumphō (1) triumph (over), conquer†

ulciscor, i, ultus avenge, punish validus, a, um strong, valiant, stout

vertō, ere, i, rsus turn, change*

viscus, eris *n.* vitals, flesh

occupied for nine years, 58-50 B.C., in his Gallic campaigns.

831. Eōis (agminibus): Pompey's troops contained a large number of eastern contingents.

834. genus Olympō: referring to Caesar, who traced his ancestry through Iulus and Aeneas to Venus.

836. Ille: Lucius Mummius, conqueror and destroyer of Corinth.

838. ille: Lucius Aemilius Paulus, conqueror of the Macedonian king, Perseus, who traced his ancestry to Achilles.

840. templa: for this incident see I, 41 and II, 165-175, with notes.

Scīpiadās, clādem Libyae, parvōque potentem
 Fabricium *vel tē* sulcō, Serrāne, serentem?
Quō fessum rapitis, Fabii? *Tū* Maximus *ille es,* 845
ūnus quī nōbīs cūntandō restituis *rem.*
 Excūdent *aliī* spīrantia mollius aera
 (crēdō equidem), vīvōs *dūcent dē* marmore vultūs,
 ōrābunt causās melius, *cachique* meātūs
 dēscribent radiō *et surgentia sīdera dīcent:* 850
tū regere *imperio* populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
 (*hae tibi erunt artēs*), pācisque impōnere mōrem,
 parcere subjectis *et dēbellāre* superbōs."

aes, aeris *n.* bronze*
ars, artis *f.* art, skill, handicraft*
causa, ae *f.* cause, case (at law)*
clādēs, is *f.* slaughter, destruction
crēdō, ere, didī, ditus believe, suppose*
cūntor, āri, ātus delay, tarry, wait
dēbellō (1) war down, crush
dēscribō, ere, psī, ptus mark out, map
equidem indeed, truly, surely*
excūdō, ere, i, sus hammer out, fashion
Fabius, (i)ī *m.* Roman dictator who
 "wore out" Hannibal by delay and
 thus restored the Roman fortunes†
Fabricius, (i)ī *m.* Roman consul and
 general, who refused large bribes†
impōnō, ere, posui, positus place on,
 impose, establish*
Libya, ae *f.* country of northern Africa,
 Carthage*
marmor, oris *n.* marble
Maximus, i *m.* surname of Fabius after
 his successes against Hannibal†
meātus, ūs *m.* course, path, motion†
melior, ius better, superior, finer
memini, isse remember, recollect (*gen.*)
molliter softly, gently, gracefully†
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, usage, rule, law*

ōrō (1) pray (for), entreat, plead, argue*
parcō, ere, peperci (parsī), **parsus** spare
 (*dat.*)
parvus, a, um small, little*
pāx, pācis *f.* peace, quiet, repose
populus, i *m.* people, nation, race*
potēns, entis powerful, mighty*
radius, (i)ī *m.* rod, spoke, compass
rapio, ere, ui, ptus seize, hurry along*
regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus rule, guide, direct
restituō, ere, ui, ūtus restore†
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
Scīpiadēs, ae *m.* member of the Scipionic
 family; Scipio, famous in the wars
 against Carthage†
serō, ere, sēvi, satus sow, plant, be-
 get*
Serrānus, i *m.* consul called from the
 plow to fight the Carthaginians in
 257 B.C.†
spirō (1) breathe, blow, live, quiver
subjiō, ere, jēcī, jectus vanquish
sulcus, i *m.* furrow, trench
superbus, a, um proud, haughty*
vivus, a, um living, alive, natural
vultus, ūs *m.* countenance, face, as-
 pect*

843. Scīpiadās = Scīpiōnēs (---) which cannot be used in dactylic verse. Their victories over Carthage (clādem Libyae) were notable. parvō potentem: rich in poverty.

844. Serrāne, serentem: alliteration; Serranus sowing, referring to the tradition that he was sowing grain when news was brought to him of his election as consul.

845. (mē) fessum: wearied as I am with reciting the great achievements of others. Maximus: dubbed Cūntātor, the Delayer, by his political enemies.

847-853. Aeneas is assured that the

Romans are called by high destiny to rule the world.

847. aliī: the reference is to the Greeks, the acknowledged masters of the Romans in the arts, sciences, oratory, and literature. spirantia aera: bronze statues so lifelike that they seem to breathe.

847-848. sculptors, orators.

849-850. astronomers. dīcent = vocābunt.

851. Rōmāne: addressed to the Roman people in general.

852. hae: attracted into the gender of the predicate; App. 240, a.

Sic pater Anchīsēs atque haec mirantibus addit:

- 855 "Aspice, ut insignis spoliis Mārcellus opimis
ingreditur victorque virōs superēminet omnīs.
Hic rem Rōmānam magnō turbante tumultū
sistet, eques sternet Poenōs Gallumque rebellem,
tertiaque arma patrī suspendet capta Quirīnō."
- 860 *Atque hic Aenēās (ūnā namque ire vidēbat*
ēgregium formā juvenem et fulgentibus armīs,
sed frōns laeta parum et dējectō lūmina vultū)
"Quis, pater, ille, virum quī sic comitātur euntem?
Filius, anne aliquis magnā dē stirpe nepōtum?
- 865 *Quī strepitus circā comitum! Quantum instar in ipsō!*

addō, ere, didī, ditus add*
aliquis, quid some(one), any(one)*
an(ne) interrog. whether, or
a(d)spiciō, ere, spexi, spectus see, look at*
circā around, about†
comitor, āri, ātus accompany, attend,
escort, follow*
dējiciō, ere, jēci, jectus cast down
ēgregius, a, um extraordinary, distin-
guished
eques, itis m. cavalryman, knight
filius, (i)ī m. son
forma, ae f. form, beauty, shape*
frōns, frontis f. front, forehead, brow*
fulg(e)ō, ēre, lsi shine, gleam, glitter
Gallus, a, um Gallic, Gaul†
ingredior, i, gressus step, stride, enter
insignis, e distinguished, marked*
instar n. indecl. likeness, weight, dignity
juvenis, is m. (f.) youth, young (man,
woman)*
Mārcellus, i m. famous Roman consul,
slew in battle Viridomarus, king of the
Insubrian Gauls, and thus won the
third spolia opima†
miror, āri, ātus wonder (at), admire*

nepōs, ōtis m. grandson; descendant*
opimus, a, um rich, splendid, sumptuous;
spolia opima spoils of honor, taken
when the general with his own hand
slew the general of the enemy
parum slightly, too little, not†
Poenus, a, um Phoenician, Carthaginian
quantus, a, um how (much, great, many),
as*
Quirinus, i m. the deified Romulus as
god of war
rebellis, e rebellious, insurgent†
Rōmānus, a, um Roman, of Rome*
sistō, ere, steti, status stop, stand
spolium, (i)ī n. spoil, booty, plunder
sternō, ere, strāvi, strātus lay low, strew*
stirps, pis f. stock, lineage, race
strepitus, ūs m. uproar, noise
superēminēō, ēre overtop, tower above
suspendō, ere, i, ēnsus hang up*
tertius, a, um third*
tumultus, ūs m. tumult, uprising, clamor
turbō (1) confuse, shake, disturb*
ūnā together, at the same time
vultus, ūs m. countenance, face, as-
pect*

854-887. Anchises especially praises
the younger Marcellus and sings a dirge
for his untimely death.

854. (Aenēae et Sibyllae) mirantibus.

855. spoliis opimis: arms and other
booty taken on the field of battle by the
victorious from the vanquished general,
whom he has slain with his own hand.
These were won before by Romulus and
Cossus, l. 841, and never afterward.
Mārcellus: a hero of the second Punic
War and an ancestor of the younger
Marcellus.

857. tumultū: the war with the Gauls
in Italy, in which the elder Marcellus
had killed Viridomarus, leader of the

Gauls, and stripping him of his armor had
obtained the third and last spolia opima,
the tertia arma capta of l. 859.

858. eques: (though but) a knight.

860. Aenēās (dicit). ūnā (cum Mār-
cellō).

862. frōns (erat). et lūmina (erant)
dējectō vultū = et lūmina (erant) dē-
jecta. lūmina = oculi, as often.

863. virum: the elder Marcellus. ille:
the younger Marcellus, son of Augustus's
sister Octavia. Augustus had chosen him
to be his successor, but he died in 23 B.C.

864. nepōtum (nostrōrum).

865. strepitūs: indicating the future
fame and popularity of the younger
Marcellus.

Sed nox atra caput trīstī circumvolat umbrā.
Tum pater Anchīsēs lacrimīs ingressus obortīs:
"Ō nāte, ingentem lūctum nē quaere tuōrum;
ostendent terrīs hunc tantum fāta neque ultrā 870
esse sinent. Nimum vōbīs Rōmāna propāgō
vīsa potēns, superī, propria haec sī dōna fuissent.
Quantōs ille virum magnam Māvortis ad urbem
campus aget gemitūs! Vel quae, Tiberīne, vidēbis
fūnera, cum tumultum praeterlābēre recentem!
Nec puer Īliacā quisquam dē gente Latīnōs 875
in tantum spē tollet avōs, nec Rōmula quondam
illō sē tantum tellūs jactābit alumnō.
Heu pietās, heu prisca fidēs invictaque bellō
dextera! Nōn illī sē quisquam impūne tulisset
obvius armātō, seu cum pedes īret in hostem 880

alumnus, *i m.* nursling, (foster) child
armō (1) arm, equip, furnish*
avus, *i m.* grandfather; ancestor
circumvolō (1) flit around, fly about
fidēs, *ei f.* faith, trust, fidelity, pledge*
fūnus, *eris n.* funeral, death, disaster*
gemitus, *ūs m.* groan(ing), wail(ing)*
hostis, *is m.* enemy, foe, stranger*
Īliacus, *a, um* Ilian, Trojan*
impūne unpunished, with impunity
ingredior, *i, gressus* stride, begin, enter
invictus, *a, um* unconquered, invincible
jactō (1) toss, buffet, vaunt, boast*
Latīnus, *a, um* Latin, of Latium
lūctus, *ūs m.* grief, mourning, sorrow
Māvors, *rtis m.* Mars, god of war†
nimum too (much), too great(ly)
oborior, *iri, ortus* arise, spring up
obvius, *a, um* before, meeting (*dat.*)
ostendō, *ere, i, ntus* show, display*
pedes, *itis m.* footsoldier, infantry

pietās, *ātis f.* loyalty, devotion, sense of duty, righteousness, nobility*
potēns, *entis* powerful, mighty*
praeterlābor, *i, lāpsus* glide by
priscus, *a, um* ancient, primitive
propāgō, *inis f.* offshoot, offspring, race†
proprius, *a, um* one's own, special, secure
quantus, *a, um* how (great, much, many), as*
quisquam, *quaequam, quidquam* any(one, thing)
recēns, *entis* recent, fresh, new
Rōmānus, *a, um* Roman, of Rome*
Rōmulus, *a, um* of Romulus, Roman†
sinō, *ere, sivi, situs* permit, allow*
sive, *seu* or if, whether, or
spēs, *ei f.* hope, expectation*
tantum so much, so great(ly), only
Tiberinus, *i m.* (god of) the Tiber, river on which Rome is situated
tumulus, *i m.* mound, tomb*
ultrā beyond, farther

867. **ingressus** (est).

868-886. These lines were recited by Vergil to Augustus and Octavia, the mother of Marcellus. Octavia is said to have swooned and later to have royally rewarded the poet for his glowing tribute to the memory of her son.

869. **neque ultrā**: Marcellus was only nineteen at the time of his death.

871. **visa** (eset): conclusion contrary to fact; App. 382. **sī fuissent**: condition contrary to fact. **haec dōna**: Marcellus.

872. **vir(ōr)um**. **Māvortis urbem** = Rome, founded by Romulus, a son of Mars.

873. **campus**: the Campus Martius, on the banks of the Tiber near Rome, where the whole populace assembled to celebrate the funeral of the young Marcellus.

874. **tumulum**: the magnificent mausoleum of Augustus, erected by the emperor four years before the death of Marcellus. **praeterlābēre** = **praeterlābēris**.

876. **spē**: *by the hope* (of his future greatness).

879. **illi** = **Mārcellō**: *dat.* with **obvius** in l. 880. **tulisset**: conclusion of a clause contrary to fact, with the condition implied.

- seu spūmantis equī foderet calcāribus armōs.
Heu, miserande puer, sī quā fāta aspera rumpās,
tū Mārcellus eris. Manibus date lilia plēnis,
purpureōs spargam flōrēs animamque nepōtis
 885 *hīs saltem accumulem dōnīs, et fungar inānī*
mūnere.” Sic tōtā passim regiōne vagantur
āeris in campīs lātis atque omnia lūstrant.
Quae postquam Anchīsēs nātum per singula dūxit
incenditque animum fāmae venientis amōre,
 890 *exim bella virō memorat quae deinde gerenda,*
Laurentisque docet populōs urbemque Latīnī,
et quō quemque modō fugiatque feratque labōrem.
Sunt geminae Somnī portae, quārum altera fertur

accumulō (1) heap up; pile up; honor†
 āēr, āeris *m.* air, mist, fog
 alter, era, erum one (of two), other (of two), second*
 armus, ī *m.* shoulder, flank, side†
 asper, era, erum rough, harsh, fierce*
 calcar, āris *n.* spur, goad, prick†
 deinde thence, next, thereupon*
 doceō, ēre, uī, ctus teach (about), tell*
 exim, exin(de) thence, next, thereupon†
 flōs, ōris *m.* flower, blossom, bloom
 fodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus dig, pierce, spur†
 fungor, ī, fūctus perform, fulfil (*abl.*)†
 gerō, ere, gessī, gestus bear, wage*
 inānis, e empty, useless, unavailing*
 incendō, ere, ī, ēnsus inflame, kin-
 dle*
 Latinus, ī *m.* early king of Italy, whose
 daughter, Lavinia, married Aeneas†
 lātus, a, um wide, broad, spacious*
 Laurēns, entis of Laurentum, a city near
 Rome
 lilium, (i)ī *n.* lily
 lūstrō (1) purify; survey; traverse
 Mārcellus, ī *m.* nephew and adopted son
 of Augustus, died in 23 B.C., to the

great grief of his mother and of the
 emperor
 memorō (1) recount, (re)call, relate*
 miseror, āri, ātus pity, commiserate*
 modus, ī *m.* manner, measure, limit*
 nepōs, ōtis *m.* grandson; descendant*
 passim everywhere, all about*
 plēnus, a, um full, filled, complete
 populus, ī *m.* people, nation, race*
 porta, ae *f.* door, gate, entrance, exit*
 postquam after (that), when*
 purpureus, a, um purple, crimson, bright
 quā where(by), wherever, in any (some)
 way
 quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque)
 each, every(one)
 regiō, ōnis *f.* district, region, quarter
 rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus break, burst
 (forth)*
 saltem at least, at any rate
 singulī, ae, a each, one by one
 sive, seu or if, whether, or
 Somnus, ī *m.* Sleep, Slumber
 spargō, ere, rsī, rsus scatter, sprinkle*
 spūmō (1) foam, froth, spray*
 vagor, āri, ātus wander, roam, rove

882. rumpās: fut. less vivid condition;
 App. 381. quā (viā).

883. Mārcellus: (a true) Marcellus,
 worthy of the name.

884-885. purpureōs: a color much
 used in the funerals of the great, as in-
 dicated in the note to l. 221. spargam,
 accumulem, fungar: volitives; App. 254.

886. vagantur (Anchīsēs et Aenēās et
 Sibylla).

888-892. A prophecy of the impending
 wars and difficulties of Aeneas in Italy.

890. gerenda (sint).

892. fugiat, ferat: subjunctives in
 indirect questions.

893-901. Aeneas and the Sibyl depart
 through the ivory exit of Hades to the
 upper world. Aeneas hastens to his fleet,
 sets sail once more and soon lands at
 Cajeta in Latium, the final goal of his
 journey and the destined end of his
 wanderings.

893. fertur (esse) = dicitur (esse).

cornea, *quā vērīs facilis datur exitus umbrīs,*
 altera candentī perfecta nitēns elephantō, 895
sed falsa ad caelum mittunt insomnia mārēs.
Hīs ibi tum nātum Anchīsēs ūnāque Sibyllam
prōsequitur dictīs portāque ēmittit eburnā;
ille viam secat ad nāvīs sociōsque revisit.
Tum sē ad Cajētae rēctō fert litore portum. 900
Ancora dē prōrā jacitur; stant litore puppēs.

alter, era, erum one (of two), other (of two), second*
ancora, ae f. anchor
Cajēta, ae f. Italian coast city near Rome†
candēns, entis shining, white, gleaming
corneus, a, um of horn, horny†
eburnus, a, um (of) ivory
elephantus, i m. elephant, ivory
ēmittō, ere, misī, missus send forth
exitus, ūs m. exit, outlet, egress
facilis, e easy, favorable, ready
falsus, a, um false, deceitful, mock
 ibi there, then
insomnium, (i)ī n. dream, vision

jacīō, ere, jēcī, jactus throw, cast, hurl
mārēs, ium m. (souls of) the dead, Hades*
nitēns, entis gleaming, bright, shining
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus finish, make
porta, ae f. door, gate, entrance, exit*
prōra, ae f. prow (of a ship)*
prōsequor, i, secūtus follow, escort
rēctus, a, um right, straight, direct
revisō, ere revisit, see again
secō, āre, uī, ctus cut, cleave; speed*
Sibylla, ae f. ancient Italian prophetess
 ūnā together, at the same time
vērūs, a, um true, real, genuine, honest*

895. **candentī elephantō:** abl. of material; App. 324.

896. **sed (per hanc portam).**

900. **rēctō litore:** (sailing) *straight along the shore*; abl. of route.

901. This line repeats III, 277.



GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX



GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

ALPHABET; PRONUNCIATION; QUANTITY; ACCENT

1. With the exception that it has no **w** the Latin alphabet is the same as the English, which has been borrowed from it.

2. The vowels, as in English, are **a, e, i, o, u**, and sometimes **y**. The other letters are consonants.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

3. **Vowels.** All Latin vowels are either long or short. All long vowels are indicated in this text by having the mark (—) placed over them, as **nōn**, *not*. All unmarked vowels in this book are to be considered short.

4. **Latin vowels** have the following sounds:

LONG	SHORT
ā as in father: āra , altar	a as in ask: anima , soul
ē as in they: mēns , mind	e as in red: bellum , war
ī as in machine: divus , divine	i as in hit: mittō , send
ō as in bone: mōns , mountain	o as in obey: aequor , sea
ū as in prune: lūx , light	u as in full: fuga , flight

5. **Diphthongs.** A diphthong is the union of two vowels in a single syllable. The sounds of the Latin diphthongs are:

ae as *ai* in aisle: **caelum**, heaven
au as *ou* in house: **aurum**, gold
ei as *ei* in freight: **ei**, alas!
oe as *oi* in boil: **poena**, punishment
eu as *eh-oo* (*oo* as in spoon, but fused with the *eh* sound into a single syllable):
heu, alas!
ui somewhat as *we*, but with a more vocalic sound of the **u**: **cui**, to whom

6. **Consonants.** In general the consonants have the same sounds as in English, but there are the following exceptions:

c as *k*, always hard, as in come: **faciō**, do, make
g always hard, as in get: **fugiō**, flee
j (consonantal **i**) as *y* in yet: **jubeō**, order
s as in sit, never as in rise: **cāsus**, chance
t as in tie, never as in nation: **tālis**, such
v (consonantal **u**) as *w* in will: **videō**, see
x as in extra, always hard: **rēx**, king
bs, bt, as *ps, pt*: **urbs**, city; **obtimeō**, gain, obtain
ch as *k* in kite: **pulcher**, beautiful
gu (usually), **qu**, and sometimes **su** before a vowel, as *gw, kw, and sw*, respectively: **sanguis**, blood; **quī**, who; **suādeō**, persuade
ph as *p-h* (as *p-h* in saphhead, but without the break): **philosophia**, philosophy
th as *t-h* (as *t-h* in fathead, but without the break): **Corinthus**, Corinth

a. Modern printed texts often use the same character (i) for both vocalic and consonantal i (i, j), as well as only one character for vocalic and consonantal u (u, v). The Romans did not employ separate characters to distinguish between the vocalic and consonantal uses of these letters.

b. When coming between vowels within a word, j is regularly doubled in pronunciation, although written but once, as **major**, *greater*; **pejor**, *worse*; **ejus**, *of him*; **hujus**, *of this*; **cujus**, *of whom*; **ajō**, *say*. These are to be pronounced as though spelled **majjor**, **pejjor**, **ejjus**, **hujjus**, **cujjus**, **ajjō**. This rule does not apply to j, which was originally initial, but which comes between vowels as a result of composition, as **praejūdicō**, *prejudge*; **bijugī**, *chariot*.

c. When followed by the letter i, as in compounds of **jaciō**, *throw*, j, although pronounced, is not ordinarily written in the classical period, as **coniciō**, *throw together*; **dēiciō**, *cast down*; **ēiciō**, *throw out*; **reiciō**, *throw back*. These are to be pronounced as though spelled **conjiciō**, **dējiciō**, **ējiciō**, **rejiciō**, and in this text they are so written.

7. **Doubled Consonants.** All doubled consonants are to be sounded separately, not as one consonant as is customary in English. Thus **puella**, *girl*, must be pronounced **pu-el-la**, and not **pu-ell-a** as in English; so also **er-rō**, *wander, stray*; **oc-cu-pō**, *occupy*.

8. **Double Consonants.** The double consonants are **x** and **z**; **x** is equivalent to **ks** or **cs**; **z** a Greek letter, originally **zd**, may be pronounced as **z** in *lazy*.

SYLLABLES

9. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; as **so-ci-us**, *comrade*; **vo-cā-re**, *to call*; **moe-ni-a**, *walls*; **ac-ci-pi-ō**, *receive*.

10. In dividing a Latin word into syllables, a single consonant is pronounced with the following vowel, as **ca-put**, *head*.

11. A consonant followed by **l** or **r** (except **ll** or **rr**) is usually pronounced with the **l** or **r**, as **pa-trēs**, *fathers*; **pū-bli-cus**, *public*.

12. In all other combinations of two or more consonants between vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the preceding vowel, and the others with the vowel following, as **her-ba**, *herb*; **mōn-strō**, *show*; **ar-ma**, *arms*.

13. **Exceptions.** Compound words are divided in accordance with their original elements, as **ab-est**, *he is absent*; **trāns-eō**, *I pass across*.

QUANTITY

14. The quantity of a syllable is the term used to denote the relative amount of time employed in pronouncing it. About twice as much time should be used in pronouncing a long syllable as a short one.

15. A syllable is said to be long by *nature*, when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is said to be long by *position* when its vowel is followed by two or more consonants which are separated in pronunciation (10-12), or by either of the double consonants **x** or **z** (8), or by **j**, which was regularly doubled in pronunciation (6 *b*). **H** never helps to make a syllable long, and **qu** counts as a single consonant. Thus the first syllable of **adhūc**, *thus far*, and of **aqua**, *water*, is short.

16. Except under the metrical accent (394), a final syllable ending in a short vowel regularly remains short before a word beginning with two consonants or a double consonant.

17. If a consonant followed by **l** or **r** comes after a short vowel, the syllable containing the short vowel is said to be *common*, i.e., it may be either long or short, according to the pleasure of the one using it.

18. NOTE: This is due to the fact that the **l** and **r** blend so easily with the preceding consonant that the combination takes scarcely more time than a single consonant. When the **l** or **r** is separated in pronunciation from the preceding consonant, as may be done in all cases, more time is required in pronunciation and the preceding syllable is treated as long.

19. Observe that the *vowel* in a long syllable may be either long or short, and is to be pronounced accordingly. Thus in **errō**, *wander*; **captō**, *seize*; **vertō**, *turn*; **nox**, *night*; the first *vowel* in each case is short, and must be so pronounced, according to 4, but the syllable is long, and must occupy more time in pronunciation, according to 14, 15.

20. A vowel is regularly short before another vowel, or **h**, as **aes-tu-ō**, *boil*; **de-us**, *god*; **tra-hō**, *draw*.

a. This rule does not apply to Greek words in Latin, such as **ā-ēr**, *air*; **I-xi-ōn**, *Ixion* (a proper name).

21. A vowel is regularly short before **nt** or **nd**. Observe that the *syllable* in this case is long.

22. A vowel is regularly short before any final consonant except **s**.

a. Some monosyllables ending in **l**, **r**, **n**, and **c**, have a long vowel as **sōl**, *sun*; **pār**, *equal*; **nōn**, *not*; **sic**, *so*.

23. A vowel is regularly long before **ns**, **nf**, **nx**, and **nct**.

24. Diphthongs and vowels derived from diphthongs or contracted from other vowels are regularly long.

ACCENT

25. Words of two syllables have the accent or stress on the first (penult), as **a'-mō**, *love*.

a. The last syllable of a word is called the ultima (**ultimus**, *last*); the next to the last syllable is called the penult (**paene**, *almost*; **ultimus**, *last*); and the syllable before the penult is called the antepenult (**ante**, *before*; **paene**, *almost*; **ultimus**, *last*).

26. Words of more than two syllables (polysyllabic words) have the accent on the penult when the penult is long, on the antepenult when the penult is short or common (17), as **aes-tu-ā'-re**, *boil*; **a'-ni-mus**, *mind*.

27. **Enclitics**. Certain words are not ordinarily written separately but are regularly appended to the word they introduce. The most common of these are **-que**, *and*; **-ve**, *or*; and **-ne** (sign of a question). They are called enclitics and, when appended to words accented on the antepenult, add an accent to the ultima, as **fo'ribus'que**, *and from the doorway*. When an enclitic is appended to a word of two syllables having a long ultima, the accent is shifted to the ultima; as **amō'que**, *and I love*; but **be'llaque**, *and wars*; **i'taque**, *and so*.

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN WORDS IN ENGLISH

28. Latin words and phrases commonly used in English are to be pronounced according to the ordinary English system of pronunciation; for example, in **alumni**, the final **i** is to be pronounced as *i* in *five*, and the **u** as *u* in *bun*; and in the phrase **via** Chicago, **v** is to be pronounced as in *vine*, and **i** as in *vine*; in the phrase **vōx populi**, *the voice of the people*, **v** as in *voice*, **ō** as in *ox*, **u** as in *due*, **i** as in *die*.

NUMBER

29. In Latin there are two numbers: the singular, denoting one; the plural, denoting more than one. For the poetic plural see 243.

CASES

30. In Latin there are seven cases:

1. The **nominative** is the case of the subject.
2. The **genitive** is usually equivalent to the English possessive or to the objective with the preposition *of*.
3. The **dative** is the case of the indirect object or of personal interest.
4. The **accusative** is usually the case of the direct object.
5. The **vocative** is the case of direct address.
6. The **ablative** is the case of adverbial relation.
7. The **locative** is the case of the place where.

DECLENSIONS

31. There are five declensions in Latin, which are characterized by the final letter of their respective stems (*stem characteristic*). For practical purposes and regularly in lexicons they are also distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	STEM CHARACTERISTIC	GENITIVE SINGULAR
I.	ā (a)	ae
II.	o	i
III.	a consonant or i	is
IV.	u	ūs
V.	ē	eī

a. The first, second, and fifth declensions are called vowel declensions; the third and fourth, which really form but one, the consonant declension, *i* and *u* being considered semiconsonants.

32. The case endings in combination with the stem characteristics give rise to the following systems of terminations for the five declensions:

SINGULAR					
	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
NOM.	a	us; wanting; um	s; wanting	us; ū	ēs
GEN.	ae	ī	is	ūs	eī, ē
DAT.	ae	ō	ī	uī; ū	eī, ē
ACC.	am	um	em, im	um, ū	em
VOC.	a	e; wanting; um	s; wanting	us, ū	ēs
ABL.	ā	ō	e, ī	ŭ	ē

PLURAL					
	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
NOM. VOC.	ae	ī, a	ēs; a, ia	ūs, ua	ēs
GEN.	ārum	ōrum	um, ium	uum	ērum
DAT. ABL.	īs	īs	ibus	ubus, ibus	ēbus
ACC.	ās	ōs, a	ēs, is; a, ia	ūs, ua	ēs

33. **General Rules of Declension.** a. The vocative is like the nominative, except in the singular of the second declension, when the nominative ends in *us*.

b. In the third, fourth, and fifth declensions the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are alike in the plural.

c. Neuter substantives have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike; in the plural these cases always end in *a*.

d. The dative and ablative plural are alike in all declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION

34. The stem ends in *ā*. The nominative-vocative singular is the simple stem with shortened stem vowel and no case ending.

Sg. NOM.	terra, f., (a, the) land	Pl. terrae, (the) lands
GEN.	terrae, of (a, the) land, (a, the) land's	terrārum, of (the) lands, (the) lands'
DAT.	terrae, to, for (a, the) land	terrīs, to, for (the) lands
ACC.	terram, (a, the) land	terrās, (the) lands
VOC.	terra, O land! land!	terrae, O lands! lands!
ABL.	terrā, from, with, by, in, on, at (a, the) land	terrīs, from, with, by, in, on, at (the) lands

a. The locative singular of the first declension is like the genitive: **Rōmae**, at Rome; **militiae**, abroad (i. e., engaged in warfare).

b. The genitive singular sometimes ends in **āi** in poetry; the genitive plural sometimes takes the form **um** instead of **ārum**.

c. The ending **abus** is found (along with the regular ending) in the dative and ablative plural of **dea**, goddess, and **filia**, daughter.

35. Rule of Gender. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except when they refer to males.

SECOND DECLENSION

36. The stem ends in **o**, which in the classical period usually becomes **u**. In combination with the case endings it frequently disappears altogether. In the vocative singular (except in neuters) it becomes **e**.

a. The nominative ends in **s** (m., f.) and **m** (n.). But many masculine stems in which the original final vowel, **o**, was preceded by **r** have dropped the **us** of the nominative and the **e** of the vocative, and inserted **e** before the **r**, if it was preceded by a consonant; thus original **pueros** became **puer**, boy, and **libros** became **liber**, book.

b. The final **o** was often retained after **u** or **v** until the first century A.D.; as **servos**, slave.

37. **Animus**, spirit; **puer**, boy; **vir**, man; **bellum**, war, are declined as follows:

Sg. NOM.	animus, m.	puer, m.	vir, m.	bellum, n.
GEN.	animī	puerī	virī	bellī
DAT.	animō	puerō	virō	bellō
ACC.	animum	puerum	virum	bellum
VOC.	anime	puer	vir	bellum
ABL.	animō	puerō	virō	bellō
Pl. NOM.	animī	puerī	virī	bella
GEN.	animōrum	puerōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
DAT.	animīs	puerīs	virīs	bellīs
ACC.	animōs	puerōs	virōs	bella
VOC.	animī	puerī	virī	bella
ABL.	animīs	puerīs	virīs	bellīs

a. Words in **ius** (**ium**) have the genitive singular for the most part in **i** until the first century A.D., without change of accent: **inge'nī** (nom., **ingenium**), of *genius*; **Vergi'li**, of *Vergil*.

b. Proper names in **ius** have the vocative in **i**, without change of accent: **Antō'nī**, **Tu'lli**, **Gā'ī**, **Vergi'li**. **Filius**, *son*, and **genius**, *genius*, form their vocative in like manner: **fili**, **genī**. In solemn discourse **us** of the nominative is employed also for the vocative. So regularly **deus**, *O god!*

c. The locative singular ends in **i** like the genitive, as **Rhodī**, at *Rhodes*; **Tarenti**, at *Tarentum*.

d. In the genitive plural **um** instead of **ōrum** is often found.

e. The locative plural is identical with the ablative: **Delphīs**, at *Delphi*.

f. The declension of **deus**, m., *god*, is irregular:

Sg.	NOM. deus	Pl. dī, deī, diī
	GEN. deī	deōrum, deum
	DAT. deō	dīs, deīs, diīs
	ACC. deum	deōs
	Voc. deus	dī, deī, diī
	ABL. deō	dīs, deīs, diīs

38. Rule of Gender. Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** or **r** are masculine; in **um** neuter.

a. **Exceptions.** Feminine are: (1) cities and islands, as **Corinthus**, **Samus**; (2) most trees, as **fāgus**, *beech*; **pirus**, *pear tree*; (3) **alvus**, *belly*; **colus**, *distaff*; **humus**, *ground*; **vannus**, *wheat fan*; (4) many Greek nouns, as **atomus**, *atom*.

Neuters are: **pelagus**, *sea*; **vīrus**, *venom*; **vulgus**, *the rabble*.

THIRD DECLENSION

39. The stem ends in a consonant or in the close vowels (or semi-vowels) **i** and **ū**. The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the stem characteristic:

I. CONSONANT STEMS

1. *Liquid stems*, ending in **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**.
2. *Sibilant stems*, ending in **s**.
3. *Mute stems*

{	a. Ending in b , p .
	b. Ending in g , c .
	c. Ending in d , t .

II. *i*-STEMS

40. 1. The nominative singular, masculine and feminine, case ending is **s**, which, however, is dropped after **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, and combines with **c** or **g** to form **x**. In the other cases, the endings are added to the unchanged stem. The vocative of the third declension is always like the nominative.

2. Neuters always form the nominative without the addition of a case ending and the accusative and vocative cases in both numbers are like the nominative. The nominative plural ends in **a**.

I. CONSONANT STEMS

41.

1. LIQUID STEMS IN *l*

Form the nominative without the case ending **s**. These comprise:

a. Those in which the stem characteristic is preceded by a vowel; thus:

Sg.	NOM.	cōsul, m., <i>consul</i>	Pl.	cōsulēs, consuls
	GEN.	cōsulis		cōsulum
	DAT.	cōsulī		cōsulibus
	ACC.	cōsulem		cōsulēs
	VOC.	cōsul		cōsulēs
	ABL.	cōsule		cōsulibus

b. Two neuter substantives with stems in **ll**, one of which is lost in the nominative: **mel, mellis, honey; fel, fellis, gall.**

42. **Rules of Gender.** Third declension nouns having their stems in **l** are regularly masculine; those having stems in **ll** are neuter.

43.

2. LIQUID STEMS IN *n*

Most masculine and feminine stems form the nominative singular by dropping the stem characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**. Some masculine and most neuter stems retain the stem characteristic in the nominative and change a preceding **i** to **e**.

MASCULINE			NEUTER		
Sg.	NOM.	sermō, m., <i>conversation</i>	homō, m., <i>man</i>	nōmen, n., <i>name</i>	
	GEN.	sermōnis	hominis	nōminis	
	DAT.	sermōnī	hominī	nōminī	
	ACC.	sermōnem	hominem	nōmen	
	VOC.	sermō	homō	nōmen	
	ABL.	sermōne	homine	nōmine	
Pl.	NOM.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina	
	GEN.	sermōnum	hominum	nōminum	
	DAT.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus	
	ACC.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina	
	VOC.	sermōnēs	hominēs	nōmina	
	ABL.	sermōnibus	hominibus	nōminibus	

44. **Rules of Gender.** 1. Third declension nouns ending in **ō** are masculine, except those ending in **dō, gō, iō**, which are mostly feminine.

2. Third declension nouns in **en (men)** are regularly neuter.

45.

3. LIQUID STEMS IN *r*

Form nominative without *s*.

Sg. NOM.	soror, <i>f., sister</i>	pater, <i>m., father</i>
GEN.	sorōris	patris
DAT.	sorōrī	patri
ACC.	sorōrem	patrem
VOC.	soror	pater
ABL.	sorōre	patre
Pl. NOM.	sorōrēs	patrēs
GEN.	sorōrum	patrum
DAT.	sorōribus	patribus
ACC.	sorōrēs	patrēs
VOC.	sorōrēs	patrēs
ABL.	sorōribus	patribus

a. Imber, shower; linter, skiff; ūter, bag; venter, belly, have the genitive plural in ium. Imber has also sometimes the ablative singular in i.

46. Rules of Gender. 1. Third declension nouns in **er** and **or** are usually masculine. 2. Third declension nouns in **ar** and **ur** are neuter.

47.

4. SIBILANT STEMS

The nominative has no additional *s*, and in masculines changes *e* to *i*, and in neuters *e* or *o* to *u* before *s*.

In the oblique cases, the *s* of the stem usually passes over, between two vowels, into *r*.

Sg. NOM. ACC. VOC.	genus, <i>n., kind</i>	corpus, <i>n., body</i>
GEN.	generis	corporis
DAT.	generi	corpori
ABL.	genere	corpore
Pl. NOM. ACC. VOC.	genera	corpora
GEN.	generum	corporum
DAT. ABL.	generibus	corporibus

48. Rules of Gender. 1. Masculine are third declension nouns in **is** (**eris**), and **ōs** (**ōris**).

2. Neuter are third declension nouns in **us** (**eris, oris**) and in **ūs** (**ūris**).

49.

5. MUTE STEMS

All masculines and feminines of mute stems have *s* in the nominative. Before *s* a *p* or *b* is retained, a *c* or *g* combines with it to form *x*, a *t* or *d* is dropped.

a. Most polysyllabic mute stems change their stem vowel i to e in the nominative.

50. Stems in *p* or *b*

Sg. NOM.	princeps , m., <i>leader</i>	Pl. principēs
GEN.	principis	principum
DAT.	principi	principibus
ACC.	principem	principēs
VOC.	princeps	principēs
ABL.	principe	principibus

51. Stems in *c* or *g*

Sg. NOM.	dux , m., <i>leader</i>	Pl. ducēs
GEN.	ducis	ducum
DAT.	duci	ducibus
ACC.	ducem	ducēs
VOC.	dux	ducēs
ABL.	duce	ducibus

52. Stems in *t* or *d*

Sg. NOM.	comes , m., f., <i>companion</i>	Pl. comitēs
GEN.	comitis	comitum
DAT.	comiti	comitibus
ACC.	comitem	comitēs
VOC.	comes	comitēs
ABL.	comite	comitibus
Sg. NOM.	pēs , m., <i>foot</i>	Pl. pedēs
GEN.	pedis	pedum
DAT.	pedi	pedibus
ACC.	pedem	pedēs
VOC.	pēs	pedēs
ABL.	pede	pedibus
Sg. NOM.	caput , n., <i>head</i>	Pl. capita
GEN.	capitis	capitum
DAT.	capiti	capitibus
ACC.	caput	capita
VOC.	caput	capita
ABL.	capite	capitibus

a. The following mute stems have certain irregular forms: **cor** (gen. *cordis*), *heart*; **nox** (gen. *noctis*), *night*; **lac** (gen. *lactis*), *milk*.

53. Monosyllabic mute stems, with the characteristic preceded by a consonant, have the genitive plural in **ium**: **urbium**, *of cities*; **arcium**, *of citadels*; **montium**, *of mountains*; **noctium**, *of nights*.

a. Monosyllabic mute stems, with characteristic preceded by a long vowel or diphthong, vary: **dōtium**, *of dowries*; **litium**, *of lawsuits*; **faucium**, *of throats*; **fraudum** (**ium**), *of frauds*; **laudum** (**ium**), *of praises*; but **vōcum**, *of voices*.

b. Most monosyllabic stems, with characteristic preceded by a short

vowel, have **um**: **opum**, of resources; but **fac-ium**, of torches; **nuc-um** (**ium**), of nuts; **niv-ium** (**um**), of snows.

c. Polysyllabic stems in **nt** and **rt** have more frequently **ium**, as **clien-tium** (**um**), of clients; **cohortium** (**um**), of companies.

d. Polysyllabic feminine stems in **ât** have either **um** or **ium**, as **aetâtum** or **aetâtium**, of ages; **civîtâtum** or **civîtâtium**, of states; the rest have usually **um**. **Palûs**, marsh, has usually **palûdium**.

54. Rule of Gender. Mute stems, with nominative in **s**, are usually feminine.

II. *i*-STEMS

55. Masculines and feminines form their nominative in **s**.

a. Some feminines change the stem vowel **i** to **ê** in the nominative.

b. Neuters change the stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative. This **e** is generally dropped after **l** and **r** in polysyllabic neuters.

c. Stems in **i** have genitive plural in **ium**.

d. Neuter stems in **i** have the ablative singular in **î** and nominative plural in **ia**.

56. Sg.	NOM. hostis , m., f., <i>enemy</i>	mare , n., <i>sea</i>	animal , n., <i>living being</i>
	GEN. hostis	maris	animâlis
	DAT. hostî	marî	animâlî
	ACC. hostem	mare	animal
	VOC. hostis	mare	animal
	ABL. hoste	marî	animâlî
Pl.	NOM. hostês	marîa	animâlîa
	GEN. hostium	marium	animâlium
	DAT. hostibus	maribus	animâlibus
	ACC. hostês (is)	marîa	animâlîa
	VOC. hostês	marîa	animâlîa
	ABL. hostibus	maribus	animâlibus

a. The accusative singular ending **im** is found always in **sitis**, *thirst*; **tussis**, *cough*; **vis**, *strength*; and in names of towns and rivers in **is**, as **Neâpolis**, *Naples*; **Tiberis**, *Tiber*; usually in **febris**, *fever*; **puppis**, *stern of ship*; **restis**, *cable*; **secûris**, *ax*; **turris**, *tower*; occasionally in **clâvis**, *key*; **crâtis**, *hurdle*; **cutis**, *skin*; **messis**, *harvest*; **nâvis**, *ship*.

b. The ablative in **î** is found in **i**-stem nouns that regularly have **im** in the accusative (except perhaps **restis**, *rope, cable*); also not infrequently in **amnis**, *river*; **avis**, *bird*; **canâlis**, *canal*; **civis**, *citizen*; **classis**, *fleet*; **finis**, *end*; **fûstis**, *club*; **ignis**, *fire*; **orbis**, *circle*; **unguis**, *claw*; occasionally in **anguis**, *snake*; **bîlis**, *bile*; **clâvis**, *key*; **collis**, *hill*; **corbis**, *basket*; **messis**, *harvest*; regularly in neuters in **e**, **al**, and **ar**, except in **rête**, *net*; and in the proper nouns **Caere**, **Praeneste**.

c. In the genitive plural instead of the ending *ium*, *um* is found always in *canis*, *dog*; *juvenis*, *young man*; *pānis*, *bread*; *senex*, *old man*; *struēs*, *heap*; *volucris*, *bird*; usually in *apis*, *bee*; *sēdēs*, *seat*; *vātēs*, *bard*; frequently in *mēnsis*, *month*.

d. The accusative plural ending *īs* is found frequently in the classical period along with *ēs*.

57. Rule of Gender. a. *i*-stems, with nominative in *ēs*, are feminine, unless they refer to males; those with nominative in *is* are partly masculine, partly feminine.

b. *i*-stems, with nominative in *e*, *al*, *ar*, are neuter.

c. The rest are feminine.

FOURTH DECLENSION

58. The fourth declension embraces only dissyllabic and polysyllabic stems in *u*.

a. The endings are the same as those of *i*-stems of the third declension.

b. In the genitive and ablative singular, and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural (sometimes, too, in the dative singular), the *u* of the stem absorbs the vowel of the ending, and becomes long.

c. In the dative and ablative plural *u* generally becomes *i* before the ending *bus*.

59.

	MASCULINE	NEUTER
Sg. NOM.	<i>cāsus</i> , m., <i>chance</i>	<i>cornū</i> , n., <i>horn</i>
GEN.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornūs</i>
DAT.	<i>cāsuī</i> (<i>cāsū</i>)	<i>cornū</i>
ACC.	<i>cāsum</i>	<i>cornū</i>
VOC.	<i>cāsus</i>	<i>cornū</i>
ABL.	<i>cāsū</i>	<i>cornū</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>
GEN.	<i>cāsuum</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
DAT.	<i>cāsibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
ACC.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>
VOC.	<i>cāsūs</i>	<i>cornua</i>
ABL.	<i>cāsibus</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

60. *Domus*, f., *house*, is declined: sg. gen. *domūs*; dat. *domuī*; acc. *domum*; voc. *domus*; abl. *domō*; loc. *domī* (*domuī*); pl. nom. *domūs*; gen. *domōrum*; dat.-abl. *domibus*; acc. *domōs*, *domūs*.

61. Rule of Gender. Fourth declension nouns in *us* are generally masculine; those in *ū* are neuter.

a. But feminine are *acus*, *needle*; *domus*, *house*; *idūs* (pl.), *the ides*; *manus*, *hand*; *penus*, *vituals*; *porticus*, *piazza*; *tribus*, *tribe*.

FIFTH DECLENSION

62. The stem ends in **ē**; the nominative in **ēs**.

a. In the genitive and dative singular the stem vowel **e** is shortened after a consonant.

b. The accusative singular always ends in **em**; 22.

c. The ending in the genitive singular is that of the second declension, **ī**; the other endings are those of the third declension.

63.

	MASCULINE	FEMININE
Sg. NOM.	diēs , m., f., <i>day</i>	rēs , f., <i>thing</i>
GEN.	diēī (diē)	reī
DAT.	diēī (diē)	reī
ACC.	diem	rem
VOC.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diē	rē
Pl. NOM.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACC.	diēs	rēs
VOC.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

a. The genitive, dative, and ablative plural are rarely found except in **diēs** and **rēs**.

b. Many words of the fifth declension have a parallel form, which follows the first declension, as **mollitiēs** or **mollitia**, *softness*. Where this is the case, forms of the fifth declension are usually found only in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular.

64. **Rule of Gender.** Fifth declension nouns are feminine except **diēs** which in the singular is either masculine or feminine, and in the plural masculine, and **merīdiēs**, *midday*, which is always masculine.

DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS

65. Greek nouns, especially proper names, are commonly Latinized and declined regularly according to their stem characteristic. Some Greek nouns, however, either retain their Greek form exclusively or have the Greek and Latin forms side by side. These variations occur principally in the singular.

a. In the plural the declension is usually regular, but the third declension often shows **ēs** in the nominative and **ās** in the accusative. In the genitive plural the endings **ōn** and **eōn** are found in the titles of books, as **Georgicōn**, *of the Georgics*; **Metamorphōseōn**, *of the Metamorphoses*.

66.

FIRST DECLENSION

Sg. NOM.	Pēnelopē	Aenēās	Anchisēs
GEN.	Pēnelopēs	Aenēae	Anchisae
DAT.	Pēnelopae	Aenēae	Anchisae
ACC.	Pēnelopēn	Aenēam (ān)	Anchisēn (am)
VOC.	Pēnelopē	Aenēā	Anchisē (ā, a)
ABL.	Pēnelopā	Aenēā	Anchisā

67.

SECOND DECLENSION

Sg. NOM.	Dēlos (us)	Īlion (um)	Panthūs	Androgeōs (us)
GEN.	Dēli	Īlii	Panthī	Androgeī (eō)
DAT.	Dēlō	Īliō	Panthō	Androgeō
ACC.	Dēlon (um)	Īlion (um)	Panthūn	Androgeōn (ō, ōna)
VOC.	Dēle	Īlion (um)	Panthū	Androgeōs
ABL.	Dēlō	Īliō	Panthō	Androgeō

68.

THIRD DECLENSION

Sg. NOM.	Solōn (Solō)	āēr, air	Xenophōn	Atlās
GEN.	Solōnis	āeris	Xenophōntis	Atlantis
DAT.	Solōnī	āerī	Xenophōnti	Atlanti
ACC.	Solōna (em)	āera (em)	Xenophōnta (em)	Atlanta
VOC.	Solōn	āēr	Xenophōn	Atlā
ABL.	Solōne	āere	Xenophōnte	Atlante

Sg. NOM.	Thalēs	Paris	hērōs
GEN.	Thal-ētis (is)	Paridis (os)	hērōis
DAT.	Thal-ētī (i)	Paridī (i)	hērōi
ACC.	Thal-ēta (ēn, em)	Par-ida (im, in)	hērōa (em)
VOC.	Thalē	Pari (Paris)	hērōs
ABL.	Thalē	Paride	hērōe

69.

MIXED DECLENSIONS

	II AND III	II AND III	II AND III
Sg. NOM.	Orpheus	Athōs	Oedipūs
GEN.	Orphei (ēi)	Athō (ōnis)	Oedip-odis (i)
DAT.	Orpheō (eī)	Athō	Oedipidi
ACC.	Orpheum (ea)	Athō (ōn, ōnem)	Oedip-um (oda)
VOC.	Orpheu	Athōs	Oeipe
ABL.	Orpheō	Athōne	Oedip-ide (ō)

	II AND III	II AND III	II AND III
Sg. NOM.	Achillēs (eus)	Sōcratēs	Didō
GEN.	Achillis (e)ī, eos	Sōcratis (i)	Didūs (ōnis)
DAT.	Achilli	Sōcrati	Didō (ōnī)
ACC.	Achillem (ea, ēn)	Sōcratēn (em)	Didō (ōnem)
VOC.	Achillēs (ē, eu, e)	Sōcratē (es)	Didō
ABL.	Achille, (i)	Sōcrate	Didō (ōne)

ADJECTIVES

70. The Adjective adds a quality to its noun or pronoun. Adjectives have the same declension as nouns, and according to the stem characteristic are of the first and second or third declension.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

71. Stems end in **o** for masculine and neuter, **ā** for feminine; nominative in **us (er)**, **a**, **um**. The same variations in termination occur as in nouns, except that adjectives in **ius** form the genitive and vocative singular regularly. See 37, *a*.

	M.	F.	N.
Sg.	NOM. <i>bonus, good</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
	GEN. <i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
	DAT. <i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
	ACC. <i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
	VOC. <i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
	ABL. <i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>
Pl.	NOM. <i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
	GEN. <i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
	DAT. <i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
	ACC. <i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
	VOC. <i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
	ABL. <i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
Sg.	NOM. <i>miser, wretched</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
	GEN. <i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserī</i>
	DAT. <i>miserō</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>miserō</i>
	ACC. <i>miserum</i>	<i>miseram</i>	<i>miserum</i>
	VOC. <i>miser</i>	<i>misera</i>	<i>miserum</i>
	ABL. <i>miserō</i>	<i>miserā</i>	<i>miserō</i>
Pl.	NOM. <i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
	GEN. <i>miserōrum</i>	<i>miserārum</i>	<i>miserōrum</i>
	DAT. <i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
	ACC. <i>miserōs</i>	<i>miserās</i>	<i>misera</i>
	VOC. <i>miserī</i>	<i>miserae</i>	<i>misera</i>
	ABL. <i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>	<i>miserīs</i>
Sg.	NOM. <i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
	GEN. <i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrī</i>
	DAT. <i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
	ACC. <i>pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchram</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
	VOC. <i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchra</i>	<i>pulchrum</i>
	ABL. <i>pulchrō</i>	<i>pulchrā</i>	<i>pulchrō</i>
Pl.	NOM. <i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
	GEN. <i>pulchrōrum</i>	<i>pulchrārum</i>	<i>pulchrōrum</i>
	DAT. <i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>
	ACC. <i>pulchrōs</i>	<i>pulchrās</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
	VOC. <i>pulchrī</i>	<i>pulchrae</i>	<i>pulchra</i>
	ABL. <i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>	<i>pulchrīs</i>

a. All participles ending in **us**, **a**, **um**, are inflected like **bonus**.

72. In poetry we find **um** alongside of **ōrum** and **ārum** in the genitive plural.

a. In the dative and ablative plural **iis** from adjectives in **ius** is often contracted to **is** especially in names of months and in adjectives formed from proper names.

73. The so-called **Pronominal Adjectives** show certain peculiarities in the genitive and dative singular. These adjectives are: **alter**, *one of the two*; **alteruter** (a combination of **alter** and **uter**), *either of the two*; **alius**, *other*; **neuter**, *neither*; **nūllus**, *none*; **sōlus**, *sole*; **tōtus**, *whole*; **ūllus**, *any*; **ūnus**, *one*; **uter**, *which of the two*.

74.	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	alter , <i>one of two</i>	altera	alterum
GEN.	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACC.	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	alterō	alterā	alterō
Sg. NOM.	alius	alia	aliud
GEN.	alius	alius	alius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī
ACC.	aliūm	aliām	aliūd
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō
Sg. NOM.	ūllus , <i>any</i>	ūlla	ūllum
GEN.	ūllius	ūllius	ūllius
DAT.	ūllī	ūllī	ūllī
ACC.	ūllum	ūllam	ūllum
ABL.	ūllō	ūllā	ūllō
Sg. NOM.	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	utri	utri	utri
ACC.	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	utrō	utrā	utrō

Like **uter** is declined **neuter**; like **ūllus** are declined **nūllus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **ūnus**. The plural is regular.

a. The genitive **alius** is very rare, and its place is usually taken by **alterius** or **aliēnus**.

b. The **i** of the ending **ius** (except in **alius**) is often shortened in poetry. This is usually the case with **alter**, and regularly in the compounds of **uter**; as **utriusque**.

c. In the compound **alteruter** we usually find both parts declined; sometimes the second only.

d. **Alius** has its nominative and accusative singular neuter irregularly **aliud**.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

75. The declension of the adjectives of the third declension follows the rules given for nouns. Most adjectives of the third declension are vowel stems in *i*, with two (rarely three) endings in the nominative. The remaining adjectives of the third declension are consonant stems and have one ending only in the nominative.

ADJECTIVES OF TWO OR THREE ENDINGS

76. These have (except stems in *ri*) one ending in the nominative for masculine and feminine, one for neuter. Most stems in *i* form the masculine and feminine alike, with nominative in *s*; but the nominative neuter weakens the characteristic *i* into *e*. Compare *mare*, *sea*.

a. Several stems in *i*, preceded by *r* (*cr*, *tr*, *br*), form the nominative masculine, not by affixing *s*, but by dropping the *i* and inserting short *e* before the *r*, as, stem, *ācri*, *sharp*; nom., *ācer* (m.), *ācris* (f.), *ācre* (n.).

77.

	M., F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	<i>omnis</i> , <i>all</i>	<i>omne</i>
GEN.	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>
DAT.	<i>omni</i>	<i>omni</i>
ACC.	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>
VOC.	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>
ABL.	<i>omni</i>	<i>omni</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
GEN.	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
DAT.	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
ACC.	<i>omnēs</i> (<i>is</i>)	<i>omnia</i>
VOC.	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
ABL.	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	<i>ācer</i> , <i>sharp</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
GEN.	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
DAT.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
VOC.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
ABL.	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
• GEN.	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ācrēs</i> (<i>īs</i>)	<i>ācrēs</i> (<i>īs</i>)	<i>ācria</i>
VOC.	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
ABL.	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

78. Adjective stems of one ending (consonant stems) end with *l*, *r*, *s*; *p*, *b*; *t*, *d*; *c*, *g*.

79. Present active participles are also consonant stems and follow the same declension.

80. The consonant stem adjectives have the same forms in all the genders, except that in the accusative singular and in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, the neuter is distinguished from the masculine and feminine.

81. Consonant stem adjectives follow in part the declension of *i*-stem nouns; thus:

1. In the ablative singular they have *ī* or *e*; when used as nouns, commonly *e*.

a. The participles, as such, have *e*; but used as nouns or adjectives, either *e* or *ī*, with a tendency to *ī*.

2. In the neuter plural they have *ia*; except all comparatives (91), *vetus*, *old*, and *ūber*, *fertile*, which have *vetera* and *ūbera*. Many have no neuter.

3. In the genitive plural they have *ium*, when the stem characteristic is preceded by a long vowel or a consonant; *um*, when the characteristic is preceded by a short vowel. The participles regularly have *ium*.

82.	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	<i>fēlix, lucky</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	Sg. <i>recēns, recent</i>	<i>recēns</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>recentis</i>	<i>recentis</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>recentī</i>	<i>recentī</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>recentem</i>	<i>recēns</i>
VOC.	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>recēns</i>	<i>recēns</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlicī (e)</i>	<i>fēlicī (e)</i>	<i>recentī (e)</i>	<i>recentī (e)</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	Pl. <i>recentēs</i>	<i>recentia</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>recentium</i>	<i>recentium</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlicēs (īs)</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>recentēs (īs)</i>	<i>recentia</i>
VOC.	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>recentēs</i>	<i>recentia</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>	<i>recentibus</i>
Sg. NOM.	<i>vetus, old</i>	<i>vetus</i>	Sg. <i>amāns, loving</i>	<i>amāns</i>
GEN.	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>amantis</i>	<i>amantis</i>
DAT.	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>amantī</i>	<i>amantī</i>
ACC.	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>amantem</i>	<i>amāns</i>
VOC.	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>amāns</i>	<i>amāns</i>
ABL.	<i>vetere (ī)</i>	<i>vetere (ī)</i>	<i>amante (ī)</i>	<i>amante (ī)</i>
Pl. NOM.	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	Pl. <i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
GEN.	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>amantium</i>	<i>amantium</i>
DAT.	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>
ACC.	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	<i>amantēs (īs)</i>	<i>amantia</i>
VOC.	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>	<i>amantēs</i>	<i>amantia</i>
ABL.	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>	<i>amantibus</i>

a. In the poets, **e** is often found for **i** in the ablative singular. Also in classical prose we find regularly **paupere**, *poor*; **vetere**, *old*; and frequently **divite**, *rich*; **sapiente**, *wise*.

b. In the nominative and accusative plural **is** for **ēs** belongs to early Latin and the poets, but a few cases of this accusative are found in Cicero. In the case of participles **is** is very common, and is the rule in Vergil and Horace.

c. In the genitive plural **cicur**, *tame*; **vetus**, *old*; **dīves**, *rich*, have **um** instead of **ium**; so also many compound adjectives.

d. In the poets and in later writers, **um** is not infrequently found where classical prose uses **ium**.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

83. The Degrees of Comparison are: positive, comparative, and superlative.

84. The Comparative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **ius** for the neuter.

85. The Superlative is formed by adding to the consonant stems the endings **issimus**, **a**, **um** (earlier **issumus**).

86. Vowel stems, before forming the comparative and superlative, drop their characteristic vowel.

87. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus , a , um , <i>high</i>	altior , ius , <i>higher</i>	altissimus , a , um , <i>highest</i>
fortis , e , <i>brave</i>	fortior , ius , <i>braver</i>	fortissimus , <i>bravest</i>
fēlix , <i>happy</i>	fēlicior , ius , <i>happier</i>	fēlicissimus , <i>happiest</i>
recēns , <i>recent</i>	recentior , ius , <i>more recent</i>	recentissimus , <i>most recent</i>

88. Peculiarities of Comparison. Adjectives in **er** add the superlative ending **rimus** directly to the nominative masculine. The comparative has the regular formation. See 84.

89. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser , era , erum , <i>wretched</i>	miserior , miserius	miserrimus
celer , eris , ere , <i>swift</i>	celerior , celerius	celerrimus
ācer , ācris , ācre , <i>sharp</i>	ācrior , ācrius	ācerrimus

a. Six adjectives in **ilis** add **limus** (earlier **lumus**) to the stem, after dropping **i**, to form the superlative: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *hard*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; and **humilis**, *low*.

Pos. facilis	Comp. facilior , ius	Sup. facillimus , a , um
---------------------	------------------------------------	---

90. Participles used as adjectives are subject also to the same laws of comparison: as **amāns**, *loving*; **amantior**, *more loving*; **amantissimus**, *most loving*; **apertus**, *open*; **apertior**, **apertissimus**.

91. The superlative follows the declension of adjectives of three endings of the first and second declensions; 71. The comparative is declined according to the third declension, thus:

	M., F.	N.		M., F.	N.
Sg. Nom.	altior, <i>higher</i>	altius	Pl.	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris		altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōri	altiōri		altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altius		altiōrēs (is)	altiōra
Voc.	altior	altius		altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre (ī)	altiōre (ī)		altiōribus	altiōribus

92. Irregular Comparison. Certain adjectives are irregular in their comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus
malus, <i>bad</i>	pejor, pejus	pessimus
magnus, <i>great</i>	major, majus	maximus
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus
multus, <i>much</i>	Sg. plūs (no dat. nor abl.)	plūrimus
	Pl. plūrēs, plūra	
	complūrēs, complūra (ia)	
nequam, <i>worthless</i>	nequior, nequius	nequissimus
frūgī (indecl.), <i>frugal</i>	frūgālior	frūgālissimus

- a. For the pronunciation of **major** and **pejor** = **majjor**, **pejjor**, see 6, *b*.
 b. The older form of the superlative ended in **umus**.

ADVERBS

93. Most adverbs are either oblique cases or mutilated forms of oblique cases of adjectival, nominal or pronominal stems.

94. The cases from which they are derived are principally the accusative and the ablative.

ADVERBS FORMED FROM ADJECTIVES

95. Many adverbs are formed from the ablative case of adjectives in **us**: **tūtō**, *safely*; **primō**, *at first*.

a. Many adverbs are formed from an old ablative form (**ē**) of adjectives in **us** and **er**: **altē**, *loftily*; **pulchrē**, *beautifully*.

b. Many adverbs are formed from accusative singular neuter adjectival and pronominal stems: **multum**, *much*; **facile**, *easily*. This is true of all comparatives: **facilius**, *more easily*. To the comparatives belong also **magis**, *more*; **nimis**, *too*.

c. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives and participles of the third declension by the addition of **ter** (**iter**) to the stem; stems in **nt** dropping the **t**, and stems in **c** or **g** inserting the connecting vowel **i** before the ending: **fortiter**, *bravely*; **ferōciter**, *wildly*; **prūdentē**, *prudently*.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

96. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative neuter of the comparative of the adjective. See 95, *b*. The superlative ends in *issimē*, *errimē*, *illimē* (earlier *issumē*, *errumē*, *illumē*), or irregularly, according to the superlative of the adjective. See 87, 88, 89, 92.

97. POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altē, loftily</i>	<i>altius</i>	<i>altissimē</i>
<i>pulchrē, beautifully</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimē</i>
<i>miserē, poorly</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
<i>fortiter, bravely</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>audācter, boldly</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>
<i>tūtō, safely</i>	<i>tūtius</i>	<i>tūtissimē</i>
<i>facile, easily</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>
<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, ill</i>	<i>pejus</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>[parvus], small</i>	<i>minus, less</i>	<i>minimē, least</i>
<i>[magnus], great</i>	<i>magis, more</i>	<i>maximē, most</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs, more</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>citō, quickly</i>	<i>citius</i>	<i>citissimē</i>
<i>diū, long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
<i>nūper, recently</i>	—	<i>nūperrimē</i>
<i>satis, enough</i>	<i>satius, better</i>	

NUMERALS

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

98. The Cardinal Numerals, as *ūnus, one; duo, two; decem, ten*, answer the question *quot, how many?* and are the numbers used in counting.

a. The Ordinal Numerals, as *primus, first; secundus (alter), second; decimus, tenth*, answer the question *quotus, which one in the series?*

99. The cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except: *ūnus, one; duo, two; trēs, three*; the hundreds beginning with *ducenti, two hundred*; and the plural *milia, thousands*, which forms *mīlium* and *mīlibus*.

	M.	F.	N.	M., F.	N.
NOM.	<i>duo, two</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, three</i>	<i>tria</i>
GEN.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
DAT.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
ACC.	<i>duōs, duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs (trīs)</i>	<i>tria</i>
ABL.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

a. For the declension of ūnus see 73-74.

100. The Distributive Numerals, as *singulī, one each; binī, two each; dēnī, ten each*, answer the question *quotēnī, how many each?*

101. Numeral Adverbs, as *semel*, *once*; *bis*, *twice*; *ter*, *thrice*, answer the question *quotiēns*, *how often*?

PRONOUNS

102. A Pronoun is a word that may be substituted for a noun. Latin pronouns may be divided into six classes: personal (including reflexive), demonstrative, intensive, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

- a. All but the personal pronouns may be used as pronominal adjectives.
- b. The possessive adjectives are often classified as possessive pronouns.

A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

103. The Personal Pronoun of the First Person.

Sg. NOM. ego , <i>I</i>	Pl. nōs , <i>we</i>
GEN. meī , <i>of me</i>	nostrī , <i>nostrum</i> , <i>of us</i>
DAT. mihī (mī), <i>to, for me</i>	nōbīs , <i>to, for us</i>
ACC. mē , <i>me</i>	nōs , <i>us</i>
ABL. mē , <i>from, with, by me</i>	nōbīs , <i>from, with, by us</i>

- a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. meus , a , um , (voc. m., mī), <i>mine, my own</i>	Pl. noster , nostra , nostrum , <i>our(s)</i> , <i>our own</i>
--	--

- b. The oblique cases of **ego** may also be used with reflexive force: **meī**, *of myself*, etc.

104. The Personal Pronoun of the Second Person.

Sg. NOM. VOC. tū , <i>you</i>	Pl. vōs , <i>you</i>
GEN. tui , <i>of you</i>	vestrī , <i>vestrum</i> , <i>of you</i>
DAT. tibi , <i>to, for you</i>	vōbīs , <i>to, for you</i>
ACC. tē , <i>you</i>	vōs , <i>you</i>
ABL. tē , <i>from, with, by you</i>	vōbīs , <i>from, with, by you</i>

- a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjectives:

Sg. tuus , a , um , <i>your(s), your own</i>	Pl. vester , vestra , vestrum , <i>your(s), your own</i>
---	--

- b. The oblique cases of **tū** may also be used with reflexive force: **tui**, *of yourself*, etc.

105. The Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

- a. **Is**, **ea**, **id**, *he, she, it*, 107, used also as a demonstrative, *this, that*, is the ordinary form of the third personal pronoun. It lacks the possessive adjective.

- b. The original personal pronoun of the third person, together with its possessive, is used only as a reflexive in Latin, and therefore lacks a nominative. See 106.

106. The Personal (Reflexive) Pronoun of the Third Person.

Sg.	NOM. —	Pl. —
GEN.	sui , of him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)	sui , of them(<i>selves</i>)
DAT.	sibi , to, for, him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)	sibi , to, for them(<i>selves</i>)
ACC.	sē , sēsē , him(<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it- (<i>self</i>)	sē , sēsē , them(<i>selves</i>)
ABL.	sē , sēsē , from, with, by him- (<i>self</i>), her(<i>self</i>), it(<i>self</i>)	sē , sēsē , from, with, by them- (<i>selves</i>)

a. Compare the corresponding possessive adjective, **suus**, **a**, **um**, his (*own*), her (*own*), its (*own*); *their* (*own*), *theirs*.

b. The enclitic **-met** is sometimes added to certain forms of the personal pronouns; as **egomet**, *I myself*.

c. The enclitic **-pte** is sometimes added to the ablative singular of the possessive adjective; as **suōpte ingeniō**, *by his own genius*.

107. B. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

1. **is**, *this, that; he, she, it*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ejus	ejus	ejus
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACC.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō
Pl. NOM.	iī , eī , ī	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	iīs , eīs , īs	iīs , eīs , īs	iīs , eīs , īs
ACC.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	iīs , eīs , īs	iīs , eīs , īs	iīs , eīs , īs

a. For the pronunciation of **ejus** (= **ejjus**) see 6, b.

b. This pronoun is often used as a third personal pronoun, *he, she, it*; 105, a.

2. **idem**, (**is** + **dem**), *the same*

Sg.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	idem	eadem	idem
GEN.	ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
DAT.	eidem	eidem	eidem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
Pl.			
NOM.	idem , eidem , iūdem	eadem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	isdem , eisdem , iūdem	isdem , eisdem , iūdem	isdem , eisdem , iūdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	isdem , eisdem , iūdem	isdem , eisdem , iūdem	isdem , eisdem , iūdem

a. For the pronunciation of **ejusdem** = **ejjusdem**, see 6, b.

3. *hic, this*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	hic	haec	hoc
GEN.	hujus	hujus	hujus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc
Pl. NOM.	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs

a. For the pronunciation of *hujus* = *hujjus*, see 6, b.

b. The full forms with *-ce* are rare in classical Latin, except in the phrase *hujusce modī*, of this kind.

c. When followed by a word which begins with a vowel or *h*, the nominative singular of the masculine, *hic*, and the nominative and accusative singular of the neuter, *hoc*, are usually pronounced as though spelled *hicc*, *hocc*, making these syllables long by position; 15.

4. *iste, that (of yours)*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	iste	ista	istud
GEN.	istīus	istīus	istīus
DAT.	istī	istī	istī
ACC.	istum	istam	istud
ABL.	istō	istā	istō
Pl. NOM.	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACC.	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istīs	istīs	istīs

a. *Iste* combines with *-ce*, but in classical Latin the only common forms are *istuc* (for *istud*) and *istaec* (for *ista*).

5. *ille, that*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT.	illī	illī	illī
ACC.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō
Pl. NOM.	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illīs	illīs	illīs

108. C. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, *self*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	ipse	ipse	ipsum
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
Pl. NOM.	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ACC.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

109. D. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, *who*

	M.	F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	quī	quae	quod
GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō
Pl. NOM.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. For the pronunciation of **cujus** = **cujjus**, see 6, b.

b. **Quī** may also be used as a relative adjective.

c. The dative-ablative plural **quīs** is common in the poets at all periods and occurs also occasionally in prose writers.

d. The ablative singular **quī** for all genders is the prevalent form in early times; and in combination with **cum**, as **quicum**, *with whom*, is preferred to **quō**, **quā**, by Cicero.

110. General Relatives are:

PRONOUN	quisquis, <i>whoever</i>	quidquid, quicquid, <i>whatever</i>
ADJECTIVE	quīquī, quaequae, quodquod, <i>whatsoever</i>	
	quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, <i>whichever</i>	

111. E. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

PRONOUN	quis? <i>who?</i>	quid? <i>what?</i>
ADJECTIVE	quī? <i>which?</i>	quod? <i>which?</i>
PRON. AND ADJ.	uter?	utrum? <i>who? which of two?</i>

	M., F.	N.
Sg. NOM.	quis?	quid?
GEN.	cujus?	cujus?
DAT.	cui?	cui?
ACC.	quem?	quid?
ABL.	quō?	quō?

a. The plural of the interrogative pronoun and both numbers of the interrogative adjective coincide with the forms of the relative **quī, quae, quod**.

112. F. STRENGTHENED INTERROGATIVES

PRONOUN	quisnam? <i>who, pray?</i>	quidnam? <i>what, pray?</i>
	ecquis? <i>(is there) any one?</i>	ecquid? <i>(is there) anything?</i>
ADJECTIVE	quinam?	quodnam? <i>which, pray?</i>
	ecqui?	ecqua? (ecquae?) <i>is there any?</i>

113. G. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

aliquis	aliqua (rare)	aliquid, <i>somebody, someone or other, anybody</i>
quis	qua	quid, <i>someone, anyone</i>

a. The adjective forms are **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, some, any; quī, quae (qua), quod, some, any**.

114. The declension of the pronominal adjectives has been given, 73-74. They are: **ūllus, a, um, any; nūllus, a, um, no one, not one; alius, a, ud, another; alter, era, erum, the other, one (of two); neuter, tra, trum, neither of two; ambō, ae, ō, both**. The corresponding substantives for **nūllus** and **nūllum** are **nēmō** and **nihil**, the latter of which forms only **nihili** (gen.) and **nihilō** (abl.) and those only in certain combinations.

a. Some of the more important compounds of these adjectives are:

nōnnūllus, a, um, some, many a, declined like **nūllus**.
alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum, *the one or the other of the two*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, either*
utervis, utravis, utrumvis *whichever you please of the two*
uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *whichever you please of the two*

THE VERB

115. The inflection given to the verbal stem is called conjugation and expresses:

1. Person: First, Second, Third.
2. Voice: Active, Passive, Middle.

a. The active voice denotes that the action proceeds from the subject: **parō, I prepare**. The passive voice denotes that the subject receives the

action of the verb: **paror**, *I am prepared*. The middle voice has passive form and denotes the subject as acting either for itself or upon itself (reflexive) as: **paror**, *I prepare (for) myself*. This is chiefly a poetic usage.

3. **Tense: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.**

4. **Mood: Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative.**

a. The indicative is the mood of the fact: **parō**, *I prepare*. The subjunctive is the mood of the wish, command, or qualified statement: **parem**, *may I prepare, I may prepare*; **paret**, *may he prepare, let him prepare*; **sī paret**, *if he should prepare*. The imperative is the mood of command: **parā**, *prepare!*

CONJUGATION

116. The stem of a verb is variously modified, either by change of vowel or by addition of suffixes, and appears in the following forms:

1. **The Present Stem:** being the stem of the present, imperfect, and future tenses. These forms are called the present system.

2. **The Perfect Stem:** being the stem of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses of the active. These forms are called the perfect system.

3. **The Perfect Passive Participial Stem:** which is used to form the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses of the passive and also the future active and perfect passive participles, infinitives, and the supine. These forms are called the participial system.

117. 1. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice are formed by the combination of the perfect passive participle with forms of the verb **sum**, *be, exist*.

2. The future passive infinitive is formed by the combination of the supine with the present passive infinitive of **eō**, *go*.

3. The infinite parts of the verb are formed by the addition of the following endings to the present, perfect, or participial stem:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
INFINITIVE	Pres. re Perf. isse Fut. ūrus (a, um) esse	rī, ī us (a, um) esse um īrī
PARTICIPLES	Pres. ns (Gen. ntis) Perf. ——— Fut. ūrus (a, um)	——— us (a, um) ———
GERUND		SUPINE
ndī, (dō, dum, dō)	GERUNDIVE	um, ū
	ndus (a, um)	

THE VERB *sum, be, exist*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *sum, esse, fui*

118. INDICATIVE

119. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

- Sg. 1. *sum, I am*
 2. *es, you are*
 3. *est, he, she, it, is*

*sim*¹
sis
sit

- Pl. 1. *sumus, we are*
 2. *estis, you are*
 3. *sunt, they are*

simus
sitis
sint

IMPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *eram, I was*
 2. *erās, you were*
 3. *erat, he was*

essem (forem)
essēs (forēs)
esset (foret)

- Pl. 1. *erāmus, we were*
 2. *erātis, you were*
 3. *erant, they were*

essēmus (forēmus)
essētis (forētis)
essent (forent)

FUTURE

- Sg. 1. *erō, I shall be*
 2. *eris, you will be*
 3. *erit, he will be*

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. *erimus, we shall be*
 2. *eritis, you will be*
 3. *erunt, they will be*

PERFECT

- Sg. 1. *fui, I have been, I was*
 2. *fuisti, you have been, you were*
 3. *fuit, he has been, he was*

fuerim
fueris
fuerit

- Pl. 1. *fuimus, we have been, we were*
 2. *fuistis, you have been, you were*
 3. *fuērunt, fuēre, they have been, they were*

fuerimus
fueritis
fuerint

PLUPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *fueram, I had been*
 2. *fuerās, you had been*
 3. *fuerat, he had been*

fuissem
fuißēs
fuißet

- Pl. 1. *fuerāmus, we had been*
 2. *fuerātis, you had been*
 3. *fuerant, they had been*

fuißēmus
fuißētis
fuißent

¹ The meaning of the subjunctive varies greatly, according to its use, and is best learned from the sections on syntax.

FUTURE PERFECT

- Sg. 1. fuerō, *I shall have been*
 2. fueris, *you will have been*
 3. fuerit, *he will have been*

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. fuerimus, *we shall have been*
 2. fueritis, *you will have been*
 3. fuerint, *they will have been*

120.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT		FUTURE	
Sg. 1. _____	Pl. _____	Sg. _____	Pl. _____
2. es, be	este, be	estō, you shall be	estōte, you shall be
3. _____	_____	estō, he shall be	suntō, they shall be

121.

INFINITIVE

- PRES. esse, *to be*
 PERF. fuisse, *to have been*
 FUT. futūrus (a, um) esse, *fore, to be about to be*

122.

PARTICIPLES

- PRES. only in the compounds absēns, *absent*, praesēns, *present* (79)
 FUT. futūrus, a, um, *about to be* (71, a)

123.

COMPOUNDS OF sum

- absum, *be away, absent*. PERF. (abfuī) āfuī, PRES. PART. absēns, *absent*.
 adsum, *be present*. PERF. affuī (adfuī)
 dēsum, *be wanting*
 insum, *be in*
 intersum, *be between*
 obsum, *be against, hurt*. PERF. obfuī (offuī)
 possum, *be able*
 praesum, *be over, superintend*. PRES. PART. praesēns, *present*
 prōsum, *be for, profit*
 subsum, *be under*. NO PERF.
 supersum, *be or remain, over*.

These are all inflected like **sum**, but **prōsum** and **possum** require special treatment by reason of their composition.

124.

Prōsum, profit

In the forms of **prōsum**, **prōd-** is used before vowels, thus:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	prōsum, prōdes, prōdest; prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt	prōsim
IMPERF.	prōderam	prōdessem
FUT.	prōderō	_____
PERF.	prōfuī	prōfuerim
PLUPERF.	prōfueram	prōfuissem
FUT. PERF.	prōfuerō	_____

INFINITIVE

PRES. *prōdesse*; FUT. *prōfutūrum esse* (*prōfore*); PERF. *prōfuisse*.

125.

Possum, be able, can

Possum is compounded of *pot* (*potis, pote*) and *sum*; *t* becomes *s* before *s*. The perfect forms and the present participle are from an old form *poteō, potēre*.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

- Sg. 1. *possum, I am able, can*
 2. *potes*
 3. *potest*

- Pl. 1. *possumus*
 2. *potestis*
 3. *possunt*

SUBJUNCTIVE

- possim*
possis
possit

- possimus*
possitis
possint

IMPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *poteram, I was able, could*
 2. *poterās*
 3. *poterat*

- Pl. 1. *poterāmus*
 2. *poterātis*
 3. *poterant*

- possem*
possēs
posset

- possēmus*
possētis
possent

FUTURE

- Sg. 1. *poterō, I shall be able*
 2. *poteris*
 3. *poterit*

- Pl. 1. *poterimus*
 2. *poteritis*
 3. *poterunt*

(lacking)

PERFECT

- Sg. 1. *potui, I have been able*
 2. *potuistī*
 3. *potuit*

- Pl. 1. *potuimus*
 2. *potuistis*
 3. *potuērunt, ēre*

- potuerim*
potueris
potuerit

- potuerimus*
potueritis
potuerint

PLUPERFECT

- Sg. 1. *potueram, I had been able*
 2. *potuerās*
 3. *potuerat*

- Pl. 1. *potuerāmus*
 2. *potuerātis*
 3. *potuerant*

- potuissem*
potuissēs
potuisset

- potuissēmus*
potuissētis
potuissent

FUTURE PERFECT

- Sg.** 1. *potuerō, I shall have been able*
 2. *potueris*
 3. *potuerit*

(lacking)

- Pl.** 1. *potuerimus*
 2. *potueritis*
 3. *potuerint*

INFINITIVE

- PRES.** *posse*
PERF. *potuisse*

PARTICIPLE

- PRES.** *potēns* (79)

REGULAR VERBS

SYSTEMS OF CONJUGATION

126. 1. There are two systems of conjugation, the vowel and the consonant. The consonant system is confined to a small class. The vowel system comprises four conjugations, distinguished by the vowel characteristics of the present stem, *ā, ē, e, ī*, which may be found by dropping *re* from the present infinitive active. The consonant preceding the short vowel stem characteristic is called the consonant stem characteristic.

2. From the present stem, as seen in the present indicative and present infinitive active; from the perfect stem, as seen in the perfect indicative active; and from the perfect passive participial stem, can be derived all forms of the verb. These forms are accordingly called the principal parts; and in the regular verbs appear in the four conjugations as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.
I. <i>parō</i>	<i>parāre</i>	<i>parāvī</i>	<i>parātus, prepare</i>
II. <i>habeō</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>habuī</i>	<i>habitus, have</i>
III. <i>dicō</i>	<i>dīcere</i>	<i>dixī</i>	<i>dictus, say</i>
<i>capīō</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>cēpī</i>	<i>captus, take</i>
IV. <i>audiō</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>audīvī</i>	<i>auditus, hear</i>

FORMATION OF THE TENSES

127. The tenses are formed by the addition of the personal endings to the various stems, either directly or by means of certain tense signs, as shown in the paradigms.

128. While no practical rules for the formation of the tenses can be given, it is well to observe that:

1. The second person singular imperative active is the same as the present stem.

2. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed from the present infinitive active by adding *m*, etc. for active and *r*, etc. for passive.

3. The second person singular imperative passive and second person singular present passive in **re** are the same as the present infinitive active. Hence **ris** is preferred in the present indicative passive in order to avoid confusion.

4. The present subjunctive active and future indicative active in the third and fourth conjugations are alike in the first person singular.

5. The future perfect indicative active and the perfect subjunctive active differ only in the first person singular, except for the quantity of the *i*.

6. **Euphonic changes** sometimes occur in the consonant stem characteristic in the perfect and participial stem. Characteristic **b** before **s** and **t** becomes **p**; **g** and **qu** before **t** become **c**; **c**, **g**, **qu**, with **s**, become **x**; **t** and **d** before **s** are assimilated, and then sometimes dropped; thus: **scribō**, **scripsī** (**scribsi**), **scriptus**; **legō**, **lēctus** (**lēgtus**); **coquō**, **coctus** (**coqtus**); **dīcō**, **dixī** (**dīcsi**); **jungō**, **jūnxī** (**jūngsī**); **coquō**, **coxī** (**coqsi**); **edō**, **ēsus** (**edsus**); **cēdō**, **cessī** (**cedsi**); **mittō**, **mīsī** (**mitsī**), **missus** (**mitsus**).

FIRST CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *parō*, *prepare*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **parō**, **parāre**, **parāvi**, **parātus**

ACTIVE

129. INDICATIVE

130. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*I prepare, am preparing,
do prepare*

Sg. 1. **parō**
2. **parās**
3. **parat**

parem
parēs
paret

Pl. 1. **parāmus**
2. **parātis**
3. **parant**

parēmus
parētis
parent

IMPERFECT

*I prepared, was preparing,
did prepare*

Sg. 1. **parābam**
2. **parābās**
3. **parābat**

parārem
parārēs
parāret

Pl. 1. **parābāmus**
2. **parābātis**
3. **parābant**

parārēmus
parārētis
parārent

FUTURE

*I shall prepare, shall
be preparing*

- Sg. 1. parābō
2. parābis
3. parābit

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. parābimus
2. parābitis
3. parābunt

PERFECT

*I prepared, have prepared,
did prepare*

- Sg. 1. parāvi
2. parāvisti
3. parāvit

parāverim
parāveris
parāverit

- Pl. 1. parāvimus
2. parāvistis
3. parāvērunt, ēre

parāverimus
parāveritis
parāverint

PLUPERFECT

I had prepared

- Sg. 1. parāveram
2. parāverās
3. parāverat

parāvissem
parāvissēs
parāvisset

- Pl. 1. parāverāmus
2. parāverātis
3. parāverant

parāvissēmus
parāvissētis
parāvissent

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have prepared

- Sg. 1. parāverō
2. parāveris
3. parāverit

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. parāverimus
2. parāveritis
3. parāverint

131.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

- Sg. 1. _____
2. parā, prepare
3. _____
- Pl. 1. _____
2. parāte, prepare
3. _____

FUTURE

parātō, you shall prepare
parātō, he shall prepare

parātōte, you shall prepare
parantō, they shall prepare

132.

INFINITIVE

PRES. **parāre**, *to prepare*PERF. **parāvisse**, *to have prepared*FUT. **parātūrus, a, um esse**, *to be about to prepare*

133. GERUND

GEN. **parandi**, *of preparing*DAT. **parandō**, *to, for preparing*ACC. **parandum**, *preparing, to prepare*ABL. **parandō**, *with, from, by preparing*

134. SUPINE

parātum, *to prepare***parātū**, *to prepare, in the preparing*

135.

PARTICIPLES

PRES. Nom. **parāns** (*Gen. parantis*), *preparing* (79)FUT. **parātūrus, a, um**, *(being) about to prepare* (71, a)

FIRST CONJUGATION

PASSIVE

136. INDICATIVE

137. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

I am (being) prepared

- Sg. 1. **paror**
 2. **parāris, re**
 3. **parātur**

parer
parēris, re
parētur

- Pl. 1. **parāmur**
 2. **parāmini**
 3. **parantur**

parēmur
parēmini
parentur

IMPERFECT

I was (being) prepared

- Sg. 1. **parābar**
 2. **parābāris, re**
 3. **parābātur**

parārer
parārēris, re
parārētur

- Pl. 1. **parābāmur**
 2. **parābāmini**
 3. **parābantur**

parārēmur
parārēmini
parārentur

FUTURE

I shall be prepared

- Sg. 1. **parābor**
 2. **parāberis, re**
 3. **parābitur**

(lacking)

- Pl. 1. **parābimur**
 2. **parābimini**
 3. **parābuntur**

PERFECT

*I have been prepared, was
prepared*

Sg. 1.	parātus, a, um	sum	parātus, a, um	sim
2.		es		sis
3.		est		sit
Pl. 1.	parāti, ae, a	sumus	parāti, ae, a	simus
2.		estis		sitis
3.		sunt		sint

PLUPERFECT

I had been prepared

Sg. 1.	parātus, a, um	eram	parātus, a, um	essem
2.		erās		essēs
3.		erat		esset
Pl. 1.	parāti, ae, a	erāmus	parāti, ae, a	essēmus
2.		erātis		essētis
3.		erant		essent

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been prepared

Sg. 1.	parātus, a, um	erō
2.		eris
3.		erit
Pl. 1.	parāti, ae, a	erimus
2.		eritis
3.		erunt

138.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT		FUTURE	
Sg. 1.	_____	_____	
2.	parāre, be prepared	parātor, you shall be prepared	
3.	_____	parātor, he shall be prepared	
Pl. 1.	_____	_____	
2.	parāminī, be prepared	_____	
3.	_____	parantor, they shall be prepared	

139.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	parāri, to be prepared
PERF.	parātus, a, um esse, to have been prepared
FUT.	parātum iri, to be about to be prepared

140. PARTICIPLE

PERF. parātus, a, um, *having been
prepared* (71, a)

141. GERUNDIVE

parandus, a, um, *(about) to be
prepared; must be, ought to be
prepared* (71, a)

SECOND CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *habēō, habere*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *habēō, habere, habuī, habitus*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

142. INDICATIVE 143. SUBJUNCTIVE 144. INDICATIVE 145. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Sg. 1. <i>habēō</i>	<i>habeam</i>	<i>habeor</i>	<i>habear</i>
2. <i>habēs</i>	<i>habeās</i>	<i>habēris, re</i>	<i>habeāris, re</i>
3. <i>habet</i>	<i>habeat</i>	<i>habētur</i>	<i>habeātur</i>
Pl. 1. <i>habēmus</i>	<i>habeāmus</i>	<i>habēmur</i>	<i>habeāmur</i>
2. <i>habētis</i>	<i>habeātis</i>	<i>habēmini</i>	<i>habeāmini</i>
3. <i>habent</i>	<i>habeant</i>	<i>habentur</i>	<i>habeantur</i>

IMPERFECT

Sg. 1. <i>habēbam</i>	<i>habērem</i>	<i>habēbar</i>	<i>habērer</i>
2. <i>habebās</i>	<i>habērēs</i>	<i>habēbāris, re</i>	<i>habērēris, re</i>
3. <i>habēbat</i>	<i>habēret</i>	<i>habēbātur</i>	<i>habērētur</i>
Pl. 1. <i>habēbāmus</i>	<i>habērēmus</i>	<i>habēbāmur</i>	<i>habērēmur</i>
2. <i>habēbātis</i>	<i>habērētis</i>	<i>habēbāmini</i>	<i>habērēmini</i>
3. <i>habēbant</i>	<i>habērent</i>	<i>habēbantur</i>	<i>habērentur</i>

FUTURE

Sg. 1. <i>habēbō</i>	<i>habēbor</i>
2. <i>habēbis</i>	<i>habēberis, re</i>
3. <i>habēbit</i>	<i>habēbitur</i>
Pl. 1. <i>habēbimus</i>	<i>habēbimur</i>
2. <i>habēbitis</i>	<i>habēbimini</i>
3. <i>habēbunt</i>	<i>habēbuntur</i>

PERFECT

Sg. 1. <i>habuī</i>	<i>habuerim</i>	<i>habitus, {</i>	<i>habitus, {</i>
2. <i>habuisti</i>	<i>habueris</i>	<i>a, um {</i>	<i>a, um {</i>
3. <i>habuit</i>	<i>habuerit</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>est</i>
Pl. 1. <i>habuimus</i>	<i>habuerimus</i>	<i>habiti, {</i>	<i>habiti, {</i>
2. <i>habuistis</i>	<i>habueritis</i>	<i>ae, a {</i>	<i>ae, a {</i>
3. <i>habuerunt, ēre</i>	<i>habuerint</i>	<i>sunt</i>	<i>sunt</i>

PLUPERFECT

Sg. 1. <i>habueram</i>	<i>habuissem</i>	<i>habitus, {</i>	<i>habitus, {</i>
2. <i>habuerās</i>	<i>habuissēs</i>	<i>a, um {</i>	<i>a, um {</i>
3. <i>habuerat</i>	<i>habuisset</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>esset</i>
Pl. 1. <i>habuerāmus</i>	<i>habuissēmus</i>	<i>habiti, {</i>	<i>habiti, {</i>
2. <i>habuerātis</i>	<i>habuissētis</i>	<i>ae, a {</i>	<i>ae, a {</i>
3. <i>habuerant</i>	<i>habuissent</i>	<i>erant</i>	<i>essent</i>

FUTURE PERFECT

Sg.	1. habuerō	habitus, a, um erō
	2. habueris	eris
	3. habuerit	erit
Pl.	1. habuerimus	habiti, ae, a erimus
	2. habueritis	eritis
	3. habuerint	erint

146. IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg.	1. _____	_____	_____	_____
	2. habē	habētō	habēre	habētor
	3. _____	habētō	_____	habētor
Pl.	1. _____	_____	_____	_____
	2. habēte	habētōte	habēmini	_____
	3. _____	habentō	_____	habentor

147. INFINITIVE

PRES.	habēre	habērī
PERF.	habuisse	habitus, a, um esse
FUT.	habitūrus, a, um esse	habitum irī

148. GERUND

149. SUPINE

150. PARTICIPLES

GEN. habendī		PRES. <i>Nom.</i> habēns; <i>Gen.</i> habentis (79)
DAT. habendō		FUT. habitūrus, a, um (71, a)
ACC. habendum	ACC. habitum	PERF. habitus, a, um (71, a)
ABL. habendō	ABL. habitū	

GERUNDIVE

habendus, a, um (71, a)

THIRD CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *dicō*, sayPRINCIPAL PARTS: *dicō*, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

151. INDICATIVE 152. SUBJUNCTIVE 153. INDICATIVE 154. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Sg.	1. dicō	dicam	dicor	dicar
	2. dicis	dicās	diceris, re	dicāris, re
	3. dicit	dicat	dicitur	dicātur
Pl.	1. dicimus	dicāmus	dicimur	dicāmur
	2. dicitis	dicātis	dicimini	dicāmini
	3. dicunt	dicant	dicuntur	dicantur

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
IMPERFECT			
Sg.	1. dicēbam 2. dicēbās 3. dicēbat	dicerem dicerēs diceret	dicēbar dicēbāris, re dicēbātur dicerer dicerēris, re dicerētur
Pl.	1. dicēbāmus 2. dicēbātis 3. dicēbant	dicerēmus dicerētis dicerent	dicēbāmur dicēbāmini dicēbantur dicerēmur dicerēmini dicerentur
FUTURE			
Sg.	1. dicam 2. dicēs 3. dicet	dicar dicēris, re dicētur	
Pl.	1. dicēmus 2. dicētis 3. dicent	dicēmur dicēmini dicentur	
PERFECT			
Sg.	1. dixī 2. dixistī 3. dixit	dixerim dixeris dixerit	dictus, { sum a, um { es est dictus, { sim a, um { sis sit
Pl.	1. diximus 2. dixistis 3. dixērunt, ēre	dixerimus dixeritis dixerint	dicti, { sumus ae, a { estis sunt dicti, { simus ae, a { sitis sint
PLUPERFECT			
Sg.	1. dixeram 2. dixerās 3. dixerat	dixissem dixissēs dixisset	dictus, { eram a, um { erās erat dictus, { essem a, um { essēs esset
Pl.	1. dixerāmus 2. dixerātis 3. dixerant	dixissēmus dixissētis dixissent	dicti, { erāmus ae, a { erātis erant dicti, { essēmus ae, a { essētis essent
FUTURE PERFECT			
Sg.	1. dixerō 2. dixeris 3. dixerit	dictus, { erō a, um { eris erit	
Pl.	1. dixerimus 2. dixeritis 3. dixerint	dicti, { erimus ae, a { eritis erunt	
155.			
IMPERATIVE			
	PRESENT	FUTURE	
Sg.	1. _____ 2. dic ¹ 3. _____	dicitō dicitō	PRESENT _____
Pl.	1. _____ 2. dicite 3. _____	_____ dicitōte dicuntō	FUTURE _____
			dicuntor

¹ See 202.

156.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	dicere	dicī
PERF.	dixisse	dictus, a, um esse
FUT.	dictūrus, a, um esse	dictum irī

157. GERUND

158. SUPINE

159. PARTICIPLES

GEN.	dicendi	PRES. <i>Nom.</i>	dicēns; Gen. dicentis (79)
DAT.	dicendō	FUT.	dictūrus, a, um (71, a)
ACC.	dicendum	PERF.	dictus, a, um (71, a)
ABL.	dicendō		

160.

GERUNDIVE

dicendus, a, um

VERBS IN **iō** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

161. Many verbs of the third conjugation with present indicative in **iō**, change **i** to **e** before **r** and drop it when it would come before **e** or **i** in all tenses of the present system except the future, participle, and gerund. Otherwise they follow the inflection of **dicere**.

162. These verbs are **capiō**, *take*; **cupiō**, *desire*; **faciō**, *do, make*; **fodiō**, *dig*; **fugiō**, *flee*; **jaciō**, *throw*; **pariō**, *produce, bear*; **quatiō**, *shake*; **rapiō**, *snatch*; **sapiō**, *be wise*, and their compounds; also compounds of **-liciō**, **-spiciō**; and the deponents **gradior**, *go*, and its compounds; **moriōr**, *die*, and its compounds; **pator**, *endure, suffer*, and its compounds.

Synopsis of Present System of **capiō**, *take*PRINCIPAL PARTS: **capiō**, *capere*, **cēpī**, *captus*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

163. INDICATIVE

164. SUBJUNCTIVE

165. INDICATIVE

166. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Sg. 1.	capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
2.	capis	capiās	caperis, re	capiāris, re
3.	capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
Pl. 1.	capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
2.	capitis	capiātis	capimini	capiāmini
3.	capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur

IMPERFECT

Sg. 1.	capiebam	caperem	capiebar	caperer
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

FUTURE

Sg. 1.	capiam	capiar
2.	capies	capiēris, re
	etc.	etc.

167.

IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1.	_____	_____	_____	_____
2.	cape	capitō	capere	capitor
3.	_____	capitō	_____	capitor
Pl. 1.	_____	_____	_____	_____
2.	capite	capitōte	capimini	_____
3.	_____	capiuntō	_____	capiuntor

168.

INFINITIVE

PRES. capere	capī
--------------	------

169. PARTICIPLE

170. GERUND

171. GERUNDIVE

PRES. capiēns (79)

Gen. capiendī

capiendus, a, um (71, a)

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *audiō*, *hear*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audiō*, *audire*, *audivi*, *auditus*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

172. INDICATIVE 173. SUBJUNCTIVE 174. INDICATIVE 175. SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

Sg. 1.	audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
2.	audis	audiās	audiris, re	audiāris, re
3.	audit	audiat	auditur	audiātur
Pl. 1.	audimus	audiāmus	audimur	audiāmur
2.	auditis	audiātis	audimini	audiāmini
3.	audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur

IMPERFECT

Sg. 1.	audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
2.	audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris, re	audīrēris, re
3.	audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
Pl. 1.	audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
2.	audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāmini	audīrēmini
3.	audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur

FUTURE

Sg. 1.	audiam	audiar
2.	audiēs	audiēris, re
3.	audiet	audiētur
Pl. 1.	audiēmus	audiēmur
2.	audiētis	audiēmini
3.	audient	audientur

PERFECT

Sg. 1. audivī	audiverim	auditus, a, um	{ sum es est	auditus, a, um	{ sim sis sit
2. audivistī	audiveris				
3. audivit	audiverit				
Pl. 1. audivimus	audiverimus	auditi, ae, a	{ sumus estis sunt	auditi, ae, a	{ simus sitis sint
2. audivistis	audiveritis				
3. audivērunt, ēre	audiverint				

PLUPERFECT

Sg. 1. audiveram	audivissem	auditus, a, um	{ eram erās erat	auditus, a, um	{ essem essēs esset
2. audiverās	audivissēs				
3. audiverat	audivisset				
Pl. 1. audiverāmus	audivissēmus	auditi, ae, a	{ erāmus erātis erant	auditi, ae, a	{ essēmus essētis essent
2. audiverātis	audivissētis				
3. audiverant	audivissent				

FUTURE PERFECT

Sg. 1. audiverō	auditus, a, um	{ erō eris erit
2. audiveris		
3. audiverit		
Pl. 1. audiverimus	auditi, ae, a	{ erimus eritis erunt
2. audiveritis		
3. audiverint		

176.

IMPERATIVE

	PRESENT	FUTURE	PRESENT	FUTURE
Sg. 1. _____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2. audī	audītō	audire	auditor	
3. _____	audītō	_____	auditor	
Pl. 1. _____	_____	_____	_____	_____
2. audite	audītōte	audīmini	_____	
3. _____	audiuntō	_____	audiuntor	

177.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	audīre	audiri
PERF.	audivisse	auditus, a, um esse
FUT.	auditūrus, a, um esse	auditum iri

178. GERUND

179. SUPINE

180. PARTICIPLES

GEN. audiendī		PRES. <i>Nom.</i> audiēns; Gen. audientis (79)
DAT. audiendō		FUT. auditūrus, a, um (71, a)
ACC. audiendum	auditum	PERF. auditus, a, um (71, a)
ABL. audiendō	auditū	

181.

GERUNDIVE

audiendus, a, um

DEPONENT VERBS

182. Deponent verbs have the passive form, but are active in meaning. They have also the present and future active participles, and the future active infinitive. Thus a deponent verb alone can have a present, future, and perfect participle, all with active meaning. The gerundive, however, is passive in meaning as well as in form.

The conjugation differs in no particular from that of the regular conjugation.

I. FIRST CONJUGATION

Conjugation of *moror*, *delay*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *moror*, *morārī*, *morātus***183. INDICATIVE****184. SUBJUNCTIVE**

PRESENT

I delay, am delaying, do delay

- Sg. 1. *moror*
 2. *morāris*, *re*
 3. *morātur*

morer
morēris, *re*
morētur

- Pl. 1. *morāmur*
 2. *morāmini*
 3. *morantur*

morēmur
morēmini
morentur

IMPERFECT

I was delaying, delayed, did delay

- Sg. 1. *morābar*
 2. *morābāris*, *re*
 3. *morābātur*

morārer
morārēris, *re*
morārētur

- Pl. 1. *morābāmur*
 2. *morābāmini*
 3. *morābantur*

morārēmur
morārēmini
morārentur

FUTURE

I shall delay, will delay

- Sg. 1. *morābor*
 2. *morāberis*, *re*
 3. *morābitur*

- Pl. 1. *morābimur*
 2. *morābimini*
 3. *morābuntur*

PERFECT

I have delayed, delayed, did delay

- Sg. 1. *morātus*, *a*, *um* *sum*
 2. *es*
 3. *est*

morātus, *a*, *um* *sim*
sis
sit

Pl. 1.	morāti, ae, a	sumus	morāti, ae, a	sīmus
2.		estis		sītis
3.		sunt		sint

PLUPERFECT

I had delayed

Sg. 1.	morātus, a, um	eram	morātus, a, um	essem
2.		erās		essēs
3.		erat		esset
Pl. 1.	morāti, ae, a	erāmus	morāti, ae, a	essēmus
2.		erātis		essētis
3.		erant		essent

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall (will) have delayed

Sg. 1.	morātus, a, um	erō
2.		eris
3.		erit
Pl. 1.	morāti, ae, a	erimus
2.		eritis
3.		erunt

185.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

FUTURE

Sg. 1.	_____	_____
2.	morāre, delay	morātor, you shall delay
3.	_____	morātor, he shall delay
Pl. 1.	_____	_____
2.	morāmini, delay	_____
3.	_____	morantur, they shall delay

186.

INFINITIVE

PRES. morārī, to delay

FUT. morātūrus, a, um esse, to be about to delay

PERF. morātus, a, um esse, to have delayed

187.

SUPINE

ACC. morātum, to delay, for delaying

ABL. morātū, to delay, in the delaying

188.

PARTICIPLES

PRES. morāns, antis, delaying (79)

FUT. morātūrus, a, um, about to delay (71, a)

PERF. morātus, a, um, having delayed (71, a)

189.

GERUNDIVE

morandus, a, um, (one) to be delayed, about to be delayed (71, a)

190.

GERUND

GEN. morandī, of delaying

II. SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Synopsis of *fateor*, confess; *sequor*, follow; *patior*, endure; *experior*, try

191.

INDICATIVE

PRES.	fateor	sequor	patior	experior
	fatēris, etc.	sequeris	pateris	experiris
IMPERF.	fatēbar	sequēbar	patiēbar	experīēbar
FUT.	fatēbor	sequar	patiar	experiar
PERF.	fassus sum	secūtus sum	passus sum	expertus sum
PLUPERF.	fassus eram	secūtus eram	passus eram	expertus eram
FUT. PERF.	fassus erō	secūtus erō	passus erō	expertus erō

192.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	fatear	sequar	patiar	experiar
	fateāris, etc.	sequāris	patiāris	experiāris
IMPERF.	fatērer	sequerer	paterer	experirer
PERF.	fassus sim	secūtus sim	passus sim	expertus sim
PLUPERF.	fassus essem	secūtus essem	passus essem	expertus essem

193.

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fatēre	sequere	patere	experire
FUT.	fatētor	sequitor	patitor	experitor

194.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	fatēri	sequi	pati	experiri
FUT.	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	passūrus esse	expertūrus esse
PERF.	fassus esse	secūtus esse	passus esse	expertus esse

195.

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	fatēns	sequēns	patiēns	experiēns
FUT.	fassūrus	secūtūrus	passūrus	expertūrus
PERF.	fassus	secūtus	passus	expertus

196.

GERUND

fatendī	sequendī	patiendī	experiendī
---------	----------	----------	------------

197.

GERUNDIVE

fatendus	sequendus	patiendus	experiendus
----------	-----------	-----------	-------------

198.

SUPINE

fassum	secūtum	passum	expertum
fassū	secūtū	passū	expertū

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

199. The periphrastic conjugation arises from the combination of the future participle active and passive (the gerundive) with forms of the verb *sum*.

- a. The active periphrastic denotes something about to take place.
- b. The passive periphrastic denotes necessity or duty.

200.*ACTIVE*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	<i>parātūrus (a, um) sum, am about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus (a, um) sim</i>
IMPERF.	<i>parātūrus eram, was about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus essem</i>
FUT.	<i>parātūrus erō, shall be about to prepare</i>	
PERF.	<i>parātūrus fui, have been, was, about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus fuerim</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>parātūrus fueram, had been about to prepare</i>	<i>parātūrus fuissem</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>parātūrus fuerō, shall have been about to prepare</i>	

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>parātūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to prepare</i>
PERF.	<i>parātūrus (a, um) fuisse, to have been about to prepare</i>

201.*PASSIVE*

PRES.	<i>parandus (a, um) sum, have to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared</i>	<i>parandus (a, um) sim</i>
IMPERF.	<i>parandus eram, had to be prepared; ought to be, must be prepared</i>	<i>parandus essem, forem</i>
FUT.	<i>parandus erō, shall have to be prepared</i>	
PERF.	<i>parandus fui, have had to be prepared</i>	<i>parandus fuerim</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>parandus fueram, had had to be prepared</i>	<i>parandus fuissem</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>parandus fuerō, shall have had to be prepared</i>	

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>parandus (a, um) esse, to have to be prepared</i>
PERF.	<i>parandus fuisse, to have had to be prepared</i>

202. Irregular Imperatives: Four verbs, *dicō, say, dūcō, lead, faciō, do, make, ferō, bear*, form the present imperative active *dic, dūc, fac, fer*. But in early Latin *dīce, dūce, face* are common. The compounds follow the usage of the simple verbs, except prepositional compounds of *faciō*. *Sciō, know*, lacks the present imperative *sci*.

203. Gerunds and Gerundives. The older ending of the gerund and gerundive in the third and fourth conjugations was *undus*; and *endus* was found only after *u*. In classical times *undus* is frequent, especially in verbs of the third and fourth conjugations; later, *endus* is the regular form.

204. 1. **Syncopated and Shorter Forms.** The perfects in *āvi*, *ēvi*, *ivī* often drop the *v* before *s* or *r* and contract the vowels throughout, except those in *ivī*, which admit the contraction only before *s*. These forms are called syncopated. They are found in all periods, and in the poets are used to suit the meter.

PERFECT		
INDIC. Sg.	1. _____	_____
	2. <i>parāvisti</i> , <i>parāsti</i>	<i>audivisti</i> , <i>audisti</i>
	3. _____	_____
Pl.	1. _____	_____
	2. <i>parāvistis</i> , <i>parāstis</i>	<i>audivistis</i> , <i>audistis</i>
	3. <i>parāvērunt</i> , <i>parārunt</i>	<i>audivērunt</i> , <i>audiērunt</i>
SUBJ.	<i>parāverim</i> , <i>parārim</i> etc.	<i>audiverim</i> , <i>audierim</i> etc.

PLUPERFECT		
INDIC.	<i>parāveram</i> , <i>parāram</i> etc.	<i>audiveram</i> , <i>audieram</i> etc.
SUBJ.	<i>parāvissem</i> , <i>parāssem</i> etc.	<i>audivissem</i> , <i>audissem</i> etc.

FUTURE PERFECT		
INDIC.	<i>parāverō</i> , <i>parārō</i> etc.	<i>audiverō</i> , <i>audierō</i> etc.

INFINITIVE		
PERF.	<i>parāvisse</i> , <i>parāsse</i>	<i>audivisse</i> , <i>audisse</i>

2. In the first and third persons singular and in the first person plural of the perfect, syncope occurs regularly only in perfects in *ivī*, and there is no contraction. It is most common in the perfects of *eō*, *go*, and *petō*, *seek*. The unsyncopated forms are always common except those of *eō*, which are very rare in good prose, but occur more often in the poets for metrical reasons.

3. *nōvī*, *I know*, and *mōvī*, *I have moved*, are also contracted, especially in their compounds.

Sg. 2. *nōsti*. Pl. 2. *nōstis*. 3. *nōrunt*. Subj. *nōrim*, etc. Pluperf. *nōram*, etc. Subj. *nōssem*, etc. Inf. *nōsse*.

But the future perfect *nōrō* is found only in compounds.

a. Similar contractions are seen in *mōvī*, but not so often.

4. The shorter form of the ending of the perfect active indicative third plural, *ēre* instead of *ērunt*, and of the second singular, *re* instead of *ris*, is often found. Thus *amāvēre* = *amāvērunt*, *they have loved*, and *amābāre* = *amābāris*, *you were loved*.

SEMIDEPONENTS

205. 1. A few verbs form the perfect forms only as deponents:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*
 fidō, fidere, fisis sum, *trust*
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, *rejoice*
 soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*

IRREGULAR VERBS

206. Irregular in the conjugation of the present stem are:

1. orior, oriri, ortus, *arise*

The present indicative is usually formed according to the third conjugation; the imperfect subjunctive is always **orerer**; but the future participle is **oritūrus**. The compounds follow the same usage except **adoriri**, *rise up at, attack*, which follows the fourth conjugation.

2. eō, *go*.

The stem is *i*, which, before *a, o, u*, becomes *e*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ivi (ii), itus

207. INDICATIVE

PRES. Sg.	1. eō, <i>I go</i>
	2. is
	3. it
Pl.	1. imus
	2. itis
	3. eunt
IMPERF.	ibam, <i>I went</i>
FUT.	ibō, <i>I shall go</i>
PERF.	ivi (ii), <i>I have gone</i>
PLUPERF.	iveram (ieram), <i>I had gone</i>

208. SUBJUNCTIVE

eam
eās
eat
eāmus
eātis
eant
irem
iverim (ierim)
ivissem (issem)

209.

IMPERATIVE

Sg.	1. ———	—————
	2. i, <i>go</i>	itō, <i>you shall go</i>
	3. ———	itō, <i>he shall go</i>
Pl.	1. ———	—————
	2. ite, <i>go</i>	itōte, <i>you shall go</i>
	3. ———	euntō, <i>they shall go</i>

210. INFINITIVE

PRES.	ire
FUT.	itūrus esse
PERF.	ivisse (isse)

211. PARTICIPLES

PRES.	iēns (<i>Gen. euntis</i>)
FUT.	itūrus

212. GERUND

eundi, etc.

213. SUPINE

itum, *to go*

a. Like the simple verb are inflected most of the compounds, except in the perfect system, where **ii** is the regular form. **Vēneō**, *be for sale*, and **pereō**, *perish*, serve as passives to **vendō**, *sell*, and **perdō**, *destroy*. **Ambiō**, *solicit*, follows the fourth conjugation throughout.

b. The passive of the simple verb **eō** is found only in the impersonal forms **itur**, **ibātur**, **itum est**, **iri** (in combination with the supine). But compounds with transitive force are conjugated regularly: so, **praetereō** forms **praetereor**, **iris**, **itur**, **imur**, **imini**, **euntur**, **ibar**, etc.; **itus sum**, **eram**, **erō**, **euntor**, **itor**, **iri**, **eundus**.

3. **ferō**, *bear*.

The endings beginning with **t**, **s**, and **r** are added directly to the root, **fer**.

a. Some forms of **ferō** are lacking and are supplied by **tul** and **(t)lā**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**

ACTIVE

214. INDICATIVE

PRES. Sg. 1. **ferō**, *I bear*
 2. **fers**
 3. **fert**

Pl. 1. **ferimus**
 2. **fertis**
 3. **ferunt**

IMPERF. **ferēbam**, *I was bearing*
 FUT. **feram**, *I shall bear*
 PERF. **tulī**, *I have borne*
 PLUPERF. **tuleram**, *I had borne*
 FUT. PERF. **tulerō**, *I shall have borne*

215. SUBJUNCTIVE

feram
ferās
ferat

ferāmus
ferātis
ferant

ferem

tulerim
tulissem

216.

IMPERATIVE

Sg. 1. _____
 2. **fer**, *bear*
 3. _____

Pl. 1. _____
 2. **ferte**, *bear*
 3. _____

fertō, *you shall bear*
fertō, *he shall bear*

fertōte, *you shall bear*
feruntō, *they shall bear*

217. INFINITIVE

PRES. **ferre**
 FUT. **lātūrus esse**
 PERF. **tulisse**

218. PARTICIPLES

ferēns, **ferentis**, *bearing*

lātūrus

219. GERUND

ferendī, etc.

220. SUPINE

lātum, **lātū**

PASSIVE

221. INDICATIVE

PRES.	Sg.	1. <i>feror, I am borne</i>
		2. <i>ferris</i>
		3. <i>fertur</i>
	Pl.	1. <i>ferimur</i>
		2. <i>ferimini</i>
		3. <i>feruntur</i>
IMPERF.		<i>ferēbar</i>
FUT.		<i>ferar</i>
PERF.		<i>lātus sum</i>
PLUPERF.		<i>lātus eram</i>
FUT. PERF.		<i>lātus erō</i>

222. SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>ferar</i>
<i>ferāris</i>
<i>ferātur</i>
<i>ferāmur</i>
<i>ferāmini</i>
<i>ferantur</i>
<i>ferer</i>

<i>lātus sim</i>
<i>lātus essem</i>

223.

IMPERATIVE

Sg.	1. _____	_____
	2. <i>ferre, be borne</i>	<i>fertor, you shall be borne</i>
	3. _____	<i>fertor, he shall be borne</i>
Pl.	1. _____	_____
	2. <i>ferimini, be borne</i>	_____
	3. _____	<i>feruntor, they shall be borne</i>

224. INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>ferri, to be borne</i>
FUT.	<i>lātum iri, to be about to be borne</i>
PERF.	<i>lātus esse, to have been borne</i>

225. PARTICIPLES

PERF.	<i>lātus, a, um, borne</i>
-------	----------------------------

226. GERUNDIVE *ferendus, a, um, ought to be borne*4. *fiō, become*

227. **Fiō** is conjugated in the present, imperfect, and future, according to the fourth conjugation, but in the subjunctive imperfect and in the infinitive the stem is increased by **e**; thus, **fierem, fieri, to become**. In these forms the **i** is short, but elsewhere it is long except before final **t**.

The infinitive ends in **ri**, and the whole verb in the present system is treated as the passive of **faciō, do, make** (161-171). The rest of the verb is formed as a regular passive of **faciō**.

228. PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*

PRES. INDIC.	<i>fiō, I am made, I become</i>	SUBJ.	<i>fiam, fiās, fiat, etc.</i>
	<i>fis, fit, fimus, fitis, fiunt</i>		
IMPERF.	<i>fiēbam, I was made, I became</i>		<i>fierem, fierēs, etc.</i>
FUT.	<i>fiam, I shall be made (become)</i>		
PERF.	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim, etc.</i>
PLUPERF.	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem, etc.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>factus erō</i>		

IMPERATIVE

(<i>fi</i>)	(<i>fitō</i>)
(<i>fitō</i>)	

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>fieri, to become</i>
PERF.	<i>factus esse, to have become</i>
FUT.	<i>factum iri, to be about to become</i>

229. When compounded with prepositions, *faciō* changes the *a* of the stem into *i*, and forms the passive in classical Latin regularly from the same stem: *perficiō*, *achieve*; passive, *perficior*; *interficiō*, *destroy*; passive, *interficior*. When compounded with words other than prepositions, *faciō* retains its *a*, and uses *fiō* as its passive: *patefaciō*, *lay open*; passive, *patefiō*; *calefaciō*, *warm*; passive, *calefiō*.

230. *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō*, *be unwilling*; *mālō*, *prefer*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*
nōlō, *nōlle*, *nolui*
mālō, *mālle*, *māluī*

231.

INDICATIVE

PRES.	<i>volō</i> <i>vīs</i> <i>vult</i> <i>volumus</i> <i>vultis</i> <i>volunt</i>	<i>nōlō</i> <i>nōn vīs</i> <i>nōn vult</i> <i>nōlumus</i> <i>nōn vultis</i> <i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālō</i> <i>māvīs</i> <i>māvult</i> <i>mālumus</i> <i>māvultis</i> <i>mālunt</i>
IMPERF.	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
FUT.	<i>volam</i> <i>volēs</i> , etc.	<i>nōlam</i> <i>nōlēs</i> , etc.	<i>mālam</i> <i>mālēs</i> , etc.
PERF.	<i>voluī</i>	<i>nōluī</i>	<i>māluī</i> , etc.
PLUPERF.	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i> , etc.
FUT. PERF.	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>nōluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i> , etc.

232.

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	<i>velim</i> <i>velis</i> <i>velit</i> <i>velimus</i> <i>velitis</i> <i>velint</i>	<i>nōlim</i> <i>nōlis</i> <i>nōlit</i> <i>nōlimus</i> <i>nōlitis</i> <i>nōlint</i>	<i>mālim</i> <i>mālis</i> <i>mālit</i> <i>mālimus</i> <i>mālitis</i> <i>mālint</i>
IMPERF.	<i>vellem</i>	<i>nōllem</i>	<i>māllem</i>
PERF.	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>nōluerim</i>	<i>māluerim</i> , etc.
PLUPERF.	<i>voluissē</i>	<i>nōluissem</i>	<i>māluissem</i> , etc.

233.

IMPERATIVE

Sg. *nōlī*, *nōlitō*
 Pl. *nōlite*, *nōlitōte*, *nōluntō*

234.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	<i>velle</i>	<i>nōlle</i>	<i>mālle</i>
PERF.	<i>voluisse</i>	<i>nōluisse</i>	<i>māluisse</i>

235.

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	<i>volēns</i>	<i>nōlēns</i>	_____
-------	---------------	---------------	-------

PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

236: A verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as **ego vocō, I call; tū vocās, you call.**

a. A collective noun may take its predicate in the plural, as **pars veniunt, part come.**

b. The nearer subject is preferred to the more remote, as **militēs et dux vēnit, the leader and his troops came.**

c. The copula may agree in number with the predicate noun, as **amantium irae amoris integratiō est, lovers' quarrels are love's renewal.** Compare "the wages of sin is death."

237. The adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, as **tālis vir, such a man; tālēs viri, such men; tālia dōna, such gifts.**

238. The common attribute of two or more substantives generally agrees with the nearest, rather than with the most important, as **cūncta maria terraeque patēbant, all seas and lands lay open.**

239. The common predicate attribute of two or more subjects is usually in the plural, as **pater et māter mortuī sunt, father and mother are dead;** but may agree with the nearest or most important, as **Caesar mortuus est et Jūlia, Caesar is dead, and Julia also.**

a. When the persons of the subjects are different, the predicate takes the first in preference to the second; the second in preference to the third.

b. When the genders of the subjects are different, the predicate attribute takes the nearest gender or the strongest (the masculine being the strongest of things with life, the neuter of those without), as **pater et māter mortuī sunt, father and mother are dead; mūrus et porta dē caelō tācta erant, wall and gate had been struck by lightning.**

240. The predicate substantive agrees with its subject in case, as **ille vir erat dux, that man was leader.**

a. The pronoun used as subject is commonly attracted into the gender of the predicate as **negat Epicūrus; hoc enim vestrum lūmen est, Epicurus says No; for he is your great light!**

241. The appositive agrees with its subject in case; if possible, also in number and person, as **Aēneās, pius dux, Aeneas, the devoted leader; Aēneās et Didō, superbī ducēs, Aeneas and Dido, proud leaders.**

242. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, as *vir quī adest*, *the man who is present*; *dōna quae adsunt*, *the gifts which are here*; *ego quī hoc dicō*, *I who say this*.

a. Occasionally the antecedent is attracted into the case of the relative, as *urbem quam statuō vestra est*, *the city which I am founding is yours*.

243. Poetic Plural. The plural is often used instead of the singular, especially in poetry, to generalize a statement, for metrical reasons, or for rhetorical effect, as *irae*, *wrath, wrathful passions*; *fortitūdīnēs*, *gallant actions*; *ōra*, *face, features*; *scēptra*, *scepter*; *silentia*, *silence*.

a. **Plural of Modesty.** The plural of the first person is sometimes used instead of the singular, as *diximus multa*, *we (I) have spoken much*. Similarly *nōs* in all its cases for *ego*, etc., and *noster* in all its forms for *meus*, etc. This usage in English is sometimes called the "editorial we."

244. Disproportion is indicated by the comparative with *quam prō*, *than for*; *quam ut*, *than that*; *quam quī*, *than who*; as *minor caedēs quam prō tantā victoriā fuit*, *the loss was (too) small for so great a victory*; *major sum quam cui fortūna nocēre possit*, *I am too great for fortune possibly to hurt me*.

245. In comparing two qualities, use either *magis quam* with the positive, as *disertus magis est quam sapiēns*, *he is eloquent rather than wise (more eloquent than wise)*; or a double comparative, *acūtīorem sē quam ornātīorem vult*, *he wishes to be acute rather than ornate*.

246. Superlatives denoting order and sequence are often used partitionatively and then usually precede their substantives, as *summa aqua*, *the surface (of the) water*; *summus mōns*, *the top (of the) mountain*; *primō vĕre*, *in the beginning (of) spring*. Similarly in *mediā urbe*, *in the midst of the city*; *reliqua, cētera Graecia*, *the rest of Greece, and the like*.

PRONOUNS

247. Since the form of the verb indicates its person, the nominative of the personal pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast, as *ego rēgēs ējēcī*, *vōs tyrannōs intrōdūxistī*, *I drove out kings; you bring in tyrants*.

a. The forms *meī*, *tuī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī* are used as objective genitives; *nostrum* and *vestrum* as partitive genitives (284, 286).

248. The reflexive is used regularly when reference is made to the grammatical subject, as *ipse sē quisque diligit, quod sibi quisque cārus est*, *every one loves himself, because every one is dear to himself*.

a. The reflexive is sometimes used when reference is made to the logical subject, as *ferunt sua flāmina classem*, *their own (favorable) breezes waft the fleet*.

b. The reflexive is used of the principal subject when reference is made to the thought or will of that subject, especially in indirect discourse or in substantive volitive clauses (clauses of desire), as **sentit animus sē vī suā movērī**, *the mind feels that it moves by its own force*; **ā mē petivit ut sēcum essem**, *he asked me to be with him*; **librōs quōs frāter suus reliquisset mihi dōnāvit**, *he gave me the books (as he said) that his brother had left*.

249. The possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive of the first and second person pronouns, as **socius meus**, *a comrade of mine*; **tēlum tuum**, *a weapon of yours*; **amor meus**, *my love (which I feel)*; **spēs tua**, *your hope (which you have)*.

a. The appositive to a possessive adjective is in the genitive, as **urbs meā ūnius operā fuit salva**, *the city was saved by my exertions alone*.

ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

250. With words of inclination and disinclination, knowledge and ignorance, order and position, time and season, the adjective is commonly employed for the adverb, as **id faciō volēns**, *I do this willing(ly)*.

SPECIAL USE OF MOODS

251. The Indicative, not the subjunctive, is commonly used to express possibility, power, obligation, and necessity, as **possum persequī permulta oblētamenta rērum rūsticārum**, *I might rehearse very many delights of country life*; **ad mortem tē dūcī oportēbat**, *you ought to have been led to execution*.

252. The Potential Subjunctive. The present or perfect subjunctive may be used to express possibility in the present or future, as **tē superesse velim**, *I should like for you to survive*; **Platōnem nōn nimis valdē laudāveris**, *you can't praise Plato too much*; the imperfect subjunctive to express possibility in the past, **crēderēs victōs**, *you would (might) have thought them beaten*.

253. The Optative Subjunctive. The subjunctive, sometimes with **utinam**, *would that*, is often used in expressions of wishing. The negative is **nē**. **Valeās**, *farewell!* **nē veniant**, *may they not come!* **utinam nē nātus essem**, *would that I had not been born!* **utinam viveret frāter**, *would that my brother were alive!*

254. The Volitive Subjunctive. The subjunctive may be used in expressions of will, asseveration, command, or concession, as **stet haec urbs**, *may this city continue to stand*; **moriar sī magis gaudērem**, *may I die if I could be more glad*; **amēmus patriam**, *let us love our country*; **sit deus**, *granted that he is a god*. This subjunctive is often called jussive, hortatory,

or concessive, according as it expresses a command, an exhortation, or a concession, respectively.

255. The present imperative looks forward to immediate, the future imperative to contingent, fulfilment, as **haec dīcite vestrō rēgī**, *tell this to your king*; **cōsulēs nēmīni pārentō**, *the consuls shall obey no one*.

256. The negative of the imperative is regularly **nōlī** with the infinitive; as **nōlī fugere**, *don't flee!* sometimes **nē** or **cavē** (**nē**) with the present or perfect subjunctive is also used, as **cavē** (**nē**) **faciās**, *don't do it!* **nē mortem timeās** (or **timueritis**), *don't fear death!*

a. In poetry **nē** is often found with the imperative, as **nē timē**, *fear not!* **nē fuge**, *don't run!*

INFINITIVES

257. The Historical Infinitive. The present infinitive, with the subject in the nominative, is sometimes used to give a rapid sequence of events, as **hinc Ulixēs terrēre**, *henceforth Ulysses began to frighten (me)*. This is called the historical infinitive.

258. The Infinitive as Neuter Subject. The infinitive with or without a subject may be treated as a neuter subject, object, or predicate, as **dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī**, *it is sweet and glorious to die for one's fatherland*; **turpe est vinci**, *it is shameful to be conquered*; **scit vincere**, *he knows (how) to conquer*; **vivere est cōgitāre**, *to live is to think, living is thinking*.

259. The Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive is used with verbs of will, desire, power, duty, habit, inclination, resolve, continuance, purpose, etc., as **cupit morī**, *he wishes to die*; **dēbet haec vulnera patī**, *he ought to suffer these wounds*. This is called the complementary infinitive.

260. The Infinitive as Object. The accusative with infinitive is used as the object of verbs of emotion, will, and desire; as **tē vēnisse gaudeō**, *I rejoice that you have come*; **mē dicere vult**, *he wishes me to speak*.

261. The Infinitive of Purpose. In poetry the infinitive is often used to express purpose, as **nōn populāre vēnimus**, *we have not come to pillage*.

262. The Infinitive of Exclamation. The infinitive with accusative subject is used in exclamation or exclamatory questions, as **mē dēsistere**, *what! I desist?*

263. The Infinitive of Indirect Statement (Indirect Discourse). The infinitive is used after verbs of saying, showing, believing, and perceiving, to express an indirect statement; the present infinitive expresses action contemporary with that of the governing verb, the perfect infinitive action

prior to it, the future infinitive action future to it, as **dicīt tē errāre**, *he says that you are wrong*; **dicēbat tē errāre**, *he was saying that you were wrong*; **dicēbat tē errāsse**, *he was saying that you had been wrong*.

a. The future infinitive of **sum** followed by **ut** and the subjunctive is used in indirect statement of future action when the verb has no future participle, as **dicīt fore (futūrum esse) ut metuās**, *he says that you will fear*.

264. The Infinitive with Nouns. The poets and later prose writers use the infinitive with nouns denoting attention or opportunity, as **amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs**, *desire to know our misfortunes*; **adfectāre potestās**, *opportunity to seize*.

265. The Infinitive with Adjectives. The infinitive is used with many adjectives and with participles of adjectival force, as **nescia vinci pectora**, *hearts not knowing (how) to yield*; **certa mori**, *determined to die*.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

266. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive is used chiefly after substantives and adjectives that require a complement, as **sapientia ars vivendi putanda est**, *philosophy is to be considered the art of living*; **nūlla spēs plācandī dei**, *no hope of appeasing god*; **cupidus maledicendī**, *eager to abuse*.

267. The dative of the gerund or gerundive is used mainly in post-classical Latin after words of fitness and function; also after words of capacity and adaptation, and to express purpose, as **tēla apta mittendō**, *weapons suitable for hurling*; **comitia cōsulibus creandīs**, *elections for nominating consuls*.

268. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used with **ad** to express purpose, as **ad bellandum venimus**, *we come to make war*.

a. The accusative of the gerundive is used in agreement with the direct object of verbs of giving, sending, and leaving, etc., to indicate purpose, as **id mihi servandum dedit**, *he gave it to me to keep*; **Conōn mūrōs reficiendōs cūrat**, *Conon has the walls rebuilt*; **patriam diripiendam reliquimus**, *we have left our country to be plundered*.

269. The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used to denote means and cause, rarely manner, as **ūnus homō nōbīs cūntandō restituit rem**, *one man by delaying raised our cause again*.

SUPINES

270. The supine in **um** (accusative) is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose, as **veniunt spectātum**, *they come to see*.

271. The supine in **ū** (ablative) is used chiefly with adjectives to indicate respect, as **mirābile dictū**, *wonderful to relate (in the relating)*; **mirābile visū**, *wonderful to see (in the seeing)*.

PARTICIPLES

272. The Present Participle denotes continuance; the perfect participle denotes completion at the time of the principal verb.

273. The participle is used after verbs of perception and representation to express the actual condition of the object at the time, as **Catōnem vidī in bibliothēcā sedentem multis circumfūsum libris**, *I saw Cato sitting in the library with an ocean of books about him*; **illam audivī fūrtivā vōce loquentem**, *I heard her talking in a stealthy tone*.

274. The Future Participle is used in poetry and occasionally in prose to express desire or purpose, as **fabricāta est māchina inspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsūper urbī**, *it has been built as an engine of war, to spy into our homes and come down upon the city from above*.

275. The Perfect Participle passive is used after verbs of causation and desire, to denote that entire fulfilment is demanded or desired, as **sī quī voluptātibus dūcuntur, missōs faciant honōrēs**, *if any are led captive by sensual pleasures, let them give up honors (at once and forever)*.

CASES

NOMINATIVE

276. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, as **urbs stat**, *the city is standing*.

277. The subject of a historical infinitive is in the nominative, as **Ulixēs terrēre**, *Ulysses began to terrorize (me)*.

278. The predicate of a finite form of the verb *to be*, **sum**, or of a verb of seeming or becoming, or of the passive of a verb of making, choosing, showing, thinking, or calling, is in the nominative, as **pater est rēx**, *his father is king*; **pater fit rēx**, *his father becomes king*; **pater vocātur rēx**, *his father is called king*.

279. When an active verb of saying, showing, believing, or perceiving, is changed to the passive, the accusative subject of the infinitive may become the nominative subject of the leading verb, as **urbs dicitur magna fuisse**, *the city is said to have been great*. Compare **dicunt urbem fuisse magnam**, *they say that the city was great*.

GENITIVE

280. Genitive of Material. The genitive may be used to denote the material or substance of which a thing consists, as **flūmina lactis**, *rivers of milk*. See 324 for the ablative of material.

281. The Appositional Genitive is used with *vōx*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, *rēs*, *urbs*, etc., as *nōmen amicitiae*, *the name of friendship*; *urbem Patavī*, *the city of Patavium*.

282. The Epexegetical Genitive (or genitive of explanation) is used after *genus*, *vitium*, *culpa*, etc., as *virtūtēs continentiae*, *gravitātis*, *jūstitiae*, *fidei*, *the virtues of self-control, earnestness, justice, honor*.

283. The Possessive Genitive is used to denote possession, as *domus rēgis*, *the palace of the king, the king's palace*.

284. The Subjective Genitive is used of the subject of the action indicated by the substantive; **the Objective Genitive**, of the object of that action, as *metus hostium*, *the fear of the enemy*, which may mean: (1) the fear which the enemy feel (subjective genitive) or (2) the fear felt toward the enemy (objective genitive). The objective genitive is used with nouns, adjectives, and participles used as adjectives, as *cupīdō glōriae*, *desire for glory*; *tempestātum potentem*, *ruling the storms*; *memorem vestri*, *oblitum sui*, *mindful of you, forgetful of himself*.

285. Genitive of Quality. The genitive with an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing, as *homō maximī corporis*, *a man of gigantic size*. This is called the genitive of quality (characteristic, description). Compare the ablative of quality or characteristic (330).

a. The genitive of quality (or description) or the possessive genitive may be used as a predicate, as *id virtūtis est*, *that is a mark of virtue*; *hujus erō vivus, mortuus hujus erō*, *hers I shall be living; dead, hers shall I be*; *haec domus est patris mei*, *this house is my father's*.

286. The Partitive Genitive stands for the whole to which a part belongs, as *pars hominum*, *part of the men*; *maximus omnium*, *greatest of all*. This is sometimes called the genitive of the whole.

287. Genitive with Special Adjectives and Verbs. Adjectives and verbs of fullness and want, of knowledge and ignorance, of desire and disgust, of participation and power, may take the genitive. Also some present participles used as adjectives, and in later Latin some verbals in *āx*, as *plēnus labōris*, *full of toil*; *egēnus omnium*, *in need of everything*; *cōnsciū rēcti*, *conscious of right*; *ignārus malī*, *ignorant of misfortune*; *cupīdus aurī*, *desirous of gold*; *diligēns vērī*, *careful (a lover of) the truth*; *capāx imperī*, *capable of empire*; *implentur veteris Bacchī*, *they fill themselves with old wine*.

288. Genitive with Verbs. Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting usually take the genitive, as *meminit malōrum*, *oblītus est bonōrum*, *he remembers the evil, forgets the good*.

a. Sometimes these verbs take the accusative, especially of things, as *haec ōlim meminisse juvābit*, *to remember these things will one day be a pleasure*.

289. Verbs of Emotion take the genitive, as *miserēre animī nōn digna ferentis*, *pity a soul enduring what it does not deserve*.

290. Impersonal verbs of emotion take the accusative of the person who feels, and the genitive of the exciting cause, as *tui mē miseret, mei piget*, *I pity you, I loathe myself*.

291. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting take the genitive of the charge, as *accūsātus est prōditiōnis*, *he was accused of treason*; *damnātus est caedis*, *he was convicted of murder*; *absolutus est criminis*, *he was acquitted of the charge*.

292. Genitive of Value. Verbs of rating and buying take the genitive of the general value, as *parvī existimāre*, *to consider of small account*; *ēmīt equōs tantī quantī Caesar voluit*, *he bought the horses at the price Caesar wanted*.

293. Interest and *rēfert* take the genitive of the person, rarely of the thing concerned, as *interest omnium rēctē facere*, *it is to the interest of all to do right*; *rēfert omnium*, *it concerns everybody*.

a. Sometimes the ablative singular feminine of the possessive adjective is used, as *meā interest, meā rēfert*, *I am concerned*.

294. Genitive of Respect. The genitive is used with various adjectives to denote the respect to which a thing is true, as *aeger animī*, *sick at heart*. This is sometimes called the genitive of specification.

DATIVE

295. The Indirect Object is put in the dative, as *aurum hominī dat*, *he gives gold to the man*.

296. Some verbs of giving take either the dative and the accusative, or the accusative and the ablative, as *hominī aurum dōnat*, *he presents the gold to the man*; *hominem aurō dōnat*, *he presents the man with gold*.

297. Dative with Special Verbs. Many verbs meaning favor, help, trust, bid and forbid, believe, persuade, obey, serve, threaten, pardon, spare, join, and contend, take the dative, as *invidēō nēmīnī*, *I envy no one*; *cēdit fortūnae*, *he yields to fortune*; *id mihi placet*, *that pleases me*; *pārēmus ducī*, *we obey our leader*; *crēdit hominī*, *he trusts the man*.

298. Dative with Compounds. Many intransitive verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super*, may take a

dative, as *accēdō equō*, *I approach the horse*; *antecellit omnibus*, *he excels all*; *nox incubat mari*, *night broods over the sea*; *piger ipse sibi obstat*, *the lazy man stands in his own way*.

a. Transitive verbs so compounded also take an accusative, as *mē vestrīs ōrīs deus appulit*, *god drove me to your shores*.

299. Dative of Possession. The dative is used with *esse* to denote possession, as *est ager nobīs*, *we have a field*.

300. The Ethical Dative is used of the personal pronouns only, as *ecce tibi homō*, *here's your man!* *tibi bellum geret*, *he shall wage war (for you, let me tell you)*.

301. The Dative of Reference is used of the person interested or concerned in the action or of the person to whom a statement is referred, as *deō altāria fūmant*, *the altars smoke in honor of the god*; *pulchra est multis*, *she is beautiful to many (in the eyes of many)*; *est urbe ēgressis tumulus*, *as you go out of town (to those who have gone out of town) there is a mound*. This is also called the dative of interest, and at times is called the dative of advantage and of disadvantage.

302. The Dative of Agent is used with a passive verb, especially with the gerundive, as *id faciendum mihi*, *this must be done by me, I must do this*; *vetor fātis*, *I am forbidden by the fates*; *urbs capta est mihi*, *the city was captured by me*.

303. Dative of Purpose. The dative may denote the object for which (purpose), as *pars optāre locum tēctō*, *part were choosing a site for a home*.

a. The Dative of Purpose is often used in combination with the dative of reference (301), as *auxiliō iīs fuit*, *he was a help to them*; *id erit cūrae mihi*, *that shall be my care*.

304. Dative with Adjectives. Adjectives of friendliness, fullness, likeness, nearness, with their opposites, take the dative, as *similis est hominī*, *he is like a man*; *homō amicus est mihi*, *the man is friendly to me*; *id erit ūtile omnibus*, *this will be useful to all*; *proximus sum egomet mihi*, *myself am nearest to me*.

305. Dative of Separation. Many verbs of warding off, robbing, and ridding, depriving, and separation take a dative, especially in poetry, as *ēripiēs mihi hunc errōrem*, *you will rid me of this mistake*; *silicī scintillam excūdit*, *he strikes a spark from the flint*. This is called the dative of separation.

306. Dative of Direction. In poetry the place to which, or limit of motion, is often expressed by the dative, as *it clāmor caelō*, *a shout goes to heaven*; *multōs dēmittimus Orcō*, *we send many to Hades*.

ACCUSATIVE

307. The Direct Object of active transitive verbs is in the accusative case and may denote either the object effected or the object affected, as *bellum gerunt*, *they wage war* (object effected or result produced); *condidit urbem*, *he founds the city* (object effected); *capit urbem*, *he captures the city* (object affected); *rēx dūcit hominēs*, *the king leads the men* (object affected).

308. Accusative with Compounds. Many intransitive verbs, mostly those of motion, compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *praeter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, and *trāns*, take the accusative, as *adit urbem*, *he approaches the city*; *poenam subit*, *he submits to punishment*.

a. Transitive verbs thus compounded may have two accusatives, as *exercitum flūmen trājēcit*, *he threw his army across the river*.

309. In poetry the passive is often used in a reflexive or middle sense, as *fertur in hostis*, *he charges upon the enemy*.

a. When thus used the verb may take an accusative as a direct object, as *ferrum cingitur*, *he girds on* (*girds himself with*) *the steel*; *sinūs collēcta*, *having gathered her robes*; *tūnsae pectora*, *beating their breasts*; *insternor umerōs*, *I spread over my shoulders*.

310. The accusative and ablative of certain adjectives are used adverbially, as *multum jactātus*, *much tossed*; *primō*, *at first*. See 93-94.

311. Accusative of Respect. In poetry the accusative is often used with an adjective or verb to denote the part concerned, as *nūda genū*, *with knee bare* (*bare as to her knee*); *ōs umerōsque deō similis*, *like a god in* (*as to*) *face and shoulders*. This is called the accusative of respect or specification.

312. Accusative with Prepositions. The accusative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

ante, *apud*, *ad*, *adversum*
circum, *cis*, *ob*, *trāns*, *secundum*
penes, *pōne*, *prope*, *per*,
post, and all in *-ā*, and *-ter*.¹

313. Cognate Accusative. Intransitive verbs may take an accusative of similar form or meaning, as *dum vitam vivās*, *as long as you live*; *somnium somniāvī*, *I dreamed a dream*. This is called a cognate accusative.

314. Accusative of Extent. The accusative may express extent in space, time, or degree, as *tumulum centum pedēs altum*, *a mound one hundred feet high*; *fuit rēx decem annōs*, *he was king ten years*; *sī mē amās tantum quantum tē amō*, *if you love me as I love you*. This is called

¹ Observe the metrical form of these four lines.

the accusative of extent. With expressions of time this is often called the accusative of duration of time.

315. Place Whither (place to which) is regularly denoted by the accusative with the preposition **ad** or **in**, as **vēnit ad Italiam**, *he came to Italy*. This is sometimes called the accusative of limit of motion.

a. The names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs**, do not ordinarily take the preposition, as **vēnit Rōmam**, *he came to Rome*; **pater, veni domum**, *father, come home!* **fugiunt rūs**, *they flee to the country*.

b. In poetry also the preposition is often omitted, as **Ītaliā Lāvīnaque vēnit litora**, *he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores*.

316. Two Accusatives. Verbs meaning to inquire, require, teach, and conceal take two accusatives, one of the person, one of the thing, as **quis tē illud docuit**, *who taught you that?* **Milēsiōs nāvem poposcit**, *he demanded a ship of the Milesians*; **quid mē istud rogās**, *why do you ask me that?*

a. Verbs of naming, making, taking, choosing, and showing, take two accusatives of the same person or thing, as **vocant urbem Rōmam**, *they call the city Rome*; **illum rēgem faciunt**, *they make him king*.

317. The Subject of the Infinitive is regularly in the accusative, as **vult mē dicere**, *he wishes me to speak*.

a. A predicate noun in such an infinitive phrase agrees with the subject, as **volunt eum rēgem esse**, *they wish him to be king*.

318. Accusative of Exclamation. The accusative may be used in exclamations, as **mē miserum**, *poor me!* **prō deum fidem**, *for heaven's sake!*

ABLATIVE

319. Place Where is denoted by the ablative, usually with **in**, as **in altō et in terris**, *on sea and on land*.

a. With names of towns and small islands the locative is used to express place where, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. See 345.

b. In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **terrā marique**, *on land and sea*; **Ītaliā**, *in Italy*; **litore**, *on the shore*; **pectore**, *in his heart*.

320. Place Whence is denoted by the ablative, usually with **ex**, **dē**, or **ab**, as **ex marī**, *out of the sea*.

a. With names of towns, small islands, **domō**, *from home*, and with **rūre**, *from the country*, the preposition is regularly omitted, as **Karthāgine**, *from Carthage*.

b. In poetry the preposition is often omitted, as **venit (ex) Ītaliā**, *he comes from Italy*.

321. Ablative of Accompaniment. Accompaniment (attendance) is denoted by the ablative with **cum**, as **venit cum sociīs**, *he comes with his comrades*.

a. With *mē, tē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quā, quibus*, the preposition *cum* is regularly appended, as *mēcum*, *with me*; *tēcum*, *with you*; *sēcum*, *with him(self), with them(selves)*.

322. Time When or Within Which is denoted by the ablative, as *urbem cēpit nocte*, *he captured the city at night*; *nocte pluit tōtā*, *it rains all night*.

323. Origin (source or descent) is denoted by the ablative with or without *ex* or *dē*, as *nātus deā*, *born of a goddess (goddess-born)*; *ex mē atque ex hōc nātus es*, *you are his son and mine*.

324. Ablative of Material. Material is denoted by the ablative, usually with *ex*, as *domus facta ex saxō*, *ex ferrō*, *a house made of stone, of iron*; *aere clipeus*, *a shield of bronze*. See 280 for the genitive of material.

325. Ablative of Respect. The respect in which a verb, adjective, or noun is to be taken is denoted by the ablative, as *sunt quidam hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine*, *some people are human beings not in fact (reality), but in name (only)*. This is sometimes called the ablative of specification.

326. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative, usually with *dē* or *ex*, is used to express that in accordance with which a thing is done or judged, as *ex senātūs cōsultō*, *in accordance with the decree of the senate*.

a. With certain words accordance is usually expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as *cōnsuetūdine suā*, *according to his custom*; *tuō cōsiliō*, *in accordance with your plan*; *meā sententiā*, *in my opinion*.

327. Ablative with Comparatives. Comparatives without *quam* are followed by the ablative, as *exēgī monumentum aere perennius*, *I have erected a monument more enduring than bronze*; *Ō mātrem pulchrā filiā pulchrior*, *O daughter fairer than a mother fair!*

328. Ablative of Manner. Manner is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective or with *cum*, as *cum virtūte vivere*, *to live virtuously*; *id fecit magnā cum cūrā*, *he did it very carefully*.

a. The simple ablative of certain nouns may be used to denote manner, as *cāsū*, *by chance*; *vī*, *by force*.

329. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. Attendant circumstance, situation, or result may be expressed by the ablative, usually with a modifier, and without a preposition, but sometimes with *cum*, as *magnō intervallō*, *at a great distance*; *frequentissimō senātū*, *at a crowded meeting of the senate*; *imperio suō*, *under his full power*; *clāmōre*, *with shouting*; *cum tuā perniciē*, *with (to) your destruction*; *magnō (cum) dolōre omnium*, *to the great grief of all*.

330. Ablative of Quality. Quality or description is denoted by the ablative regularly with an adjective, as *statūrā fuit humili*, *he was of low stature*. This is sometimes called the ablative of characteristic or description. See 285 for the genitive of quality.

331. Ablative of Means. Means or instrument is denoted by the ablative, without a preposition, as *clārē videō oculis*, *I see clearly with my eyes*; *pugnābant armīs*, *they fought with arms*.

332. Ablative of Cause. Cause may also be expressed by the ablative without a preposition, as *odērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre*, *the good hate to sin from love of virtue*.

333. Ablative of Agent. The agent is denoted by the ablative with *ā* (ab), as *urbs capta est ab illō duce*, *the city was captured by that leader*.

334. The Standard of Measurement is denoted by the ablative, as *magnōs hominēs virtūte mētimur, nōn fortūnā*, *we measure great men by worth, not by fortune*.

335. Measure of Difference is put in the ablative, as *sōl multis partibus est major quam terra ūniversa*, *the sun is many parts (a great deal) larger than the whole earth*. This is also sometimes called the degree of difference.

336. Ablative of Price. Definite price is put in the ablative, as *ēmit morte immortalitatem*, *he purchased deathlessness with death*.

a. General value is expressed by the genitive. See 292.

337. Ablative with Adjectives. The ablative is used with *dignus*, *indignus*, *frētus*, *contentus*, and *laetus*, and with adjectives of fullness and abundance, as *contentus hōc equō*, *content with this horse*; *dignus poenā*, *worthy of punishment*; *indignus poenā*, *unworthy of punishment*.

a. Also the verb *dignor*, *deem worthy*, takes the ablative in poetry and later prose, as *haud tālī mē dignor honōre*, *I do not deem myself worthy of such honor*.

338. The Ablative of Route is used to denote the way by which, as *prōvehimur pelagō*, *we sail forth over the sea*.

339. Ablative with Prepositions. The ablative is used with many prepositions, the most important being

abs (ab, ā), cum, cōram, dē
prae, prō, sine, ex (or ē).

340. Ablative of Separation. Separation is expressed by the ablative case, with or without a preposition. This ablative is used especially with verbs of depriving, of freedom, and of want, as *sē privāvit oculis*, *he deprived himself of his eyes*; *omnibus egēre rēbus*, *to be in need of everything*; *tē ab eō liberō*, *I free you from him*. This is called the ablative of separation.

a. The ablative of separation is also used with **aliēnus** and with adjectives of freedom and want, as **aliēnum mājestate deōrum**, *inconsistent with the dignity of the gods*; **liber cūrā**, *free from care*.

341. The ablative is used with **opus** and **ūsus**, as **opus est mihi aurō**, *I need gold*; **ūsus est dictis bonis**, *there is need of kind words*.

342. Ablative with Special Verbs. **Ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**, and their compounds take the ablative, as **his vōcibus ūsa est**, *she spoke (used) these words*; **abūsus est nostrā patientiā**, *he used up our patience*; **fruihur lūce vitae**, *we enjoy the light of life*; **fungor officiō**, *I am performing my duty*; **potitur victoriā**, *he gains the victory*; **lacte vēscuntur**, *they live on milk*.

343. Ablative Absolute. The ablative, combined with a participle, adjective, or noun, may serve to express the circumstances in which an act takes place, as **duce victō, abeunt**, *the leader having been conquered, they depart*; **urbe captā, hominēs redeunt**, *the city having been captured, the men return*. This phrase is called the ablative absolute.

a. The ablative absolute phrase may have an accessory idea of time, cause, or condition, as **Caesare cōsule haec lēx lāta est**, *this law was passed in Caesar's consulship*.

344. Vocative. The vocative, with or without **Ō**, *O*, is used in addressing a person or thing, as **Mūsa**, *O Muse!* **Aeole**, *O Aeolus!* **Ō rēgīna**, *O queen!*

LOCATIVE

345. Names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, **humus**, **domus**, and **rūs**, are put in the locative of the place where, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **Crētae**, *in Crete*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **domī**, *at home*.

a. In poetry the names of countries and large islands also are sometimes found in the locative, as **Libyae**, *in Libya*.

ADVERBS

346. Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, as **male vivit**, *he lives badly*; **bene labōrat**, *he works well*; **ferē omnēs**, *almost all*; **nimis saepe**, *too often*.

QUESTIONS

347. a. A question for information merely is generally introduced by **-ne**, as **videtne patrem**, *does he see his father?*

b. A question that expects the answer *yes* is generally introduced by **nōnne**, as **nōnne vidēs**, *don't you see?*

c. A question that expects the answer *no* is generally introduced by **num**, as **num vidēs patrem**, *you don't see your father (do you)?*

MOODS IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

348. The Deliberative Question has its verb in the subjunctive, as *dicam an taceam*, *shall I speak or hold my tongue?* *quid facerem*, *what was I to do?*

a. Occasionally the present indicative is used in deliberative questions, as *quem sequimur*, *whom are we to follow?*

349. The Indirect Question has its verb in the subjunctive, as *quaeremus* (1) *quid fecerit*, (2) *quid faciat*, (3) *quid facturus sit*, *we shall ask what he has done, what he is doing, what he is going to do (will do).*

350. The direct form of these three questions would be: (1) *quid fecit?* (2) *quid facit?* (3) *quid faciet* (or *facturus est*)?

TENSES

351. There are six tenses in Latin: the present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect.

1. **The Present** denotes continuance in the present; it is used: (1) of that which is going on now (specific present), as *auribus teneō lupum*, *I am holding a wolf by the ears*; (2) of statements that apply to all time (universal present), as *probitās laudātur et alget*, *honesty is praised and freezes.*

a. **The Historical Present.** The present is used far more frequently than in English as a lively representation of the past, as *cohortis incēdere jubet*, *he orders the cohorts to advance.* This is called the historical present.

b. The present is used in Latin of actions that continue into the present, especially with *jam*, *now*, *jam diū*, *now for a long time*, *jam pridem*, *now long since*, as *Mithridatēs annum jam tertium et vicēsimum rēgnat*, *Mithridates has been reigning now going on twenty-three years.*

c. The present is sometimes used for the future, or to denote attempted action (conative present), as *quam prendimus arcem*, *what citadel are we to seize?* *uxōrem dūcis*, *are you to be married?* *quid mē terrēs*, *why do you try to frighten me?*

2. **The Imperfect Tense** denotes continued or repeated action in the past, as *pugnābam*, *I was fighting, I kept fighting, I used to fight.* The imperfect is employed to represent manners, customs, situations; to describe and to particularize.

a. **The Imperfect of Endeavor.** The imperfect is used of attempted and interrupted, intended and expected actions (imperfect of endeavor, conative imperfect), as *urbem relinquēbat*, *he was trying to leave the city*; *lēx abrogābātur*, *the law was to be abrogated.*

b. The imperfect and the historical perfect serve to supplement each other. The imperfect dwells on the process; the historical perfect states

the result. The imperfect counts out the items; the historical perfect gives the sum. The two tenses are often so combined that the general statement is given by the historical perfect, the particulars of the action by the imperfect, as **Verrēs in forum vēnit; ardēbant oculi; tōtō ex ore crūdēlītās ēminēbat**, *Verres came into the forum; his eyes were blazing; cruelty was standing out from his whole countenance.*

3. **The Future Tense** denotes continuance in the future, as **scribam**, *I shall be writing*. It is also used to express indefinite action in the future, as **scribam**, *I shall write*.

a. The future is sometimes used in an imperative sense, as in English, as **cum volet, accēdēs; cum tē vitābit, abibis**, *when she wants you, approach; when she avoids you, begone sir*. Compare such English expressions as "Thou shalt not kill."

b. A similar use is that of the future in asseverations, as **ita mē amābit Juppiter**, *so help me, Jove!*

4. **The Perfect Tense** has two distinct uses: the pure perfect and the historical perfect.

a. **The Pure Perfect** expresses completion in the present and hence is sometimes called the present perfect. It is used of an action that is now over and gone, as **viximus**, *we have lived* (life for us has been); **Troja fuit**, *Troy has been* (but is no longer). It is more frequently used to denote the present result of a more remote action (resulting condition), as **āctum est, peristi**, *it is all over, you are ruined*; **equum et mūlum Brundisii tibi reliqui**, *I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium* (they are still there).

b. **The Historical or Indefinite Perfect** states a past action, without reference to its duration, simply as a thing attained, an occurrence, as **vēni, vidī, vici**, *I came, I saw, I conquered*; **Milō domum vēnit, calceōs et vestimenta mūtāvit, paulisper commorātus est**, *Milo came home, changed shoes and clothes, tarried a little while*.

5. **The Pluperfect** denotes completion in the past and is used of an action that was completed before another was begun, as **fuerat inimicus**, *he had been my enemy*.

6. **The Future Perfect** denotes both completion and attainment, as **fecerō**, *I shall have done it, or I shall do it* (once and for all).

352. The Latin tenses are divided into primary (principal) and secondary (historical).

a. **The Primary Tenses** have to do with the present and future; they are the present, pure perfect, future, and future perfect.

b. **The Secondary Tenses** have to do with the past; they are the historical present, imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect.

MOODS IN SUBORDINATE SENTENCES

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

353. Primary (principal) tenses are ordinarily followed by primary tenses, secondary (historical) by secondary tenses, as follows:

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------------|---|
| (1) All forms that relate to the present and future (primary tenses) | } are regularly followed by | { the present subjunctive (for continued action); the perfect subjunctive (for completed action). |
| (2) All forms that relate to the past (secondary tenses) | | |

a. The action which is completed with regard to the leading verb may be in itself a continued action. So in English: *I do not know what he has been doing, I did not know what he had been doing.* The Latin is unable to make this distinction, and so the imperfect indicative (*he was doing*) is represented in the dependent form by the perfect or pluperfect, thus: **nesciō quid fēcerit, nesciō quid fēcisset.**

b. The above rule is subject to several modifications:

1. Tense refers to time, not merely to tense form, so that

(a). The historical present may be felt according to its sense as *past* or according to its tense as *present*.

(b). The pure perfect may be felt according to its starting-point as *past*, or according to its completion as *present*.

2. The effect of a *past* action may be continued into the present or the future.

3. The dependent clause may depend on two or more clauses with their verbs in different tenses, and so follow a varying sequence.

4. An original imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive does not change its tense even when made to depend on a primary leading verb, for example, in unreal conditions (382, a).

354. The future relation of a verb in a dependent subjunctive clause may be made clearer by the use of an active periphrastic, as **cognōscam, quid factūrus sis, I shall (try to) find out what you are going to do; cognōvi quid factūrus essēs, I have found out (know) what you were going to do.**

355. In Indirect Discourse (indirect statement) all verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive and follow the general rule of sequence of tenses. See 390.

QUOD CLAUSES

356. Quod, the fact that, in that, is used with the indicative to introduce explanatory clauses after verbs of adding and dropping, doing and

happening, and after demonstrative expressions, as **adde quod vīcimus**, *add the fact that we have won*; **praetereō quod nōn mānsit**, *I pass over the fact that he did not remain*; **bene facis quod tacēs**, *you do well in that you keep silent*; **hāc rē est infēlix, quod victus est**, *in this he is unfortunate, in that he was conquered*.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

357. **Quod, quia, quoniam** and **quandō** take the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to express cause, as **fūgit quod timēbat**, *he fled because he was afraid*; **fūgit quod timēret**, *he fled because (as he said) he was afraid*.

358. **Quod** is used after verbs of emotion with the indicative in direct discourse, the subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, to give the reason (ground), as **gaudet quod vērunt**, *he rejoices that they have come*; **gaudet quod vērunt**, *he rejoices that (as he says) they have come*.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

359. Purpose is expressed by the present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**, as **vēnit ut dūceret hominēs**, *he came to lead (that he might lead) the men*; **fugit nē capiātur**, *he flees lest he be (that he may not be) captured*. For the relative clauses of purpose see 388.

360. Substantive Volitive Clauses. The present or imperfect subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used in a substantive clause after verbs of will and desire, as **orō ut veniās**, *I beg that you come*; **volō ut veniat**, *I wish him to come*; **volui nē veniret**, *I wished him not to come*. Such a clause is called a substantive volitive clause.

a. The infinitive may also be used with such verbs, especially in poetry.

b. **Jubeō** regularly takes the accusative and infinitive.

VERBS OF HINDERING

361. A verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **nē** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **obstat nē veniat**, *he hinders him from coming*.

362. A negatived verb of preventing, refusing, and the like may take **quīn** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive, as **nihil obstat quīn** (or **quōminus**) **sis beātus**, *nothing hinders you from being happy*.

VERBS OF FEARING

363. A verb of fear may be followed by **nē** or **ut** (= **nē + nōn**) with any tense of the subjunctive, as **timeō nē hostis veniat**, *I fear lest the enemy come, that he is coming, that he will come*; **timeō nē hostis vērunt**, *I fear*

lest the enemy have come, that (it will turn out that) he has come; timeō ut amicus veniat, I fear lest my friend come not, that he is not coming, will not come.

RESULT CLAUSES

364. The subjunctive with **ut** or **ut nōn** is used to denote result, as **tanta vis deōrum est ut eis nōn possimus obstāre**, *so great is the power of the gods that we cannot oppose them; nēmō est tam fortis ut nōn possit cadere*, *no one is so strong but he can (that he cannot) fall.*

a. A relative pronoun is sometimes used instead of **ut**, as **nēmō est tam fortis quī nōn possit cadere**.

365. A verb of effecting has the subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, or **ut nōn**, as **faciam ut veniat**, *I shall make (have) him come; faciam nē veniat*, *I shall bring it about that he does not come.*

366. Negated or questioned verbs of doubt and uncertainty may be followed by the subjunctive with **quīn**, as **nōn dubium est quīn urbs capiātur**, *there is no doubt (but) that the city is being captured.*

367. Substantive Clauses of Result. The subjunctive with **ut** is often used in a substantive clause to give the contents or character of a preceding substantive, adjective, or pronoun, as **tōtum in eō est, ut tibi imperēs**, *all depends on this, your self-command (that you rule yourself); id est proprium civitātis, ut sit libera*, *this is the peculiar privilege of a state, to be free (that it be free).* This is called the substantive clause of result.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

368. **Ut**, **ut primum**, **cum**, **cum primum**, **ubi**, **ubi primum**, **simul ac**, **simul atque**, in the sense of *as soon as*, and **postquam** take the perfect indicative, as **postquam vēnit dux, urbs capta est**, *after the leader came, the city was captured; ut vidit urbem captam, fugit*, *as (soon as) he saw the city captured, he fled.*

a. The imperfect indicative is used of overlapping action, and the pluperfect indicative when a definite interval is given, as **ut vidēbat hostēs vincentēs, rediit domum**, *as he saw the enemy were conquering, he returned home; postquam cēperat urbem, militēs dūcit domum*, *after he had captured the city, he led his soldiers home.*

369. When two repeated actions are contemporaneous, both are put in the indicative in tenses of continuance, as **rēx bellum gerēbat cum volēbat**, *the king waged war whenever he wished.*

370. When one repeated action comes before another, the antecedent action is put in the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect indicative, the

subsequent in the present, imperfect, or future indicative, according to the relation, as *quotiēns cecidit, surgit*, as often as he falls (has fallen), he rises; *quotiēns ceciderat, surgēbat*, as often as he fell (had fallen), he rose; *quotiēns ceciderit, surget*, as often as he falls (shall have fallen), he will rise.

371. *Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quamdiū*, so long as, while, take the indicative of all tenses, as *vīta dum superest, bene est*, while (as long as) there is life, it is well; *dōnec grātus eram tibi, fēlix fui*, while I was pleasing to you, I was fortunate; *quoad potuit restitit*, he resisted as long as he could.

372. *Dum, while, while yet*, usually takes the present indicative when the verb of the main clause is in the past tense, as *dum haec rēs aguntur, urbs ardēbat*; while these things were going on, the city was burning.

373. *Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until*, take the present, historical present, historical perfect, or future perfect indicative, when suspense or anticipation are not involved, as *manēbō dum venit*, I shall remain until he comes; *mānsi dum (quoad, dōnec) vēnit*, I remained until he came. See 374.

374. *Dum, dōnec, and quoad, until*, take the subjunctive when suspense, anticipation, or design is involved, as *mānsi dum veniret*, I remained until he could come; *expectō dum veniat*, I am waiting for him to come. See 373.

375. *Dum, modo, and dummodo, if only, provided only*, take the present or imperfect subjunctive in a proviso clause, as *ōderint dum metuunt*, let them hate so long as they fear (provided that, if they will only fear); *veniat, dum maneat*, let him come, provided that he remains.

376. *Antequam and priusquam* take the indicative present, perfect, or future perfect when the time limit is stated as a fact, as *antequam abeō, dicam pauca*, before I go, I shall say a few words; *antequam abiit, dixerat pauca*, before he went, he had said a few words.

a. Antequam and priusquam take the subjunctive when the action is anticipated, contingent, or designed, as *urbem capit priusquam rēx veniat*, he captures the city before the king may arrive (too soon for the king to arrive); *ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus*, we see the flash of lightning before we hear the sound (of thunder).

CUM CLAUSES

377. Temporal *cum, when*, is used with all tenses of the indicative to designate merely temporal relations, as *animus nec cum adest nec cum discēdit appāret*, the soul is not visible, either when it is present or when it departs; *pāruit cum necesse erat*, he obeyed when it was necessary.

378. Descriptive *cum*, when, is used with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive to give the circumstances under which an action took place, as *cum dimicāret, occisus est*, *when he engaged in battle, he was slain*; *Caesar cum id nuntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci*, *when this was (had been) announced to Caesar, he hastened to set out from the city*. This *cum* is sometimes called *cum circumstantial*.

379. Causal or Concessive *cum*, when, whereas, although, is used with any tense of the subjunctive, as *quae cum ita sint, debet fugere*, *since these things are so, we must flee*; *cum pār esset armis, tamen debuerat fugere*, *although he was equal in arms, nevertheless he had to flee*.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

380. The Logical (More Vivid or Simple) Conditional Sentence regularly has the same tense of the indicative in both the subordinate clause (the condition or protasis) and the principal clause (the conclusion or apodosis) as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
<i>Si id crēdis,</i> <i>If you believe that,</i>	<i>errās,</i> <i>you are wrong.</i>
<i>Si id crēdebās,</i> <i>If you believed that,</i>	<i>errābās.</i> <i>you were wrong</i>
<i>Si id crēdidistī,</i> <i>If you (have) believed that,</i>	<i>errāvistī,</i> <i>you were (have been) wrong</i>
<i>Si id crēdēs,</i> <i>If you (shall) believe that,</i>	<i>errābis.</i> <i>you will be wrong.</i>
<i>Si id crēdideris,</i> <i>If you shall have believed that,</i>	<i>errāveris,</i> <i>you will have been wrong.</i>

381. The Ideal (Less Vivid) Conditional Sentence regularly has the present or perfect subjunctive, in both clauses, as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
<i>Si id crēdās,</i> <i>If you should (were to) believe that,</i>	<i>errēs.</i> <i>you would be wrong.</i>
<i>Si id crēdideris,</i> <i>If you should (prove to) have believed that,</i>	<i>errāveris (rare)</i> <i>you would have been wrong.</i>

a. In indirect discourse, or indirect statement, the verb of the conditional clause of a logical or less vivid conditional sentence is in the subjunctive and follows the general rule of sequence of tenses, as *dicō tē, si id crēdās, errāre*; *dixi tē, si id crēderēs, errāre*.

382. The Unreal (Contrary to Fact) Conditional Sentence regularly has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to present fact,

and the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses if contrary to past fact, as follows:

CONDITION	CONCLUSION
Sī id crēderēs, <i>If you believed that (but you do not),</i>	errārēs. <i>you would be wrong.</i>
Sī id crēdidissēs, <i>If you had believed that (but you did not),</i>	errāvissēs, <i>you would have been wrong</i>

a. In indirect discourse the verb of an unreal condition is in the same mood and tense as it would be in direct discourse, and the verb of an unreal conclusion takes one of four special periphrastic forms, as follows:

Dicō (dixi) sī id crēderēs, tē errātūrum esse.	{ (active, contrary to present fact)
Dicō (dixi) sī id crēdidissēs, tē errātūrum fuisse.	{ (active, contrary to past fact)
Dicō (dixi) sī id crēderēs, fore ut dēciperēris.	{ (passive, contrary to present fact)
Dicō (dixi) sī id crēdidissēs, futūrum fuisse ut dēciperēris	{ (passive, contrary to past fact)

b. Similarly in substantive clauses, as follows:

Nōn dubitum est quīn, sī id crēderēs, errārēs.
Nōn dubitum erat quīn, sī id crēdidissēs, errātūrus fueris.

c. In poetry the present subjunctive is often used in both clauses of an unreal conditional sentence.

d. All conceivable combinations of types of mixed conditions and conclusions may be used; as the conclusion may have the form of a wish, command, statement of obligation, necessity, etc. These mixed forms are especially common with verbs which convey a future idea, as **dēbeō**, *ought*; **possum**, *be able, can*; **studeō**, *desire*; **volō**, *will, wish*, as **sī Pompēius privātus esset, tamen is mittendus erat**, *if Pompey were a private citizen, nevertheless he ought to be sent*; **vincite sī vultis**, *have your way if you will*.

383. **Ut sī, ac sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, or velut sī**, and the subjunctive are used in a clause of comparison, as **tantus metus patrēs cēpit, velut sī jam ad portās hostiū esset**, *a great fear took hold of the senators, as if the enemy were already at the gates*.

a. The subjunctive verb in such a clause follows the rule of sequence of tenses.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

384. A Concessive Clause may be introduced by **etsī, etiamsī, or tametsī**, with the indicative or subjunctive; by **quamquam**, with the indicative only; by **quamvis**, with the subjunctive only.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

385. The Relative Clause as such, that is, a clause used as an adjective to modify a noun, regularly has its verb in the indicative, as **amō virum quī fortis est**, *I like a man who is brave, I like a brave man.*

386. An indefinite or general relative clause usually has its verb in the indicative; so explanatory **quī**, when equivalent to **quod**, as **errāverim fortasse, quī mē aliquid putāvī**, *I may have erred in thinking myself to be something.*

387. A relative clause that depends on an infinitive or a subjunctive, and forms an integral part of the thought, has its verb in the subjunctive by attraction, as **pigrī est ingenīi contentum esse iis quae sint ab aliis inventa**, *it is the mark of a lazy mind to be content with what has been found out by others.*

388. A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when **quī** is equivalent to **ut** is in an expression of purpose, as **ēripiunt aliis quod aliis dent**, *they snatch from some to give to others.* This is called the relative clause of purpose.

389. A relative clause has its verb in the subjunctive when **quī** is equivalent to **ut** is in a clause of description or characteristic; so after an indefinite antecedent, after **dignus**, **indignus**, **idōneus**, **aptus**, etc., as **multi sunt quī ēripiant**, *there are many to snatch away*; **sunt (eī) quī dicant**, *there are those who say (some say)*; **dignus est quī cōsul fiat**, *he is worthy of being made consul.* This is called the subjunctive of characteristic.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

390. Indirect discourse (indirect statement), as opposed to direct discourse, gives the main drift of a speech and not the exact words.

a. Indirect discourse depends on some verb of saying, showing, believing, perceiving, or thinking, expressed or implied.

b. In indirect discourse a principal statement has its verb in the infinitive, as **dicit eōs vēnisse**, *he says that they have come*; **dicit eōs venire**, *he says that they are coming*; a question or a command has its verb in the subjunctive, as **quaerit quid velint**, *he asks what they want*; **quaesivit quid vellent**, *he asked what they wanted*; **dicit hominibus ut veniant**, *he tells the men to come*; **dixit hominibus ut fugerent**, *he told the men to flee.*

c. A subordinate clause in indirect discourse has its verb in the subjunctive. See 355.

VERSIFICATION

THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER

391. One of the most common meters of Latin poetry is the **daCTylic hexameter**. It was commonly employed by the Greeks and Romans in epic (narrative) poetry, such as the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer, the *Aeneid* of Vergil, and the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid. It is occasionally used in English, as in Longfellow's *Evangeline*. Some of the most beautiful Latin hexameters ever written are those of Vergil and Ovid.

392. There are six feet in a hexameter (Gr. **hex**, *six*; **metron**, *measure*) verse or line. The first five feet are either dactyls (Gr. **dactylos**, *finger*), i.e., one long syllable followed by two shorts (— ∪ ∪), or spondees, i.e., two longs (— —). The sixth foot is always treated as a spondee (— —).

393. The final syllable of a hexameter verse may be either long or short (**syllaba anceps**); but for practical purposes in scansion it may be considered long and thus marked.

394. The Metrical Scheme of a verse is thus:

— ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ — —

i.e., the first syllable of each foot must be long. It is also given slightly more stress than the other half of the foot. This stress is called the metrical accent.

a. A short syllable is often lengthened under the metrical accent or before a pause.

395. The fifth foot of the hexameter is almost always a dactyl. When a spondee is used in this place, it gives the verse a slower movement than usual. Such a verse is then called spondaic.

396. For metrical purposes each syllable of a Latin verse is considered either long or short, a long syllable occupying approximately twice as much time as a short (14). For this reason a spondaic foot (— —) is considered the metrical equivalent of a dactylic foot. (— ∪ ∪).

397. Observe that only long vowels are marked in the Latin words in this book. For the general rules on the length of syllables, see 14-24.

398. Elision. Whenever a word ends with a vowel, diphthong, or **m**, and the following words begin with a vowel or **h**, the first vowel or diphthong is regularly elided. Elision is not a total omission, but rather a light and hurried half-pronunciation, somewhat similar to grace notes in music.

399. Hiatus. Occasionally a word ending in a vowel, diphthong, or *m* is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h* and elision does not take place. This is called hiatus.

400. Semi-hiatus. Sometimes when a word ends in a long vowel or a diphthong and the next word begins with a vowel or *h*, the long final vowel or diphthong is shortened. This is called semi-hiatus.

401. The vowels *i* and *u* are sometimes used as consonants (*j*, *v*), as *abiete* (pronounce *abjete*), *genua* (pronounce *genva*).

402. Hypermeter. Sometimes the final syllable at the end of a verse is elided before a vowel at the beginning of the following verse. This is called synapheia, and the verse whose final syllable is elided is called a hypermeter or a hypermetric verse.

403. Synizésis. Two successive vowels which do not ordinarily form a diphthong are sometimes pronounced as one syllable for the sake of the meter. This sort of contraction of two syllables into one within a word is called synizesis.

SCANSION

404. Observe the scansion of the following passage:

Arma virumque canō, Trojæ quī prīmus ab ōris

ītaliam fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit

litora, multum ille et terris jactātus et altō

vī superum saevae memorem Jūnōnis ob iram,

multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem

inferretque deōs Latīō; genus unde Latinum

Albānique patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.

In marking the scansion the sign (—) is used below the line to indicate a long *syllable* and the sign (∪) for a short *syllable*. The feet are separated from each other by the perpendicular line (|), the metrical accent is indicated by a (´) over the first syllable of each foot, and elision is indicated by a (∪) connecting the elided vowel with the vowel following.

HINTS ON THE METRICAL READING OF LATIN POETRY

405. In reading Latin poetry orally, the words should be kept distinct and no break made between the separate feet, unless there is a pause in sense.

406. Careful attention should be paid to the meaning of the passage, and the various pauses in sense should be indicated by the voice. Of course the voice should not be allowed to drop at the end of a verse unless there is a distinct pause in sense.

407. Remember that the rhythm of Latin verse is based primarily upon the regular succession of long and short syllables, that of English primarily on the succession of accented and unaccented syllables.

408. To obtain facility in reading Latin verse, a considerable amount of it should be memorized, special attention being paid to the quantity, i.e., approximately twice as much time should be given to each long syllable as to a short one.

409. Caesúra.¹ Whenever a word ends within a foot the break is called caesura. If this coincides with a pause in the verse, it is called the principal caesura, or sometimes simply the caesura of the verse.

410. A single verse may have more than one caesura, each marked by a pause in sense. The principal caesuras are: (1) After the first long syllable of the third foot; (2) After the first long syllable of the fourth foot.

FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC

✱ **411. Alliteration** is the repetition of the same letter or sound, as the sound of *v* in *tum víctū revocant vírís*, *then they recall their strength with food.*

412. Anacolouthon or want of sequence occurs when the scheme of a sentence is changed in its course.

✱ **413. Anáphora** is the repetition of a word or words at the beginning of successive clauses, as *mírantur dōna Aenēae, mírantur Iūlum*, *they marvel at the gifts of Aeneas, they marvel at Iulus.*

414. Anástrophe is an inversion of the usual order of words, as *tē propter*, *on account of you.*

415. Antíthesis is an opposition or contrast of words or ideas, as *speciē blanda, reapse repudianda*, *charming in appearance, in reality to be rejected.*

416. Aposiopésis is a breaking off before the close of the sentence, as *quōs ego — sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs*, *whom I — but it is better to calm the angry waves.*

¹ In the teaching of scansion to beginners, it is preferable to omit all reference to caesura for at least the first two or three years of reading Latin poetry. These paragraphs on caesura are given for the benefit of teachers who may wish their pupils to know something about it.

✱ 417. **Apóstrophe** is a sudden break from the previous method of discourse and an addressing, in the second person, of some person or object, absent or present, as **Ō patria, Ō divum domus, O fatherland, O home of the gods!** (In this case the speaker is in Carthage, many miles from his native land, and is making an apostrophe to Troy which had been destroyed by the Greeks.)

✱ 418. **Asýndeton** is the omission of conjunctions, as **ancora dē prōrā jacitur; stant litore puppēs,** *the anchor is cast from the prow; the sterns rest on the beach.*

419. **Brachýlogy** (**breviloquentia**) is the failure to repeat an element which is to be supplied in a more or less modified form, as **tam fēlix essēs quam formōsissima (es) vellem,** *would that you were as fortunate as (you are) fair.*

✱ 420. **Chiasmus** is the arrangement of corresponding pairs of words in opposite order, as **Īlionēa petit dextrā laevāque Serestum,** *he sought Ilioneus with his right (hand) and with his left Serestus,* where **Īlionēa** and **Serestum** form one pair and **dextrā laevāque** form the other pair.

✱ 421. **Ellipsis** is the omission of one or more words which are obviously understood but must be supplied to make the expression grammatically complete, as **Aeolus haec contrā,** *Aeolus thus (spoke) in reply.* The words most commonly omitted are **agō, dicō, faciō, loquor,** and **sum.**

422. **Enallage** is a shift from one form to another, as **vōs (pl.), Ō Calliopē (sg.), precor,** *I entreat you, O Calliope.*

✱ 423. **Euphemism** is the substitution of an agreeable or nonoffensive word or expression for one that is harsh, indelicate, or otherwise unpleasant, as **sī quid eī acciderit,** *if anything should happen to him (i.e., if he should die).*

424. **Euphony** is the effect produced by words or sounds so combined and uttered as to please the ear.

425. **Hendiadys** is the expression of an idea by means of two nouns connected by a conjunction instead of by a noun and a limiting adjective, or by one noun limited by another, as **vī et armīs,** *by force of arms; vulgus et multitudō,* *the common herd.*

426. **Hypallage** is an interchange in the relations of words, as **dare classibus Austrōs,** *to give the winds to the fleet* (instead of *to give the fleet to the winds*).

427. **Hyperbaton** or **Trajection** is the violent displacement of words, as **per omnis tē deōs ōrō,** *by all the gods I beg you.*

X 428. *Hyperbole* is rhetorical exaggeration, as *praeuptus aquae mōns*, a sheer mountain of water, referring to a great wave of the sea.

429. *Hýsteron Próteron* is a reversal of the natural order, as *moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus*, let us die and rush into the midst of arms.

430. *Irony* is a sort of humor, ridicule, or light sarcasm which states an apparent fact with the manifest intention of expressing its opposite, as *scilicet is superis labor est, ea cūra quiētōs sollicitat*, of course this is work for the gods, this care vexes them in their serenity!

X 431. *Lítotes* or *Understatement* is the use of an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. This is especially common with the negative. *Nōn indecōrō pulvere sordidī*, soiled with not unbecoming (i.e., glorious) dust.

X 432. *Métaphor* is an implied comparison, as *illa, Trojae et patriae commūnis Erinys*, she (Helen), the common curse of Troy and of her native land.

X 433. *Metónymy* is the substitution of one word for another which it suggests, as *Cerēs*, goddess of grain, for grain.

X 434. *Onomatopoeía* is the use of words of which the sound suggests the sense, as *magnō cum murmure montis*, with a mighty rumbling of the mountain.

X 435. *Oxymóron* is the use of words apparently contradictory of each other, as *cum tacent clāmant*, when they are silent they cry out.

436. *Paraleípsis* or *Preterition* is an apparent omission by which a speaker artfully pretends to pass by what he really emphasizes, as *nōn dicō tē pecūniās accēpisse; rapinās tuās omnis omittō*, I do not say that you accepted sums of money; I omit all your acts of rapine; *praetereō quod nōn mānsit*, I pass over the fact that he did not remain.

437. *Personification* is an attribution of the element of personality to an impersonal thing, as *aspirat fortūna labōrī*, fortune favors our struggle; *fuge crūdēlis terrās, fuge litus avārum*, flee the cruel lands, flee the greedy shore.

438. *Pléonasm* is the use of superfluous words, as *sic ore locūta est*, thus she spoke with her mouth.

439. *Polysýndeton* is the use of unnecessary conjunctions, as *ūnā Eurusque Notusque ruunt crēberque procellis Āfricus*, both the East wind and the South wind and the Southwester rush forth together.

 **440. Prolepsis** or **Anticipation** is the use of a word, usually a modifier, before it is logically appropriate, as **summersās obrue puppis**, *overwhelm the sunken ships*, i.e., *sink and overwhelm the ships*.

441. Simile is a figure of speech which likens or asserts an explicit comparison between two different things in one or more of their aspects, as **pār levibus ventis volucrique simillima somnō**, *like unto the light winds and most resembling winged sleep*; **velutī cum coōrta est sēditio**, *just as when a riot has arisen*.

442. Synchronism is an interlocked order of words, as **saevae memorem Jūnōnis iram**, *fell Juno's unforgetting-hate*.

443. Synecdoche is the use of a part for the whole, or the reverse, as **tēctum**, *roof*, for **domus**, *house*; **puppis**, *stern*, for **nāvis**, *ship*; **mūcrō**, *point*, for **gladius**, *sword*.

444. Synthesis is a construction according to sense and not according to grammatical form, as **pars veniunt**, *part come*.

445. Tmesis is the separation of the parts of a compound word by one or more intervening words, as **quae mē cumque vōcant terrae** (for **quaecumque terrae mē vocant**), *whatever the lands that call me*.

446. A Transferred Epithet is an epithet which has been transferred from the word to which it strictly belongs to another word connected with it in thought, as **vēlivolum mare**, *the sail-flying sea*, where *sail-flying* is properly applied to ships which sail the sea rather than to the sea itself.

447. Zeugma is the junction of two words with a modifying or governing word which strictly applies to only one of them, as **Danaōs et laxat claustra**, *he looses the barriers and (sets free) the Greeks*.



INDEX TO THE GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

(The references are to sections.)

ă, ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns, 68; nom., acc. and voc. pl. ending of neuters, 33, *c*

ā, prepositions ending in, 312

ā or **ab** with abl., 320, 339, 333

Ability, verbs of with inf., 259

Ablative, defined, 30; in **ābus**, 34, *c*;
in **ī**, 55, *d*, 56, *b*, 77, 81, 82, *a*;
prepositions with, 339; adv. forms
of, 310; of supine, 271; pl. like the
dat., 33, *d*; **quīs** and **quī** as abl.
and dat., 109, *c*, *d*

Ablative, Syntax: abs., 343; accompaniment, 321; accordance, 326; as adv., 95, 310, 328, *a*;
agent, 333; with adjectives (**dignus**, **aliēnus**, etc.), 337, 340, *a*; cause, 332, gerund(ive), 269; with comparatives, 327; degree of difference, 335; with dep. verbs (**ūtor**, etc.), 342; with **dignor**, 337, *a*;
with **dōnō**, 296; manner, 328; material, 324; means, 331; with gerund(ive), 269; measurement, 334; with **opus est** and **ūsus est**, 341; origin, 323; place where, 319; place whence, 320; with prepositions, 339; price, 336; respect, 325; route, 338; separation, 340; time, 322

Abounding, words of with gen., 287

Absolute, abl. abs., 343

absum, conj., 123

ābus, dat. and abl. ending, 34, *c*

Accent, 25-27; metrical, 394; of nouns in **ius**, **ium**, 37, *a*, *b*

Accompaniment, abl. of with **cum**, 321

Accomplishing, verbs of, 365

Accordance, abl. of, 326

Accusative, defined, 30; in neuters like nom., 33, *c*; sing. in **a**, 68; sing. in **im**, 56, *a*; pl. in **is**, 56, *d*; 83, *b*; of supine, 270; names of towns, **domus** and **rūs**, 315, *a*

Accusative, Syntax: adv., 309-311, 95, *b*; cognate, 313; direct obj., 307; exclamation, 318; extent, 314; Greek, 309-311; subj. of inf., 317; with middle voice, 309; with prepositions, 312; respect, 311; of gerund(ive) with **ad**, 268; two accusatives: verbs of asking, making, etc., 316; remembering and forgetting, 288, *a*; compound verbs, 308

Accusing and acquitting, gen. with verbs of, 291

ācer, decl., 77; compar., 89

ac sī, in clauses of compar., 383

Action, see tenses, moods, etc.

Active voice, 115, *a*; changed to pass., 279; act. periphrastic, 199, *a*
ad, with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308; with gerund(ive), 268

adde quod, with indic., 356

Adjectives, definition, 70; **a** and **o** stems, 71; **i** stems, 76; consonant stems, 80-82; three terminations, 77; compar., 83-92; decl. of compar., 91; num. adjectives, 98-100; pronom. adjectives, 73, 102, *a*, 113, *a*, 114; poss. adjectives, 103, *a*, 104, *a*, 106, *a*

Adjectives, Syntax: agreement, 237-239; as adverbs, 95, 250, 310; with inf., 265; with gen., 287; with dat., 304; with abl., 337; pred., 239; double compar., 245

Advantage, dat. of, 301

Adverbial accusative, 310; adv. abl., 328

Adverbs, 93-97; formation, 95; compar., 96-97; adjectives used adverbially, 250, 310, 328, *a*; use, 346; double compar., 245; num. adverbs, 101

Adversative clauses, 379, 384

- adversum**, with acc., 312
ae, diphthong, 5
aeger, decl. like **pulcher**, 71
Aenēas, decl., 66
âēr, decl., 68
aethēr, decl. like **âēr**, 68
Affecting, acc. of, 307
Affirmative, expressed by two negatives, 431; **nōnne** for affirmative answer, 347, *b*
Agent, dat. of, 302; abl. of, 333
ager, decl. like masc. of **pulcher**, 71
Agreement, nouns: appos., 241; pred., 240, 278, 317, *a*; adjectives: 237-238; pred., 239; poss., 249; pronouns: rel., 242; dem., 240, *a*; verbs: 236; according to sense, 236, *a*, 444
āi, ending of gen. sing., 34, *b*
ajō, pronounced **aj-jō**, 6, *b*
al, decl. of nouns in, 56
aliēnus, for gen. of **alius**, 74, *a*; abl. with 340, *a*
aliquis (**aliqui**), decl., 113
alius, decl., 74
Alliteration, 411
Alphabet, 1-6
alter, decl., 74; **alterius** in gen. for **alius**, 74, *a*; ordinal num., 98
alterius for **alius**, 73, *a*
Although, how expressed, 379, 384
an, in double questions, 348
Anacolouthon, 412
Anaphora, 413
Anastrophe, 414
anceps, syllaba, 393
Anchisēs, decl., 66
Androgeōs, decl., 67
Andromachē, decl. like **Pēnelopē**, 66
animal, decl., 56
Answer to questions, 347
ante, prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308
Antecedent, agreement of rel. pron. with, 242; attracted to case of rel., 242, *a*; undefined in char. clauses, 389
Antepenult, 25, *a*
antequam, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, *a*
Anticipation, clauses of, 440; attraction of antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a*
Antithesis, 415
apis, gen. pl. in **ium**, 56, *c*
Apodosis, defined, 380
Aposiopesis, 416
Apostrophe, 417
Appointing, verbs of with two accusatives, 316, *a*
Apposition, 241; pronouns and poss. adjectives, 249; expressed by gen., 281; **quod** and **ut** clauses with nouns and pronouns, 356, 367; inf. with nouns, 264
aptus, with dat. of gerund(ive), 267; with rel. clause of char., 389
apud, prep. with acc., 312
äre, inf. ending, 132
ās, acc. pl. of Greek nouns in, 65, *a*
Asking, verbs of with two accusatives, 316; questions, 347-349
Asseverations, with fut. indic., 351, 3, *b*; subj., 254
Asyndeton, 418
At, translated by prep. with abl., 319; by loc., 345
äter, decl. like **pulcher**, 71
Athōs, decl. like **Androgeōs**, 67
Atlās, decl., 68
atque, **simul atque**, 368; **ac sī**, 383
Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 329
Attraction, antecedent to case of rel., 242, *a*; dem. to gender of pred., 240, *a*; of verb in rel. clauses to subjunctive, 387
au, diphthong, 5
audeō, semi-deponent, 205
audiō, conj., 172; with dat., 297
avis, decl., 65, *b*
āx, gen. with verbal adjectives in, 287
b, stems in, 50; becomes **p** before **s** and **t**, 128, 6
Becoming, verbs of, constr. with, 278
Believing, verbs of, with dat., 297; pers. constr. with pass., 279
bene, compar., 97
Beseeching, verbs of, with **ut** (**ne**), 360
bis, num. adv., 101
bonus, compar., 92; decl., 71
Brachylogy, 419
Buying, abl. with verbs of, 336
c, stems ending in, 51; represents changed **g** before **t**, 128, 6
Caere, decl., 56, *b*

- Caesura, 409-410
canālis, decl., 56, *b*
canis, decl., 56, *c*
capiō, conj., 163-171
caput, decl., 52
Cardinal numerals, 98-99
careō, abl. with, 340
Cases, 30; endings, 32; of pred. substantive, 240, 278; for uses see nom., gen., etc.
cāsus, decl., 59
Cause, abl. of, 332; gerund(ive), 269; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a*; clauses with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quandō**, 357-358; **cum** with subj., 379; rel. clause, 386
Causing, verbs of, with perf. part., 275; with gerundive, 268, *a*
Caution, constr. with verbs of, 363
cavē, in prohibitions, 256
-**ce**, enclitic, 107, 3, *b*, 4, *a*
Ceasing, complementary inf. with verbs of, 259
cētera, partitive use, 246
Characteristic, rel. clause of, 389; abl. of, 330; gen. of, 285
Chiasmus, 420
Choosing, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a*
circum, prep. with acc., 312; dat. with compounds of, 298; acc. with compounds of, 308
Circumstances, part., 273; abl. abs., 343; **cum** descriptive, 378; abl., 329
cis, prep. with acc., 312
Cities and islands, names of, fem., 38, *a*; in acc., 315, *a*; abl., 320, *a*; loc., 345
Clauses, see substantive, temporal, conditional, etc.
Cognate accusative, 313
Collective nouns, with pl. verbs, 236, *a*
comes, decl., 52
Command, imp., 255; subj., 254; fut. indic., 351, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
Commanding, verbs of, with dat., 297; with inf., 360, *a*, *b*; with subj., 360
Common syllables, 17
Comparative, 84; decl., 91; of adverbs, 96; double compar., 245; conjunctions, 383
Comparison, of adjectives, 83; of adverbs, 96; disproportion, 244; abl. of, 327; degree of difference, 335; clauses of with **ut** **sī**, **quasi**, etc., 383; metaphor, 432; simile, 441
Complement, subj., 278-279; obj., 316, *a*, 317, *a*; agreement with subj., 238-240
Complementary infinitive, 259
Complex sentences, see clauses
Compounds, of **sum**, 123; of **faciō** and **fiō**, 229; dat. with, 298
Compound verbs, with dat., 298; with dat. and acc., 298, *a*; with acc., 308; with two accusatives, 308, *a*
con-, in composition with dat., 298; in composition with acc., 308
Conative, pres., 351, 1, *c*; impf., 351, 2, *a*
Concessive clauses, with **cum**, 379; with **etsi**, **quamquam**, **quavis**, etc., 384; concessive subj., 254; see participles and abl. abs.
Conclusion, see conditions
Condemning and convicting, gen. with verbs of, 291
Condition, of an object, expressed by part., 273
Conditions, simple, 380; more vivid, 380; ideal (less vivid), 381; contrary to fact (unreal), 382, *c*; mixed, 382, *d*; in ind. disc., 381, *a*, 382, *a*; in substantive clauses, 382, *c*; abl. abs., 343, *a*
Conjugation, 116, 126-128; see verbs and first, second, etc.
Conjunctions, see **ut**, **cum**, etc.; omission of, 418; asyndeton, 418; polysyndeton, 349; compar. conjunctions, 383
cōnor, conj., 183; inf. with, 259
cōnscius, with gen., 287
Consecutive clauses, 364-367
Consonantal, *i* and *u*, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*; 401
Consonants, 6-8; quantity, 15, 17
cōnstrūctiō ad sēsum, 236, *a*, 444; reflex. refers to logical subj., 248, *a*
Construction, see cases, moods, etc.
cōnsul, decl., 41, *a*
contentus, abl. with, 337
Continued action, pres., 351, 1; impf., 351, 2; hist. inf., 257; sequence of tenses, 353

- Continuing, verbs of, with complementary inf., 259
- Contracted perfects, 204
- Contracted verb forms, 204; contracted vowels long, 24
- Contracting, undertaking, verbs of, with gerund(ive), 268, *a*
- Contradiction, oxymoron, 435
- Contrary to fact conditions, 382
- cōram**, with abl., 339
- cornū**, decl., 59
- corpus**, decl., 47
- Crasis, 204, vowels resulting from long, 24
- cujus**, see **quī**; pronunciation, 6, *b*
- cum** (preposition), 339; enclitic, 321, *a*; abl. of accompaniment, 321
- cum** clauses, temporal, 377; descriptive, 378; causal, 379; concessive, 379; **cum** (*whenever*), 370, 377
- cum primum**, 368
- cupidus**, with gen., 287
- d**, stems ending in, 52; before **s**, 128, 6, 124
- Dactyl, 392; fifth foot usually a dactyl, 395
- Date, **cum** with indic., 377
- Dative, defined, 30; sing. in **āi** (first decl.), 34, *b*; sing. in **ī** (second decl.), 74; pl. in **is** for **iis** (**deus**), 37, *f*; pl. in **ubus** (fourth decl.), 58, *c*
- Dative, Syntax: with adjectives, 304, 267; agent, 302; compounds, 298; direction, 306; double dat., 303, *a*; ethical, 300; ind. obj., 295; poss., 299; purpose, 303; reference, 301, 303, *a*; separation, 305; with special verbs, 297
- dē**, with abl., 329; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326
- dea**, decl., 34, *c*
- dēbeō**, with complementary inf., 259; indic. for obligation, 251; in conditions, 382, *d*
- Declensions, 31–33; first, 34–35; second, 36–38; third, 39–57; fourth, 58–61; fifth, 62–64; of Greek nouns, 65–69; of adjectives, 71–82, 91; of numerals, 99; of pronouns, 103–114
- Defective verbs, 205
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 335
- Deliberative questions (subjunctive), 348
- Dēlos**, decl., 67
- Demonstrative pronouns, decl., 107; as subj. attracted to gender of pred., 240, *a*; as adjectives, 102, *a*
- Deponent verbs, 182; first conj., 163–190; second, third, fourth conj., 191–198; participles of, 182; abl. with, 342; semi-deponents, 205
- Depriving, verbs of, with abl., 340; with dat., 305
- Descriptive genitive, 285; abl., 330; impf., 351, *a*, *b*; **cum** descriptive, 378
- Desire, expressions of with gen., 287; clauses of, 360; in ind. disc., 248, *b*; verbs of with inf., 260; expressed by fut. part., 274; volitive subj., 253
- dēsum**, conj., 123; dat. with, 301
- deum** = **deōrum**, 37, *d*, *f*
- deus**, decl., 37, *f*
- dexter**, decl. like **miser**, 71
- dicō**, ind. disc., 263, 390; imp. **dic**, 202
- diēs**, decl., 63; gender, 64
- dignor**, with abl., 337, *a*
- dignus**, with abl., 337; with rel. clause, 389
- Diphthongs, 5; always long, 24
- Direct, obj., 307; question, 347; reflex., 106, 248
- Direction, dat. of, 306
- Disproportion, **quam** (**prō**, **ut**), **quī**, 244
- Distance, acc., 314
- Distributive, numerals, 100; pronouns, see **quisque** and **uterque**
- diū**, compar., 97
- domus**, abl. of, 320, *a*; loc., 345; acc., 315, *a*; decl., 60; gender, 61, *a*
- dōnec**, with indic., 371; with subj., 374
- dōnō**, with dat. or abl., 269
- Double consonants, 7; **s** and **z**, 8; double questions, 348; double accusatives, 308, 316; double datives, 303, *a*; double comparatives, 245
- Doubting, verbs of; potential subj., 252; deliberative question, 348; subst. clause with **quān**, 366; cf. 382, *b*
- dūc**, imperative, 202

dum, 371; with indic., 371-373; with subj., 374; in proviso clauses, 375
duo, decl., 99

Duration, acc., 314; abl., 322

Duty, expressed by indic., 251; by periphrastic, 199, b, 382, d

dux, decl., 51

ē, prep.; see **ex**; adv. ending, 95, a
ecquis, 112

Editorial "we," 243, a

Effecting, acc. of, 307; verbs of: with perf. part., 275; with result clause, 365

egeō, abl. with, 340

ego, decl., 103; omission, 247; for emphasis and contrast, 247

ei, diphthong, 5

Elision, 398, 402

Ellipsis, 421

Emotion, verbs of with gen., 289; with inf., 260; with **quod** and indic. or subj., 358; see exclamation

Emphasis, see figures of speech, 106, b, c, and 247

Enallage, 422

Enclitics, 27; **-que**, 27; **-met**, 106, b; **-pte**, 106, c; **-ce**, 107, 3, b, 4, a; **-nam**, 112; **-cum**, 321, a; **-ve**, 27; **-ne**, 27, 347, a

Endings (regular), of nouns, 32; of infinitives and participles, 117, 3; see declensions and conjugations

Endings (irregular), gen. sing. in **āi**, 34, b; gen., dat. sing. **ē** for **eī** in fifth decl., 63; gen. pl. **um**, 34, b, 37, d; acc. pl. **is**, 56, d, 83, b; gen. sing. **ius**, 74; gen. pl. **ium**, 77, 81, 3, 55, c; abl. sing. **i**, 55, d, 77, 81, 1; nom. and acc. pl. **ia**, 55, d, 81, 2; dat., abl. pl. **abus**, 34, c; acc. **im**, 56, a; gen. pl. **ōn**, 65, a; acc. sing. **in**, 68; **āsti**, **ārun**, **ēre**, etc., 204

English pronunciation of Latin words, 28

Envy, verbs of with dat., 297

eō, see **is**, **ea**, **id**

eō, conj., 207-213; compounds of, 213, a; **iri** in fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, b

er, nom. ending, 37, 74, 77

ēre for **ērunt**, 204, 4; **ere** for **eris**, 204, 4

esse, see **sum**

Esteeming, verbs of, double acc., 316; abl. with **dignor**, 337, a

Ethical dative, 300

etsi, **etiāmsi**, in concessive clauses, 384

eu, diphthong, 5

Euphemism, 423

Euphony, 424; in verb stems, 128, 6

ex (**ē**), prep. with abl., 339; place whence, 320; origin, 323; accordance, 326; material, 324

Exchanging, verbs of with abl., 336

Exclamations, subj., 253; imp., 255-256; inf., 262; acc., 318; voc., 344; fut. ind. in asseverations, 351, 3, b; apostrophe, 417

Exhortations, subj., 254; imp., 255; **ut** clause, 360

Extent of space and time, acc., 314

fac, imp. of **faciō**, 202

facilis, decl. like **omnis**, 77; compar., 89, e

faciō, conj. like **capiō**, 163; imp. **fac**, 202; two accusatives, 316, a; **faciō ut** (**nē**), 365; pass. of, 227; compounds of, 229

fāgus, gender, 38, a

fateor, conj., 191-198

Favor, verbs of with dat., 297

Fearing, clauses with **nē** or **ut**, 363

Feeling, verbs of with gen., 289-290; with **quod** and indic. or subj., 358

Feet, in verse, 392; fifth foot, 395

fel, decl., 41, b

fēlix, decl., 82; compar., 87

Feminine, first decl. (mostly), 35; second decl.: cities, islands, trees, and a few others, 38, a; third decl., nouns in **dō**, **gō**, **iō**, 44; **i** stems in **ēs**, 57; some **i** stems in **is**, 57; all other **i** stems, 57; mutes in **s**, 54; fourth decl., a few in **us**, 61, a; fifth decl., all but **diēs** and **meridiēs**, 64

fer, imp. of **ferō**, 202

ferō, conj., 214-225; imp., 202

fidō, semi-deponent, 205; with dat., 297

Fifth declension, 62-64

Figures of Speech, 411-447

filia, decl., 34, c

filius, decl., 37, a, b

- Final clauses, 359-360
fiō, conj., 228; compounds, 229; pass. of **faciō**, 227
 First conjugation, 129-141; deponents, 183-190
 First declension, 34-35
 Fitness, adjectives of, with dat., 304; of gerund(ive), 267
fore (**futūrus esse**), 121; **fore ut** in ind. disc., 263, *a*; cf. 382, *a*
 Forgetting, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*; complementary inf., 259
 Forms, 29-275; see nouns, verbs, etc.
 Fourth conjugation, 172-181; deponents, 191-198
 Fourth declension, 58-61
 Freedom, adjectives and verbs with abl., 340; adjectives and verbs with gen., 287
frētus, with abl., 337
frūgi, compar., 92
fruor, with abl., 342
fui, see **sum**
 Fullness, expressions of, with gen., 287; with abl., 337
fungor, with abl., 342
 Future perfect tense, 351, 6; in conditions, 380; in temporal clauses, 370; like perf. subj., 128, 5
 Future tense, 251, 3; specific and universal, 351, 3; as imperative, 351, 3, *a*; asseverative, 351, 3, *b*; part. expressing purpose, 274; conditions, 380-381; formation of pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; expressed by **fore ut**, 263, *a*; use of periphrastic, 199, *a*; in subj., 354

g, stems in, 51; changes to *c* before *t*, 128, 6
 Gender, rules of, 35, 38, 42, 48, 54, 57, 61, 64; attraction of pronouns, 240, *a*; and see masculine, feminine and neuter; of pred. complement, 239, *b*
 Genitive, defined, 30; **ai** for **ae**, 34, *b*; **um** for **ōrum**, 37, *d*; **um** and **ium**, 53, 55, *c*, 56, *c*, 77, 81, 3; **ē** for **eī**, 63; **ius**, 73-74; poss. adj. as gen., 249; two forms for pers. pronouns, 247, *a*
 Genitive, Syntax: material, 280; appos., 261; explanatory, 282; poss., 283; subj., 284; obj., 284; quality, 285; part., 286; pred., 285, *a*; with adjectives, 287; with verbs, 287-291; value, 292; with interest and **refert**, 293; respect, 294; genitive of gerund(ive), 266
genius, decl., 37, *b*
genū, decl., 59
genus, decl., 47
 Gerund(ive), 117, 3, 203; for formation see verbs, conj. of, uses of, 266-269; with dat. of agent, 302; in **undus**, 203; see periphrastic; of dep. verbs, 182
 Giving, verbs of, with gerundive, 268, *a*
gracilis, decl., 77; compar., 89, *a*
 Greek accusative, 309, 311
 Greek nouns, decl., 65-69
 Guilt, expressions of, with gen., 287-291

h, never makes position, 15; vowels short before, 20; elision before, 398; hiatus before, 399
habeō, conj., 142-150
 Having, verbs of with gerundive, 268, *a*; verbs of with perf. part., 275
 Helping, verbs of with dat., 297
 Hendiadys, 425
hērōs, decl., 68
 Hesitation, clauses of, 363, 366
 Hexameter, 391-397
 Hiatus, 399; semi-hiatus, 400
hic, decl., 107; pronounced **hicc**, 107, 3, *c*
 Himself, **ipse**, 108; **sē**, 106, 248
 Hindering, clauses with **nē**, **quīn** or **quōminus**, 361-362
 Historical inf., 257; with subj. nom., 277; pres., 351, 1, *a*; with secondary sequence, 353, *b*, 1 (*a*)
homō, decl., 43
 Hortatory subjunctive, 254
humus, loc. of, 345; gender, 38, *a*
 Hypallage, 426
 Hyperbaton, 427
 Hyperbole, 428
 Hypermeter, 402
 Hysteron Proteron, 429

i, vowel, 4; semi-vowel (consonantal), 6, *a*, 401; after *j*, 6, *b*, *c*; *i* stems, 55, 76; changed to *e* in **iō** verbs,

- 161, 206, 1; *i* and *u* in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
- i**, imperative of *eō*, 209; voc. ending, 37, *b*; abl. ending, 55, *d*, 77, 81, 1; loc. ending, 37, *c*; pres. pass. inf. ending, 117, 3; nom. pl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*, 107
- ia**, nom. and acc. pl. ending, 55, *d*, 81, 2
- Ictus, in verse, 392, 394, 404
- Ideal conditions, 361
- īdem**, decl., 107
- idōneus**, with dat. of purpose, 303; gerund, 267; with rel. clause, 389
- idūs**, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
- ignis**, decl., 56, *b*
- īi**, or *i* in gen., 37, *a*; *īi* for *eī*, 107; *īi* perfect of *eō*, 207; in compounds, 213, *a*
- īis**, for *eīs*, 107
- ille**, decl., 107
- im**, acc. ending, 56, *a*
- Imperative, 115, 4; for formation see under verbs, conjugation of; irregular imperatives, 202; pres. and fut. 255; neg. 256; fut. ind. as imp., 351, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
- Imperfect tense, 351, *a*; of *possum*, etc., for pluperf., 251, 382, *d*; conative, 351, 2, *a*; descriptive, 351, 2, *b*; in temp. clauses, 368, *a*, 371; in conditions, 380, 382, *d*; sequence of tenses, 353; formation of impf. subj., 128, 2
- imperō**, with dat., 297; with subst. vol. clause, 360
- Impersonal verbs, forms of *eō*, 213, *b*; with gen., 290; impers. constructions, 258, 366
- Implied indirect discourse, 357-358; cf. 248, *b*
- in**, acc. ending, 68
- in**, prep. with acc., 315; prep. with abl., 319; verbs compounded with, 298
- Inclination, adjectives of, with dat., 304; expressions of, 251-254; adjectives of, for adverbs, 250
- Indefinite antecedent, 389; pronouns, 113
- Indicative, 115, 4; to denote possibility, 251, 382, *d*; in deliberative questions, 348, *a*; with *quod* in explanatory clauses, 356; in causal clauses, 357-358; in temporal clauses, 368-373, 377; present with *dum*, 372; simple (more vivid) conditions, 380; in unreal conditions, 382, *d*; in concessive clauses, 384
- Indirect command, 390
- Indirect discourse, 263, 390; subordinate clauses in, 355; conditions in, 382, *a*; implied, 357-358; cf. 248, *b*; commands in, 390, *b*; tense of inf. in, 263
- Indirect object, 295
- Indirect questions, 349; cf. 353, *a*; use of periphrastic in, 354
- Infinitive, formation, 117, 2-3; of deponents, 182; contraction of perf., 204; see also conjugations
- Infinitive, Syntax: with adjectives, 265; cf. 258; pred. nom. with, 317, *a*; complementary, 259; purpose, 261; exclamatory, 262; as subject, 258; hist., 257, 277; subj. acc., 317; in ind. disc., 263, 390, *b*; for *ut*-clause, 360, *a*; with *jubeō*, 360, *b*; with nouns, 264; as obj., 260
- Inflection, 29-235; see declension, conjugation, etc.
- Informal indirect discourse, 367, 358; cf. 248, *b*
- Instrumental ablative, 531; of gerund(ive), 269
- Intensive suffixes, 106, *b*, *c*; pronoun, 108; cf. 248
- inter**, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298
- interest** with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
- Interjections, 318, 344
- Interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 111-112; sentences, 347
- Intransitive verbs with dat., 297; with cognate acc., 313
- iō**, gender of nouns in, 44; verbs in, 162
- ipse**, decl., 108; for use cf. 248
- īri**, in fut. pass. inf., 213, *b*
- Irony, 430
- Irregular verbs, conj., 206-235
- is**, acc. pl. ending, 56, *d*
- is**, *ea*, *id*, decl., 107; as pers. pron. of third person, 105, *b*

- Islands, names of, gender, 38, *a*; acc., 315, *a*; abl., 320, *a*; loc., 345
 isse, syncopated form, 204
 iste, decl., 107, 4
 Iterative imperfect, 351, 2
 ium, gen. pl. ending, 55, *c*, 77, 81, 3;
 decl. of words in, 37, *b*
 ius ending, declension of words in, 37,
b; gen. sing. ending, 74; see also
 declension of pronouns
- j*, the letter, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*
 jaciō, conj., 161, 227–229; com-
 pounds, 6, *c*, 229; pass. of, 227–229
 jam, with pres. indic., 351, *b*
 jubeō, with inf., 360, *b*
 Jussive subjunctive, 254
- Knowing, verbs of, see indirect dis-
 course
 Knowledge, adjectives of with gen.,
 287; adjectives of as adverbs, 250
- l*, nouns in, 56; stems in, 41, *b*; in
 common syllables, 17–18
 lac, decl., 52, *a*
 laetus, with abl., 337
 Leaving, verbs of with gerundive,
 268, *a*
 Length, of vowels, 20–23; of syllables,
 14–19, 396, 407
 Less vivid, conditions, 381
 Letters, of alphabet, 1–8
 liber, noun, 36, *a*
 liber, adjective, decl. like miser, 71;
 with abl. of separation, 340, *a*
 Likeness, adjectives of with dat., 304
 Liquids, in common syllables, 17;
 stems in, 41–46
 Litotes, 431
 Locative, defined, 30; first decl., 34,
a; second decl., 37, *c*; of domus,
 60; use, 345; loc. gen., 294
 Logical, constructions, sing. coll. subj.
 with pl. verb, 236, *a*, 444; copula
 agrees with pred. noun, 236, *c*;
 pron. attracted to gender of pred.,
 240, *a*; reflex. referring to logical
 subj., 248, *a*; logical conditions, 280
- m*, final syllable in, 398
 magis, compar., 97; in double com-
 parisons, 245
 magnus, compar. of, 92
- Making, verbs of, two accusatives,
 316, *a*; gerundive, 268, *a*; perfect
 part., 275
 male, compar., 97
 mālō, conj., 230; see comparison
 malus, compar., 92
 Manner, abl. of, 328; gerund(ive),
 269; implied in part., 273
 manus, decl., 59; gender, 61, *a*
 mare, decl., 56
 Masculine, first decl., referring to
 males, 35; second decl. in *us* or *r*
 (mostly), 38; third decl. stems in
l, 42; nouns in *ō*, except *dō*, *gō*,
 and *iō*, 44; nouns in *is* (*eris*) and
ōs (*ōris*), 48; some *i* stems in *is*,
 57; nouns in *er* and *or*, 46; fourth
 decl. in *us* (mostly), 61; fifth decl.
 only *diēs* and *meridiēs*, 64
 Material, expressed by gen., 280; by
 abl., 324
 Means, abl. of, 331; with gerund(ive),
 269
 Measure, abl. of, 334
 medius, used partitively, 246
 mel, decl., 41
 melior, see bonus
 meminī, with gen., 288; with acc.,
 288, *a*
 memor, with gen., 287
 -men, suffix, 44, 2
 -met, enclitic, 106, *b*
 Metaphor, 432
 Meter, 391–410
 Metonymy, 433
 Metrical scheme, of the hexameter,
 394
 meus, form, 103, *a*; as gen. of ego,
 249
 mī, voc. of meus, 103, *a*; short for
 mihi
 Middle voice, 115, *a*; with obj. acc.,
 309, *a*
 mihi, see ego
 miles, decl. like comes, 52
 mille, numeral, 99
 minus, compar., 97; in double com-
 parisons, 245
 miser, decl., 71
 misereor, with gen., 289
 miseret, with gen. and acc., 290
 Modesty, pl. of, 243, *a*; subjunctive
 of, 252
 modo, in proviso clauses, 375

Monosyllabic, nouns of third decl., 53
 Mood, 115, 4; for forms see verbs;
 for uses see indic., subj., etc.
 More vivid conditions, 380
moror, conj., 183-190
 Motion, end of, with dat., 306; with
 acc., 315
mōvi, contracted forms of, 204, 3
multus, compar., 92
mūnus, decl. like **genus**, 47
 Mute stems, decl., 49-54

n, stems in, 43
-nam, enclitic, 27, 112
 Names of towns and islands, abl.,
 320, *a*; loc., 345; acc., 315, *a*
 Naming, verbs of, with two accusa-
 tives, 316, *a*
nātus, with abl. of origin, 323
nāvis, decl., 56, *a*
-ne, enclitic, 27; in questions, 347, *a*
nē, in prohibitions, 253, 256, *a*; in
 purpose clauses, 359; with verbs
 of hindering, refusing, etc., 361;
 with verbs of fearing, 363; result,
 365; omitted after **cavē**, 256
 Nearness, adjectives of with dat., 304
 Necessity, indic., 251, 382, *d*; pass.
 periphrastic, 199, *b*; 382, *d*; see
 command
 Negative, answer expected, 347, *c*;
 double neg., 431; purpose clause,
 359; clause of fearing, 363; result
 clause, 364; see prohibitions
nēmō, missing forms supplied by
nūllus, 114; **nēmō est quī**, 364, *a*
nēquam, comparison of, 92
 Neuter, adjectives with inf., 258;
 complement with subjects of differ-
 ent genders, 239, *b*
 Neuter, pronom. adj., 114; decl., 74
 Neuter, second decl. in **um** and a few
 in **us**, 38; third decl. stems in **li**,
 42; nouns in **en**, 44, 2; nouns in
ar, **ur**, 46, 2; *i* stems in **e**, **al**, **ar**, 57,
b; nouns in **us** (**eris**), **ūs** (**ūris**), 48,
 2; fourth decl. in **ū**, 61
nf, vowels long before, 23
nihil, forms of, 114
nimis, compar., 95, *b*
 No, questions expecting answer, 347, *c*
nōlī(te), in prohibitions, 256
nōlō, conj., 230
 Nominative, defined, 30; like acc.

and voc. pl. in third, fourth, and
 fifth declensions, 33, *b*; like acc.
 and voc. in all neuters; in **a**, 34;
 in **us** (**os**), **um**, **er** and **ir**, 36; in **l**,
 41; in **ō** and **en**, 43; in **or** and **er**,
 45; in **us**, 47; in **s**, 50-51; in **ēs**,
 52; in **is**, **e**, **al**, 56; in **us**, **ū**, 59; in
ēs, 62
 Nominative case, 30; as subj., 276;
 with hist. inf., 277; as subjective
 complement, 278, 279; of gerund
 supplied by inf., 258; agreement of
 verb with, 236; double nom., 239,
 241
nōnne, for affirmative answer, 347, *b*
nōs, see **ego**; pl. for sing., 243; nom.
 emphatic, 247
nostri, **nostrum**, 247, *a*
 Nouns: decl., 31-69; appos., 241;
 pred., 240, 278-279, 317, *a*; with
 infinitives, 264; and see gender
nōvi, contracted forms of, 204, 3;
 perf. with pres. meaning, 204, 3,
 354
nox, decl., 53; quantity of vowel, 19
ns, vowels long before, 23
nt, vowels short before, 21
nūllus and **nēmō**, 114; decl., 74
num, for negative answer, 347, *c*;
 in questions, 347, *c*
 Number, 29; pl. for sing., 243, 236, *a*,
 444; and see agreement of pred.
 attribute, 239
 Numerals, 98-101

ō, nouns in, 43; gender of nouns in, 44
Ō, interj. with voc., 344
ob, prep. with acc., 312; verbs com-
 pounded with, 298
 Obeying, verbs of, with dat., 297
 Object, direct, 307; ind., 295; clauses,
 360-363, 365; inf. as obj., 260
 Objective genitive, 284; of pers. pro-
 nouns, 247, *a*; objective comple-
 ment, 317, *a*
 Obligation, indic., 251, 382, *d*; peri-
 phrastic, 199, *b*, 382, *d*; subj., 253;
 see command
obliviscor, gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*
obsum, 123; dat. with, 298
 Occasion, expressed by part., 273
ōdisse, see 204, 3
oe, diphthong, 5
Oedipūs, decl., 69

Omission, of pers. pron., 247
 omnis, decl., 77
 on, *ōn*, Greek endings, 65, *a*, 67, 68, 69
 Onomatopoeia, 434
 oportet, 251, 382, *d*
 Optative, subjunctive, 253
 opus est, with abl., 341
 ōrātiō obliqua, see indirect discourse
 Ordinal numerals, 98, *a*
 Origin, abl. of, 323
 orior, conj., 206
 ōrō, constr. of verbs depending on, 360
 Orpheus, decl., 69
 os, nom. sing. of second decl., 36, *a*, *b*;
 Greek nominatives in 67, 69
 Oxymoron, 435

p, represents changed *b* before *s* and *t*,
 128, 6; stems in, 50
 paenitet, with gen. and acc., 290
 Panthūs, decl., 67
 pār, with gen., 287; with dat., 304;
 with dat. of gerund(ive), 267
 Paraleipsis, 436
 Participles, formation, 117, 3; compar., 90; of deponents, 182, 205; tenses of, 272–275; gerundive, 266–269; periphrastic, 199; decl. of pres., 82
 Partitive genitive, 286; of pers. pronouns, 247, *a*
 parvī, gen. of value, 292
 parvus, compar., 92
 Passive voice, 115, *a*; formation of perf. system, 116, 3; constr. with verbs of saying, 279; pass. periphrastic, 199, *b*, cf. 382, *d*; gerundive constructions, 267, 268; middle and reflex. use, 309; perf. pass. system, 116, 3; fut. pass. inf., 117, 2, 213, *b*; with dat. of agent, 302
 Past perfect, see pluperfect
 patior, conj., 191–198
 pelagus, gender of, 38, *a*
 Penalty, gender of, 38, *a*
 penes, prep. with acc., 312
 Penult, 25, *a*
 per, prep. with acc., 312
 Perception, verbs of, with part., 273; see indirect discourse
 Perfect tense, 351, 4; pres. state, 351, 4, *a*; past act, 351, 4, *b*; temp. clauses, 368, 370, 376; perf. subj.

both primary and secondary inf. in ind. disc., 263; participle, 275; in conditions, 381, 353, *b*, 1, *b*; in ind. disc., 382, *a*, *b*; contracted perfects, 204
 Periphrastic conjugation, 199–201; as fut. subj., 354; conditions in ind. disc., 382, *a*; in contrary to fact apodosis, 382, *d*; in ind. questions, 354; with dat. of agent, 302
 Person, agreement of verb, 236; agreement of rel. pron., 242; for forms see conjugations
 Personal construction, of pass. with inf., 279
 Personal pronouns, forms, 103; omission, 247; as part. gen., 247, *a*; in appos. to poss. adjectives, 249
 Personification, 437
 Persuading, verbs of with dat., 297
 pēs, decl., 52
 piget, with acc. and gen., 290
 Pity, verbs of, with gen. and acc., 290
 Place whither, 315, 306; where, 319; whence, 320; extent, 314
 Pleasing, verbs of, with dat., 297
 Plenty, expressions of, with gen., 287
 plēnus, gen. with, 287; abl. with, 337
 Pleonasm, 438
 Pluperfect, 351, 5; indic. in time clauses, 370; subj. in unreal conditions, 362; secondary sequence in ind. disc. 353, 382, *a*, *b*; in cum descriptive clauses, 378
 Plural, see number, agreement, etc.; poetic, 243, 444; editorial, 243, *a*
 plūs, compar., 92, 97
 Polysyndeton, 439
 Possession, gen., 283; dat., 299
 Possessive adjectives (pronouns), forms, 103–106; used as gen. of pron., 249
 Possibility, indic., 251, 382, *d*; subj., 252, cf. 386; periphrastic, 382, *d*; in causal clauses, 357–358; with antequam and priusquam, 376, *a*; in conditions, 381; in relative clauses, 389
 possum, conj., 125; to express possibility, 251, 382, *d*; in apodosis, 382, *d*
 post, prep. with acc., 312; verbs compounded with, 298, 308
 postquam, with indic., 368

Potential, indic., 251; subj., 252; see possibility

potior, with abl., 342

Power, adjectives of, with gen., 287; nouns of, with inf., 264

prae, prep. with abl., 339

Predicate adjective, 239, 279; pred. noun, 236, c, 240, 317, a, 278; pred. acc., 317, a, 279; pred. acc. becomes pred. noun in pass., 279; pred. noun with inf., 317, a; pred. use of participles, 273, 275; pred. gen., 285, a; of gerund(ive), 266; pred. adj. with inf., 258; pred. with pass. verbs of saying, etc., 279; pred. dat., 303, a; see agreement

Prepositions, with acc., 312; with abl., 339; omitted, 315, a, b; 319, b, 320, a, b, 340; **cum** appended to certain words, 321, a; assimilation, cf. 123; compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308

Present tense, 351; specific and universal, 351, 1; hist., 351, 1, a; with **jam** as perf., 351, 1, b; conative (as fut.), 351, 1, c; part., 272; decl., 82; indic. with **dum**, 372; inf. in ind. disc., 263

Preterition, 436

Preventing, verbs of, with **nē**, **quōminus**, **quā**, 361-362; with abl. of separation, 340

Price, abl. of, 336; gen. of, 292

Primary tenses, 352, a; sequence of tenses, 353

primus, *beginning of*, 246

princeps, decl., 50

Principal parts, 126

priusquam, with indic., 376; with subj., 376, a

prō, prep. with abl., 329; **prō ut**, **quam prō**, 244, cf. 383; interj., 318

Prohibitions, subj., 253; imp., 256; obj. clauses (volitive), 360; hindering, 361-362; in ind. disc., 390, b

Prolepsis, 440

Pronouns, 102-114; pers., 103-106; omitted, 247; reflex., 106; use of, 248; dem., 107; attraction of, 240, a; intensive, 108; rel., 109-110; general relatives, 110; agreement of relatives, 242; relative clauses, 385-389; interrog., 111-112; adj., 111, a; pronom. adjectives, 73-74,

114; see poss.; indef., 113; distributive, see **quisque** and **uterque** as part. gen., 247, a; in appos. to poss. adj., 249

Pronunciation, Latin, 4-8; of Latin words in English, 28; of **i** and **u** as consonants, 401

Prosody, 391-410

prōsum, conj., 124

Protasis, 380; see conditions

Proviso clauses, vol. subj., 254; with **dum** (**modo**), 375

proximus, with dat., 304

-**pte**, enclitic, 106, c

pudet, with gen. and acc., 290

puer, decl., 37

pulcher, decl., 71; compar., 88

pulchrē, compar., 97

Purpose, inf., 261; gerund(ive), 268; fut. part., 274; **ut** and **nē** with subj., 359; rel. clause of, 388; supine in **um**, 270; dat. of, 303

qu, pronunciation, 6; counts as single consonant, 15; becomes **x** with **s**, 128, 6

Quality, gen., 285; abl., 330; two qualities compared, 245

quam, omission of in compar., 327; **quam prō**, **quam ut**, **quam qui**, 244; **quam sī**, 383; with two positives, 245; with two comparatives, 245; **antequam** and **priusquam** separated, 376, a

quamquam, with indic. in concessive clauses, 384

quamvis, with subj. in concessive clauses, 384

quandō, in causal clauses, 357

quanti, gen. of value, 292

Quantity, of vowels, 20-24; of syllables, 14-19; in verse, 392-397, 404, 407; numerals, 99-101

quasi, in clauses of comparison, 383

-**que**, enclitic, 27

Questions, 347; deliberative, 348; ind., 349, 354; exclamatory, 262

quī, decl., 109; abl. form **quī**, 109, d; = **ut** is, 389; see relative

quia, in causal clauses, 357

quicumque, general relative, 110

quā, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 362; after neg. expressions of doubt, 366

- quis, interrog., decl., 111; indef., 113
 quis, dat., abl. pl. of *quī*, 109, *c*
quisque, use with reflex., 248
quisquis, general rel., 110
quoad, with indic., 371; with subj., 374
quod, rel. pron., 109; with indic. in explanatory clauses, 356; with indic. and subj. in causal clauses, 357-358; in ind. disc. 355
quōminus, after verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361-362
quoniam, in causal clauses, 357
quot, numeral adv., 98
quotiens, numeral adv., 101; in temp. clauses, 320
quum = *cum*
- r*, for *s* between two vowels, 47; stems in *r*, 45; nouns in *r*, 36, *a*, 37; adjectives in *r*, 71, 74, 76, 77, 91; see liquids
- re*, for *ris*, 204, 4
 Reading of verse, 405-408
 Reference, dat. of, 301, 303, *a*; gen., 294; acc., 311; abl., 325
refert, with gen. of person, 293; with abl. of poss. adj., 293, *a*
 Reflexive pronouns, forms, 103-106; use, 248
 Refusing, verbs of, 361-362
 Regarding, two accusatives with verbs of, 316, *a*; constr. with pass. verbs of, 279
 Relative clauses, 385; explanatory, 386; dependent, 387; purpose, 388; result, 364, *a*; char., 389
 Relative pronouns, decl., 109; agreement, 242; in comparison, 244
reliuus, partitive use = *rest of*, 246
 Remembering, verbs of, with gen., 288; acc., 288, *a*
 Removing, verbs of, with abl., 340
 Repeated action, impf., indic., 351, 2; in temp. clauses, 369-370; sequence of tenses, 353
rēs, decl., 63
 Resisting, verbs of, with dat., 297; with *nē*, *quān*, *quōminus*, 361, 362
 Resolving, verbs of, complementary inf., 259; subst. vol. clause with, 360
 Respect, abl. of, 325; acc. of, 311
 Restricted, rel. clause, 387
- Result clauses, 364; rel. clause of, 364, *a*; sequence of tenses, 353; explanatory clause of, 367
rête, decl., 56, *b*
 Rhotacism, 47
 Rhythm of Latin verse, 407
ri, adjective stems in, 76, *a*
rogō, two accusatives, 316; inf. with, 360; *ut* (volitive) clause, 360
 Route, abl. of, 338
rūs, decl. and gender, 48, 2; acc., 315, *a*; abl., 320, *a*; loc., 345
- s*, changed to *r* between vowels, 47; change of mutes before *s* in verb stems, 128, 6; stems in *s*, 47; nom. ending, 32
saepe, compar., 97
satis, with gen., 286; compar., 97
 Saying, verbs of, ind. disc., 390, 263; constr. with pass., 279
 Scansion, 404
scītō, fut. used as pres. imperative, 202
sē, reflex. pron., 106, 248
 Second conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms, 142-150; deponents, 191-198
 Second declension, 36-38
 Secondary object, 308, 316; tenses, 352, *b*, 353
secundum, prep. with acc., 312
 Selling, verbs of with gen., 292; with abl., 336
 Semi-hiatus, 400; semi-deponents, 205; semi-vowels, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*; 401
senex, decl., 56, *c*
 Separation, dat. of, 305; abl. of, 340
 Sequence of Tenses, 353; conditions in ind. disc., 381, *a*; suppositions in ind. disc., 383, *a*; for examples see 358, 360, 363, 374, 390, *b*
sequor, conj., 191-198
 Service, dat. of, 303; dat. with adjectives of, 304
 Serving, dat. with verbs of, 297
 Sharing, adjectives of with gen., 287
sī, conditions, 380-382; suppositions, 383; *ut sī*, *ac sī*, *quam sī*, 383
 Simile, 441
similis, with gen., 287; with dat., 304
simul ac (atque), with indic., 368
 Singular, with pl. verb, 236, 444; see number, agreement, etc.

- singulus**, distributive num., 100
Situation, participle, 273; **cum** descriptive, 378; **dum** with pres. ind., 372; rel. clause, 385; abl., 329
soleō, semi-deponent, 305; complementary inf. with, 259
sōlus, with rel. clause, 389
Source, abl. of., 323
Space, extent of with acc., 314
Specification, with gen., 294; abl., 325; abl. of supine, 271; acc., 311
Spelling, *j* and *v*, 6, *a*, *b*, *c*
Spondee, 392; spondaic verse, 395
Stem of nouns, 31, 34, 36, 39–40, 58, 62; of adjectives, 71, 75–76, 78–81; stems in *i*, 55, 76; of verbs, 116, 126–128
sub, prep. with acc., 312; compounds of with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Subject, 276; agreement of verb with, 236; coll., 236, *a*, 444; two subjects, 236, *b*; subject of different persons, 239, *a*; omitted pers. pronouns, 247; impers. verbs, *cf.* 240; indef. second person, *cf.* 252; imp., 255; of hist. inf., 257; subj. acc., 260, 317; exclamatory inf., 262; ind. disc., 263, 390; inf. as subj., 258
Subjective genitive, 284; poss. adj. as, 249
Subjunctive, 115, 4; potential, 252; opt., 253; vol., 254, 360; in causal clauses, 357–358, 379; in purpose clauses, 359; with verbs of hindering, refusing, etc., 361–362; in ideal and unreal conditions, 381–382; comparisons with *ut sī*, *quasi*, etc., 383; double comparisons with *quam sī*, *quam ut*, 244; **cum** descriptive, 378; concessive clauses with **cum**, 379; with *etsi* and *quamvis*, 384; rel. clauses of attraction, 387; purpose, 388; char., 389; result, 364, *a*; deliberative questions, 348; ind. questions, 349, 354; temp. clauses of anticipation, 374, 376, *a*; result clauses, 364–367; with verbs of fearing, 363; prohibitions, 256; of modesty, *cf.* 252; proviso, 375; subordinate clauses in ind. disc., 357, 358, *cf.* 248, *b*; tenses of, 353
Subordinate clauses, sequence of tenses, 353; in ind. disc., 390 *b*, *c*; see temporal, result, conditional, etc.
Substantive (volitive) clauses of desire, 360; hindering, 361–362; fearing, 363; result, 365–367; conditions in, 382, *b*; **quod** with indic., 356
Suffixes, see enclitics, endings
suī, decl., 106; use, 248
sum, conj., 118; compounds of, 123; fut. inf. with *ut* in ind. disc., 263, *a*; agreement with pred. noun, 236, *c*; with dat. of poss., 299; **sunt quī**, 389; simple sentence with, 278
summus, *top of*, partitive, 246
super, prep. with acc., 312; in composition with dat., 298; with acc., 308
Superlative, 85, 88, 89, *a*; used partitively as noun, 246
Supine, for forms see conjugations; uses, 270–271
Suppositions with *ut sī*, *quasi*, *velut*, etc., 383
suus, forms, 106, *a*; uses, 248
syllaba anceps, 393
Syllables, division of, 9–13, 18; named, 25, *a*; final syllable of hexameter line, 393; long syllable shortened, 400; short syllable lengthened, 394, *a*; first syllable of each foot long, 394; long and short syllables, 14–19, 396; two syllables united, 403
Synapheia, 402
Synchysis, 442
Synecdoche, 443
Synesis, 444
Synizesis, 403
Syntax, 236–390

t, assimilated before *s*, 128, 6, 125; stems ending in, 52
taedet, with gen. and acc., 290
tametsī, in concessive clauses, 384
tamquam (*sī*), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
tanti, gen. of value, 292
Teaching, verbs of, two accusatives, 316
Temporal clauses, 368–377; of action prior to the main verb, 368, 370; of action contemporaneous with the main verb, 369, 371–373, 377;

- of action later than the main verb, 374-376; abl. abs., 343, *a*
- Tenses, 115, 3; formation of, 127; pres., impf., etc. and verbs of imp., 255; of inf., 263, 390; of part., 272; uses of, 351; primary and secondary, 352; sequence of, 353
- ter, adv. suffix, 95, *c*
- ter, num. adv., 101
- Terminations, of nouns, 32; of verbs, 127-128; of infinitives and participles, 117; see endings, enclitics, declension, conjugation, etc.
- Than, compar. of adjectives, 83-92; compar. of adverbs, 93-97; omission of *quam*, 327; *than if*, 383; *than that*, 244
- Thinking, see indirect discourse, constr. with pass., 279; with acc. and inf., *cf.* 317, *a*
- Third conjugation, principal parts, 126; forms *dicō*, 151-160; *capiō*, 163-171; deponents: *sequor*, *patior*, 191-198
- Third declension, stems in *l*, 41-42; *n*, 43-44; *r*, 45-46; *s*, 47-48; *p* or *b*, 50; *c* or *g*, 51; *t* or *d*, 52; *i*, 55-57
- Time, from which, 320; when, within which, 322; till which, 315; extent, 314; expressed by abl. abs., 343, *a*; see temp. clauses; time in pronouncing syllables, 14, 408
- timeō, with subj., 363
- Tmesis, 445
- too . . . to, two clauses compared, 244
- tōtus, decl., 73; *all of*, partitive use, 246
- Towns, names of; see cities
- Traction, 427
- trāns, prep. with acc., 312; acc. with compounds of, 308
- Transferred epithet, 446
- Trees, names of, gender, 38, *a*
- trēs, decl., 99
- tū, decl., 104; omission, emphatic, 247
- tui, obj. gen., 247, *a*
- Two accusatives, 308, *a*, 316; two datives, 303, *a*
- u*, sometimes pronounced like *v*, 6, *a*; after *g*, *q*, 6, 15; for *i* in superlatives, 85, 89, *a*; for *e* in gerund (ive), 203; noun stems in *u*, 58; *i* and *u* in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
- ubi, with indic., 368
- ubus, for *ibus* in dat., abl. pl., 58, *c*
- ui, diphthong, 5
- ūllus, decl., 74
- Ultima, 25, *a*
- um, gen. pl. ending, first decl., 34, *b*; second decl., 37, *d*; third decl., 53, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, 56, *c*, 81, 3, 82, *c*, *d*
- Understatement, 431, see potential subj., 252
- Undertaking, verbs of, with acc. of gerund(ive), 268, *a*
- Unreal conditions, 382
- ūnus, decl., 74; *ūnus est quī*, 389
- urbs, decl., 53
- ūsus est, with abl., 341
- ut clauses: fearing, 363; *fore ut*, 263; indic., 368; indirect commands, 390, *b*; omitted, 256; purpose, 359; result, 364; sequence of tenses, 353; *ut si*, 383; substantive, 360, 367; temporal, 368
- uter and *uterque*, decl., 74-74, *b*; compounds of *uter*, 114, *a*
- utinam, in unfulfilled wishes, 253
- ūtor, with abl., 342
- v*, omitted in perf. forms, 204; use of, 6, *a*; as a consonant in poetry, 401
- Value, gen. of, 292
- vannus, gender, 38, *a*
- ve, enclitic, 27
- velim, vellem, subj. of modesty, 252; opt., 253
- velut (si), in clauses of comparison, 383; simile, 441
- vēneō, compound of *eō*, 213, *a*; see selling
- Verbal adjectives, in *āx* with gen., 287
- Verbs, inflection of, 115; stems, 116, 128, 6; conj., 116; principal parts, 126; first conj., 129-141; second conj., 142-150; third conj., 151-160, *dicō*; 161-171, *capiō*; fourth conj., 172-181; dep., 182-198; semi-dep., 205; periphrastic, 199-203, 263, *a*; syncopated forms, 204; irregular, 206-235; *sum*, 118-122; principal parts, 126; general rules, 128
- Verbs, uses of, agreement, 236; with gen., 287-291; *interest* and *rēfert*, 293; with dat., 297-298; with abl.,

342; see names of moods and tenses, ind. disc., etc.
Versification, 391-404
vēscor, with abl., 342
vester, 104
vestri, vestrum, 247, *a*
vetō, acc. and inf. with, 360, *a*, 260
vetus, decl., 82; rhotacism, 47
videor, dat. of reference, 301; pred. nom., 279; complementary inf., 259; ind. disc., 263-390
vir, decl., 37
vīs, decl., 56, *a*
Vocative, defined, 30; second decl., sing., 36; of words in *ius, ium*, 37, *b*: *deus*, 37, *f*; *meus*, 103, *a*; Greek nouns, 66-69; use, 344
Voices, 115, 2, *a*; middle with obj. acc., 309, *a*; see active, middle, passive
Volitive, subj., 254; substantive with *ut (nē)* after verbs of will, desire, etc., 360; in ind. disc., 390, *b*
volō, conj., 230; with inf., 260, 317; with subj., 360; with part., 275
vōs, see *tū*

voster, see *vester*
Vowels, long and short, 3-4, 20-24; long vowels marked, 3, 397; elision of final vowels in verse, 398; syncope, 204; synizesis, 403; long vowel shortened, 400
vulgus, gender, 38, *a*

Want, words of with gen., 287; with abl., 340
Way, by which, abl., 338, 328, 331
Whole, gen. of, 286
Wishes, inf., 260, 317; subj., 253, 254; ind. disc., 390, *b*; *ut* (volitive) clause, 360

x, nom. ending, 51, 82; in verb stems (*c, g, qu* and *s*), 128, 6; double consonant, 8; makes position, 15

Yes, questions expecting, 347, *b*

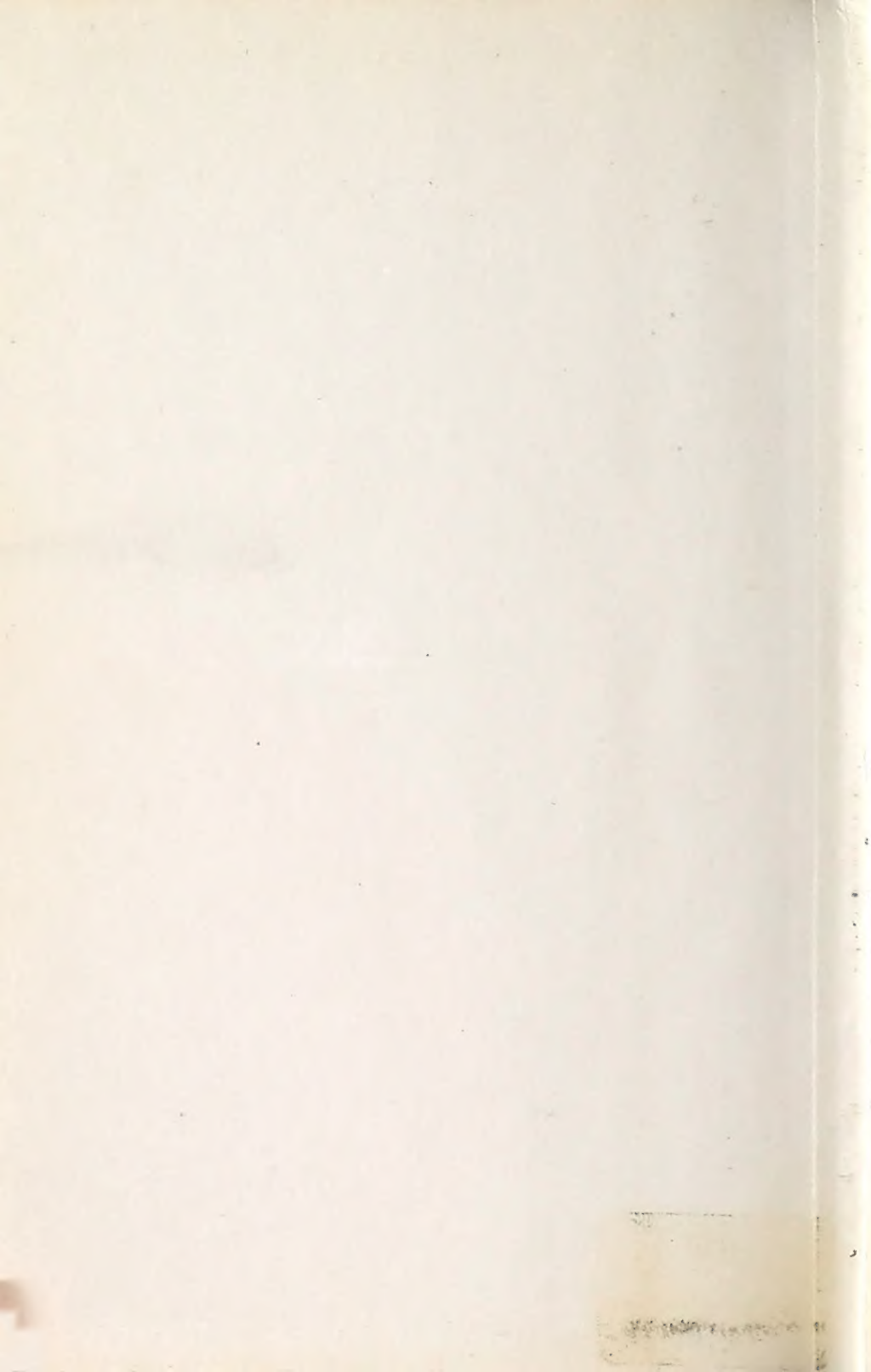
z, double consonant, 8; makes position, 15
Zeugma, 447















3 0081 009 160 478